UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS
LIBRARY

Class 820.8
Book Ea7
Volume No. 36,112

LIT LANG [redacted]

Je 05-10M

The person charging this material is responsible for its return to the library from which it was withdrawn on or before the **Latest Date** stamped below.

Theft, mutilation, and underlining of books are reasons for disciplinary action and may result in dismissal from the University.

To renew call Telephone Center, 333-8400

UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS LIBRARY AT URBANA-CHAMPAIGN

APR 01 1992

EARLY ENGLISH
TEXT SOCIETY

L161—O-1096

Merlin

or

The Early History of King Arthur.

VOL. II.

e

HERTFORD:
Printed by Stephen Austin and Sons.

70

Merlin

or

The Early History of King Arthur:

A PROSE ROMANCE

(About 1450–1460 a.d.).

EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE MS. IN THE UNIVERSITY LIBRARY, CAMBRIDGE,

BY

HENRY B. WHEATLEY, F.S.A.

With an INTRODUCTION containing

OUTLINES OF THE HISTORY OF THE LEGEND OF MERLIN.

BY

WILLIAM EDWARD MEAD, Ph.D. (Lips.).

ALSO,

ESSAYS ON MERLIN THE ENCHANTER AND MERLIN THE BARD,

by D. W. Nash, F.S.A.; and ARTHURIAN LOCALITIES,

by J. S. Stuart Glennie.

VOL. II.

LONDON:
PUBLISHT FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
By KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., Ltd.
MDCCCXCIX.

Early English series
Q. PR1119
.A2 no.36,112

CHAPTER XIII.

THE ADVENTURES OF GAWEIN, AGRAVAYN, GAHARET, GAHERIES, AND GALESHYN; AND THEIR BATTLE WITH THE SAXONS.

Now, seiħ the boke, that as soone as Galeshene hadde lerned of the tydinges of kynge Arthur, and knewe that he was his oncle, he toke a messenger, and sente to Gawein̄ his cosyn̄, and prayde hym to speke wiħ hym at newerk in privy wise, and to brynge wiħ hym his bretheren̄, and that he faile not to be ther the thirde day after Pasche. The messenger iourneyed forħ tiƚƚ he com̄ in to walis, in̄ the marche af Orcanye, and spake with Gawein̄ and his bretheren̄, and seide how Galeshene grete hym̄ wele, and sente hym worde and praide hym as dere as he hym loved, to mete wiħ hym at newerk, in brochelonde, the thirde day after Pasħ, for ther he wolde be wiħ-oute faile yef he were in̄ hele of his body. And whan̄ thei̅ herde this message they made grete ioye, and seide ther wolde thei̅ be wiħ-oute faile, for thei̅ wiste wele he ne sente not for hem wiħ-oute grete cause. And thei̅ yaf the messager a gode stede, and sente hym a-gein̄ glad and mery. And he spedde hym tiƚƚ he com̄ to Galeshene, and tolde hym his ansuere that he hadde of his cosyns.

When Galeshene knows that Arthur is his uncle he sends a messenger to Gawein praying him to come to Newerk.

When Gawein and his brothers hear the message, they promise to be there without fail.

Whan̄ the messenger*e* com̄ be-fore Galeshene, his lorde, he seide how his cosyns grete hym wele, and that thei̅ wolde be at newerke, in brochelonde, the thirde day after Pasħ wiħ-oute faile. Than̄ Galeshene dide hym appareile, and wente the *nexte day after pasħ to newerke, in brochelonde. And whan̄ he com̄ thider, Gawein̄ ne hys bretheren̄ were not yet I-come. And ther he a-bode tiƚƚ thei̅ were come. Whan̄ Gawein̄ and his bretheren̄ were come, Galashin̄ made to hem grete feste. And than̄ seide Gawein̄ to Galashin̄, "feire cosin̄, ye sente for to seche me this othir day by youre message that I and my bretheren̄ sholde come speke with yow; and trewly ne were that I wolde take my leve of yow, I wolde elles by this tyme haue be elles where, that I haue moche for to do, and so moche I desire

When the messenger comes to Galeshene, he tells him his cousins' answer.

*[Fol. 65*a*.]

Galashene goes to Newerke in Brochelonde. When Gawein and his brethren come, Galeshin makes a great feast.

1.04

82068

Galeshin asks Gawein where he is going.

Gawein says he is going to see the prowess of the worthiest knight of the world. Galeshyn asks who that is.

Gawein says it is king Arthur.

Galeshyn is glad when he hears what Gawein says.

Galeshyn and Gawein tell each other the words of their mothers. They agree to go within fifteen days. Galeshyn has two hundred knights in his company, and departs without the knowledge of his father to Newerk. Gawein and his brethren bring five hundred knights and squires.

to be there a-bove aƚƚ other thynge." "Sir*e*," seide Galeshin, "whider sholde ye haue gon, for witħ-oute me ne sholde ye not go, but that I therof sholde haue wytinge; and ther-fore telle me what wey ye purposeth yow to go, and after I shaƚƚ telle yow my corage, and why I haue sente for to speke witħ yow and my cosins your*e* bretheren." Than seide Gawein, "trewly, cosin, I wiƚƚ go se the grete prowesse and largesse of the free and deboniere and[1] the moste worthi knygħt of the worlde, of whom I haue herde reporte the moste wurship and honour*e*." "A god mercy!" q*uo*d Galeshyn, "who is that? god graunte that it be he that causetħ me to come speke witħ yow." "forsothe," seide Gawein, "his name ne ougħt not to [be] hidde, but to be publisshed a-fore eny worthy man, for it is the kynge Arthur; but witħ grete wronge and a-gein rigħt do the barou*n*s of this londe a-gein hym werre, and in especiaƚƚ thei that ougħt hym to love and holde moste dere; and wite ye weƚƚ, so god me helpe," seide Gawein, "that I shaƚƚ neuer be witħ swerde girte tiƚƚ that he me girde." Whan Galashyn hadde herde that Gawein hadde seide, he was neuer er so gladde, and ran to Gawein witħ armes spredde, and made to hym soche ioye and feste as aƚƚ the worlde hadde ben his, and seide that for noon thynge ellis hadde he sente to hym fore, and tolde hym worde for worde aƚƚ his corage, and the wordes of his moder that she hadde seide; and ther a-gein Gawein hym tolde the wordes of hys moder. Whan the childeren hadde spoke to-geder, thei acorded to meve witħ-inne xv dayes. Than thei departed, and made redy theire horse and theire armes, as was convenient to so higħ men sones; and, to sey brefly, Galashyn purchesed in his company CC of the beste knygħtes that he cowde chese, and than departed witħ-oute witynge of his fader, and rode be the moste vn-couthe weyes that thei myght tiƚƚ he com to newerke, in brochelonde, and ther a-bode the comynge of Gawein and his bretheren, that brougħt in her company v^c men of knyghtes and squyres that alle were knygħtes sones; but ther ne were lx knygħtes, and amonge hem that com̄ wiħ Galashin̄ but xx knygħtes. And whan̄ thei̇n̄ were aƚƚ assembled thei made to-geder grete ioye. And than̄ thei̇n̄ toke counseile to-geder how it was to do; and thei̇n̄ a-corded to go to logres in bretein̄, the chi[e]f Citee of kynge Arthur; and ther sholde thei̇n̄ here speke of the kynge her oncle, and also of the sarazins that repaired ther-a-boute.

---

[1] The word "and" is repeated in the MS.

They agree to go to Logres.

Now, seith the boke, that a-boute the entre of may, in the tyme whan̄ these briddes syngiħ wiħ clier voys and aƚƚ thynge reioyseħ, and than̄ these wodes and medowes beħ florished grene, and these medowes fuƚƚ of newe tendir erbys and entermedled wiħ *dyu*er*se colours that swote be of odoures, and these amerouse yonge lusty peple reioyse be-cause of the lusty seson̄, it be-fiƚƚ that Gawein̄ and Agrauayn̄ and Gaharet and Gaheries and Galashyn̄, and thei̇n̄ that be-come in̄ her*e* companye, ben̄ risen̄ erly, for the heete that dide hem̄ grete anoye on̄ the day, as they that wolde ride[1] in the cole of the mornynge that was feire and stille and a softe weder, and thei̇n̄ were yonge and tender to suffre grete trauayle, and thei̇n̄ were wele armed, and hadde on̄ hattes of stile as squyres vsed in tho dayes, and theire swerdes hangynge at the pomeƚƚ of their*e* sadeles be-fore, for the contrey was not sure for the saisnes that rode and ronne thourgħ the contrey for vitaile and for to robbe and distrye the londe that was so plenteuouse and riche er the mysbelevynge peple were entred, wherof was grete pite that so goode a londe sholde be distroyed for synne and for myslyvinge, as god haħ ofte sithes chastysed diuerse remes.

About the beginning of May, when the birds sing,

*[Fol. 65*b*.]

Gawein, Agravayn, Gaharet, Gaheries, and Galashyn rise early and start on their journey.

They are well armed,

for fear of the Saxons.

The thirde daye that thise childeren̄ rode to-geder lyke as that ye haue herde, thei̇n̄ mette the kynge leodobron̄ and the kynge Segagan̄ and the kynge Mandalet and the kynge Sernagut, of the londe of yroys, that hadde the contre a-boute logres brent and wasted, and ledde wiħ hem grete plente of vitaile, so that the hoste for longe tyme was refresshed of brede and wyne and of flessħ, for thei̇n̄ hadde so piled and robbed thourgħ the contrey and the portes where the shippes were a-ryved, and the

On the third day they meet the kings Leodobron, Segagan, Mandalet, and Sernagut, who had burnt and wasted the country round Logres.

---

[1] The word "ride" is repeated in the MS.

They hear the complaints and cries of the common people.

marchaundise was so grete, that v^{C} someres were charged, and xxv cartes and vij carres, and the cariage and the multitude of peple was so grete, that the duste a-rose so huge, that vn-nethe oon mygħt knowe a-nother; and also the fiere and the smoke so grete in the contrey that half a iourney a-boute men mygħt knowe what peple ther were. And whan thise childeren approched to this chyuachie, and herde the playntes and the cryes that the mene peple made for the saisnes that hem so distroyed, that were weƚƚ x^{Ml} of horse-men, wiťh-oute the putaile that ronne vp and down and robbed the peple and brente the vilages as thei passed thourgħ the Contrey.

They ask the passers by where king Arthur is, who tells them he is at Tamalide.

They say they will keep and defend the land till their uncle comes home.

*[Fol. 66*a*.]

When the people know who they are they are very joyful.

The children cry "to arms."

Whan the childeren saugħ this doloure and this sorowe, thei asked of hem that passed by that thei saugħ so affraied where that kynge Arthur was, and they seyde he was gon in-to Tamalide at mydlenton, and hadde wele garnysshed alle the forteresses of his londe that noon ne mygħt not gretly forfete, and thei were so doilfuƚƚ that the sarazins so distroied the londe as ye haue herde. And whan the childeren herde that the kynge was not in the contrey, thei seide thei wolde the londe and the contrey for her oncle, and also the pray that the saisnes ledden, and that thei wolde kepe the londe and it deffende tiƚƚ here oncle were come home. And whan the peple of the contrey herde hem speke thus, thei asked of hem what thei were that so wolde deffende the londe *of kynge Arthur, as thei seiden; and thei lete hem be knowen what thei were. And whan the peple knewe what the childeren weren thei hadde grete ioye, for by hem thei trowed that the kynge Arthur sholde be lorde of aƚƚ the reame of logres, and the love of the fadres he sholde haue thourgħ the childeren that ther were come, wiťh thise v cosins, and wiťh other that were ryche mennes sones, as Castelleins and vauasours of the londe, that after were of grete prowesse in the house of kynge Arthur, and of soche as were moste preysed. And as soone as the childeren saugħ the grete damage, theire hertis begonne to ryse, and cried, "as armes, gentiƚƚ squyers, for now shaƚƚ it be sene how is goode and hardy and worthy to bere armes, for we be in oure heritages, and ther-fore we sholde deffende oure rigħt a-gein these mysbelevynge peple, that thus this londe robbed and wasted."

Hastely ronne these squyers to armes, and lepen to horse, and hem renged and distreyned, as the knygħtes hem taughten, whereof were xxiiij that were noble men and rigħt gode knygħtes and trewe. And whan the peple of the contre saugħ that thei hadde socoure, ther com to hem more than v^{C} what on horse and on fote. And than thei yede to-geder as starlynges, and mette firste the cariage and the vitaile that the saisnes ledden towarde the hoste, and were moo than iij^{Ml} witħ the cariage. And, as the storye seitħ, it was passed mydday and was rigħt hote weder. And the duste a-rose so thikke that scantly a man mygħt se fro hym-self the caste of a stone. And as soone as that the childeren saugħ theire enmyes, thei lete theire horse renne, and overthrew and slowgħ alle that thei ateyned, that ther ne ascaped oon ne other. That day Gawein slowgħ many a sarazin of the saxou*ns* more than eny of his felowes, so that he was aƚƚ blody, bothe he and his horse. And he heilde an axe in his honde, and he was so creweƚƚ and fiers that whom he a-raugħt a fuƚƚ stroke neded hym no salue. And his other bretheren dide also rigħt wele, so that noon of hem ne durste a-bide of hem a stroke, And Galashyn was aƚƚ day witħ Gawein, that merveilously dide wele, for ther mygħt noon endure his strokes that he ne smote of arme, or legge, or heede, or other membre ; but, a-bove alle othir, it was merveile to se the martire that Gawein made, for a-gein his strokys ne mygħt not endure Iren ne style, ne no mannys body, were he neuer so mygħty ne stronge. And so the childeren smyten vp and down a-boute hem that of iij^{Ml} that ledde the pray towarde the hoste, ne ascaped not xxx^{ti}. And x of hem that ascaped returned vn-to her chiuachie, that were comynge after with vij^{Ml}, but thei were not wele armed, for thei hadde made it to be trussed for the grete hete that hem greved. And whan the x that fledden com in-to the hoste the[i] cryed that aƚƚ was deed that were lefte witħ the cariage. Whan thei herde that aƚƚ was loste, thei ronne to theire armes alle they that eny hadden,* and hem armed in the beste wise that thei mygħt. And the thirde

The squires run to arms, and leap on horseback.

Five hundred of the people of the country come to them.

They meet the carriage and victuals of the Saxons,

and overthrow and slay all the men.

Gawein kills more Saxons than any of his fellows.

His brethren do right well.

None could endure Gawein's strokes.

Only thirty escape out of the three thousand.

When the host hear that all is lost, they run to their arms.

*[Fol. 66*b*.]

part of hem ne myġħt not come to theire armoure, for theire squyers were gon be-fore wiħ the cariage that the childeren hadde wonne, and let it be ledde to logres, and lete it be condited by men of the same contrey, that the were dwellynge and weren fallen in-to theire company; and after thei pursude the saisnes that fledden in to the tyme that thei were fallen in amonge the rerewarde. Ther than was fierce bataile and stronge stour*e*, and harde and creweƚƚ, that merveile it was to haue seyn. Ther Gawein slowe the kynge noas, of Iselonde, for he smote hym wiħ an axe wiħ bothe hond*is*, that he cleft hym to the briste bon. And Galashyn smote so the kynge Sarnagut wiħ a swerde trenchaunt that he made his heede fle in-to the feilde. And Agrauayn, that was plonged in-to the presse, smote on bothe sides hym a-boute, and began yeve so grete strokes that sore thei hym douted. And Gaheries hadde chased Gynebande the lengħ of a bowe draught from his felowes, for that he hadde smyte down his[1] brother Gaheret wiħ a spere, but he hadde noon other harm; and, therfore, wende weƚƚ Gaheries he hadde be slayn; and, therfore, he pursude vpon hym wiħ swerde drawen, as fiercely as a wilde boor.

The children pursue the Saxons, and there is fierce battle.

Gawein slays king Noas of Iceland,

Galashyn smites off king Sarnagut's head.

Agravayn smites on both sides of him.

Gaheries chases Gynebande.

Whan Guynebans saugħ Gaheries so fiercely come, he turned to fliġħt, for he ne durste not a-bide for the grete merveilouse occision that he hadde seyn hym do; and, wiħoute faile, he was of merveilouse prowesse, for, as the story rehersith, it failed but litiƚƚ that he was even like of bounte to Gawein his brother, whan he com to his riġħt age and was knyġħt. And whan Gaheries saugħ the sarazin thus fleynge, he swore be god that he sholde neuer cesse ne leve hym, for playn ne wode, tiƚƚ he were a-venged of his brother deħ. And so he hym chased as faste as his horse myġħt hym bere tiƚƚ he hadde lefte his felowes be-hynde the space of an arblaste. And so he hym overtoke amonge the meyne of Guynebans, that com redy to fiġħt, and gladde were they of the pray that thei hadde so ledde.

When Guynebans sees Gaheries coming, he turns to fly.

Gaheries chases him.

---

[1] The word "his" is repeated in the MS.

Whan̄ Gaheries hadde overtake Guynebans, he stroke hym so sore vpon̄ the helme that he kutte a-wey a quarter that he made hym to stope, and the swerde swarued be-twene the shelde and the nekke, and kyutte the gyge of the shelde witħ aƚƚ the arme so that he dide it falle in-to the felde. And whan̄ this kynge saugħ hym-self so dismembred he fiƚƚ in swowne; and than̄ Gaheries was gladde of the ve*n*gau*n*ce of his brother, and turned his horse hede. But the saisnes that this stroke hadde sein̄ ne concented not to lete hym passe; and than̄ theī hem renged by hundredes and by thowsandes, and closed hym̄ in̄ on alle partyes, and smote vpon̄ hym witħ theire speres at ones, and ouer-threwe hym and his horse. And whan̄ the tymbir of theire speres were broken̄, he lepe vp-on̄ his feet vigerousely, as he that hadde I-nougħ of bretħ; and mygħt that ther was noon̄ so hardy that durste put to hys honde hym to take, and launched at hym̄ fro fer speres and swerdes *and knyves, that theī made hym falle on his knees two tymes or thre; but so mygħt he not longe endure but that he sholde haue be take or deed. Than̄ a squyer that saugħ hym chase so the hethyn̄ kynge, com̄ cryinge and betynge his hondes to-geder, and rendinge his heer to Gawein̄, that hadde remounted Gaheret vpon̄ a-nother horse, that hadde smeten̄ down̄ the kynge Sernage fro. Than̄ the squyer cried, "Ha, Gawein̄! where-a-boute arte thow? for thow hast loste thy brother Gaheries but thow hym socour*e* delyuerly; for he chased a saisne that he hatħ ouertake in this derke valey, and hatħ hym smetyn̄ down̄; but the sarasins haue be-sette hym on̄ alle partyes, and haue hym̄ ouerthrowen̄, and slayn̄ his horse, and made hym falle vpon̄ his kne I wote not how often̄; and yef ye hym thus lese it is grete doel and grete damage." Whan̄ Gawein̄ vndirstode hym that made soche doel for his brother, he seide, "Ha! seinte Marie Virgin̄ and moder of J*es*hu criste, ne suffre not that I lese my brother, for than̄ myn̄ herte shaƚƚ neuer be gladde; and yef I hym thus lese, shaƚƚ ther neuer shelde hange a-boute my nekke." Than̄ he asked of the squyer whiche wey it was. And he shewde hym the valey be the wode side. And he cryed to his felowes witħ higħ voys, "Now shaƚƚ it be sein̄ who that shaƚƚ me sewe."

When Gaheries overtakes Guynebans, he strikes him so sore

that he swoons.

The Saxons close Gaheries in on all sides, and overthrow him and his horse.

*[Fol. 67*a*.]

A squire comes crying to Gawein, who has remounted Gaharet.

The squire tells of the danger of Gaheries.

When Gawein understands, he prays that he may not lose his brother.

Galashyn asks where he is going in such haste.

They find Gaheries without his hat of steel.

Gawein springs in among his enemies,

and lays about him with such strokes that none can abide them.

They turn to flight.

When Gaheries sees Gawein he leaps upon his feet.

Agravayn brings him a horse.

Gaheries is right glad.

The Saxons arm themselves throughout the country.

*[Fol. 67*b*.]

"Feire cosin," quod Galashyn, "whider wiƚƚ ye go in so grete haste, shaƚƚ noon a-bide from yow, and therfore set forth̄ smartly, for I drede lest we tarye to longe?" Than the childeren hem renged and priked as fast as quarelles of arblast, and perced the presse with̄ his gode horse and heilde an axe in bothe handes, wherewith he made soche martire and soche slaughter, that thei fly from hym on alle partyes; and it lasted the space of a myle a-boute of the peple that thei hadde leide to grounde, and thei sough̄t vp and down tiƚƚ thei founde Gaheries, that was lyggynge at erthe vp-righ̄t, and thei hadde pulled of his hatte of stieƚƚ and his coyf of mayle for to smyte of his heed, but thei though̄t to haue take hym quyk, and lede hym to Bernage, the kynge of Saxon. Than thei ƚƚillen vpon hym at ones, and wolde bynde his hondes be-hynde hys bakke. Than com Gawein prikinge gripynge a spere, and sprange in a-monge hem so fuƚƚ of ire and maltelent for that he sawgh̄ his brother so vileinliche a-raide, that ny he yede oute of witte, and than he leide a-boute hym so grym strokes and rude that noon durste hym a-bide, but disparbled a-brode fro hym as from a wode lyon in rage. Whan that thei that heilde his brother saugh̄ the merveile that he dide, thei ne durste not abide ne holde his brother no lenger, but yef thei wolde haue receyved the deth̄, but turned to fligh̄t and made hym wey. Whan Gaheries saugh̄ his brother Gawein, he lepte vpon his feet, and sette on his heed his hatte delyuerly, and hente a-gein his swerde, and appareilede hym to diffende. And Agrauayn hym brough̄t an horse, and seide, "Brother, now lepe vp ligh̄tly, for grete foly haue ye do to go so fer oute of oure company, for fuƚƚ nygh̄ hadde ye more lost than wonne." Whan Gaheries saugh̄ hym-self hooƚƚ and sounde, and that he was a-gein I-horsed and delyuered, he was righ̄t gladde. Than the bretheren drough̄ hem to-geder to relied her peple; and the saisnes blewe hornes and trumpes, and armed hem and assembled hem thourgh̄ aƚƚ the contrey, and ordeyned theire batailes. But now cesseth̄ *a-while to speke of thise childeren and of the saisnes, and speke of the men of the contrey that ledde the pray that the childeren hadde conquered, and the cariage to the Cite of logres.

Here seith the storye that fuƚƚ gladde were the peple of the contrey of the wynnynge that the childeren hadde geten, and wente ioyfuƚƚ and mery wiťh the vitaile, for thei were but two scottissħ myle fro the town, and therfore thei peyned hem faste to come to the Cite saf, for weƚƚ thei knewe that the saisnes were to moche peple to fighť a-geyn the childeren and her feliship; and therfore thei douted that the pray sholde be rescued, and take a-gein be strengťh; and therfor thei hasted to come tymely to saf garde. And whan thei that kepte the Cite saugħ come the riche pray, thei asked how it was geten. And thei tolde how Gawein, the kynges sone loot, and his bretheren, and Galashin, the kynges sone ventreȝ, that is cosin to Gawein, be come to helpe the kynge Arthur, and haue lefte theire londes and theire contrey, and sey thei wiƚƚ neuer faile the kynge Arthur while that the[i] be lyvinge, "for thei be come wiťh xxvij felowes, and mette wiťh thre thousande forayoures that this pray ledden, and foughten wiťh hem tiƚƚ thei haue hem alle slayn and discounfited, and sesed vs wiťh the pray to brynge to this Citee saf; and, therfore, open the yates and receyve it in; and after we shuƚƚ returne hem for to socour*e*, for grete pite it were yef thei were deed or taken in so tendre age, for thei ben of higħ valour*e* and grete worthynesse."

The people of the country are glad of the success of the children.

When the people of the city see the prize, they ask how it was got.

They open the gates to receive it.

Whan the Cetezeins vndirstode these wordes of the childeren that were come in soche manere, a-noon thei opened the gates and receyved hem in-to the Citee; and after thei seiden that a parte of hem sholde go helpe the childeren. Thanne thei lete blowe an horn in the maister tour*e*, and than ronne to armes thourgħ the town. A-noon they were armed wiťh grete spede, and Issed oute at the maister gate. And than a-bode the Castelein of Cardoeƚƚ, that was a noble man and a trewe. And whan he was come, he fonde oute of the town vij^{Ml}, and than he seide, "Sirs, it were no wisdom to leve the town vn-garnysshed of peple, for we knowe not what shaƚƚ falle ne what peple we shaƚƚ mete." And than þei ansuerde that he seide weƚƚ, ne thei wolde not go but soche as he wolde haue. Than he toke oute v^{Ml}, and two thousande he lefte for to kepe the town, that it were not supprised

The citizens propose to help the children.

The Castelein of Cardoell says they must not leave the town without people.

He takes out five thousand men, and two thousand to keep the town.

They ride forth.

Madelans and Guynehan divide their men into two parties.

*[Fol. 68*a*.]

Guynehan is mighty and strong.

He smites Gawein,

who gives him such a stroke with his axe that he smites the horse's back asunder.

The people press to the rescue, and kill Gawein's horse.

The Saxons try to remount Gynehans and to take Gawein.

Than thei rode forħ and renged close that wey where as the childeren fouġten fuƚƚ sore, ffor the saisnes were mo than vij^{Ml} in a flote. And as soone as thei hem sauġ, thei ne douted nothinge so smaƚƚ a peple that were so ynge. And ther was of hem but xxiiij knyġtes, and v^{C} squyers, and xx^{ti} that were not yet a-dubbed, and CCC men what on horsebak, and of fote-men of peple of the contrei that were falle to hem, and seide thei wolde rather be deed than thei wolde forsake her companye. But Madelans and Guynehan hadde departed her men in two partyes, and eche was iiij^{Ml}, for alle the saisnes *were assembled to hem two. Than com Guynehan first with a grete spere, for he was myġty and stronge, and moche oute of mesure, and ther-to riġt hardy; and ran vpon hem so fiercely as he hymself alone aƚƚ wolde haue confounded. And Gawein, that was be-fore his felowes, and heilde an ax trenchaunt, and com a-gein hym fiercely. And Guynehan, that com formest, ran a-gein hym, and smote Gawein so harde wiħ his spere that it fley aƚƚ to peces, for the haubreke was so stronge of dubble maile, and the squyer so fuƚƚ of prowesse, that he ne meved not for the stroke, but yaf Gynehans soche a stroke with his ax vpon the helme that he bente ouer his horse croupe; and the stroke of the ax glenched, and smote the horse bakke a-sonder, that thei fiƚƚ to grounde bothe vpon oon heepe. Whan the saisnes sauġ that stroke, thei shodered a-boute hym, for thei wende that the kynge Guynehan hadde ben deed; and than thei pressed faste to the rescowe. And Gawein smote a-monge hem, and thei smote hym with theire speres and slow his horse vnder hym. And he lepte liġtly vpon his feet, and yaf so grete strokes that noon durste hym aproche. Than com the socours on bothe sides, and ther be-gan the bataile a-bowte Gawein feƚƚ and longe lastinge, for the saisnes coueyted to remounte Gynehans and for to take Gawein; and his felowes so hym defended that it was merveile for to be-holden.

Whan Gawein sauġ that thei desired so hym to take and holde, he griped hys axe and com to a saisne that hadde made Agrauayn to stoupe in his sadiƚƚ, and moche he hym payned for to smyten of the heed. And whan Gawein sauġ this he wax ny wode for ire. Than he threste thourgħ the presse to that saisne, and for to yeve hym a gret stroke he reysed his ax; and the saisne saugħ he mygħt not voyde the stroke, and caste his shelde ther a-geins. And Gawein hym hitte so harde that he slytte the shelde in two partyes. And the stroke descended on the lifte shulder so grete that he slyt hym to the girdiƚƚ, and than he fiƚƚ to grounde. Than Gawein sesed the stede and lepte in-to the sadiƚƚ, and than he cryed to his felowes, "Now shewe youre hardynesse, that these Sarazins not vs ascape, and that nother wode ne playn hem shaƚƚ warante, for ye shaƚƚ se my strokes and my prowesse double." Than he smote the stede, and rode in a-monge hem, and made of hem soche martire that thei lay vpon hepes in the feilde, as hey in a medowe; but for aƚƚ that the saisnes haue horsed Guynehans. And whan he was remounted a-monge the saisnes, he hente a stronge spere and a rude, and com to Agrauayn, that hadde his nevewe slayn be-fore hys iyen. And he hitte Agrauayn witħ his spere so sore that it preced two folde thurgħ his haubreke, and therto he shof ther-on so harde that Agravayn fiƚƚ to the erthe bothe he and his horse on an hepe.

Gawein thrusts his way through the press,

fells a Saxon to the ground, and seizes his steed.

He rides in among the Saxons and slays them. They horse Guynehans,

who hits Agravayn with a spear and fells him to the earth.

Whan Gaheries and Galashin saugħ Agrauayn falle, thei hadde grete drede that he were slayn; and Galashin come formest and smote Guynehans witħ his swerde *vpon the helme, that he made hym enclyne on his sadiƚƚ bowe; and Gaheries smote hym witħ his swerde vpon the arme, that it fly in-to the feilde; and Gaheriet smote hym be-twene the nekke and the shulders as he was stopynge, that he made the heed fle in-to the playn, and Galashin with his fote spurned his body to grounde, and laugħt the steede, and ledde it to Agravayn that sore hym deffended on fote. And whan Agravayn hadde the horse, he lepte vp as soone as he mygħt, and than be-gan the meddelynge amonge hem fuƚƚ creweƚƚ and feƚƚ; but of Gawein knewe thei no tidynges, for he was so depe in a-monge the saisnes that it was no ligħt thynge hym for to fynde. Whan the saisnes sawgħ the kynge Gynehans deed, thei were so a-masid that thei wiste not what to do, but turned to fligħt vpon the

Galashyn smites Guynehans on the helm.

*[Fol. 68*b*.]

Gaheries smites him on the arm, and Gaheriet strikes off his head.

Galeshyn spurns the body to the ground. Agravayn leaps on the horse.

When the Saxons see that king Guynehans is dead, they do not know what to do, but fly to king Madelen.

Gawein cannot hear of his brethren, but at length sees them.

Madalen has great plenty of people, 6,000, and would have taken Gawein,

had not succour come from Logres.

Gawein's men refresh their horse, and the Saxons charge them anew.

The succour comes out of Logres.

A fresh battle begins, and the blood runs like streams down the valley.

bataile of kynge Madelen̄ that was theire chief lorde, and there recouered thei̅ that fledde; and Gawein̄, that hadde gon̄ here and there, that nothynge cowde here of his bretheryn̄, and wiste not whether thei̅ were discounfited or noon̄, he hovid stille tiƚƚ he saugħ his felowes comynge, and whan̄ that he knewe it were thei̅, he was gladde; and thei̅ renged hem aboute Gawein̄, for of hym thei̅ hadde be in grete feere. And Madalen̄ rode wiħ grete plente of peple, and were vj^{Ml}, and it ne mygħt not longe endure but that Gawein̄ sholde haue ben̄ loste, where-of it hadde ben̄ grete damage and harme to aƚƚ the londe of logres, but as the socour*e* com̄ oute of the Citee, and were v^{Ml} men̄ of armes. Whan̄ the childeren̄ saugħ the socour that com̄ oute of logres, and the baner that doo of Cardoeƚƚ brougħt, The men̄ of contrey that were wiħ the childeren̄ badde hem be of gode counforte, for "loo! heere comeħ the Citee of logres yow for to helpe and to socour*e*." Whan̄ the childeren̄ vndirstode that thei̅ of logres were come hem for to helpe thei̅ were gladde and ioyfuƚƚ. Than̄ thei̅ refresshed theire horse, and girde hem newe agein̄, and lepten̄ vp, and hem renged, and after rode streyte and close, and the saisnes com̄ hem ageins fuƚƚ Irouse and creweƚƚ for the deħ of Guynehans. Than̄ thei̅ braste theire speres in theire counterynge vpon̄ sheldes and helmes, and be-gan̄ a bataile fuƚƚ feƚƚ and merveillouse, whiche mygħt not be wiħ-oute grete losse on̄ bothe partyes. Than̄ com̄ in̄ a-monge hem the soco*ur* that com̄ oute of logres as faste as theire horse mygħt renne, and ther sholde ye haue herde grete crasinge of speres, and than̄ thei̅ drowgħ oute swerdes, and be-gonne ther a stronge bataile and mortaƚƚ, ffor ther was shedde so moche blode that it ran̄ like stremes doun̄ the valey.

The battle endures all day.

Gawein does marvels in arms.

He meets king Madelen, who had overthrown Doo, of Cardoell,

Fuƚƚ grete was the stour and the medle in the playnes be-fore logres of the childeren̄ and the socoure that com̄ oute of logres, and of the saisnes, and dured aƚƚ the day tiƚƚ it was nygħt. Ther dide Gawein̄ soche merveiles in̄ armes that wondirfully was he be-holden̄ of hem of logres, for he smote down̄ men̄ and horse, and slow so many, that noon̄ ne durste hym no stroke a-bide. Than̄ fiƚƚ it that he mette wiħ the kynge Madelen̄, that hadde ouerthrowe Doo of Cardoeƚƚ, that was the captein̄ of logres, and heilde hym be the helme at the erthe, and peyned sore hys heede of to smyten; and ther-wiħ com Gawein, *but ther tho was grete stoure and hidouse, for that oon part bisied for the rescew, and the tother hym for to sle or wiħ-holde; but the kynge ther myght thei not take, for he hadde so grete plente of peple; and ther-wiħ Gawein smote so grete strokes a-monge hem that he made hem alle to disseuer, and it fiƚƚ so that Madalen com in his wey, and he smote hym so wiħ bothe hondes wiħ his axe vpon the helme that he slitte hym to the brayn, and he feƚƚ ded to the erthe.

*[Fol. 69a.]

and smites him so that he slits him to the brain.

Whan the saisnes saugħ the kynge Madalen deed, thei were so mased that they turned to fligħt, oon here and a-nother there, and toke the wey to Valdesbires ther the sege lay. Than a-roos the duste and the powder so grete that vn-nethe oon mygħt knowe a-nother, ne noon ne a-bode his felowe; but there were many ouerthrowen in that chase, for as soone as Doo was remounted he hem chased vigerously, but the childeren were euer to foren, that made soche martirdom vpon the saisnes, that fyve myle lay the wey fuƚƚ of hem that were wounded and caste to grounde, and thourgħ the helpe of god and of hem that come oute of the Citee, thei slougħ of hem so many that of xij^{Ml} ne ascaped not iij^{Ml} that ne were deed or wounded, and thus were the saisnes discounfited, and the chase endured tiƚƚ nygħt. Than thei turned gladde and ioyfuƚƚ to the Citee, where as thei founde merveilouse richesse that thei hadde rescued fro the saisnes of that thei hadde robbed and piled thourgħ the londe and the contrey, whiche was aƚƚ ledde in-to the Cite of logres.

When the Saxons see king Madalen dead they turn to flight and take their way to Valdesbires.

When Doo is remounted, he chases them vigorously.

For five miles the way is full of Saxons wounded and cast to the ground.

They return glad and joyful to the city.

Whan the childeren were alle come to logres, the Citee made of hem grete ioye whan thei hem knewe. Than thei brougħt be-fore theym aƚƚ the riche prise that thei hadde geten, and seide vnto Gewein, that thei heilde for the chief lorde, that he sholde it departe at his voluntee; and he ansuerde that he wolde ther-of medle in no manere be-fore Doo of Cardoel, "for," he seide, "he can it beter departe and yeve than can I, ffor he knoweħ beste the pore and the suffretouse, and ther-fore do his volunte."

The people of the city of Logres make great joy of the children, and bring the prize to Gawein for him to divide as he wills, but he leaves it to Doo, of Cardoel.

The citizens praise Gawein much.

Whan the Citezins herde Gawein thus speke, thei hym comended and preysed moche, and seide he mygħt not faile to be a worthy man; and thei hym loved hertely a-bove alle thynge, and preised the grete gentilnesse that thei hym founden.

The children sojourn at Logres.

Thus restede the childeren and soiournede in the Citee of logres, that the saisnes ne dide hem no forfete. But now cessetħ the story of the childeren at this tyme that ne speketħ a gret while,

The story returns to king Arthur.

and ret*ur*netħ to kynge Arthur and kynge ban and kynge boors, and her companye, that be gon in-to the reame of Tamelide for to serue the kynge leodogan.

CHAPTER XIV.

EXPEDITION OF ARTHUR, BAN, AND BOORS TO SUCCOUR LEODOGAN AT TAMELIDE.

The kings Arthur, Ban, and Boors come to Tarsaide, and after to Tamelide.

Rigħt here, seitħ the frenscħ booke, that whan the kynge Arthur was departed fro Bredigan, he and the kynge Ban of benoyk, and the kynge Boors of Gannes, his brother, that thei rode so her iournes tiłł thei com to Tarsaide, and after to Tamelide, where as the kynge leodogan soiourned vpon the Pasche

Merlin rides with them on a great steed.

euen; and whan thei entred into the Citee, Merlin rode witħ hym vpon a grete stede as he that wolde not hym leven in no manere.

*[Fol. 69*b*.]

They find king Leodogan greatly afraid, because king Rion had entered his land, and lodged at Narblaise.

*Than thei com to the paleise, and fonde the kynge leodogan gretly affraied, ffor the kynge Ryon was entred his londe vpon hym witħ xv kynges crowned, and hadde hym discounfited and dryven oute of the feilde; and thei were loigged at a seige be-fore a Citee cleped Nablaise, that was a grete town and a riche, and plentevouse of alle goodes. Of this thynge was the kynge leodogan gretly a-baisshed and dismayed, ffor his enmyes hadde brougħt

King Leodogan does not know how to defend himself.

vpon hym soche a grete puyssaunce of peple, and he ne kowde no counseile how he mygħt his londe deffende agein the kynge Ryon, ffor he hadde not peple in his reame sufficient to a-reyse hem fro the sege, ne to chase hem oute of his reame, and so ther-of he counseilled witħ his knygħtes that were witħ hym be-lefte, and asked of hem counseile and her advys.

While he takes counsel of his knights, king Arthur and his company enter the palace.

In the while that kynge leodogan toke thus his counseile of his knyghtes, entred in the kynge Arthur and his companye in-to the Paleise, and com be-fore the kynge leodogan, holdynge eche othir be the honde, two and two to-geder; and the storye seith that with Arthur were xl, and hym-self and Merlin made xlij, and thei weren alle right wele clothed and richely arrayed, and alle yonge bacheleres at pryme barbe, excepte the two kynges that yede be-fore, that somdell were in age, and thei were feire knyghtes and semely, and thei were be-holden of grete and smale of alle that were ther-Inne, ffor thei were of freissh aray and riche atire; and whan thei com be-fore the kynge leodogan, a-noon he a-roos and yede hem a-geins, for hym semed thei weren high men and of grete astate. Than spake the kynge ban first, and salued the kynge leodogan as soone as he myght, and the kynge seide thei were welcome yef thei come for goode. "Certes, sir," seide he, "for noon euell ne be we not entred in-to youre reame, but we be come to serue yow, with this condicion, that ye desire not to knowe oure names in to the tyme that we lete yow wyte of oure voluntee, and but it plese yow in this maner, we com*m*aunde yow to god, that he yow deffende from all euell and disese, ffor we shulde fynde I-nowe that vs will resceyve in soche forme as we yow demaunde, but we haue herde sey that ye with-holde alle the sowdioures that to yow will come. Now sey vs youre pleysier."

King Leodogan rises to meet them.

King Ban speaks to him,

and tells him that they desire to help him on condition that he does not ask who they are.

Leodogan says he will advise with his counsel.

Than ansuerde the kynge leodogan that he wolde a-vise hym by his counseile, and besekynge hem ther-with not to be displesed, and thei ansuerde agein to be at his leiser. Than cleped the kynge leodogan the knyghtes of the rounde table, and asked how hem semed of that the knyghtes hym demaunded, and what was her counseile; and thei ansuerde that to with-holde hem myght he haue no damage, ffor thei semede to be of grete wordynesse, "and resceyve hem in godd*es* name, and pray hem as soone as thei may to sey what thei be, and to make hem to be knowen." Than departed the *kynge fro the counseile, and com in-to the halle where the barou*n*s hym a-biden, and than he seide to hem, "Feire lordynges, me merveileth gretly of that ye haue

The knights of the round table advise him to receive them in God's name.

*[Fol. 70*a*.]

The king returns to the hall and addresses them.

He tells them that he marvels they do not tell him who they are, but as they seem to be worthy men he will welcome them.

He prays that as soon as they may, they will tell him who they are.

King Ban promises that they will tell their names as soon as time requires.

me requered, that ye wiƚƚ not that noon knowe what ye be, ne what be youre names, and of soche thynge herde I neuer speke, but by youre semblaunte ye seme alle worthi men, and therfore I wiƚƚ in no wise with-sey that ye requere, and be ye riħt welcome, and I yow wiħ-holde as my lordes and felowes in soche forme that ye shuƚƚ me ensure to helpe me feithfully and trewly while that ye be in my companye; but thus moche I wiƚƚ yow hertely prayen, that as soone as ye godely mayen, ye wiƚƚ lete me wite what ye be; and I shaƚƚ telle yow wherfore, for ye may be soche that I sholde haue shame that I haue yow not serued as ye ouħt for to be, ffor par-a-uenture ye be of higher astate than am I." And thei ansuerde that he ne sholde to hem do nothyng*e* but thei wolde it gladly take in gre; and the kynge Ban hym graunted for to telle her names as soone as tyme requered, and than thei made theire suerte to the kynge leodogan hym trewely for to serue.

They go into the town to get lodging.

Merlin leads them to the house of a vavasour,

whose name is Blaires, and his wife Leonell.

They sojourn in the town eight days, and do nothing but eat and drink and make merry.

King Leodogan summons his people,

Than thei departed from the kynge, and wente in-to the town for to take the beste loiggynge that thei myħt knowe; and Merlin hem ledde to the house of a vauasour, that was riħt a gode man and a yonge bacheler, and the herberowe was riħt godely and esy, and the wif was right a noble woman and a feire, and goode to god and to the worlde. The lorde of the house was a worthy man and of gode livynge, and his name was blaires and his wif leoneƚƚ; and whan thei com be-fore the place, blaires lepe oute hem a-geins, and seide thei were welcome, and thei hym thankeden. A-noon thei lighten and yede vp in-to the halle that was riħt feire and welle seyn, and the yomen diħt her horses weƚƚ at ese. Thus thei soiourned in the town viij dayes fuƚƚ, and nothinge dide but ete and dranke and made hem mery, and wente to the courte euen and morowe whan thei wolden; and the kynge leodogan hem serued and wurshiped in aƚƚ that he myħt, and yet he wiƚƚ more whan he knoweħ what thei be, he wiƚƚ not holde his trauayle nothinge loste; and more-ouer the kynge leodogan somowned his peple thourgħ-oute his reame, alle tho that armes myħt bere, that at the ascencion thei sholde be at Toraise redy armed hem-self to deffende in bataile a-gein theire enmyes;

and alle tho that ne wolde not come, he lete hem weƚƚ wite that thei sholde haue as streyte Justice as longed to theuis and traytoures; and also the kynge leodogan sente after hys frendes and sowdiours ouer aƚƚ where he myght hem gete for golde or siluer, and ther com so grete plente of oon and other, that thei were assembled on the ascencion euen in the medowes vndir Toraise, and loigged in teyntes and pavilouns, xl$^{\text{Ml}}$, what on horse bakke and on fote, witħ-oute hem that were in the town, where-of ther were vj$^{\text{Ml}}$; but the story seitħ that in tho dayes fyve hundred *was cleped a thousande. In the tyme that kynge leodogan hadde somowned so his peple, it be-fiƚƚ on a tewisday, at euen, in the entreynge of May, That the kynge Ryolent and the kynge Phariouns, of Irelonde, and the kynge Senygres, and the kynge Serans, were departed fro the hoste witħ xv$^{\text{Ml}}$ men of armes, and ran thourgħ the contrey for vitaile, whereof thei hadde grete nede; and it be-fiƚƚ that thei com wastynge the contrey toward Torayse, where the kynge leodogan of Tamelide soiourned, and a-bode his peple that he hadde sente after. Than herde the kynge the noyse of hem that gadered to-geder the pray, and robbed the londe and the contrey a-boute Torayse, and thei of the town hem perceyved, and than thei closed the yates, and the knyghtes that were withynne at soiourne ronne to theire armes and lepe to theire horse, and assembled hem to-geder witħ-ynne the yates. Than were alle the knygħtes of the rounde table armed, and the gouernaunce of hem hadde hervy the Riveƚƚ and males ly bruns, and thei were two hundred and fifty that alle were noble gode knygħtes and trewe, and were so worthi in armes, that vndir sonne men mygħt fynde noon better: these were alle in a wynge by hem-self, for thei wolde not be medled a-monge noon other; and on the tother side the knyghtes and the people of the Citee arayed hem, and thei were iiij$^{\text{Ml}}$, and of these hadde the stiward the gouernaunce hem to lede, that was cleped Cleodalis. This cleodalis was wonte to bere the chief baner of the kynge, but euer after that the knyghtes of the rounde table were come, hervy the Riveƚƚ it bar; but he bar a smal ganfanon of two smale losenges of goules, and the feelde of golde and crownes of ynde; and the grete baner that

and lets those who will not come know that they shall have rigid justice.

He sends after his friends and soldiers.

Forty thousand assemble.

*[Fol. 70b.]

Five hundred is called a thousand.

King Ryolent, king Pharion, king Senygres, and king Serans run through the land and waste it.

They come to Torayse.

The people of the town close the gates.

The knights run to their arms.

Hervy the Rivell and Males ly Bruns have the governance of the knights of the round table.

The people of the city are four thousand.

They are led by Cleodalis.

Hervy the Rivell bears the chief banner.

They range themselves before the ports and wait the command of the king, who rides to the banner that Hervy bears.

hervy bar was of iiij losenges fuƚƚ of crownes of golde. Whan̄ thei̅ were weƚƚ armed, thei̅ renged hem be-fore the portes, and a-bode the comaundement of the kynge; and whan̄ the kynge was armed, he lepe on̄ a grete stede of greet bounte, and rode to the baner that hervy bar, and ther he hoved stille tiƚƚ thei̅ saugħ come the sarazins, and were mo than̄ vij^{Ml} on̄ horsebak.

Arthur and his company are richly horsed. Merlin bears the banner,

And on̄ the tothir side was Arthur weƚƚ armed, an his companye, and thei̅ were alle richely horsed. And Merlin̄ bar that day the baner, and he comaunded hem alle, that as dere as thei̅ heilden̄ her owen̄ bodies, that thei̅ sholde sue that ban*er* aƚƚ that day in̄ what place that it yede; and thei̅ seide alle that thei̅ so wolden̄. Than̄ thei̅ set fortħ her wey thourgħ the town̄, so frescħ and richely armed that no peple mygħt be better, and thei̅ were xlj, witħ-oute Merlin̄ that bar the baner, soche oon̄ that for a grete merveile was be-holden̄ of oon̄ and other that day, for he bar a dragon̄ that was not rigħt grete, and the taile was a fadome and an half of lengthe tortue, and he hadde a wide throte that the tounge semed braulinge euer, and it semed sparkles of[1] fier that sprongen̄ vp in-to the heire out of his throte.

a dragon with a twisted tail, open-mouthed, vomiting sparks of fire.

The giants and Sarazins *[Fol. 71*a*.] smite their spears upon the gates of the town, and gather together the beasts out of the meadows.

With that com̄ Geauntes, and the Sarazins, and smote theire speres vpon̄ the yates of the town̄, and after *turned down̄ the medowes, for thei̅ fonde no man̄ that yaf hem ansuere, and gadered to-geder all the prayes of bestes that were in̄ the medowes. And Merlin̄ eschuwed alle that were in the stretes of the town̄, and rode thourgħ hem euen̄ to the yates witħ his meyne, and seide than̄ to the porter, "Lete oute, for it is tyme;" and the porter seide thei̅ sholde not oute of the yates tiƚƚ the kynge hadde comaunded. "What," seide Merlin̄, "makeste thow daunger of that I haue as grete power as thow?" Than Merlin̄ caugħt the flayle of the yate and plukked it to hym and yede oute as ligħtly as it hadde not haue ben̄ lokked, and than̄ departed oute mag[r]e how it grucchid. Whan̄ these xlij felowes weren̄ oute of the town̄, than̄ the gate was as close as it hadde neuer be*n* opened at that tyme, and of that merveile blissid the kynge ban̄ and the kynge boors his brother, and alle the tother. And Merlin̄ priked faste his horse tiƚƚ he ouer-toke a grete company of sarazins that were two

Merlin asks the porter to let him out, but he will not.

Merlin opens the gate and rides out with his forty-one companions.

The gate closes after him.

Merlin overtakes a great company of the Sarazins, thousande or mo, that ledde grete plente of beestes, and Merlin) frusht a-monge hem witħ his banere, and his companye witħ hym, and leyde on) sore strokes, and in her metynge ouer-threw alle that thei) countred, and in lesse than) an hour thei) hadde hem so slayn) and chased, that thei toke the pray and ledde it to the yates of [illegible] wn); but thei) hadde gon) but a-while whan thei) saugħ iiij [illegible] com) with xv thousande men) of armes, that ledde so grete cariage of robbery that thei) hadde piled thourgħ the contrey, and were towarde the see. Whan) Merlin) hem saugħ, he seide to his felowes, "Suwetħ me," and thei) so diden); and it fiƚƚ so that a-noon), as Merlin) hadde caste a charme, ther*e* rose soche a wynde and storme so grete, that the powder and the duste a-rose witħ the wynde, and smote in the visages of the Geauntes and sarazins, that oon) mygħt not rigħt wele knowe a-nother.

---

[1] The word "of" is repeated in the MS.

and in an hour slays them, and takes the prey and leads it to the gate of the town.

They see four kings with 15,000 men coming,

Merlin casts a charm, and a great wind and storm rises.

And a-noon) as the xlij felowes were in) a-monge hem), thei) slowe and ou*er*threwe so many that it was wonder to thinke; and than) comaunded the kynge leodogan) to open) the yates, Than) Issed oute first the stiwarde Cleodales formeste witħ iiij^{Ml} men) of armes, and fonde the yate close where as thei) yssed oute, that fougħten) agein) xv^{Ml} men) so harde that it was merveile. Than) com) Cleodalis witħ his banere, and smote in) a-monge the presse rigħt hidously; ther sholde ye haue herde grete brekinge of speres, and grete noyse of swerdes vpon) helmes and vpon) sheldes, that the sownde was herde in-to the Citee clerly; ther was grete defoulinge of men) and horse; but ther*e* the xlij felowes shewed merveiles witħ her bodies.

His forty-one companions slay the Sarazins.

Cleodalis issues forth with 4,000 men,

and smites in among the press.

Whan) these iiij kynges saugħ that these were a-monge hem medelinge, thei) departed her peple in) tweyne, and lefte viij^{Ml} figħting stille; and vij^{Ml} rode a-gein) the banere of kynge leodogan) that thei) saugħ come oute of the town), and the ton) rode a-gein) the tother fuƚƚ fercely; and whan) thei) neighed nygħ, thei) lowed ther speres, and *yaf to-geder so grete strokes vpon) sheldes, that thei) perced haubrekes, and dismailed, and many ther were throwen) to grounde sore bledynge witħ stroke of speres, and many ther were that passed thourgħ with-oute fallinge. Whan) the speres were broken), thei) leide honde to swerdes, and be-gonne the bataile grete

7,000 of the Sarazins ride against the banner of king Leodogan.

*[Fol. 71*b*.]

The 250 knights of the round table do wonders against the 7,000.

When King Riolent and king Placiens see how they withstand the great power against them, they swear that none of them shall escape.

King Leodogan is thrown from his horse and his enemies lead him to prison.

The knights of the round table are heavy and wroth for the loss of the king, and swear vengeance for it.

Gonnore has great sorrow when she sees her father led away by his enemies.

and merveilouse; but ther sholde ye haue seyn the knygħtes of the rounde table do wondres, and thei were but CC and fifty, and thei that were figħtinge witħ hem were vij^{Ml}, and so were the knyghtes of the rounde table at gret myschief, for thei be-hoved to disparble, whethir thei wolde or noon, and voyde the place; but thei heilde hem to-geder so close and streite, that noon myght hem perce ne entyr in amonge hem. Whan the kynge Riolent and the kynge placiens saugħ that so litiƚƚ a peple witħstode so grete a power as thei were, thei hadde ther-of grete merveile and grete dispyte; than thei cried theire ensigne, and swore that neuer oon of hem sholde ascape. Than thei yaf hem a grete shoure and a felonouse, for at that shofte thei ouerthrewe mo than xl, and moche thei hem peyned hem to diffoule and to maymen, but her felowes were vpon hem arrestynge, and hem deffended from theire enmyes witħ her swerdes witħ aƚƚ theire mygħt; and than it fiƚƚ that the kynge leodogan was throwen fro*m* his horse fuƚƚ lothly, and thei toke*n* hym witħ strengtħe and ledde hym toward prison, witħ moo than v^{C}, in-to the hoste of kynge Rion of Irlonde, and thei hym ledde fuƚƚ fiercely, for thei wende wele that alle her*e* werre hadde be fynysshed. And so thei ledde the kynge leodogan in aƚƚ the haste that thei mygħt, and whan the kynge leodogan saugħ hym so mysfallen, and that his enmyes hadde hym taken, he sowowned often tymes and made grete sorowe; and thei that hym ledden spedden hem so faste that thei were fro the town two myle. Fuƚƚ grete was the noyse of the vij^{Ml} and the CC l. knyght*es* of the rounde table that were fuƚƚ hevy and wrotħ for the kynge that thei hadde loste, and than seide a-monge hem and assured to-geder setħ it was com ther-to, and that thei saugħ aƚƚ sholde be loste, than thei wolde avenge her shame and detħ as longe as they mygħt lyven. Than thei sette her bakkes eche to other, and hem deffended merveilously, and [made] soche slaughter of men and horse a-boute hem witħ-oute remevynge oute of place, and so moche peyne and traueile thei suffred, that thei that were at the wyndowes of the palise that saugħ the merveile wepte for pite; and Gonnore, the dougħter of kynge leodogan, whan she saugħ her fader ledde a-monge his enmyes, she made so gret sorowe that nygħ she slowe hir-self for doeƚƚ. But now lete vs cesse to speke of hem tiƚƚ tyme cometħ a-gein, and speke of the kynge Arthur and his felowes, how that thei haue spedde in the bataile a-gein the viij thousande witħ the stiwarde Cleodalis of Tamelide.

Now let us speak of Arthur.

*Now, seith the storie, that stronge and creweƚƚ was the stour ther as the bateile was, where as the xlij felowes and the iiij^{Ml} that were w*ith* Cleodalis, the stiwarde, that foughten a-gein viij^{Ml} Sarazins; and many ther were slayn that lay grennynge on the grounde. And whan thei hadde longe tyme fougħt to-geder, Merlin rode a grete walop̄ oute of the bataile, and cried to his felowes that thei sholde sue hym, and thei so dide in grete haste, and rode as faste as the horse mygħt hem bere, tiƚƚ that thei were passed aƚƚ their*e* peple, and than thei encresed her pas gretter, and rode towarde the siege the rigħt wey ther as the Geauntes and the sarazins were, tiƚƚ that thei come in a valey that was rigħt depe, and ther thei ouer-toke the v C sarasins that ledde the kynge leodogan; and as soone as Merlin hym saugħ, he cried, "Now lordinges, vpon hem, for ye be by-trayed and deed yef eny of hem ascape." Than thei drive in a-monge hem as tempest of thunder, and kilde and slougħ aƚƚ that thei raugħt a rigħt stroke in her comynge, and ther ne was noon of the xlj but he slowe or maymed whom that he mette. Ther sholde ye haue seyn soche martirdom, and soche slaughter of men and of horse, that noon ne mygħt ascape, so were thei supprised and a-stonyed, saf oonly fyve that ascaped, fleinge thei rought neuer what wey. Thus haue thei rescowed the kynge leodogan; and whan the kynge saugħ the grete martire and the occision that so fewe peple hadde don a-gein so many, he merveyled gretly what thei mygħt be; than he be-heilde and knewe it was the dragon that Merlyn bar. Than knewe he wele that it were the sowdiours that he hadde witħ-holden, and than he thanked god of the socour*e* that he hadde hym sente. Than com Merlin to hym, and than he rested; whan saugħ the kynge leodogan bounden he alight, and so dide Breteƚƚ, and hym vn-bounden, and rigħt his armoure, and sethen made hym to lepe on a steede that was stronge and swyfht; and the

*[Fol. 72*a*.]

There is sore battle where the forty-two fellows are.

Merlin rides out of the battle and cries to his fellows to follow him.

They overtake the five hundred Sarazins that led king Leodogan.

The fellows kill all that they strike.

Five of the Sarazins only escape.

Leodogan thanks God for the succour.

Merlin and Bretell unbind him and set him on a steed.

They ride to help the knights of the round table.

The dragon that Merlin bears casts out great flames of fire.

Gonnore springs for joy when she sees that her father is rescued.

*[Fol. 72*b*.]

There is great slaughter of men and horse.

King Ban gives great strokes with his sword Corchense.

King Arthur does great marvels with Calibourne.

kynge hem thonkeden hertely of the servise thei hadde hym don. Than cried Merlin, "Gentiƚƚ knyghtes, what tarye ye heere so longe? suweħ me!" Than he rode a grete raundon towarde the town, where the knyghtes of the rounde table were at gret myschief, that of CC l. ne were but xx^{ti} on horsebak, but deffended hem on fote as wilde bores; and Merlin bar the baner be-fore, and rode as faste as he myght, and his felowes also, that theire horses swetten; and the dragon that Merlin bar caste oute gret flames of fiere, that it sparkeled vp in the ayre, that thei vpon the walles of the town saugħ the clernesse of the light half a myle longe. Whan thei of Citee saugħ the kynge that was her lorde, and saugħ it were the xlij felowes, and wiħ hem the kynge leodogan that thei hadde rescued, thei hadde grete ioye; and whan Gonnore this saugħ, she spronge for ioye, and merveiled what the knyghtes were that com in that company; and thei com as faste as thunder so harde a-monge her enmyes, and in her comynge eċħ *threwe oone to grounde; and as soone as the xlij felowes were smyten in a-monge hem, ther be-gan a grete bataile, and soche slaughter of men and horse, that the maiden that was leny*n*ge oute at the wyndowes of the paleise herde the grete strokes. Ther yaf the kynge ban, of Benoyk, many strokes wiħ corchense, his gode swerde, ffor whom he a-rafte a fuƚƚ stroke, ther waranted hym neither shelde, ne haubreke, ne noon armure, that he kutte aƚƚ thourgħ-oute at oon stroke, and many sithes he smote bothe horse and man to grounde at a stroke, and so dide hys brother, the kynge Boors, of gannes. And the sarazins hem be-heilde for grete merveile that thei saugħ hem do; and the kynge Arthur dide soche merveiles wiħ Calibourne, his gode swerde, ffor ther a-gein myghħ noon armure endure, were it neuer so stronge, ffor what he a-raughħ was at his endynge for euer.

King Ban meets king Clarion,

Grete was the bataile be-fore the town of Toraise ther as the CC l. knyghtes of the rounde table and the xlij felowes [foughten] agein the sarazins; but thei haue so foughte*n* that of vij^{Ml} beħ lefte but v^{Ml}, wherfore thei beħ sory and wroħ for the kynge Canlent that thei haue loste; and than fiƚƚ it so that the kynge ban mette wiħ kynge Clarion, that was the moste man of the hoste of alle the Geauntes; and the storye seiħ that the kynge ban was a moche knyght of body, and a stronge and coragous and hardy. The kynge heilde corche*n*se, his gode suerde, and smote the kynge Clarion so sore vpon the helme that he slit it dowon to the eere, the stroke fiƚƚ vpon the lifte shulder, that he slitte hym to the girdeƚƚ; and the kynge Boors so smote Sarmedon, the ganfanoner, that he kutte of the arme wiħ aƚƚ the sheilde, and the baner fiƚƚ to the erthe. This stroke saugħ the kynge leodogan, and seide, "Now be there no knyghtes but these that so weƚƚ conne helpe at nede." And whan the Geauntes saugħ theire lorde deed, and her baner fallen, thei turned to flight, oon here another there; and than com oute of the town knyghtes and sergeauntes two thousande, and be-gonne the chase vpon hem that turned to flight; but Merlin turned not that wey as thei fledde, but wente to the bataile ther as Cleodalis faugħt fercely wiħ iiij^{Ml} men a-gein viij^{Ml}. Whan Merlin com to the bataile, he fonde Cleodalis was on fote fiġħtinge, and heilde yet the baner vp riġħt, and his men a-boute hym renged, that weƚƚ hym deffended as worthy men; but thei were at grete myscheif, and in poynte to haue hadde grete losse in short tyme, whan Merlin com drivinge amonge hem wiħ his dragon and his xlj felowes, of whiche ye haue herde that in her comy*n*ge ferde as tempeste, and ther-to thei were alle so weƚƚ horsed that no men myġħt be better, and the kynge leodogan was euer wiħ hem that in no wise wolde hem leten; and whan these xlij felowes were in a-monge the Geaunt*es* ther was soche marteleise and soche noise as so many Carpenteres in a wode. Ther was stronge stour and feƚƚ and dolerouse, for ther sholde ye haue sein knyġħt*es* and s*er*ge*au*nt*es* *falle as thikke as it hadde be reyn: ther sholde ye se stedes and horse renne maisterles, their reynes trailynge vndir fote, wher-of the sadeles were aƚƚ blody of knyghtes that ther-ynne hadde be slayn: ther sholde ye haue herde soche bruyt and soche noyse and cry that it was merveile and grete doeƚƚ to here. Ther dide the xlij felowes so weƚƚ that it was spoken of longe tyme after her deħ in that contrey; and the storye seith thei mangled and slow so many, that by the traces oon myght have sued half a day

and slits him down to the girdle.

The giants turn to fly.

Two thousand men come out of the town to chase them.

Merlin finds Cleodalis on footfighting.

The marvellous doings of the forty-two fellows.

*[Fol. 73*a*.]

euery wey of the deed bodies and horse that thei hadde wounded, as thei that nougħt ne cessed ne rested; and therfore me semetħ reson to reherse the names of tho worthi men.

The names of the forty-two fellows.

The first was kynge Ban of benoyk, and the seconde was kynge Boors of Gannes, and the thirde was kynge Arthur, and the forthe was Antor, the v^{e} was Vlfin, the vj^{e} Breteƚƚ, the vij^{e} was kay, the viij lucas the botiller, the ix^{e} was Gifflet, the x^{e} maret de la roche, the xj drias de la forest sauage, the xij belias de amerous of maydons casteƚƚ, the xiij^{e} flaundryns le bret, the xiiij ladynas de benoyk, the xv amoret le brun, the xvj Anticolas le rous, the xvij blois del casset, the xviij blioberis, the xix Canade, the xx Meliadus le bloys, the xxj Aladan the crespes, the xxij Placidas ly gays, the xxiij leonpadys of the playn, the xxiiij Ierohas lenches, the xxv *Christ*ofer de la roche byse, the xxvj Ayglin de vans, the xxvij Calogreuaunt, the xxviij Aguysale de desirouse, the xxix Agresianx, the nevew of the wise lady of the foreste with-oute returne, the xxx Chalis the orphenyn, the xxxj Grires de lambal, the xxxij kehedin de belly, the xxxiij Meranges de porlenges, the xxxiiij Gosnayns cadrus, the xxxv Clarias of Gaule, the xxxvj the lays hardy, the xxxvij Anmadius the proude, the xxxvij Osenayn cors hardy xxxix Galescowde, xl Gales, the xlj bleoris the sone of kynge Boors, the xlij was Merlin, and the xliij was the kynge leodogan that in no wise wolde hem leve.

The forty-third was king Leodogan.

The knights go to the rescue of Cleodalis, who is a noble knight.

These xliij worthi knyghtes wente to the rescew of Cleodalis, the stiwarde of Tamelide, that was a noble knygħt, and rigħt trewe, and fuƚƚ of grete hardynesse, and weƚƚ it shewde that for noon vnkyndenesse that the kynge leodogan hadde don a-gein hym he wolde hym not forsake, ne leve hym in his myscheif in no nede that he was in, but therynne he dide moche more than many other wolde haue don, and I shaƚƚ sey yow the cause why. This was the trowetħ, that the kynge leodogan hadde a wif, a lady of grete bewte and of higħ lynage, and whan he hadde brougħt here in-to Tamelide out of her fader londe, after that he hadde her wedded, this lady brougħt witħ hire a mayden that was of grete bewte. This maiden loved the stiward so moche that on a day he asked hir of the kynge

King Leodogan's wife brought with her to Tamelide a maiden of greatbeauty, leodogan for to haue her to his wif, that many a day hadde hym serued, and the kynge hym graunted for his gode servise; and whan thei were maried and she satte at the table a-monge other ladyes, and she was richely arayed, the kynge liked moche hir bewte, and soche a fantasie fill *in his herte that he cowde not it remeve, and he hym covered in the beste maner that he cowde, and she was with-oute faile oon of the feirest of the worlde; till it fill on a feste of seint Iohn that the kynge sente Cleodalis vpon a iourney a-gein the saisnes that vpon hym werred that tyme, and the lady that was lefte with the quene for companye, that moche her lovid with grete love; hit fill on a nyght that the kynge leodogan lay by the quene, and that nyght vpon hir he begat a doughter, that was cleped Gonnore whan she was baptised, the whiche after was of merveilouse bewte and the wif of kynge Arthur; and this lady that was wif to kynge leodogan was a goode lady and holy of livinge, and hadde an vsage to a-rise on nyghtes and go to chirche to sey matyns and to heere all seruyse to messe. That nyght that the quene hadde conceyved Gonnore her doughter, she yede to matyns, and com by the stiwardes wif, and fonde her slepynge and wolde not her a-wake, but wente and lefte her lyinge a-slepe, and wente forth a-lone to the cherche, that was faste by, with hir sawter in her hande; and the kynge, that longe had desired to speke with that lady, a-rose as soone as the quene was gon, and dide oute the taperes that were brennynge, and than wente to ly by the stiward*es* wif, and whan the lady felte oon lyinge by her, she asked what he was, all affraied; and than he ansuerde how it was he, and bad hir be stille, and seide yef she made eny noyse she sholde be deed. The lady her deffended I-nowgh as with speche, but she durste not crye ne make no noyse; but litill a-vailed her defense, for the kynge by hir lay, and on hir he gat a doughter the same nyght that he hadde geten Gonnore on his wife. And whan the quene was delyuered ther was founde vpon the childes reynes a litill crosse like a crowne for a kynge; and as soone as the quene was delyuered, the stiwardes wif be-gan to traueyle, and hadde a doughter of feire bewte, and was so like the quenes doughter,

who married Cleodalis.

*[Fol. 73*b*.]

The king fell in love with her,

and sent Cleodalis on a journey.

The queen went to matins one night,

and when she had gone the king went to lie by the steward's wife.

The queen and the steward's wife were each delivered of a daughter, who were both named Gonnere.

Thekingshut thesteward's wife in a castle.

Yet the steward still served the king.

that oon cowde not knowe oon from a-nother but by the crosse vpon her reynes, and eche of hem hiħt Gonnere in bapteme, and were norrisshed and brouħt vp to-geder tiƚƚ that the quene was deed; and the kynge yet was not keled of the love of the stiwardes wif, and he her toke and shet her in a Casteƚƚ, for he wolde not the stiwarde sholde speke wiħ hir. In soche maner he heilde her more than v yere, tiƚƚ that the stiwardes frendes spake vn-to hym, and he seide he wolde not faile the kynge while he hadde werre, and yet the same tyme that kynge Arthur com for to serue, he hir heilde in the selue maner, and yet for aƚƚ this the stiwarde neuer feyned to serue. But now lete vs retourne to speke of the stiwarde ther he is fiħtynge on fote amonge the Gyauntes, for aƚƚ be tyme we shuƚƚ speke of the twey Gonnores whan the mater falliħ ther-to.

*[Fol. 74a.]

The forty-two fellows come to assistCleodalis.

Many a great stroke is given.

Sonygrenx andSorfrains assemble their people.

Kay fells Sonygrenxto the ground.

Lucas and Gifflet kill the other two.

The Saxons dress to relieve the king Sony-

Now, seiħ the storye, that grete was the bataile, and mortaƚƚ, ther as the stiward *Cleodalis was on fote a-monge the Geauntes and the saisnes, and as soone as the xlij fellowes were entred a-monge hem, thei disparbelid the renges harde; ther myght ye se oon falle deed after a-nothir as thikke as haile, and many a stede renne thourgħ the feilde at the rescewe of the stiwarde, for ther was many a grete stroke yoven that made many a gentiƚƚ lady to wepe for her bretheren and for her childeren, but magre hirs thei were driven bakke. Whan Sonygrenx and Sorfrains saugħ the damage and the grete occision that so litiƚƚ a peple dide, thei toke it in grete dispite. Than thei blewe theire trumpes and theire tymberes to assemble theire peple, and Sonygrenx restreyned his peple a-boute hym, and as he hadde hem assembled a-boute hym, kay the stiwarde, and lucas the boteller, and Gifflet, hem renged, and smyten in a-monge hem, and eche of hem griped a stronge spere, and kay smote sonygrenx so that he fiƚƚ from his horse that he lay a starke while wiħ-oute sterynge of hande or foote, and lucas and Gefflet smote down othir towe deed. Whan the saisnes saugħ Sonygrenx at erthe, thei shoff to the rescewe, and the xlij felowes sterten a-boute hym wiħ swerdes drawen, and the saisnes pressed to releve the kynge Sonygrenx, but the xlij felowes hem deffended so that thei myghħt hym not nyegħ, and so was he foule troden̄ vndir horse feete er he myghħt be remounted, ffor the grete presse of saisnes were ther assembled. And Merlin̄ that bar the baner com to socoure the thre felowes that I haue named, that righħt soone elles myght haue hadde damage. Here assembled agein̄ aƚƚ the turnement, and Cleodalis was horsed vpon a grey steede, and he yet heilde the kynges baner stille. Than̄ he cryde his ensigne fierscely and rode in-to the presse, he and his men̄, as faste as the horse myghħt renne; and ther was than̄ merveilouse stour and harde, for than̄ ther sholde ye see many a knyghħt ly ded vnder the horse feet; but the saisnes were so many that they myghħt not be perced lighħtly thourgħ, but stode stiffly a-gein̄ the crysten̄. Than̄ fiƚƚ it so that the vij^{Ml} that were discounfited be-fore Torayse fiƚƚ to the peple of Sonygrenx and Sorfrain̄, and ther a-bode alle tho that fledden̄ so thikke that thei̇ putte the cristen bakke more than̄ the draughħt of an arblast; but the xlij felowes ne remeved neuer a foote londe fro the place, and ther Sonygrenx was vn-horsed, but witħ grete peyne was Sonygrenx remounted, that foule and dispitously was diffouled vnder horse feet, and than̄ was the stour renewed, for sore he hym peyned to a-venge the shame that he hadde resceyved, and ran vpon̄ the cristen̄, he and his men̄, and smote hem sore witħ swerdes and speres, and enclosed hem rounde a-boute. Than̄ Merlin̄ smote in-to the presse vigerously witħ the baner in̄ his honde, and the knyghtes of the rounde table, that were remounted and newe araide, com̄ to that medle a softe pase streite and clos, and whan̄ thei̇ saugħ be-fore hem the signe of the dragon̄ that Merlin̄ bar, thei̇ dressed that wey, for wele hadde thei̇ ther-by be *socoured ther thei̇ were in̄ grete a-venture of detħ.

grenx, who is trodden under the horses' feet.

Cleodalis is horsed upon a grey steed.

The Saxons stand stiffly against the Christians.

Sonygrenx is remounted.

Merlin smites into the press with the banner in his hand.

*[Fol. 74*b*.]

When̄ the knyghħtes of the rounde table approched the bataile thei̇ spro*n*gen̄ in̄ a-monge hem̄ so felly, that thei̇ bare down̄ aƚƚ that thei̇ mette in̄ her comynge, and whan̄ the speres were broken̄ thei̇ drougħ oute theire swerdes and be-gonne the stour aƚƚ newe fresshly and fuƚƚ fiercely; and on̄ the tother side faughħt Cleodalis and his men fuƚƚ strongely, but for power that thei̇ hadde thei̇ myghħt holde no grounde, ffor the kynge fforfrain̄

The knights of the round table bear down all that they meet.

Cleodalis and his men fight bravely.

King Forfrain leads them to the town.

The people of Cleodalis keep their ground,

ledde hem felonously towarde the towñ, and fro the towñ coñ hem to helpe two thousande of hem that hadde chased theyñ that fledde; and whañ theī saugħ the baner of stiwarde, and the gret peple that hem suwed, theī turned that wey, and sette so fiercely vpoñ hem, that moo thañ a thousande theī leid to the erthe iñ her comynge; and tho a-bode the peple of Cleodalis, and kepte her grounde, and be-gonne a-geiñ the stour so grete, that half a myle of meñ mygħt heere the noyse; and so theī heilde grete while the toñ ageiñ the tother, and that was a-geiñ the kynge Sofariñ that hadde moo thañ viij^{Ml}, a-geiñ Cleodalis that hadde ner vj^{Ml}, and thañ theī heilde hem weƚƚ peringaƚƚ.

The knights of the round table fight right sore.

Merlin speaks to Ban and the other fellows.

He spurs his horse to where the five knights are fighting against the ten giants.

Ban smites Sonygrenx,

so that he turns to flight.

And oñ the tother side faugħt the knyghtes of the rounde table rigħt sore, and the xlij felowes, a-geiñ Sonygrenx and his meñ that were vj^{Ml}, and so theī were at grete myscheif, for theī were but CCC saf viij, and the sarazins were moo thañ iiij^{Ml}; and thañ Merliñ cleped the kynge Bañ, and seide to alle the tother, "Sirs, wher-after a-byde ye that ye ne put hem to disconfiture?" and theī ansuerde, "How?" "Sirs, I shaƚƚ telle yow," quod Merliñ; "ther be but v Geauntes in the place that aƚƚ this sustene, and yef ye may delyuer of hem thre, the place a-nooñ shalbe voyde." "Wher be theī, sir?" seide the kynge Bañ. "Trewly," quod Merliñ, "Vlfiñ and Breteƚƚ and Gifflet and kay and lucas the boteller be witħ hem medelinge, and therfore folowe after me, for a-nooñ shuƚƚ we se who shaƚƚ do beste of this companye." Thañ smote Merliñ the horse witħ the spores that swyftly hym bar, and smote iñ-to the medle that was right grete of fyve knyghtes a-geiñ x Geaunt*es* grete and stronge out of mesure; and the kynge Bañ, that was an huge knygħt and an hardy and a stronge, com formest of alle, and fiƚƚ hym wele that he mette first witħ the kynge Sonygrenx, and the kynge Bañ gript his swerde, that was aƚƚ be-soyled witħ blode and brayñ, and hitte Sonygrenx oñ the helme of stele, and iñ the swarvinge, the stroke, that was grete, descended be-twene the shelde, and kutte a-sonder the gyge witħ aƚƚ the honde that it fly iñ-to the feilde; and whañ Sonygrenx saugħ hym so araide, a-nooñ he turned to flygħt, and caste a grete brayt and an orible, and wente makinge grete sorowe. And the kynge Arthur hitte Margaleyuaunt thourgħ the helme euen down to the tetħ; and the kynge Boors smote so Seleuaunt that he slitte a quarter of his helme, the swerde glenched vpon the lifte shulder and smote it clene a-sonder, and he *fiƚƚ to grou*n*de; and Vlfin smote so balan that he fiƚƚ to grounde aƚƚ blody, and Breteƚƚ smote also down Cordaunt, and kay dandevart, and lucas smote Malet, and Gifflet mynadap, and merangis slow Saduc, and Gosenaym slow doulas; and as soone as the saisnes saugħ these down, thei were so dismayed, that of a grete space thei meved not, and seide to hem-self that grete foly it were to figħt witħ hem lenger but yef he wolde be slayn, ffor thei seide, "these be no peple like other men, but it[1] be fendes of helle, for a-gein her strokes may noon armoure endure."

Arthur smites Margaleyvaunt through the helm down to the teeth. Boors smites down Selevaunt. *[Fol. 75*a*.] Ulfin smites Balan. Bretell smites Cordaunt. Kay smites Dandevart. Lucas smites Malet. The Saxons are dismayed at their loss.

Whan the knygħtes of the rounde table and the xlij felowes saugħ the saisnes that thei were so a-baisshed, thei hem slowen and mangeled, and yaf hem a fressch a-sawte as faste as the horse mygħt hem bere, tiƚƚ that thei were smeten in-to the medle that kynge Sorfarins faugħt a-gein Cleodalis the stiwarde, and this rode in a-monge them so fiercely, that thei made hem alle to remeve oute of the place; ne neuer thei stynte tiƚƚ they come be-fore the yates of Toraise. Thus were thei of the town gretly affraide whan thei saugħ not the baner of kynge leodogan, and therfore thei supposed he was other taken or deed, and also thei ne saugħ not the dragon that the Sowdiours bar, and that hem fered gretly, ffor now thei wende wele that aƚƚ hadde be loste, for thei saugħ hir enmyes be-fore the town, and grete drede thei hadde lest that thei hadde hem discounfited; but thei mygħt not, for thei were at grete myschef, for thei were but vij^{Ml} and the saisnes were viij^{Ml}, and on the tother side thei were so affraide for the knyghtes of the rounde table, and for the xlij felowes of whom thei herde no tydinges; and these fledde tiƚƚ thei come be-fore the yate; ther thei stynte be-fore the brigge and hem renge, and these other come vpon hem that rigħt straytly

When the knights of the round table and the forty-two fellows see that the Saxons are abashed, they assault them afresh, and drive them to the gates of Toraise.

The people of the town are greatly afraid when they cannot see the banner of Leodogan.

---

[1] The words "but it" are repeated in the MS.

hem required, here was than̄ a merveilouse stour and[1] mortaƚƚ, and longe it endured; and wite ye weƚƚ that a thousande ther were ouer-throwe that neuer hadde power to a-ryse.

The people of Sonygrenx are discomfited.

But as soone as the sowdiours were come, and the knyghtes of the rounde table, the peple of Sonygrenx were discounfited; but thei̇ wolde not hem enchase, for Merlin̄ hem wiħheilde, and drougħ hem a-parte in-to the feilde, and seide, "Feire lordinges, now lete hem gon̄, and besye ye not hem to enchase, ffor ther-to shaƚƚ come tyme here-aft*er*; but drawe yow a litiƚƚ a-bakke, and a-ligħt down̄ on̄ fote, and drawe to-geder yowre peple, and refresshe yowre horse, and lete hem reste, and than̄ girdeħ hem newe a-gein̄;" and thei̇ dide his counseile. And whan̄ the knyghtes of the rounde table saugħ hem a-bide, than̄ seide hervy de ryueƚƚ that he wolde go be-fore theym̄. Than̄ thei̇ a-ligħt, and araide hem rigħt wele, and hem refresshed as thei̇ that ther-to hadde grete nede. And the kynge leodogan̄ com̄ to Merlin̄, and seide, "Sir, wiƚƚ ye not that these worthy men̄ come in̄ youre companye?" "Certes," seide Merlin̄, "sir, we wiƚƚ rigħt wele, and þei be right welcome, *for we be the better that thei̇ be wiħ vs in̄ felisship." "Sir," seide the kynge, "gramercy." Than̄ yede the kynge leodogan̄ to hervy de riveƚƚ, that bar the baner, and seide, "Feire frende, come ye and youre felowes wiħ me, and ye shuƚƚ be in̄ feliship of these worthi̇ men̄, and so moche shuƚƚ ye be the more worthy." "Sir," seide hervy, "wiħ rigħt gode wiƚƚ yef it hem plese." "Certes," seide the kynge, "it hem lykeħ wele that ye be fro hens-forħ felowes and in companye to-geder." "In goddes name," quod hervy, "for the feliship of so worthi̇ men is not to be refused." Than̄ thei̇ lepe to horse, and gedered to-geder on̄ a soppe; and than̄ Merlin̄ toke firste the wey; and thei̇ alle hym folowen̄ wheder that euer he rode. And as thei rode in this wise as ye haue herde, Cleodalis, the stiwarde, faugħt wiħ vj^{Ml} men̄ a-gein̄ Soffarin̄, that hadde in̄ his companye moo than̄ x^{Ml}; but thei̇ were not weƚƚ sette in̄ rule, but schoved heir and there where as

Merlin tells the knights to refresh themselves.

*[Fol. 75b.]

Leodogan goes to Hervy de Rivell to ask him to join Merlin's followers.

Cleodalis fights against Soffarin.

---

[1] The word "and" is repeated in the MS.

thei̛ semed beste to sette here strokes. And so the peple of Cleodalis were moche greved, for thei̛ were at grete myschief, and hadde so moche suffred that nere thei̛ were turned to the fligħt; but whaǹ thei saugħ come the dragoǹ that Merliǹ bar, that caste out of his throte so grete raundoǹ of fiere in-to the aire, that was fuƚƚ of duste and powder, so that it semed aƚƚ reade. And whaǹ the ladies vpoǹ the walles this saugħ, thei̛ cryed alle witħ ooǹ voys, "Now, sir Cleodalis, haue mynde to do weƚƚ, and beholde towarde the valey, and se the socour that cometħ."

When the ladies on the wall see the dragon that Merlin bears they cry out to Cleodalis that succour is coming.

Whaǹ Cleodalis vndirstode that the ladies seideǹ, he beheilde and saugħ that he hadde somoche desired. And whaǹ the knyghtes that were witħ Cleodalis saugħ this socour, it nedetħ not to aske yef thei̛ be gladde and ioyfuƚƚ. Thaǹ Cleodalis dide renne to the saisnes, bothe he and his peple, for to lete hem vndirstonde that thei̛ hadde counfort; and be-gonne freshly vpoǹ hem as it hadde be at the comencement. And these other coǹ ridinge a softe pase tiƚƚ thei com as nygħ as the caste of a stoǹ. And thaǹ thei̛ ffrusshed iǹ so rudely that thei threwe down CCC at the firste shoffe iǹ theire comynge; and many ther were that neuer roos after. And thaǹ thei̛ plonged iǹ a-monge hem so depe, and neuer thei̛ stynted tiƚƚ thei̛ come to the baner of Cleodalis.

Cleodalis and his men run upon the Saxons.

When Merlin and his party come up they rush upon them so rudely that they throw down 300 at the first shove.

And whaǹ thei̛ were there alle assembled, thaǹ cryed Merliǹ, "Lordinges! worthy knygħtes! now let see youre cheualrye, for now be ye come to the assay." Whaǹ the kynge Arthur vndirstode the wordis of Merliǹ, he seide to kynge Boors and to kynge Baǹ, laugħinge, that neuer haddé ther be so fyǹ aǹ olde maǹ. And Merliǹ ther-witħ cried, "Lete be youre Iapes, for aƚƚ this woke more ye shuƚƚ haue leiser to laugħ and to pley." And whaǹ thei̛ herde hym sey so, thei̛ rode iǹ a-monge theire enmyes wrotħ and matelentif; ther was tho a marveilouse stour and creuweƚƚ, and encresed more and more thaǹ it hadde do aƚƚ the day be-fore. Ther dide the kynge Arthur wonderes, for as the boke *seitħ, so he labored by the entycement of Merliǹ, that aƚƚ peple hym be-heilde for the merveile. And Gonnore, the dou ħtere of kynge leodogaǹ, and the ladyes and the maydenes, heilde vp here hondes a-geiǹ heuene, and praied god to deffende

Arthur laughs at Merlin.

The fight increases.

*[Fol. 76*a*.]

Gonnore and the ladies pray God to save Arthur from death.

His great deeds with Calibourne.

No armour can endure against the strokes of the two kings. The knights of the round table ought not to be forgotten.

hym fro detħ and p*er*eile, and wepten̄ for pitee of the traueyle that theī suffred; and ther-to theī merveillede that so yonge a man̄ mygħt that endure, and namely the kynge Arthur more than̄ eny other, for he smote witħ Calibourne his gode swerde on̄ euery side; for he smote of handes, and armes, and heedes, and thyes; and he smote down̄ knygħtes, and horse, and men̄; he made sheeldes shevir fro nekkes, and helmes from hedes, that the serkeles fly a-sonder, and hadde euer goode wardeyns a-boute hym, that gretly hym helped in̄ eche nede; for fuƚƚ noble men̄ were the two kynges that ben̄ in̄ his companye, ffor a-geyns hem mygħt noon̄ armoure endure, ne presse, were it neuer so grete, but that theī it brake witħ trenchaunt swerdes; and so dide well thoo prise knygħtes in her companye, and also the knygħtes of the rounde table, that ne ougħt not to be for-yeten̄. Ffuƚƚ harde and stronge bataile was be-fore the yates of Toraise, and many feire chivalryes shewed on̄ the oo parte and on̄ the tother, and dured aƚƚ the day, and was so nygħ the walles of the town̄ that a man̄ mygħt haue caste a ston̄ a-monge hem vpon here helmes.

Sorfarin calls his kinsmen to him,

and they run in among the Christians. Sorfarin smites Hervy, Antor, and Gifflet to the ground,

and each of his fellows bears one to the ground.

Whan̄ sorfarin̄ saugħ how he hadde so moche loste of his peple, he swore by his creaunce that he wolde neuer departe thens tiƚƚ he hadde don̄ hem as grete damage. Than̄ he called Sortebran̄, and Clarion̄, and Gaidon̄, and Senebant, and malore, and ffreelent, alle these were his kynnes-men̄, and bolde knyghtes and hardy, and than̄ he seide to hem, "Now be it sene who is a knygħt." Than̄ soche ix knygħtes that were grete and huge, ran̄ in̄ a-monge the cristen̄ as fast as the horse mygħt hem bere, and Sorfarin̄ smote hervy the riveƚƚ so rudely that he fiƚƚ of his horse to grounde, and after he smote Antor that he fiƚƚ to the erthe, bothe he and his horse on̄ an̄ hepe, and after he smote Gifflet thourgħ the side that he fiƚƚ to the erthe wounded aƚƚ blody, and eche of his felowes bar oon̄ to the grounde, but ther nas noon̄ that was wounded to detħ; and of these that fellen̄ was lucas the botiller, that oon̄, and Meranges a-nother, and Gosnayns Cardus, and Grires de lambaƚƚ, and Gosnayn̄ de strangot, and the ix^{e} was Breteƚƚ, and alle these fiƚƚ by stroke of spere for defaute of horse. Than̄ a-rose a grete showte, and the duste so thikke that vnethe mygħt oon see a-nother, for the saisnes rested alle vpon hem, that gretly hem peyned he*m* for to slee; but thei were delyuer and hardy and lepten vp-on foote, and theire swerdes naked in theire hondes, and deffended hem rigħt harde, but thei were so many and so thikke, and ther-to sought vpon hem so straitely; but litiƚƚ it hem a-vailed *whan Merlin com to socour*e*, and the baner in his honde; and Sorfarin, that moche hym peyned hem to do damage, smote so the kynge leodogan thourgħ the shelde, and he bar his spere so lowe that he hurte hym in the flanke, and to grounde yede bothe the kynge and his horse, the toon vpon the tother. And when thei in the town saugħ the kynge falle, thei hadde grete drede lest he were slain, and ther-witħ thei pressed fercely to the rescue. Whan the kynge Arthur saugħ the Geaunt so Iuste that iiij so noble men hadde ouer-throwen, he swore that he wolde hym assayen. Than he rode oute of the renge, and caugħt a grete spere witħ an hede tren-chaunt, and rode a grete walop, and the kynge Ban com hym a-gein and seide, "Sir, what wiƚƚ ye do, ne Iustetħ not a-gein this grete Geaunte, for he is to stronge for yow that be so yonge and so tender to take soche and entirprise, but lete me goo that am more growen and of more strengthe than be ye." Quod Arthur, "Than God helpe neuer yef I sende eny other than my-self, for the more that he is to doute, the rather I wiƚƚ hym assaien, ffor I shaƚƚ not elles knowe my self but I assay hym at this tyme."

The dust is so thick that they cannot see one another.

*[Fol. 76*b*.]

Sorfarin smites Leodogan through the shield.

When those in the town see the king fall they have great fear.

Arthur rides out to attack Sorfarin, but Ban dissuades him from going.

And whan Merlin saugħ that he dide a-bide, he cried lowde, "What, coward, wher-fore a-bideste thow? whi doste thow not that thow haste vndirtaken, for it is sene that thow arte a-ferde." Whan Arthur vndirstode how Merlin cleped hym cowarde, he was sore a-shamed of that he hadde seide, and smote the horse witħ the spores in-to the renges. And the kynge Ban seide to Merlin that he hadde don eueƚƚ whan so yonge a man as is the kynge Arthur sholde be sente to Iuste a-gein so gret a deueƚƚ. "No force," quod Merlin, "he shaƚƚ do rigħt wele; but take a spere, and folowe after, ye and yo*ure* brother and Vlfin." And thei dide as he badde, and rode after Arthur as faste as the horse mygħt hem bere. And whan the kynge

Merlin tells Arthur he is a coward.

Arthur is ashamed, and smites his horse with his spurs.

Ban and Boors and Ulfin ride after Arthur.

Sorfarin̄ saugħ Arthur come, he com hym a-geins fuƚƚ fercely; and whan̄ thei̇̄ in the renges saugħ hym come so a-gein̄ Arthur, that was so yonge and liteƚƚ to hym, thei stynte alle, and hadde grete drede for hym. And thei̇̄ ronne witħ aƚƚ the migħt that the horse mygħt yelde, and smote to-geder witħ speres so grete strokes vpon̄ the sheldes that thei̇̄ made hem breke and perce; and the stieƚƚ of the speres stynte at the haubrekes, that were stronge and sore-holdynge. Sorfarins brake his spere but a litiƚƚ; he wounded the kynge Arthur in the lifte flanke; and Arthur smote hym a-gein̄ so sore that he perced the shelde and the haubreke that the shafte shewed thourgħ the chyne be-hynde an arme lengthe; and he shof so rudely that he bar hym̄ from̄ his horse to the erthe vp-rigħt; and he passed fortħ witħ-oute more styntynge, and the spere fly on̄ peces that no lenger myght sustene.

The encounter between Arthur and Sorfarin.

This Iustinge saugħ Gonnore, the doughter of kynge leodogan̄, that was at the window*es* in̄ the paleise that ioyned to the walles of the town̄, and she preised moche the yonge knygħt, and asked of hem that were a-boute her what he was; but thei̇̄ ne cowde not sey, *saf that he was oon̄ of the sowdiours that her fader hadde witħ-holden̄. "Trewly," seide the mayden̄, "what-so-ever he be, hym semetħ that he is come of higħ lynage; ffor no man̄ of lowe berthe durste not vndirtake no soche dedes, but yef it com̄ of higħ herte; and he and these worthi̇̄ men̄ ther haue this day don̄ many faire dedes of armes." Longe tyme heilde this mayden̄ her tale of the sowdiours. And the kynge ban̄ and the kynge Boors were in the renges, and ecħ of hem a grete spere. Than̄ thei̇̄ smote theire horse witħ the spores, and the kynge Ban̄ smote Sortebran̄, and the kynge Boors smote Clariel, and Vlfin̄ smote Iaisdon̄; and ecħ of these thre bar his felow to the erthe deed fro theire horse; and witħ the same cours oon̄ smot moras, and a-nother hitte laidon̄, and the thirde Senebant so sore, that deed thei̇̄ moste nede be er thei̇̄ mygħt oute of the feilde. And the kynge Arthur drougħ oute his swerde, and smote so malore vpon̄ the helme that was restinge vpon̄ the kynge Ban̄, ffer he and frelent were besy to smyte of his heed,

Gonnore sees the jousting and praises Arthur.

*[Fol. 77*a*.]

Ban, Boors, and Ulfin smite down their enemies.

ffor that oon heilde hym by the helme, and the tother smote hym be-twene the shulderes wiħ a grete axe. And whan Arthur saugħ this he hasted thider wiħ his swerde in his honde, and smote so harde malore that the heed fiƚƚ in-to þe felde.

Arthur smites off Malore's head.

Whan ffreelent saugħ his felowe deed, that was his cosin, he toke the axe wiħ bothe handes, and reised it for to smyte the kynge Arthur vpon the helme. And he kepte the stroke vpon his shelde, but the stroke com so harde that it fiƚƚ fro hym in-to the feilde; and the stroke descended vpon his lefte sholder so sore that he bente on his horse nekke. And Geaunt reised his axe to recouer a-nother stroke, but Arthur was ther-of ware, and smote the horse wiħ the spores and passed forħ, and than returned wiħ his swerde, and smote so ffreelent wiħ soche mygħt that he slyt hym to the teħ. And than a-roos the showte and the noyse of the saisnes, that sore were affraide of that encounter, and saugħ that thei hadde no more socoure but of Randoul, that bar here baner. And the kynge Ban smote so Randoul that the arme fiƚƚ fro the body, and the baner anoon fiƚƚ to the erthe. Than a-roos a showte and so grete noyse that alle thei tho turned to fligħt, and the chase be-gan that longe endured, for from euensonge it lasted vn-to nyght; and ther was grete occision, for of the ix^{Ml} ne lefte but iiij^{Ml}, that fledde to siege to kynge Rion, and tolde hym the losse and the damage that thei hadde resceyved, and the grete mortalite that vpon hem was turned. And whan the kynge it herde, he swor his oħ that neuer he wolde departe oute of the londe tiƚƚ that he hadde take the kynge leodogan and put hym in prison.

Freelent raises his axe against Arthur,

but Arthur slits him to the teeth.

Ban smites off Randoul's arm, so that the banner falls to the ground.

The Saxons turn to flight.

King Rion swears that he will not leave the land till he has put Leodogan in prison.

Than he sente in-to the londe of Denmarke that alle higħ barouns sholde come to hym, and brynge wiħ hem plente of vitaile for two hundred thowsande men for two yere, for he seide now he wolde encrese his werre more vigerously than ever he hadde don *be-fore. And thei com and assembled euery day that in shorte tyme were ther wiħ hym assembled CC l.^{Ml}; and at this assemble were xx^{ti} kynges crowned; and the kynge Rion hym-self was the twentithe kynge. And wiħ hem com huge carriage of vitaile out of alle parties, wher-wiħ the hoste was

He sends to Denmark for all the barons, and victual for 200,000 men.

[*Fol. 77*b*.]

The people of the city of Daneblaise send to Leodogan for succour.

stuffed, that thei rode not on forroy for no vitaile, ffor grete plente thei hadden of the londes of the xx^{ti} kynges that weren in the hoste; and ofte tymes thei assailed the Citee, that was riȝht stronge, that nothynge ne dowted, saf only for famyn. And thei sente to kynge leodogan for socour, that he sholde come hem to helpe, for sore were thei greved. But now resteħ the tale of kynge Rion, and of his seige that was grete, and of hem that were in the Citee of Daneblaise, and returne for to speke of kynge Arthur and of his companye.

The people of Toraise are joyful at the discomfiture of the Saxons.

The king Leodogan goes out to meet the soldiers,

and presents the spoil to them.

Now seiħ the booke that gladde and ioyfuƚƚ were thei of the town of Toraise for the discounfiture of the saisnes, that were chased of so smaƚƚ a peple, for thei were at the bygynnynge but vj^{Ml} and iij hundred, and the saisnes were more than xv^{Ml}, and were discounfited be the counseile of Merlin, that moche hem helped, and by the knyghtes of the rounde table, and also of the xlij sowdioures. And, as the booke seiħ, whan thei hadde chased the saisnes vnto nyght, that than thei returned to Toraise gladde and mery, and fonde the kynge in the town, that his men hadde remounted, and sette on horse. And whan he knewe that the sowdiours com, he wente hem ageins, and made of hem the grettest ioye that eny man myght, and fonde Antor and Gifflet, and kay, and lucas the botiller, and alle the other felowes hool and sounde, of whom thei hadden had grete drede that thei hadden be deed or elles taken. And ther was founde grete wynnynge; and the kynge made it to be take and presented to the sowdiours that he hadde wiħ-holden. And he seide he myght it no better employe, for thei hadde it aƚƚ wonne; "and my-self," seide the kynge leodogan, "haue thei rescued fro deħ and fro prison."

They thank him, but will not receive it.

And whan thei saugħ the grete worschip that the kynge hem dide, thei thanked hym hertely, and seide that thei wolde it not, for in tyme comynge thei resceve his yeftes and take of hym other fee. And the kynge seide, seth thei wolde it not resceyve that thei sholde it departe, and yeve ther as thei wolden. Than com Merlin to the thre kynges, and[1] bad hem take it; and then it token, and yaf it ther as Merlin hem assigned, that then ne lefte not to hem-self the valewe of a peny. And then that it hadden thanked and preised moche the sowdiours, alle tho that hem knewen, and also then knewe hem no-thynge; and that so moche were then be-loved in the contrey for her largesse be the counseile of Merlin, that nougħt was spoken of in the contrey but of the sowdiours. And the kynge Arthur yaf so moche to his Ooste and to his wif of horse, and palfreyes, and robes, *that alle thier lyves after were then riche.

---

[1] The word "and" is repeated in the MS.

The three kings divide the spoil to the people, who praise them much.

Nought is spoken of in the country but of the soldiers.

*[Fol. 78*a*.]

Whan the kynge Arthur hadde departed the richesse that was wonne of the saisnes, then entred in-to the town; and the kynge leodogan wolde not suffre hem in no wise to a-ligħt but at his paleise witħ hym, ne neuer after wolde he lete hem be oute of his companye, and witħ the knygħtes of the rounde table. And whan then were vn-armed, the kynge made his doughter to aray hem in riche robes, and made her take warme water in basyns of siluer, and bare to the thre kynges and hem serue; but Arthur wolde not take her seruyse tiƚƚ that the kynge leodogan and Merlin co*m*maunded hym and made hym to take it. And the maiden her-silf wosħ his visage and his nekke and dried it fuƚƚ softely witħ a towaile, and than after to the tother twey kynges. And the tother Gonnore, that was of the stiwardes wif, and the other maydenes, serued the other*e* knygħtes. And whan the kynges doughter hadde serued the thre kynges, than she s*er*ued hir fader; and whan then were waiscħ the maiden put on ech of hem a manteƚƚ a-boute her nekkes. And the kynge Arthur was rigħt feire; and the maiden hym be-heilde moche, and he her; and she seide softely to her-self that weƚƚ were that maiden that so feire a knygħt wolde requere hir of love, and, namely, so gode a knygħt as is this; and weƚƚ ougħt she to be shamed euer after that hym denyed.

They enter the town, and Leodogan will only suffer them to alight at his palace.

Gonnore washes Arthur's face.

The other Gonnore serves the other knights.

Arthur pleases the king's daughter.

A-noon were the tables set, and whan the mete was redy then satte alle the knyghtes ther-ynne; but the knyghtes of the rounde table seten witħ the sowdiours at table be hem-self; and the kynge Ban and the kynge Boors sette the kynge Arthur be-twene hem two, and dide hym grete honour as affiered to so

Ban and Boors do Arthur great honour.

Leodogan notices it,

and wishes that Arthur would espouse his daughter.

higħ a man̄; and ther-of toke the kynge leodogan̄ goode hede, that by hem satte side by syde at the heede of the table, and thougħt weƚƚ in̄ his corage that by the honour and the reuerence that theī to hym bar that he was lorde ouer aƚƚe, and merveiled sore what he mygħt be, and grete desire he hadde for to knowe the trowthe what he was, and thougħt in̄ his herte that "and it were pelesynge to god that he hadde my dougħter spoused, for trewly I can̄ not thynke that so higħ prowesse mygħt be shewed in̄ soche a childe, but yef he were come of rigħt higħ lynage, other elles I trowe that it be som̄ spiritueƚƚ man̄ that god hatħ me sente for to deffende this reame, nougħt for me but for Cristynte and holy cherche to mayntene;" and ther-to he seide ne yede he not oute of this town̄ witħ-oute leve of the porter.

Leodogan sits at supper in a deep study.
*[Fol. 78*b*.]

Hervy de Ryvel comes to him and tells him to be more cheerful.

At this soper the kynge leodogan̄ satte stille in̄ a grete stodye, and lasted longe, and it fiƚƚ in his mynde how that he hym rescued in the depe valay witħ the xlj felowes a-gein̄ v C knyghtes, that ledde hym to prison̄, and remembrede alle the *prowesses that he hadde sein̄ hym do, and so sadly he sat in that thougħt that alle theī were troubled, and lefte theire mete. Of this was war hervy de ryvel, and was therfore sory in his herte, and a-roos and yede to hym fuƚƚ wrotħ to the heede of the table, and seide, "Sir, I saugħ neuer yow so mys-take youre-self, ne neuer I saugħ yow so a-baisshed, ffor ye ougħt weƚƚ to make ioye to these worthi men̄; and ye thenke as that ye were in̄ a dreme, and I merveile moche of youre grete wisdome where it is be-come." Than̄ the kynge yaf a grete sigħ, and loked on̄ hervy, and seide, "Hervy, frende, I thougħt vpon̄ the moste worthī man̄ of the worlde, fro the whiche I mygħt not me witħ-drawe; and yef thow knewe what my dougħt were thow woldest not me blame." And he seide, "Sir, it may weƚƚ be so, but now at this tyme cessetħ tiƚƚ efte-sones, for this is no place now ther-to, but maketħ ioye to these barou*n*s and disporte yow, for ye haue at this tyme to moche yow mystaken̄ saue youre honour*e*." "Gramercy, feire frende," seide the kynge, "I knowe weƚƚ that I haue mysdon̄." Then̄ hervy yede, and satt down̄ by his felowes; and the kynge tho spake to the barou*n*s merily. And the maiden̄

The king says he knows he is wrong.

that was the doughter of kynge leodogan serued Arthur vpon her kne of wyne witħ hir fader cuppe. And Arthur hir be-heilde fuƚƚ debonerly, and plesed hym wele that he saugħ hir so nygħ, ffor she was the feirest lady that was in aƚƚ Breteigne in that tyme; and the mayden was fayre, and hadde on hir heede a riche chapelet of precious stones, and her visage fressh and wele colowred, so entermedled white and redde so naturally that it neded nother more ne lesse, and her shulderes streyghte and euen, and merveylously weƚƚ shapen of body, for she was sklender a-boute the flankes and the haunche lowe and comly weƚƚ sittynge, and of alle fetures the feirest shapen that myght be founde in eny londe; and yef she hadde grete bewte ther-to she hadde as moche bounte of valour, of curtesie, and nurture.

His daughter serves wine to Arthur on her knee.

She is very fair,

and well shapen.

When Arthur saugħ this mayden that hadde so grete bewte, he be-heilde her witħ a gladde chere, and saugħ her pappes smale and rounde as two smale appelis that were harde; and her flessħ whitter than snowe, and was not to fatte ne to sklender; and he coveyted her gretly in his herte, that he waxe aƚƚ pensif, and lefte his mete, and turned his chere a-nother wey, for he wolde not the two kynges ne noon other hym a-perceyved. Than the mayden profered hym the cuppe, and seide, "Sir, drynke, and displese[1] yow not, thougħ I clepe yow not be youre name, and be ye not a-baisshed at youre soper*e*, for at armes ye do not faile at no nede, and weƚƚ it shewed this day, where ye were be-holden of v^{Ml}, that nothynge yow dide knowe but by sigħt." And he turned and seide, "Feire lady, witħ goode wiƚƚ, and gramercy of youre seruyse; and god graunt me power that I may yow this guerdon yelde." "Sir," seide she, "ye haue quyte *it double more than I may deserue, ffor ye haue rescued my lorde my fader, ye and youre companye, that was a-monge so many of his enmyes that ledde hym to prison." And he satte stille witħ-oute ansuere. "And," quod the lady, "was ther moche more, for here be-fore the yates at the brigge foote ye shewed weƚƚ sembelant that it yow greued, and that ye were sory for his a-noye ther as he was vn-horsed a-monge his enmyes, and his horse

When Arthur sees her beauty,

he covets her in his heart.

The maiden proffers him the cup.

*[Fol. 79*a*.]

She praises him for his deeds of arms.

---

[1] This word is spelt "dispelse" in the MS.

vndir hym slayn, for ye slow hym that hym dide ouerthrowe, and ye youre-self were in auenture of deħ hym to rescuen, and so wele ye dide that thei were fayn to leve the feelde."

Arthur drinks and commands the maiden to rise, but her father will not let her.

Ban marvels why Leodogan has not married his daughter.

Leodogan says he has been prevented by the war,

but he wishes to find a young bachelor to whom he could marry her and leave his land after his death.

Thus spake the doughter of kynge leodogan to Arthur, but he spake no worde a-gein, but toke the cuppe and dranke wiħ goode wiƚƚ, and after comaunded the mayden to a-rise, for to longe hadde she kneled, but the kynge her fader ne wolde not. Thus were thei serued rigħ highly of alle thynges that man mygħt devise. And whan the clothes sholde be taken vp the kynge ban seide to kynge leodogan that satte nexte by hys side, "Sir," seide the kynge Ban, "I haue grete merveile of yow that be so wise and worthy a man that haue not maried youre doughter to som higħ prynce that mygħt yow helpe in youre werres, ffor she is now wele woxen and ther-to rigħt wise; and as me semeħ ye haue no mo heyres to whom youre londe shaƚƚ descende after youre deħ, and therfore ye sholde here be-fore haue her sette to some noble prynce." "Certes, sir," seide leodogan, "I haue be letted by the werre that me sore haħ greved and longe dured, ffor it is vij yere passed that the kynge Rion of Denmarke and of Irelonde ne cessed neuer vpon me to werre; ne neuer seħ com ther no man in this londe to whom I ougħt hir to yeve; but, so helpe me god, yef I mygħt fynde a yonge bacheler that were a worthi man of armes that mygħt wele endure peyne and trauayle to meyntene my werre, To hym wolde I yeve my dougħter yef he wolde her take, and aƚƚe my londe after my desesse, that neuer shaƚƚ I spare for higħ lynage ne grete richesse of lordeschip; and that it plesed oure lorde I*es*hu that it mygħt ben he that I thynke now in my mynde, and trewly than sholde she be maried wiħ-ynne these thre dayes vnto a feire yonge bacheler that is fuƚƚ of higħ prowesse, and trewly I suppose in my corage that he be of hiħer astate than am I." And Merlin be-heilde the kynge Boors and be-gan to smyle, and made hym a signe that it was seide for the kynge Arthur, and wiħ-oute faile for hym was it seide.

They talk of other things.

Than be-gonne thei to speke of many thynges, and turned her tales other weyes, for more wolde thei not speke ther-of at that tyme. That perceyvede weƚƚ the kynge leodogan that thei heilde no cure to mayntene that tale, and ther-wiħ he yaf a sore sigħ, for fayn he wolde that oon hadde hym more ther-of a-resoned; and so he heilde his pees and herkened yef he myghħt eny thynge a-perceyve in eny manere what thei were and of what londe, and saugħ the ioye and the honoure that the worthi men *made to Arthur, and that was a thynge that brougħt hym more mys-ese, and so moche the worthy men of the rounde table more than the xl felowes that were of her companye, that alle that it saugħ hadde ther-of merveile, and weren a-basshed; but a-bove aƚƚe hym coveyted the kynges doughter, and rigħt hertely she hym loved, and mused here-on so moche that she was sore troubeled, and fayn wolde she haue hym to be her lorde, and make a-bove alle tho that euer she hadde seyn be-fore; and the storyes seyn that she was the wisest lady of aƚƚe the bloy breteyne, and the feirest and the beste be-loved that euer was in the londe or in the contrey, saf only Helayn that was wiħ-outen pere, that was the doughter of kynge Pelles of lytenoys, of the Casteƚƚ of Corbenyk, that was nece to the kynge Pesceor, and of the seke kynges wounded, wher-of the name of the ton was cl[e]ped alain de lille in lytenoys. This kynge alain was seke of the woundes of the spere vengeresse, wher-of he was cleped mehaignyes, for he was wounded thourgħ bothe thyghes wiħ that spere; and his rigħt name was kynge Alain, and the kynge Pellynor was his brother germayn, and this maiden of whom I speke was theire nece and dougħter to kynge Pelles, brother to these two kynges that I haue yow named.

Leodogan sighs because they say no more at that time.

*[Fol. 79b.]

Arthur covets the king'sdaughter, and she loves him.

She is the wisest lady of all the bloy Breteyne, and most beloved, save Helayn, the daughter of Pelles, and niece of Pesceor and Alain.

This mayden was the feirest lady that euer was in eny londe; this same maiden hadde in kepynge the blissed seint Graal vn-to the tyme that Galaad was vpon here be-geten; but at this tyme cesseħ the storye of hir, but it shaƚƚ here-after be declared how that she was discesed of the seint Graal and wherfore, and how the aventures of the seynt Graal were brougħt to an; and spekeħ of the companye that be at the table at soper at Toraise in the paleise of kynge leodogan.

She is the fairest lady in the land and kept the Saint Graal.

Fuƚƚ richely were these lordes serued at soper of wyne and vitaile; and whan the tables were vp Merlin toke the

Merlin tells Arthur what has happened in Breteyne la bloy.

how the children had discomfited the Saxons,

*[Fol. 80*a*.]

and how a nephew of the Emperor Costantynnoble, with 300 squires, was coming to his service.

Arthur asks who the children are.

While Merlin tells these tidings the forty knights come about him.

thre kynges a-part, and seide, "Wiƚƚ ye that I telle yow what is be-fallen in breteynė la bloy?" "Certes," seide Arthur, "riħt moche I desire to wite, yef it yow plese." Than seide Merlin, "I do yow to wite that thei haue had stronge bataile be-fore logres in the playn a-gein the saisnes, that aƚƚ the contrey hadde robbed, and aƚƚ the maryne and the portes toward Dover; and whan thei come thourħ the feldes, thei ledde huge cariage towarde the hoste of the saisnes; and thei were moo than x^{Ml} horse-men; and as thei rode in soche maner thei mette fyve childeren that be youre neuewes;" and than he tolde hym how the childeren were comen and fro whens, and how they were departed fro theire moderes wiħ-oute witynge of theire fader, and how that thei mette the forryours, as ye haue herde be-fore, and how the bataile was grete ther, as the saisnes were disconfited, and of the grete richesse that ther was wonne, and the gret ioye *that the Citee of hem made after the bataile, and how the childeren wolde neuer be knyħtes tiƚƚ that he made hem knyghtes wiħ his owne honde; "and drede yow not," quod Merlin, "of youre londe, for thei shuƚƚ it weƚƚ deffende in-to the tyme of youre comynge. Now thinke for to do wele, and be mery and gladde, for youre helpe encresiħ euery day, ffor ther is comynge in-to youre londe the nevew of the Emp*er*our Costantynnoble, wiħ CCC squyres, that be alle sones to grete princes and hiħ lordes for to do yow seruise, and for that ye shuƚƚ hem make knyghtes." "Merlin," seide the kynge, "what be the childeren that be at logres, and what be their names?" "Sir," quod Merlin, "that oon is cleped Gawein, and the tother Agravayn, and the thirde Gaheret, and the forħ Gaheries, and these foure ben bretheren, and be youre suster sones, the wif of kynge loot; and the tother is cleped Galashin, the sone of kynge ventre of Garlot, and also of thi suster; and the nevew of the Emperour is cleped Segamour*e*, the whiche shaƚƚ be a knyħt of merveilouse prowesse; and for hym ther cometħ many other that shulle alle be youre frendes and do yow servise in euery nede." And while Merlin tolde these tidynges com the xl knyħtes of her companye and stoden a-boute hym, and whan thei herde the tale of Merlin thei made grete ioye and thanked god; and than departed the knyghtes of ther ynne, and yede to theire ostelles, and yede to bedde, and rested hem tiƚƚ on the morowe, and soiourned in the town riȝħt longe, that nothynge elles thei diden but ete and drinke, and encreced her peple that assembled euery day; but now cesseth the tale to speke of the kynge leodogan and of the sowdiours that be in ioye for the tidynges that Merlin hadde hem tolde, and returneth for to speke of the kynge Tradylyuant of North Walys.

The knights rest, and sojourn in the town.

CHAPTER XV.

EXPLOITS OF THE REBEL KINGS AGAINST THE SAXONS.

Whan the kynge Tradilyuant was come in-to North Walys to his chief Citee, and hadde somowned to-geder his peple, that he hadde x^{Ml}, and he kepte his londe and his contrey the beste wise that he myght; and on an euen com a spie, that com fro the roche of the saisnes, and seide ther com x^{Ml} saisnes with grete cariage of vitaile, that were entred his londe and wente the streight wey to the grete Oste. And whan the kynge that vndirstode, he asked how fer thei myght be; and he seide thei myght be wele be-twene the roche and Arundeƚƚ. Than comaunded the kynge his peple to arme hem hastely, and lepe to horse at the first Cok crowinge, and issed oute of the town alle armed; and whan thei were oute in the feilde thei were weƚƚ x^{Ml}, and rode forth cloos, and renged a softe paas tiƚƚ thei com in-to the hoste of the saisnes; and than dep*ar*ted her peple in tweyne, of which Polydamas condited the ton, that was nevew to the kynge, and was a yonge knyght of grete hardynesse. And as sone as thei were departed the firste parte yede towarde Arundeƚƚ, that the kynge Arthur lete garnyssh er he departed *oute of the contrey, whan Polydomas was departed from his vncle he and his peple, and were nygh the tentes, thei rode in as faste as the horse myght renne. That tyme the saisnes made eueƚƚ waich, for thei were nothinge war tiƚƚ these were euein a-monge hem; ther

Tradilyvant comes to North Wales and summons his people.

A spy tells him that 10,000 Saxons have entered his land and are near Arundell.

The king and 10,000 of his men take the field.

Polydamas leads one party.

*[Fol. 80*b*.]

He surprises the Saxons and slays many of them.

were many mangled and slayn of the saisnes, for thei fonde hem vn-armed and slepinge, for thei were wery of traveyle, and therfore was a-monge hem grete occision, for on twey partes were thei a-baisshed, and thei hadde no leiser to take their armour, but turned to fligħt on horse and on foote towarde the roche and in the forestes that were nygħ; and these other hem slowgħ and martered aƚƚ that thei mygħt reche, so that thei hadde slayn er thei mygħt come to the Casteƚƚ of the roche more than xv^{Ml}. And whan the knyghtes of Carnyle saugħ the grete disconfiture as thei were a-risinge, and saugħ theire peple fle on euery side, and the grete slaughter that these made, thei cried "as armes." Than thei armed hem that were in the Casteƚƚ witħ aƚƚ theire mygħt, and com oute in aƚƚ haste; and thei were moche peple and riche lordes of grete puyssance, and therto were thei weƚƚ horsed; and whan thei were alle come oute thei were xiiij^{Ml}. Than thei lete theire horse renne, and smyten to-geder rigħt harde the ton a-gein the tother; and ther be-gan a stronge bataile and harde; and many ther were leide to grounde of horse and men. And while thei fougħt*en* thus to-geder thei of Arundeƚƚ com oute that were longinge to kynge Arthur, and were weƚƚ v C, and thei sesed the vitaile wher-of thei founde in the hoste grete foyson; and ther thei wonne grete richesse, and repeyrede agein to the casteƚƚ, and shetten the yates, and lokede how the bataile sholde ende, and alwey was the kynge Tradelyuant and his nevewe Polydomas sore be-sette on alle parties, and fougħten sore a-gein the saisnes; and the kinge was at grete myschef, ffor ther com oute of the Casteƚƚ the roche xiiij^{Ml} wele armed, and ronne vpon hem vigerously, for thei were fuƚƚ anguysshouse for the grete losse that thei hadden; and thei drof the kynge bakke more than the space of a bowe draugħt, ne neuer after mygħt thei holde grounde tiƚƚ thei com vnder Arundeƚƚ, ther as where they moste a-bide by fin force, or elles playnly dye. Ther thei hem deffended harde and sore, but ther was grete slaughter of men and horse vpon bothe partyes, but at that enuaye loste the kynge Tradylyuant moche of his peple, for of x^{Ml} he loste vij^{Ml}, and the saisnes losten iij^{Ml} of the beste that were in the Casteƚƚ

The others turn to flight.

More than 15,000 are slain.

The knights of Carnyle cry "To arms."

14,000 come out of the Castle of the Rock.

Then begins a hard battle.

500 men come out of Arundell, seize on the victuals, and return to the Castle.

The people of the Castle drive Tradelyvant back,

who loses many of his people.

of the roche. And the kynge Tradilyuant faught sore; he and his peple were at grete myschef, and it a-bode not longe er thei were alle disconfited; whan hem com to socour the kynge de Cent Chyualers, that hadde herde tydinges that the saisnes com robbinge the contrey.

The king de Cent Chyvalers comes to succour him.

As soone as the kynge de Cent Chiualiers com half a myle fro the bataile, he mette the peple that fledde from the kynge Tradilyuaunt, for nygh was he turned to disconfiture. *Whan the kynge de Cent Chiualliers mette with hem that fledde fro the bataile, he askede whens thei come; and thei abode and tolde hym the a-uenture that was fallen, and how he was disconfited; and whan the kynge vnderstode that Tradilyuaunt was at so grete myschef, he cried, "Gentill knyghtes! now suewith me," and seide, "Seynt Marie, blissed lady, graunte me that I may hym fynde with-oute mayme."

He meets the people that fled.

*[Fol. 81*a*.]

He calls to his knights to follow him.

Than the kynge rode formest hym-self a grete walop, for sore hym longed to wite how the kynge Tradilyuaunt hym contened; but he hadde be disconfited longe er than, or deed, or taken, hadde not be that thei of the castell of Arundell, that were Arthurs men, that hadde so grete pite vpon hem that were cristen, that thei com oute more than iiij^{c} upon a sop, and be-gonne to helpe hem vigerously, and slowe many of the saisnes in her comynge; and thei recounforted moche the kynge Tradilyuant, for moche thei hym sustened. And ther was the crie and the noyse right grete; but whan the kynge de Cent chiuallires com be-gan the noyse to a-rise so grete that noon myght heren other, for he and his men leide down the saisnes with so grete randon, and smote hem so harde in her comynge, that thei leide iij^{Ml} to grounde that neuer roos after hool ne sounde. Ther was a stour anguysshouse and mortall bataile, and so grete slaughter of men and of horse, that the horse feet were couered with blode and brayn, ffor so moche hadde they foughten oon a-gein a-nother, that of xv^{Ml} of the saisnes ne was not lefte ix^{Ml}. And the kynge de Cent chiualers was a noble knyght and a sure, and maganors his stiwarde. Than thei ronne vpon the saisnes so fiercely that the shoute and the noyse a-roos so grete and huge that the

The king rides foremost.

400 of Arthur's men come out of the Castle of Arundel to help Tradilyvaunt.

The king de Cent Chyvalers and his men smite the Saxons.

There is a great slaughter of men and horse.

The Saxons are sore abashed, and forget their defence.

saisnes were alle a-baisshed, that thei for-gat aƚƚ her defence; and whan thei saugħ hem that were newe comen aƚƚ fresſħ of here in-busshement, and saugħ thei myghħt haue no socoure ne helpe on no partee, ffor thei were fer fro valdesbiry, where the siege was, and at the Casteƚƚ of the roche thei wiste weƚƚ nere not past CC defensable, for alle were issed oute for the cry; and saugħ also weƚƚ that nedes moste hem dye but yef thei ascaped be flight.

Tradilyvaunt and the others set afresh upon the Saxons, who turn to flight.

Whan the kynge de Cent chiualers, and Tradilyuaunt, and marganors, and Polydomas saugħ the saisnes so a-baisshed, thei sette vpon hem fresshly; and whan the saisnes saugħ hem come thei durste not a-bide, but turned to flighħt to the casteƚƚ of the roche; but er thei com thider thei were hasted to nygħ, that of ix^{Ml} ne ascaped not iij^{Ml}, that alle were slayn and mangeled. But whan thei of the casteƚƚ of Arundeƚƚ saugħ the saisnes discounfited, and saugħ hem chased, thei witħ-heilde hem be the counseile of a yonge knyghħt that was cleped Ewein witħ the white handes, and returned thider as the bataile hadde be, and toke horse, and somers, and golde, and siluer, and vitaile as moche as hem liked, *and of armour of the beste that thei founden, and stuffed hem so wele of alle thinges that neuer after hadde thei no suffraite ne nede of nothinge durynge the tyme of her beynge there; and whan thei were entred thei shette the yates and reysed vp the brigge, and after yede vpon the walles an higħ for to se how thei diden that made the chase, for the two kynges chased the saisnes tiƚƚ thei come to the casteƚƚ of the roche fuƚƚ sore affraide, and smyten in ther as thei knewe the entre, but er thei were alle ynne ther were many slayn and for hewen; and whan thei witħ-ynne the two kynges saugħ thei were ascaped thei drougħ hem a-bakke, ffor moche thei douted the shotte of quarelles and of arowes; and whan thei were come fro the casteƚƚ half a myle and the two kynges mette to-geder, thei made grete ioye, and dide of theire helmes, and kysten to-geder, and eche acoled other in armes for grete love, whan thei hadde longe tyme made her ioye in fere. Than seide the kynge Tradilyuant to the kynge de Cent chiualers, "Sir, I haue grete m*er*veile how ye com this day hider, and therfore I

The people of Arundel return to the Castle with the spoil by the counsel of Ewein.

[*[Fol. 81*b*.]

The two kings chase the Saxons.

When they come near the Castle, they embrace each other.

Tradilyvant has reason to thank God for Aguysanx's succour.

haue grete cause to thanke oure lorde god, for yef ye hadde taried eny lenger I mygħt not haue ascaped, but that I sholde haue be taken or deed, and also alle my men that were me be lefte." "Sir," quod Aguysanx the kynge de Cent chiualers, "Oure lorde that is so gracious, ne foryeteħ neuer his seruaunt in what he be, but paraventure it hym pleseth that we shuƚƚ suffre this martire for to enhaunce his lawes, and therfore haħ he sent thise saisnes in-to this londe, that euery day ne do but encrese more and more; and also we se weƚƚ that for no peple that we haue in this contrey thei wiƚƚ not be chased oute; and therfore while that we may lyve lete vs avenge oure dethes, ffor that semeth me the beste; what-so-euer falle lete vs do so as I sey, and wite it weƚƚ that so shuƚƚ we sonnest come to an ende than eny other wey." "Why," quod Tradilyuaunt, "how is youre advys?" "That shaƚƚ I weƚƚ telle yow," quod Aguysanx, "we shull[1] sende to alle oure felowes, that eċħ of hem come wiħ alle his hool power as privyly as thei may to the casteƚƚ of wyndesore in brochelonde, and we also to assemble alle oure peple and ride vpon the saisnes, and yeve hem bataile in the name of god, that he graunte vs the victorie, ffor better is a gode ende and to dye wiħ honour, than longe to endure and after aƚƚ lese, and than dye wiħ dishonour." "A god mercy, sir!" quod Tradilyuaunt, "what is it that ye sey? we knowe wele that thei be so grete plente of peple that for oon that we haue in oure remes thei haue euer xx a-gein oon of oures, and therefore in that maner*e* ne may we not spede. Not-with-stondinge, I sey not, but as for me I wiƚƚ do as ye and alle the other wiƚƚ ordeyne; I am aƚƚ redy it to pursue." "Certes," seide Aguysanx the kynge de Cent chiualers, "I wiƚƚ sende to hem my message on my be-halue, like as I haue yow seide, and that thei do me to wite what is here willes, whether thei wiƚƚ do thus or noon." *"In goddes name," seide Tradilyuant, "for as for my part I wiƚƚ do as ye and alle other wiƚƚ assente, ffor I am but oon sool man as be ye, and ye ne shuƚƚ nothinge do but I therto wiƚƚ acorde." Wiħ that

Aguysanx proposes that they send for their fellows to meet them privily at Wyndesore, and then give the Saxons battle,

and says he will send the message.

*[Fol 82*a*.]

---

[1] The word "shull" is repeated in the MS.

They ride to Arundel, where they find great riches.

Tradilyvaunt rides to North Wales, and Aguysanx to Malohaut.

thei rode forth to Arundeƚƚ ther the firste bataile hadde be, and ther thei fonde grete richesse of aƚƚ that neded to mannes body; and eċħ man toke at his wille of that hym liked, and made noon other departynge. Thus was comen aƚƚ the richesse and the vitaile; and in this maner departed the two kynges, that no more ne dide not at this tyme. And the kynge Tradilyuaunt rode in-to North wales wiþ vj^{Ml} men that were hym be lefte of the bataile; and the kynge Aguysanx rode to malohaut wit[h] vij^{Ml} men, and after toke his messagers, and sente to the lordes as he hadde seide to the kynge Tradilyuant.

Aguysanx assembles his people at Corenges.

The Saxons burn and destroy the land.

They slay ladies, and maidens, and children in arms.

Aguysanx commands his barons to arm.

They look towards Lanneriur, and see flames of fire.

Whan the kynge Aguysans was come to his Citee of Corenges in Scotlonde, he assembled his peple on horsebak and on foote, that he hadde xv^{Ml}. And it fiƚƚ on a monday in the morowe that the saisnes were more than xv^{Ml}, and rode be-twene Corenges and lanneriur, and brandons a-gains the pray that Oriels, and meniadus, and Sorbaries, and margoir*es*, and brandons, and Poigeres, and pyncenars, and Salubrius, and magloras, and Gondoffles the grete, diden condite towarde the hoste be-fore Valdesbiry; and as thei come, the[i] brent and distroyde aƚƚ the londe, and brent bourgħs, and townes, and castelles, and sette aƚƚ on fier and flame, as thei that aƚƚ the londe wolde haue brougħt to nougħt; and ther-to thei made so grete martire of peple thourgħ the contrey, that ye mygħt have hadde grete pite were youre herte neuer so harde, for ladies and maidenes that thei slowen and her childeren in her armes; and ther as the mene peple were fledde in-to caves for socour, thei putt in fier, and brent hem ther-ynne; and the tidinges ran so thourgħ the contrey that the kynge aguysanx it herde; and than he comaunded alle his barou*n*s to armen hem; and thei dide his comaundement, and lepe to horse, and rode two myle er day; and than thei rode forþ a softe pas tiƚƚ it was passed pryme. Than thei loked towarde lanneriur, and saugħ the eyr trouble, and thikke of duste, and flames of fier that thei hadde sette in the contrey, and herde the noyse and the cry that the peple made of her losse and damage, and for her frendes þ*at* thei saugh martired be-fore her yen; and thei ther-fore were fuƚƚ anguysshouse, and rode forth a grete spede, and were well xiiij^{Ml}; and hem condited the kynge Anguysans in the formest fronte with vij^{Ml}, that were yonge bachelers and hardy. This Gaudius was cosin germain to Aguysans on his fader side; and he dide after many feire chiualries be-fore the castell, for the damesell of brulent, that he wolde haue hadde be force to his wif, and[1] was be-fore the riche town that was so moche preised er that Gaudius it conquered by his prowesse, as the storie shall telle here-after, for it is yet no tyme ther-to, but returne to the kynge aguysans of Scotlonde, that rode to-geder, he and Gaudius, till *thei fill a-monge the forriours and a-monge the cariage; and a-noon thei smote to-geder fercely, that ther was many oon ouerthrowen bothe horse and man; and thei dide the saisnes grete losse of her peple at the be-gynnynge, for thei were oute of aray and spredde a-brode in the contrey, oon here, a-nother ther; and the kynge aguysans and Gaudius and her peple slowe of hem moo than vij^{Ml}. And whan the kynge of the saisnes com in-to the bataile where-as thei were fightynge, than was Gaudius and his companye at grete myschef, for the saisnes were moo than xl^{Ml}, what oon and other and of the cristen were but xiiij^{Ml}. Neuertheles, thei deffended hem right longe, but euer the saisnes encresed, that it was wonder to be-holde, for fro the bataile was but x myle fro the hoste; and the x kynges that I yow nempned com on the tother side wele horsed and armed with so grete plente of peple that all the contrey was couered on euery side, and thei drof the cristin a-wey whether thei wolde or noon. Ffull grete losse hadde ther the kynge Aguisans, and grete damage of his knyghtes and of his men, ffor er none was passed the saisnes mette hem so sharply that of xiiij^{Ml} that he brought in his companye ne myght he not assemble vj^{Ml} that alle ne were dede or taken, and ne hadde be oon a-venture that fill, ther hadde neuer of hem ascaped oon a-wey; but the kynge Vrien was comen oute in the morowe for the hete, he and his nevew Bandemagn, that was a noble knyght and an hardy and sure,

14,000 ride forth, led by Aguysans, and 7,000 youngbachelors.

Gaudius, cousin germain to Aguysans, rides with him.

*[Fol. 82b.]

They smite the scouts.

They slay more than 7,000 of the Saxons.

The king of the Saxons does great damage to Gaudius and his company

The ten kings drive the Christians away.

Aguysans has great loss.

King Urien and Bandemagn come out and leave Ewein and Meliagans in the city, and lefte Ewein his sone in the Citee, that was a feire chielde and of hiġħ prowesse, that hadde be-geten on Arthurs suster, that was so goode a lady a-gein god and also to the worlde. Wiħ Ewein also was Meliagans, that at that tyme was a yonge childe, and was the sone of Bandemagn by his firste wif. These two childeren kepte the Citee riġħt wele, but knyghtes were thei noon, for thei were to yonge of age; and wiħ hem also was Ewein a-voutres, that was the kynges sone Vrien be the stiward*es* wif, that was of grete bewte; and therfore the kynge lefte his ow[n]e wif more than fyve yere, and kepte her in his house maugre his stiwarde tiƚƚ that he hadde this childe. Whan that the childe was born ther rose so grete a scentence of cursinge that he most nedes leve her wheþ*er* that he wolde or noon; but the childe he kepte and norisshed tiƚƚ it was feire weƚƚ woxen and that he myġħt ride after to court; and the kynge that loved hym moche in his herte yaf hym of his londe grete plente, that he myġħt wele mayntene goode meyne a-boute hym. This Ewein, that was geten in advoutry, was gentiƚƚ and curteyse and fuƚƚ of hardynesse, and for the grete love that the kynge hadde to hym, he brouġħt hym forħ in the companye of his son Ewein the grete; and for that he was geten in a-vouterye was he cleped Ewein the a-vouteres, and the tother, that was his riġħt heir be his wif, was cleped Ewein the more; and this Ewein was a passinge feire childe and bolde and hardy; but after that he hadde herde speke of kynge Arthur he wolde not suffre that noon made hym knyġħt; *ne his fader, ne noon other, but seide ofte to his counseile and that was to Ewein his brother that he loved moche, and was yonger than he; and he tolde hym that he wolde neuer be knyġħt tiƚƚ that the kynge Arthur, his Oncle, yaf hym the ordere, and girde the swerde be hys syde; and the tother Ewein seide that riġħt so wolde he do. Thus lefte thei for to kepe the town, and the kynge Vrien and Bandemagn hem spedde so tiƚƚ that thei com to the bataile euen as the kynge aguysanx was discounfited, and was merveillously sorowfuƚƚ. Ne noon myġħt telle the maltalent that he hadde, and that after he shewde weƚƚ semblant, for as soone as it come to the chase he smote a-monge the saisnes

---

[1] The word "and" is repeated in the MS.

with whom is Ewein a-voutres, Urien's son by the steward's wife.

This Ewein was gentle and full of hardiness.

Ewein the more was bold and hardy

*[Fol. 83*a*.]

The two brothers love one another much.

Urien and Bandemagn come to the battle as Aguysanx is discomfited.

so fiercely as a wode lyon; and he was wele horsed as to soche a man be-longeħ, and hadde in his companye x^{Ml} men that were wele horsed. Than were the saisnes ascride a-lowde and harde I-smyten. Ther fiƚƚ many in swowne that neuer after a-roos; ffuƚƚ sharp̄ and creweƚƚ was this stour, for the meyne that com wiħ kynge Vrien were fuƚƚ p*ro*fitable and hardy, and foughten aƚƚ the day longe, and suffred grete travaile. And the kynge Aguysans went in-to his Cite disconfited, ffor the chace lefte of hym for to fiħt wiħ the kynge vrien and his peple; and ther was grete slaughter of men and of horse bothe, for neuer so smaƚƚ a peple made so grete occision. But longe the kinge vrien and his men ne myħt not endure, ffor a-gein hem were so grete foyson of peple that hem nothinge ne spared, but dide hem the greef that thei myħt wiħ aƚƚ theire power; but the nyħt com that made hem departe. And the kynge vrien wente to Sorhan, he and his peple, aƚƚ*e* for brosed and fuƚƚ wery of trauayle and of strokes that thei hadde yeuen and resceyved; but the saisnes lefte in the place ther the bataile hadde I be, and laye that nyħt stille armed; but to the kynge vrien com a feire a-venture that ouħt not to be for-yeten in the tale, for he fonde a rowte of saisnes in a launde a-boute mydnyħt, that ledde grete richesse towarde the hoste of vitaile, and also of other harneyse, as robes and money and bestes, and were weƚƚ iij^{Ml} that these richesse dide condite; and thei were sette to theire soper wiħ grete foyson of vitaile, and wende to haue hadde no drede of no man, ffor thei knewe weƚƚ the disconfiture of hem and the kynge Aguysanx, and therfore were thei deseuered fro the grete companye for the hastier spede, and for to come the soner to the siege that was be-fore the town of valdesbery.

The Saxons are hard smitten.

Aguysanx goes to his city discomfited.

Urien and his people go to Sorhan.

They come upon a company of Saxons.

Whan the kynge vrien and Bandemagn, his nevew, sauħ the saisnes in this manere, and the teintes and pavelons that thei hadde piħt, and the gret liħt that was with-ynne the pavilou*n*s, thei made a-noon to aske what peple it were; and thei that were with-ynne the pavylou*n*s a-noon ansuerde, and seide thei were wiħ the kynge Brangore of Saxon. Whan the kynge vrien and Bandemagn, his nevew, herde that thei were saisnes

When Urien and Bandemagn find they are Saxons they cry "to arms."

*[Fol. 83*b*.]

and set upon them and overthrow their pavilions.

The Christians are 8,000 and the Saxons only 3,000, all unarmed.

The Saxons are so martyred that not forty escape.

Urien and his people gather up the riches and go to Sorhant.

that thei hadde founden, thei cried "as armes;" and her peple seide, *"Now as armes, for now it shaƚƚ be preved who is goode and who is cowarde." And thei sette vpon hem, and founde hem vn-armed, and therfore was in hem but pore deffense; and the[1] cristen be-gonne to ouerthrowe pavylou*n*s vpon her heedes, and on her mete. Ther sholde ye haue sein grete trouble of tables down-caste and the vitaile I-spredde wide, and cuppes and pecys of siluer and bordclothes and towayles vnder the horse feet, but ther was grete occision of saisnes that the cristin peple hem dide, that hem hated of mortuaƚƚ hate; and as the storie seiħ, that the cristin were yet viij^{Ml}, and of the saisnes ne were but iij^{Ml}, and alle vn-armed, as thei that were sette at soper, and wende not to haue hadde no drede. And the nyght was feire and clere, and a softe weder in the myddiƚƚ of Apriƚƚ. And the saisnes were so hewen and martired in shorte tyme that of the iij^{Ml} ascaped not xl, and that ne were slain wiħ speres, and swerdes, and axes; and thei that ascaped ronne in-to wodes and in-to grete forestes, and made so grete sorowe that no man cowde telle. And whan the saisnes were thus disconfited and fledde, the kynge vrien and his peple gedered vp that was lefte ther of the saisnes that was grete richesse, and wente the right wey to Sorhant wiħ-oute eny other distrubier, and were gladde and mery after the aventure that was hem be-fallen.

After the departure of Urien and Bandemagn tidings comes that Gawein and the other children have taken arms for Arthur.

After that the kynge vrien and Bandemagn were departed fro the bataile, as ye haue herde, ther com tydinges how that Gawein, and Agrauain, and Gaheret, and Gaheries, and Galashin were departed from theire faders so yonge childeren for to be made knyghtes wiħ-oute takynge leve, and were goynge to logres for to take her armes of the kynge Arthur; but thei haue hym not founden, for he was gon in-to the reame of Tamelide; and the childeren were lefte at logres, and kepte right wele the marches, and seiden thei wolde neuer remeve thens tiƚƚ theire oncle were come home, and also how thei hadden gete the richest prise that euer was sein in her comynge. And so these tidinges ronne thourgħ the londe that Ewein herde speke ther-of, that was Arthur suster sone; and than he seide to his moder in prive counseile, "Ffeire moder, my cosins betħ gon to the court of kynge Arthur hym for to serue, and for to take theire armes of hym; and we ne mowe not be in no gretter myschef than we betħ now ynne, and therfore I wolde haue youre cou*n*ceile how that I sholde do, ffor in no manere wiƚƚ I do no thinge that sholde yow displese; and ye knowe wele that my fader hatħ yoven his londe that be com on his syde to Bandemagn, his nevew, after his discesse, in the tyme of Vterpendragon, and he may no more thynge fro me be-reve what wrattħ that euer I haue of hym, for the londe that cometħ of youre be-halue ne may I not lese, but yef it be youre wiƚƚ; and thougħ I lese aƚƚ I wiƚƚ go witħ my cosins to serue myn oncle; and therfore a-ray me so that I go witħ worship, for *how-so-euer that it be I wiƚƚ go, for I haue lever ther to dye than here for to lyve as in prison, and therfore sey me lightly what is youre pleiser."

---

[1] The word "the" is repeated in the MS.

Ewein goes to his mother and aks her advice.

His father has given his land to Bandemagn after his death.

Ewein will go to serve his uncle.

*[Fol. 84*a*.]

Whan the lady herde Ewein her sone so speke, she be-gan to wepe for ioye and for pitee, ffor weƚƚ she knewe that the herte com fro the higħ lynage on hir syde, and seide, "Ffeire sone Ewein, wher haue ye take that talent and that herte for to leve me and to serue another?" And he ansuerde, "Ha, dame! for goddes love, mercy! I reporte me to aƚƚ the worlde, and my herte also telleth me, that he is youre brother and myn oncle, and also my cosins betħ go in-to his londe, and therfore were I a grete cowarde to a-bide here, where as I may no profite do ne availe, and yef I helpe not hym for to mayntene his londe as my cosins do; and therfore, thaugħ ye yeve me no leve I wiƚƚ go; and now ordeyne so for me that I may go in soche that it be youre worship and myn." "Ffeire sone," seide the lady, "a-bide a-while, and I shaƚƚ a-paraile yow so privěly that youre fader shaƚƚ it not wite, for and he it wiste, aƚƚ youre iourney were loste; and gete yow soche felship as ye wiƚƚ haue, and I shaƚƚ purveye for horse and armes, and robes and money I-nowgħ to spende." "Madame," seide Ewein, "gramercy;" and than he com to his brother Ewein a-voutres, and discouered to hym his

The lady weeps for joy when Ewein so speaks.

Ewein says he should be a coward if he did not go.

His mother says she will apparel him privily.

He comes to his brother Ewein a-voutres, who says he will go with him.

They depart about mid-night.

corage; and whan he hadde aƚƚ seide, the tother ansuerde and seide that he sholde neuer go in-to no strange londe wiħ-oute hym yef god wolde, and that he was redy to move what tyme that euer he wolde. Quod Ewein, "I wiƚƚ that we departe wiħ-ynne these viij dayes." And wiħ that the bretheren departed, and made hem redy; and Ewein the a-voutres so purchased as he that was manly and wise, that he hadde in his companye an hundred felowes, and Ewein the more hadde CC; and his moder hym ordeyned robes, and money, and horse, and armure grete plente. And on an euenynge after soper thei departed a-boute mydde-nygħt, at the firste cok crowinge, by leve of the lady; and hem condited ffragien, a yonge gentilman, that knewe alle the estres of the forestes and the weyes; but now of hem resteħ the tale, and returned to speke of kynge ventres of Garlot.

Ventres is wroth at the loss of his son Galashin.

In the month of April a messenger comes to tell of the discomfiture of Aguysanx.

*[Fol. 84b.]

Another messenger tells of the destruction of the Saxons by Tradylivant.

Ventres thinks to go to the marches between North Wales and Sorloys.

Whan the kynge Ventres of Garlot vndirstode that he hadde loste his sone Galashin, he was rigħt hevy and wroħ, and in especiaƚƚ toward his wif Basyne, so that he spake not to hir aƚƚ a moneħ nother goode ne badde. Than fiƚƚ it on a thursday at even in the moneħ of Aprille, in the tyme that these erbes and trees be-gynne to florissħ, and the briddes singen wiħ ther voys for the swetnesse of the newe mery seson, that a messanger com and tolde hym the grete distruxion where-as the kynge Aguysanx hadde I-be, and how the saisnes hadde hym disconfited, and how that he hadde be deed or take, ne hadde be the kynge vrien that com hym *for to socour, wher-fore the chase sessed of the kynge Aguysanx; and after com a-nother messager, that tolde hym of the grete distruxion of the saisnes that the kynge Tradyliuant and the kynge de cent chiualers hadde don be-twene Randoul and the roche, where-as thei hadde riche enprise. And whan the kynge ventres herde these tydinges he was rigħt hevy for the distresse of the kynge Aguysanx, and on the tother side he was rigħt gladde of the kynge Tradilyuaunt and of the kynge de Cent chiualers, than he be-thougħt in hys herte that[1] he wolde go serche the marches be-twene Northwalis and Sorloys, where-as the passage was rigħt grete; but he hadde not longe be in this stodye whan in his owne contrey he herde so grete noyse and clamor of peple that fledde on eu*er*y side.

---

[1] The word "that" is repeated in the MS.

Anoon the kynge lete aske what the peple eiled. And thei seide that alle the saisnes of the worlde were entred in-to his londe, and brente, and distroied, and slowgħ alle that thei mygħt atteyne. And ther-to ther was of hem so grete multitude that it was merveile, and were loigged vpon the river of sourne be-fore the casteƚƚ of brolende in the medowes; "and ther thei a-bide the grete carriage of vitaile, and of hem is captein the kynge Magondes, that was cosin to Aungis; and the kynge ffansobres, and the kynge Groales, and the kynge Pyngnores, and the kynge fforreyours cometħ be-fore more than with xx^{Ml}, that be spredde thourgħ aƚƚ youre londe, and brenne and distroie and sle the peple; and yef ye wiƚƚ not this be-leve, ye may it bothe heere and see." And whan the kynge ventres saugħ his londe thus turne to distruxion, he knewe wele that he mygħt not a-bide longe witħ-out grete damage.

The king asks the people what ails them.

They tell of the Saxons, and their leaders, Magondes, Fansobres, Groales, Pyngnores, and Forreyours.

Ventres sees that he will have great damage.

Anoon the kynge cryed witħ higħ voys, "Gentiƚƚ knyghtes, now as armes, for now shaƚƚ be shewed youre worthynesses, ffor he nys no knygħt that wiƚƚ not deffende his londe and his contrey a-gein his mortaƚƚ enmyes." Than ronne thei to armes, knygħtes a[nd] squyres, grete foyson bothe oon and other, thourgħ the town; and when thei were redy thei were xij^{Ml}. And the kynge ventres toke of hem vj^{Ml}, and yaf hem to Doriax for to lede, and moche hym requered for to weƚƚ and to be gode knygħt, and so in trouthe he was a noble knygħt, and rigħt nygħ cosin to the kynge. And he rode that wey as he saugħ the mene peple come fleynge, and spedde hym so that he com ther as thei made the martire and the Occision of the peple, and were in the formest frounte v^{Ml}; but thei were not alle in array, for thei were spredde a-brode in the contrey down by the river, that brent and robbed. And whan dorilas saugħ witħ his iye that thei dide so grete damage that were soch mysbelevynge peple, he rode vpon hem fuƚƚ Irously. And whan he com nygħ bothe he and his men lete reine as faste as the horse mygħt hem bere, and

He calls his knights to arms.

They run to arms.

The king Ventres gives 6000 to Doriax for him to lead to the fight.

When Dorilas sees the damage the misbelieving people do, he rides upon them angrily

*[Fol. 85*a*.]

He smites them so suddenly that many are thrown to the ground. The remnant turn to flight, and Dorilas chases them.

smote hem so wiħ sharp̄ speres and trenchaunt, that many of the saisnes *ther-wiħ were throwe to grounde, and many slayn, ffor thei were so supprised that thei were not ware tiƚƚ thei were ynne a-myd monge hem that thei slowgħ of hem more than two partes er the kynge ventres was come; and the remenaunt turned to fligħt in-to the hoste of briolors, where as the iiij kynges were loged. And dorilas hem enchased and sloughħ and martired, and dide hem gret turment; and whan he hadde hem pursude to the tentes and the pauylou*n*s, and it was noone passed of the day, and whan the saisnes saugħ hem so fle, thei ronne to armes, but for aƚƚ theire haste thei mygħt not be so soone armed er ther were v^{c} tentes and pavilou*n*s ouer-throwen vpon theire hedes, and moo than a thousande me slayn.

He overturns five hundred tents, and slays more than a thousand of the Saxons.

They blow horns next to the tent of king Margondre, and more than 36,000 people gather together.

When Dorilas and Maglans see each other, they rush on each other and both fall to the ground.

Than thei be-gonne to blowe hornes and trompes nexte to the teinte of kynge Margondre, and ther assembled and gadered so grete plente of peple that thei were more than xxx^{Ml}. And than rode the iiij kynges; and it fiƚƚ that thei mette first wiħ the kynge Galagnes wiħ iiij^{Ml} men or moo, and mette wiħ dorilas, that moche hym peyned to greve the saisnes, and hadde rigħt wele do aƚƚ the day; and heilde a stronge spere that he hadde take from a saisne. And as soone as dorilas and Maglans saugħ ecħ other, thei lette renne and mette to-geder so sore vpon the sheldes that thei perced, and the haubrekes were stronge that no maile ne brake, but the speres splyndered on peces; and thei passed thourgħ and hurteled to-geder so harde wiħ the horse mygħt that bothe fiƚƚ to grounde, and their horse vpon theire bodies.

Both sides press to the rescue.

Whan dorilas and Maglans thus hadde eche other ouerthrowen, bothe partees pressed to the rescu; and ther were many hurte, and sharpe medle ther was a stronge bataile and grete man-slaughter on bothe sithes; and with grete labour were bothe dorilas and Maglaans horsed; but grete losse of peple fiƚƚ vpon the saisnes side, ffor thei were many of hem vn-armed, but yet hadde thei had gretter lose ne hadde the kynge ffalsadres come wiħ vij^{Ml} men, that faugħt wiħ the cristin rigħt harde. But the kynge ventres was a goode knygħt and a sure a-bove alle

Dorilas and Maglaans are horsed; the Saxons have great loss, but Falsadres fights hard with the Christians.

that were in the feilde, ffor he dide merveilouse prowesse in armes, and gretly he hym peyned, for he saugħ the grete nede. And so, thourgħ the helpe of god and his knyght-hode, the vij^{Ml} were discounfited and putt to fligħt; but as the kynge Pyngnores com̄ witħ vij^{Ml} saisnes, that hem recounforted and moche sustened, for thei̇̄ smyten̄ in̄ a-monge the kynge Ventres meyne and made hem to remeve more than̄ a bowe draugħt from the tentes and the pavilou*ns* be-twene the wode and the rivere. And whan̄ the kynge ventres saugħ his men go in̄ soche manere, he cried his ensigne, and seyde, "Gentiƚƚ knygħtes, whether ar ye a-wey? returne and selle your detħ while that ye may lyuen̄, for neuer shuƚƚ ye comen̄ to better pointe, and ther-fore haue in mynde what ye be, ffor better is it for yow for to deffend youre-*self manly than̄ to be slayn̄ shamefully in̄ fligħt, for as me semetħ whiche wey that we turne ther nys but detħ." And whan̄ thei̇̄ herde her lorde thus speke thei̇̄ returnede and fiƚƚ to-gedir on̄ a companye streite and close, that noon̄ myght entre hem witħynne but a-noon̄ he were slain̄. And thus thei̇̄ hem kepte witħoute remevynge, and suffred and endured tiƚƚ these other vpon hem hadde broke theire speres and tiƚƚ thei hadde a-gein̄ recovered her bretħ; and so a-bode theire strokes that the to-ther were somwhat wery and thei̇̄ hem-self ther-witħ re-freisshed; and whan̄ thei̇̄ saugħ the saisnes weƚƚ chased and short wynded, thei̇̄ lete renne at hem and be-gonne to do soche maistries that the saisnes were alle a-baisshed of the merveile that thei saugħ hem do. And on̄ the tother side dorilas faugħt so a-gein̄ the peple of Maglaans that he droff hem̄ a-wey discounfited, and made hem to rebounde vpon̄ the warde of ffalsabres and vpon̄ the warde of Pyngnoras, that rigħt sore faugħt agein̄ the kynge ventres and his peple, so that the ton̄ smote thourgħ the tothers companye. Ther was a stour merveilouse and stronge bataile, and dured so longe tiƚƚ it was euensonge tyme. Than̄ meved the kynge Margondes witħ grete plente of saisnes, for thei̇̄ were more than xv^{Ml}, and he hadde grete dispite that so smaƚƚ a peple sholde endure so longe agein̄ so many as thei weren̄, for he saugħ wele that thei̇̄ were not so manye by the haluendeƚƚ as the saisnes. Than̄ Mar-

Ventres shows great prowess, and discomfits the 7,000.

Pyngnores comes with 7 000 Saxons and smites in among Ventres' men.

Ventres cries to his knights to sell their lives dearly.

*[Fol. 85*b*.]

When they hear their lord speak, they return in a company.

They abide the strokes of their enemies and then rush upon them, and drive them to Falsabres and Pyngnoras.

The battle endures till evensong.

Margondes, seeing the small number of the Christians, cries to his men to set on them and leave none alive. When Ventres sees the Saxons coming against him, he gathers his men about him, and leads them where they have the wood at their backs and the forest on both sides of the way.

The Saxons come upon them in haste, but they defend themselves till night.

gondres cried to his men and comaunded hem that thei sholde sette so sore vpon the cristen that ther sholde leve noon in the feilde a-live. And whan the kynge ventres saugħ comynge a-gein hym so many saisnes, he gedered his men a-boute hym close, and drougħ hym litiƚƚ and litiƚƚ towarde the foreste. And the saisnes hem hasted faste as thei wende haue aƚƚ taken and confounded, and vpon them they brake theire speres; and the kynge ventres and his meyne hadde gete the wode at her bakkes at a streite weye that was rigħt depe, and the forest higħ on bothe sithes of the wey, and so thikke that nothinge myght entre but it were wilde bestes. And the kynge ventres and Dorilas haue hem so spedde that thei haue their men enbusshed in that streite passage, and pigħt theire speres in the erthe, and the sharpe hede of steiƚƚ vpwarde, and were[1] weƚƚ a-raied hem to deffende. And the saisnes com vpon hem in grete haste fuƚƚ wrorth and angry for the grete damage that thei hadde don, and assailed hem rigħt sore; and these hem deffended rigħt vigerously tiƚƚ that it was derke nyght that vnethe mygħt oon se a-nother; and more hadde the saisnes loste than wonne.

Ventres and his men ride all night till they come to Windsor.

*[Fol. 86a.]

They enter the town all soiled with blood.

The ladies and maidens pray for them in the churches.

The story returns to Brangore.

Whan the kynge Ventres saugħ the saisnes gon, than he and his men rode forth aƚƚ the nygħt tiƚƚ thei come to wyndesore, and weƚƚ it semed by their armes that thei hadde not soiourned, ffor theire sheildes were hewen and to daissht and theire *haubrekes rente in many places, and hem-self aƚƚ be-soiled witħ bloode, and her brondes of stieƚƚ croked and bente for the strokes that thei hadde smyten, that for a merveile thei were be-holden thourgħ the town, and ecħ seide to other that these peple hadde not leyen at soiourne, and preide to god for hem bothe ladyes and maidenes in the chirches vpon theire knees and elbowes, that god sholde hem spede and defende fro detħ. And thise yede to theire loginges, and hem vn-armed, and wente to bedde, and rested hem, for longe hadde they waked. And whan thei hadde slepte the mete was redy, and thei that mygħt ete yede to dyner. But now cessetħ to speke of hem a-while, and retou*r*ne to the kynge Brangore.

---

[1] The word "were" is repeated in the MS.

Now seiħ the storye that whan the kynge Brangore was come to Eastrangore, his stronge place, that he dide it stuffe wiħ knygħtes and vitaile, that he hadde of oon and other xv^{Ml} men; and longe he kepte wele the marches a-boute hym that litiƚƚ harme the saisnes dide. Tiƚƚ on a tyme the saisnes were entred in-to the marche of Strangore and of souħ walis, where-of kynge Belynans was lorde, that was brother to the kynge Tradilyuaunt, that have herde spoken of be-fore. And this Belynans was a riche kynge, and hadde a riche contrey that was feire and esy; and his wif was a feire yonge lady of grete bewte, and her name was Esclence, and she was doughter to kynge Natan de lille p*er*due, and hadde a childe be his nece that was of grete bewte, and was xiiij yere of age, that was cleped by his rigħt name, Dodyneƚƚ the sauage. And the cause whi he was cleped Dodyneƚƚ was for euer was in the feeldes and forestes for to hunte at the herte and other deer and wylde swyn, and for he haunted it so moche, ther-fore thei cleped hym Dodyneƚƚ the sauage. And the kynge ventres was brother to his moder Esclence, and Galaishin was cosyn to Dodyneƚƚ on his moder syde. This Dodyneƚƚ was after in the kynge house Arthur, and was a knygħt of grete prowesse, and oon of the rounde table, and oon of the most preised; but at this tyme we shaƚƚ not speke no more of hym, but speke of the kynge Brangore and of the saisnes that be entred in-to hys londe, and was wroħ and sory for his frendes that he hadde loste be-twene Arondeƚƚ and the roche of saisnes that heilde theire wey from wynsore be the casteƚƚ of the streyte wey; and thei were grete plente of peple; and as thei passed thourgħ the contrey thei brente, and robbed, and wasted, and dide grete harme to the lordes of the weyes and to the lorde of the streite marche, and to the castellein of Wyndesore, and to the kynge Belynant of souħ walis, and to the kynge Brangore more than eny other. And whan he wiste it he gedered aƚƚ his peple, and armed hem, and lepte to horse for to a-venge hem of the shame and of the harme that thei hem diden. And the saisnes com so many and so thikke that aƚƚ the contrey was of hem covered the lengħ of a walshe myle, that brent and slowe

He comes to Eastrangore, which he stuffs with knights and victuals.

The Saxons enter into the march of Strangore.

Belynans is a rich king, and his wife is Esclence.

Dodynell was called the savage, because he hunted in forests.

Ventres is brother to Esclence and Galaishin is cousin to Dodynell.

Brangore is wroth for his friend's loss.

The Saxons waste the country they pass through.

They come so thick that they cover the land.

*[Fol. 86b.]

Belynant comes against them with plenty of people.

euer as thei come. And on the tother syde the kynge Belynant com *ridynge wiħ grete plente of peple tiƚƚ he com to the saisnes that thus distroied the contrey and made soche martire of the mene peple that men myġħt se the smolder of the fire x myle longe, so trouble ther-of was the aire.

Brangore weeps for pity at the destruction.

50,000 Saxons, led by Barahans, Cornyax, Lydarus, Hardrans, and Kyngnenans come riding fast.

Brangore leads his men to the river of Arson.

When they meet there is great noise and cracking of spears.

Whan the kynge Brangore saugħ the distruxion and the grete martire, he toke ther-of grete pitee, and gan to wepe watir wiħ his iyen, and than he requerid his men to haue in mynde to do weƚƚ, and to defende holy cherche and the cristin feiħ; and the saisnes com faste ridinge wiħ baner spred, and were moo than fifty thousande, and hem condited Barahans, and Cornyax, and lydarus, and hardrans, and kyngnenans. These v kynges were riche and myghti, and eche of hem hadde in company x^{Ml}, and alle were thei kyn to Aungis, that Vterpendragon slougħ; and whan the kynge Brangore sye the grete nombre of saisnes, he merveiled fro whens alle myġħt come. And than he gan to prey his men, and require to thynke vpon her worship and to do weƚƚ her devers, and a-bode hem at a passage at a brigge ther thei moste come ouer that lay ouer the river of arson, that was brode and depe, and as soone as thei were mette, thei lete theire horse renne, and smyten harde to-geder the toon vpon the tother. Ther was gret noise and crakkynge of speres, and many oon throwe to grounde bothe horse and man, and that dured longe tiƚƚ that thei come to the brigge, that many fiƚƚ in-to the water, and many a tronchon of speres and sheldes that the sharpe streme bar down the ryver, and it was not fully the houre of pryme.

Carados, leaning out of the window, sees the shields floating on the water, and the fire and dust in the air.

The booke seiħ that the river ran down be-fore Strangore that the kynge Carados helde in his baile, and he was lenynge oute at the wyndowes of the paleise a-bove, and be-heilde the medowes and the river, and the gardins that were grene florisshed, and saugħ the water that was clier and sharp rennynge brougħt down sheldes and speres fletynge grete foyson; and he loked that wey that he saugħ it come fro, and saugħ the aire aƚƚ troble of the fire and duste, and vpon the watir fletynge the harneys of knyġħtes and of horse that were deed and drowned, and dougħt a-noon how the kynge Brangore faugħt wiħ the saisnes. Than he lepe hastely vpon his feet, and cried to his men, "Now as armes, gentiƚƚ knyghtes, ffor he that is not hardy at this nede is not worthi to be a knygħt," and ther was a yonge squyre that was noble and hardy that brougħt the kynge his armes. This squyer was cleped Kay destranx; this squyer hadde ofte Carados somoned to be a knygħt, and he seide that ther-to hadde he no talent, and that he seide for he purposed to serue the kynge Arthur, and to take of hym the ordre of knygħt. Whan the kynge was armede, he asked yef alle the other knyghtis were redy, and thei seide how alle were an horse bakke a-bidynge witħ-oute the yates. And than the kynge asked his horse, and ther-on lepte and rode oute of the town a grete spede, and come to the bataile a-boute mydday. And whan *thei come nygħ thei herde the noise and the strokes at the passage of the brigge, ffor the kynge Brangore witħ-stode hem witħ xv$^{\text{Ml}}$ men, and the saisnes were so many and so thikke that of fin force thei made hym to remeve fro the brigge in-to the playn feelde; but than sholde soone the kynge Brangore haue hadde grete losse, but as the kynge Carados com in fresshe witħ x$^{\text{Ml}}$ men and leide in a-monge hem fercely; and ther be-gan the stour*e* to encrese rigħt harde, and grete mortalite of the saisnes, for thei were not alle rigħt wele armed, and so thei foughten aƚƚ the day, fro that it was passed noone tiƚƚ evensonge, and than dispa*r*bled the cristin, for thei were so sore over-leide witħ grete multitude of saisnes; and than a-roos the shoute and the noise so grete, that iiij myle of a man mygħt haue herde the sounde. But longe mygħt not the men of kynge Brangore ne of kynge Carados endure, but as the kynge Belynans com witħ viij$^{\text{Ml}}$ men of armes wele horsed, that ronne in a-monge hem fiercely, that made hem remove and departe. Whan the kynge Belynans com to the bataile, as was grete nede to the kynge Brangore and to the kynge Carados, ffor thei were so distrussed that thei were euen at fligħt; but whan Belynans com he smote so fiercely vpon hem that these other cristin mygħt weƚƚ recouer be goode leyser, for witħ the kynge Belynans were many goode men and noble knygħtes, ffor ther was the lorde of Wyndesore and the lorde of the streite marche,

He leaps to his feet and calls his knights to arms.

Kaydestranx brings the king's arms.

When the king is armed he asks if his knights are ready.

He leaps on his horse and rides to the battle.

*[Fol. 87*a*.]

When they come near, they hear the noise and strokes at the bridge, where Brangore withstands the Saxons.

Carados comes in among them fiercely.

They fight all day till evensong.

The noise is so great that it can be heard four miles off.

Belynans comes with 8,000 men,

and smites the Saxons fiercely.

There are many noble knights with him.

They kill so many Saxons that the river Arson is red with blood.

The night comes on.

The Saxons travel all night to the rock.

On the morrow Carados, Belynans, and Brangore ride to meet their enemies.

When they find them gone they are wroth.

*[Fol. 87*b*.]

They divide the riches that the Saxons left behind them.

and the Castelein̄ of Glocedon̄ and the Castelein̄ of Galeince, and of the more, and of Rostok, and ther was Carados of the dolerouse toure, and ther was drias le gais of the forest perilouse, and eche of these hadde in̄ his companye CC knyghtes of the beste of the londe, and theī slouġħ and made soche martire of the saisnes that the river of arson̄ be-com̄ aƚƚ reade of the blode and of the brayn̄ that was ther sheed of men̄ and of horse, and hadde not the nyght come on̄ so soone ther hadde neuer a-schaped a-wey saisne, and theī were moo than̄ fifti thousande, and of the cristen̄ ne were but xxxiij^{Ml}; but the nyġħt com̄ that made hem departe, and eche partye drouġħ fer from other, tiƚƚ on̄ the morowe that theī wolde be-gynne a-gein̄ to fiġħt, but the counseile of the kynge of Saxoyne, the saisnes t*ra*ueiled aƚƚ nyġħt to-warde the roche, but moche theī loste of her harneys, for theī hasted hem so faste oute of the contrey, that theī hadde not witħ hem the half of her thinges, and thus lefte it tiƚƚ on̄ the morowe that it was day, and than̄ com̄ the kynge Carados, and the kyng*e* Belynans, and the kynge Brangore, whan̄ theī were redy armed, and alle the barou*n*s of their*e* companye were come to deffende the cristin̄ feitħ, ffor ther were many fuƚƚ noble men and trewe that hadden̄ grete drede that for the faute of her prowesse that holy cherche and cristin̄ feitħ were disavaunced; and theī renged and set their batailes in̄ ordenaunce, and rode that wey as theī trowed to mete their enmyes, but whan̄ theī founde that theī were goon̄, theī were sorye and wrotħ that theī were so ascaped, ffor weƚƚ theī wiste that theī were gon̄ to the *Casteƚƚ of Vandesbyry, and whan̄ theī saugħ it myġħt be noon̄ other theī returned, and eche lorde made to other grete ioye and feeste, and departed togeder the richesse that was lefte be-hynde of the saisnes in̄ soche maner that eche toke that hym liked, so that the moste pore of hem was riche I-nowgħ.

Each promises the other assistance if he should need it.

They return to their cities.

And at theire departinge a-sonder, eche promysed other theire seruyse yef nede were, and eche of hem sholde lete other wite whan̄ theī hadde eny myster*e*. And the kynge Carados repeired hom̄ to his stronge place; and the kynge Brangore rode to Eastrangore, that was a goode town̄ and a riche and fuƚƚ of goode Burgeises, and dwelled ther in pees and in ioye longe tyme; and than com tidinges that the sones of kynge loot hadde lefte theire fader, and were go to logres to serue the kynge Arthur, and the sone of kynge Ventres and the sones of kynge Vrien. And whan Dodyneƚƚ herde these tithinges, he seide to hym-self that he wolde do the same wise, and tolde to his prevy counseile that he wolde go to court; and than he ordeyned to be redy in the pryveest maner that he myȝħt, and sente to seche kay destranx witħ the kynge Carados his oncle, and sent hym worde to speke wi*th* hym at Thorne Casteƚƚ, and that he faile not in no wise to come and bringe witħ hym his nevew kehedin. The Messager toke leve, and rode tiƚƚ he come to strangore, and fonde kay, and seide to hym in counseile as Dodyneƚƚ hadde hym comaunded, and that he sholde com to speke witħ hym at the Casteƚƚ of the thorn, araiede redy to ride on his iourne. And he ansuerde that he sholde be ther redy witħ-ynne the thirde day. Than the messenger toke leve of kay destranx, and com to Dodyneƚƚ the sauage, and tolde hym the ansuere of kay destranx. And whan Dodineƚƚ herde what the messenger hadde seide, he vndirstode a-noon what that kay ment, and made hym redy, and warned his felowes as many as he myȝħt haue, that thei were weƚƚ xxiiij alle yonge bachelers of xiiij or xv yere of age, and com to the Casteƚƚ of Thorn, he and his companye richely be seyn of golde and siluer and robes, and ther a-bode tiƚƚ kay com and his nevew kehedin li bens. And thei brouȝħt in her companye xl yonge gentilmen that alle were bolde and hardy. Whan the childeren were mette thei made to-geder grete ioye the ton to the tother as thei that longe tyme ne hadde not mette. And than seide Dodineƚƚ, "Feire frende kay, I sente to yow for to come speke wi*th* me, and I thanke yow that ye be now I-come, and I shaƚƚ telle yow the cause. I haue herd tydinges that Gawein and Agrauain, and Gaheret, and Gaheries, and Galashin, and Ewein ben gon to the courte of kynge Arthur for to take theire armes, and ther-fore I wiƚƚ go in the same manere; and I love yow so moche that I wiƚƚ nouȝħt do witħ-oute youre leve, and that ye haue ther-of wytinge; and ther-fore sey youre advise yef *ye wiƚƚ come also,

News comes that the sons of Loot, and Ventres, and Urien had gone to Logres.

Dodynell says to himself he will do the same.

He sends to Kaydestranx to meet him at Thorne Castle.

The messenger rides to Strangore and finds Kay,

who says he will be there on the third day.

The messenger brings Kay'sanswer to Dodynell,

who goes to Thorn with twenty-four of his fellows.

Kay and Kehedin bring with them forty young gentlemen.

Dodynell tells Kay how he had heard tidings of Gawein, Agravain, Gaheret, Gaheries, Galashin, and Ewein, and that he desires to go too to the court of Arthur.

*[Fol. 88*a*.]

Kay wishes to go also, and has brought with him Kehedin and four young gentlemen.

On the morrow they depart for Logres.

for to my fader I wiƚƚ not returne in no manere, ffor I haue made redy aƚƚ my purpos and am vpon my weye." "Sir," quod kay, "and ther-fore am I come to yow, ffor I supposed in partye what ye ment, and I haue me so purveied that me nedeth for nothinge returne, ffor I haue in my companye iiij yonge gentilmen that be rigħt hardy, and heire is also my nevew kehedin; and ther-fore lete vs meve whan ye like." "Ye say weƚƚ," seide Dodineƚƚ, "for we shuƚƚ meve to-morowe be-tyme." Thus a-bode the childeren aƚƚ that nygħt in grete ioye, and erly on the morowe thei toke theire wey be the moste prive and disvsed weyes that thei wiste, and wente to logres in this manere. But of hem cesseтħ the tale and returneтħ to the kynge Clarion of Northumbirlonde.

Clarion of Northumberland stuffs his city with victuals and men of arms.

All that bear arms come to the king, and they are 14,000.

Now seith the booke that the kynge Clarion of Northumbirlonde hadde gadered alle the peple that he mygħt, and he stuffed weƚƚ his Citee witħ vitaile and with men of armes, and after he sente thurgħ aƚƚ his londe to hem that hadde oxen or sheep or lambe, or eny other bestes, that thei sholde hem lede into the depe of the forestes, that were wilde and sauage. And thei dide as he hem comaunded, and sente witħ hem hierdes for to kepe the bestes. And whan thei hadde alle thus do, alle the that mygħt bere armes or wepen defensable drowgħ to the kynge in Northumbirlonde, and thei were counted xiiij^{Ml}, and gretly peyned the kynge to kepe weƚƚ the contrey, and lay many nyghtes in the forestes to wayte vpon the passages, and a-noon as he mygħt take eny asspye he lete hym take and put in prison.

The Saxons are assembled at the tents of Brangu and Maglaas.

They complain of their loss and want of victuals.

Upon a day the saisnes were assembled at the tente of kynge Brangu of Saxoyne, and at the teynte of Maglaas the riche kynge of Iselonde, that was cosyn germain to the kynge of Denmark amd brother to amadas, the riche kynge of Ostricħ and of a pertie of[1] [Den]marke and of Iselonde was he lorde. And ther thei complayned gretly of the losse and the[1] [d]amage that the cristin hadde doon hem at the Casteƚƚ de la roche, and the harme that thei dide eu*er*y day; and on the tother side thei playned gretly for defaute of vitaile that was scant iɳ the hoste. Thaɳ sterte vp a yonge knygħt vpoɳ his feet, that was bolde and hardy as of his age, and spake so higħ that he mygħt wele be herde, and seide, "Ha! Brangue, feire oncle, yef ye wiƚƚ suffre me to go oɳ forrey iɳ-to a londe that I knowe, I shaƚƚ bringe yow vitaile plente, for the contre is fuƚƚ of aƚƚ goode; and I shaƚƚ take witħ me soche of youre peple as I shaƚƚ chese, yef minadus my fader wiƚƚ suffre that I goo, and maglaans myn oncle, for witħ-oute theire leve I wiƚƚ not go iɳ no manere." "Ffeire nevewe," seide the kynge Brangue, "I here yow sey nothinge but weƚƚ of this that ye desire to vndirtake; but telle me now be-*fore in-to what londe desire ye for to go." "That shaƚƚ I wele telle yow," seide Orienx, "I desire to go iɳ-to Northumbirlonde, and to the yates of the Citee of Cambenek, and witeth it wele that it is the plentevousest contrey of this londe; and yef we shuƚƚ fynde eny vitaile in this londe ther shuƚƚ we haue plente." "And I grante yow, feire nevewe," seid Brangue, "and ther-for cheseth witħ yow soche as yow plesetħ." "Sir," seide he, "gramercy." Thaɳ Orienx chese oute of peple as many as hym liked, that were wele xl^{Ml} witħ-outeɳ the petaile that after hem folowed, that desired the wynnynge, and coɱ rigħt be-fore Norham, and robbed and brent and distroied the londe; but of hem I shaƚƚ stinte, and telle of the p*ar*liament that kynge Brangue heilde.

---

[1] A small part of the MS. is here burnt out.

A young knight starts up and offers to go out in the land and bring plenty of victuals.

Brangue asks *[Fol. 88*b*.] him where he will go, and Orienx answers, "to the gates of Cambenek."

Brangue allows him to go.

Orienx chooses 40,000 men, and comes before Norham and destroys the land.

Whaɳ that Orienx was departed fro the hoste, the kynge cleped Sorioundes, his nevew, and seide, "Feire cosiɳ, how is it that ye wiƚƚ not go no wey? Take of my meɳ as many as ye wiƚƚ, and go iɳ-to the londe of kynge ydiers, of Cornewaile, and brynge with yow thens what yow likettħ, and yef eny man yow with-stonde, take with yow soche peple that ye take of hem vengeaunce." And whaɳ he herde his oncle thus speke he lepe oɳ his feet gladde and mery, for he was of grete prowesse, and seide, "Sire, gramercy." Thaɳ he chese at his volunte iɳ the hoste xl^{Ml}, and whaɳ theɩ were redy theɩ to theire wey towarde cornewaile, and robbed the londe as theɩ wente, and distroied the contrey and brente. But of hem ne speketh the boke no more yet a while, but speketħ of the p*ar*liament in the hoste of saisnes.

The king tells Sorioundes to go into the land of king Ydiers of Cornwall.

Sorioundes chooses 40,000 out of the host and robs and destroys the country in his way to Cornwall.

Mynadus calls Hurtant, and tells him to go into king Loot's land.

Hurtant takes 60,000, and wastes and destroys the land.

Now whan Soriountes, that was the nevew of maglaans, was departed oute of the hoste as ye haue herde, that Mynadus, the kynge, called hurtant, his nevew, and seide, "Hurtant, nevew, ye moste go in-to leonoys, and in-to Orcanye, in-to the londes of kynge loot, and take wiħ yow of my men at youre wille, and loke that ye do so, that I maye conne yow thonke." And he lepte vpon foote and seide, "Sir, gramercy," and toke soche company as hym liste; and whan thei were redy thei were lx^{Ml}, and rode tiƚƚ thei come in-to the londes of kynge loot, and begonne to waste and distroie aƚƚ that thei mygħt. But here leveħ to speke more of hem and returneħ agein to Br[1][angu]e, and Maglaans, and mynadus and other.

The heathen kings hold a parliament how they shall take Vandesbiry,

which is very strong, and wellsituated.

*[Fol. 89*a*.]

The Saxons look on which side they can best take it.

Whan Orienx, and Soriountes, and hurtant were thus departed fro the hoste as ye haue herde, the hethen kynges helde a gret p*ar*liament how thei sholde take the town of vandesbiry that was so stronge, ffor the booke seiħ that it stode vpon a plain grounde, ne ther was nother hiƚƚ ne mounteyne ny it of two myle, and it was weƚƚ diked, and large, and weƚƚ watered, and depe, and the marysse grete and brode of a bowe shot, and be-twene the town and the diche stode the walles, and the towres of ston en-batailed rigħt thikke, and in-to the town were but two entrees, and at eche entre two porte colyses and stronge yates covered wiħ Iren nailed, that shet wiħ two leves weƚƚ and strongly barred. Wher-to sholde I longe devise yow the strengħe *of the town, ffor ther-to it sat so esely vpon the river that com rennynge vpon the oon side of the town be-twene the drie londe and the maras, and envirou*n*ed the contrey on alle parties, that the town mygħt not be made drie but on that oon part, and on that syde were two paire diches so depe and brode, and the maras so brode and depe as an arblast mygħt shete, and on that side was the grete seege of saisnes, that it lasted more than iiij myle, and thei wente be-holdynge on whiche side thei mygħt it beste take and in what maner*e*, and ther-of thei toke amonge hem grete counseile how thei sholde do, ffor thei saugħ that it mygħt not be wonne but by famyn. Ther was a kynge that hiħt Margoundres, that dressed hym vpon his feet and seide to the kynge Brangue, "Sir, sir, me semetħ than that ye most be so longe in this londe that the town be take be famyn, and in the tyme that we ly be-fore this town ther may be taken a-nother town other be famyn or be other engyne, for as soone shaƚƚ we take tweyne as oon." "Trewly," quod Maglaans, "ye sey troutħ, and ther-fore who that wiƚƚ assent to my counseile let vs sende the thirde part of our peple be-fore the town of Clarence, and alle tho that come oute of oure contrey shuƚƚ go witħ hem to the seege, ffor in this reame is not the fowrthe part of peple to oure that myġt vs remeve from that place."

---

[1] A small portion of the MS. is here burnt out.

Margoundres says it must be taken by famine, and counsels that they take another town at the same time.

Maglaans agrees to send a third of their people to besiege the town of Clarence.

"Sir," quod Brangue, "who shaƚƚ go witħ yow? a-corde ye who shaƚƚ go." "That shaƚƚ I weƚƚ telle yow," quod Mynadus the kynge. "Ther shaƚƚ go thider the kynge hardogobrans, and the kynge Synagons, and the kynge Sorbares, and the kynge Margoundres, and the kynge Maglaans, and the kynge Mycenes, and the kynge Pyngres, and the kynge Saphirus, and the kynge Thoas, and the kynge Semptipres, and the kynge Plantamore, and the kynge Sonygrex, and the kynge Matħucus, and eche of these haue at his baner xx^{Ml} men, and holde the seege be-fore the town that noon entre ne isse oute." And this was the ende of her counseile, and to this thei be alle a-corded; and than thei a-raide hem meny and rode to the town of Clarence, and distroied aƚƚ the contrey a-boute as thei wente, and whan thei were come be-fore Clarence thei piġt teintes and pavilou*n*s aƚƚ a-boute the town, and a-bode there riġt longe. But resteth the p*ro*cesse of hem tiƚƚ efte soone, and speketh of kynge Clarion, of Northumbirlonde.

Brangue asks who is to go.

Mynadus says who shall go.

Each king to lead 20,000 men.

They ride to Clarence and destroy all the country in their way.

Whan the kynge Clarion saugħ hem distroie his londe and his contrey he was riġt wrotħ, and he toke a spie and sente hym to wite yef thei were grete plente of peple, and whan hadde hem alle sein he returned gretly affraied, and seide to the kynge that thei were moo than fifty thousande. Whan the kynge herde these tidinges he toke a dameseƚƚ and sente to the Duke Escam, of Cambanyk, and sente hym worde to mete witħ hym at

When Clarion sees his land destroyed he is very wroth.

He sends a damsel to duke Escam,

*[Fol. 89*b*.]

and asks him to meet him at the strait of the roche magot with much people. The duke summons his people, and rides forth to the river Savarne, where he finds Clarion.

They are very wroth when they see the fire and flame.

They ride forth till they meet those they sought.

The Saxons lose the most men.

Escam and Clarion give them great battle and slay 10,000,

but the Saxons come in great force.

The noble knights that are with Clarion.

Those with Escam.

the streite of the roche magot, vpon the river of Sauarne, *wiħ as moche peple as he myghħt assemble, ffor the saisnes be entred in-to the londe that alle distroieħ. Whan the Duke herde these tidinges he somowned his people, aƚƚ that he myghħt haue, so that he hadde xij^{Ml} or moo, and rode forħ tiƚƚ that he com to the roche vpon the river of Sauarne, and whan he com there he fonde Clarion, the kynge of Northumbirlonde, wiħ thre thousande men of armes; and whan thei were mette thei made grete ioye, and soone ther-after thei saughħ fire and flame lepe thourghħ the contrey, and the duste and the powder a-roos so grete that aƚƚ the aire therof semed trouble. Whan the kynge Clarion and the Duke Escam saughħ this grete distruxion, it was no nede to aske yef thei were wroħ and angry. Than thei rode that wey as thei saughħ the fire a-rise, and mette peple that fledde criynge and makinge grete sorow for her losse, and ther-of hadde thei grete pite, and rode forħ tiƚƚ thei mette wiħ hem that thei hadde soughħt, but than thei made no lenger a-bidinge but mette to-geder fiercely, and ther was grete slaughter bothe of men and of horse, and the saisnes loste moche of her men a[t] the firste metynge, ffor thei were spredde a-brode vpon and down the contrey and gadered the praye towarde the hoste, and were of the forreyours xv^{Ml}, and to hem the Duke Escam and the kynge Clarion yaf grete bataile, and foughħt from prime to myd-day, and the frenshe booke seiħ thei slough x^{Ml} of the saisnes of the pytaile; but whan the grete chiualrie com thei were gretly affraied, ffor thei were so grete nombre. And whan the kynge Clarion and the Duke saughħ the saisnes come so grete foyson it was no nede to aske yef thei were affraied, and yet hadde thei in her company noble knyghtes grete plente, ffor wiħ Clarion was ladris de la dolerouse garde with a C of gode knyghtes, and ther was Sensadoyns the Castelien of Nohant wiħ a thousande men of armes, and Bruns saunz pitee that heilde the Casteƚƚ of the depe slade in Northumbirlonde; and wiħ the Duke Escam was Serebruns, the lorde of Salerne, wiħ viij^{Ml} men wele horsed, and wiħ hym also was marke, the lorde Roestok, that broughħt a feire companye of two thousande men of armes, and ther was also the lorde of Taumdes witħ viij^{Ml} men noble and hardy, and ther was also the lorde of the white tour, that was a noble knygħt and an hardy, witħ vij hundred knyghtes vpon startelinge stedes, and ther was Canagus, the nevew of kynge Arthur, wele armed and richely, witħ thre hundred felowes, and ther was also Agrauadins, lorde of the stronge Casteƚƚ, witħ foure hundred knyghtes wele horsed, and whan thei were alle assembled thei were aymed what oon what other xxxv^{Ml}, and thei heilde hem alle cloos to-geder vpon the river of Sauarne, and the saisnes com rennynge vpon hem witħ so grete foyson that *litiƚƚ while sholde thei haue dured ne hadde be the straytenesse of the grounde ther thei were, ffor the saisnes were of grete pride, and grete lordes, and the beste knyghtis of aƚƚ the hoste, and ther-to of hem were so grete foyson, that litiƚƚ thei sette be the cristin, and hem assailed fuƚƚ harde. Ther was anguyshous medley and harde stour, and on the tother side thei defended so weƚƚ that on hem thei gat no grounde, and thei launched at hem speres and dartes sharp̄ grounde, and eche of hem hurte and wounded other dispiteously. And thus thei endured thre dayes, that neuer thei dide of haubrek ne helme from theire hedes tiƚƚ the nygħt that thei ete soche vitaile as thei hadde, but it was fuƚƚ smaƚƚ. But now turnetħ the tale a litiƚƚ fro hem and returneth to Merlin and to the kynge Arthur, that be in Toraise, in Tamelyde, in ese, and rigħt moche honoured of the kynge leodogan.

The Saxons come running upon them,

*[Fol. 90*a*.]

and assail them full hard.

They endure three days.

The tale returns to Merlin and king Arthur.

CHAPTER XVI.

MERLIN'S JOURNEY TO LOGRES AND VISIT TO GAWEIN. ENCOUNTER BETWEEN THE CHILDREN AND ORIENX.

Fuƚƚ grete was the ioye that thei ledde in the town of Toraise for the victorie and the wynnynge that thei hadde vpon theire enmyes, and thei a-bode theire peple that assembled euery day on euery part, and the kynge Arthur ther was fuƚƚ richely serueved and honoured of the kynge leodegan and of his doughter, that moche her peyned, be the commaundement of hir fader, and

There is great joy in the town of Toraise at the victory.

Arthur is greatly honoured.

Merlin takes the three kings apart and tells them he must go to Logres,

and how the princes and barons are grieved by the Saxons,

who have gone against the king of Cornwall, king Loot, king Clarion, and duke Escam,

and how Ewein the great and Ewein the "a-voutres" were departed, and Kay and Keheden had gone to Gawein.

*[Fol. 90*b*.]

He tells them to be merry while he is away.

vpon̄ a day as the kynge Arthur was moche worshiped and in̄ grete ese. Than̄ Merlin̄ com and toke the thre kynges apart and seide, "Sirs, I moste go in̄-to the reame of logres, for ther is now grete nede of counseyle and of helpe, nougħt for that the londe hatħ eny pereile, but that it shaƚƚ weƚƚ be deffended from eueƚƚ doers, and I do yow to wite that the princes and the bârou*n*s betħ moche greved witħ the saisnes that to many haue in̄ her londes, and thei̇̄ haue be-seged two Citees thourgħ her pride, wherof that oon̄ is vandesberes and the tother is Clarence, and ther be assembled the peple of moo than̄ xl dyuerse regiou*n*s, and yet thei̇̄ encrece euery day more and more; and than̄ he hem tolde how that the saisnes were departed, and how that oo[n] part yede vpon̄ the kynge of Cornewaile, and the tother vpon̄ the kynge loot, and the thirde vpon̄ the kynge Clarion̄ and the Duke Escam, and after that he tolde hem alle the tidinges, and alle the batailes, and aƚƚ the trouble that hadde I-be, and aƚƚ the discounfitures be-twene the saisnes and cristin̄ kynges, and the grete parliament that the saisnes heilden̄ for to a-sege the two townes, and how Ewein̄ the grete and Ewein̄ the a-voutres were departed fro kynge vrien̄ her fader, and how Dodineƚƚ the sauage, and kay destranx, and kehedin lebens com̄ on̄ the tother side toward logres to a-bide ther witħ Gawein̄, and seide how thei̇̄ wolde neuer be cleped knyghtis vn-to the tyme that the kynge Arthur hem girde witħ her swerdes, and I do yow to wete that thei̇̄ may not endure but thei̇̄ haue other cou*n*seile *than̄ her owne, ffor the saisnes be so spredde a-boute thourgħ the londe that thei̇̄ shuƚƚ be take but thei̇̄ haue better counseile than̄ hem-self, and this is the cause that I wiƚƚ go, and loke that ye be mery and weƚƚ at ese, and restetħ yow that ye go nothir hider ne thider tiƚƚ that ye se me, and I shaƚƚ not longe tarye."

Ban prays Merlin not to abide long away.

"Ha, feire frende," seide the kynge Ban̄, "ne a-bide not longe, for than̄ sholde we alle be deed and distroied, yef ye vs now for-sake we mygħt sey that ye hadde vs alle be-traied." "How is that, feire lordes? haue ye doute that I sholde not come a-gein̄? now be-war that neuer ye it thinke, for than̄ haue ye loste my love." "Sir," seide the kynge Ban̄, "I thenke it for noon eveƚƚ that I haue to yow, but for to haue your companye that I so moche love." "Now lete it be," quod Merlin, "for ye shuƚƚ me haue here a-gein with yow er than ye haue bataile in this reame, and therfore I yow comaunde to god, for I may here no lenger tarien;" and wiħ that he departed so sodeynly thens that thei knewe not where he was be-come. And than he com the same nyght to Blase his maister in Northumbirlonde, that grete ioye hym made whan he hym saugh as he that loved moche his companye. And Merlin tolde hym alle these aventures that were be-fallen in the reme of Tamelide seħ that he departed; and after that he tolde hym alle thinges that were fallen to the kynges of the reame of grete Bretaigne, that nought he lefte vn-tolde; and he wrote in hys booke worde for worde like as he hym tolde; and by hym haue we the knowinge ther-of in-to this tyme. And whan he hadde alle these thinges writen, thanne he tolde hym for what nede he hadde lefte the thre kynges in the reame of Tamelide. And the same nyght that Merlin spake thus wiħ Blase was Orienx and his meyne logged vpon the river of humbir, enteringe in-to the londe; but now resteħ the processe of Merlin and of Blase a-while, and of the saisnes, and spekeħ of Seigramor, that is departed fro Costantynnoble wiħ CCC felowes for to be made knyght*es* of kynge Arthurs honde.

Merlin says he will return before they have another battle.

He comes the same night to Blase, who makes great joy at his coming.

Merlin tells his adventures,

and Blase writes them word for word in his book.

The same night Orienx was lodged on the river Humber.

Now seiħ the booke of Blase that so haħ Seigramor hym spedde seħ that he departed fro the riche Citee of Costantynnoble, that he com to the port of hucent that thei a-rived at the port of Dover; and whan thei were alle come to the londe thei were right gladde, and trussed theire harneys, and lepe on theire horse, and toke theire wey toward Kamelot, and iourneyed so as thei that knewe not the weyes, ne fonde not of whom to aske after the kynge Arthur, and fonde also the contrey brent and wasted as the saisnes hadde passeth thourgh; and the childeren ne wiste no worde tiƚƚ sodeinly thei blusshed vpon a grete parte of saisnes that Orienx hadde desseuered on a companye, and were xx^{Ml}, and went robbinge a-boute Norhant, that noon hem ne letted of the pray that theire peple hadde gadered. Whan these childeren a-proched *the saisnes wiħ-ynne a myle, thei mette

Seigramor and his knights arrive at the port of Dover.

They take their way to Kamelot, and find all the country burnt and wasted.

They come upon some of Orienx's company,

*[Fol. 91*a*.]

wiħ peple of the contrey that fledde to the wode for drede, for in the londe was grete sorow and desese in tho dayes. Whan the childeren hem mette thei asked what hem eiled, and thei hem tolde that thei fledde for the saisnes that aƚƚ the contre distroied. And than Seigramor asked, "Where is the kynge Arthur?" And thei ansuerde that he was gon to the reame of Tamelide. "And who is than in this londe?" quod Seigramor. Than seide the men of the contrey that the sone of kinge loot of Orcanye, that were nevewes of kynge Arthur, were come for to serue for to take theire armes of kynge Arthur. "And where ben thei?" quod Seigramor. "At Camelot," seide thei, "but for goddes love, feire gentiƚƚ knyghtes, ne go not ferther, for than shuƚƚ ye alle be slain and distroied." "Now," quod Seigramor, "telle vs what wey stondeħ Camelot." "Trewly," seiden thei, "ye be riȝħt weƚƚ in the wey, yef it ne were for these false sarazins that here be comynge, and, ther-fore, fleeth, or ye be alle deed." "How fer is it hens to Camelot?" quod Seigramor. "Sir, it is vj mile vnto a plain that dureħ wele two myle fro thens." Whan Seigramor vndirstode that he hadde but viij myle, he cried to his felowes, and seide, "Gentiƚƚ squyers, now as armes, for now shaƚƚ be sein who is noble and worthi; and loke that thise my[s]belevinge saisnes that thus distroieħ the cristin feiħ ne bere nouȝħt a-wey of youres be force but it be dere solde, ffor yef we may passe hem thourȝħ and gete be-twene hem and Camelot, we shuƚƚ than come thider be strengthe of oure horse yef we haue grete mystere." Than a-liȝħt the squyers and hem armed. Ther sholde ye haue sein hem do on fressħ newe hauberkes briȝħt shynynge as fin silueir; and thei hadden hattes of fin steiƚƚ a-bove theire coiffes of Iren vpon theire heedes; and than thei lefte theire palfreyes and lepe vpon stedes covered in maile that thei hadde ther so good and so feire that no man neded to seche better in no londe. And than thei hem renged clos on a sop as starlinges, and rode forħ toward the saisnes, that sauȝħ hem comynge; but now a litiƚƚ resteħ of hem and speke of Merlyn, that was in Northumberlonde wiħ Blase.

and meet the people of the country flying from the Saxons.

Seigramor asks where king Arthur is. They answer, "At Tamelide."

And tell him that the nephew of Arthur is at Camelot.

He asks where Camelot is,

and how far.

When he learns they are eight miles off he calls his squires to arms.

They are gay to see with their bright coats of mail and hats of steel.

Merlin leaves Blase, and comes to Camelot in the semblance of an old man.

Whan Merlin hadde tolde to Blase alƚe the merveiles of the londe as thei were fallen seħ he departed from hym. In the morowe erly he com be-fore the town of Camelot. And he com in the semblaunce of an olde man, and hadde on a russet cote torne and aƚƚ thredebare; and he was moche and longe and courbed, and brode sholderes and leene for age, and the heer of his heede entermedled white and broun, and longe berde, and bar a grete staff on his nekke, and drof gret foyson of beestes be-fore hym.

He cries so that he may be heard by those on the wall,

And whan he com be-fore the town he be-gan to make grete sorow, and cried higħ and cleer that thei wiħ-ynne vpon the walles mygħt wele it here how he yede, seyinge, *"Ha, lorde god, how grete pite is it that so feire children shuƚƚ thus be slayn and alle to hewen with wronge and grete synne. A! ha! kynge Arthur, goode sir, whiche ffrendes thow shalt lese this day that moche the sholden helpe yef thei mygħt lyve thi londe to mayntene. Ha, Seigramor, gentiƚƚ squyer, fre and deboneir, that thow shalt thus suffre angwissħ of deħ, now oure lorde god yow socoure and helpe that ye be not slain, and yef that ye be ded, he haue the sowle of yow that it be neuer turmentid in the peynes of helle, as he is very god and man fuƚƚ of mercy and grace, and also to saue and helpe yowre felowes in the maner*e* that thus dispitousely shuƚƚ be martired for defaute of socoure."

*[Fol. 91*b*.]

and bewails what is about to happen to Seigramor.

Gawein and his brethren who are upon the wall hear his words.

These wordes that the carl seide, vndirstode weƚƚ Gawein and his bretheren that were vpon the walles of the town, and were alle redy armed, and be-heilde the fier and the smoke of the saisnes as thei brente the contrey a-boute, ffor he was come to Camelot for to kepe the town as soone as thei wiste the saisnes were entred the contrey, and were gon vpon the walles to see yef the saisnes come for to assaile the town. And Gawein hadde wele herde and vndirstonde the wordes that the karƚƚ hadde seide.

Gawein calls to the old man, and asks him why he makes this sorrow.

Than Gawein hym cleped wiħ an higħ voyse, and seide, "Man! man! com hedir, and speke with me, and teƚƚ vs what thow eylest, and whi thow makest this sorow, and telle vs who is that that thow goist thus regratynge and be-monynge."

The carl turns a deaf ear, and smites his staff on the

And the carƚƚ leide to the deef ere and smote his staff on the grounde as he hadde ben oute of his mynde, for grete sorow that he hadde at his herte; and than he lenyd hym vpoꞑ his staff and be-gaꞑ to make grete sorowe; and whaꞑ he hadde thus hym longe waymented, he drof a-geiꞑ his bestes as thougħ he wolde haue fledde to the forest; and thaꞑ he seide a-geiꞑ witħ an higħ voyce, “A! haa! chiualrie of logres, where art thow be-come, ffor witħ-ynne these viij dayes men seide ther was come in-to this contrey aƚƚ the socoure of the worlde, and I herde sey that the nevewes of kynge Arthur sholde defende this contrey; certeys eueƚƚ it sheweth whaꞑ he suffreth to be slaiꞑ the merveile of the worlde.” Whaꞑ that Gaweiꞑ vndirstode these wordes he was rigħt angwisshouse for to knowe whi the carƚƚ hadde this seide, and whi he so waymented and cleped hym a-geiꞑ witħ a lowde voyce thre or foure tymes, and seide, “Howe, karƚƚ, howe? speke to me and telle me what thow eiƚest.” And euer he turned the heed iꞑ trauers, and made semblant as he hadde hym not herde; and Gaweiꞑ hym cleped efte soones, and thaꞑ he lefte vp his heed that was lothly and rivelid, and loked oꞑ higħ to hyꞑ witħ oon eye opeꞑ and a-nother clos, and grennynge witħ his tetħ as a maꞑ that loked a-geiꞑ the sonne, and ansuered, “What wilt thow?” Quod Gaweiꞑ, “Come a litiƚƚ nerre and speke witħ me.” And he drougħ ner tiƚƚ he coꞑ vndir the walles of the towꞑ vpoꞑ the diche, and seide, “Now maist thow sey what thow wilt, *but sey hastely, for my bestes goꞑ.” “I wiƚƚ,” quod Gaweiꞑ, “that thow telle whi that thow wepest, and what he is that thow hast thus regreted, and whi thow hast so blamed the Chyualrie of this contrey.” “Yef thow wilt graunte me that thow shalt do thi power to delyuer hym I wiƚƚ telle the.” “I the graunte,” quod Gaweiꞑ, “as I am trewe squyer, that I shaƚƚ ther-to do aƚƚ my mygħt that I haue iꞑ the worlde.” And whaꞑ the karƚƚ herde that Gaweiꞑ was so desirouse for to wite whi he was come thider, he seide to Gaweiꞑ, “Feire sir, what be ye?” “My name,” quod he, “is Gaweiꞑ, the nevew of kynge Arthur.” “Treuly I haue grete pitee of a companye of yonge Gentilmeꞑ that betħ higħ mennes sones that betħ fightinge at the ende of this launde a-yen the saisnes that neuer so fewe me*n* contened so longe a-geiꞑ so moche peple, ffor thei but thre hundred that figħteꞑ ageiꞑ thre thousande; and

ground as if he were out of his mind.

He cries out to the chivalry of Logres.

Gawein calls him again three or four times,

but he turns his head as if he had not heard.

Gawein calls again.

The carl asks, “What wilt thou?” and comes under the walls.

*[Fol 92*a*.]

Gawein asks why he weeps.

The carl asks Gawein what is his name.

what be theiɳ," quod Gaweiɳ, "and what go theiɳ for to seche?" Quod the karƚƚ, "Theiɳ sey that the lorde of hem is cleped Seigramor, the nevew of the Emperour of Costantinnoble, that is come in-to this contrey for to take his armes of the kynge Arthur. Now haue I seide aƚƚ that I knowe; but I knowe it weƚƚ that ye wiƚƚ not hym socoure, and so I haue loste my labour*e*, ffor I knewe weƚƚ that ye haue not the herte ne the hardynesse for to go thider. Netherdeles, yef ye go thider and ye may hym socoure, ye may yow a-vaunte that ye haue wonne a feire emprise and a riche."

and tells him of Seigramor,

but says he knows he wil not succour him.

Whaɳ Gaweiɳ vndirstode the wordes of the karƚƚ that so hym cleped cowarde, he was a-shamed, and cried, "Now to horse, gentiƚƚ knyghtes and gentiƚƚ felowes,[1] and sue me for I go." And as sone as he hadde seide that worde he lepe to horse and alle his felowes after, and rode oute of the towɳ in aƚƚ haste; and whaɳ theiɳ were alle oute theiɳ were iiij^{Ml} what ooɳ what other. And Gaweiɳ coɱ aƚƚ be-fore, and come to the karƚƚ and seide, "Lepe vpoɳ this horse, and lede vs ther these childereɳ fighteɳ." Ant the karƚƚ dide his comaundem*en*t, that for nooɳ other thinge was come theder, and rode formest ther as theiɳ were fightynge; and whaɳ theiɳ neyhed nygħ theiɳ founde the childereɳ fightinge merveilously, and hadde slaiɳ of the saisnes moo thaɳ vij^{C}, but ther were so many of hem that theiɳ mygħt not longe endure; and ther dide Seigramoor the grettest prowesse that eny maɳ saugħ euer, ffor he heilde an axe witħ bothe hondes, and was be-fore his felowes vpoɳ a stede that was swyfte and rigħt stronge, ffor whaɳ theiɳ gaɳ hym assaile he smote iɳ a-monge heɱ so harde and so depe that he was loste as it hadde be iɳ a see from the sigħt of his felowes; and the saisnes hym enclosed oɳ alle sides, and Seigramor, that heilde the ax that was sharp̄ I-grounde, thougħt to perce thourgħ to his felowes, he smote so grete strokes oɳ bothe sides that he slowgħ aƚƚ that he raugħt a fuƚƚ stroke, and theiɳ fledde oɳ euery side from hym that kneweɳ his strokes, and nooɳ was so hardy that durst hym a-byde, but

When Gawein understands the carl's words he calls the knights to horse, and rides out of the town with 4,000 men.

The carl rides foremost and leads them.

Seigramoor does the greatest prowess that any man ever saw,

but the Saxons surround him,

---

[1] This word is spelt "fellowles" in the MS.

*[Fol. 92*b*.] and his fellows cannot long endure.

Gawein and his fellows spring in among the Saxons and throw 2,000 to the ground.

Orienx says he will be avenged.

Seigramor smites great strokes with his axe in both hands.

He is well shapen.

Gawein asks who he is.

The battle is great between Orienx and the children.

launched to hym sharpe grounde speres and gleyves and other wepnes; but thus mygħt *thei not longe endure that thei ne sholde haue be deed or elles taken, but as Gawein com wiħ his companye, ffor Orienx peyned hym moche hem for to take that was a noble knygħt and a sure; and he sette vpon the childeren and kepte hem in so short and streite that noon myght passe, and foughten so felly that the childeren were waxen feble for lakke of breħ, and yef it ne hadde be for Seigramor only ther hadde noon of hem ascaped. But his defence was so grete aƚƚ a-boute hym that merveile it was how he mygħt it endure; but in the ende a-vailed litiƚƚ the weƚƚ doynge of hym or eny other ne hadde Gawein come soone wiħ his companye of yonge bachelers. And as Gawein com to the stronge stour the childeren were in gret mischief; and than he and his felowes spronge vpon hem so sharply that at the first shofte thei threw of hem to grounde mo than two thousande. And of that was Orienx sorowfuƚƚ, ffor neuer hadde he sein so fewe peple so weƚƚ hem contene; and he heilde a stronge spere and the heed sharp I-grounde, and rode in-to the renge formest, and seide he wolde be a-venged on hem that hadde hym wratthed. And Gawein hadde so smyten a-boute hym on eu*er*y side that he fonde the childeren fuƚƚ wery for travaile, and saugħ Seigramor, that was a-fore in the fronte, and hielde an axe in bothe handes wherwiħ he smote grete strokes out of mesure. And he was moche and semly, and ther-to the beste shapen chielde to have sougħt thourgħ eny reame, and whom that he a-raught was hitte so harde that it warant neither Iren ne stieƚƚ ne noon armour that he ne smot thourgħ owther arme or sholder or thigħ or other member, and shewde merveiles aƚƚ a-boute. And whan Gawein saugħ aƚƚ this he asked of the olde man that was by hym what he was. And he seide it was Seigramor, the nevew of the Emp*er*our of Costantinnoble; but helpe hym delyuerly, for it is grete myster. Than Gawein renged his companye, and lete renne at hem so fiercely that in her comynge thei threwe to grounde of the saisnes grete plente, deed and wounded thourgħ wiħ sharpe wepenes. Grete was the bataile a-gein Orienx of the chylderen, but at grete myschief thei were, for on Gaweins side were but iiij^{Ml} and thre hundred that Seigramor hadde brougħt, and of the saisnes were xx^{Ml}, wiťh-oute hem that ronne thourgħ the contrey that brente and robbed, of whiche were xl^{Ml}. Whan that Orienx saugħ that so smaƚƚ a peple with-stode hym so felly, he hadde ther-of grete dispite, and cried to his men, and swor that in eueƚƚ tyme sholde eny ascape he caught, and com drivinge agein Agrauain, that oon of his nevewes hadde slain before his iyen.

Orienx swears that none shall escape.

And whan Orienx saugħ that, he spored his steede and smote Agrauain vpon the shelde, that he perced througħ the plites of his haubreke vndir the side, that the spere hede shewed on the tother side, and he shof ther-on so sore that he bar hym from his horse to the grounde. Whan Gawein saugħ his brother falle he hadde grete drede leste that he hadde be deed, and he heilde a trenchant axe and come to the saisne that hadde hi*m* vn-horsed, *and wende to smyte hym vpon the helme, but whan Orienx saugħ the stroke come he it douted, and couered hym wiťh his shielde, and Gawein hym smote that the axe bente and slit the sheilde in two, the stroke was grete, and Orienx spored his horse forťh, the stroke descended vpon the helme and kut the cercle and a quarter of the helme, and the mayle of the haubreke be-hynde, and the horse chyne a-sonder, that he blusht to the grounde, and Gaheries smote so Solunant thourgħ the heed wiťh an axe that ded he drof to the erthe, and Gaheret smote Vabibre thourgħ the helme that he slit hym to the teťh, and Galashin smote Pinados that the heed fley in-to the feilde.

He smites Agravain on the shield.

Gawein fears his brother is killed.

*[Fol. 93*a*.]

He smites Orienx to the ground.

Gaheries kills Solunant, Gaheret kills Vabibre, and Galashin kills Pinados.

Whan the saisnes saugħ Orienx lye at the grounde thei hadde grete drede that he hadde be deed, and shof alle to the rescewe ther a-boute hym environ, and bar hym oute of the presse in-to the feilde, but he was stonyed of the stroke that he myghťt not stonde on his feet ne meve no membre that he hadde, and ther-to he made so lotly chere and so hidouse semblant, that alle wende he hadde ben deed, and made a-monge hem grete doeƚƚ and wepynge that aƚƚ the bataile lefte, and the childeren haue Agravain taken[1] vp ther he was fallen and set hym on horse, and the

The Saxons fear that Orienx is killed, and rush to his rescue and bear him out of the press.

The children horse Agravain.

---

[1] This word is written "tken" in the MS.

The carl changes his form to that of an armed knight, and counsels Gawein to return to Camelot.

Gawein comes to Seigramor and welcomes him.

Seigramor asks him his name.

karƚƚ that hadde brougħt thider Gawein hadde chaunged his forme to a-nother, and hadde take the semblance of a knygħt armed, and than com to Gawein and to his other bretheren and seide, "Feire lordes, yef ye do be my counseile, lete vs take the wey now rigħt towarde Camelot while these saisnes entende to make this sorowe." Whan Gawein vndirstode these wordes, he wiste wele his counseile was wise and witħ-oute trecherie, and com a-noon to Seigramor*e* and seide he was rigħt welcome and his companye, and he a-gein hym salude as deboner and curteys, and than he seid, "Ha! seig*ra*mor, feire frende, it is tyme now that we go and lede witħ vs the peple that is vs be lefte, for I-nougħ haue we wonne setħ that saf and sounde we repeyre." Than Seigramor asked what he was that so spake vn-to hym, and he seide, "My name is Gawein, the nevew of kynge Arthur, and the sone of kynge loot of Orcanye, and kepe the londes of myn oncle, I and my bretheren, tiƚƚ he be come from Tamelide, and we be come hider for not elles but yow for to helpe and to socour*e*, ffor in the morowe it was tolde how ye were assailed of the saisnes rigħt sore."

The knight comes to Gawein and asks him why he abides here.

Great plenty of Saxons are coming.

*[Fol. 93*b*.]

Gawein and his followers, with Seigramor, ride forth to Camelot.

Than com fortħ the knygħt that hadde spoke to Gawein, and cried, "A! Gawein, feire sir, what a-bide ye that ye come not fortħ youre wey; se not ye that aƚƚ the worle of peple cometħ vpon vs, wherefore we may not ascape yef ye a-bide?" Whan Gawein herde hym so haste to garison, he be-heilde and saugħ come so grete plente of saisnes, and so grete foison, that aƚƚ the feilde was couered, and thei were alle armed, and com rydinge *fiercely, and made soche noyse and soche murm*ur*, that a myle of lengthe it mygħt haue ben herde, and whan that Gawein saugħ the saisnes come in soche maner, he seide to Seigramor, "Sir, and hit plese yow gowe hens." And he hym ansuerde and seide, "Witħ goode wiƚƚ." And thei than rode fortħ toward Camelot clos to-geder and streite, that ye mygħt haue caste a glove ouer her hedes covered vndir steiƚƚ; and the saisnes yet entended to Orienx makynge doeƚƚ and sorowe, but withynne a while a-roos the saisne fro disturdison, and saugħ hem a-boute hym made grete sorowe and hevynesse. Than he asked a newe helme and sheilde and spere, for he was of grete herte and a goode knyghħt and hardy as of his age, and he swore yef he myghħt withħ hym that yaf hym that acooley whereof he hadde so leyen in swowne at erthe, he sholde it hym wele a-quyte, and than he lepe to horse that was stronge and swyfte rennynge, and rode that wey as he wende to haue hem founden, but thei were go thens a myle. Whan Orienx saughħ hem gon in this maner, he cried his ensigne and seide, "Now after hem," and than he swore that noon of hem sholde ascape. Than pressed forthħ the saisnes hastely alle that myghħt, that oon ne a-bode not a-nother, and the shoute and the noyse a-roos so grete that wonder it was to here, and the duste and the powder a-roos so thikke that the clier air was trouble, and thei com drivinge on so faste that thei nyghed nyghħ to atteyne the cristin; and than the knyghħt that hadde yeve Gawein this counseile saughħ hem come so faste, he hasted sore Gawein and alle the tother for to go faste, and spake vnto hem that thei rode a gretter paas; but er thei com to the town of Camelot thei were sore hasted. But the noble Gawein and Agravain and Gaheret and Gaheries and Galaishin and Seigramor were the laste, and sente in theire felowes and her peple, and her harneys be-fore, as the heirde drivethħ his bestes to pasture, and ther while thei suffred the saisnes to breke theire speres, and whan thei saughħ eny of her felowes ouer charged, thei hem delyuered at her power as thei that were of highħ prowesse, and thei dide so weƚƚ, that ther nas saisne so hardy that durste that wey go, wher as[1] thei were ne of hem a-bide a stroke. Than com Orienx withħ the grete baner, and hadde a grete spere, whereof the heed is sharp̄ and trenchaunt, and saughħ hym that hadde hym smyte to grounde, and knewe hym fuƚƚ weƚƚ, and swoor by his god that he wolde be a-venged; than he spored his horse fiercely, and the chielde saughħ hym come, but he made semblau*n*t as ther-of he roughħt litiƚƚ, and whan he com even at the metynge Gawein lefte the wey and lete hym passe forthħ, that his horse cowde not restreyne, and Gawein, that was wighħt and delyuer, returned

Orienx asks for a new helm, shield, and spear.

and leaps to horse.

When he finds the childrengone he swears none shall escape.

The Saxons press after them.

The knight hastens on Gawein and the others.

who send their people into the city.

Orienx comes with the great banner, and swears he will be avenged.

---

[1] The word "as" is repeated in the MS.

Gawein smites him on the head, so that he fell flat to the earth.

*[Fol. 94*a*.]

Seigramor smites Driant, Galaishin smites Placidas, Agravain smites Gynebant, Gaheret smites Taurus, and Gaheries smites Fannell.

Gawein, Galaishin, and Seigramor try to take Orienx, but the Saxons will not suffer it,

his horse vpon̄ hym, and smote hym vpon̄ the heed wiťh bothe hondes, but it was wiťh the flat, for the haste that he hadde hym to smyte, so that he wiste not how he it heilde, and the stroke was so grete and hevy that the fier sparkeled vp in̄ the aire and a-stoned hym so sore that he fiƚƚ flat to the erthe, and Seigramor smote *Driant the rede thurgħ the sholder so harde that it disseuered fro the body, and Galaishin̄ smote so Placidas that his heed he hym be-rafte, and Agrauain̄ and Gaheret and Gaheries hadde eche of hem caught a short spere, the Iren̄ sharp and trenchaunt, and that oon̄ smote Gynebant, and the tother Taurus, and the thridde smote ffanneƚƚ, that eche bar his to the erthe from theyre horse aƚƚ blody, and wiťh the same cours theī smote thre other; and Gawein̄ and Galaishin̄ and Seigramor rested vpon̄ Orienx, for theī wolde hym haue take yef theī mygħt, but the saisnes ne wolde it not suffre, but assembled so thikke a-boute tho thre felowes that theī hadde many grete strokes taken̄ and yeven̄, and theī thre were noble and worthī, and sloughħ of hem so many that her armes and her brestes were alle blody, and also their horse heer, and so theī hem stered that noon̄ was so hardy to a-byde of hem eny stroke.

so they run upon him and bruise him with theirhorses' feet.

Then they ride after their fellows to Camelot.

The Saxons abide about their lord,

who is very wrath at his treatment.

Whan̄ the thre felowes saugħ theī moste nede forsake Orienx, and saugħ a worlde of peple that vpon̄ hem com drivinge, theī ronne vpon̄ Orienx and hym diffouled wiťh theire horse feet tiƚƚ he was aƚƚ to-brosed; and whan̄ he was aƚƚ to-brosed and hym diffouled at her lust saf theī haue hym not slain̄, than̄ theī rode after her felowes that be that tyme mygħt be nygħ Camelot, for neuer seťh theī remeved were theī not enchased, but wente forťh delyuerly; and whan̄ the thre felowes saugħ her men were wiťhynne the town̄ theī were gladde and mery, and than̄ theī rode a softe paas. And the saisnes a-bode a-boute her lorde that was caste down̄ and so diffouled vnder horse feet, whereof he was so sorowfuƚƚ whan̄ he a-roos from disturdison̄ that theī be so ascaped, that nygħ he was wode for wratthe and Ire, and swor yef he mygħt hem gete in̄ his bailly that he sholde do hem be flain̄ aƚƚ quyk and drawen̄ a-sondre wiťh horse. "Sir," seide his men̄, "a fuƚƚ feƚƚ pawtener is he that twies this day thus haťh yow smyten̄ to grounde." "Ye," quod Orienx, "but yef I may haue bailly ouer his body, he shaƚƚ so be deffouled that ther ne shaƚƚ nothinge in the worlde hym warantise." And theī hadde so riden̄ that theī com before Camelot, where as theī a-bode stille, and asked oon̄ of another where the other thre were be-come; but ther was noon̄ that ought cowde sey.

Whan̄ Agravain̄, and Gaheret, and Gaheries vndirstode how that Gawein̄ her brother and her cosin̄ and the nevew of the Emperour*e* were loste, theī turned bakke and seide theī wolde not reste tiƚƚ theī hadde hem founden̄, and comaunded her felowes not to remeve tiƚƚ theī saugħ hem com a-gein̄; and than̄ alle thre rode a-gein̄ a walop as theī hadde com; but theī hadde but litiƚƚ while riden̄ whan̄ theī mette the karƚƚ that satte vpon̄ the steede that Gawein̄ hadde hym yoven̄, the same that hadde brougħt tidinges of Seigramor; and whan̄ he mette these thre bretheren̄ he asked whider theī wente; and theī seide theī sought Gawein̄ her brother, and her cosin̄ Galaishin̄, and the nevew of the Emp*er*our, for theī wiste not where theī were be-comen̄. "Ffuƚƚ eueƚƚ," seide he, "haue ye yow demened, and weƚƚ shewetħ the *worthī and noble where theī ben̄, and loo heere where theī come, but whom̄ it displese theī owe to come yow no thonke of her lyves, ffor ye lefte hem foule as cowardes, and weƚƚ it shewetħ ther as theī a-bode for to socour these other that now ben̄ saf at garison̄; and theī haue doon̄ many feire chiualries and yoven̄ many grete strokes, that theī ougħt to be comended and preised of aƚƚ the worlde that ther-of heren̄ speke, and to holde yow for soche as ye be; and wele haue ye it shewed ther as ye lefte youre felowes at soche nede, and theī ne lefte yow neuer for detħ ne for lif, and euery Gentiƚƚman̄ that ther-of heretħ speke ougħt yow to blame be rigħt and reson̄, and haue yow euer suspect in̄ euery nede; and, wite it weƚƚ, it shaƚƚ turne yow to repress." Witħ that the cherƚƚ departed, that lenger witħ hem ne wolde talke. And theī passeden̄ fortħ aƚƚ shamefest and mate, and sory of the wordes the karƚƚ hadde spoken̄; but theī nadde but litiƚƚ wey riden̄ whan̄ theī mette the thre felowes, that were so araied that it semed by her armes that theī were come from felon̄ place; and whan̄ theī mette

When Agravain, Gaheret, and Gaheries cannot find Gawein and the other two they ride back the way they came.

They meet the carl,

*[Fol. 94*b*.]

who tells them they are cowards for leaving the others.

The churl departs.

They meet the three fellows.

to-geder thei made grete ioye. Than Gawein asked tidinges of her other felowes where thei were; and thei seide that thei hem lefte be-fore the yates of Camelot, where thei a-bide. Than thei rode forth to-geder gladde and mery for her newe feliship̄ that be-come hem to helpe, and of that thei haue hem thus rescewed, and he and his companye hooll and sounde. But er thei hade a wihile riden to-geder, thei mette the cherles horse sore affraied, that com fleynge, and saugh the arson of the sadell all blody. And when these felowes that he hadde reprovid saugh the horse, that oon be-heilde the tother and be-gonne to laugh. Of that toke hede Gawein and Galashin, and asked whi thei lowghen; and thei stynte for to telle; and thei hem co*n*iured another tyme right harde for to telle the trouthe. And Gaheries tolde hym alle the wordes that the cherll hadde hem seide. And whan that thei it herde thei merveiled what it myght be; and than com Gawein to the horse that fledde, and toke hym by the bridell, and saugh that all the arson was blody, and well that the karll hadde be slayn.

They all ride forth glad and merry.

They meet the churl's horse, with the saddle all bloody. The fellows who had been reproved laugh.

Gaheries tells what the churl had said.

Than he asked of Agravain and of the tother yef thei mette eny of the saisnes seth thei departed fro Camelot, and thei seide how thei mette neyther man ne woman seth thei departed from theire men, saf the cherll that satte vpon that horse. Quod Gawein, "I trowe he be slayn or wounded sore, or parauenture he is fallen where so it be to grounde, and therfore lete vs hym seche till we may hym fynde, and yef he be a-lyve lete vs bere hym to Camelot, ffor it were synne to suffre hym to dye for defaute here in the feilde." And than thei sought vp and down in the feilde and amonge the busshes, but yet thei myght haue sought hym in-to this tyme, for he was come in-to her hoste in the semblaunce of a knaue on foote, with a tronchon of a spere in his honde, and whan Gawein saugh he myght not be founde thei repeired to kamelot, and fonde her felowes hem a-bydynge *at the brigge foot, that thei were of hem ioyfull whan thei saugh hem hooll and sounde, and than thei entred in-to the town and drough vp the brigge and shette the yates, and than wente vpon the walles for to loke yef the saisnes come toward þe town it for to assaile, but thei ther-to hadde no talent, ffor thei desired not

Gawein asks Agravain whether they met any Saxons,

for he believes the churl has been slain.

They seek for the churl's body, but they cannot find it.

They repair to Camelot.

*[Fol. 95*a*.]

They look for the Saxons,

ther so longe to soiourne tiƚƚ thei hadde it taken, for it was rigħt stronge, and the childeren hem vn-armed and wente to theire loggyngis, and hem esed of aƚƚ thinge that to mannys body belongeth, and grete ioye and feste thei made of Seigramor whan thei hym knewen; and whan he hadde hem tolde wherfore he was come fro Costantinnoble to kynge Arthur to take of hym his armes, and than was he moche worshiped and moche preised of oon and other, and seiden that he was of grete herte and hardy, for thei hadde hym sein in bataile, and he was of merveilouse bounte, and moche reuerence a[nd] worship̄ dide hym the noble gentilmen ther-Inne, and disported and pleide, and be-heilde Seigramor, that was moche and semly, and weƚƚ furnysshed of membres, and thus thei lyven in disporte and ioye thre dayes, that nothinge thei ne herde on noo part, but that the saisnes wente in-to the Northumberlonde, and in-to the londe of the Duke Escam, of Cambenyk, that ther foughten sore bataile at the strayte of the roche magot, a-gein the peple of Orienx, vpon the river of Sauarne.

and then go to their lodgings.

They make great joy over Seigramor.

They live in disport and joy for three days.

CHAPTER XVII.

DOINGS OF THE SAXONS IN THE LANDS OF KING CLARION AND DUKE ESCAM.

Now, seitħ the booke, that sore were thei greved the peple of the kynge Clarion, and also of the Duke Escam, whan Orienx com to the medle, for gretly he hym peyned hem to do damage at his power, and he was yet rigħt wrotħ for the diffoulinge that Gawein hadde hym don, and therfore wolde he gladly haue take vengaunce yef he mygħt, vpon hem that he hadde ther founden, and comaunded his men to do weƚƚ, and swor his otħ that ther sholde noon of hem ascape, and than be-gan the assaute so grete and merveilouse, that of arowes and quarelles ther were many wounded and hurte. Ne never myght the saisnes, for no power that thei hadde, make hem remeve fro that grounde; and whan that the saisnes saugħ that thei mygħt not make hem be

The people of Clarion and Escam are grieved at the coming of Orienx,

who swears none shall escape.

The Saxons lodge by the river Savarne, and say they will keep the place.

force for to leve the place, thei drouħ them vp and logged hem by the river of Sauarne, and seide thei wolde kepe that passage, and ther while thei robbed the contrey aƚƚ a-boute hem, "for yef we myġħt gete hem in honde," seid Orienx, "thei myġħt not a-gein vs so endure."

They burn and destroy the country.

As soone as the saisnes were logged thei spredde a-brode in the contrey to forry, and euer brente and distroied as thei wente, and token prayes of bestes and of vitaile of aƚƚ that thei myġħt gete, and I-now thei hadde, for the contrey was riche and in ese, and the peple of the contrey hadde tho at the firste begonne to drive theire bestes out of the weye and her other auer, and many were supprised er thei myġħt ougħt hide from theire handes, and the saisnes com vpon hem sodeinly that of hem hadde no pytee, but slowġħ alle that thei myġħt atteyne, and toke the bestes and theire other goodes and sette fier aƚƚ a-boute, and the fier and *the flame a-roos so huge that the air be come reade aƚƚ a iourney, that the kynge Clarion and the Duke Escam saugħ the fier clerly in the streite ther as thei were. And whan the Duke Escam saugħ the distruxion that thei made thourgħ the contrey, he com to Clarion and seide, "Sir, as me semetħ we haue heer no wynnynge heer for to a-bide, for the saisnes distroyetħ aƚƚ the londe a-boute vs, and ther-fore I rede we go to hem ther as thei be and figħt witħ hem, and do hem the harm that we may, for me semetħ that is the beste." "Ye," quod Claryon, "but and we lese this contry a-noon thei wiƚƚ distroie aƚƚ the londe aƚƚ hool." "I shaƚƚ telle yow," quod the Duke, "what we shuƚƚ do: we shuƚƚ leve a part of oure peple at this passage it for to kepe, and ye and I shuƚƚ go a-gein hem toward the foreste of Brekehen, and enbussħ vs there tiƚƚ that we se that the pray is past, and than shaƚƚ we go be-twene hem and the pray and figħt witħ hem, and the lorde of palerne, that weƚƚ knowetħ the streytes of the foreste, shaƚƚ lede the pray to saftee, and than com a-gein to helpe vs at the bataile, and we shuƚƚ do hem aƚƚ the harme that we may." "A god mercy," seide Clarion, "it is merveile that ye sey, that sey we shuƚƚ go to hem for to figħt, and thei be many moo than be we, ffor whan we be-gonne we hadde not the

They take the beasts and other goods.
*[Fol. 95*b*.]

Escam comes to Clarion and counsels that they fight the Saxons;

that they leave a part of the people at the passage and go themselves toward the forest of Brekehen.

Clarion says the Saxons are so many,

peple that thei haue now." "See not ye," quod the Duke, "how thei be spredde a-brode in the contrey aƚƚ theire grettest power, and heere be-fore vs is two thousande at these pavilio*ns* vpon the river, and thei be for nothinge elles lefte but for to kepe this paas where-as thei knowe we be, and thei that ben a-boute in the contreye, holde thei be rigħt sure, ffor thei holde that thei ben rigħt sure, for thei haue no doute where thei gon." "I sey not," quod Clarion, "for that to me ateyneħ, but for these noble men that ben heere witħ me that I wolde not folyly myslede, ne in-to no place that I sholde therfore bere blame, whan we be parted be fole enprise." Whan the gode men vndirstode the wordes of kynge Clarion thei preised hym moche, ffor thei knewe weƚƚ that he seide it but for pite of the peple, that he wolde gladly saue yef he mygħt, and than thei seide, "Haa! gentiƚƚ kynge Clarion, neuer ne dowte yow of nothinge, but lete vs go and a-venge oure shame, oure harme, that we see a-fore oure iyen, and as weƚƚ ougħt we to be shamed and to be angwisshouse and wroth yef it be falle as weƚƚ as ye, ffor ye ne haue no more than we, saf only the Crowne."

but Escam says they are spread abroad.

Clarion fears to mislead the noble men with him.

The good men pray to be allowed to go.

Whan the kynge Clarion vndirstode how his men seide, he wepte tenderly witħ hys iyen vndir his helme, that the teeres wette his Iowes and the chyn, and was so fuƚƚ of angwissħ that vn-ethe mygħt he speke a worde witħ his mouħ, and his men that a-parceived, and seide, "Gentiƚƚ kynge, ne wepe nougħt, but go we in the name of god and figħt witħ hem, ffor better it is to dye with honour*e* than dye olde and pore and disherited;" "but firste ordeyne *whom ye wiƚƚ leve heere," and thei seide he seide weƚƚ, and ther thei chese the lorde of Norhant, and the lorde of dolerouse garde and bruyn saunz pitee, and hadde in her companye a thousande men weƚƚ horsed, and kepte the paas rigħt streyte; and thei departed at mydnygħt, and rode thoo towarde the foreste of Brekehan, and hem gyded the lorde of Salerne, that weƚƚ knewe the passages of the londe and the forestes; and whan thei come to the foreste of Breighan, than thei enbusshed hem a-gein a carfowgh of vj weyes, by a feire launde that was grene and fuƚƚ of flowr*es*, and it was a feire morownynge and softe wedir

Clarion weeps bitterly.

Hismen pray him not to weep.

*[Fol. 96*a*.]

They depart at midnight, and ride toward the forest,

till they come to where six ways meet.

The birds sing loudly.

The land is so pleasant that they have no wish to move on.

They see oxen and horses loaded with plenty of all kinds of victuals coming out of the forest.

and stiƚƚ, and these briddes songen̄ thourgħ the holtes fuƚƚ of grene leves, for the fressħ seison̄ of the monetħ of may, that was newe entrid, and the nyghtingale and these other briddes songen̄ so lowde that the wode and the river resovned. This launde that I of speke was so feire and plesaunt to be-holde for the swote sauours, that thei hadde no wiƚƚ to meve thens and for the swete songe of the fowles, and yef thei ne hadde not had to do other weyes thei wolde not haue remeved, and ther thei hem enbusshed, the kynge Clarion̄ and the Duke Escam of Cambenyk, be-fore the day, ffor weƚƚ thei knewe that the saisnes sholde come that wey, and so thei a-bide tiƚƚ it was passed tierce, and than̄ thei saugħ come oute of the foreste of Breighan̄, oxen and keen, and swyn̄ and sheep, and horse and palfreyes trussed witħ salt flessħ, and witħ corn̄ and brede redy bake, and plente of cheese and of aƚƚ viteiƚƚ soche foyson̄ that more than̄ a myle lasted the route.

Clarion and Escam send 5,000 men after them,

and the lord of Salerne, with 500 knights, slays all those who conducted the beasts.

The Saxons are sorry and wrath.

The Christians slay many Saxons, and pursue them to the host of king Orienx.

Whan̄ that the kynge Clarion̄ and the Duke Escam saugħ that alle these bestes were passed and the cariage, thei sente oute hem that sholde hem sewen̄ after that were v^{M1} men wele horsed, and whan̄ the lorde of Salerne saugħ that the beestes were enclosed, he issed oute with five hundred knyghtes to hem that these beestes dide condite, and slougħ hem alle, that neuer foot ascaped, and than̄ gadered alle the beestes and the cariage, and hem condited to Cambenyk, that was thens two myle, and whan̄ he hadde aƚƚ sette in̄ saftee he returned a-gein̄. And whan̄ the saisnes saugħ that the cariages was from hem enclosed, thei were sory and wrotħ, and com drivinge vpon̄ hem so fiercely and mette vpon̄ the sheldes, that the speres fly in peces, and thei be-gonne a stronge stour*e* and an harde, ffor ther*e* in̄ shorte tyme was grete occision̄, and longe it endured, from tierce in-to noone, and than̄ sparbled the saisnes and turned bakke towarde her chyuachie. Ther the cristin̄ slougħ many, ffor of the saisnes that were xv^{M1} ne lefte but x^{M1}, and of the cristen̄ were weƚƚ xxij^{M1}, and thei pursude so the chase that many of hem were loste, ffor er thei were war thei were vpon̄ the grete hoste of the kynge Orienx that lefte at the paas of the roche magot, that hadde ben̄ oute erly and com̄ witħ wonder gret richesse that thei hadde robbed thourgħ the contrey, and were moo than̄ xlv^{Ml} to-geder, for theī desired to haue repeired to the grete hoste be-fore the Citee of Clarence that tho was newe be-seged.

There are 45,000 Saxons together.

*Whan̄ the kynge and the Duke saugħ the saisnes come soche foyson̄, theī were sore a-frayed, and with-drougħ her reynes and returned bakke a softe paas streite and cloos towarde the foreste that theī com̄ fro; and whan̄ the saisnes hadde fledde so that theī were come to the grete hoste so afraied. Whan̄ the kynge Orienx saugħ hem come fleynge, he asked whī that theī fledde so faste; and theī hym tolde of the grete harme that the cristin̄ hadde hem don̄; and whan̄ he herde that theī were so nygħ, he comaunded that theī sholde be harde enchased; and a-noon̄ theī dide his comaundement, and ther was many an horse abredeed er theī mygħt come to the foreste, for er theī com fullicħ ther theī were hasted rigħt nygħ, for in̄ a while theī hadde hem ouer-taken̄; and whan̄ theī hadde hem a-tyened theī smote to hem witħ speres, and brake many vpon̄ theire bodyes, and euer the cristin̄ drougħ to the foreste so streite and cloos that the saisnes myht hem not breke ne perce; and whan̄ theī were euen̄ nygħ the foreste thei returned her bridelis a-gein̄ her enmyes, and theī com̄ vpon̄ hem fiercely and witħ a grete nombre; and the cristin̄ hem receyved at spere poynte and witħ sharpe grounde glevis, and of hem many theī made to stomble that neuer roos after, ffor ther was mortaƚƚ and felon̄ bataile and greet occision̄ on̄ bothe parties, and yet hadde the cristin̄ loste more ne hadde be the foreste of Breighan̄, and that was be-hynde at her bakke; and ther the saisnes loste so many of her companye that theī mygħt not a-vaunten̄ hem that theī hadde mette witħ no cowardes, ffor of xl^{Ml} theī loste x^{Ml}. And theī were at greet myschief, for the saisnes were so many that theī moste flat in̄-to the foreste wolde theī or noon̄, ffor as soone as the kynge Orienx was come, he kepte hem so shorte that many were deed and taken̄; and than̄ the nygħt and the forest hem departed. And whan̄ Orienx saugħ hem ascaped that aƚƚ this grete harme hadde hem don̄, he was fuƚƚ wrotħ and angry, but for aƚƚ that he drougħ hym a-wey from the foreste; and the cristen̄ rode aƚƚ nygħt that neuer wolde hem

*[Fol. 96*b*.]

The king and the duke are sore afraid, and return toward the forest.

When Orienx hears they are so near he commands that they be chased.

When the Saxons overtake the Christians, they smite them with spears.

The Christians receive them at spear point.

There is great loss on both sides.

The Saxons lose 10,000.

When Orienx sees them escape he is angry.

King Clarion goes to Cambenyk, and duke Escam promises to send him his part of the prey.

vn-arme tiƚƚ it was day. And the kynge Clarion wente that nygħt [to] Cambenyk witħ vij^{Ml} and v C men that were hym be-lefte of the bataile; and whan thei sholde departe, the Duke Escam graunted to sende hym his part of the pray that thei hadde wonne as soone as the saisnes were passed.

They depart asunder.

And thus thei departed a-sonder, and kepte rigħt weƚƚ bothe two Citees, that no more harme ne hadde at that tyme.

The Saxons search the country for the Christians.

And erly on the morowe the saisnes were renged and a-raide, and than thei blewe hornes and trumpes, and serched the contrey to wite where the cristin were be-come and whiche wey, and than returned a-gein to Orienx, and seide thei were gon; and than was he sory and wrotħ, and made

Orienx takes the way to Cambenyk, and sends Napin before.

sownde his tymbres and tabours, and toke the wey towarde Cambenyk, and sente be-fore Napin, an admyraƚƚ, witħ xv^{Ml} men, and hadde sente be-fore them thre thousande harlotis, for to sette fier on the contrey a-boute, and for to waste the londe; and after the forewarde com the cariage and the prayes that *was grete, and

*[Fol. 97*a.*]

Adax follows with 10,000 men, then Orienx with 20,000 men.

hem condited Adax with x^{Ml} men, and after in the rerewarde com Orienx with xx^{Ml}, and rode tiƚƚ thei come to Cambenyk, and than gonne thei to waste and distroie the contrey ther that were vilages; and these harlottis, that were forreyours, brente aƚƚ a-boute.

Escam is full of sorrow at the destruction done by the Saxons. 2,000 of his men overtake the foragers, and slay and maim all but forty,

And whan the Duke Escam saugħ the distruxion he was fuƚƚ of sorowe, and comaunded his men a-noon to arme hem; and thei dide his comaundement, and lept to horse ligħtly, two thousande, and com amonge the harlot*is* that were forreyours, that so brente and distroied, and ouertoke hem in a valey; and whan thei saugħ hem come thei turned to fligħt, but thei were so supprisid, for theire horse hadde rested and were frescħ; and thei slougħ and maymed alle that thei mygħt ouer-gete, so that er the vangarde com of thre thousande ther ascaped not xl;

who come to the vanguard, and complain that they have not been assisted.

and whan these xl com to the vaungarde, thei cried, "Fitz dei putein, what a-byde, ye treitours! se ye not how we be alle slain and deed, and ye mygħt alle oure enmyes haue slain and distroied, and saued youre frendes, yef ye hadde a litiƚƚ hasted; and shamed be the kynge Orienx but he hange yow heigher than other treitours vn-trewe, ffor ye hym shame and suffre his men to be diffoiled."

Napin tells them to hold their peace.

"Pees, harlott*is*," quod Napin, "shoche sholde ben youre payme*n*t; where be thei that thus haue yow don? ” And than seide the ribaudes that thei were gon alle the glotou*n*s to Cambenyk wiħ-oute doynge more. And the saisnes than passed forħ and no more harme ther dide, and rode forħ tiłł thei come to the riche Citee of Clarence, that hardogabran hadde be-seged hym-self the twentithe kynge; and whan Orienx com in-to the hoste, hardogabran made of hym grete ioye for the grete refreshynge that he brouħt of vitaile, for he brouħt I-nouħ, and therfore was he moche preised. And on that othir side, as soone as the Duke Escam sauħ the saisnes were passed, he sente the half of the prise that thei hadde wonne to the kynge Clarion, of that thei had wonne vpon the launde vpon the saisnes that were so cruweł at the entre of the foreste of Bregnehan, for so was the name of the foreste, and the name of the rivere was Savarne. But now retureneħ the tale a-gein for to speke of Ewein, the sone of kynge Vrien, and of Ewein a-voutres, that be departed fro Sorhan.

The Saxons ride forth till they come to the city of Clarence.

Hardogabran makes joy of Orienx.

Escam sends half the prize to Clarion.

The tale returns to Ewein and Ewein avoutres.

CHAPTER XVIII.

ADVENTURES OF GAWEIN AND HIS FELLOWS AT ARONDELL IN CORNWALL.

Now whan the two bretheren were departed fro Sorhan, thei rode thourħ wodes and thourħ playnes tiłł that thei come to Arondełł in Cornewaile toward Bredigan; and whan thei com ther thei herde telle how Soriondes was logged in the medowes of Bredigan and rested ther his peple, ffor he com wery for traueile; and whan the childeren vndirstode that thei moste passe thourħ the hoste saisnes, and that was noon esy thinge to do, thei drouħ hem a-gein a litiłł bakke. And the saisnes ronne thourħ the contrei and a-boute Bredigan ner to Cardoełł, and ther-of herde Gawein and his bretheren and companye that the saisnes were thus logged a-boute Bredigan and distroied the contrey aboute. Than sente *Gawein aboute to euery garnyson thourħ the reame of logres, and assembled xxx^{Ml} what oon what other, ffor moche was he and his companye be-loved for theire grete prowesse and her gret largesse; and than thei rode and iourneyed so longe tiłł

When the brethren depart from Sorhan they come to Arondell, where they hear how that Soriondes is lodged in the meadows.

*[Fol. 97*b*.]

Gawein assembles 30,000 men, and they journey to

Cardoell where they rest two days. They come to Bredigan,

thei com to Cardoeƚƚ, and ther they restede two dayes, and the thirde day thei departed and rode forħ by theire iourneyes tiƚƚ thei com to Bredigan where-as thei were weƚƚ come; and the saisnes were spredde a-brode thourgħ the londe of kynge Ydiers and hadde it aƚƚ brente and robbed, and com aƚƚ the river be-twene the wode and the medowe vnder the Casteƚƚ of Arundeƚƚ, and thei were moo than lx^{Ml} of horsemen and x^{Ml} ribaudes, that sette fier aƚƚ a-boute the contrei.

King Ydiers is full of sorrow when he sees the damage done by the Saxons.

He pursues them with 15,000 men, and does great feats of arms.

Tidings come from the castle of Bredigan.

Whan the kynge Ydiers saugħ this grete damage that thei dide, he was so fuƚƚ of sorowe that neer he wente oute of his witte, and lepte to horse wiħ alle the peple that he hadde, and were nygħ xv^{Ml} wele armed, and be-gan to pursue the hoste, so that thei atteyned hem at a passage at a cauchie, and ther thei fougħt to-geder rigħt harde, ffor the kynge Ydiers was a fuƚƚ noble knygħt and a sure, and he dide ther merveilous of armes, and he hadde many goode knyghtes in his companye, that hym rigħt wele dide helpe, and thei foughten aƚƚ the day at the rerewarde of the hoste, and were xx^{Ml}, and the tother that were be-fore rode aƚƚ the day tiƚƚ thei were half a myle from the casteƚƚ of randoƚƚ, and thei were wele xl^{Ml}, and in the vaungarde were x^{Ml} that ledde the pray, ffor thei hadde herde tidinges of the casteƚƚ of Bredigan that ther-to were come gret peple sodeinly, and ther-fore thei were in drede to be supprised.

When the two sons of Urien hear that the Saxons have passed, they ride out of the castle of Randoll. When they have crossed a bridge three miles from Bredigan, Bilas comes against them with 14,000 men.

Whan thei of the casteƚƚ herde why the saisnes were passed in-to the londe of kynge Ydiers, of Cornewaile, thei ne trowed noon other but that thei wolde repeire be that wey, ne thei trowed not that eny hadde be lefte be-twene the casteƚƚ of randoƚƚ and Bredigan. And whan the two sones of kynge Vrien herde sey that the saisnes were passed, thei wende to haue no dowte, and armed hem wele and lepte on horse, and rode oute of the casteƚƚ of randoƚƚ, and were foure hundred wele armed at devise, and rode tiƚƚ thei come to a brigge thre myle from the casteƚƚ of Bredigan, and whan thei were passed ouer, a-noon com ageins hem Bilas, wiħ xiiij^{Ml} men of armes, that hadde the vaungarde of kynge Soriondes, that made kepe the passage that noon sholde come oute of Bredigan, that hem mygħt don damage to the bakke of the hoste while thei forreyed. And whan the childeren saugħ this thei were sore affraied, and thei gat the brigge, and ther thei hem deffended strongly. And on the tother side the kynge Ydiers faugħt at the ende of the cauchie so merveilously, that neuer of so fewe peple was don so stronge bataile, and ther thei shewed soche prowesse, that the xx^{Ml} torned to disconfiture, and ther ne hadde noon ascaped ne hadde Soriondes turned bakke witħ his grete hoste, and ne hadde be that a-venture *that he so turned vpon kynge Ydiers, the childeren of kynge Vrien that were gon be-fore ne hadde neuer ascaped. But restetħ to speke of hem at this tyme, and telletħ of that cherƚƚ that hadde chaunged his semblaunce in-to the gyse of a squyer at Camelot, whan that Seigramoor was rescued.

Ydiers fights so marvellously that Soriondes turns back upon him, by which the children of king Urien escape.

*[Fol. 98*a*.]

The churl, who appeared to Gawein as a squire,

Whan this squyer wiste that Gawein and his companye were gon to Bredigan, he was ther-of gladde and wele plesed, and also he knewe wele of the two Bretheren that were at the casteƚƚ of Randoƚƚ, and saugħ wele how thei were in grete auenture of detħ or to be taken, thanne he toke vpon hym the semblaunce of a curroure trottinge on foote, and bar a letter seled in a coffin, that was peynted witħ the armes of kynge Vrien, that he made to be writen of Blase his maister, so as ye shuƚƚ heren after; and whan it was I-wreten he departed from Blaase and com to Bredigan, and he was tukked and on his heede a felt, and bar a longe staff on his bakke, and he was sklender and lene and hadde on lowe voyded shoon and blak hosyn, and his clothinge was blakke fustyan witħ bendes on the sleues, and girde witħ a girdeƚƚ harnesshed, and he was longe and broun and a blakke berde, and his heed bare witħ-oute coyfe, his hatte at his sholderes hanginge be-hynde by the laces; and he com to the maister paleys and yede vpon the greces, and whan he was a-bove he asked after Gawein the sone of kynge loot, and a-noon oon hym shewde where he stode, and he com be-fore hym and set hym on hys knee; and Gawein hym dressed vp as he that was wele lerned and rigħt wise; and he hym salude, "From Ewein the more and from Ewein the a-voutres, the twey sones of the kynge Vryen his cosyns, and to yow hatħ sente these letters."

takes upon him the semblance of a courier, and bears a letter sealed with king Urien's arms.

His dress.

He comes to the palace at Bredigan, and goes upstairs to Gawein.

He says he brings letters from the two sons of Urien.

Gawein takes the letter and reads

As soone as Gawein herde speke of tho childeren, he lepe on his feet, and toke the letter and brake the seall and hit radde all to the ende as he that well hadde lerned in his yowthe, and fonde writen how the letter seide, "I Ewein, the sone of kynge Vrien, greteth well my cosin Gawein and myn other cosyns and frendes, and I lete yow wete that I am departed fro Sorhan with-oute leve of my fader, bothe I and Ewein a-voutres my brother; and we be-come oute of the castell of Randoll to the brigge of Sorionde, where we haue founde x^{Ml} saisnes that vs holde medle vpon the brigge, and we ne be but foure hundred; and on that other side the kynge Ydiers, that ne hath but xiiij^{Ml} men in his companye a-gein xl^{Ml} saisnes on the chauchie vnder Randoll, and as soone as the kynge Ydiers is departed thei will come vpon vs and take vs alle but god vs helpe and ye vs socoure; and yef we be take or slain, the harme is owres and the shame youres, and alle dayes of youre lif it shall be to yow reprof, and yef ye for cowardise leve vs to be socoured while ye haue power, and ther-fore remembre vs *of pitee and of youre grete fraunchise."

how Ewein and his company have come out of the castle of Randoll,

and how they are in danger from the Saxons.

*[Fol. 98*b*.]

Gawein calls his people to arms.

Whan Gawein hadde redde the letter he cried, "Now as armes this tyme more hastely than eny other, and neuer be he preised that now is not hardy." And whan the squyers herde Gawein thei ronne to armes gladde and mery, ffull moche thei desired to come in place where thei myght hem conquere loos and pris to encrese theire honours; and as soone as thei were armed thei lepte to horse and rode oute of Bredigan, and the yoman that hadde brought the letter was theire gyde; and thei were xx^{Ml} men noble and hardy; and so thei rode a grete spede, but firste thei departed her peple and devised her wardes in-to vj. The firste warde Gawein yaf vn-to Agravain his brother with thre thousande men of armes wel a-raied, and thei rode a goode paas be-fore. The seconde warde ledde Gaheret with iij^{Ml} men of armes that were vaillant and hardy. The thridde warde hadde Gaheries, that wele it cowde lede, and were also iij^{Ml}, and rode forth after the tother. The fourthe bataile Gawein yaf to Seigramor, the nevew of the Emperour of Costantinenoble, that right wele cowde hem helpe at nede, and were

The squires are glad.

They ride out of Bredigan. The yeoman who brought the letter is their guide.

Agravain leads the first-ward with 3,000 men. Gaheret leads the second.

Gaheries leads the third.

Seigramor leads the fourth.

Each has a banner.

Galashin leads the fifth.

Gawein leads the sixth division.

The hearts of all who see the sight rejoice.

The tale returns to king Ydiers.

also iij^{Ml}; and thei rode forth after the tother cloos and streite, and eche hadde a baner wher-to thei sholde relye whan thei were medled with the saisnes. The fifte bataile hadde Galashin hys cosin for to lede, and moche Gawein hym preide well for to do and wisely to rulen his men, and hadde with hym also iij^{Ml}; and whan he hadde hem departed and disseuered thei rode theire wey a softe paas after Seigramor. The vj^{te} bataile, where-in was moste peple, ledde Gawein hym-self, and bar a baner of sendall of ynde beende ther-in a lyon of siluer, and thei kepte hem cloos a-boute hym and were v^{Ml} and moo; and whan he saugh that alle the tother were sette on her wey that oon after that other, than he sette on a softe paas hool to-geder. Ther sholde ye haue sein the baners and fresh armes glyteringe in the wynde and fresh hauberk*es* bright shynynge above so many startelynge stedis that made the fier fle from the Caliou*ns* that alle that it be-heilde made her hertes to reioyse. But now cesseth to speke of hem how that thei ride to the brigge of dove, and returneth for to speke of the kynge ydiers that fighteth with the saisnes.

He puts 20,000 Saxons to flight.

Soriondes is wroth and rides till he finds Ydiers fighting against the men of Maglaant.

*[Fol. 99*a*.]

There is mortal battle, and Ydiers loses many of his men, and is driven from the place.

So sore faught the kynge ydiers a-gein xx^{Ml} saisnes that he put hem alle to flight. Ther was grete discounfiture and grete trouble of men and horse that fellen deed all to-hewen; and whan Soriondes saugh hem fle he asked why that thei fledde, and thei hym tolde how that the kynge Ydiers hadde don hem grete damage to the taile of the hoste that alle the xx^{Ml} hadde discounfited; and than returned Soriondes sory and wroth, and were with hym moo than xx^{Ml}, and rode till thei fonde the kynge Ydiers at the heed of the cauchie that yet was fightinge a-gein the meyne of Maglaant, an amyrall saisne cruewell and felon, that grete harme dide to the cristin and was so douted that noon durste *hym approche ne come vpon the cauchie, but launched to hym speres and gysarmes grounden; and than com Soriondes with all his peple that was so grete, and sette ouer the cauchie so rudely as horse myght renne. Ther was thoo stif stour and mortall bataile, ffor at to grete a myschief were the me*n* of the kynge Ydiers, and moche thei loste at that encountre, but right dere thei it solden; but what a-vailed her well doinge, discounfited

He curses the day and hour he was crowned.

thei were and driven oute of the place, and it nedeħ not to aske yef that the kynge Ydiers were sory and wroħ, ffor ther he cursed the houre and the day that he was on I-crowned and that he was at debate wiħ the kynge Arthur, "ffor by the synne," quod he, "that we haue don a-gein hym falleħ to vs aƚƚ these myschaunces, but it is so ferforħ that it is to late for vs to repente."

Soriondes rides off to the bridge of Dove,

when he sees the children,

who are dismayed. Ewein looks to Bredigan, and sees Agravain's banner, so he bids his fellows to be of good cheer.

They answer that Saxons are both before and behind them.

Ewein a-voutres proposes that they hold together and go down the river "at the spore."

Thus repeired the kynge ydiers, but moche was his losse; and Soriondes repeired wiħ aƚƚ his pray that was so grete to the cauchie, and passed ouer delyuerly, and rode be-nethe the casteƚƚ Randoƚƚ streigħt to the brigge of Doue, and put in the vaungarde xv^{Ml} men, and rode forħ tiƚƚ that the fowarde saugħ the bataile at the brigge foot of the childeren that faugħt a-gein x^{Ml} that kepte the passage; and whan thei saugħ this thei spedde hem faste to ride, for hem thougħt longe er thei were taken, and whan the childeren saugħ hem so come thei were sore dismayed; and than Ewein loked towarde Bredigan and saugħ where that Agravain com gripinge his baner, and he saugħ wele that thei were grete peple, and than he badde his felowes to be of goode chier, for he saugħ come cristin knyghtes; and than seide his felowes, "sir, how may ye hem se, and how shuƚƚ we do? for lo! here biħ saisnes that comeħ be-fore and be-hynde, and ne forwarde ne bakwarde may we not fle, but that we moste perisħ, and on this side yef we take the feilde we mygħt haue grete damage." "I shaƚƚ telle yow," quod Ewein avoutres, "what we shuƚƚ do; holde we vs to-geder cloos and make semblaunte as we wolde wiħ Ioyne, and than wiƚƚ we go down this ryver at the spore, ffor yef that we a-bide hem that beħ here comynge thei shuƚƚ vs haue taken alle er thei ben heder I-come."

The others agree, and they close together. When the Saxons come within bow-shot, they spur their horses over the bridge and smite through them.

To this that Ewein a-voutres haħ seide thei acorded weƚƚ, and than thei closed hem rounde to-geder and hem distrayned, but erst were the saisnes come hem rigħt nygħ wiħynne the shote of an arblaste, and whan thei saugħ the cristin come thei sporered theire horse ouer the brigge at a brunt, and thei smyte thourgħ the x^{Ml} and ouer-threwe mo than CC at the firste springe, and whan the saisnes wende hem to close they glenched down the river wiħ spede of the spore that wey as thei saugħ the cristin comynge. Whan the fowarde of the kynge Soryoundes saugħ hem that fledden, thei priked after hem more than xv^{Ml}, and pressed so thikke vpon the brigge and so streite that many of hem feƚƚ in the water, and the x^{Ml} that the passage kepten enchased the childeren tiƚƚ thei hem atteyned in a medowe be-twene two rivers, and ther sholde haue ben *hastely so grete losse that neuer it myght haue ben restoreth, wher-of hadde be grete damage and grete doeƚƚ to aƚƚ the reame of logres; and than com Agrauain that weƚƚ sein the chase be-gynne vpon the childeren as soone as thei com down the brigge, and a-noon as Agravain com nygħ the saisnes he lete his horse renne and his felowes also and smote on hem so harde that aƚƚ the foreste and the ryver resounded, and whan the speres were broken, thei drougħ theire swerdes and be-gonne the medle creweƚƚ and felon, ne neuer herde ye so fewe men that more delyuerly hem contened, ffor so moche thei dide to theym that made the foure hundre forsake place. Agrauain and his companye drof hem bakke aƚƚ a bowe draught, and that was grete socour for the childeren, ffor Ewein le graunde and Ewein A-voutres were bothe smyte down of theire horses and fougħt on foote fuƚƚ sore, and also a hundre of theire felowes vn-horsed and wounded and hurt right sore, and therfore the cristin hadde grete hevynesse, and hem drof bakke that thei myght not stynte on the grounde, and it was no merveile, for thei were but thre thousande and the saisnes were x^{Ml}, and also xv^{Ml} that com hem to helpe that passed the brigge in grete haste, and as soone as thei were ouer thei sprad a-brode down the river and abode that oon the tother, and the x^{Ml} foughten fuƚƚ vigerously that were fuƚƚ gladde of theire peple that thei saugħ repeire from Cornewayle, and the day be-gan to chauffe, and the sonne was risen right higħ as a-boute the houre of pryme, and the duste be-gan to rise right thikke that a myle thens myght oon knowe where was the trouble.

When the people of Soriondessee them flee, they press after them.

The 10.000 that kept the passage chase the children.

*[Fol. 99b.]

Agravain sees the chase.

He and his fellows smite hard on the Saxons,

and drive them back. This is a great succour for the children.

The Christians are only 3,000 against 10,000, and they are driven back.

The dust rises thickly.

Whan Agrauain saugħ that his peple myght not kepe her grounde, he swor that he wolde not thens departe thougħ he sholde be deed tho in the place. Than he smote

Agravain swears he will not depart,

and with his sword in both hands he performs great deeds of prowess.

the horse wiħ the spores and daysshed iꞑ a-monge heꝳ and caught his swerde iꞑ bothe hondes and cried a Clarence wiħ lowde voys, and be-gaꞑ to do soche maistries that his companye hadde merveile of his grete prowesse, ffor theỉ trowed not iꞑ hym so grete vertu as theỉ ther saugħ, and the saisnes gretly hym douted for the merveiles that theỉ saugħ hym doꞑ, but for aƚƚ that hadde he litiƚƚ profite; but as Gaheret com hym for to socoure wiħ thre thousande meꞑ of armes, and iꞑ his comynge he made alle the renges to fremyssħ, for eche ooꞑ that coꞑ wiħ hym bar ooꞑ to the grounde at theire metynge, and disparbled the saisnes towarde the brige; and whaꞑ Eweiꞑ the more and Eweiꞑ a-voutres saugħ the saisnes drawe bak, theỉ seide theỉ hadde founde strengħ of peple, and ooꞑ asked of a-nother, "Lorde god, who may be these cristeꞑ, for fayꞑ wolde we knowe?" Ther was a yonge squyer that hyight Aces de Bemonde; he coꞑ to hem and seide, "Sirs, be ye come iꞑ-to this contrey to be-holde here these turmentys and the feire strokes of knyghtis, for yef ye wolde knowe what theỉ be, ye most a-vaunce yow forħ and do so that theỉ enquere who ye beꞑ, for by theire prowesse is knoweꞑ the worthy where-so-euer theỉ beꞑ, and ye ne do but muse as fooles and lese youre *tyme, and therfore lete vs helpe hem to discounfite these false saisnes, ffor what folke that these beꞑ cristiꞑ or other theỉ be worthỉ men, but moche me merveileħ whens come alle these saisnes, and soone it shaƚƚ be shewed who shaƚƚ do beste, ffor I yow a-vye to turney wiħ oure enmyes that haue doꞑ vs so grete damage, and to oure frendes and to oure auncestres, and yef we dye, at this nede more honourably ne may we suffre the deħ thaꞑ for the love of J*es*hu criste, and for his lawe to strengthe and encreseꞑ." Whaꞑ the childereꞑ herde Acoꞑ de bemonde thus speke, theỉ hadde grete shame and seideꞑ that neuer wolde theỉ be holde for cowarde, and acoꞑ spronge forħ and seide, "Now be it seyꞑ who doħ beste." Thaꞑ theỉ hem renged alle to-geder, and thaꞑ theỉ sprongeꞑ iꞑ a-monge[1] the saisnes and be-gonne to smyte and throwe downꞑ on euery side,

Gaheret comes to his succour with three thousand men, and disperses the Saxons.

Ewein the more and Ewein avoutres wonder who the Christians are.

Aces de Bemonde comes to them,

and proposes that they help the Christians to discomfit the Saxons.

*[Fol. 100*a*.]

He wonders where all the Saxons come from.

When the children hear Acon de bemonde speak they have great shame.

They spring in among the Saxons.

---

[1] The word "a-monge" is repeated in the MS.

and diden so weƚƚ that the worde and the renon com to Agrauain and to Gaheret that the childeren foughten be-nethe fer from hem. Whan thei herde the tidinges, thei wiste weƚƚ it were the sones of kynge Vrien, and drowgħ down that wey and made soche martire of the saisnes that thei made tho x^{Ml} to rebounde vpon the fowarde of kynge Sorioundes, that were mo than xv^{Ml}, and Agrauain and Gaheret haue so spedde that thei be come to the childeren that sharply foughten, ffor Ewein le graunt and Ewein a-voutres and Acon traueiled so merveillously that oon for that other that gladde was Gaheret hem to be-holden, and so was his companye, that a-gein diden so weƚƚ that noon was founden cowarde ne ydeƚƚ; and than com Agrauain to Acon and asked what were these childeren, and he ansuerde that thei were the sones of kynge vrien, "that be come to take theire armes and to serve the[1] kynge Arthur, her vncle, witħ alle thise meyne that ye here sen." "Whiche be thei?" seide Agrauain. "Sir," seide Acon; "lo! hem ther in the armes half parted white and reade, but what be ye that this enquere?" "Certes," seide Agrauain, "we be nevewes to the kynge Arthur and sones to kynge loot of Orkanye and of leoneys, and my name is cleped Agr*a*uain and this other Gaheret my brother, and oure lorde be worshipped and preised that we be now mette hool and sounde in his londe." Than thei com to the childeren and made to hem grete ioye, and thei asked what thei were; but litiƚƚ while hadde thei be there whan thei saugħ come the vowarde of Saisnes witħ xv^{Ml} men, and thei that fledden witħ hem in companye that yet were v^{Ml}, and drof the cristin a-bakke fuƚƚ fiercely. Whan Agrauain and Gueheret saugħ hem come and the myschef so grete, thei seide to the childeren and to her companye, "Cosin, holde yow a-boute vs in oure feliship;" and thei ansuerde that thei wolde not hem lete for detħ ne for lif; and than thei thronge to-geder and begonne the bataile newe fuƚƚ stifly, but so longe mygħt thei not endure, for to many were the saisnes, that thei yaf bakke the space of a bowe draugħt wheder thei wolde or noon, ne neuer

Their renown comes to the ears of Agravain and Gaheret,

who make great slaughter of the Saxons,

and come to the children.

Agravain asks Acon who they are.

Acon asks who Agravain and his party are.

They come to the children and make great joy.

20,000 Saxons come toward them.

Agravain and Gueheret ask the children to keep with them.

The battle begins anew.

---

[1] The word "the" is repeated in the MS.

*[Fol. 100*b*.]

Gaheries comes to their relief with 3,000 men.

Agravain and the others give great strokes.

Gaheries throws down and slays many.

thei *sholde haue stynte tiƚƚ thei hadde come to Bredigan ne hadde be Gaheries that com wiħ thre thousande men, but thei ne wente not foule, for Agrauain and Gueheret and Ewein li grans and Ewein a-voutres and Acon and Alechin, these yaf grete strokes euer a-monge often that oon for the tother, and were hyndermeste in the route, and socoured her men wher thei saugħ hem encombred. Than com Gaheries wiħ his warde of iij^{Ml} goode men, and sette on hem fuƚƚ of Ire and malencolyus, and threwe down and slowgħ and kepte at staƚƚ a longe while, but in the fyn he mote yeve grounde a litiƚƚ, ffor than the saisnes begonne to recover londe vpon hem. But now a litiƚƚ turneħ the tale fro hem, and spekeħ of the kynge Sorioundes.

While they thus fight, the carriage and prey that Soriondes had taken comes to the bridge.

The leaders of the prey are Maglans and Pyngnores. They pitch their tents. Sorioundes asks why they lodge there,

and tells them to be ready to help.

While thei fougħt thus at the brigge ende, aƚƚ the cariage and the pray that kynge Sorioundes brougħt com to the brigge, and thei that hadde ther-of the kepynge seide thei sholde no ferther passe tiƚƚ thei saugħ to what fyn the bateile sholde drawe, ffor on this side that we be on nowe haue we no drede, and yef ther come vpon us gret forse of peple we may vs here deffende better and more suerly, and more may we greve hem than thei vs, ffor we shuƚƚ be at the brigge heed and kepe hem so of, that nougħt shuƚƚ thei haue of oures. Than toke thei grounde and hem logged; and the maistres that condited the pray was Maglans and Pyngnores, and wiħ hem xx^{Ml} or mo; and than thei pigħt tentes and pavylou*ns*, and Sorioundes rode tiƚƚ he com to the brigge, and than he asked whi thei were so soone herberowed, and thei seide thei were more sure on that side than on that othir side of the ryver, "ffor we knowe not what peple that ther ben there." "Now," quod Sorioundes, "loke that ye be weƚƚ a-raied to helpe oure peple yef it be nede;" and thei seide that so thei wolde, but returneħ now we agein to Gaheries and to his companye that fighted be-twene the river of Dione a*nd* Bredigan.

9,400 Christians fight against 20,000 Saxons.

Now seiħ the boke that the ix^{Ml} and foure hundred cristin so foughten a-gein the saisnes that were weƚƚ xx^{Ml} or moo, that moche loste that oon parte and that other, and the saisnes more than the cristin, but longe ne mygħt endure the cristin for yet the childeren were tendre and grene, so that thei moste nede remeve a-brode in-to the feilde, and in short tyme thei sholde haue hadde grete losse; but as Segramor com prikinge wiħ thre thousand men armed, and hym thouġħt riġħt longe er that he were assembled, and he smote vpon hem so fiercely that aƚƚ the chase he made to cesse by fin force. Than was the stour be-gonne harde and fuƚƚ creweƚƚ, ffuƚƚ grete crakke and noyse ther was of brekynge of speres and stif strokes of swerdes vpon helmes and vpon hauberkes, and many horse and man leide on the grounde, and fuƚƚ weƚƚ dide ther Seigramor and his companye that many an hethen made his ende; but aƚƚ that weƚƚ dede of Seigramor myġħt thei neuer stynte the saisnes, ffor his men were putt bakke that his weƚƚ doynge myġħt not but litiƚƚ be sene; and than *com Galaishin, with thre thousande men, and mette wiħ hem so harde, that be-fore theire speres ne lefte noon vp-riġħt stondinge. Than thei cried a Clarance wiħ a lowde voyse, that is the worde and the signe of kynge Arthur, and the saisnes were sore greved and com a-gein hem and mette hem tho dispiteously that thei made hem alle to disparble a-gein a-bakke. Than a-roos the shoute and the noise vpon hem so grete that the saisnes were driven bakke hastely with-oute eny a-reste euen to the brigge of Dione. Than ther was grete occision of the saisnes, that of the xx^{Ml} ther was slayn vij^{Ml} er thei come to the brigge, and yef theire socoure hadde not be so nyġħ ther hadde neuer ascaped noon of hem a-wey, but Maglans and Pyngnores com for to socour theym wiħ xx^{Ml} saisnes as faste as thei myġħt passe the brigge, and many thei throwe to grounde in her comynge. Ther be-gan angwissous myschef and grete losse, for the saisnes were xxx^{Ml} and mo, and the cristin ne were but xiiij^{Ml} what oon what other, and therfore thei were putte bakke the space of a mark shote. Ther suffred moche Galashin and Seigramor and Gaheries and Geheret and Agrauain and Ewein lig*ra*ns and Ewein a-voutres and Aces of campercorentin and brian of Arondeƚƚ. These diden merveillouse prowesse a-bove alle other that were in the hoste. These ix suffred so moche, and so moche thei dide in armes, that alle hadde ben discoun-

The Christians would not long endure, but Seigramor comes to their assistance with 3,000 men.

The conflict is hard and cruel.

Seigramor and his company do full well.

*[Fol. 101*a*.]

Galaishin comes with 3,000 men. They cry "a Clarance," and disperse the Saxons.

They drive them back to the bridge of Dione.

Maglans and Pyngnores come to the succour of the Saxons.

Galashin, Seigramor, and the others suffer much,

but they show great prowess.

fited ne hadde be theire worthi) dedes, but in) the fin) thei) moste nede turne.

The conflict is great.

Gawein comes with 5,000 men.

He slays man and beast with his axe,

and pursues the Saxons so fiercely,

that more than a thousand fall into the river,

Fuƚƚ grete was the stour and harde medle be-twene Dione and Bredigan) ther as these xiiij^{Ml} cristin) be a-gein) xxx^{Ml} saisnes, and the myschef was grete for thei) hadde ther grete losse; and than) com) Gawein) hem for to socour wiħ v^{Ml} men of armes, and than) be-gan ther a grete stour and harde, ffor as soone as Gawein) was come he be-gan to do so weƚƚ that the saisnes rused and lefte place, ffor he slougħ man and horse whom that he raugħt wiħ his axe that he heilde wiħ bothe hondes, and whom) he ther-wiħ atteyned, hym mygħt warante neither Iren) ne steiƚƚ ne other armour, ffor he alone sustened aƚƚ the bateile, that alle the saisnes fledde from his axe on) euery side, and he hem pursude so fiercely a-noon) as noone was come that his strengthe be-gan to double, tho was it no wisdome to a-bide hym eny stroke, for he was so creweƚƚ for wraħ and Ire, and he kepte hem so short that of fin) force he made hem to resorte to the entre of the brigge of dione, where thei) were so thikke and so entacched ech amonge other, that mo than) a thousand fiƚƚ in)-to the river.

Sorioundes is furious, and would have come over the bridge, but he cannot for the press.

Gawein, Galashin, and the others defend the entry.

There are hills of dead men.

Gawein and his company withdraw glad and merry to Bredigan.

Whan) Sorioundes saugħ the damage that these hym dide and the grete martire, he was so fuƚƚ of sorowe that ny he yede wode for wraħ, and fain) wolde he haue come ouer the brigge, yef he hadde mygħt for to haue foughten) wiħ hem to socour his men), but thei) were so thikke vpon) the brigge and down) the river that noon) mygħt come ouer; and thaugħ the brigge hadde ben) aƚƚ clene empty it hadde not be no ligħt thinge for to haue passed, ffor Gawein) and Galashin) and Seigramor and Agrauain) and Gaheries and Gueheret *[Fol. 101b.] *and Ewein) li grans and Ewein) a-voutres were a-geins hem at the entre of the brigge that fiercely hem deffended the entre that noon) was so hardy that durste presse ouer, ffor thei) slougħ so many and made soche martire that ther was hilles of dede men and horse hem beforn), that the toon) myght not come to that other but launchant; and this assaut dured aƚƚ the day tiƚƚ nygħt that thei) withdrougħ; and on) that other side Gawein) and his companye withdrougħ hem and wente a-gein) to Bredigan), gladde and mery for the childeren that thei hadde so socoured at nede; and that nyght was ther grete ioye and grete feste, and thei ete and dranke with grete myrthe and solas, and after gon to bedde to reste, for thei were full wery of trauayle, and thei rested till it was day, that thei wolde go a-gein to fight with the saisnes, a-gein whom thei wolde deffende the londe and the contrey for euer more. But as thei were departed at euen from the brigge ther thei foughten, Sorioundes sente to seche the grettest lordes of his hoste for to take counseile what he sholde do, and as soone as he saugh his barouns assembled he hem asked how he sholde don, for he hadde founde the cristin full felon and crewell, and he was sore astoned for the grete damage that thei hadde hym don of his peple; and than a-roos vp Maglans vpon his feet, a grete Geaunt fell and crewell, but he was right wise, and he spake right high that he myght well ben herde.

They rest till day.

When they depart Sorioundes sends for his lords to take counsel.

Maglans arises,

"Kynge Sorioundes, yef thow will do my counseile, set forth thy Cariage now right and lete hem go be-fore oure chyuachie and neuer stinte till thei come to oure hoste, and Pynogras shall hem condite with x^{Ml} men be-fore in the firste fronte, and we shall come in the taile after with as moche peple as we can gete and assemble, and yef the cristen vs pursue thei may be well receyved, and that the cariage be not letted to iourney forth euer on her wey, for that is the beste as me semeth." And than cried alle the saisnes that the kynge Sorioundes sholde a-corde ther-to, as maglans hadde seide; and he comaunded to trusse and charge the harnoys and sette forth the vaungarde be-fore firste ouer the brigge with x^{Ml} saisnes or moo, and whan all the harneys was paste, than passed he ouer hymself with xxx^{Ml} saisnes and rode after a softe paas all the nyght and all the nexte day with-oute eny more distrubinge till thei com to Valdesbery ther as the sege was leide, and ther thei were soone welcomed, ffor moche were thei desired for the vitaile that thei brought, and thei brought I-nough wher-with the hoste was refresshed well in ese; but of hem ne speketh no more at this tyme, but turneth to the childeren that ben in the Castell at Bredigan.

and counsels that they send the carriage on first and follow it themselves till they come to their host.

All the Saxons agree thereto.

They depart, and ride all night and day till they come to Valdesbery,

where they are welcomed for the victuals they bring.

The brethren are glad for the coming of the children.

Full gladde and ioyfull were these bretheren for the comynge of these childeren, the sones of kinge Vrien, and made hem grete ioye and feste that nyght till thei were brought to bedde for to reste; and on the morowe erly Gawein sente a spie for to se *what the saisnes diden that thei hadde lefte at the brigge of dione, and whan he com ther he fonde that thei were departed and gon in the nyght, and than he returned and tolde to Agrauain how thei were alle gon, and he ther-fore was sory that thei were so ascaped, but seth it myght be noon other thei a-bode stille in the town, and soiourned to a-bide to here tidinges of the kynge Arthur or of other a-ventures.

Gawein sends a spy *[Fol. 102*a*.] to see what the Saxons are doing.

They are sorry that they have escaped.

Gawein asks Ewein by whose counsel he sent his letter.

Hit fill on a day be-fore dyner that the childeren dide walke be the ryver, and Gawein com to Ewein and seide, "Feire cosin, how knewe ye that we were here assembled, and be whos conseile sente ye me the lettre that ye sente me this other evenynge?" "What lettere was that?" quod Ewein, "ffor trewly I sente yow neuer noon in my lyve, ne I knewe of yow no tidinges, till god of his grace sente yow to vs whan we were in soche poynt, ffor elles hadde we be alle slain or taken and distroied." "How," quod Gawein, "feire cosin Ewein, sey ye in trowthe that ye sente me neuer letter that I sholde come yow to socour?" "Sir," quod Ewein, "I sey yow soth ther-of withoute faile."

Ewein says he never sent a letter.

The brethren marvel thereat.

Whan that the b[r]etheren herde that Ewein sente hem neuer letter ne message, thei merveiled moche fro whens he myght come that hem hadde brought. Than thei lete crie and enquere yef the man that hadde brought the lettere were yet in the town; but thei cowde not here of hym no tydinge, and thei desired sore to wite where he was be-come; thus thei a-bode in the town viij dayes full, till that tidinges come to hem from Arondell that tolde hem how the peple and the Gentilmen of the garnyson were sore greved with the saisnes that euery day hem assailden, and how thei dide but loke after the howr that thei sholde alle be take. Whan Gawein herde of the grete nede that thei hadde in the castell, he for-thought it sore. Than he called his felowes and seide it were goode to go thider to the Castell of

They inquire for the man who brought the letter, but they cannot hear of him.

They learn that the people of Arondell are sore grieved by the Saxons.

Gawein calls his fellows,

Arondeƚƚ for to rescewe theym, for thei haue grete mystere, and sholde we heire tidinges soneste of my fader the kynge loot, and thei seide thei wolde do hys volunte. Than thei a-raide hem redy and toke her wey towarde Arondeƚƚ, and were x^{Ml} witħ-oute moo of the beste horsed, ffor thei wolde not disgarnyssħ the londe of peple, and so thei ride on euenynges and on morownynges, and by the moste vncowtħ weyes that thei knewe, tiƚƚ thei com half a myle from Arondeƚƚ, and than thei herde grete bruyt and grete noyse, ffor Arans the sone of Brangue was entred in-to the londe of leonoys, and hadde wasted moche of the londe aƚƚ a-boute as he hadde gon and assayled the Casteƚƚ of Arondeƚƚ often tymes and hadde brente the borowgħ; and it be-fiƚƚ that ther com that wey a route of yonge squyres, and com oute of the londe of Strangore, and thei were a-bowte xxvj, and thei noon hede ne were not war of the kynge Arans that hadde aƚƚ day assailed the Casteƚƚ of Arondeƚƚ, but it was so weƚƚ defended that no-*thinge thei wonne, saf only thei hadde brent the bourgħ witħ-oute, and than the saisnes hem with-droughen to resten, and as thei turned, thei mette the xxvj squyres that kay destranx and kehedyn dide lede.

and they take their way to Arondell with 10,000 men.

They ride morning and evening till they come half a mile from Arondell.

Arans had assailed the castle often.

Twenty-six squires come out of the land of Strangore.

*[Fol. 102*b*.]

They are led by Kay destranx and Kehedyn.

As soone as the saisnes saugħ these squyres come, thei sette on hem a showte and ronne vpon hem, ffor weƚƚ thei knewe thei were cristen, and thei hem defended in the beste maner that so smaƚƚ a peple mygħt. Whan thei of the casteƚƚ saugħ the bataile so be-gonne in the mydowes by the ryver, thei wiste weƚƚ it were cristin and hem be-heilde a grete while, but thei weren so fewe that thei were not seen a-monge hem, and thei foughten rigħt harde and sore, but no while mygħ thei endure, for the saisnes were so many. Than thei of the casteƚƚ issed oute $iiij^{C}$ that were wigħt and hardy and put hem-self in a-uenture for to socour hem that were cristen, and thei smote in a-monge hem with so grete raundon that thei ben persed thourgħ to the place ther these squyres were that litiƚƚ while elles sholde haue endured but that thei moste haue ben deed or taken; and whan thei were mette to-geder and a litiƚƚ knowen than be-gan the medle newe to enforce and harde bataile, ffor ther was many

When the Saxons see them, they set on them.

The people of the castle see the battle, but cannot see the Christians.

Four hundred of them issue forth,

and press through to the squires.

The Saxons sound their horns for succour.

stroke yoven and receyved that wratthed sore the saisnes and weƚƚ it shewed for thei sowned theire hornes and tymbres and trumpes, and that was token that thei wolde haue socoure; and than the saisnes assembled on alle partees, that thei spredde aƚƚ the river of arson, and the meyne of the Casteƚƚ de la roche were come oute, and wente towarde the Citee of Clarance witħ grete cariage that was hem sente oute of Saxoyne, and thei dide it condyte that it hadde brougħt thens, and thei were many and alle well armed, ffor as the booke seitħ thei were come ther-witħ oute of Saxoyne mo than lx^{Ml} witħ-oute the peple that was witħ kynge Arans that were spradde a-brode thourgħ the contrey for to forrey, and thei hadde wasted and distroied that more than two iourneyes ye sholde not haue founde n[o]ther house ne town that a man mygħt herberowe in, hym ne his horse, ne fynde so moche vitaile for oon man*n*es repast. But now lete vs repeire to the squyres vnder Arondeƚƚ.

The men of the castle de la Roche come out toward the city of Clarance.

There are more than 60,000 of them come out of Saxoyne.

The twenty-six squires are in great distress, but theyare comforted by them of the castle of Arondell,

At fuƚƚ grete distresse were thise xxvi squyres that hem deffended a-gein xx^{Ml} saisnes; but thei of the casteƚƚ of Arondeƚƚ moche hem conforted and sustened, for in that co*m*pany were many worthy men that were grete lordes sones, ffor ther was Ewein with the white honde, and Ewein de lioneƚƚ, and Ewein Estranis, and Grosenain de strangot, these were lefte for to a-bide the kynge Arthur for thei wolde no knyghtes be made but of his honde, and alle were thei heigħ menes sones, as kynges and Dukes, and also thei were nygħ cosins to kynge loot of Orcanye and to kynge Brangore, and were alle come oute of her contrey in pryve wise, ffor ther was noon of hem that com witħ moo in his companye than xx, and thei a-bode ther as sowdiours for wynnynge, for litiƚƚ hadde thei brougħt oute of theire contrey, and thei haue so don that I-nougħ thei hadde *geten of the saisnes.

who are great lords' sons.

*[Fol. 103*a*.]

The noise increases.

Ewein white hand asks who the squires are.

Whan these squyres com to the bataile the cry and the noyse encresed gretly; and whan these foure hundred of the casteƚƚ come to these sex score, Ewein white honde, that was more enquesitif, asked of whens thei were. And kay destranx seide thei were squyres and sowdiours that wente to seche theire armes of the kynge Arthur, and how thei were nygħ cosins to

When they of the castle learn who they are they ask them to stay with them.

the two kynges of Strangore; and whan thei of the castell herde that thei were squyers, thei asked yef thei wolde a-bide with hem, and thei wolde hem neuer faile, and that thei wolde a-bide alle to-geder till that the kynge[1] Arthur were come, and than sholde thei gon in fere to take theire armes, for in the same wise were thei come and for the same cause; and thei ansuerde that so hem liked wele.

The carriage of the roche approaches.

And while thei spake thus to-geder approched the cariage of the roche, and weren in the firste fronte xx^{Ml} of hem that sholde it conditen, and xx^{Ml} in the taile after; and as thei com nygh Arondell thei saugh the x^{Ml} saisnes that foughten with thise squyres vnder Arondell; and whan thei wiste it was the vowarde of kynge Arans thei slakede her brideles and environed the squyres all aboute; and thei hem peyned sore to repeire in a-gein to the castell, but the saisnes were so many and so thikke that thei myght not hem breke ne pershe; and so longe myght it not be, but thei moste needes haue ben taken and the castell also, but than com Gawein and his companye with x^{Ml} men of armes; and as soone as he saugh the bataile medled, thei lete theire horse renne and com so harde that be-fore hem no-thinge myght withstonde for her sharp trenchaunt speres. Ther was stronge stour be-gonne and many haubreke to-torne of double maile, and of deed and wounded peple was all the feilde couered. Ther loste the saisnes many, wherfore thei were sory and angry, of the comynge of Gawein hadde thei of the castell grete myster, ffor thei were at gret myschief, and in the comynge of Gawein and his felowes thei were so vigerouse vpon the saisnes that thei resorted vpon the cariage that sewed after; and whan Gawein saugh the squyres of Arondell he asked what thei were; and Ewein white hande seide thei were with the kynge Arthur and were come oute of the Castell for to rescue these squyres, and shewde hym theym that the saisnes hadde assailed; "and what be ye that thus me demaunde and that thus come to this grete nede;" and than he hym named and seide he was come hem to helpe and

The squires try to repair to the castle, but they cannot break through the Saxons.

Gawein comes with his company of 10,000 men. Nothing can withstand their spears.

The Saxons lose many.

Gawein asks who the squires are. Ewein white hand tells him they are with king Arthur.

Ewein asks Gawein who his company are.

---

[1] This word is spelt "kynke" in the MS.

When he learns who they are he thanks God. They cry "Clarence," and smite among the Saxons.

They show *[Fol. 103b.] marvellous prowess.

The Saxons forsake the field.

An old man comes to Gawein and counsels him to lead his fellows into Arondell.

alle his companye; and whan̄ he hadde herde this he was so gladde that noon̄ myghħt be more, and thanked god of the socour that was comen̄, and than̄ thei̅ cried "Clarence!" the worde of kynge Arthur, and smote in̄ a-monge the saisnes and made soche martire that aƚƚ the feilde was strowed fuƚƚ of deed men̄ and horse. Ther dide Gawein̄ wonderes witħ his hondes, and Gaheries and Agrauain̄ and Galaishin̄ and Seigramor and Gueheret and Ewein̄ li grans and Ewein̄ a-voutres *the two sones of kynge Vrien̄, and Ales and Aces. These shewde there merveillouse prowesse; and on̄ that other side also dide weƚƚ and wonder merveillous; Dodyneƚƚ the Sauage, and Ewein̄ white honde, and Ewein̄ lyoneƚƚ, and Ewein̄ Estrains, and Gosenayne de strangot, and Kay destranx and Kehedin̄ the litiƚƚ, these xvij were in̄ the fore-fronte and made soche martire and soche slaughtere that noon̄ durste nyghħ hem ne abide a stroke, and alle theire other felowes dide also righħt weƚƚ that alle the saisnes were fain̄ to for-sake the feilde, and be fin̄ force to rebounde vpon̄ the xx^{Ml} that com̄ after the cariage. And than̄ com̄ an olde man̄ aƚƚ vn̄-armed on̄ a grete horse to Gawein̄, that wolde haue pursued the saisnes, and he seide, "Gawein̄, Gawein̄, and thou do after my rede returne agein̄ and bringe witħ the alle thi̅ felowes in̄-to Arondeƚƚ, ffor, lo, here come saisnes a grete nombre, and we may not hem endure."

Gawein is surprised to see so old a man on horseback.

The old man presses him to go,

Whan̄ Gawein̄ vndirstode the wordes of this wise man̄ he hym be-heilde and saughħ that he was righħt olde, and so croked that he merveiled that he myghħt holde hym̄ on̄ horse-bakke, and saughħ he hadde a grete beerde and a longe that couered aƚƚ his breste and was aƚƚ white, and a chapelet of coton̄ vpon̄ his hede, and clothed in̄ a robe of blakke, and for age heilde hym by the sadiƚƚ bowe, and loked vpon̄ Gawein̄ and seide, "Gawein̄, do as a wise man̄ and leve me weƚƚ, for alle thi̅ felowes be not of thi̅ strengthe ne force, and as weƚƚ owest thow to love her savetee and her lyves as thin̄ owne, and thow sholdest synne dedly yef thei̅ were loste thourghħ thi̅ foly, for heer-after may thei̅ come to grete goode, and of theym shaƚƚ Arthur haue grete myster thin̄ oncle as soone as he is repeired oute of the reame of Tamelide."

Whan̄ this olde man̄ hadde seide these wordes, he turned the streighħt wey towarde leoneys in̄ Orcanye as moche as his horse myghħt renne; and Gawein̄ stynted and cleped his felowes a-bowte hym, for the wise mannes counseile wolde he beleve. Than̄ thei̇ returned alle a softe paas towarde Arondeƚƚ, and lefte the chase, and entred in̄-to the Casteƚƚ and yede vpon̄ the walles, and be-heilde the saisnes that hem renged and assembled, and rode towarde Arondeƚƚ after the kynge Arans, that aƚƚ the londe of kynge loot hadde wasted; and thei̇ were so moche peple that nothinge myghħt hem withħ-stonde, and the kynge loot faughħt withħ theym many tymes and loste moche of his peple, and sore was he greved in̄ the ende; so that he be-hoved to bringe his wif to the Casteƚƚ of Glocedon̄ for strengthe. Whan̄ the kynge saughħ how the saisnes wasted his londe and distroied, and hadde slain̄ so moche of his peple that he myghħt not but kepe hym in stronge place, and than̄ he was fuƚƚ of sorowe and of hevynesse, and cursed the hour and the day that he was at werre withħ kynge Arthur, "for by hym haue I loste alle my childeren̄," and on̄ that other side his Citee was aƚƚ wasted, and he ne loked but after the hour to be take withħ-ynne, ffor the *walles were broke down̄ in̄ many places, and saughħ also how the kynge Arans was loged aƚƚ a-boute hym, and he hadde no peple in̄ his companye that myghħt eny while hym withħ-stonde yef the kynge Arans wolde eny while soiourne, but he desired it not gretly but a-boode after his men̄ that the contrey wasted and distroied aƚƚ environ̄.

and turns toward Leoneys, in Orcanye.

Gawein and his fellows enter into the castle.

The Saxons ride towards Arondell after king Arans.

King Loot thinks to bring his wife to Glocedon.

He curses the hour and day that he was at war with king Arthur.

His city is wasted, and *[Fol. 104*a*.] the walls broken down.

Whan̄ the kynge loot saughħ hym-self in̄ soche auenture, he toke counseile what was beste to do, and his counseile in̄ the ende was this, that at the firste cokke crowinge he sholde lepe to his horse, he and his wif, and his litiƚƚ sone that was but two yere of age, and lede hem to Glocedon̄, and sholde haue withħ hym v hundr*e* men weƚƚ armed, and that other part sholde a-bide stille that yet were vj^{Ml} of noble man̄ and hardy, and thei̇ hym promyseden̄ that thei̇ sholde kepe weƚƚ the Citee while there lif*e* myghħt endure. At mydnyghħt the kynge and his companye toke theire horse and his litiƚƚ sone mordered that the kynge Arthur hadde be-geten̄ in̄ soche manere as ye haue herde devised, and a

King Loot takes counsel what to do.

At midnight the king and his company take horse and ride out of the city.

They meet Teucus with 3000 Saxons.

who run on them,

and discomfit them.

His wife is taken.

The squire flies to Arondell.

squyer hym̄ bar in̄ a litiƚƚ cradeƚƚ, hym before, vpon̄ his horse nekke, and rode oute by a fause posterne of the Citee toward the gardins and entred in̄-to a lane, and rode aƚƚ nygħt and aƚƚ day tiƚƚ noone that neuere hadde distrubinge; but tha[n] was the kynge loot sore aflayed, ffor thei mette Teucus witħ thre thousand saisnes that repaired from̄ Arondeƚƚ that condited the pray to the kynge Arans, and as soone as theī knewe the kynge loot, theī ronne vpon̄ hym witħ grete hete, and ther a while was stronge stour and fuƚƚ nobly dide the kynge loot and the vC that were in̄ his companye; but of weƚƚ doynge was litiƚƚ myster, for soone were theī discounfited and chased oute of the feilde, and his wif also I-take. Than̄ the squyer fledde towarde Arondeƚƚ as faste as the horse mygħt hym bere. But now cessetħ a litiƚƚ of kynge loot and returne to Gawein̄.

Gawein and his fellows are glad and merry,

when a knight comes up to the castle at great speed.

He asks whether there is any fearless squire who will go with him.

Gawein asks which way he would go.

*[Fol. 104b.]

When the knight learns it is Gawein that speaks, he says that the adventure appertains to him.

Fuƚƚ gladde and mery were Gawein̄ and his felowes at Arondeƚƚ that nygħt that whan̄ theī were knowen̄ to-geder of the squyres that theī hadde rescuwed; and as theī were in̄ this ioye and in̄ this feeste, com̄ a knygħt rigħt weƚƚ armed vpon̄ a grete steede aƚƚ for swette, and his shilde aƚƚ to-daisht and hewen̄ witħ strokes that he hadde receyued of swerdes a-bove and be-nethe, and his couerynge cote aƚƚ to-rente, and his hauberke torn̄ and broken̄ in̄ many places, and he com̄ be-fore Arondeƚƚ a grete walop gripynge his launce, and whan̄ he com̄ be-fore the casteƚƚ yate he stynte, and saugħ the squyres a-bove on̄ the walles that grete ioye made oon̄ to a-nother, and a-noon̄ he gan̄ to crie, yef ther-ynne were eny squyer that were so hardy that durste hym snewen̄ thider as he wolde go, be soche a condicion̄ that he sholde haue no drede of no man̄ but of his owne corse. Whan̄ Gawein̄ it vnderstode, he asked what wey he wolde go. Quod the knygħt, "What art thow that spekest to me?" "My name," quod he, "is Gawein̄ the sone of *kynge loot." "Than̄ shaƚƚ I telle yow," quod he, "for the a-venture a-perteneth to yow more than̄ to eny other, and certes seide the knygħt in̄-to the entre of this foreste is the prowesse that I of speke. But ye haue not that prowesse ne the hardynesse that ye dar me sue, and yet is it oon̄ of the moste honourable a-uenture in this worlde, and that ye sholde moste be preised yef ye myħt it a-cheve, but ye haue nother the herte ne the hardynesse that ye durste thider come, and wite it weƚƚ but ye wiƚƚ come, I wiƚƚ go sooƚƚ be my-self."

Whan Gawein vndirstode hym that so cleped hym cowarde he was shamefaste, and seide that thouħ he sholde dye he wolde holde hym companye, and he be-gan for to go that fuƚƚ weƚƚ knewe his corage, and Gawein cleped hym a-gein and cried, "Sir knyħt, lo! me here aƚƚ redy to go wiħ yow. But that ye shuƚƚ me ensure that for noon eueƚƚ ye make me it for to do, and that ye shuƚƚ me helpe at youre power a-gein alle tho that wiƚƚ me mys-do." Whan he herde these wordes he a-bode and be-gan to smyle as it were in scorne, and seide as for that sholde he not lette, but that he wolde make hym the assuraunce, and Gawein asked his armes and armed hym wightly a-noon, and he a-boode that gretly hym hasted. And the felowes of Gawein com to hym and seide, "Sir, what thinke ye to do? Ne goħ not wiħ-outen vs, for we wote neuer whether it be for goode or for eueƚƚ." And Gawein seide that he wolde weƚƚ that thei wente wiħ hym yef the knyħt wolde assente. "And we shuƚƚ hym aske," seide Galashin. Than ran Seigramor to the knyħt and asked, "Sir knyħt, and it plese yow ther ben som*me* here-ynne that fayn wolde go wiħ yow in companye, and theire feliship shaƚƚ yow nouħt empeire, and therfore thei yow preyen by me that ye wiƚƚ hem graunte to holde wiħ yow companye." And the knyħt hem ansuerde and seide he wolde it weƚƚ, and weƚƚ it hym plesed that alle wente that go wolde, ffor the auenture is soche that noon shaƚƚ faile to fynde his auenture that ther comeħ; and than Seigramor was gladde, and a-noon thei armed hem ther-ynne wiħ grete spede tiƚƚ thei were vij^{Ml} that mo thei wolde not lede, but tho were of the beste, and of theym that were beste horsed, and whan thei com oute of the casteƚƚ, Gawein toke the assuraunce of the knyħt that for noon eueƚƚ he com not hym for to seche.

Gawein says he will hold him company,

and arms himself.

Gawein's fellows want to go with him.

Seigramor asks the knight whether the others may go too.

The knight agrees.

Seigramor is glad.
They arm themselves with speed.
They are 7,000.

Than thei wente ridinge aƚƚ the day and aƚƚ the nyħt tiƚƚ it com to the dawenynge, and than thei herde at the ende of a launde a grete crye and a grete noyse of peple, and as hem

They ride all day and night.

They meet a squire bearing a child in a cradle,

who tells them he is flying with king Loot's child.

*[Fol. 105*a*.]

Gawein tells him to rest in the wood till he returns.

semed ther were many, and than thei mette a squyer that fledde vpon a grete horse that bar a chielde be-fore hym in a cradeƚƚ, and whan Gawein hym mette, he asked hym witħ whom he was and whi he fledde so faste; and he hem be-heilde and saugħ that thei were cristin, and seide, "I am witħ the kynge loot that the saisnes han discounfited at the ende of this launde towarde that wode, ffor he was goynge toward Glocedon and ledde witħ hym his wif, and now thei haue hir taken and chased hym oute of the feilde, and I am thus fleynge as ye seen witħ this childe that is hers, ffor neuer shaƚƚ I it lete tiƚƚ I haue sette it in soche *place that it shaƚƚ not haue drede of the saisnes that in-to this contrey ben entred, and for the love of god ne go ye no ferther, feire lordes, for ye shuƚƚ fynde ther so grete plente of saisnes that ye ne shuƚƚ may hem endure." "Certeis," seide Gawein, "but I shaƚƚ telle the what thow shalt do; thow shalt go reste the here in this wode tiƚƚ thow se what shaƚƚ falle of this bataile, and after, yef I may ascape, I wiƚƚ the bringe ther as thow ne childe shuƚƚ haue no drede of noon euеƚƚ that no man shall yow do," and praide hym so that he hym g*ra*unted.

The knight rides on fast.

Gaweinspurs his horse.

He sees in the middle of a meadow a lady,

drawn along by Taurus after his horse.

The lady cries to St. Mary.

Taurus smites her,

With that thei departed that oon from that other, and the knyght wente forth that moche dide Gawein for to haste, and badde hym sue faste witħ-oute lettinge, and ther-witħ he rode faste be-fore; and whan Gawein saugħ he wente he spored his horse after and so dide his felowes also, and rode faste tiƚƚ thei were paste the foreste, and saugħ the chase that euen tho was be-gonne after the kynge loot, that fledde to Glocedon witħ the peple that was hym be-lefte of the bataile; and on that other side Gawein be-heilde in the myddiƚƚ of the medowe, and saugħ a lady of grete bewte ne hadde be the doeƚƚ and the sorowe that she made and the myschief that she was ynne, and she was aƚƚ discheuelee in her heer, and Taurus hir heilde be the tresses and drougħ hir after his horse, and hir robe that she was in clad was so grete that for combraunce she myght not a-rise, and she braied and cride witħ an high voyse, "Seint Marie, blissed lady and moder of god! helpe me and socour." And whan she cried and cleped oure lady seint marie, Taurus smote hir witħ his honde armed rigħt sore that she fiƚƚ down to the erthe euen as she hadde be deed, and whan he hadde sette hire vpon his horse she fiƚƚ a-gein down to the erthe as a woman that was hurte, and cried and braide rigħt lowde, and seide that she wolde fayne be deed; and he a-gein sette hir vpon horse, and she fiƚƚ down a-gein to grounde, and seide as longe as she mygħt lyve sholde he neuer lede thens for no power that he hadde; and whan he saugħ that he mygħt not hir maistrie, he hente hir be the tresses and drougħ hir towarde the horse trailinge, and smote hir so that she was aƚƚ couered in blode what from mouthe and nose; and so he hatħ hir trayned and drawen, that the lady mygħt no lenger crye ne brayen, she was so hoorse and so brethles that on hire feet mygħt she not stonde ne sustene.

and sets her on his horse, off which she falls twice.

He drawsher along by her hair.

She is hoarse and breathless.

And whan the knygħt saugħ the lady so eueƚƚ be sein he seide to Gawein, "Now, Gawein, knowest thow not that lady yonder? and yef euer ye hir loved dayes of youre lyf thinke hir to rescowen and to a-vengen." And as soone as Gawein saugħ he knewe hire wele; than he was so fuƚƚ of angwissħ that ner he yede oute of his witte, ne he wende neuer to haue sein the hour to haue come ther-to. Than he smote the horse witħ sopores aƚƚ that he mygħt, and hielde a grete shorte spere, the heed rigħt sharp̄ and trenchaunt; and mydday was somdeƚƚ passed and the sonne rigħt higħ, and Gawein cried to Taurus, "Leff the lady, traitour fitz aputain! in eueƚƚ tyme hast thow her so dolerous mette, for neuer in thi liff *didest thow foly that thow shalt bye so dere." And whan Taurus saugħ hym come that so gretly to hym cried and manaced, he lete the lady falle and righted his armes and toke a grete spere and a rude and lete renne his horse a-gein hym; and Gawein and he smote to-geder as harde as theire armes mygħt dure, and Taurus brake his spere, and Gawein smote hym so rudely thourgħ shelde and hauberke that the spere heede shewde thourgħ his chyne an arme lengthe, and he blussħt so harde to grounde that his nekke brake a-sonder; and Gaheret and Gaheries and Agrauain a-ligħt down, and oon smote of his heed and a-nother thriste hym thourgħ witħ his swerde, and the thirde smote of bothe his armes, for it was not

The knight asks Gawein if he knows the lady.

Gawein knows her well, and is full of anguish.

He spurs his horse, and calls out to Taurus to leave the lady.

*[Fol. 105b.]

Taurus lets the lady fall and takes his spear.

They smite together.

Gawein smites Taurus down, so that his neck breaks.

Gaheret, Gaheries, and Agravain alight and mutilate him.

They smite in among the Saxons and slay more than 10,000.

Gawein goes to where his mother lies, and weeps sore.

The brethren of Gawein come and make great sorrow.

I-nougħ to hem that Gawein hadde don, but made of hym smale peces; and these other smote in a-monge the saisnes and made of hem soche martirdom and soche occision that thei slougħ mo than x^{Ml} er thei leften; and Gawein sloughħ so many that he was aƚƚ wete in blode and brayn that his armes dropped down as he hadde be wete in a flode. And whan that the saisnes saugħ the grete occision that vpon turned, thei fledden alle that myghħt thourgħ wode and thourgħ playn; and Gawein repeired thider as he saugħ hys moder ly, and a-lighħt on foote, and toke hir in his armes and fonde hir euen as deed; and he wepte sore that the teeris ronne down from his iyen as thikke as water hadde be throwen in his visage, and cried and wrange his handes and made soche doeƚƚ and sorowe that alle his felowes were ther-witħ a-noyed and hadden ther-of grete pite that ther nas noon but wepte water witħ his iyen; and whan the bretheren of Gawein com thider ther be-gan the doeƚƚ and sorowe so grete that noon erthly man myght devise noon gretter.

The lady opens her eyes and sees Gawein.

She tells him not to weep.

She asks for his brethren.

Then she grieves for the loss of Mordred and her husband,

who she fears is wounded to death.

Whan the lady vndirstode the brayes and the cries that the bretheren made a-boute hir, she opened hir iyen and saugħ hir sone Gawein, that hir heilde in his armes, and knewe hym wele a-noon, and lifte vp hir handes ioynynge towarde heuene, and thanked oure lorde of that socour*e* that he hadde hir sente. Than she spake as she myghħt and seide, "Feire sone Gawein, be stille and wepe no more, for I haue not the harme that I sholde dye fore, but hurte I am righħt sore;" and than she asked hym where his bretheren were, and a-noon thei com before hir makynge grete doeƚƚ, and whan she hem saugħ she thanked oure lorde, and in a while after*e* a-noon she seide, "Haa las! my sone mordred haue I loste, and my lorde youre fader that this day hatħ suffred grete peyne me for to rescewen and socour, ffor whan he hadde alle loste his men I saugħ hym fighħt longe a-gein v^{C} men and a-bode while oon myghħt haue gon half a myle of grounde vpon his feet, and therfore I haue grete drede that he be wounded to the detħ, ffor I saugħ hem launche at hym knyves and gavelokk*es* and dartes soche foison as it hadde reyned from heuene; ne neuer wolde he voide the place ne me forsake tiƚƚ I hym coniured for that he loved beste in the worlde that he wolde gon his wey, and than *he dide so sorowfull that no man myght more." "Dame," quod Gawein, "of Mordred my brother I can telle yow tidinges, ffor the squyer that it bar hath hym kept wisely and vs a-bydeth in this foreste, but of the kynge my fader I can not sey."

*[Fol. 106*a*.]

Gawein tells her of the safety of Mordred.

Whan the lady it vndirstode that it hevied her herte and swowned in Gaweins armes, and he her kiste and wepte right sore, and whan she com a-gein from swownynge she yaf a sore sigh, and with that the colour*e* com a-gein in-to her visage, and than she asked Gawein watir to waisshe hir face, that was all soilede with blode, and oon it brought in an hatte of stiele, and than she wossh hir visage as softely as she myght; and than thei ordeyned hir a litier vpon two palfrayes, and leide ther-ynne fresch gras and erbes plente and clothes, and then leide her ther-ynne softely, and than gadered the prayes that thei hadde wonne of the saisnes and wente forth to Arondell a goode spede, and thei hadde but litill while riden whan the squyer com be-fore hem with the childe; and than was Gawein gladde, and rode forth with the childe till thei com to Arondell, where-as thei soiourned viij dayes full till the lady was hool, and than thei departed from thens and wente to logres, the chief Citee of the kynge Arthur, alle the company to-geder; but two hundr*e* squyres thei lefte at Arondell to kepe the Castell, and ledde with hem the lady and hir litill sone. And the four*e* bretheren swor*e* that neuer sholde the kynge loot her fader haue a-gein theire moder till that he hadde acorded with kynge Arthur their*e* vncle. Of this thinge that thei dide was the lady gladde; and so thei spedde theire iourneyes till thei com to logres, where thei were receyved with grete honoure and reverence. And Doo of Cardoell made to hem grete ioye and feeste, and so dide alle the Citee; but whan thei parceyved the lady thei made moche more ioye, and hir dide as grete worship as myght be don to eny lady of the worlde; and euery man was gladde of the a-venture that god hadde hem sente. And than made Gawein to enquere and serche yef eny man knewe the knyght that hadde hem ledde to socour his moder, but noon

She swoons at the news.

When she comes to herself she asks Gawein for water to wash her face with.

They lead her in a litter to Arondell.

They find the child.

When the lady is well, they go to Logres.

The four brethren swear that their father shall not have their mother till he is at one with Arthur.

Doo of Cardoell makes great joy of them.

Gawein inquires after the knight.

cowde telle of hym no tidinge. And so the tidinges ronne vp and down that doo of Cardoeƚƚ it wiste, that was a noble knyghŧ and a sure and a wise, and thoughŧ weƚƚ in his herte who this knyghŧ myghŧ be; and than he com to Gawein and seide, "Sir, knewe ye neuer that man that broughŧ yow firste tydinges of Seigramor and also of Ewein youre cosin?" "I neuer hym knewe ne saugħ be-fore," quod Gawein. "Nor hym," quod Doo, "that taughŧ yow where was youre moder, ne knowe ye no hym?" "No, truly," quod Gawein. Than thought doo a-noon what he was and gan to smylen; and Gawein m*er*veiled moche why he dide aske, and than he hym coniured be the feiħ that he oughŧ to the kynge Arthur his lorde, and praied hym dierly also to telle hym whi he asked hym that demaunde and wherfore he lowgħ. And than he seide, "Gawein, Gawein, so moche ye haue me co*n*iured that I shaƚƚ telle yow *whi; but be weƚƚ ware that ye lete no man knowe of no-thinge that I sey vn-to yow." And Gawein seide, "Nay, for hym were lever to haue his tonge drawen oute." "Knowe it verily," quod Doo, "that he that alle these tidinges haħ broughŧ it is Merlin, that is the beste devynour that is in aƚƚ the worlde or euer was." "How sir," quod Gawein, "speke ye of that Merlin that was so weƚƚ be-loved of Vterpendragon, that was be-geten of the deveƚƚ vpon a woman?" "Of that same," seide Doo, "speke I wiħ-oute faile." "A god m*er*cy," seide Gawein, "how myghŧ this be or bifalle that I haue seyn hym in so many maner formes, for I haue seyn hym in thre semblaunces." "Wite it weƚƚ," quod Doo, "how that euer ye haue hym seyn it is he verily, ffor he is so fuƚƚ of stronge art that he hym chaungeħ in-to as many semblaunces as he wiƚƚ." Than Gawein hym blissed for the merveile that he ther-of hadde, and seide that he wolde wiħ hym be a-queynteħ yef it hym plesed, "ffor I wote weƚƚ now that he vs loveħ, whan that he entermeteħ hym of oure deedes." "Knowe it weƚƚ," quod Doo, "yef it plese hym ye shaƚƚ it wite, ffor we may nothinge do ne sey but he it wite." Thus a-bode the squyres at logres gladde and myrry of that oure lorde hadde hem assembled to-geder, and thei kepte the contrey aboute that the saisnes euer more loste than wonne. But

Doo asks Gawein if he had seen the knight before,

and then smiles.

Gawein asks why he laughs.

*[Fol. 106*b*.]

Doo tells him that it was Merlin who brought him all the tidings.

Gawein is surprised that he should have seen him in three semblances.

and wishes to be acquainted with him.

Doo says they can do nothing that Merlin does not know of.

now leveħ the tale of hem and speketħ of the knyght that ledde Gawein for to socour his moder.

The tale returns to Merlin.

CHAPTER XIX.

MERLIN'S MEETING WITH LEONCE. HIS ADVENTURES WITH NIMIAME.

Now seitħ the storye, that whan Gawein and his felowes were medled witħ the meyne of Taurus, and this knyght saugħ that Gawein hadde his moder rescowed, he departed a-wey so sodeynly that no man wiste where that he be com, and wente in-to Northumbirlonde to Blaase his maister and tolde hym alle these aventures that hadde be don in the reame of logres; and Blase of hym was ioyfuƚƚ and gladde, and wrote these thinges that he hym tolde, and by his booke haue we yet the knowynge of the seide a-uentures. And whan he hadde be ther as longe as hym liked, he seide he wolde go in-to the reame of Benoyk, ffor soone elles myght the kynge Ban and the kynge Boors haue grete damage while thei ben witħ Arthur in Tamelide, and that were dedly synne, for thei ben fuƚƚ noble men and trewe, ffor the kynge Claudas de la desert hatħ don homage to the kynge of Gaule, and he hatħ promysed hym to helpe and to mayntene, and on that other side this Claudas hatħ so purchased that he hatħ be at Rome, and he and the kynge of Gaule haue take theire londes to the Emp*er*our*e* be soche covenaunt that the Emp*er*our Iulius shaƚƚ sende hym socour and wolde sese the two remes of Benoyk and Gannes; and thei assemble and somowne on alle partees, and now be meved the romaynes witħ an huge peple, and theire lorde and gouernour*e* is Pounce, Antony, tweyne of the counseillours of Rome, that be two grete lord*es* and mighty, and also on that other part cometħ for love of hem, ffrolle a Duke of Almayne, that is right a grete lorde of londe and of richesse and of ffrendes, and is cosin germain to Antony and to Pounce, and ecħ of these bringetħ xx^{Ml} at his baner, and thise of the reame of Benoyk ne knowen it nought and so sholde thei alle be distroide er thei token hede or were ther-of war.

When the knight sees that Gawein has rescued his mother, he comes to Blase,

who writes down all he tells him.

He says he will go to the realm of Benoyk.

Claudas de la desert has done homage to the king of Gaul.

The Emperor Julius will send succour.

The governors of the Romans are Pounce and Antony.

Ffrolle, duke of Almayne.

The people of Benoyk know nothing of those coming against them.

*[Fol 107a.]

Blase prays Merlin not to let the Christians be destroyed.

Merlin says he ought to hate the land, for in it is the wolf that will bind the leopard.

Blase asks if the leopard is not stronger than the wolf.

Merlin says the prophecy will fall on him.

Arthur will not get justice from the barons till they are well scoured.

The leopard shall come out of Benoyk.

Of him shall come the great lion.

God has given Merlin wit to accomplish the adventures of the St. Graall.

*Whan Blase this vndirstode he be-gan to wepe, and seide to Merlin, "Ffor the love of god haue pitee of cristin peple that thei be not distroied;" and he seide while that he mygħt lyve he wolde hem helpe wiťh aƚƚ his counseile. "And yet," quod Merlin, "it is the londe that I ougħt moste for to hate, ffor in that londe is the wolf that the lupart shaƚƚ bynde wiťh cercles that shaƚƚ nother be of Iren ne steile ne tree ne golde ne siluer ne lede ne nothinge of the erthe ne of the water ne herbe, and shaƚƚ be so streite bounde that he shaƚƚ not meve." "A god mercy," quod Blase, "Merlin, what is that ye sey? is not the leopart more of strengťh than is the wolf, and more he is to doute?" "Yesse, truly," quod Merlin. "How may the wolf than haue power ouer the leopart?" quod Blase. "Ye shull no more knowe," quod Merlin; "but þus moche I wiƚƚ telle yow, that this prophesie shaƚƚ falle vpon me, and I wote weƚƚ I may me not kepe ther-fro." And Blase hym sayned for the merveile, and than he be-gan to aske, and seide, "Merlin, now telle me this, yef ye go now in-to Benoyk, what shaƚƚ falle of this londe that the saisnes thus go distroyinge?" "Of this ne care yow nougħt," quod Merlin, "ffor Arthur shaƚƚ neuer Iustise his barouns tiƚƚ that thei be weƚƚ scowred, und knowe it weƚƚ thei shaƚƚ be driven oute in short tyme, and on that othir side ne were for the merveillouse leopart that shaƚƚ come oute of the reame of Benoyk that shaƚƚ be so grete and so fiers that alle other beestes shaƚƚ surmounte bothe of this contrey and of the bloy bretaigne, and of hym shaƚƚ come the grete lyon to whom alle beestes shuƚƚ enclyne and for whos look the heuene shaƚƚ open. I wolde not go ne come ther as longe as I mygħt me holde thens, but I shuƚƚ synne dedly yef I sholde do a-gein the ordenaunce of god, wherefore he haťh me yove soche witte and discrescion as I haue, ffor to helpe a-complissħ the a-uentures of the seynt Graaƚƚ, that shaƚƚ be a-complisshed and made an ende in the tyme of kynge Arthur, but enquere now no ferther, for thow shalt it in tyme comynge what this may be, and youre-self shuƚƚ it se at youre yie er ye be deed."

Whan Blase herde Merlin thus couertly speke,[1] he thought longe on these wordes; but euer he putte hem in writinge as he hadde hem seide; and than departed Merlin and wente in-to the reame of Benoyk, and come to leonces the lorde of Paerne, and drowgħ hym a-parte and a-queynted hym witħ hym, so that he hym knewe, for other tymes he hadde hym seyn in the companye of the thre kynges; and leonces made of hym grete ioye, and he was a fuƚƚ worthi man and cosin to the kynge Ban and to the kynge Boors his brother, and Merlin spake to hym in the same semblaunce that he hadde seyn hym be-fore in the companye of the thre kynges, but that was do so previly that noon wiste ther-of no worde, and leonces yaf credence to aƚƚ that he seide; and after that thei weƚƚ a-queynted, leonces hym a-resonde as a wise man and weƚƚ vndirstondinge, and seide, "Merlin, I merveile moche of oon thinge that I wolde of yow asken, but I wolde not ther-witħ yow displese." "I wote weƚƚ," quod Merlin, "what ye thenke, and it nothinge dotħ me displese, but sey on hardely what yow likeτħ." "Sey youre self," seide leonces, "setħ that ye it knowen." "Witħ good cheer," seide Merlin, "for the love of yow; ye wolde aske me," quod Merlin, "whi I haue left *the thre kynges and I am come hider." "Trewly," quod leonces, "ye sey trouthe, and that wolde I gladly wite, yef it were youre plesier." "A," seide Merlin, "ye shaƚƚ knowe aƚƚ in tyme, for I may not here longe a-byde."

Blase thinks over Merlin's words.

Merlin comes to Leonces.

Leonces makes great joy,

and gives credence to all that Merlin says.

He tells him he marvels much at one thing.

Merlin tells him that he wants to know why he left the three kings, *[Fol. 107*b*.]

and that he shall know in time.

"Leonces," quod Merlin, "it is the trouthe, and the prophesie it seitħ that the serpent shaƚƚ chace the leopart out of the forest, sauage and auncyent, that be-fore that hatħ be so grete and so fierce and so merveillouse, that beestes a-boute hym to hym enclyned and bowed theire heedes to the erthe; and it is trouthe that ye haue a felon neygħbour that is cleped Claudas de la desert, and this Claudas hatħ don homage to the kynge of Gaule, to holde of hym his londe by this condicion: that he helpe hym to mayntene his werre, and ben bothe to-geder and holde bothe theire londes of the Emperour*e* of Rome; and Claudas his owne

The prophecy saith that the serpent shall chase the leopard out of the forest.

Claudas has done homage to the king of Gaul.

---

[1] This word is spelt "sepke" in the MS.

Pounces and Antonyes come to destroy the country.

Ffrolles also comes.

Merlin counsels Leonces to assemble his people and garrison his castles,

but not to go out to battle.

On Wednesday before the feast of St. John there will be a battle before Trebes.

Leonces shall hide in a forest, but tell no one but Pharien and Grassien.

Leonces promises to do as Merlin counsels.

*[Fol. 108a.]

He asks where Merlin is going.

body hatħ ben̄ there, and so moche hatħ he sougħt and don̄, that Pounces and Antonyes, tweyne counseillers of Rome, come witħ grete power to distroie this contrey; and hider also cometħ ffrolles, a Duke of Almayne, that is a riche lorde and rigħt puyssant, and a goode knygħt at armes, and is cosin̄ germain̄ bothe to Pounce and to Antonye, and he wiƚƚ peyne hym sore this contrey to waste and distroye and it to take; but it shaƚƚ not be as thei̇ wene, and ther-fore I am come in-to this contre, for I wiƚƚ that ye sende to youre kyn̄ and frendes fer and nygħ, and assemble alle that ye may of peple, and garnyssħ youre Citees and Castelles, and geder alle vitaile and corne and beestes and put it in̄ soche place ther thei̇ haue no power for to come, and ordeyne that ye be so araide that whan̄ thei̇ renne thourgħ the londe thei̇ fynde nougħt to take, ffor they shuƚƚ renne vpon̄ yow rigħt sore, and assaile Castelles and townes, and ther-fore deffende yow myghtyly, but be-war, as dere as ye haue youre owne corse and youre honoure and also the honour of two kynges, that ye go not oute to bataile agein̄ hem, ffor ye sholde haue to grete losse; and trust it trewly, ye shuƚƚ haue socour, and that shaƚƚ be stronge and goode and feire, on̄ the wednysday be-fore the feeste of seint Joħn, that the bataile shaƚƚ be by-fore Trebes be-twene leire and arsune by-fore day, where-as the Romayns and thei of Gaule and of Almayne shuƚƚ be loged; and ye shuƚƚ drawe oute youre parties as strongly as ye may, and than̄ hide yow in the nexte foreste alle armed, and that this be so secretly don̄ that noon̄ of youre companye it a-parceyve, be he neuer so weƚƚ youre frende and witħ yow prevy, saf only to Pharien̄ and to Grassien̄, to thise tweyne sey it in̄ counseile, ffor thei̇ be fuƚƚ worthi̇ men̄ and rigħt trewe, and do the weyes and the passages to be kepte so weƚƚ that whan̄ ye ride yef eny asspie come that he be taken̄, that he ne repeyre not to hem to discure nougħt of youre coveyne, ffor soone so mygħt ye haue damage." And he seide that he wolde do this so weƚƚ that Merlin̄ sholde hym preyse at departinge. "I wote not," quod Merlin̄, "what *I sholde sey to yow more, for I go my wey, for moche I haue to do in̄ other places." "And to what contrei̇ shaƚƚ ye go?" quod leonces. "Whan̄ I departe from hens," quod

Merlyn, "I go to Toraise in Tamelide where as ben the thre kynges, and hem shaƚƚ I teche how the Geauntes and the sarazins shuƚƚ be enchased oute of the londe; and the bateile shaƚƚ be the thursday after pentecoste so grete and so merveillouse that neuer was noon so grete in the reame of Tamelide." "Sir," quod leo[n]ces, "greete weƚƚ myn oncles and my cosin the kynge Arthur." "So shaƚƚ I do," quod Merlin. "Now haue in mynde to do weƚƚ, and to god I yow comaunde." Than eche departed from other, and as soone as Merlin was departed fro leonces he wente to se a maiden of grete bewte, and was rigħt yonge, and was in a maner that was rigħt feire and delitable and rigħt riche, in a valee vnder a mounteyne rounde side be side to the forest of Briok, that was fuƚƚ delitable and feire, for to hunte at hertes and at hyndes, and bukke and doo and wilde swyn. This mayden of whom I speke was the dougħter of a vauasor of rigħt higħ lynage, and his name was cleped Dionas, and many tymes diane com to speke witħ hym, that was the goddesse, and was witħ hym many dayes, for he was hir godsone; and whan she departed she yaf hym a yefte that plesed hym wele. "Dionas," quod diane, "I graunte the, and so dotħ the god of the see and of the sterres shuƚƚ ordeyne, that the firste childe that thow shalt haue female shaƚƚ be so moche coveyted of the wisest man that euer was erthly or shaƚƚ be after my detħ, whiche in the tyme of kynge Vortiger of the bloy mountayne shaƚƚ be-gynne for to regne, that he shaƚƚ hir teche the moste parte of his witte and connynge by force of nygremauncye in soche maner*e*, that he shaƚƚ be so desirouse after the tyme that he hatħ hir seyn that he shaƚƚ haue no power to do no-thinge a-gein hir volunte, and alle thinges that she enqueretħ he shaƚƚ hir teche." Thus yaf diane to Dionas hir yefte, and whan Dionas was grete he was rigħt a feire knygħt and a goode, of higħ prowesse of body, and he was moche and longe, and longe tyme serued a Duke of Burgoyne, that to hym yaf his nyece to ben his wif, that was rigħt a feire maiden and a wise.

Merlin says he is going to Toraise.

Leonces asks him to greet his uncles and Arthur.

Merlin goes to a maiden of great beauty,

who lives near the forest of Briok.

She is the daughter of Dionas,

who was godson to Diana.

Diana promises that the first female child of Dionas shall be loved by the wisest man that ever was.

Dionas long served the king of Burgoyne, who gave his niece to him for a wife.

This Dionas loved moche the deduyt of the wode and the river while that he was yonge, and the Duke of Burgoyne hadde a parte in the foreste of brioke, so that was his the haluen-

The duke gives Dionas his half of the forest of Brioke.

Dionas often repairs to the court of king Ban, and goes against Claudas.

Ban grants him his part of the forest.

Boors gives him a town.

Dionas dwells long in the land.

His daughter's name is Nimiane.

Merlin takes the semblance of a fair young squire,

and meets Nimiane at the fountain.

deƚƚ aƚƚ quyte, and that other half was the kynge Ban. Whan the Duke hadde maried his nyece he yaf to Dionas his part of this foreste and londe that he hadde a-boute grete plente, and whan Dionas wente it for to se it plesed hym wele, and he lete make a maner to repeire to, that was riġħt feire and riche by the vyuier, and whan it[1] was made he com thider to be ther for the deduyt of the wode and the river that was nyġħ, and ther a-boode Dionas longe tyme, and repeired ofte to the court of kynge Ban, hym serued wiħ ix knyghtes, and in his seruise he yede at many a grete nede a-gein the kynge Claudas, to whom he dide many a grete damage, tiƚƚ that the kynge Ban and the kynge Boors *[Fol. 108b.] *hadden hym in grete love, ffor thei knewe hym so noble a knyġħt and so trewe, and the kynge Ban to hym graunted his parte of this foreste in heritage to hym and to his heyres, and londe and rentys grete foyson; and the kynge Boors yaf hym also a town and men and londe, for the grete trouthe that he sauġħ in hym, and he was so graciouse, that alle tho that a-boute hym repeyred loved hym a-bove aƚƚ thinge. Thus dwelled Dionas in that londe longe tyme, tiƚƚ that he gat vpon his wif a doughter of excellent bewte, and hir name was cleped Nimiane, and it is a name of ebrewe, that seiħ in frensċħ, ment neu ferai, that is to sey in engliſħ, I shaƚƚ not lye, and this turned vpon Merlin, as ye shaƚƚ here her-after. This mayden wax tiƚƚ she was xij yere of age whan Merlin com to speke wiħ leonces of Paerne, and Merlin spedde hym so that he com to the foreste of Brioke, and than he toke a semblaunce of a feire yonge squyre, and drowġħ hym down to a welle, where-of the springes were feire and the water clere, and the graueƚƚ so feire that it semed of fyn siluer. To this fountayn ofte tyme com nimiane for to disporte, and the same day that Merlin com thider was she come; and whan Merlin hir sauġħ he be-hilde hir moche, and a-vised hir weƚƚ er he spake eny worde, and thouġħt that a moche fole were he, yef he slepte so in his synne to lese his witte and his connynge for to haue the deduyt of a mayden, and hym-self shamed, and god to lese and displese. And whan he hadde longe thoughħt, he hir salued, and she ansuerde wisely and seide, "That lorde that alle thoughħtes knowethħ sende hym soche volunte and soche corage that hym be to profite, and hym not greve ne noon other, and the same welthe and the same honour hym sende as he wolde to other." And when Merlin herde the maide thus speke, he sett hym down vpon the brinke of the welle and asked hir what she was; and she seide she was of this contrey, the daughħter of a vauasour, a grete Gentilman, that was at a manoir ther-ynne, "and what be ye, feire swete frende?" quod she. "Dameseƚƚ," quod Merlin, "I am a squyer traueillinge that go for to seche my maister, that was wonte me for to teche, and moche he is for to preise." "And what maister is that?" seide the maiden. "Certes," quod he, "he taughħt me so moche, that I cowde here reyse a Casteƚƚ, and I cowde make withħ-oute peple grete plente that it sholde assaile, and withħ-ynne also peple that it sholde defende, and yet I sholde do mo maistries, ffor I cowde go vpon this water and not wete my feet, and also I cowde make a river where as neuer hadde be water."

---

[1] The words "whan it" are repeated in the MS.

He salutes her.
She answers him wisely.

He asks her who she is,

and tells her that he is seeking for his master.

He says he can do great wonders.

"Certes," seide the maiden, "these be queynte craftes, and fayn wolde I that I cowde do soche disportes." "Certes," seide the squyer, "yet can I mo delitable pleyes, for to reioise euery highħ astate more than these ben, ffor noon can devise nothinge but that I shaƚƚ it do, and make it to endure as longe as I wiƚƚ," "Certes," seide the maiden, "yef it were to yow no gref, I wolde se somme pleyes by couenaunt that I sholde euer be youre love." "Certes," seide Merlin, "ye seme to me so plesaunt and deboneir, that for youre love I shaƚƚ shewe yow a party of my pleyes, by couenaunt that youre love shaƚƚ be myn, for other thinge wiƚƚ I not aske." And she hym graunted that noon eueƚƚ ne thoughħt, and Merlin turned hym a-part and made acerne withħ a yerde in myddeƚƚ of the *launde, and than returned to the maiden, and satte a-gein down by the fountayn, and a-noon the mayden be-heilde and saughħ come oute of the foreste of briogne ladyes and knyghtes and maydons and squyres, eche holdinge other by the hondes, and com singinge and made the grettest ioye

The maiden wishes to see these things.

Merlin promises to shew her, if she will give him her love.

He turns apart and makes a circle.

*[Fol. 109*a*.]

The maiden sees ladies and knights come out of the forest.

that euer was seyn in̄ eny londe, and be-fore the maiden̄ com̄ Iogelours and tymbres and tabours, and com̄ be-fore the cerne that Merlin̄ hadde made, and whan̄ thei̅ were witħ-ynne, thei̅ be-gonne the caroles and the daunces so grete and so merveilouse, that oon̄ mygħt not sey the fourthe parte of the ioye that ther was made, and for that the launde was so grete, Merlin̄ lete rere a vergier, where-ynne was aƚƚ maner of fruyt and alle maner of flowres, that yaf so grete swetnesse of flavour, that merveile it were for to telle; and the maiden̄ that aƚƚ this hadde seyn̄ was a-baisshed of the merveile that she saugħ, and was so at ese that sche ne a-tended to no-thinge but to be-holde and entende what songe thei̅ seiden̄, saf that thei̅ seiden in̄ refreite of hir songe, "Vraiement comencent amours en ioye, et fynissent en dolours." In this maner dured the ioye and feste from mydday to evenesonge, that oon̄ mygħt here the noyse from fer, ffor it was rigħt higħ and clere, and plesaunt to heren̄, and it semed to be of moche peple, and oute of the Casteƚƚ com Dionas and man and wif grete plente, and be-heilde and saugħ the feire orcharde and the daunces and the caroles so feire and so grete, that neuer hadde thei̅ seyn soche in̄ theire lives; and thei̅ merveilled gretly of the orcharde that thei̅ saugħ ther so feire ther noon̄ was be-fore, and on̄ that other side thei̅ merveiled whens alle these ladyes and the knyghtes were come so wele a-pareiled of robes and Iuewelles. And whan̄ the caroles hadde longe dured, the ladyes and the maydenys satte down̄ vpon̄ the grene herbes and fressħ floures, and the squyres set vp a quyntayne in̄ myddes of the medowes, and wente to bourde a partye of the yonge knyghtes, and on̄ that other parte bourded the yonge squyres witħ sheldes oon̄ a-gein a-nother that neuer ne lefte tiƚƚ euesonge tyme. And than̄ com Merlin̄ to the mayden̄ and toke hir be the hande and seide, "Dameseƚƚ, how seme ye?" "Ffeire swete frende," seide the mayden, "ye haue don̄ so moche that I am aƚƚ yours." "Dameseƚƚ," quod he, "now holde my couenaunt."[1] "Certes," seide the mayden̄, "so shaƚƚ I witħ goode chere." "Also," quod Merlin̄, "be ye eny clerk, and

They begin to dance and sing.

Merlin rears an orchard.

The maiden marvels.

The feast endures till evensong.

Dionas comes out of the castle,

and marvels at the wonders.

The ladies sit down, and the squires set up a quintain.

Merlin comes to the maiden and converses with her.

---

[1] This word is spelt "comenaunt" in the MS.

I shaƚƚ teche yow so many merveilles that neu*er* woman cowde so many."

Quod the maiden, "How knowe ye that I am a clerke?" "Dameseƚƚ," quod Merlin, "I knowe it weƚƚ, ffor my maister hatħ me so weƚƚ taugħt that I knowe alle thinges that oon dotħ." "Certes," seide the mayden, "that is the moste connynge that euer I herde, and moste myster were ther-of in many places, and that I wolde faynest lerne; and of thinges that be to come knowe ye ougħt?" "Certes," quod he, "swete love, yee, a grete part." "God mercy!" quod the mayden, "what go ye than sechynge?" "Truly," quod Merlin, "of that ye moste yet a-bide yef it be youre plesier." And while the Mayden and M*er*lin helde this Parlement, assembled a-gein the maidenes and the ladyes, and wente daunsinge and[1] bourdinge toward the foreste fro whens thei were come firste; and whan thei were nygħ thei entred in so sodaynly, that oon ne wiste where thei were be-come; but the orcharde a-bode *stille ther longe tyme, ffor the maiden that swetly ther-of hym praide, and was cleped ther by name the repeire of ioye and of feeste. And whan Merlin and the maiden hadde be longe to-geder, M*er*lin seyde at the laste, "Ffeire maiden, I go, for I haue moche to do in other place than here."

The maiden asks Merlin to teach her his cunning.

While the maiden and Merlin are talking the ladies begin the dancing again, and disappear into the forest.

*[Fol. 109*b*.]

The orchard remains.

Merlin says he must leave.

"How," quod the maiden, "feire frende, shuƚƚ ye not teche me firste some of youre pleyes?" "Dameseƚƚ," quod Merlin, "ne haste yow not sore, ffor ye shuƚƚ know I-nowe aƚƚ in tyme, ffor I moste haue ther-to grete leyser and grete soiour, and on that other side I haue yet no suerte of youre love." "Sir," quod she, "what suerte wolde ye aske? devise ye, and I shaƚƚ it make." "I wiƚƚ," quod Merlin, "that ye me ensure that youre love shaƚƚ be myn, and ye also for to do my plesier of what I wiƚƚ." And the maiden her be-thougħt a litiƚƚ, and than she seide, "Sir," quod she, "witħ goode wiƚƚ by soche forwarde, that after that ye haue me taugħt aƚƚ the thinges that I shaƚƚ yow aske, and that I can hem werke." And Merlin seide that so it plesed hym weƚƚ. Than he a-sured the maiden to holde couenaunt like as she

The maiden asks him to teach her some of his plays.

He asks for her love.

She gives him surety of her love,

---

[1] The word "and" is repeated in the MS.

and he teaches her to come over a great river.

She writes what he tells her on parchment.

Merlin goes to Tamelide, where the kings make great joy of him.

hadde devised, and he toke hir surete. Than he taugħt hir ther a pley that she wrougħt after many tymes, ffor he taugħt hir to do come a grete river ouer aƚƚ ther as her liked, and to a-bide as longe as she wolde; and of other games I-nowe, where-of she wrote the wordes in perchemyn soche as he hir devised, and she it cowde fuƚƚ weƚƚ bringe it to ende. And whan he hadde a-biden ther tiƚƚ euesonge tyme, he comaunded hir to god and she hym, but er he departed the maiden hym asked whan he sholde come a-gein; and he seide on seint Ioh*n*es even; and thus departed that oon fro that other. And Merlin went to Tamelide, where the kynges made hym grete ioye whan that thei hym saugħ. But now a-while we moste cesse here, and speke of the message that the kynge de Cent chiualiers sent to speke witħ the Princes by the counseile of the kynge cleped Tradilyuaunt, of Nortħ wales.

CHAPTER XX.

MEETING OF THE PRINCES AT LEICESTER; RETURN OF MERLIN TO THE COURT OF LEODOGAN; BETROTHAL OF ARTHUR AND GONNORE; AND GREAT BATTLE WITH KING RION AND THE GIANTS.

The messengers of the king de Cent Chivaliers tell their messages.

The princes meet at Leicester.

Aguysans has lost the most.

Loot complains of the loss of his wife and children.

So weƚƚ spedde the messagers of the kynge de Cent chiualiers and haue tolde theire message that thei were witħ charged to the princes, and this was theire ansuere, "That thei seide thei wolde speke to-geder at whitsontyde at leycestre." And thei drougħ to-geder as secretly as thei mygħt, and ther thei counseilled what thei sholde do, and lete wite that to that other. And when thei were mette at leycestre thei made ecħ of other grete ioye at her metinge, and after mete thei tolde of the trouble and the damages that the saisnes hem hadde don, and thei fonde that the kynge Aguysans hadde moste I-loste than alle the other; and ther hym playned moche the kynge loot of his childeren and of his wif that he hadde loste, and seide that he hadde leuer be deed than lyve in that langour.

Than spake the kynge de Cent Chiualiers, by whos counseile then were ther assembled, and seide, "Feire lordes, were it not better that we wente alle to dye witħ goode herte in the servise of oure lorde, and a-venge our detħ and the detħ of oure frendes and of *oure kyn, than to dye as cowardes shrewdely oon with-oute a-nother, and to be in soche dolour as we ben euery day, ffor yef the saisnes holde vs thus short then shuƚƚ distroie oure vitaile and the Iustice that vs gynnetħ. Ne in-to this londe ariveth noon, for aƚƚ the saisnes haue wasted and distroied, and we may neuer nougħt recouer, but vpon hem as then bringetħ oute of theire contreyes, but er we may eny thinge of hem conquere we by it rigħt dere, ffor many we lese of oure kyn and oure frendes, and thus we lese euery day of oure strengtħ and of oure peple, and oure enmyes encrece euery day, and thus then shuƚƚ vs distroye and chace oute of the londe, but we ne forfete hem but litiƚƚ; but lete vs alle at ones go figħt witħ hem and to hem do the werste that we may, and selle oure lyves so dere that it be spoken of euer after oure dethes." Whan the lordes herden Aguysant thus speke, then comended hym gretly, and preised hym of that he hadde seide, ffor then saugħ wele that he seide it not but of rigħt higħ prowesse that in hym was. And whan then hadden spoken be-twene hem then acorded to that hadde seide; and than then toke day to assemble witħ aƚƚ the peple that then mygħt viij dayes be-fore the Magdaleyn, in the medowes by suret, a Casteƚƚ of the Dukes of Cambenyk, that was rigħt plentevouse and riche. Than departed then oon from a-nother, and wente in-to theire londes, and assembled as moche peple as then mygħt of frendes and cosins, so*m*me for preyer and some be force, and labored tiƚƚ then come in-to the medowes of lauerep, and ther then pigħt tentes and pavilou*n*s be-twene tweyne armes of a river that was rigħt grete, that com oute of the see and ran also in-to the see, and the booke it clepeth the river Sevarne, by a forest that is called Bregnehan, that is rigħt plentevouse and riche, and ther then a-bide that oon the tother, and a-raied their peple, and scowred hauberkes and furbisshed swerdes and helmes, and to sette sharp stieƚƚ vpon theire launces. But of hem now restetħ a-while the tale, and

The king de Cent Chivaliers speaks.

*[Fol. 110*a*.]

He counsels them all to fight at once against the Saxons.

The lords praise Aguysant, and agree to what he says.

They depart to their own lands, and assemble as many people as they can.

They pitch their tents near the river Severn.

speketħ of Merlyn, that is departed fro Nimiame, from the foreste of Briogne.

Merlin comes to Toraise the same night that he leaves the maiden.

Whan Merlin was departed from this maiden, that he hadde yoven to his love, that the same nyght he com to Toraise in Tamelide, where as the kynges were of hym right gladde and ioyfuƚƚ, and sore hem longed hym for to seen, ffor the kynge leodogan hadde so spedde that his men were come, and a-bide the hour that the hoste sholde assemble for to go a-reise the kynge Rion be-fore the Citee of nablaise, where he lay at sege. Than the thre kynges toke Merlin in counseile, and seide, "Merlin, what shaƚƚ we do, the hoste shaƚƚ meve hastely?" "I shaƚƚ telle yow," seide Merlin, "what ye shuƚƚ do. Go and sey to the kynge leodogan that he do ordeyne his peple to bataile, and devise his wardes, and sette yow on wey the morowe after Pentecoste, that oon after that other, and dotħ wisely that aƚƚ day x knyghtes wele horsed go be-fore the hoste, that shuƚƚ serche the contrey and the londe as thei gon, and take alle the asspies where-of ther ben many entred in-to the londe to enquere of the rule of vs; *and a-noon lete hem be slayn or sette in prison that thei may no-thinge discure, and ride euer be nyght and by the moste vn-cowtħ weyes that ye may, and I my-self shaƚƚ yow condite in the firste fronte, ffor ye and youre companye and the knyghtes of the rounde table shuƚƚ be in oon warde to-geder withoute eny other peple, and that shaƚƚ be the firste bataile."

The three kings ask what they shall do.

Merlin tells them to go to Leodogan and counsel him to prepare his people for battle.

Ten knights to go before the host to take the spies.

*[Fol. 110b.]

Merlin says he will conduct the first company.

Whan thei hadde longe thus spoken, the kynge Arthur asked tidinges of his londe how thei hadde setħ don. And he tolde hem alle the auuentures that hadde ben in the reme of logres setħ he departed from hym, and how alle the childeren were assembled; and after he tolde how that the sones of kynge loot hadde rescowed theire moder from the saisnes, and tolde how the bretheren hadde seide how the kynge loot theire fader sholde neuer haue a-gein his wif in companye, ne their frende he shaƚƚ not be, tiƚƚ he haue made a-corde witħ yow. And the kynge Arthur was ther-of right gladde, and be-gan to laughe for ioye, and thanke hym of that seruyse. Aftre that he turned to the kynge Ban and towarde the kynge Boors. "And ye, feire lordes,"

Arthur asks tidings of his land.

Merlin tells him what has happened.

Arthur is glad.

quod Merlin, "how shuƚƚ ye do? ffor ye haue a werke towarde, and that riħt grete, where-as ye shaƚƚ haue grete peyne and traueyle, an I shaƚƚ telle yow what." And than he tolde how Claudas de la desert hadde wrouħt, and how ffrolles and Pounces and Antoneyes com wiħ a grete hoste for to take her londe and it to distroie; "and I haue seħ," quod he, "ben there and spoke wiħ leonce of Paerne, youre cosin, that sendeħ yow gretinge by me, and I haue tolde hym the orden*au*nce of hem that come to distroye the londes."

Merlin tells Ban and Boors of Claudas de la Desert, and how he had spoken with Leonce.

Whan thei herde Merlin thus speke thei were so hevy and so pensef that thei wiste not what to sey ne do. Whan the kynge Arthur sauħ hem so enterprised, he be-gan for to wepe wiħ his yien, and seide to Merlin, "Ha, feire swete frende, haue pyte of hem and of her londes, and sette soche counseile as ye knowe is myster, ffor I wote wele yef ye hem faile thei haue aƚƚ loste; ne I shaƚƚ neuer than haue ioye in my lif tyme." "Certes," quod Merlin, "thei shuƚƚ not drede to be distroied while I am in her companye, and I do yow to wete that to yow and to hem encreseħ moche werke and besynesse euery day, ffor the grete dragon, as seiħ the prophesie, shaƚƚ come to chase the lyon crowned oute of the bloy breteigne, wiħ the helpe that he shaƚƚ haue of xxix serpentes that shuƚƚ be merveillouse grete and stronge, that shaƚƚ be so grete and fierce, and moche he shaƚƚ hym peyne, and a partie he shaƚƚ haue of the grete serpent*es* crowne, to whom alle the beestes of the bloy bretaigne and of Tamelide shuƚƚ enclyne a partie for his fiercenesse and his grete prowesse, but yet is not born the leopart by whiche the lyon shaƚƚ be sustened that the grete dragon shaƚƚ no power haue hym to enchase from his conuersacion."

They are heavy and pensive.

Arthur weeps for them, and asks Merlin to assist them.

The great dragon shall chase the lion out of the Bloy Breteigne by the help of twenty-nine serpents.

The leopard is not yet born.

Whan the thre kynges herde Merlin thus speke, thei were sore a-baisshed, for neuer herde thei hym so derkely speke, and asked and enquered of hym what it mente; and he seide that thei sholde no more wite at that tyme; "but thus moche I sey to the kynge Arthur, that the grete of this mater longeħ vn-to hym." And ther-wiħ thei cessed of this matere; and than the kynge Ban hym *asked what was his counseile, and how he sholde his londe socoure. And Merlin seide that yet shulde thei wite no worde, "but as soone," quod Merlin, "as ye

The three kings wonder at Merlin's dark speech.

*[Fol. 111*a*.]

Ban asks for counsel from Merlin, who tells them, haue holpen to chace these sarazins out of this contrey, hit behovetħ vs to move witħ as moche peple as we may haue in this reame, and we shuƚƚ go by logres, the stronge Cite of kynge Arthurs, and by the Casteƚƚ of Bredigan, and take the tresour that is grete in the foreste denoyable, where ther be xij of the beste swerdes that eny man knowetħ in eny londe; and witħ hem shaƚƚ the kynge Arthur dubbe his nevewes, that for hym haue lefte fader and moder and kyn and frendes, and hem[1] shall we lede witħ vs in-to the reame of Benoyk, ffor then that com thiderwarde ben grete nombre; and whan the bataile is fynysshed, in the soiour that we shuƚƚ make in the londe, shaƚƚ the gret leopart be engendred, that shaƚƚ be so prowde and fierce, by whom the dragon of the fer oute ylles shaƚƚ drawe hym a-bakke from the lyon crowned of the bloy bretaigne, that noon harm he ne shaƚƚ hym don, and yet he shaƚƚ weƚƚ ther-to haue power, but in the fyn he shaƚƚ hym Iustise so that he shaƚƚ make hym come on his knee as in maner to crie mercy be-fore the crowned lyon." "Sir," quod the kynge Ban, "as for that we be come hider, knowe ye of that what shaƚƚ be-falle?" "Of that haue ye no doute," quod Merlin, "that er we departe aƚƚ this contrey shaƚƚ be in the handes of the kynge Arthur." "Sir," quod the kynge Ban, "of these derke wordes that ye haue remembred that we vndirstonde nougħt, shuƚƚ ye ougħt to vs tellen." "Nay," quod Merlin, "but thus moche I sey to the kynge Arthur, that aƚƚ this shaƚƚ falle in his tyme." Witħ that ther entred in a massager, and asked where were the sowdiours, and oo hym taugħt in-to a chamber wher then were yet in counseile, and he wente thider, and he was rigħt wise and eloquent, and a moche knygħt and a feire, and cosin germain to the kynge leodogan, and his name was Guyomar, and was of xxv yere of age; and this Guyomar caused afterwarde the reame of logres to be in grete trouble, by whom the knyghtes of the rounde table hadde after soche peyne and labour for the damage that the quene Gonnore hym dide, for the love of Morgain, the suster of kynge Arthur, that so moche hym

when they have driven the sarazins out of this country, they shall go to Logres,

and Arthur shall dub his nephews.

When the great leopard shall be engendered.

Merlin says before they leave the country it shall all be in the hands of Arthur.

A messenger enters,

whose name is Guyomar. He afterwards causes great trouble to the realm of Logres.

---

[1] In the MS. the word "we" is inserted after "hem."

loved that the quene a-reisede so grete blame, as the tale shaƚƚ reherse here-after whan the tyme comeħ to speke of that matier.

Whan Guyomar com in-to the chamber the kynges departed from counseile, and com be-fore theym, and hem salued from the kynge leodogan, "and sent yow to seyn that ye sholde come speke wiħ hym;" and thei ansuerde thei wolde wiħ goode wiƚƚ. Than thei asked theire horse and wente to Court; but thei were not so sone a-liħt at the halle, but the kynge leodogan com hem a-geins, and toke hem be the handes, and ledde hem in-to a chamber for to counseile to-geder. Than spake the kynge leodogan as he that was riħt a wise man and weƚƚ lerned, and ther were no moo but the fyve only, and than he seide, "Feire lordes, I holde yow fuƚƚ noble and worthi men and trewe, and knoweħ it weƚƚ that I love yow riħt hertely more than ye wene, and that I ouħt of riħt for to do, for ye haue saued my lif and my *londe and myn honour, and I ne wote not what ye be, and that me sore for-thinkeħ, ffor ther is no-thinge that I wolde so gladly knowe; but I shaƚƚ wite whan yow lykeħ, for other-wise I wiƚƚ not of yow desire, and I wolde yow asken what we shuƚƚ do, for ye knowe weƚƚ how that the kynge Rion is entred in-to my londe, and haħ be-seged oon of my beste Citees wiħ the power of xx crowned kynges, and eche of hem haħ at his baner xx^{Ml} men; and on that other side my peple is here assembled, but thei ben so fewe that thei may not compare wiħ hem, and therfore I aske yow counseile how we may beste be gouerned, ffor I putte me aƚƚ hooƚƚ in youre orden*au*nce."

When Guyomar comes the kings leave off their council.

They go to Leodogan,

who says they are worthy men,

*[Fol. 111*b*.]

and requests them to tell him what to do against king Rion.

Than spake Merlin to the kynge, and seide, "Sir, dismay yow nothinge, ffor be the feiħ that I owe vn-to yow er that the kynge Rion from yow ascape he wolde haue ben in hys contre aƚƚ naked by the Condicion that it hadde coste hym the beste Citee that he haħ. Ne ye be not at soch myschef but that ye haue lx^{Ml} men at armes and moo; but I shaƚƚ telle yow what ye shuƚƚ do: sendeħ x of youre beste men for to serche the contrey that ther be neither asspie ne ribaude, but a-noon he be taken and brouħt be-fore yow and put in prison, so that youre enmyes may nothinge knowe of youre ordenaunce, and than devise

Merlin tells him not to fear,

but to send ten of his best men to search the country for spies, and to make ten divisions of 10.000 men each,

and that on Thursday they shall find their enemies sleeping,

for they eat and drink and set little watch.

youre wardes and youre bateilles, and loke that ye make x witħ-oute me, and in eche of hem ye shaƚƚ putte x^{Ml} men, and than meveth on monday two houres be-fore day, and gotħ aƚƚ esely oon after a-nother witħ-oute sore traveile, and that we be ther on wednysday at even; and I do yow to wite that on thursday, a litiƚƚ be-fore day, we shaƚƚ hem fynde aƚƚ slepinge, ffor in-to the hoste is come grete plente of flessħ and of wyne and of corne and other vitaile grete foyson, and the[i] drinke and ete ecħ day and trouble so theire braynes that thei sette litiƚƚ wacche in theire hoste, but towarde the playnes thei haue hem-self closed witħ cartes and chariett*es*, that litiƚƚ or nougħt oon may hem mysdo on that side; and therfore we moste werke wisely, ffor I knowe a place where-as thei take litiƚƚ hede, and that wey ye shuƚƚ hem alle fynde a-slepe, and ther-fore, yef god wiƚƚ, we shuƚƚ som-what haue hem at oure wille, and we shuƚƚ so chastice hem at this e*n*uay that thei shuƚƚ haue litiƚƚ corage eny more in this londe to werrye.”

Leodogan marvels at Merlin's speech,

and gives a great sigh.

He falls down half dead.

*[Fol. 112*a*.]

When the kings see him, they raise him up.

Whan the kynge leodogan herde Merlin thus speke, he merveiled what he mygħt be; and he be-heilde hym ententely that he loked on noon other, and after that he be-heilde his felowes, that were stille and koy, that seiden not o worde but be-heilde hym that spake; and whan he hadden hem be-holden a longe while he yaf a grete sigħe and that was rigħt sore, and thougħt weƚƚ in his corage that thei were rigħt higħ men and gretter of astate than he cowde thinke, and a-boute his herte com so grete errour that it wete aƚƚ his visage witħ teeres of his yien, that com from the herte that vn-ethe mygħt he sowne oute o worde, and he fiƚƚ down at her feet as half deed, and cride hem mercy so as he mygħt, that for the love of God thei sholde of hym haue pitee and of his londe, “ffor I wote weƚƚ,” *quod he, “and also myn herte tellethħ me, that I shaƚƚ aƚƚ lese yef god and ye be not my warant.” Whan that the kynge Arthur saugħ hym at erthe be-fore hym knelinge, he hadde ther-of grete pite, and so hadde the other kynges, and caugħt hym in her armes and reised hym vp and assured hym of aƚƚ that thei mygħt; and than they wente to sitte down alle v to-geder as goode felowes and trewe; and than be-gan Merlin his reson, and seide to the kynge leodogan, "Sir sire, ye wolde fayn wite what we ben and of what peple and of what lynage." And he seide ther was nothinge that he desired so moche to knowe. "I shall telle yow," quod Merlin, "firste for what we be come to seche. Lo, here a yonge lorde that is a goode knyght as ye knowe well I-nough, and, wite ye well in trouthe, what-so-ever he be, he is a man of higher lynage and of londe and frendes than ye be, and yet ye be a kynge crowned; and he hath no wif, and therfore we come through londes to seche auent*u*res till that we may fynde some high prince that his doughter wolde yeve hym in mariage." "A lorde mercy!" quod the kynge leodogan, "what go ye ferther than sechinge? I haue a doughter that is holden oon of the feirest of the worlde and the wiseste and oon of the beste lerned, and for defaute of goode lynage ne of goode londe ought she not to be refused; and yef it be youre plesier I yeve hir yow to be youre wif; and I haue no mo heires to whom my londe moste falle after my discesse." And Merlin ansuerde that he hir not sholde refuse neuer, yef god will; and thanked hym the foure felowes right hertely.

Merlin asks Leodogan if he wishes to know who they are,

and tells him that Arthur is of higher lineage than he is,

and that he wants a wife.

Leodogan offers his daughter,

and Merlin accepts her,

Than the kynge hym-self wente to fecche his doughter, and made hir to be appareiled in the richest wise, and ledde hir be the honde in-to the chambre where-as the foure ffelowes dide a-bide, and after hem com grete route of knyghtes, where-of ther-ynne were grete plente, and ther also were alle the companye of the rounde table, and the xl. that the storye hath rehersed, and many other of high astate, that were come in-to the hoste for to socoure the kynge leodogan; and whan the kynge and his doughter entred thourgh the chambre that was feire and grete, the foure felowes com hem a-geyns; and spake the kynge leodogan that he myght wele ben herde, and seide, "Gentill sir, cometh forth, for I can not yet yow namen, and resceive here my doughter to be youre wif, that is so feire and co*u*rtesie, and ther-to right wise, with all the honour that to hir appendeth after my deth, ffor to a worthier than yow may I not hir yeve, and that knowe well alle these worthi men here-ynne." And Arthur stode forth and seide, "Sir, gramercy." And the kynge leodogan delyuered hir to hym by the right honde. And that oon graunted

The king goes to fetch his daughter, and leads her into the chamber.

Great number of knights follow them.

Leodogan gives his daughter to Arthur,

who thanks him.

The Bishop of Toraise is sent for.

*[Fol. 112*b*.]

Merlin tells Leodogan that he has given his daughter to Arthur,

and that the other two noble men are king Ban and king Boors.

to that other fuƚƚ debonerly, and the kynge hem blissed wiħ his righ̄t honde, and the bisshop of Toraise was sent fore, and than was the ioye grete ther-ynne that neuer be-fore was ther seyn gretter. And than com Merlin and spake to the kynge, heringe alle that were ther-ynne, "Sir, ye wolde gladly knowe what we be *and to whom ye haue yoven youre doughter." And the kynge that it so moche desired, that yet wende it not to haue knowen, seide, "certeynly that gladly wolde he wite yef it were hir plesier." "Now knoweth wele," quod Merlin, "and alle tho that it wiƚƚ heren, that ye haue yoven youre doughter to Arthur, the kynge of Bretaigne, the sone of kynge Vterpendragon, and thei owe hym homage bothe ye and alle the barou*n*s of this reame. Now let hem don it alle tho that wiƚƚ hym honour, and after shaƚƚ we go the gladlyer and the more wightly to turneyen a-gein these sarazins that this londe do werryen, and wolde take and distroien, but it shaƚƚ be other-wise than thei wene; and also I do yow to vndirstonde that these two noble men ben bretheren and also kynges crowned, and that oon is cleped the kynge Ban of Benoyk, and that other the kynge Boors of Gannes, and be comen of the heighest lynage that eny man knoweħ; and alle these other felowes beth the sones of Erles and barou*n*s and Castelleynes."

Leodogan and his fellows are very joyful.

They all do homage to Arthur.

Gonnore is glad above all others.

Leodogan praises God.

Whan the kynge leodogan and the other felowes vndirstode that this was the[1] kynge Arthur, thei weren so gladde that neuer hadde thei so grete ioye be-forn. And the two kynges com first be-fore hym and dide hym homage, and after the kynge leodogan and alle the other barou*n*s, and thei made the feste of the mariage so riaƚƚ that neuer in that londe was seyn soche; but ouer alle other was the quene Gonnore gladde of hir newe lorde. And that nyg̅ht Merlin lete hym-self be knowen of the knyghtes of the rounde table wit*h*-oute eny moo. And whan the kynge leodogan hym knewe he seide that god in this worlde hadde sente hym goode eure, that to so noble and worthi man hadde hym yove the love and a-queyntanse, "and from hens-forħ, gode lorde god, do wiħ me thy wille, seħ my londe and my doughter is be sette in so noble wise to the worthiest of the worlde." Thus seide the kynge leodogan, and than after thei yede to bedde for to reste; and on the morowe the kynge sente the knyghtes in-to tho parties as Merlin hym taugħt, where as the peple of kynge Rion sholde assemble, and than devised his wardes of his bataile where-of were x.

---

[1] The word "the" is repeated in the MS.

On the morrow he arranges his army as Merlin taught him.

In the firste warde, where as the dragon was, was the kynge Arthur and the kynge Ban and the kynge Boors and her xl felowes, and so were the knyghtes of the rounde table, and so many of other that thei were vij^{Ml} men rigħt weƚƚ armed; and the seconde warde ledde Guyomar, the kynges cosin, witħ vij^{Ml} men of armes; the thridde warde ledde Elunadas, a yonge lorde that was nevew to the wise lady of the foreste saunz retour; the fourthe bataile ledde Blios, the lorde of Cloadas, a merveillouse casteƚƚ, and were witħ hym vij^{Ml} men of armes and horse of prise; the v warde ledde Aridolus, a knygħt of grete renoun, and weren also vij^{Ml} men; the sixte bataile ledde Belcys li loys, that was I-nougħ riche and puyssaunt, and hadde witħ hym also vij^{Ml} men of armes weƚƚ horsed; the vij bataile ledde ydiers, of the londe of Norwey, to whom the feire a-venture feƚƚ in the courte of kynge Arthur, of *the v ringes that he drougħ oute of the deed knyghtes honde that asked vengaunce, that neuer knygħt that was in that court mygħt haue, as the tale shaƚƚ yow declare here-after; and he hadde in hys companye vij^{Ml}, and he was a noble knygħt and an hardy. The viijth bateile ledde landons, the nevew of the stiward of Tamelide, that was a fuƚƚ noble knygħt of his honde, and he ledde vij^{Ml} in his companye soche as he hadde brougħt; the ixth bateile ledde Groinge poire mole, that was a noble knygħt of his body, but he hadde no gretter nose than a cat; this chese oute vij^{Ml} in whom he trusted; and the xth bataile ledde the kynge leodogan and his stiwarde Cleodalis, that rigħt wele cowde hym helpe, and were in her companye x^{Ml} what oon and other, that wolde not fle for lif ne lym. Whan these batailes were disseuered that oon from that other and renged by hem-self, thei devised whan thei shulde meve; and thus thei acorded, that on the morowe after Pentecoste thei shulde move at the firste

The first ward.

Guyomar leads the second, Elunadas the third,

Blios the fourth,

Aridolus the fifth,

Belcys the sixth,

Ydiers the seventh,

*[Fol. 113*a*.]

Landons the eighth,

Groinge the ninth,

and Cleodalis leads the tenth division.

They agree to move on the morrow after Pentecost.

On Whitsunday Leodogan holds a court. The three kings and Merlin sit together. The two Gonnores are wonderfully alike. The fellows sit with the knights of the round table. When they have eaten they go to bed, but arise at midnight.

cok crowynge; and than̄ thei̇̄ rested aƚƚ day and on̄ the morn̄, ffor on̄ the witsonday the kynge leodogan̄ helde court roiaƚƚ for love of the barou*n*s that ther were assembled; and the thre kynges and Merlin̄ satte to-geder at the hede of the deyse, and be-fore hem satte the two Gonnores, that were wonder like, saf a litiƚƚ that oon̄ was heigher and fressher coloured, and that was Arthurs wif, and the better tonge she hadde, ffor she was of aƚƚ the worlde the feirest speker and the beste, and also she hadde more heer than̄ the tother Gonnore, but of alle other thinges thei̇̄ resembled so like that vn-ethe myg̱h̄t oon̄ knowe that oon̄ from that other. And after satte the felowes that Arthur hadde broug̱h̄t with̄ the knyghtes of the rounde table for chierte and gret love, ffor so wolde Merlin̄ and Gynebans the clerke. And whan̄ thei̇̄ hadde eten̄ thei̇̄ wente to bedde, but litiƚƚ while thei̇̄ lay, for thei̇̄ roos at mydnyg̱h̄t.

Gonnore helps to arm Arthur. She girds on his sword and puts on his spurs. Merlin laughs thereat. The two kings praise her. Merlin laughs and tells Arthur that he never was so truly a new knight as now, but one thing is wanting. *[Fol. 113*b*.] Arthur asks what it is. The maiden says she will do anything

Whan̄ the armes of kynge Arthur were broug̱h̄t, Gonnore hym helped for to arme rig̱h̄t wele and feire, as she that rig̱h̄t wele cowde her ther-of entermete, and hir-self girde hym with̄ his swerde; and whan̄ the kynge was aƚƚ armed saf his helme she toke the spores and sette hem on̄ bothe knelinge; and Merlin̄, that aƚƚ this be-hilde, be-gan to laugh̄e, and shewde to the two kynges how Gonnore hir entermeted and peyned hym to serue; and hir preised moche the twey kynges. But in̄ the fin̄ she hadde a riche guerdon̄ whan̄ she loste the kynge hir lorde by mysauenture and by Bertelanx, the traitour, as the book shaƚƚ re-herse here-after; and while Merlin̄ be-heilde the maiden̄ that s*er*ued hir lorde, he lough̄ and seide to the kynge, as he that cowde aƚƚ goode and fuƚƚ weƚƚ cowde Iape in̄ myrthe and game, "Sir sire, never were ye so verily a newe knyg̱h̄t as ye be now, and ther ne faileth̄ but o thinge that ye were alle a newe knyg̱h̄t; and weƚƚ may ye sey whan̄ ye departe hens that a maiden̄ that is kynges doughter and quenes hath̄ made yow a newe knyg̱h̄t." "Sir," seide the kynge, "sey what thinge that is and my lady shaƚƚ *it do, but yef it be to grete a thinge or that she sholde ther-by haue shame." "Certes, sire," seide the maiden̄ fuƚƚ wisely, as she that fuƚƚ weƚƚ lerned, "in nothinge that I do to yow may I haue no shame ne vilonye, ffor I knowe yow so noble and worthy and also curteyse that ye wolde me not requere nothinge that to vilonye shulde turne for the beste casteƚƚ that ye haue." "Lady," seide Merlin̄, "ye sey wisely; neuer for nothinge that I haue seide shaƚƚ ye haue no reprof ne that sholde turne yow to no shame." "What is it than̄?" seide the kynge, "I pray yow telle me." "Sir," seide Merlin̄, "hit is the baisyers, yef to the lady it plese." "Certes," seide the kynge, "and for that shaƚƚ I not leve to be a newe made knyght." "No," quod the maiden̄, "as for that shaƚƚ I yow not lese, but that ye shuƚƚ be myn and I yowrs; and why sholde ye ther-of me preyen̄, for also weƚƚ it pleseth me as it doth to yow." Whan the kynge herde hir thus sey he be-gan̄ to laugh; than̄ the kynge toke hir in̄ armes, and kissed hir swetly as yonge peple that fuƚƚ weƚƚ to-geder loved. And than̄ were the horse apareiled and brought forth; and Gonnore yaf hir lorde an helme of merveillouse bountee, and he sette it on̄ his heed; and than̄ ech comaunded other to god, and rode forth eche warde after other, the ganfanou*n*s folden̄ and the speres lowe, and rode a softe pas as Merlin̄ hym guyded as he that wele knewe alle the passages; and the x knyghtes that were gon̄ be-fore hadde taken̄ mo than̄ x pantoneres, that alle weren espies of the kynge Rion̄, and bounde hem and sette hem in̄ prison̄, and kepte so weƚƚ the passages that thei̇ herde no tidinges.

that she is not ashamed of.

Merlin says they have not kissed each other.

Arthur takes Gonnore in his arms and kisses her sweetly.

She gives her lord a helmet.

Each ward rides forth.

The ten knights who went before had taken ten spies, and put them in prison.

And so weƚƚ spedde hym Merlin̄ that the firste warde dide condite that thei̇ come the wednysday at nyght after the mydnyght in̄-to the hoste of kynge Rion̄; and the nyght was right clere and stille, but the moone shone a litiƚƚ trouble. And thei̇ slepte strongeliche in̄ the hoste ffor the tyme that relented, ffor on̄ the day was right grete hete in̄ the hoste, and ther-to thei̇ hadden̄ dronken̄ I-nough. And Merlin̄ sette in̄ be-twene the wode and the river, and comaunded that no man̄ presse in̄-to the hoste tiƚƚ that thei̇ herde an̄ horne blowe; and as the wardes passeden̄ ouer oon̄ after a-nother, Merlin̄ a-bode hem alle, and made hem close to-geder; and than̄ wente Merlin̄ to the baner, and toke an horne and blewe it so lowde that aƚƚ the foreste and the river resownnded that a man myght heere the horne weƚƚ half

Merlin leads the first ward so that they come to the host of king Rion, who sleep soundly,

and he commands no man to press into the host till a horn blows.

He makes all the wards close together,

and then blows a horn.

He prays to St. Mary, and calls to the knights to set on. When they hear the horn they spur their horses and smite into the host. *[Fol. 114*a*.] The tents fall on the heads of those that are within, and there is great slaughter.

a myle. Than Merlin cried, "Lady seint Marie, praye to oure lorde god, thi blissed sone, that he now be oure helpe." "Now sette on manly," quod he, "gentill knyghtes, ffor now shall it be sein who is noble and worthi, ffor I do yow to wete that ye be alle at the deth or at the lif, and noon ne hath no heede but he hit now deffende." And whan thei herde the horne a-noon thei slaked theire reynes and spored theire horse and smote in-to the hoste with grete ravyne; and ther ye sholde haue sein tentes and pavilou*n*s reverse to the grounde, ffor Merlin by crafte made soche a trobellion a-rise that ther lefte *nother tente ne pavilon stondinge, but fellen vpon theire heedes that lay with-ynne; and thei smyten in-to the hoste on alle parties, and slowgh and maymed what thei myght a-reche, ffor ther was made of hem grete slaughter er thei were a-parceyved in the hoste what peple thei were, till that thei herde the brayes and the dolerouse cries as thei weren slain and mangeled of hem that of hir deth hadde no pitee. Than comaunded the heigh lordes to theire squyres to make theire horse redy thourgh the hoste, and thei so dide, and than thei ronne to armes hastely, and peyned hem harde to be smartly armed and soone; and as soone as thei myght be armed thei assembled at the tente of kynge Rion, and blowen hornes and trumpes right harde. And the cristin hadde so hurled a-monge hem vp and down that mo than thre thousande thei hadde so araied that neuer repeired thens, and chase the remenaunt to kynge Rions tente; ther thei made hir gaderinge, and ther thei stalled, for thei were moche peple and stronge; and than armed hem thei that were not armed, and tho apered the feire day and cleire, and than the wardes drowen vp and appereilled hem in ordre, and eche gadered his peple a-boute hym, and ther thei reised theire baners a-lofte that flekered in the wynde, and the bright sonne smote vpon the bright armurs that it glistered so bright that merveile was to be-holden.

The high lords run to arms hastily, and assemble at the tent of king Rion, Those that are not armed, arm themselves. Each lord gathers his people about him and raises his banner.

King Rion is mad with anger.

Whan the kynge Rion saugh the damage that thei hadde hym don he was nygh wode for ire, and satte vpon a grete horse that was wonder stronge and swight, and hadde an ax hanginge at his sadill be-fore, that was grete and hevy of harde stieƚƚ, and rode so vp and down̄, devisinge who sholde go be-fore and who sholde go be-hynde; and than̄ he cleped Solynas, a knyghħt of grete prowese and righħt hardy, that was his nevew, and seide, "Solinas, thow shalt lede the firste bataile wiħ an hundred thousande men of armes of soche peple as ye wiƚƚ, and thow shalt go and a-venge my shame and youre harmes." And he seide he wolde weƚƚ so that he wolde deserue of hym no blame. Than̄ departed he that was wight and hardy and merveillouse stronge; and as soone as Merlin̄ saughħ hym come he rode hym a-geins wiħ the dragon̄, and he hym disfigured in̄ soche manere that no man̄ saughħ who it bar saf the thre kynges. Whan̄ Merlin̄ saughħ that he com nyghħ, he seide to the kynge Arthur, "Arthur," quod he, "now shaƚƚ it be sene how weƚƚ ye shuƚƚ do, and loke that the kisse that youre love yow yaf be to som*m*e solde so dere that euer after ther-of be spoken̄." And he ansuerde a-gein̄ and seide that in̄ hym sholde be no feyntise, and no more he ne seide. And than̄ approched that oon̄ bataile to that other righħt nyghħ, and than̄ thei̇ leide theire speres in̄ fewtre, and mette to-geder wiħ trenchaunt heedes vpon̄ the sheldes that echħ hurte other and wounded and bar to the grounde; ther dide the kynge Arthur a pointe that moche was be-holden̄.

He calls his nephew Solinas,

and tells him to lead the first division with 100,000 men.

Merlin rides against him with the dragon.

and reminds Arthur of Gonnore's kiss.

The two sides meet together and many are borne to the ground.

Whan̄ Arthur saughħ bothe parties so nyghħ approche, he smote the horse wiħ the spor*es* a-gein̄ Ionap, a grete Geaunt and merveillous stronge; and he saughħ hym so come he douted *hym but litiƚƚ, for he semed a-gein̄ hym but a chielde. Thei̇ com faste and rudely, and Arthur was smyte wiħ Ionappes spere in the shelde so rudely that the shafte passed thourghħ his lifte flanke an arme lengthe; and Arthur smote hym a-gein̄ so sore that thourghħ shelde and sholdre he shof the trenchaunt spere, but the sarazin̄ was so proude and of so grete strengtħ that he made no semblaunt of no greuaunce, but hurteled to-geder so rudely wiħ theire bodyes and wiħ the myghħt of theire horse that eche bar other to erthe and the horse vpon̄ theire bodyes, and ther thei̇ lay a longe while sore astonyed, that the ton̄ cowde telle no tidinges of the tother. Than̄ ronne to the rescowse on̄ bothe two sides; ther was many a grete spere crased and stronge stour of

Arthur smites against a great giant named Jonap,

*[Fol. 114*b*.]

and strikes his spear through his shield and shoulder.

They bear one another to the ground. Both sides run to their rescue, and they are set on horse again.

The knights of the round table and the forty fellows do wonders.

The men of Solinas fly, and the Christians chase them.

One young knight ought not to be forgotten.

swerdes vpon helmes and sheldes. Ther loste the Geauntes more than the cristin, but, neuertheles, thei traueyled so on bothe parties that bothe were thei releved and sette on horse, and than be-gan the stour*e* stronge and merveillouse; ther dide the knyghtes of the rounde table wondres, and the xl felowes, ffor a-gein hem myght endure noon harneys, ne no kynge, ne warde, ne sheltron, were it neuer so clos, and drof hem to the standerd, and were so affraide the meyne of Solinas that thei ne ente*n*ded but for to fleen; and the cristin hem enchased and driven in a-monge hem so harde that alle the renges dide fremysh, and ther be-gan the chaplee so mortall that neuer was sein more mortalite; grete prowesse ther dide the knyghtes of the rounde table, but of alle other ther dide well a yonge knyght, that ought well to be rehersed in the storye, for he ought not to be for-yeten but to be remembred what he was and what was his name, ffor he was the beste that euer was in the tyme of Vterpendragon and in the tyme of kynge Arthur, as longe as hym liked for to vse and to haunte chiualrie.

He was cousin to Percevall de galoys,

and near of kin to Joseph Abaramathie;

also cousin to Selydoyne.

This knight had afterwards Galaad in his keeping.

He was called Nascien, after king Nascien.

When he left chivalry he became a hermit,

The storye seith that he was cosin germain vn-to Percevall de galoys vpon his moder side, of whom this booke shall speke here-after whan the matier cometh ther-to; and also the booke seith that this knyght was nygh kyn to Ioseph Abaramathie, for he was the sone of Enhyngnes, the soster of Ioseph, that was the wif wedded to Ebron, that hadde xij sones, where-of the londe of Bretaigne was after enlumyned, and next cosin to Selydoyne, the sone of Duke Nascien de breti*ng*, that the grete merveile of the graal saugh firste, and also a-pertened to kynge Pelles of lytenoys and his brethren. This knyght hadde after Galaad, the sone of launcelot, many a day in his kepinge, wher-of the boke shall reherse here-after of alle thinges oon after a-nother as thei fill day be day. This knyght of whom I haue so spoken was cleped Nascien ffor love of the duke Nascien, that was so noble a knyght, and he was after of so gode lyvinge whan he hadde lefte chivalrie that he be-com an hermyte; and oure lorde hym visited and loved so that he was a preste and seide messe, and was also a mayden and chaste as longe as he leved; and this same knygħt was after ravissħed be the holy goste iꞑ-to the thridde heuene, where he saugħ a-pertely the fader, sone, and holy goste. This knygħt hadde after the storie iꞑ his kepinge, *and wrote witħ his owne hande by comaundement of the grete maister; and that he dide write he anexed to the booke that Blase wrote, the holy hermyte, by the techinge of Merliꞑ. This knygħt yaf afterwarde, whaꞑ he was hermyte, the noble counseile to kynge Arthur whaꞑ he was iꞑ pereile to lese his londe, in the tyme of Galehaut, the lorde of the fer·oute yles, that werred vpoꞑ Arthur w*ith* the power of xxx kynges that he hadde alle conquered. But now resteth the tale to speke of thise thinges, and returnetħ to telle how theꞑ dide in the bataile.

and was taken by the Holy Ghost into the third heaven.
*[Fol. 115*a*.]
and wrote the story, which he annexed to Blase's book.
When he was a hermit he counselled Arthur in the time of Galehaut.
The tale returns to the battle.

Fuƚƚ grete and harde was the bataile, the thursday after pentecoste, of the peple of kynge Rioꞑ of Denmarke and of Islonde, a-geiꞑ the peple of the reame of Tamelide, and ther the knyghtes of the rounde table shewde merveilouse prowesse in armes, but a-boveꞑ alle other weƚƚ dide this Nascieꞑ and Adragayn li bruns: these tweyne dide merveillouse prowesses: these tweyne brake the sheltrou*ns* witħ strokes of swerdes, and witħ hem also the kynge Arthur. These thre hilde companye to-geder that theꞑ haue loste aƚƚ theire felowes, and what wey that euer theꞑ yede euer hem gyded the baner of the dragoꞑ, and sore peyned alle the tother felowes for to folowe the baner, but the sarazins were so many and so thikke that theꞑ mygħt hem not persħ ne breke, but nede moste theꞑ ruse, and leve place wheder theꞑ wolde or nooꞑ; and these thre be lefte a-monge hem that sore laboured er theꞑ mygħt come to the standerd where the baner waved of the kynge Rioꞑ iꞑ the wynde that was grete and borꞑ vp witħ iiij Olyfaunt*es*; and on that other side the kynge Baꞑ and the kynge Boors saugħ how theꞑ haue loste the kynge Arthur, and that the Geaunt*es* haue hym for-closed, theꞑ lete renne theire horse and lefte theire felowes, and gerdeꞑ in-to the presse, witħ swerdes draweꞑ, and sloweꞑ and casteꞑ dowꞑ aƚƚ that theꞑ mygħt atteigne, ne neuer cessed hem to perceꞑ and thriste thourgħ tiƚƚ thei coꞑ to Merliꞑ, that hilde the baner be-fore the kynge Arthur. And whaꞑ the v felowes wereꞑ to-geder and hir banerer that hem

The knights of the round table shew marvellous prowess, but Nascien and Adragayn are above all others.
King Arthur joins them, and the three go wherever the banner of the dragon guides them.
The banner of king Rion is borne by four elephants.
When Ban and Boors see they have lost Arthur they press through till they come to Merlin, who holds Arthur's banner.

It is a marvel to behold the five fellows.

Rion meets Boors, who is chasing Saron.

Saron had given Boors a stroke with his spear,

and Boors had run to the giant,

and pursued him too far.

*[Fol. 115*b*.]

Rion comes riding with seventeen kings,

and smites Boors on the helm,

but as he prepares to strike again, his horse bears him too far, and he smites off the head of Saron's horse.

he cries out to Boors,

gided, than be-gan the medle so cruweƚƚ, that oon for that other, that merveile it was to be-holde. Than fiƚƚ it that the kynge Rion com that wey, his ax in his honde, and he was the moste man and the grettest of corsure of the worlde, and happed that he mette firste in his wey the kynge Boors, that chased the kynge Saron with swerde drawen, that a merveillous stroke he hadde hym yoven with a spere thurgħ the shelde, that ner he hadde hym felled to grounde, but as he kepte hym by the arson of his sadeƚƚ, and with-oute faile hadde not the spere broken he hadde falle to grounde; and as soone as the spere was spente the kynge Boors redressed hym in his sadeƚƚ and ficched hym so in his steropes so harde that the Iren bente, and he hilde his swerde naked, and clipte his shelde to his breste, and ran to the Geaunte, and whan the Geaunte saugħ hym come he fledde, for he durste hym not a-bide; and the kynge Boors hym pursude that loth was hym to leve, and of that dide he grete folye, ffor he hadde paste his felowes the space of a bowe draugħt, and thei ne mygħt not hym ouer-take; and than happed hym mette the *kynge Rion, that com ridinge wonder faste, with aƚƚ the force of xvij kynges crowned, and alle were thei hardy knyghtes and sure in armes, and the kynge Rion rode be-fore the caste of a ston, and helde in his hande a grete malle of brasse, and he was grete and stronge, and sat vpon a stronge horse and a grete, and mette the kynge Boors, that chased the kynge Saron, and hilde hym so straite that he smote hym vpon the helme that he made hym stoupe on the arson of the sadeƚƚ, and as he sholde haue recouerd a-nother stroke to smyte of the hede, the horse that he satte on caugħt the brideƚƚ with the teth, and bar hym ferther than he wolde, the kynge, that smote with so grete mygħt, [myght] not with-drawe his stroke, but hitte ther as he wolde not haue smyten, ffor he smote of the horse hede of the kynge Saron faste by the eeres, that bothe the horse and the hover fiƚƚ to the erthe, and than Boors rode ouer hym, and fayn wolde haue ligħt yef he hadde leyser. But the kynge Rion that com fer be-fore cried, and seide, "Sir knygħt, so fer haste thow gon that late it is to repente, for he is longinge to me, and ther-fore I com hym for to chalenge, and thow shalt wite yef be-twene hym and me were eny love.” Than he spored his horse harde that the blode sterte oute on bothe two sides, and he ran so swyfte that the felde that was fuƚƚ of smale caliou*n*s that the fire sparkeled thikke, and the kynge Boors behilde and saugħ come the grete Geaunte so nygħ that he mygħt not glenche a-side on no parte, and saugħ come so grete foyson of peple after hym that aƚƚ the felde was couered, and saugħ weƚƚ yef he a-bode he were in grete a-uenture of detħ, and than he seide a-gein, “A mercy lorde god, for yef I go thus shaƚƚ I neuer haue honour, ffor euer it shaƚƚ be to me reprof and holde cowardise, and yet hadde I leuer to dye witħ worship than lyve witħ shame; now god do witħ me his plesier,” quod he, “for I wiƚƚ a-bide.” Than he made vpon hym the signe of the very crosse, and hilde his swerde in his honde that was of grete bounte, and bode hym that com prikinge thourgħ the playn. Whan the kynge Rion com to the kynge Boors he threw down his launce, and yaf hym soche a stroke witħ the brasen beteƚƚ so vn-mesurable, that ner he hadde hym encombred, but he kepte the stroke vpon his shelde, and Rion smote so rudely that it fiƚƚ in peces, and Boors enterpassaunt hit hym on the helme witħ his swerde so fiercely that he bente on his horse croupe. Whan the sarazin saugħ that he hadde of hym failed, he returned a-gein with his betiƚƚ of brasse, and the kynge Boors that saugħ come so grete foison of peple and the kynge Rion that hilde hym so shorte, he thougħt it foly to a-bide lenger. Than he priked bakke in-to the presse, and saugħ how the kynge Aroans helde hervy the riveƚƚ by the naseƚƚ of the helme vpon fote, and hadde hym so beten, he and his men, that the blode ran oute of mouthe and nose, and thei hadde his hede smeten of ne hadde be Adragain li bruns, that fuƚƚ sore hym deffended a-gein mo than an hundred, but in short tyme he moste haue be *slayn, whereof hadde be grete damage, ne hadde be the kynge Boors, that com and saugħ hervy at that myschef, and was ther-fore fuƚƚ sory; and than he priked his horse toward Aroans and smote hym vpon the helme that he fiƚƚ flatte to grounde aƚƚ a-stonyed. And whan hervy saugħ hym so delyuered, he hente the horse and lepte vp lightly, and ran in-to

and spurs his horse.

Boors, when he sees him coming, prays to God.

and makes the sign of the cross.

Rion gives him a stroke with his hammer,

and Boors hits Rion on the helm,

and thinks it folly to abide any longer.

He sees Aroans with Hervy the Rivell,

*[Fol. 116*a*.]

and smites Aroans on the helm. Hervy leaps up and runs into the press.

the presse that dide sore encrese and enforse, ffor aƚƚ the x wardes of the kynge leodogan were flusshed to the standerd that the kynge Rion dide condite, that hadde chaced the kynge Boors tiƚƚ he com in-to the bataile ther he hadde felled the kynge Aroant, and as soone as he hym saugħ he ran vpon hym witħ his betiƚƚ in his honde and wende to smyte hym vpon the helme, and whan he saugħ the stroke come and that he hade no shelde, he spored fortħ his horse, and Ryon smote so rudely that the stroke fiƚƚ betwene the horse croupe and the sadeƚƚ that brake the horse chyne, and bar bothe to the erthe, that oon vpon that other bothe vpon an hepe. Than the kynge boors lepte on foote, for he was a knyght hardy and sure, and the presse was so thikke a-boute hym, that vn-ethe mygħt he hym turne, ffor so grete plente of peple sued the kyng*e* Rion, that no man mygħt hem nombre, that smote vpon hem so sore that the cristin rused more than a bowe shote. Ther was Boors fuƚƚ sore greved, for the kynge Rion peyned hym sore to smyte of his hede; and whan hervy de riveƚƚ saugħ the goode man at so grete myschef, for he hadde sein hym thries vpon his knees fallen and a-rise vpon his palmes, he rode that wey hym for to socour*e*, and caugħt a grete stronge spere oute of a sarazins handes, and smote the kynge Rion thourgħ the shelde and hauberke and the lifte sholdre, but it perced not the flessh. Ne for no stroke that he yaf the kynge not meved more ne lesse, but lifte vp the betiƚƚ where-witħ he hadde many a cristin slain, and wende smyte hervy vpon the helme, but he hym covered witħ his shelde, and the stroke com so harde that a quarter fiƚƚ to the erthe, and whan he wolde it recover as he that was of rigħt grete forse, and hervy was fuƚƚ of grete vigour, and hilde his swerde drawen, and wende to smyte hym vpon the helme, and the kynge caste his shelde ther a-geins, and hervy hym smote so sore that he slitte it to the bokle, and the kynge lefte vp agein the betiƚƚ and wolde haue smyte hym vpon the helme, and hervy plukked his reyne a-bakke, for sore he douted the stroke of the grete Geaunte, and he failed of hym, and smote the horse be the paytreƚƚ and braste the nekke a-sonder, that to grounde fiƚƚ the horse and his maister, and whan Adragain saugħ his felow fallen, it was no nede to aske

Rion chases Boors,

and smites him so rudely, that he breaks the horse's chine, and bears them both to earth.

Boors leaps on foot,

but is sorely grieved.

Hervy rides to succour him, and, catching a spear, smites Rion.

Rion smites Hervy on the helm.

Hervy recovers and smites Rion.

He then draws his horse back, and Rion's stroke smites it.

yef he were dolent. Than he drough that wey with his swerde in his fiste, and smote so the kynge Rion, that he made hym bende on his horse nekke, and but as he enbrased his horse nekke he hadde fallen to the erthe all vp-right, and yef Adragain hadde I-hadde leyser, taken hadde be the vengeaunce with-oute more taryinge. Whan the sarazins and the Geauntes saugh the *kynge Rion in soche pereill, thei were right wrorth. Ther was a proude kynge that was cosin to kynge Rion, that hight Solinas, that heilde a spere with an heede of steill: whan he saugh the kynge Rion so euell I-ledde, it a-noyed hym sore, and than he spored his stede and smot Adragayn so rudely be-twene the two sholderes that he bar hym to the erthe vp-right, but a-noon he lept on foote. And whan the thre knyghtes saugh hem-self so at myschef, thei drough hem to-geder and foughten so harde that noon to profer hys honde hem to take; and thei launched at hem dartes and gauellokes, and hurt and wounded hem in many places, but thei were of so high herte that nought thei sette of all that was ther don, but slough and caste down all that thei myght atteyne. But the kynge Rion hem kepe so short that taken hadde thei ben, but as Nascien com with a shorte spere in his honde all blody.

Adragain comes to succour him and smites Rion.

*[Fol. 116b.]

When the sarazins see Rion in peril they are wroth. Solinas spurs his steed and bears Adragayn to the ground, who leaps to his feet. The three knights fight hard, but they would have been taken if Nascien had not come.

Whan Nascien saugh the kynge Boors at soche myssese, and his two felowes that he so loved, and saugh the kynge Rion that sore hym peyned hem to damage, he smote his horse with spores so harde that wey that down goth all that he mette in hys comynge with the breste of his horse, and braundisshed his gleyve, and smote the kynge Rion so harde at discouert vpon the lifte side that he bar hym to the erthe so a-stonyed that he wiste not whether it were day or nyght; and Nascien passed ouer his body on horse-bak tweys or thryse, and than his men ronne to the rescowse, and ther was so grete prese of speres and swerdes that Nasciens horse was slain vnder hym be-twene his legges; and ther were these iiij knyghtes at grete myssese and soone myght haue be so grete damage that neuer myght haue be restored; but Merlin, that alle these auentures knewe, com to kynge Arthur, and seide, "Clepe the kynge Ban and the knyghtes of the rounde table and suweth me, ffor it is now grete nede, ffor

Nascien, when he sees Boors and his two fellows in such danger, presses towards them, and smites down Rion.

He rides over him twice or thrice.

Rion's men come to the rescue, and Nascien's horse is slain.

Merlin tells Arthur to call Ban and

the knights of the round table that they may follow him.

the kynge Boors and thre knygħtes of the rounde table figħtes, and alle iiij ben at grete myschief, ffor the kynge Rion hem kepetħ so shorte that I loke but after the houre that thei sholde be slain."

Ban trembles at his brother's danger.

Merlin makes a tempest to arise.

The dragon casts fire and flame into the air,

and the sarazins are afraid.

"Whan the kynge Ban vndirstode Merlin, ałł his body trembled, and a-noon asked and seide, "Ha! sir, tełł me whiche wey it is, ffor yef he dye shałł I neuer haue ioye in my lyve." "Sue me than," quod Merlin, "for it is no tyme for to a-byde." Than caste Merlin a-noon his enchauntement fułł merveillous, for he made a-rise a tempest and a wynde so stronge that ałł the duste drof a-monge the saisnes so thikke that vn-nethe oon mygħt knowe a-nother; and than a-roos the shoute so grete and the noyse that noon mygħt here other. Than turned Merlin the dragon in his honde so grete and so merveillouse that neuer was seyn noon soche be-fore, and caste fier and flame in-to the aire so grete and so merveillouse and so grete foison that ałł the aire waxed all reade of the flawme, and ther fiłł a thousande of soche sparkeles of fire vpon theire helmes of the Sarazins and Geauntes, that was a thinge that moche hem affraied.

*[Fol. 117*a*.]

The men of Rion come in great plenty and smite Leodogan's ward.

Rion's men are four to one of the Christians. The battle was great before the city of da Nablaise.

Ban does marvels, and wherever Merlin goes Arthur and the fellows follow him.

*While that Merlin entended to breke the presse, com the men of kynge Rion so grete plente that noon cowde hem nombre ne seye, and on that other side come the wardes of kynge leodogan and that oon smote a-gein that other alle to-geder. Ther was a stour merveillouse and felon, ffor the cristin were at grete myschef, ne it mygħt not longe haue endured ne hadde ben the grete knowinge and witte of Merlin, in whom was ałł the recouer, ffor for oon of the men of kynge leodogan hadde kynge Rion foure, but the cristin ben more noble and better I-armed and feirer in ordenaunce ecħ at his baner. Ffułł grete was the bataile and the stour mortałł be-fore the Citee of da Nablaise, for sore that oo parte peyned to damage that other. Ther the knyghtes of the rounde table so laboured and peyned hem to sue the baner where as Merlyn it bar, for ther were so gret foyson of peple that vn-ethe were thei seyn a-monge theire enmyes. Ther dide merveilles the kynge Ban, for he hadde grete drede of his brother, and whiche wey that Merlin wente euer was Arthur witħ hym and his xl felowes and CC l knyghtes of the rounde table; a-gein these myght no force of peple wiħ-stonde, and so haue thei medled and styghtled tiƚƚ they haue founde the kynge Boors vpon foote, and his felowes so araied that theire helmes were slitte and quartered that it henge a-boute theire yeen so that it hem blynded, and theire hauberk*es* were so rente and torne in many places, but thei hadde yet no wounde that letted hem to bere armes, and thei helde theire swerdes in bothe handes and merveillously hem deffenden, ffor so many hadde thei slayn of men and of horse that the mounteins of bodyes were a-boute hem so grete that noon myght come to hem but launchinge; and the kynge Ryon hym peyned hem for to take and holde, ffor weƚƚ he thought that thei were high men and riche for the grete diffence that he saugh in hem and for the high hert*es* that thei hadden, and than he yaf hem a-gein a newe a-saute where thei alle hadde be loste hadde not the socour haue come.

They find Boors and his fellows in great distress.

Mountains of bodies of those they had slain are around them.

Rion tries hard to take them.

Whan the kynge Ban saugh his brother in soche turment, ffro whens he sholde neuer haue come oute hooƚƚ ne sounde yef thei ne hadde not comen ne the knyght*es* that wiħ hym weren, than he lete renne his horse that wey, and smote the kynge Minap so thourgh the heede that he slitte hym to the briste bon, and the kynge Arthur smote so a sarazin that he made the heede falle be-fore the kynge Rion, and the other felowes smote in so sore a-monge hem that ech bar his felowe deed to the erthe or elles wounded. And whan the kynge Boors saugh the socour come, he ioyned his feet and lept vpon the deed bodyes of men and horse that he hadde slain, and ech of hem caught an horse and lept vp lightly, and chaunged theire helmes a-noon in grete haste, and after gate hem sheldes, and than rode in-to the medle wiħ swerdes drawen. Ther be-gan the stour newe fuƚƚ hidouse and feƚƚ, ffor thei braste and threst thourgh the batailes *on alle parties and smyten down and slough aƚƚ a-bowte, and thus the bataile endured aƚƚ the day vnto lowe euesonge. Than rused the cristin towarde the Cite of Danablaise, and the cry a-ros so grete and the noyse and the shoute that alle the cite ronne to the walles and saugh that the cristin hadde moche the werse.

When Ban sees his brother in this plight he smites and kills Minap.

Arthur smites off the head of a sarazin.

When Boors sees the succour, he catches a horse and changes his helm.

The conflict begins anew.

*[Fol. 117*b*.]

The Christians rush towards the city of Danablaise.

When Sadoynes sees Leodogan's people discomfited,

Whan Sadoynes the Castelein saugħ the kynge leodogan, his oncle, at soche myschef, and that thei were alle discounfited and driven from the place, ne hadde ben the kynge Arthur and his companye, that were weƚƚ CCC; these sustened so the bataile that euer thei recouered in-to what place thei wente; and whan Sadoyne saugħ the myschef of his oncle and of his companye, he cried, "Gentiƚƚ knyghtes, now as armes, for now is the nede, ffor this day we most recouer worship or aƚƚ lese, and diffende oure lyves and oure heritages a-gein the enmyes of I*es*hu criste, and who that dietħ in diffence of the cristin feitħ he shaƚƚ be saued from the peyne of helle; ne neuer hadde we so moche nede to recouer our honour as we haue now rigħt; and se ther the kynge Arthur, that is oure lorde terrien, be the baner of the dragon, that is the beste knyght of the worlde, that us for to socoure put hym-self in a-uenture of detħ, and whan he his body thus a-bandonetħ for vs weƚƚ ougħt we oures for to abandone for hym, and therfore ougħt we haue grete pite of hym and of many other worthi men that ben in his companye, for moche thei suffre and endure, and therfore ougħt we to haue grete drede whan thei ben thus rused and we that ben here-ynne so many shuƚƚ helpe hem of nougħt ffor yet be we here-ynne of x^{Ml} and moo, and se theym that passe not foure hundr*e* contene hem so vigerously that thei holde place but haue aƚƚ day suffred and endured the medle and the martileys. Now, gentiƚƚ knyght*es*, vpon hem, and lete vs yeve hem a shofte, and wete ye weƚƚ, yef thei be weƚƚ mette at this encountre we put hem alle to the fligħt, ffor better it were for vs to dye witħ honour*e*, setħ that vs be-hovetħ for to dye, than for to be shamed and disherited for cowardise of herte; and on that other side we ougħt moche to diffende oure rigħt heritage and the cristin feitħ that is but newe stablisshed and be-gonne." And whan the kynge leodogan saugħ hem isse oute of the Citee, he cried to his men, "Now vpon hem, gentiƚƚ knyghtes, lo, here the socour*e* that Sadoyne bringetħ; ffor love of god, gentiƚƚ knyghtes, thenke to kepe youre honours, and remembre what ye ben." "Sir," quod Guyomar, "wher-to somowne ye vs so faste? we ben eche man redy his heede to diffende, ffor we ben so fer fortħ that alle we

he calls his knights to arms,

and tells them to see Arthur, the best knight of the world.

He charges them to go out to the assistance of the Christians.

When Leodogan sees their succour coming he cries out to his knights.

shuƚƚ dye or we shuƚƚ haue the victorie, ffor ecħ of vs ougħt to be wortħ a kynge to diffende his owne heede; but lete vs sette on hem alle at ones so harde that thei be ther-of a-baisshed.” Than thei assembled alle to-geder clos and streite, and rode fortħ a softe paas toward the standerd, ther-as the kynge Ban, and the *kynge Boors, and the kynge Arthur, and the knyghtes of the rounde table dide merveilles. Whan the kynge leodogan approched the standerd he and his men smot in so fiercely that thei made hem tremble, and than be-gan a newe stour, stronge and mortaƚƚ, and ther loste the sarazins many of here peple; and so moche vertu was in leodogan and his men that thei made hem remove and forsake place; and witħ that com Sadoynes, hurlinge in so harde a-monge hem that he drof hem euen ther the hoste hadde ben logged, and ther thei stode stifly and merveillously hem deffended; and Merlin drougħ hym vp from the bataile, and made the knyght*es* of the rounde table come a-boute hym, and made hem refressħ and girde hir horse and a-brethe hem, and to renewe theire helmes and sheldes that hadde myster, and assembled to-geder alle hem that hadde ben in her warde, and thei were weƚƚ refresshed and a-vented and were weƚƚ vij^{Ml}, and eche man hadde take a stronge spere; and whan thei hadde thus rested a-while thei saugħ her meyne come fuƚƚ harde dryuinge, ffor the sarazins recouered a-noon as the knyghtes of the rounde table lefte the standard; and than Merlin criede, “Gentiƚƚ knyghtes, now vpon hem, and shewe youre knyghthode, ffor yef ye do weƚƚ at this encountre a-noon thei shuƚƚ go theire wey.” And than he seide to the kynge Arthur that eueƚƚ he thougħt vpon that his wif hadde hym yoven, and that porely he hadde don in the firste stoure. And whan Arthur that herde he wax rody for shame and seide no worde, and ficched sore in his stiropes. And the kynge Ban be-gan to laugħ vndir his helme, and shewde hym to the kynge Boors his brother, and alle the knyghtes of the rounde table; and thei preised hym moche, ffor thei saugħ hym of fierce contenaunce, and seide yef he lyve longe ther was neu*er* seyn soche a kynge; and thei preide god hym diffende from p*er*eile.

Guyomar advises that they set on the Saxons all at once. They ride towards the standard.

*[Fol. 118*a.*]

When Leodogan and his men approach the standard they smite in fiercely.

Sadoynes drives back the Saxons.

Merlin makes the knights of the round table come about him and refresh themselves.

He addresses them.

He tells Arthur he has done little.

Ban shows him to Boors.

Merlin drives into the battle with his dragon.

Arthur smites Clarell,

and when he sees Rion

he smites down fourteen men and horse to get to him. He smites him fiercely with his spear.

Whan Merlin approched the bataile he cried, "Now vpon hem," and he drof in-to the bateile wiħ the dragon, that he bar to the erthe alle that thei encountred, that thei lefte nougħt standinge, so fierce was theire comynge; and Arthur, that helde a stronge short spere, smote so the kynge Clareƚƚ that he perced shelde and hauberke, that he fiƚƚ to grounde and hadde ne myster of no leche. Than he ches to the kynge Rion by his coueringe cote that was fuƚƚ of berdes crowned, and whan Arthur hadde perceyved the kynge Rion, he p[l]ukked to hym his short spere, and preced thurgħ the presse wiħ his goode horse so that noon hym wiħ-stode, but he caste to grounde xiiij, bothe horse and man, er he myght come to the kynge Rion, and than he smote hym so fiercely wiħ this short spere thourgħ shelde and hauberke, and hadde not ben the doublet that he hadde of a serpentes skyn, deed hadde he ben wiħ-oute recouer; but the skyn was so harde that he mygħt not perce ne breke, neuertheles he shof so harde that he fiƚƚ to grounde wiħ his legges lifte vp-rigħt.

*[Fol. 118*b*.]

When the giants see their lord fallen they run upon Arthur and bear him to the earth. The 7000 run to his rescue.

Ban does great marvels and remounts Arthur.

Rion is ill-treated.

He leaps on foot and

*Whan the Geauntes and the sarazins saugħ theire lorde fallen, thei fremysshed, for grete drede thei hadde leste he were slayn, and alle thei ronne vpon Arthur and smote hym wiħ speres on alle parties that thei bar hym to the erthe, his horse and hym on an hepe to-geder. And whan Merlin saugħ the kynge falle, he made hem renne to the rescu alle the vij^{Ml}, and than was ther soore medle and sharp̄ shour, ffor that oon part peyned for to rescu, and that other part for to take or to confounde for vengaunce of the kynge Rion. But ther dide kynge Ban gret merveilles, ffor he remounted Arthur a-monge his enmyes wiħ fin force, and made so grete lardre of the Geauntes, that noon durste of hym a-bide a stroke; and also diden weƚƚ the vij^{Ml}, by the force of the knyghtes of the rounde table, that fewe ther were but that he bar his felowe to the grounde, that thei made hem remove from the place magre hem alle. Ther was the kynge Rion foule diffouled er he mygħt a-gein be remounted. But whan he saugħ that it turned to disconfuture, and that thei moste gon wolde thei or noon, he seide he hadde lever dye but his shame were a-venged, and than he lepte on foote and caugħt his betiƚƚ in bothe hondes and smote in-to the presse, and be-gan to smyte soche strokes on bothe sides, so rude and oute of mesure, that he confounded aƚƚ that he a-rauħt, that thei fledde from hym on alle partes for the merveilles that thei sauħ hym do. And on that other side the kynge Ban and the kynge Arthur, and the kynge Boors, and Nascien, and Agragayns, and Vlfin, and hervy, and Antor, and kay the stiwarde, and lucas, and Gifflet, and the othere felowes, foughten so tiƚƚ thei come to the standerd of the kynge Rion that the Olyfauntes bar. Ther was dolerouse fiħt, and the mortalito so grete, that ther ran stremes of blode as a rennynge river thourħ the felde. Ther was throwe down the Olyfauntes and the standerd of the kynge Rion, and than a-roos the shoute and the noyse vpon the Geauntes, that thei turned to fliħt toward the foreste. And whan the Geauntes sauħ that thei turned to disconfiture, and that the damage was theirs, thei ledde to kynge Rion his horse, and ledde hym a-wey wolde he or noon, for grete drede thei hadde of hym, and he was so sorowfuƚƚ, that nere he wente wode for Ire. And er he departed, he dide grete damage to kynge leodogan, ffor of his men he slouħ mo than xx er he departed oute of the felde; but whan he sauħ thei fledde bothe oon and other that he myħt no lenger a-bide, he wente his wey so wroth throuħ the wode wiħ-oute companye.

smites into the press.

All fly from him.

The fellows fight till they come to the standard of Rion,

which they overthrow.

The giants turn to flight, and lead Rion off,

but he slays more than twenty men before he departs.

When the kynge leodogan sauħ the kynge Rion and the Geauntes fledden, he hem chaced, and Sadoynes, and Cleodales, and Guyomar, that many thei lefte ligginge at erthe; and on that othir side the knyghtes of the rounde table made soche lardure thourħ the felde as it hadde ben shepe strangeled wiħ wolves, ffor the plaisshes greved hem sore that thei myħt not passe delyuerly, ffor thei were so entassed with swerdes so thikke, *that oon a-monge that other, and so affraide, that in hem was litiƚƚ diffence, and thei slouħ so many, that aƚƚ the feldes were covered with deed and wounded bodyes, and the chace dured vn-to derke nyħt.

Leodogan chases Rion and the giants.

The deeds of the knights of the round table.

*[Fol. 119*a*.]

When the kynge Rion departed fro the bateile so sory and wroþ, as ye haue herde, and he was not a-perceyved of no man that hym knewe, saf only of kynge Arthur; and whan

Rion departs sorry and wroth.

Arthur smites after him.

Ban pursues Glorienx, Mynados, and Colufer.

The chace endures till clear day.

Arthur saugħ hym departe so, he seide to hym-self, that rather wolde he be deed, than he sholde so ascape, and than he smote the horse with the spores and lefte his felowes, so that noon wiste whiche wey he wente. And on that othir side the kynge Ban pursude the kynge Glorienx, and Mynados, and Colufer: these thre kynges he chaced sooƚƚ by hym-self, thourgħ the wode, and the tother felowes were parted, her xx and here x, here xv, in som place more than in a-nother, and so endured the chace of hem, that in no wise wolde hem suffre to ascape tiƚƚ it was cler day, and be that tyme were so many slayn and diffouled, that of CC^{Ml} that were at the begynnynge ne ascaped not xx^{Ml}. But now lete vs speke of the kynge Arthur that pursuetħ after the kynge Rion.

Arthur chases Rion into a deep valley.

When he overtakes him he cries to him to return.

Rion returns with his mallet in his hand.

They run against each other.

Arthur smites his spear through Rion's shield.

When the giant feels

So longe Arthur enchased the kynge Rion, that he hym atteyned in a depe valey be-twene a litiƚƚ wode and a medowe at a passage of a litiƚƚ brooke that com rennynge of two welle sprynges of a mou*n*tayne, and the sonne was so lowe, that for the mounteynes and the wode hit was aƚƚ derke, and ther ouer-toke Arthur the kynge Rion, and than he cried, "Turne the, coward Geaunte, or thow shalt dye fleynge, ffor thow seist weƚƚ ther is no moo here but thow and I." And whan the Geaunte vndirstode the kynge that so hym maneced, he helde ther-of grete dispite, ffor he saugħ that he semed a-geyn hym but a childe. Than he returned toward hym witħ his beteƚƚ in his honde, and put his targe hym be-forn that was of the bon of an Olyfaunte, and the kynge Arthur helde a shorte spere witħ a longe trenchaunt heede of sharp̄ grounde steiƚƚ, and ronne to-geder wrotħ and maletalentif that oon a-gein that other, and that oon desiraunt of pris and honour, and that other covetouse to a-venge hys shame and his harme. The kynge Arthur com faste, for he was meved from fer, and Rion hym a-bode witħ his betiƚƚ in his honde, and Arthur hym smote so sore witħ this spere thourgħ the shelde, thougħ it were neuer so harde, that the stieƚƚ passed through two plites of the hauberke on the lifte side, that the blode lepe oute grete foyson that aƚƚ the shafte was couered in blode; but for no myghħt that he cowde shove, myghħt he not make hym to remeve his sadiƚƚ, and the spere splyndered in peces. And whan the

Geaunte felte hym-self*e* wounded, he gnasshed his tetħ and rolled his iyen, that were grete swollen for ire and mantelent that he hadde, and he lifte vp his betiƚƚ of brasse as he that was merveilouse *grete and stronge a-bove alle tho that eny man knewe in tho dayes, and as the boke seitħ, he was xiiij foote of lengthe, and half a palme be-twene his browes, and was grete and lene and fuƚƚ of veynes and of senewes, and was also so grym a figure that he was dredefuƚƚ for to be-holde.

himself wounded, he gnashes his teeth and lifts up his hammer.

*[Fol. 119*b*.]

He is fourteen feet high.

Whan Arthur saugħ the Geaunte lifte vp his malle he douted the stroke, and ran to hym so rudely witħ the body of his horse that he bar to the erthe bothe Rion and his horse; but soone was he vpon his foote, but first was Arthur garnysshed of his armes er the Geaunt were reised, for Arthur was also fallen to grounde witħ the frayinge that thei hurteled to-geder. And Arthur was wigħt and lifly, and yet hadde he not but xx yere of age, and the kynge Rion hadde moo than xlij largely, and was grete and hevy by the thirde part more than he; and as soone as thei were vp, thei ronne ther to-geder, and Arthur griped Calibourne, his goode swerde that he pulde oute of the ston, wherwitħ that day he hadde yove many a stroke; and as soone as he hadde it drawen oute, hit yaf so grete ligħt as it hadde ben a grete bronde of fire, and couered hym witħ his shelde, and raugħt a stroke to the Geaunte er he were couered vpon the heede, and whan he saugħ the stroke comynge he caste the shelde ther a-gein, for sore he dredde the stroke of the swerde that he saugħ so brigħt shynynge, ffor he knewe it was of rigħt grete bou*n*te; and the kynge Arthur smote so in the malle that he helde be-fore hym in bothe hondes that he kutte the helue a-sonder faste by the hede, and yet was it bounde witħ Iren; the stroke was grete and rudely smyten, and discended vpon the corner of his shelde, that he slitte it to the bokiƚƚ, and witħ the plukkynge of his swerde a-gein to hym he made the kynge Rion for to stomble, that was sory for his brasen malle that he hadde so loste, and than he leide honde to his swerde, that was oon of the beste of the worlde, ffor, as the booke seitħ, it was som tyme Hercules, that ledde Iason in-to the Ile of Colchos, for to fecche the flees of goolde, and witħ

Arthur bears him and his horse to the ground, but he is soon on foot again.

Arthur falls to the ground.

Rion is heavier than Arthur.

Arthur grips Calibourne.

which gives out a great light,

and strikes Rion with a great stroke.

Rion stumbles and loses his mallet.

He draws his sword, which for some time belonged to Hercules, and was forged by Vulcan.

It passed from heir to heir till it came to Rion.

that swerde dide hercules sle many a Geaunte in that londe, where Iason ledde Medea that so moche hym loved, but after he hir failled, where as hercules hir dide helpe by his grete debonertee, and the booke seitħ that Vlcan I-forged that swerde in the tyme of Adrastus, the kynge of Greece, that many a day hadde in his tresour. This same swerde hadde Tideus, the sone of the Duke of Calcedoyne, that day that he dide the message to Ethiocles for Polemyte, and in his comynge homwarde witħ the same swerde he slowgħ fifty at an hiƚƚ, and after wente this swerde fro hande to hande and from heir to heir, that now hatħ it the kynge Rion, that com of the lynage of hercules, that was so noble and hardy.

*[Fol. 120*a*.]

It seems like a flame of fire. Its name is Marmyadoise.

Arthur covets this sword.

Rion tells Arthur that if he gives up his sword and arms he will let him go.

Arthur answers disdainfully,

and tells Rion to lay down his arms.

The giant laughs, and asks him his name.

*Whan the kynge Rion saugħ his malle smyten a-sonder, he drougħ this swerde that was of so grete bountee, and as soone as it was oute of the skawberke it caste so grete claretee that it semed a flame of fire; and the name of this swerde was Marmyadoise. And whan Arthur saugħ the swerde that so flambed he preised it moche in his herte, and drougħ hym a litiƚƚ vp hit to be-holde, and coueyted it rigħt sore, and thougħt that in goode hour*e* were he born that it mygħt conquere. And whan the kynge Rion saugħ hym stonde so stille, he with-stode and hym a-resoned, as ye shuƚƚ here. "Sir knygħt, quod he, "I wote neuer what thow art, but thow haste do grete hardynesse that me durste sue or chace a-lone witħ-oute companye, and for the prowesse that I se in the I shaƚƚ do the grete curtesie that I dide neuer to no man: yeve me that swerde and thyn armes, and telle me thy name, and after thow shalt go quyte, ffor I haue grete pite fer to sle the for that thow semest so yonge." Whan Arthur vndirstode the wordes of the kynge Rion he hadde ther-of grete dispite, and ansuerde hym felly, "How wenest to take me so lightly, that I sholde yelde me recreaunt for that thow art so grete and so stronge. But ley down that swerde and tho armes, and putte the in my mercy, to do witħ the my plesier outerly, for I the assure but the detħ." At these wordes lowgħ the Geaunte, and turned the heede in trauerse, and asked hym what he was, and what was his name, and co*n*iured hym by his creaunce to sey the trouthe. And Arthur seide he wolde telle hym by couenaunt that he wolde telle hym what he were, and he hym graunted. "Now knowe thow well," quod he, "that my name is Arthur, of Bretaigne, the sone of Vterpendragan, that am come to chalenge this reame that is myn̄ aƚƚ quyte, ffor the kynge leodogan̄ hath yove me hys doughter to my wif, and me haue don̄ homage alle the higħ barou*n*s of this reame, and also he hymself. Now telle me what thow art, and what is thy name, ffor I haue tolde the the trouthe of myn̄." Quod the Geaunte, "Seist thou trouthe that thow art Arthur, the sone of Vterpendragon̄, that slougħ Aungis be-fore the roche of saisnes." "Of the same speke I witħ-oute faile," quod Arthur. "I haue made couenaunt," quod the Geaunte, "that I shaƚƚ telle the myn name. I do the to wite that I am the kynge Rion̄, of Iselonde, and of alle the londes vn-to pastures, and yet ferther yef a man mygħt ferther passe; but oon̄ may neuer passe tiƚƚ that the lawes be broken̄ that Iudas makabeus ther sette, and as olde auncient seyn that thei̅ shaƚƚ neuer be hadde a-wey tiƚƚ the a-uentures be-gynne in the reame of logres of the seynt Graaƚƚ, and it be-hovetħ hym to caste to the portes of the goulf of Sathanye that it be neu*er* seyn after, ffor it is so of soche maner, that so it moste be fallen̄. Now I haue tolde the what I am. But I wiƚƚ neuer ete while I knowe the on lyve, ffor by the it is that I am *thus disconfited and chased from the felde, and ther-fore shaƚƚ I a-venge my dooƚƚ yef I may." "So helpe me god," quod Arthur, "than shalt thow longe be fastinge, ffor that shaƚƚ neuer falle that I shaƚƚ be deed thourgħ the; and lo! here my swerde that the deffietħ to the detħ, and yef thow be so hardy, take now the vengaunce of hym that the diffieth to smyte of thyn̄ heede." And whan the Geaunte herde Arthur thus speke, he was so wrotħ that nygħ he yede oute of his witte, and griped his shelde and com witħ his swerde in̄ his honde and lifte it higħ to smyte Arthur on the helme, but he caste the shelde ther a-gein̄ and lepte a-side in̄ the felde, and he smote so harde that a quarter fiƚƚ to the erthe, and Arthur stepped fortħ and yaf hym soche a stroke by the lifte yie and made hym a grete wounde, and yef the swerde hadde not swarued, maymed

Arthur tells him.

Rion tells who he is.

He says he will never eat while he knows Arthur lives.

*[Fol. 120*b*.]

Arthur defies him.

The giant is very wroth, and lifts his sword to smite Arthur, who leaps aside.

Arthur gives him a great wound,

and the giant runs upon him, but he leaps aside.

Nascien, Adragains, and Hervy, who are chasing six sarazins, come upon them.

When Rion sees them he is afraid.

and leaps on his horse. Arthur smites him hard,

but he turns to flight.

hadde he ben for euer. Whan the Geaunte felt hym wounded and saugħ the blode raile down by the lifte iye, he was nygħ wode oute of witte, and than he ran vpon hym, for he wende to take hym in his armes, but Arthur dide lepe a-side, for a-bide that wolde he not, and ther-witħ raugħt hym a grete stroke, and euer he hym pursued witħ swerde in honde, but atteyne hym mygħt he not. And while thei demened hem in this manere, fiƚƚ so that Nascien, and Adragains, and hervy de riveƚƚ com vpon hem, that chaced vj sarazins fuƚƚ fiercely, and alle vj were[1] kynges, and that oon hight Cahainus, and that other maltaillees, and the thirde ffernicans, and the fortħ heroars, and the v^{e} Brauremes, and the sexthe the stronge kynge Mahidrap. These vj kynges com down the rocher sore hem diffendinge, and the swyfte horse com dryuynge like a tempest. And whan the tweyne that foughten herde this noyse and brunt of hem that fledden, and be-helde and saugħ the vj kynges that the thre knyghtes chaced, the kynge Rion was sore a-dredde, for he knewe tho that ther com, ffor he wiste weƚƚ thei were noble and hardy, and yef he lenger ther a-bide he knewe weƚƚ that dye he moste. Than he com to his horse and lept vp lightly, and in the lepinge vp Arthur hym smote so harde that he kutte a-wey a quarter of his helme that the mailes of the hauberke a-pered aƚƚ white, and a-stoned hym sore that he bowed on his horse nekke, and yef he mygħt haue recovered a-nother stroke he hadde fallen of his horse to the erthe; but the horse was of grete force and a-ferde of the stroke, and turned to fligħt witħ the kynge down the roche.

Arthur leaps on his horse and chases him.

The six kings overtake Arthur.

Than Arthur lept vpon his horse delyuerly and priked after aƚƚ that he myght, and than the kynge Rion loked bakke and saugħ Arthur that dide hym enchace sore that wolde not hym leve, and hasted hym faste towarde the foreste, and the vj kynges, that the thre knyghtes so chaced, com so faste fleynge that thei ouer-toke the kynge Arthur that kepte the Geaunte so shorte, that he hadde caste his shelde to cover his hede, for soore he dredde the goode swerde of Arthur; and while Arthur entended

---

[1] The word "were" is repeated in the MS.

*to the Geaunte, Kehenyns hym a-scride, and seide, "Turne the, in eueƚƚ tyme haste thow hym pursued, for I wiƚƚ hym chalenge. In sory tyme haste thow lefte thy felowes." Whan Arthur herde hym so lowde hym a-scrye, he returned wiħ his swerde in his honde, and ther while the kynge Rion fledde in-to the foreste. And Arthur com to kehenyns, and he agein hym that nothinge hym ne douted, and smote to-geder wiħ swerdes fuƚƚ harde vpon helmes. And kehenyns smote Arthur vpon the helme that he made hym stoupe vpon his horse nekke, and Arthur smote so hym agein, that of his helme he kutte a quarter, the stroke was grete, and descended be-twene the shelde and the shuldre and kutte of his lifte arme wiħ aƚƚ the shelde; and Kehenyns ran vpon hym to enbrace hym in the tother arme, for he was of grete strengthe Whan Arthur saugħ hym come he smote hym wiħ his swerde be-twene the honde and the elbowe, that the honde fiƚƚ of wiħ the swerde; and whan he saugħ hym-self so maymed, he cried and brayed as a bole, and the horse hym bar what wey he wolde. And whan the tother v saugħ that kehenyns was so araide, hem for-thoughte it sore, and ronne vpon Arthur, and he hym couered wiħ his shelde, as he that daigned not hem for to fle. And thei smote at hym vp and down, where thei wende hym moste a-peire, and thei to-hewe his shelde in many places, but thei hurte of hym no flessħ. And he smote so ffernycans, that he slitte hym to the teħ, and than he smote to heroars vpon the shelde that he fiƚƚ to grounde; and than com the thre knyghtes, Nascien, and Adrageins, and hervy; and than the thre kynges turned to flight after the steppes of the horse of kynge Rion where as thei hadde seyn hym go, and these after that so wolde hem leven. But now speke we of the kynge Ban that chaced thre kynges.

*[Fol. 121a.]

Kehenyns calls to him to return.

Arthur returns, and Rion flies into the forest.

Arthur and Kehenyns smite together.

Arthur cuts off Kehenyns' left arm,

and then smites off the other hand.

The other five run upon Arthur,

and hew his shield in many places.

He slits Ffernycans to the teeth and fells Heroars.

Nascien, Adrageins, and Hervy come, and the three kings turn to flight.

We return to Ban,

So longe enchaced the kynge Ban after the thre kynges that he ouer-toke hem in a launde of a foreste, where thei stode stifly, for ther thei ouertoke x of her felowes, that ronne vpon the kynge Ban as soone as thei hym saugħ, and he smote so the firste that he mette, that he clefte the heede in two peces, and than he smote a-nother that the shulder disseuered from the body, and than thridde that the heede fiƚƚ in-to the felde, and thei hym

who overtakes the three kings, who are succoured by ten of their fellows.

Ban does marvels.

smyten vpon the helme and the shelde, but thei touched of hym no flesshe, ffor the hauberke was of grete strenghthe, and as thei thus foughten com Pignoras, and Sonygrex, and Gaisdon, and magoras that the kynge Boors hadde enchaced full harde, and hem kepte so straite, that thei hadde no leyser hem to returne; and so haue thei fledde till thei fill vpon hem that the kynge Ban delyuered grete bataile; and than thei turned the heedes of theire horse towarde hym that hem pursuwed, and he smote a-monge hem with so grete force that he bar down Pignoras, bothe hym and his horse, on oon hepe; and than he smote to Sinagrex so harde that he clef hym to the brayn, and he fill deed. And than be-helde the kynge Boors, and saugh his brother that faught *a-gein x knyghtes, and he spored his horse so sore that he bar a Sarazin to grounde hym and his horse, and than he smote a-nother with his swerde that he fill deed, and the thre kynges that he hadde chaced ronne vpon hym, and smote hym vpon the helme be-hynde, that he stouped on his horse nekke, but to arise was it no tyme, but he turned his horse hede a-gein hem, with his swerde in his hande, and ther be-gan the two bretheren a sore medle and crewell a-gein the xiij that hem assailleden, but more thei hem damaged than thei dide hem; but longe hadde thei not ben ther, whan the kynge Rion com thider with swerde drawen, sore hurte and euell affraide, and sore bledynge of two woundes, that oon on the heede and that other on the lifte side in the flanke, and whan he saugh the bataile of xiij knyghtes a-gein tweyne, he dressed hym that wey with his swerde, for fayn wolde he a-venge his anoye, and he smote at hem so fiercely, that he made hem remeve the place fro ther thei stoden, and by his comynge was the kynge Boors born to grounde, and his horse vpon his body; and than he lifte vp his swerde for to smyte the kynge Ban vpon the helme, but he couered hym with his shelde and smote the horse with the spores to eschewe the stroke, and he slytte the shelde as fer as that he raught, and the kynge Ban sente hym a stroke with corsheuse, his goode swerde, and he caste his shelde ther a-geins, and the kynge Ban clefte it thourgh-oute, and the gige also, wherby it henge by his nekke, and it fill in two

Pignoras, Sonygrex, Gaisdon, and Magoras come.

Pignoras is borne down

and Sinagrex killed.

*[Fol. 121b.]

Boors does great deeds.

But the two brethren could not long abide against the thirteen.

Rion comes with his sword drawn.

Boors is borne to the ground.

Ban strikes Rion with his sword Corsheuse.

partes to the erthe. And on that othir side, as soone as the Sarazins saugħ the kynge Boors fallen, thei ronne vpon hym, and yaf hym grete strokes at the erthe, and hurte hym in dyuerse places; and the horse, that was myghty and stronge, lay vpon his lifte thigħ, and hilde hym so straite to the erthe, that a-rise mygħt he not; and whan the kynge Ban saugħ his brother in soche pereile, he praide god hym to saue fro mysauenture, for of hym hadde he grete drede. Than he spored his horse that wey and smote the kynge Magoras, so that the heede fiƚƚ to grounde, and after he smote a-nother so felly, that the chyne yede a-sonder, and than he a-bode vpon his brother that moche hym peyned to arise. And as thei thus foughten Com fleynge maltaillyet, and balfinne, and the kynge Mahidrap fuƚƚ faste, ffor ther com thre knyghtes that hem chaced witħ grete spede, wher-of that on was the kynge Arthur, and that other Nascien, and Adragayns li bruns, the brother of Madagot, the goode knygħt of the blake yle tournoye, that Gawein, the nevew of kynge Arthur, after toke at Estremors, whan that he kepte in prison his cosin Galashin, that day that he wolde hym haue hanged vpon the walles of the town, in despite of kynge Arthur, be-fore his owne iyen, ffor that he hadde sege be-fore town that he wolde haue take be strengtħ, and for that the kynge hadde slain oon of his nevewes at a poynt, that hadde be by-fore the town, as this boke shaƚƚ teƚƚ yow more clerly here-after, whan the mater cometħ ther-to. The fourthe felowe that com *after witħ these thre knyghtes was hervy de riveƚƚ, the banerer of the rounde table, and as soone as these thre com ther as the kynge Rion faugħt hym-self, x a-gein a sooƚƚ knygħt, thei dressed hem to the presse and greved hem aƚƚ that thei mygħt. And the kynge Boors hadde so drawen and pulled as he that was of grete strengthe, that he a-roos witħ grete peyne, and saugħ his brother in grete toyle that vigerousely hym diffended, and than he smote maltailliet that he disseuered the shulder from the side and he fiƚƚ deed to the erthe, and he hente the horse that was of grete bounte and lept in-to the sadiƚƚ, and a-noon rode in-to the presse, and smote so sore the kynge Rion vpon the helme, that he slitte it in two part*es*, and he hym

The sarazins run upon Boors and hurt him.

Ban prays God to save his brother.

and kills Magoras.

Maltaillyet, Balfinne, and Mahadrip come flying, pursued by Arthur, Nascien, and Adragayns li bruns,

*[Fol. 122*a*.]

and Hervy de Rivell.

Boors rises with great trouble.

He kills Maltailliet, and leaps on to his horse.

He smites Rion.

Mahidrap, Balfinnes, Gloriex, and Mandones are killed.

Rion is very wroth, and runs upon Arthur.

Arthur slits the giant's shield.

Rion loses his sword and catches Arthur by the shoulders.

paide a-gein̄ so grete a stroke that his shelde clef a-sonder, and ther be-gan̄ a medle be-twene hem two fuƚƚ feƚƚ and creweƚƚ; and the tother foure that were come to socour the kynge Ban̄ smote on̄ hem so rudely that ecħ bar oon̄ deed to the erthe aƚƚ blody. Ther was slayin mahidrap, and balfinnes, and Gloriex, and mandones, where-fore the kynge Rion̄ was fuƚƚ wrotħ, for thei̇ were his nygħ kyn̄. And whan̄ kynge Rion̄ saugħ this myschaunce turne vpon̄ hym so grete, he was so wrotħ that nygħ he was oute of his witte, and he helde his swerde naked and ran vpon̄ Arthur and wende to smyte hym on̄ the heede, but he glenched a-side, for sore he dredde the stroke of the Geaunte, and he smote so harde in̄ the shelde that he slitte it in̄-to the myddeƚƚ, and whan̄ that he wende to pulle a-gein̄ his swerde the kynge Arthur smote hym on̄ the arme that sore he hym hurte, and he lefte the swerde stykinge in the shelde, that sore felt hym hurte, and was wode for wratħ, and Arthur caste down̄ the shelde witħ the swerde, for it dide hym but gref. And whan̄ the Geaunte saugħ that he hadde so loste his swerde he was fuƚƚ of grete sorowe, and ran̄ vpon̄ Arthur witħ his horse and caugħt hym by the shuldres, and wolde haue hym born̄ witħ force, and so he sholde haue don̄ yef he hadde leiser, for he was of grete strengthe.

Arthur casts the sword to the ground.

Ban goes to succour him,

and smites Rion with Corsheuse.

*[Fol. 122b.]

Whan̄ Arthur felte the Geaunte that so hym helde he caste the swerde to the erthe, for he was ferde leste he sholde haue taken it from hym by force, and than̄ clippid his horse in bothe his armes a-boute the nekke; and the Geaunte pulled and drougħ, but he mygħt hym not a-race from the sadeƚƚ. And the kynge Ban̄ he-helde and saugħ the strif*e* be-twene the Geaunte and Arthur, and a-noon̄ spored his horse that wey, for he hadde of hym grete drede; and the Geaunte saugħ hym come, he lefte Arthur, for sore he douted the kynge Ban̄, and ran̄ vpon̄ hym witħ his handes that were grete and square; and the kynge Ban̄ hym smote witħ corsheuse, his goode swerde, that he rente his hauberke be-twene his sholderes and wounde hym rigħt depe; and whan̄ the kynge Rion̄ felt hym so sore wounded, and saugħ his felowes ly at erthe deed bledynge, he hadde grete drede, *ffor he hadde nothinge hym to diffende, and turned the horse, that was of grete bounte, and wente fleynge as faste as he mygħt renne. And thei lete hym passe, for it was nygħt; and he wente so wrotħ that for litiƚƚ he hadde gon oute of witte; and he cursed his feitħ and his creaunce, and seide he wolde neuer cesse in aƚƚ his age tiƚƚ that he were a-venged, and as soone as he com in-to his contre he wolde sende for his grete hoste so that no londe sholde a-gein hym endure tiƚƚ he hadde confounded aƚƚ Bretaigne and aƚƚ the peple ther-ynne, and take the kynge Arthur and his helpers, and do hem be flayn aƚƚ quyk. Thus wente kynge Rion, makynge grete sorowe and weymentacion in-to his contrey.

Rion flies as fast as he can,

and says he will be avenged.

When the kynge Ban socoured the kynge Arthur from the kynge Rion, that so wolde a-born hym a-wey, he com to Arthur and asked hym yef he hadde eny harme. And he seide, "Nay." Than seide Ban, "Where is youre swerde?" And Arthur seide it was at erthe, "ffor I caste it down as soone as the shrewe com rennynge on me to gripe me in his armes; and I haue wonne the richest ieweƚƚ, and that I love more than the richest Citee that I haue." "What thinge is that?" seide the kynge Ban. "That shaƚƚ ye se a-noon," quod Arthur. Than he sette foot to grounde, and yede firste to Calibourne and putte it in the skaberke whan he hadde dried it clene, and than com to his shelde, where-ynne stake the swerde of kynge Rion, and he drougħ it oute and toke the shelde, and com to his horse and lepte vp, and than shewde the swerde to the kynge Ban, and it shone so brigħt that Arthur hadde ther-of grete ioye, and preide god sende hym som a-uenture ther he mygħt it assay and prove yef it were so grete of bounte as it hadde bewtee. And thei were ner the Citee than thei wende, but er thei com ther hem fiƚƚ soche a-uenture that ther was noon so wight ne hardy but he hadde I-nougħ to done. But now restetħ a liteƚƚ of hem, and speke of the kynge leodogan.

Ban asks Arthur if he has any harm.

Arthur says he has won a jewel,

which is the sword of Rion.

Arthur is very joyful.

The tale returns to speak of Leodogan,

When the kynge leodogan saugh that the Geauntes were so discounfited, he chaced hem fuƚƚ vigerously tiƚƚ it was derke nygħt; and he and his men slougħ many. Than fiƚƚ it that the kynge leodogan and Cleodalis his stiwarde departed from theire peple, for the foreste was derke, that no man that thei

who chases the giants till it is dark.

Leodogan and Cleodalis are separated from their people in the dark.

The knights of the round table will not return.

Leodogan and Cleodalis chase Ydras and the others far from their people,

and are attacked fiercely by the Saxons.

*[Fol. 123*a*.]

Leodogan's horse is slain. Cleodalis sets him on his horse.

Leodogan sighs.

The tale returns to Guyomar and Synados.

hadden wiste not where thei were be-come; and whan the kynges men saugh it was so derke nyght they be-gonne to returne; but the knyghtes of the rounde table wolde not returne, ne the felowes of kynge Arthur, but chace the Geauntes full harde, and many of hem thei slowen; and the storye seith that the kynge leodogan and Cleodalis chaced so faste Ydras and Atalas lamnachour and Caulus and Dorilas, these were fer from her peple in the forest; and whan thei hadde longe fledde, thei ouer-toke xij^{Ml} of her companye at were sory and wroth for theire losse and damage, and whan these foure saugh the socour, thei cried, "Now at hem," and whan these be-helden and saugh thei were but tweyne that chaced foure kynges, *thei ronne vpon hem full fiercely, and thei drough hem to two okes that were grete and full of leves, and ther-to thei sette here bakkes. Ther was the kynge leodogan at erthe and hys horse slayn vndir hym; and whan Cleodalis saugh hym on foote he alight and sette the kinge on his horse, and bad hym gon hys wey and he wolde a-bide ther. And whan the kynge saugh the trouthe of his stiwarde, he be-gan to sighen full sore vndir his helme and repente in his herte of that he hadde hym sore forfeted, and thought in his herte that this bounte wolde he hym quyte yef he scape a-lyve, and alwey thei hem deffenden a-gein her enmyes that hem assailed full harde, but the Oke hem socoured sore that was at theire bakke. But a-while resteth of hem and speketh of Guyomar and Synados, that were cosins germain, that wele hadde don all the day in bataile.

Guyomar and Synados pursue the Sarazins,

who turn and assail them.

This Guyomar and Synados pursude so the sarazins thourgh the foreste, that thei loste alle her peple, that thei cowde of hem neyther here ne seen, and hadden so chaced xij Geauntes full harde, and the xij hadde longe fledde, till thei mette l. of theire felowes that wente sore affraide, and these ne wiste of hem nothinge till thei were euen fallen vpon hem, and than these com so sharply that ech of hem bar oon to grounde; and whan the sarazins saugh thei were but tweyne, thei drough theire swerdes and assailed hem right harde. And thei hem diffended full vigerously, ffor thei were full noble knyghtes and hardy; and a-noon ther com to hem a-nother knyght, that was cleped ydiers, and whan̄ he was come he knewe hem a-noon̄ and helped hem vigerously. But of hem also restetħ a-while the tale, and telletħ of the auenture that fiƚƚ to Antor, that hadde norisshed Arthur, and to kay the stiwarde, and Gifflet, and lucas the botiller, and to marengis, and Gorgain̄ his felowe, and to Blecys the blake, that was in theire companye, and to Blioberis, and Galescowde, and to lait hardy, and Colegreu*au*nt, and kehedin le bel: these xij chaced faste the sarazins, and many thei̅ slougħ, thourgħ the foreste.

Ydiers comes to them, and helps them.

The tale returns to Antor and the others,

So longe chaced these xij thourgħ the foreste, that was derke for shadowe of the bowes, and also of the nygħt, that sodeynly thei̅ fiƚƚ vpon̄ the kynge Ali patin̄, that hadde CC sarazins in his companye wele horsed, that were fuƚƚ angry for the damage of the kynge Rion̄, and for that thei̅ wiste not where thei̅ were be-come; and whan these xij hadde hem so sodeynly ouertaken̄, thei̅ rode in a-monge hem fercely, and thei̅ returned and be-gonne a bataile rigħt stronge, ffor these xij were fuƚƚ worthi̅ knyghtes and noble. Ther was stronge figħt and harde, that dured tiƚƚ mydnygħt was paste er thei̅ departed, and on̄ that other side the knyghtes of the rounde table were departed in̄ thre partees: in̄ that oon̄ part were xij, in̄ a-nother xx, and in̄ that other xxv; and witħ the kynge Arthur were thre, that ledde hym towarde Toraise, in̄ talmelide, and alle the tother weren̄ *returned whan̄ thei̅ hadde hem a-while conveyed. And whan̄ thei̅ come be-fore the Citee of Danablise, and eueriche ne fonde not his companye, thei̅ trowed that thei̅ were alle deed; and whan̄ the two kynges were not founden̄, the kynge Arthur ne the kynge leodogan̄, thei̅ made grete sorowe, and wende thei̅ hadde ben̄ alle deed; but yet thei̅ a-boode to heere som̄ tidinges, and logged hem in the medowes, and wolde not entre in-to the town̄, but wacched tiƚƚ it was day. Here levetħ now of hem̄ and speketħ of Merlin̄.

who fall upon Alipatin, who has 200 Sarazins in his company.

There is a hard battle between them.

The knights of the round table are divided into three parties.

*[Fol. 123*b*.]

They come before Danablaise, but will not enter, because they cannot find the two kings, Arthur nor Leodogan.

Now, whan̄ the Geauntes and the sarazins fledde oute of the feilde discou*n*fited and the chace was be-gonne, the booke seitħ that Merlin̄ sewed a companye that were weƚƚ x^{Ml}, tiƚƚ thei̅ fiƚƚ in̄-to a launde that was depe in̄ the foreste. This companye

Merlin follows a company of 10,000 Sarazins, led by Galad, into the forest, ledde the kynge Galad, that was lorde of the londe cleped Pastures, and as soone as theī were entred in̄-to this launde, Merlin̄ caste an enchauntement, that he made seme ther com rennynge so grete a water in her wey be-fore hem, that was so depe and brode and ther-to blakke, that com down̄ fro the sides of the mounteynes so rudely, that ther was noon̄ so hardy but he ther-of hadde drede; and whan̄ theī wolde haue turned a-gein̄, theī saugħ a-rise soche a storme and a wynde so grete, that theī wiste not whiche wey to turne, and a-boode stille aƚƚ nygħt in this maner wise, that thei wente nother bakke ne forewarde; and why Merlin̄ made this enchauntement hit is rigħt and reson̄ that the trouthe be declared whī was the cause.

and makes a storm arise by enchantment.

In the march of Tamelide and of Bredigan is the realm of king Amant, with whom Uterpendragon warred.

This was the trouthe, that in the marche of Tamelide and of Bredigan̄ west-warde towarde the londe of the kynge Rion̄ was a reame fuƚƚ riche, that the kynge Amant helde in̄ his baile. In this reame werred the kynge Vterpendragon̄ in̄ his lif-tyme longe, ffor that the kynge Amaunt wolde not be-come his liege man̄, and his londe was so stronge that litiƚƚ he hym douted; but Vterpendragon̄ greved hym sore witħ his werre, and conquered vpon̄ hym a Casteƚƚ that was stronge and riche, and was clepede Carroie. This Casteƚƚ hadde in fee v^c knyghtes, that eche yere thre monethes oughten̄ ther to warde, whiche seison̄ of the yere that the lorde wolde hem somowne, and the lordship lasted xx myle on̄ euery side. This Casteƚƚ yaf Vterpendragon̄ to the kynge Boors of Gannes in his lyve to hym and to his heires aƚƚ the lordship, and as soone as the kynge Bohors hadde it in his baille, he yaf it to Guynebant, his brother, that was a goode clerke and a wise, and at armes wigħt and hardy yef nede were, and therfore was the kynge Amaunt angry; and whan̄ he herde that the kynge Rion̄ was entred in̄-to the londe of kynge leodogan̄, and on̄ that other side in̄-to Bretaigne were entred the Saisnes, the kynge Amaunt be-thougħt hym that he mygħt come neuer in̄ better poynt to conquere his Casteƚƚ that he so longe hadde loste, and sente after peple and assembled *vij^{Ml}, and rode forħ tiƚƚ he com̄ in̄-to the launde ther as was the kynge Galad, and hys peple that were x^{Ml}, that a-bode ther for drede of the grete water that

The castle of Carroie,

which Uterpendragon gave to Boors, who gave it to Guynebant.

When Amaunt hears that Rion is in Leodogan's land, he thinks to conquer back the castle.

*[Fol. 124*a*.]

He rides forth,

Merlin made to apere. The friday erly in the witsonwike, that was a feire morownynge and a softe, and yet was not the water ne the enchauntement lefte, the sarazins lepte to horse and rode forth her wey, but thei hadde but litill wey riden, whan thei mette the kynge Amaunt, that rode towarde the Castell of Carroye with all his hoste. Whan the kynge Galad saugh the kynge Amaunt he ran vpon hym, for he wende that it hadde be the peple of kynge leodogan that hadde hem pursued; and thei were well horsed on bothe partyes, and smyten to-geder fiercely, and be-gan a grete bataille and fell, for ther were many goode knyghtes and sure, and the bataile be-twene hem dured all the day. But more of hem speketh not the booke at this tyme, but returneth to kynge Arthur and kynge leodogan, and his felowes Nascien, and Adragain, and hervy de rivell.

and meets the Sarazins.

There is a great battle between them.

The book returns to Arthur.

Whan Arthur hadde take vp the swerde that was lefte in his shelde and hadde shewed to his felowes thei were gladde, for moche thei hym preised and comended, and than thei toke theire wey towarde Danablaise. And whan thei wende haue ben in the streight lane, thei wente oute of her weye, for thei fonde on the lifte side an olde wey that was moche and grene, and grete shadowe of grete wode full of leves, as in the moneth of may, and a litill was it derke, for the mone was not vp, that was at fulle thre dayes be-fore; and whan thei hadde gon a-while, thei herkened and herde grete noyse of strokes in the foreste of a bataile, and thei drough that wey as the lane hem ledde, and as thei com nygh, thei vndirstode the voise of theire peple that yet were fightinge with the Geauntes, that thei hadde chaced in the foreste. Than thei drough towarde the noise that thei herde, and lefte her wey and gan ride faste, and the mone was risinge, and as thei com nygh thei saugh a grete bataile of thre knyghtes, that full harde foughten agein l. sarazins. And whan thei com so nygh that thei myght hem kenne, Arthur knewe it was Guyomar and ydier, but of Synados wiste noon of hem what he was, saf that thai saugh he was wight and hardy; and hem preised moche the vij felowes, that com nygh to the bataile, and lete renne theire horse so faste, that thei made hem alle to fremysshe, and leide on

When he had taken up the sword and shown it to his fellows they go towards Danablaise.

When they come into the forest they hear a noise of battle.

They find it is their people fighting with the giants.

Arthur knows Guyomar and Ydier.

He does well with Marmyadoise.

The knights slay all the giants but five, who fly.

*[Fol. 124b.]

They chase them.

Ban speaks to Bohors.

Arthur says he desires to try his sword.

grete strokes on bothe sides, and many thei sloughen and some caste to grounde wounded sore, and Arthur assaied right well his swerde Marmyadoise, that he conquered of the kynge Rion, ffor the storie witnesseth that he his owne body slough of hem x. And whan the thre knyghtes saugh that thei hadde so riche socour, thei yaf hem a fressh assaute, and eche of hem thre bar oon to the grounde, and in short tyme thei hurlled hem so, thei and the thre knyghtes *that were come hem to socour, that thei haue alle slain saf v, that turned to flight down the wode, and thei after that were full talentif hem to sle, yef thei myght hem take; but litill while hadde thei chaced these v, whan thei herde medlinge, and harde strokes vpon sheldes, and vpon helmes, that all the wode ther-of resounded. Than spake the kynge Ban to the kynge Bohors, and seide that all nyght be-houeth hem to disporte in bateillinge, and the kynge Arthur seide, "That pleseth me well till that I haue well assaide my goode swerde."

Ban asks if he has not done so.

The knights laugh, and say he will be a noble knight if he lives.

They see one hundred Sarazins fighting against twelve knights, four on foot and eight on horseback.

Those on foot are Antor, Gosnain, Gales, and Blioberis.

Arthur is angry when he sees Antor on foot, and rushes into the press.

"How, sir," quod the kynge Ban, "haue ye not yet well it proved and assaied at thys firste enuaie?" "No," quod Arthur, "for thei were to fewe peple, and on that othir side ye and other so hem so arayed that I myght it not assaye at my volunte." Than at this wordes loughen alle the knyghtes, ffor well hadde thei seyen his prowesse that he hadde don, and seide that he sholde be a noble knyght yef he myght live to age. And as thei spake thus, thei approched the bataile that was grete and felenouse, and than thei saugh C sarazins that fought a-gein xij knyghtes, where-of foure of hem were on foote, and viij on horse, that right well hem deffended, and thei that were on foote deffended hem right well and stronglich, and than thei knewe well, that thei were of her companye, that com with hem to Tamelide alle xij. And the foure that were on foote, that oon was Antor, and that other Gosnain, and the thridde Gales, and the fourthe Blioberis, and the fifte ly lais þe hardy, that was smyten down in sight of hem alle, but vigerously thei hem deffended. And whan Arthur saugh Antor on foote hit nedeth not to aske, yef he ther-fore were angry, for he shewed it well in grete haste, ffor he priked in-to the presse with swerde redy drawen, and smote so the firste that he mette that he slitte hym to the girdiƚƚ, and after the secunde that the hede fiƚƚ to grounde, and than the thirde, and after the fourthe, and be-gan soche assaute a-monge hem that down wente aƚƚ that he witħ his swerde raugħt. And than he preised weƚƚ the goode swerde that was the kynge Rion, and seide that Calibourne ne a-vailed but litiƚƚ a-gein this goode swerde, ffor it wrougħt weƚƚ at his talent. And also his felowes smote in a-monge hem, that eche of hem slougħ oon at her comynge in; and whan these saugħ thei hadde soche socour, thei be-gonne newe a-gein the bataile merveilous. Ther was the stronge stour and sore bataile, ffor noble and hardy were the knyghtes that were come to the socour, and by theire prowesses were the fyve knyghtes horsed that were on foote, and than thei yaf hem a sharpe shour that thei were disconfited and chaced oute of the place, and haue hem so araied, that ther ne scaped but xiiij that alle ne were slayn and maymed. And whan thei hadde hem a-while enchased, than thei returned a-gein fuƚƚ gladde and ioyfuƚƚ of the a-uenture that god hadde hem sente.[1]

He smites down all before him.

He praises Rion's sword

His fellows smite in, and eachone kills his man.

The five knights are horsed.

Only fourteen of the Sarazins escape.

*Whan Arthur and his felowes hadde holpen and delyuered the xij knyghtes, as ye haue herde, and thei were returned a-gein, hit fiƚƚ that thei mette Merlin witħ the Dragon in his hande that com hem a-geins, and as soone as he saugħ hem comynge he gan to whowpe, "A here, Arthur, ride faste and haste yow a litiƚƚ more and alle youre companye, ffor ye knowe not the grete damage that is towarde, but god helpe, ffor the kynge leodogan and Cleodalis the stiwarde fighten a-gein moo than vij^{M1} Geauntes and sarazins, and thei be now smyten down of theire horse, and shuƚƚ a-noon be loste but ye hem socour. Now come on faste after me, for I go." And whan thei herde what Merlin seide thei smote theire horse witħ spores, and the dragon that Merlin bar yaf oute of his throte soche ligħt that thei mygħt weƚƚ se alle here felowes thougħ it hadde be the derkeste nygħt in aƚƚ the yere, and thei rode so faste be-fore and after, that thei come to tweyne Okes wher vndir the two knyghtes foughten fuƚƚ

*[Fol. 125*a*.]

As Arthur and the fellows return, they meet Merlin with the dragon, who cries out to them to hasten to Leodogan and Cleodalis, who require succour,

and then spurs his horse. The dragon gives out a great light.

Merlin and the others come to

---

[1] At the end of this paragraph in the MS. are the following words—"sente withe swerde redy drawne," added in a later hand.

where the two knights are fighting. When they come, they find Leodogan fallen to the earth.

sore, as thei that hadde I-nough of herte and of valour and force. But sore were thei oppressed, ffor bothe were thein on foote, and ofte fiƚƚ thei on knees. When Merlin and the other companye come to the medle that so hadden dured of the two knyghtes, tho was the kynge leodogan fallen to the erthe, ffor he was so wery for trauaile of strokes that he hadde yoven and receyved, that he myght no longere sustene, for aƚƚ day hadde the kynge endured traueile of strokes, and ther-to hadde he no myst*er*, ffor he was of grete age.

The giants see him in this plight, and spur their horses to take or kill him, but Cleodalis defends him. The king at last rises, and asks Cleodalis to forgive him. When Cleodalis sees his lord so meek he weeps, *[Fol. 125*b*.] and a great giant bears him to the ground.

Whan the Geauntes saugh the kynge leodogan so wery that he myght no lenger sustene on his feet for the traueile that he hadde aƚƚ the day endured in the bataile, so that he lay at the erthe, and ther was no man that hadde seyn hym in that plite but he wolde haue hadde pite. Whan the kynge was fallen, the Geauntes spored theire horse that wey who that myght sonneste that noon a-bode other, ffor thei wende a-noon hym to take or to sle at hir wille; but Cleodalis strode ouer hym with his swerde in his hande that so weƚƚ hym diffended that noon was so hardy to sette on hym hande; and thei hym assailed fuƚƚ harde, and launched at hym speres and swerdes, and perced his hauberke in many places, and wounded hym fuƚƚ sore; but for noon hurte ne wounde that thei hym made wolde he not forsake his lorde. And at laste the kynge a-roos, and gan to helpe Cleodalis with aƚƚ his power, for he hadde ben a noble knyght in his yowthe, and he hadde grete pite of hys stiward Cleodalis, that so a-bandoned his body for the diffence of hym; and than he seide a pitouse worde, "Ha! Cleodalis," quod he, "I crye the mercy of the trespace that I haue don a-gein the, ffor I se weƚƚ I am come to myn ende;" and ther-with he fiƚƚ on kne to the grounde be-fore hym, and toke his swerde wepinge as he that to hym hadde forfeited, and praied to hym take of hym that was right. And whan he saugh his lorde so meke a-gein hym, and that he putte hym in *his mercy, he wept tendirly and reised the kynge be the hande and claymed hym quyte of alle trespaces; and while he lifte vp the kynge a grete Geaunte smote Cleodalis with a swerde vpon the helme that he bar hym down to the grounde, and than the kynge hym diffended sore and merveillously well from them that wolde hym haue take; and thei hym assailed harde and hurte hym that he gretly a-peired, but soone thei made hym to falle down by Cleodalis; and whan Cleodalis saugh hym down he lept vp on foote as lifly as he hadde noon harme ne dissese, and yet was he full dispitously wounded.

The king defends him till he is smitten down.

Cleodalis leaps on foot.

Thus diffended the ton the tother whan thei fellen; and whan Cleodalis was so mate that he myght no lenger helpe, than diffended the kynge, and whan the kynge was so feinte that he myght no lenger, he cried and seide to the stiward, "Ha! Cleodalis, feire frende, diffende youre body, for I may no lenger." And he lept vp, and bad hym be sure and haue no drede while that he myght lyve. Thus contened these two goode men a-boute mydnyght, and than com Merlin prikinge and his companye; and a-noon Merlin cried to his felowes, "Now let se who is a knyght; here may ye prove youre hardynesse and youre prowesse, and be not dismayed though thei be many, for ye shull haue socour of a partye of youre felowes." Than thei smyte in a-monge hem with so grete raundon as horse myght renne, and slough and maymed grete plente, but soone were thei at grete myschef, but yet thei smote hem so in her comynge In, that thei be come to the worthi men vnder the Oke, that yet foughten as well as thei myght, but moche was a-peired theire strengthe and her breth. Than were thei harde rescowed and sette on horse who it grucched, and than were thei xxv knyghtes full noble men and well helpinge, and many thei kilde and maymed. But whan Isdras and Acalas and Colocallus saugh the grete damage that so small peple hem dide, thei helde ther-of grete dispite, and than thei cried vpon here men, "Now, gentill knyghtes, at hem; haue ye not shame that so fewe peple so lenge agein vs endure that yet we be vij^{Ml} fightinge men, and thei ne be but oon handefull of peple? Now lete vs a-venge the damage that thei haue vs don to oure frendes." Whan the sarazins vndirstoden this thei ronne vpon hem and harde thei hem assailed; and than thei hem diffended right wele, and gretly were thei to a-lowe and to preise. Ther dide Arthur merveilles, and the kynge Ban and the kynge Bohors and Nas-

The king and Cleodalis defend each other

till midnight, when Merlin and his company come to them,

and smite in and slay great numbers.

They rescue the two worthy men and set them on horseback.

Isdras, Acalas, and Colocallus cry out to their men,

who run upon their enemies.

Arthur, Ban, Bohors, and Nascien do marvels.

cien; these foure were paraunt a-bove alle the tother, ffor these dide soche prowesse wiħ her owne bodyes that it was wonder; and the other xxj diden weƚƚ also the ton for the tother that merveile was it to wite how thei myght so moche suffer or endure. And whan Merlin hadde brouġħt hem in medle, he lefte hem and rode in-to the foreste, and mette wiħ other xij knyghtes and brouġħt hem to the bataile; *and than be-helde Nascien and Adragains, and sauġħ thei were of her felowes of the rounde table. Than be-gan the stour fuƚƚ merveillouse; and Merlin rode a-gein in-to the foreste where hym liked, and the xxxvij knyghtes a-bode stille a grete while, that moche prowesse dide of armes; and a litiƚƚ a-fore day Merlin com a-gein wiħ xx knyghtes in his companye; and thei smote in-to the medle a-noon as thei were come, ffor weƚƚ thei were a-raied of armes and of horse, but weƚƚ it shewed by theire armes that thei hadde not alwey leyen at reste.

Merlinbrings twelve more knights to the battle.

*[Fol. 126a.]

He then bringsthirty-seven knights,

and again comes with twenty knights, whose arms show they had not been at rest.

Whan thei come to the bataile her felowes were at grete myschef, and thei ronne amonge hem wiħ swerdes drawen and slouġħ and caste down in her comynge aƚƚ that thei rauġħt, and thei sauġħ this that were come firste how thei were of the rounde table. Than com that oon a-gein the tother, ffor thei were fuƚƚ noble and hardy, and Merlin was a-monge hem, that bar the dragon; and than he com to Arthur and to the kynge Ban and to the kynge Bohors, and cleped hem to hym, and thei com. "Wiƚƚ ye wite," quod Merlin, "how these shuƚƚ be discounfited?" And thei seide that thei wolde fayn knowe in what manere. Quod Merlin, "Ther ben but foure in this place that hem holde to-geder." "And whiche ben thei?" quod kynge Ban. "Sue me," quod Merlin, "and I shaƚƚ hem yow shewen." Than Merlin smote in-to the presse so harde that he bar down wiħ his horse breste whom that he mette, and bar the dragon in his hande, that yaf so grete liġħt that oon myġħt weƚƚ se a-nother; and whan Merlin mette the thre kynges he shewde hem to the kynge Arthur and seide, "Now may ye assaye the gode swerde that ye haue conquered." And he be-heilde hym that he hadde desired gretly for to seen, and thouġħt wele that it were thei

The fellows see they are of the round table.

Merlin asks Arthur, Ban, and Bohors if they know how the Sarazinsmaybe conquered.

He leads them to where the three kings are.

that Merlin hadde spoken of; but neuer so soone myghħ he not come, er Nascien mette wiħ the kynge Colocaullus and smote hym wiħ his swerde vpon the helme that he slitte his heede to the teħ, and he fiƚƚ down deed. "Now let se," quod Merlin, "what ye wiƚƚ do, for now is ther oon lesse." And Arthur, that hilde the goode swerde drawen, smote the kynge ysdras, that he made the heede falle to grounde; and the kynge Ban smote Acolas, that the shulder disseuered from the body so depe that the longes apered; and the kynge Bohors smote Dodrilas an Amyraƚƚ thourgħ the helme to the brayn. And whan the other felowes saugħ how these foure hadde don so weƚƚ, than thei yaf hem a fressħ assaut, that ther was noon but he made a sarazin falle to grounde, owther deed or wounded. And whan the Geauntes saugħ hem deed that were lordes and her gouernours, and the grete damage that these hem diden, thei seide that a grete fole were he that wolde suffre to be slain; and than thei turned to flighħ thourgħ the foreste that noon ne a-bode other. And thei wolde hem haue enchaced, *but Merlin seide, "Nay, recche not hem nothinge yow to chace, ffor soone shuƚƚ thei mete wiħ folke that shaƚƚ do hem I-nougħ of sorowe and care." And than thei gan to repeire a softe paas tiƚƚ thei come to the issu of the foreste, and than gan it to shewe day, whan thei com to the tentes ther the cristin were logged, and the wacche hem knewe and com hem a-geins and made of hem grete ioye, ffor weƚƚ thei wende that alle hadde ben deed; and a-noon was the tidinges knowe thourgħ the hoste that come was the kynge Arthur and his companye. And the kynge leodogan made appareile her mete grete plente, for thei hadde fasted longe, but first thei slept and rested; and whan thei weren vp and redy thei ete and dranke grete plente, ffor I-nougħ thei hadde wher-of, and also thei hadde it weƚƚ deserued; and whan the clothes and the bordes weren vp, thei dide geder aƚƚ the grete auoir that thei hadde conquered, and sette it aƚƚ on an hepe; and Arthur it departed be the counseile of Merlin, that the kynge leodogan wolde not medle ther-in, for nothinge neuer after he hadde yoven his doughter to kynge Arthur, and that he knewe hym and the tweyne noble kynges that wiħ hym weren, he wolde nothinge

Nascien kills Colocaullus.

Arthur kills Ysdras.

Ban smites Acolas.

Bohors smites Dodrilas.

The giants, when they see their lords slain, turn to flight.

*[Fol. 126b.]

Merlin will not let them be chased.

The day begins to dawn when Arthur and the others come to the tents of the Christians.

They rest themselves, and then eat and drink.

Arthur, by the counsel of Merlin, divides the great riches that they had taken.

He asks if there are any young bachelors who would go wherever he leads them.

Great numbers come to him.

He chooses 20,000,

who are to come to him if he sends for them.

hym entermete but hem to serue and honouren witħ aƚƚ his power. And whan Arthur hadde departed aƚƚ the auoir that nothinge was lefte, he lete enquere thourgħ the hoste yef ther were eny yonge bachelere, that wolde ougħt gete or wynne and go witħ hym ther as he wolde hem lede, and he wolde hem yeve so moche at theire repaire, that neuer after sholde thei be power. And than ther com so many of oon and other, that it was a wonder, ffor moche thei desired to be in his companye for the grete valour that was in hym euer more; and than thei swor and seiden that thei sholde hym neuer faile. And he witħ-hilde in-to a xx$^{ti\ Ml}$, and moo he mygħt haue hadde yef he wolde, but he seide he wolde not lete the reame be vnstuffed of peple, but thei mygħt hem weƚƚ deffende yef eny enmyes entred in-to the londe; but thus moche he seide, that yef nede were and that he sente for hem, that thei sholde come to hym. And thei ansuerde, and seide thei wolde witħ goode wiƚƚ, were it neuer in-to so straunge londe thei wolde hym serue.

Arthur, Bohors, and Leodogan ride towards Toraise.

Bohors takes leave and rides to castle Charroye,

where they make great joy of him.

The tale returns to king Amaunt.

*[Fol. 127*a*.]

And than departed thei a-sonder, and the kynge Arthur, and the kynge Bohors, and the kynge leodogan, and the companye of the rounde table, rode fortħ to Toraise and the xx$^{ti\ Ml}$ sowdiours of Tamelide, and whan thei hadden riden a-while, the kynge Bohors toke leve and rode to the Casteƚƚ Charroye, and ledde witħ hym the xl felowes, that thei hadde brougħt in-to Tamelide, and as many knyghtes of that reame, that thei were weƚƚ v^{C}, and so thei spedde her iourneyes that thei com to the Casteƚƚ of Charroye witħ-oute eny encomber, and ther thei made of the kynge Bohors grete ioye, ffor longe hadde he not be ther be-fore, and ther he a-bode viij dayes fuƚƚ. But now restetħ the tale a-while of hym and of his felowes, and of the kynge Arthur and his companye, and returne to speke of the kynge Amaunt, *that faugħt witħ the kynge Galad.

The battle is great between Amaunt and Galad.

The 10,000 are discomfited.

Fuƚƚ grete was the bataile and the stour mortaƚƚ, ther as the kynge Amaunt and the kynge Galad weren I-mette, ffor the sarazins were x^{Ml}; but many ther were of goode knyghtes and hardy and yonge bachelers witħ the kynge Amaunt. And the bataile dured so aƚƚ day, that alle the x^{Ml} were disconfited ne hadde ben oon a-uenture, ffor the meyne of ysdras, that were weƚƚ v^{Ml}, that aƚƚ nyght hadde foughten with the kynge Arthur in the foreste, happed to falle to hem, and that was for hem gret myster, ffor the x^{Ml} were so beten and slain, that ther was lefte but v^{Ml}. Ther was stronge stour and mortaƚƚ, for thei were at grete myschef the peple of kynge Amaunt. But yet this helped hem wele, for the sarazins weren wery for trauaile, and that aƚƚ day be-fore hadde foughten in bataile, and waked aƚƚ nyght, and ther-fore thei were the more hevy and at mysese; but so fought thei on that oon part and on that other, that the kynge Galad turned to the flight aƚƚ disconfited, and ne ascaped past vij^{Ml} that alle ne were slain and hewen, and of the peple of kynge Amaunt ne lefte not right many. Ther hadde the kynge Amaunt grete losse of peple, and grete doeƚƚ made thei that were lefte a-lyve for her frendes. That nyght logged Amaunt and his men by a launde side in the wode, and were fuƚƚ mate and pensif for her kyn and frendes, that thei saugh ly in myddes of the launde, and made so grete sorowe, that of aƚƚ that nyght thei neither ete ne dranke.

The Sarazins were weary.

King Galad turns to flight.

King Amaunt has great loss.

He and his men lodge in the wood.

On the morowe were the bodies sought, and leide on a mounteyne, and made grete diches in the erthe, and caste in the corses, and while thei thus were at soiour, ther com tidinges how the kynge Bohors was come to the Casteƚƚ of Charroye for to se the place, for longe hadde not he ben there, and than the kynge Amaunt enquered how moche peple he hadde brought in his companye, and it was tolde hym, that thei myght weƚƚ be vj^{C}, and than he seide to his counseile, that he wolde not entre in-to the londe, for hym was lefte so smaƚƚ peple, but he wolde aspie to a-bide hym in some place on the wey, ffor thei ben but v^{C} and we ben yet vij^{C}, and yef thei come I hope to spede aƚƚ other-wise than and thei a-bide. Thus devised the kynge Amaunt his volunte where-of he myght wele have a-biden yef hym hadde liked; but many a man weneth to a-venge his shame that it doth encrece. But now cesseth a litiƚƚ while of the kynge Amaunt and of kynge Bohors tiƚƚ a-nothir tyme, and speke of the kynge Arthur and his companye, that gon towarde the town of Toraise.

On the morrow the corpses are cast into the ground.

Bohors comes to Charroye.

Amaunt inquires how much people he has with him.

It ceases to speak of Amaunt and Bohors.

Arthur and his company are received at Toraise with great honour.
Leodogan summons Arthur to espouse Gonnore.
*[Fol. 127*b*.]
Merlin says he must first pass into Benoyk,
and that he must go on the morrow.
They set out on their way.
Gonnore prays Arthur to come again soon.
Ban sends a messenger to Charroye.
The knights of the round table and 20,000 soldiers follow Arthur and Merlin.
Ban sends to Bohors to come to Bredigan.

Whan the kynge Arthur and his companye com to Toraise, then were richely resceyved witħ grete honour; and ther then soiourned two dayes, and the thridde day com the kynge leodogan to the kynge Arthur, and hym somowned to spousen his doughter Gonnore; and Merlin seide that he moste firste do a-nother grete werke; and the kynge asked what; *and Merlin seide that he moste firste passe in-to the reame of Benoyk, and tolde hym for what nede; but that was in counseile, for he wolde not haue the thinge knowen of no man that sholde go thider. And whan he herde the nede, he praide hym to repeire a-gein as sone as he myghŧ. And Merlin seide he neded not nothinge ther-of hym to prayen, and bad make hem redy, "for to-morowe moste we remove." Quod Arthur, "Shaƚƚ we not a-bide the kynge Bohors, that is at the Casteƚƚ of Charroye?" Quod Merlin, "Ye shuƚƚ a-byde hym at Bredigan, youre casteƚƚ." And Arthur seide that aƚƚ sholde be at his wille. Than then hem appareilleden, and on the morowe sette hem on here wey. And so departed the kynge leodogan and the kynge Arthur, and kisten at the departynge; and Gonnore hym praide soone to come a-gein, "ffor neuer," quod [she], "shaƚƚ I be in ese of herte vn-to the tyme that I yow se a-gein." And the kynge seide that he wolde he were come a-gein oute of the contrey. And the kynge Ban toke a messager, and sente to the Casteƚƚ of Charroye to the kynge Bohors his brother; and thus departeden oon from a-nother. And the kynge Arthur and Merlin wente be-fore, and the knyghtes of the rounde table, and the xx^{Ml} sowdiours that he hadde witħ-holden in that londe. And the kynge Ban sente to his brother Bohors to come to hym to Bredigan, ffor then were on the weye, and ther-fore he sholden hym haste as faste as he myghŧ; and so spedde the messangier that he com to the kinge Bohors, and tolde how his brother was in the weye after the hoste, that be-fore hym wente; and the kynge Bohors so dide also; and hym conueyed Guynebans his brother tiƚƚ he com in-to the foreste perilouse, that after was cleped the foreste saunz retour, as the booke shaƚƚ reherse hastely.

CHAPTER XXI.

ADVENTURES OF BAN AND GUYNEBANS; BOHORS' FIGHT WITH AMAUNT; MEETING OF THE CHILDREN WITH KING ARTHUR.

Whan̄ the kynge Ban̄ and Guynebans his brother were entred in̄-to the foreste, thei̅ ne were but lx in her companye, and fiƚƚ that thei entred in̄-to a grete higħ wey, and rode tiƚƚ thei̅ com depe in-to the foreste, and than̄ thei̅ fonde a-uenture fuƚƚ merveillouse, ffor thei̅ fonde a medowe that was closed a-boute witħ wode, and fonde witħ-ynne the feirest daunses of the worlde of ladies, and of maydenes, and knyghtes, the feireste that euer[1] hadde thei̅ seyn̄ in her lyve; and on̄ the tother side thei̅ sigħ a scaffolde, and in that scaffolde satte a knygħt that was of a l wynter age, and ther satte also the feirest lady of the worlde. And whan̄ the kynge saugħ the lady of so grete bewte, he ligħt on̄ foote, and Guynebans his brother, and alle the other wente fort to se it; and whan̄ she saugħ hem come, she roos a-geins hem̄ as she that was curteys and weƚƚ lerned, and voyded hir wymple, ffor weƚƚ she wiste thei come for to see; and hir salude the kynge that spake firste, and she salued hym a-gein̄ fuƚƚ debonerly, and than̄ thei̅ satte alle vpon̄ the fresshe herbes and grene, and behelden̄ the feeste and the ioye and the carols that *thei̅ saugħ before hem. And Guynebans be-helde the lady witħ goode chere, and so moche he his herte and his entente, that she satte so nygħ his herte that he thougħt on̄ no-thinge but vpon̄ hir. And than̄ seide the maiden̄, that goode fortune hadde that lady that soche ioye mygħt haue euer hir lif witħ-oute faillinge.

Ban and Guynebans enter the "foreste perilouse."

They see ladies and knights,

and a scaffold, in which sits a knight and a lady.

The king and Guynebans come to see her.

She salutes the king that spake first.

*[Fol. 128*a*.]

Guynebans can think of nothing but the lady.

Whan̄ Guynebans vndirstode that how the lady seide, he seide that she sholde it haue, yef the lettynge were not in hire; and she seide that in̄ [hir] sholde it neuer be letted. "Now I praye yow," quod she, "telle me how." "Certes," quod Guynebans, "yef ye wiƚƚ yeve me youre love, for alle dayes of youre lif, I shaƚƚ make the carole endure in̄ this manere, that alle men and wymen̄, that come this wey and se the carole thei̅ shuƚƚ a-bide

He tells her that if she will give him her love he will make the dances to endure.

---

[1] This word is spelt "eueuer" in the MS.

He asks her if she ever had a lord.

She says "Nay."

The old knight says he will set a chair for the knight who should be true in loving.

Ban says the knight shall have a rich crown.

Guynebans and the maiden make a covenant together.

Guynebans casts his enchantments, and establishes the dances.

Guynebans makes a chess-board.

The pawns and other men are of gold and ivory.

and make ioye, tiƚƚ that a knygħt come that neuer in his lyf falsed his love, and witħ that also he moste be the beste knygħt that shaƚƚ be in his tyme." And she seide that sholde she neuer see, but praide hym to holde that he hadde higħt. "Now telle me," quod Guynebans, "hadde ye euer[1] eny lorde?" And she seide, "Nay;" but that she was as clene mayden as whan she com oute of her moder wombe; "and also," quod she, "I am lady of the reame cleped the londe susteyne." Than seide Guynebans that he was redy to parforme the couenauntes;[2] and she graunted as for hir parte as she that was of grete bewte. And the olde knygħt seide that he sholde do sette ther a cheyer, that euer more sholde be redy for the knygħt in-to sitte, that sholde be so trewe in lovynge whan he were come. And the kynge Ban seide, sitħ it is come here-to that he sholde haue a riche crowne of his, witħ the whiche the knygħt sholde be crowned, for weƚƚ he hadde it deserued. Than assured to-geder Guynebans and the mayden for to holde couenauntes witħ goode herte and trewly while hir lif dured. In soche manere, seide she, that yef Guynebans deyed firste be-fore hir, that the carole sholde not lette tiƚƚ that he com, that neuer hadde be false in his lovynge. Than caste Guynebans his enchauntementes, and stablisshed the caroles like as ye haue herde, that neuer sholde cesse no tyme, tiƚƚ that he com, saf the rigħt hour of dyner and of soper, and the resonable houres to slepe and reste. And whan the carole was sette and stablisshed, than seide the mayden, that he sholde make yet a-nother pley that neuer mygħt faile, and that aƚƚ the worlde ther-of mygħt speke after his detħ. Than Guynebans hym-self made witħ his owne handes a Chekier of golde and Ivory half parted, ffor he was rigħt sotiƚƚ of soche crafte, as he wolde hym entirmete, and the pownes, and aƚƚ the other meyne were golde and yvory fresshly entailled.

When Guynebans has made the chess, he conjures

*[Fol. 128b.]

Whan Guynebans hadde made redy the Cheker and the chesse, that oon mygħt weƚƚ ther-witħ pleyen alle that wolden, he made soche a coniursion by his art, *that alle tho that were sette for to pleyen, ther ne sholde be noon, but that the chesse sholde hym maten, wheder he wolde or noon, in that oon of the corners of the cheker; ne neuer sholde the same cheker be mated, till the beste knyght of the worlde dide it mate, and also he moste be of soche grace, that neuer he falsed his love, and ther-to hym be-hoveth to be kynges sones and quenes. Thus as ye haue herde hath Guynebans stablisshed the carole and the Chekere, and aft*er* made he many a feire pley, and taught the mayden, wher-with she wrought many tymes, after that he was deed; and after made he the castell Tornoyier, and the karoles that Meranges fonde after at the Citee of Nameles, where as noon arraunt knyght sholde not cesse to karole, till that a certein knyght com thider. In soche manere were bothe karoles wrought, and whan Guynebans hadde made this thinges, departed the kynge Ban with all his companye, and than Guynebans hym conveyed on his wey, and soone after departed, and comaunded the kynge to god, and returned a-gein to his lady, and ther was after all his lif. And the kynge rode till he com to Bredigan, where the kynge Arthur was, and a-noon as Merlin saugh hym come, he lough right lowde, and the kynge Arthur asked whi he dide so laugh. And than he toke the kynge Arthur, and the kynge Ban be the handes, and drough hem a-part, and Merlin asked of the kynge Ban, and co*n*iured hym by the feith that he ought vn-to hym, whi it was that he lough. And Merlin seide it was for Guynebans. And than he tolde to Arthur of alle the pleyes and caroles that Gynebans hadde made for his love, and than lough Arthur, and seide to the kynge Ban that this mariage wolde he haue stole hadde no Merlin I-be. And thus thei laughed and iaped, and the kynge Ban asked of Merlin, yef he knewe what the knyght was, that sholde make the Carole to cesse, and Merlin seide that he was not yet nother gete ne born, and ther-fore ne enquereth no more ther-after, for ye shull wite more at leiser. Thus thei soiourned at Bredigan at ese and ioye, and a-boode for the kynge Bohors.

---

[1] This word is spelt "eueuer" in the MS.

[2] This word is spelt "comenauntes" in the MS.

so that none should check-mate except he who had never been false to his love.

He teaches the maiden,

and makes the castle Tornoyier, and the dances at the city of Nameles.

Ban departs, Guynebans goes with him, and returns to his lady.

Merlin laughs when he sees the king,

and tells Arthur of Guynebans.

Ban asks Merlin if he knows the knight who will make the dance to cease. Merlin says he is not yet born.

Whan the kynge Bohors hadde soiourned at the castell of Charroye viij days, the barou*n*s of the contrey made

The barons make joy of Bohors, who

departs on the ninth day for Bredigan.

When Amaunt hears of the departure of Bohors, he makes his people leap to horse and ride forth till they come to the "foreste perilouse."

*[Fol. 129*a*.]

When Bohors sees king Amaunt's people, he commands his people to arm hastily.

He sends for Amaunt.

Amaunt asks him to deliver up his castle.

Bohors says the castle belonged to Uterpendragon,

him grete ioye, and on the ixth day brouǧht hym on his weye ffragein the Castelein more than half a myle, and than departed that oon from the tother; and as soone as the kynge Bohors was departed fro the Casteƚƚ, the kynge amaunt hadde witinge by asspie, that tolde hym how he yede to Bredigan, where the kynge his brother and the kynge Arthur dide hym a-bide. Than the kynge Amaunt made his peple lepe to horse, and were of hem vij^{C} that were lefte of the bateile, and rode forthħ tiƚƚ thei come to the foreste perilouse at the entre towarde the Casteƚƚ of Charroye, ther as the kynge Bohors sholde come; and on that other side logged hym in tentes and pavilou*n*s withħ-ynne the foreste, that he were not parceyved tiƚƚ thei saughħ the kynge Bohors come; and on that other side the kynge Bohors com ridynge tiƚƚ he com ther as the kynge Amaunt was a-bidinge, that made his peple hem to arme. *Whan the kynge Bohors saughħ the pavilou*n*s, he asked what peple thei were; and oon seide that it was kynge Amau*n*t, that was com thider hym for to espie; and whan he vndirstode that, than he droughħ hym a litiƚƚ a-side by a river and comaunded hys men hem to arme hastely. Thus were bothe partes armed aƚƚ nyghħt, and on the morowe as soone as thei saughħ the day appere, bothe parties lepte to horse and rode eche a-gein other, and whan thei saughħ that thei sholde mete, the kynge Bohors sente to the kynge Amaunt for to come speke withħ hym sool by hym-self, and he com withħ goode wiƚƚ, ffor he was a goode knyghħt and a trewe; and as soone as thei were mette, than seide the kynge Amaunt, "Sir, this is sothħ that ye haue sente for me to speke withħ yow, and I am comen for to shewe how ye do me grete wronge of a casteƚƚ of myn that ye haue me be-rafte, and ther-fore I pray yow that my casteƚƚ be to me a-gein delyuered, be couenau*n*t that I shaƚƚ be youre frende for euer more er eny more debate ther-fore be made." "Sir," quod the kynge Bohors, "as touchinge the Casteƚƚ, I toke noon from yow, but he toke it to whom the fee be-longed, and that was Vterpendragon, of whos soule god haue pite, whos man ye owe for to be and yelde hym servise. But ye were so fuƚƚ of pride that ye deygned not to do hym seruise ne homage, and therfore he toke it fro yow, for ye wolde not be his man, and yaf it to me for to kepe, for many day I haue hym serued. And yet shaƚƚ I make to yow a feire plee: com wiħ me to Bredigan where the kynge Arthur me abideħ, and do hym homage, as the barou*ns* seyen that ye owe for to do, and I shaƚƚ yelde yow the casteƚƚ aƚƚ quyte." "Wiƚƚ ye noon othirwise do?" quod the kynge Amaunt. "Sir," seide the kynge Bohors, "no; for of yow I holde riħt nouħt, but be-come trewe liege man to the kynge Arthur, and I shaƚƚ yelde yow the casteƚƚ that I haue in my baillye." "That wiƚƚ I not do," quod the kynge Amaunt, "ffor neu*er* wiƚƚ I ben his man." "And seth ye wiƚƚ not leve my counseile, than I can no more sey." Than seide Amaunt, "Ye haue brouħt hider wiħ yow a fewe peple, and also I haue here a fewe of myne, and yef we fiħt to-geder it may not be wiħ-oute grete harme on bothe sides, but ther-fore lete vs do in other manere. Ye be here for the riħt of kynge Arthur that ye holde for lorde; now lete vs than fiħt to-geder body for body, by this couenaunt: that yef ye me conquere the Casteƚƚ to be youre quyte, and I to go wiħ yow to Bredigan and do homage to the kynge Arthur for aƚƚ my londe, I and alle my barou*ns*; and yef it be so that I yow conquere, yelde me the Casteƚƚ and go yowre-self quyte, for other thinge of yow wiƚƚ I not aske, and thus may ye eschewe alle periles and stintyn alle strives." "And yef oon of vs dye," quod the kynge Bohors, "what shaƚƚ come therof thanne?" Quod Amaunt, "Yef ye me sle, my men shuƚƚ go wiħ yow, and do homage to the kynge Arthur; and yef so be that ye be slain, the Casteƚƚ to be myn, and alle youre men to be quyte, and go what wey thei wiƚƚ, and yef thei wiƚƚ be-come my men, I *wiƚƚ riħt gladly hem receyve."

who gave it to him,

but if Amaunt will do homage to Arthur, Bohors will give up the castle.

Amaunt will not agree,

but proposes that they two should fight.

If Bohors conquers, Amaunt and his men will do homage to Arthur; if Bohors is conquered, he is to give up the castle.

*[Fol. 129*b*.]

Than thei assured to holde these covenauntes, and made alle hir men to be sworn to holde the same wiħ-oute faile. Than wente the two lordes in-to a faire launde, and thei were weƚƚ armed at alle poyntes, and eche of hem helde a grete spere wiħ hedes of sharpe grounde stieƚƚ, and bothe were thei moche knyghtes and stronge and of hiħ prowesse, but the kynge Bohors was somwhat the larger man of bones. And as soone as

They make all the men swear to keep the covenant.

Ulfin, Bretell, Kay, Gifflet, and Antor come to Bohors to dissuade him from fighting alone,

thein comn in-to the launde, Vlfinn com to hym, a Breteƚƚ, and Kay, and Gefflet, and Antor, and alle xl knyghtes of her companye, and seide, "Sir, what purpose ye to do? wiƚƚ ye fiġħt witħ this kynge body for body? Dotħ not so, but go we onn hem alle to-geder, for thein shuƚƚ not a-geinn vs endure, for haue ye no doute, thougħ thein be moo than we, thein shuƚƚ be disconfited. Neuer mote the kynge Arthur vs holde but we hem co[n]quere, and make hem alle come to youre mercy or thein shuƚƚ alle be deed; and onn the tother side, yef we suffre yow to fiġħt inn this manere, we shuƚƚ be blamed of youre brother, and of the kynge Arthur."

but he will not hear them.

"Holde youre pees," quod the kynge Bohors, "for sithe he hatħ me atised to bataile I wiƚƚ it neuer leve, for thann sholde I neuer haue honour*e*, and therfore speke no more ther-of, I praye yow for my love." And whann thein saugħ it wolde noonn othirwise be thein it suffred.

Gingabresell and Brandelis come to Amaunt to dissuade him from fighting alone.

Onn the tother side bitħ come to kynge Amaunt, Gingabreseƚƚ and his lorde Brandelis, and seidenn, "Sir, what is this that ye wiƚƚ do? so wise a man as ye be ougħt not soche thinge to vndir-take to put hym-self in a-uenture of detħ for covetise of londe, ne other auoir." Quod Amaunt, "God helpe me neuer yef I do euer other-wise, for owther I wiƚƚ aƚƚ gete or aƚƚ lese."

Geromelans proposes that they all shall fight.

"Now I shaƚƚ telle yow, thann," quod Geromelans, "what ye shuƚƚ do: take the bateile a-geinn the beste knyġħt*es* of theym yonder, and we shuƚƚ fiġħt witħ hem, and so may we be of yow more sure." "Neuer noonn other," quod the kynge Amaunt, "shuƚƚ fiġħt saf he and I, for so haue I hym ensured and he me." "Now wite ye weƚƚ, thann," quod Geromelans, "yef yow mys-happe, as god diffende, we wiƚƚ make hym noonn homage, ne the kynge Arthur, ne no mann that of yow eny londe dotħ holde." Whann the kynge Bohors vndirstode the contencionn of the kynge and his nevewes, he cleped Vlfinn and Geret de lambaƚƚ, and seide, "Go to the kynge Amaunte, and sey I sente hym to wite that I wolde he make no pleet, ne noyse to no mann of his companye, of that he hatħ me g*ra*unted, ffor yef it falle that I haue of hym the better, I wiƚƚ that alle his menn go quyte where so thein wiƚƚ." And thein wente and tolde to Ama*u*nt as the kynge Bohors hadde

Bohors sends to Amaunt to say that if he gets the better, Amaunt's men shall go free.

hem comaunded; and whan Amaunt herde this he comended hym moche. Than he com in-to the myddiƚƚ of the launde, where the kynge Bohors a-bode redy, and a-noon as the kynge Amaunt was comen, thei wiħ-drougħ a-side of bothe parties, and thei moved *a-noon as thei that thougħt longe it taried er the bataile were be-gonne. Thei leide theire speres be-fore theire brestes, and smote theire horse wiħ the spores, and mette vpon the sheldes and wiħ helmes, and hurteled so to-geder, that eche of hem was so a-stoned, that hem semed that the fire fiƚƚ oute of her iyen. And it fiƚƚ that the kynge Amaunt feƚƚ of his horse to grounde so astoyned, that he wiste not whether it was nygħt or day; and so he lay longe while at the erthe. And the kynge Bohors was also so sore astonyed of that harde encountre, that he lay longe while vpon the arson of his sadiƚƚ; but weƚƚ he kepte hym from fallinge, for he was of grette prowesse, and a-roos lightly and drougħ oute his swerde, that was of grete bounte, where-wiħ his sone Lyoneƚƚ afterwarde yaf many a grete stroke, as ye shuƚƚ heren her-after rehersed whan tyme comeħ.

Bohors and Amaunt meet.
Both sides withdraw.

*[Fol. 130*a*.]

Amaunt falls from his horse.

Bohors is stunned, but does not fall.

He draws out his sword,

As soone as the kynge Bohors hadde oute his swerde he smote faste a-boute hym, and wende to fynde the kynge Amaunt. Than he be-helde and saugħ he lay at the erthe vp-rigħt, and he helde the swerde in his honde aƚƚ naked, and griped his shelde, and come to hym that yet lay on the grene, and putte the poynte of his swerde on his shelde and be-gan to pouke hym, and cleped, "Rise vp, kynge Amaunt, for to longe haste thow slepte and the day passeth, and I haue moche for to ride, and ther-fore thow doste no curteysie to tary me so longe." After a longe while the kynge Amaunt com oute of swowne, and hadde herde the kynge Bohors clepe, and vndirstode what he seide, and preised hym moche in his herte for that he hadde so longe a-biden hym wiħ-oute smytinge, and that he was more curteyse and deboner than he wolde haue ben to hym yef he hadde ben in his power. Than he lepte vpon his feet lyghtly and drougħ oute his suerde oute of scauberke that was fuƚƚ fyn, and was a-shamed for that he hadde founde hym at erthe ligginge; he couered hym wiħ his shelde, and com to the kynge Bohors and caste at hym a stroke, and he

and goes to find Amaunt. who lies on the ground.

Amaunt comes out of his swoon.

and leaps up.

He strikes king Bohors and slits his shield.

Bohors slits the helm of Amaunt.

He calls to him to make peace with Arthur,

but Amaunt will not yield,

*[Fol. 130*b*.]

and smites Bohors.

Bohors kills Amaunt.

He is sorry.

Guygebresill, Brandelis, and Guyromelans, and 200 knights, will not go to Arthur. 300 knights say they will do homage to Arthur.

caste his shelde ther a-gein, and he smote so harde that he slitte it to the bokell; and the kynge Bohors yaf hym a-gein soche a stroke thourgh the helme that he slytte it in two partyes, that it fill down a-boute his sholderes that it toke a-wey his sight from his hede. Whan he felte hym-self so blynded he lepte bakke and cutte a-sonder the laces of his helme and caste it a-wey, and than couered hym with his shelde, for sore he douted his heede, whereon was no more but the coyfe of mayle. Whan the kynge Bohors saugh the kynge Amaunt that so hadde loste his helme, he cleped to hym and seide, "Kynge Amaunt, come make pees with the kynge Arthur, and do hym his homage, for grete damage it were yef thow sholdest here thus dye, ffor thow seiste how it is the be-fallen, and yet thou art of feire age, and me hevyeth sore the to sle." "But thow," quod the kynge Amaunt, "yelde the and putte the in my mercy. Trowest thou me so soone to haue conquered, for myn helme that I haue caste of, *that dide me but noye? Now deffende the, for I the diffye," and with that the kynge Amaunt ran on hym right wroth, and wende to smyte hym on the heede, but the kynge Bohors, that moche cowde of skirmerie, resceyved the stroke on his shelde, and he smote so harde that a gret q*ua*rter fill on the launde. Than launched oute the kynge Bohors a grete stroke, and made semblaunt to smyte ther as he wolde not, and Amaunt caste ther agein his shelde, and the kynge Bohors with-drough his stroke a-nother wey, and smote the kynge Amaunt on the heede, that he cleft hym down to the sholderes, and he fill deed to the erthe vp-right. Whan the kynge Bohors saugh the kynge Amaunt dye, he was right sory, and seide he hadde leuer haue take hym quyk, and that he sholde haue made his pees with the kynge Arthur. And whan Guygebresill, and Brandelis, and Guyromelans saugh the kynge Amaunt was deed, thei turned with CC knyghtes, and seide that neuer sholde thei love the kynge Arthur, ne no man that to hym belonged; and CCC be lefte, and seide thei wolde go with the kynge Bohors to the kynge Arthur, and do theire homage, ffor a better lorde than he myght thei noon haue.

Whan the kynge Amaunt was deed the kynge Bohors cleped hys companye, and seide that gladly wolde he ther make an hospitaƚƚ where-ynne a man myghte euer after serue oure lorde god for the soule of hym as longe as the worlde dured, and that oure lord*es* body myghte be sacred ther-ynne, and his seruyse seide and don, for the victorye that god hadde hym yoven. Ther was a clerke that many a day hadde hym serued, and he com be-fore the kynge and asked of hym this yefte, and seyde he wolde gladly a-bide there yef hym liked; and the kynge hym graunted, and yaf hym rentes, and lefte withe hym of his auoir grete plente for to make the hospitaƚƚ, and ther lefte the clerke in this manere, that was after a goode man and holy of lif. And whan the kynge Bohors hadde made entiere the kynge Amaunt, and by-sette the rentes to the clerke, he rode forthe tiƚƚ that thei com to Bredigan, where that he fonde the kynge Arthur, and the kynge Ban, his brother, and Merlin, that to hym made righte grete ioye. As soone as the kynge Bohors was a-lighte, he seide to the kynge Arthur, "Sir," quod he, "here be a party of the knyghtes of the kynge Amaunt, that bethe come to yow in my condite, and sey that thei wiƚƚ do homage and holde theire londes of yow, and thei be worthi men and riche and highe Barou*ns*, as I am do to vndirstonde, of the beste of that londe. Now, take theire homages, and hem resceyvethe as ye owe to do." And the kynge Arthur seide, "Thei be welcome, and wite thei righte weƚƚ, that neuer wiƚƚ I do to hem but weƚƚ while that thei wiƚƚ me love, ffor thei love me and I wiƚƚ love hem, and yef thei me hate I shaƚƚ hem haten." And these com forthe and dide hym homage a-bouten CCC; and whan thei hadde don theire homage the kynge Arthur asked hem tidinges of the kynge Amaunt, and what man he was in his contrey; and thei gonne to wepe sore, and seiden how he was deed.

Bohors says he will make an hospital.

A clerk says he would gladly abide there.

Bohors rides forth till he comes to Bredigan.

He introduces the knights of Amaunt to Arthur,

who welcomes them.

About three hundred do homage to Arthur.

*"How," quod Arthur, "sey ye trouthe that he is deed?" and thei seide, "Ye, withe-oute faile;" and than thei tolde aƚƚ the trouthe how the kynge Amaunt departed oute of his londe for to go to the Casteƚƚ of Charroye, and how thei wente be-fore in-to the wey, ther the kynge Bohors sholde come for to fighte withe hym, and how thei foughten body for body, and how

*[Fol. 131*a*.

They tell him of king Amaunt, and his fight with Bohors.

the kynge Amaunt was deed, and tolde hym all theire traueyle, that nothinge lefte thei vn-tolde that thei cowde on thenke. Whan the kynge Arthur and the kynge Ban herden of the prowesse that the kynge Bohors hadde don thei were gladde, and preised hym moche and comenden; and alle men seiden a-noon as thei it wisten, that neuer hadde thei herde of two so noble men as were the two bretheren, and seide well that yef thei two ne hadde not ben, the kynge Arthur hadde all loste. Thus thei soiourned at Bredigan thre dayes full, and than sente the kynge to enquere for workemen and labourers with mattokkes and shoveles till he hadde well v^{c}. Than thei wente to the tresour, as Merlin hem taught, in the foreste, and lete digge in the erthe and fonde the tresour that neuer er was seyn, and toke it oute of the erthe, and charged Cartes and Chariett*es* in tonnes, that thei hadde brought thider grete plente; and whan thei hadde all the tresour charged, thei made it to be condited to logres, where as Arthurs nevewes dide a-bide. And Merlin made hem digge depe vndir an Oke till thei fonde a vessell of lether, and ther-in xij the beste swerdes and the feirest that eny man nede to seche. These ledde the kynge Arthur to logres with his tresour, till that thei were come to Court, that thei sholde on be emploide. And as soone as the children herde speke that the kynge Arthur hir oncle was comynge, thei lepte on theire horse and rode agein hym alle to-geder, that noon ne lefte but wente alle gladde and myrie that neuer peple myght make more ioye. And whan thei com nygh, Merlin toke the kynge Arthur a-part and the two kynges, and made hem a-light vnder a feire tre, for to a-bide the children that com, and comaunded her hoste to ride all wey forth till that thei come to logres, and take theire logginges, and ese hem all by leiser. And whan thei herde the comaundement of the kynge thei passed forth with-oute more a-bidinge, and mette with the cheldren, that com with grete Chyuachie. And whan thei mette the routes, thei asked where was the kynge Arthur; and thei hem shewde the tre ther he was a-light; and the childeren hem dressed that wey that moche hem dide haste. And Gawein wente be-fore, that thei helde for maister and lorde, and

When Arthur and Ban hear of the prowess of Bohors they are glad.

They sojourn at Bredigan three days, and the king sends for workmen,

who find the treasure in the earth,

and take it to Logres.

They find a leather vessel, in which are twelve swords.

When the children hear that their uncle is coming, they ride to meet him.

Merlin makes the three kings alight. The host ride forth.

When the children meet them they ask where Arthur is.

Gawein goes before.

thei hadde rigħt, for he was the beste taugħt and the moste curteise that euer was, and in whom was lefte vilonye, and the wisiste that mygħt be whan he com to Chiualrie.

Whan thei com to the tree ther the kynge was a-ligħt, and these other two kynges witħ hym, and the knyghtes of the rounde table; and as soone as the children hem saugħ thei a-ligħt a-foote from theire horse and wente a-foote ther as these knyghtes were *sette vpon the fresshe herbes in the shadowe of the foreste; and hem a-venteed and keeled, for it hadde be hoote aƚƚ the day, and the hadde riden aƚƚ the day armed, for doute of the saisnes that were in the londe, and it was a-boute the ende of maye. Whan the knyghtes of the rounde table saugħ the children approche nygħ, that eche hadde take other hande in hande godely, and alle were thei weƚƚ clothed, and richely a-raied and fuƚƚ of grete bewte, and semed weƚƚ that thei were alle come of gode issue, and it be-com hem weƚƚ, that thei com so entreprised, and thei helde it a grete debonerte that thei helde to-geder so feire. And whan the knyghtes hem saugħ come, thei roos a-geins hem; and whan thei com nygħ Gawein hem salued, that was of the chief and the eldeste, and than he seide, "Feire lordinges, we seche the kynge Arthur, wherefore we praye yow that ye wiƚƚ vs shewen where he is, that we may hym knowen." At this worde ansuerde Nascien, and salued hym a-gein debonerly, and seide, "My feire sones, lo, hym yonde, ther tho noble men ben sette, and he is also the yongeste of alle," and shewde hym witħ his fynger. And whan Gawein hym saugħ he paste fortħ, and seide, "Sir, gramercy," and com that wey ther the kynge was and his felowes; and thei stode vpon foote, as soone as thei saugħ the children come.

The children alight.

*[Fol. 131*b*.]

When the knights of the round table see the children approach

they rise.

Gawein asks for Arthur,

and Nascien points to him.

Whan Gawein saugħ his oncle and his felowes, he and alle the children kneled down and salued the kynge and his companye, for hym and his felowes that were witħ hym I-comen. "Sir," quod Gawein, "I am come to yow, I and my brethern and my cosins, as to my liege lorde, and these other be come also for the goode that thei here speken of yow, and for to seche oure armes of yow, and that it plese yow for to make vs knygħtes,

When Gawein and his fellows see their uncle they kneel down.

Gawein speaks,

and offers their service to Arthur.

Arthur commands them all to rise,

*[Fol. 132*a*.]

and says he will make them knights.

The children kneel and thank him,

and shuƚƚ gladly yow serue, as we owe to do, yef oure seruise may yow plese, and I sey not but that thei haue yow serued, ffor so*m*me ther ben here that, while ye haue ben oute of contrey, haue deffended youre londe as wele as it hadde ben their owne a-gein alle youre enmyes, and have be in helpinge to alle hem that ye lefte it to kepe, and setħ thei come, haue thei suffred many a grete trauaile, and I wiƚƚ weƚƚ that ye it wite, for to a goode man ther sholde be reported honour and bounte whan he hatħ don, and of a shrewe owetħ oon consele, for he hatħ no herte it to guerdone, ner the iyen power a gode man to be-holde, ne to knowe the haluendeƚƚ of the bounte that in hym is." Whan the kynge vndirstode the childe that so wisely spake, he toke hym by the hand, and a-noon comaunded hem alle to a-rise; and thei did his comaundement. And than the kynge a-resond hem, and asked of Gawein what thei were. "Sir," seide Gawein, "er ye knowe more by vs wolde we wite youre volunte, and after that demaunde vs that yow plesitħ, and we shuƚƚ telle yow gladly that we knowen." Whan the two kynges herde the word*es* of the childe, thei helde hym rigħt wise, and seide to the kynge Arthur that he seide *rigħt. And than spake the kynge Arthur, and seide, "Ffeire frendes, I wiƚƚ witħ-holde yow witħ rigħt gladde chere, and wiƚƚ make yow knyghtes, bothe yow and youre companye of myn owne, and ye be rigħt welcome, and I wiƚƚ that fro hens-fortħ that ye be my frend*es* and my felowes and of my prive counseile and lord*es* of my court." And whan the childeren herde how the kynge spake, thei kneled and hym thonked; and the kynge toke hem by the hondes, and seide to Gawein, "Ffeire frende, now telle me what ye be, and of youre felowes telle me the verite, ffor longe me thinketħ it to wite."

Gawein tells who he is,

and his brothers.

"Sir," quod the childe, "men clepe me by my rigħt name, Gawein, the sone of kynge loot, of leoneys and of Orcanye, and these thre that I holde by the hondes betħ my brethern, and the name of that oon is Agrauayn, and the tother is Gaheret, and the thridde Gaheryes; and oure moder hatħ do vs to vndirstonde that she is youre suster on hir moder side; and thise gentilmen ben oure cosins germain, as oure auntes sones, and the name of the lesse, that is shorte and fatte, is Galashin, and is sone to kynge Ventre, and this other, that is longe and yonge, is sone to kynge Vrien, and his name is Ewein, and this Gentilman is his brother on his fader side, and is cleped also Ewein, and these tweyne other, that ye se holde to-geder, thei be gentilmen of higħ lynage, ffor this feire broun is sone to the kynge Belinans, of Southħ walis, and is nygħ cosin to Galashin; and these other tweyne be nevewes to the kynge of Strangore and ben nygħ sibbe to Galashin; and these other tweyne ben nevewes also to the kynge of Strangore, and the name of that oon is Kay destranx, and the tother Kehedin; and these other tweyne, that ther stonde to-geder, aperteyne to the kynge loot, my fader, and be Erles sones, and oon is cleped Ewein white hande, and the tother Ewein esclins, and the tother Ewein Cyueƚƚ, and the tother Ewein de lyoneƚƚ; and this other gentilman, that is of so grete bewte, that is so moche and semly and weƚƚ shapen of body and of alle membres, is nevew to the Emperour of Costantynnoble, and his name is Seigramor, and is come witħ vs be his debonerte and his fraunchise to take armes, and that ye hym make knygħt, and he wiƚƚ yow gladly serue witħ gode wiƚƚ, and wiƚƚ that he and I be felowes in armes while hym likethħ to a-bide in this contrey; and these other gentilmen that ye seen aboute vs where-of be so grete plente ben alle frendes and kynnesmen, and haue lefte her londes and hir honours for to come serue yow for the grete love that thei haue to yow."

His cousins Galashin and Ewein.

Kay Destranx. Kehedin.

The four Eweins.

Seigramor.

Whan the kynge Arthur hadde herde Gawein thus speke, he leide his arme a-boute his nekke, and seide, "He is rigħt weƚƚ-come," [and hym kiste?][1] and made of hem grete ioye, and than his brethern and his cosins, and to segramor he made merveilouse ioye; and whan he hadde welcomed hem alle, than he seide to Gawein, "Gawein, feire nevewe, com hider, and that I yow enffeffe ye wiƚƚ take the Constabilrie of myn housolde and of aƚƚ *the lordship of my londe after me, and fro hens-forthħ to be lorde and comaunder of alle hem that ben in my londe, for I wiƚƚ it so

Arthur puts his arm about Gawein's neck,

and welcomes them all.

He makes Gawein constable of his household.

*[Fol. 132*b*.]

---

[1] These three words are obliterated in the MS.

They leap to horse and ride to Logres.

Arthur's sisters come to meet him.

They come to the palace, that is hung with silk and strewn with herbs.

On the same night the king commanded the children to watch in the minster.

be.” And Gawein̄ kneled, and seide, “Sir, gramercy;” and the kynge hym feffed witħ his rigħt glove, and than̄ he reised hym vpon̄ his feet, and than̄ lept to theire horse, and rode fortħ to logres. And whan̄ the kynge entred in̄-to the Citee his suster com̄ a-gein̄ hym, the wif of kynge loot of Orcanye, and witħ hir com̄ Morgne le fee, hir suster, that was so grete a clergesse. And whan̄ the kynge hem knewe he made of hem grete ioye, for longe tyme hadde he not hem sein̄; and thei kissed as brother and suster. And thus thei come to the maister paleys, that was hanged witħ clothes of silke, and strowed witħ fressħ herbes softe and swote smellinge, and maden grete ioye thourgħ the town̄ aƚƚ day on̄ ende and aƚƚ nygħt, so that no man may reherse the ioye, and the gladnesse of aƚƚ the peple. The same nygħt the kynge comaunded the children̄ to go wake in̄ the cheiff mynster tiƚƚ on̄ the morowe be-fore messe, that no lenger he wolde a-bide. And the storie seitħ this was the quynsyme after Pentecoste; and ther was the kynge Ban̄, and the kynge Bohors, and lxj knyght*es* of the rounde table witħ these children̄ aƚƚ day, that hem in̄ no wise wolde leven̄.

Before high mass Arthur takes Calibourne, and girds Gawein with it.

Afterwards he dubs the three brethren, and the others, and gives them each a sword.

He dubs Seigramor, who brought his garments and sword from Constantinople.

Whan̄ it com be-fore the tyme of higħ messe, Arthur toke Calibourne, his gode swerde, that he drougħ oute of the ston̄, and by the counseile of Merlin̄, ther-witħ he girde Gawein̄ his nevewe, and than̄ he sette on̄ the spore on̄ the rigħt hele, and the kynge Ban̄ vpon̄ the lifte hele, and after that the kynge Arthur yaf hym the acolee, and bad god make hym a gode knygħt, and after he a-dubbed his thre brethern̄ also, and yaf eche of hem a suerde of tho that were founde in̄ the tresour that Merlin̄ taugħt; and than̄ the tweye sones of kynge Vrien̄, and than̄ Galashin̄, and Dodineƚƚ, and Kay, and Kehedin̄, and to eueriche of these he yaf a swerde of the tresour; and than̄ the kynge a-dubbe Seigramor, witħ soche garment*es* as he hadde brougħt from Costantynnoble, for he was come weƚƚ a-raide of alle thinges that be-hovetħ to a newe knygħt; and the kynge girde hym witħ a gode swerde, that he hadde brougħt out of Costantynnoble, that his graunsire the kynge Adrian̄ hadde hym yoven̄; and than̄ he sette on̄ his rigħt spore, and the kynge

Bohors his lifte spore, and than the kynge Arthur yaf hym the acolee; and than he dubbed the iiij cosins, Ewein White honde, and Ewein Esclyn, and Ewein Cyueƚƚ, and Ewein de lyoneƚƚ, and Alain and Acon, and to eċħ of these v he yaf a swerde of tho that were of the tresour; but the storie seitħ that Dodyneƚƚ hadde noon, but he hadde the swerde that was the kynges Amaunt, and the kynge Bohors hym it yaf, for that he was somdeƚƚ of hys kyn.

He dubs the four cousins.

Bohors gives Dodynell a sword.

When these children were thus a-dubbed, than eche of hem a-dubbed soche companye as thei wolde lede of soche as thei hadde broughħt witħ hem; and whan thei were alle redy thei wente to highħ messe, that the archebisshop sange, and whan masse was don thei com *a-gein to the paleise to mete, and ther helde Arthur grete court and grete feste, and it neditħ not to speke of the meesse ne the seruise that thei hadde that day, for it were but losse of tyme; and after mete wolde these yonge bachelers haue reised a quyntayn in the medowes, but the kynge hem diffended by the counseile of Merlin, for that the contrey was so trouble and fuƚƚ of werre, and the cristin sore turmented witħ saisnes that were entred in the londe. Thus lefte the enuysenx of these yonge bachillers and newe knyghħtes at this tyme, and soiourned in the town iij dayes. And the kynge departed grete richesse to yonge bachelers that he witħ-heilde, that of alle parties were come grete plentee, ffor ther com so many of oon and other that thei were lx^{Ml} what on horsebak and on foote, witħ-oute hem that he hadde broughħt out of the reame of Tamelide. And in the mene-while that thei soiourned in the town, Morgne le fee a-queynted hir witħ Merlin, and was witħ hym so prive, and so moche she was witħ hym that she knewe what he was, and many merveilles he hir taughħt of astronomye and of egramauncye, and she helde it righħt wele. And on the thridde day spake Merlin to the kyngė, and badde hym appareile for to move, ffor Pounces and Antony and ffrolle ben entred now in-to the reame of Benoyk, and also the peple of the kynge of Gaule, and also Claudas the kynge de la desert. And Arthur seide he was redy to go whan hym lyked, for he a-bode but his comaundement.

When the children are dubbed, each dubs his company.

They go to high mass.

*[Fol 133*a*.]

Arthur holds great court.

They remain in the town three days. The king divides great riches to the young bachelors.

Morgne le fee goes with Merlin,

who teaches her many marvels.

Merlin bids the king move, because Pounces and Antony and Ffrolle have entered the realms, Than seide Merlin, "Comaunde alle youre hoste to be redy armed for to move at mydnyght, and take with yow of this londe xx^{Ml}, and xx^{Ml} of the reame of Tamelide, and xx^{Ml} ye shuƚƚ leve in this town, ffor this reame may not be lefte withoute peple, and lete Doo of Cardoeƚƚ of hem haue the gouernaunce;" and thus ended her counseile. And than the kynge comaunded Gawein as Merlin hadde seide, and a-noon Gawein dide his comaundement, and made hem redy appareilled; and hem departed and disseuered a-sonder, and hem he logged in the medowes of logres alle that sholde with hem go. And whan he hadde do thus he com to the kynge and to Merlin, that he saugh in counseile to-geder, and seide how aƚƚ was redy. And whan Merlin hym saugh, he bad the kynge aske hym what was the knyght that ledde hym to socour his moder in the medow of glocedon. And he hym turned and seide, "Sir, how knowe ye this, and who hath this to yow I-tolde?" "Certes," quod the kynge, "he that tolde me knoweth alle these thinges weƚƚ I-nough." "So helpe me god, sir," seide Gawein, "I knowe not what he was, for I saugh hym neuer be-fore ne after." "Now," quod Merlin, "aske hym yef he knewe hym that brought hym the letter from his cosin Ewein, the sone of kynge Vrien." And whan Gawein saugh and be-helde hym that satte by the kynge, he asked whi he made the kynge hym so demaunde; and than he be-thought hym a-gein wisely, and remembred the wordes that Doo of Cardoeƚƚ hadde to hym seide. And the kynge asked yef he hym kenned. And he seide, "Nay; but oon dide me for to vndirstonde that it was Merlin, but trewly I knowe hym not; and many other bou*n*tees *and seruyses hath he me don, ffor Seigramor, the emperour*es* nevew, he made me delyuer from pereile of deth, and my moder, and my cosin Ewein, and also oure-self at the casteƚƚ of Arondeƚƚ, and he is the man of the worlde that I wolde faynest knowe this day." "Ye shuƚƚ knowe hym I-nough," quod Merlin, "whan hym liketh." Than be-gan the kynge to laugh right lowde, and seide, "Gawein, feire nevew, sitte down here by me, and I shaƚƚ telle yow that I knowe." And he sette hym down be the kynge, and ther were no mo but thei thre.

and command all the host to be ready to move at midnight.

Doo is to remain in the town with 20,000.

The king commands Gawein to go.

Gawein comes to Arthur and Merlin.

Merlin tells the king to ask him who led him to succour his mother,

and who brought him the letter from Ewein.

Gawein remembers the words of Doo;

and says that he was told that it was Merlin,

*[Fol. 133*b*.]

whom he wants to know.

Arthur laughs loud.

Than seide the kynge to Gawein, "Feire nevew, lo, here the gode man by whom ye wente to the Casteƚƚ of Arondeƚƚ, where that ye foughħ wiħ the saisnes that day that Dodyneƚƚ the sauage and Kay destranx and his neveu com oute of her contrey; and ther-fore now thonke hym of the servises that he haħ yow don, and weƚƚ ye owe so to do, and to love hym for his gode herte that he haħ to yow."

and tells him who Merlin is.

"Sir," seide Gawein, "I can not I-nowgħ hym quyte as he is of worthynesse, but thus moche I sey, that I am aƚƚ his and at his comaundement, and he is so wise that knowe I weƚƚ that he knoweħ aƚƚ my corage that I haue to hym." And he seide, "Ye," that he knewe weƚƚ his herte, and that he wolde wiħ hym ben a-queynted and be oon of his privees; but he bad hym that he sholde not telle no creature of nothinge that he seide to hym were he neuer so pryve ne frendly; "and ye shuƚƚ se me," quod he, "in so many gises that I wiƚƚ not be knowe of no man, ffor moche is the enuye for covetyse in this worlde." And Gawein seide that neuer wolde he speke ther-of to no creature of the erthe. Thus was Merlin and sir Gawein a-queynted be-fore his Oncle; and whan thei hadde longe spoke to-geder, than seide Merlin, "Feire frende, go take youre leve of youre moder, and than goiħ to the hoste, and make youre peple go to horse-bak a-noon after mydnyghħ, and than goiħ forħ youre wey towarde Dover to the portes, and do appareille vesselles and assemble shippes at the ryvage, so that youre vncle, whan he comeħ and the two kynges in his companye, that beħ worthy men, may enter wiħ-oute lenger lettinge; and, for god*es* sake, loke ye do hem worship and honour, ffor thougħ thei be the kynge Arthurs men, yet ben thei comen of higher lynage than is he; and loke ye lete no man knowe what wey that ye shuƚƚ go." And Gawein seide it sholde be don as he hadde devised. Than departed Gawein, and toke leve of his moder, that was righħ wise a[nd] moche hym loved, and comaunded hym to god to diffende hym from euyƚƚ. And he departed and com to the hoste, he and his brethern, and sir Ewein, his cosin, that moche hym loved, and Galashin, and Dodineƚƚ, and Seigramor, and Ewein a-voutres, and the foure

Gawein says he is at his commandment.

Merlin says he shall be acquainted with him, but he must tell no creature what he sees.

Gawein says he will not speak.

Merlin tells him to take leave of his mother,

and then go to Dover and assemble ships.

He is to give honour to the two kings.

Gawein departs, and takes leave of his mother.

The names of those who go with him.

All are under the command of Gawein.

*[Fol. 134*a*.]

They come to Dover.

Arthur, Merlin, Ban, and Bohors remain at Logres.

Gawein assembles a navy.

When Merlin knows all is ready he sends to the king for him to depart.

Merlin goes to Northumberland.

Blase is sorry when he hears of the damsel that Merlin loves.

Blase writes all in the book.

cosins that alle were cleped Ewein, and Kay destranx, and Kehedin, his nevew, these ne departed gladly a-sonder; these hadde the hoste in gouernaunce, as sir Gawein hem assigned, so that alle were at the comaundement of my lorde sir Gawein. And a-noon aft*er* mydnygħt Gawein made trusse som*m*ers and other cariage, and made goode wacche a-boute the hoste, *that ther ne ascaped noon aspie; and thei hit kepten that the booke hatħ rehersed, and than thei rode fortħ a softe paas tiƚƚ thei com to the port of Dover. And the kynge Arthur a-bode at logres, and Merlin, and the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and the xlj knyghtes that thei ledde in-to Tamelide, and the knyghtes of the rounde table. And sir Gawein made serche aƚƚ the ryvages, and take shippes and assembled a grete navie. And whan Merlin knewe that aƚƚ was redy, he sente to the kynge, and made hym move be nygħt, and seide er thei moved, that thei sholde a-ryve at the Rocheƚƚ, and badde hem do make her men rowe hem vp thider, "and whan ye bitħ a-rived, loke that ye move not tiƚƚ that ye se me a-gein." Quod the kinge, "Shuƚƚ ye not than come witħ vs?" "No," quod Merlin, "but ye shuƚƚ ly ther but oon nygħt, whan ye shuƚƚ se me witħ yow." Witħ that departed that oon from that other, and M*er*lin wente in-to Northumbirlonde to Blase, his maister, that of hym was rigħt gladde, for hertely he hym loved, and asked hym how he hadde don setħ he departed; and he hym tolde alle the thinges as thei were be-fallen, and Blase hem wrote in his booke; and whan Merlin com to that he be-hoved to telle of the dameseƚƚ that he loved paramours; and Blase was ther-of rigħt hevy, for he douted she wolde hym disseyve and that she sholde lese his grete witte, and he gan hym to chastise; and he hym tolde soche p*ro*phesies as were for to come, and of other that sholde falle in other londes, as ye shuƚƚ here her-after, and alle Blase wrote in his boke; but now returne we to speke of the kynge Arthur.

Merlin.

PART III.

36

HERTFORD:
Printed by Stephen Austin.

The Romance of Merlin.

CHAPTER XXII.

BATTLE BEFORE THE CASTLE OF TREBES.

Now seith the storye, that the firste day of Iuyn departed the kynge Arthur from Logres, and in that mery seson rode Arthur forth, and the two kynges with hym, till thei come to Dover, and entred in to the shippes with-oute more tariynge, and hadde goode wynde and softe, and goode maroners hem for to gide, till thei come to the Rochell with-oute eny trouble or an*n*oye, and logged hem in tentes and pavelou*n*s with-oute the towon, and abode Merlyn, and he com on the morowe at mydday as he hadde promysed the kynge Arthur, and the thre kynges made to hym grete ioye, and namely Gawein that hym loved so well, and Merlin loved hym for the grete trouthe that he knewe in hym, and ther thei soiourned, and rested and maden goode waicche on the weyes and passages, that noon wente ne com that eny tidinges myght brynge to theire enmyes. But now resteth a while of hem, and returne to speke of Leonce, the lorde Paerne, and Pharyen of Trebes that were so goode men and trewe to theire lorde.

Arthur leaves Logres; he comes to Dover,

and to the Rochell.

Merlin comes to the three kings;

he loves Gawein.

The story returns to Leonce and Pharyen.

Whan Merlin was departed from Leonce of Paerne, and hadde tolde hym that Pounce and Antony and her companye com with xx$^{\mathrm{Ml}}$ men of armes, and ffrolle a Duke of Almayne with xx$^{\mathrm{Ml}}$, Leonces sente for peple fer and nygh of kyn and frendes and sowdiours, till he hadde x$^{\mathrm{Ml}}$ of the reame of Benoyk of horsmen with-outen fote-men with whiche he stuffed *his forteresses, and Pharien on that other side com oute of the reame of Gannes with x$^{\mathrm{Ml}}$ horsmen, with-outen the peple on foote whiche he lefte to kepe the Citees and Castelles, and brought vitcles on alle parteis in to stronge townes, and closed the prayes from theire enmyes that nought myght thei wynne on forreye, and whan thei hadde

When Leonce knows that Pounce and Antony are coming he sends for his people.

*[Fol. 134*b*.]

Pharien comes out of Gannes.

Pharien at Gannes and Leonce at Benoyk.

Claudas de la Desert is sorry;

the scouts run through the land, but find little;

they agree to set siege to the Castle of Trebes.

Pounce Antony, Frolle, and Claudas are in the meadows;

the castle is besieged on four sides:

the queen Helayne and her sister dread being taken by treason.

Grascien comforts them.

spedde so all theire ordenaunce, Pharien drough hym to Gannes with all his hoste, and Leonces in to Benoyk with all his hoste, and a-bide so in this maner*e* till tydinges com to hem, that her enmyes were entred into the londe that sette on fire ouer all ther as thei myght eny harme do; but litill thei founde in the contrey to take to, ffor all was turned from theire power into stronke fortresses, and therfore Claudas de la desert was full of sorowe and hevynesse, for well he supposed ther-by that thei hadde some warnynge in some manere of her comynge. But yet ther-fore ne lefte not the forreyours to renne thourgh the londe, but litill cowde thei fynde, and whan thei hadde ronne vp and dowon thei repeired agein to the grete hoste, and than toke counseile what thei sholde do, and than thei a-corded to sette seige be-fore the castell of Trebes, and thider thei rode and loigged hem in the medowes ther-by, but it was fer of, ffor the castell stode on an high hill, and at the foote of the castell was the maras, depe on alle sides, and ther-to was noon entre saf a litill cawchie that was narowe and straite of half a myle of lengthe. In these medowes loigged hem Pounces and Antonyes on that oon side, and on that othir side ffrolle the Duke of Almayne, and on that othir side Claudas de la deserte, and on the fourth parte the peple of the kynge of Gaule; that Randolf, the stiwarde of Gaule, dide condite, whiche was a bolde knyght and an hardy, and eche of these hadde xx^{Ml} men at his baner. Thus was the castell of Trebes beseged on foure parties, and kepte so cloos that noon myght entre ne come oute, but that he were a-noon taken and well thei wende to take the castell be famyn, ffor of noon assaute hadde thei no drede, for noon myght come ther-to for the maras that was so nygh, and thus thei be-seged longe the quene Helayne and hir suster that were with-ynne, and hadde grete drede leste thei sholde haue be taken be some maner treson; and many tymes thei wepten for theire lordes, that so longe hadde ben from hem and thei hadde herde of hem no tidinges. And Grascien hem counforted wele and badde hem be nothinge dismayed, ffor withynne shorte tyme thei sholde have socour*e*, and seide he dide but a-wayte vpon the hour that theire tweye lordes were comynge.

In this maner dide Grascien hem counforte, and his son Banyns, to a-voide the hevynesse of the two quenes.

This Banyn was a bolde squyer and hardy, and nygh cosin to Leonce the lorde of Paerne, that was cosin to the two kynges, and whan he knewe that the Castell was be-seged, he sente to Antyaume the stiwarde, that he sholde come speke with hym. And he come a-noon in all haste, and than Leonce badde hym appareile his men, ffor this nyght, quod *he, be-hoveth vs to ride, and ye and youre peple shull a-bide me in the foreste of briogne at the welle in the myddell of the launde, and loke ye demene yow so, that noon knowe what wey we shull ride, and sette soche warde a-boute the hoste, that noon departe to telle eny tidinges to oure enmyes, and he seide this sholde be do so that in hym sholde be no defaute. With that departed Antyaume the stiwarde, and dide as Leonce hadde hym comaunded. And Leonce toke his nevew and sente hym to Gannes to Pharien and badde hym come in to the foreste of Briogne, in to the place that was assigned in soche as he knewe was myster; and this spedde hym so that he dide his message well and feire. And whan Pharien that Leonce was meved on his wey, he arraied hym hastely and garnyyshed the town with soche peple as he saugh was nede, and rode forth be the moste vn-cowthe weyes that he knewe, and hadde in his companye well x$^{\mathrm{Ml}}$, and also Leonce rode forth, he and Antyaume, till thei com into a grete valey, all closed with wode, in the foreste of Briogne, as Merlin hadde hym assigned. And the hoste was so well kepte that noon issed oute; and ther thei a-bode till that Pharien com with his peple; and ther thei dide a-bide till on the monday be-fore the feste of seynt John, that moste be on the sonday next after. And whan Merlin knewe that thei were redy, and that thei abode but the socour that he hadde hem promysed. Then he it seide to the kynge Arthur, and to kynge Ban, and to his broþer, and to Gawein, these v were of oon counseile. And than seide Arthur to Merlin, "What shull we do now in this?" Quod Merlin, "I will a-noon right that ye devide youre peple who shall go be-fore, and who shall go after." Quod the kynge, "Devise it ye, for ye knowe

Banyn is a bold squire.

Leonce sends for Antyaume,

*[Fol. 135*a*.]

and tells him to wait, with his men, in the forest of Briogne.

Leonce sends to Pharien for him to come to the forest of Briogne.

Pharien rides forth.

Leonce and Antyaume wait for Pharien in the forest.

When Merlin knows that they are ready he speaks to Arthur,

who asks for his advice.

beste what is for oure moste spede." "With gode will," seide Merlin, "but this may not be taried."

Marlin calls Gawein, and tells him to take ten thousand men.

Ulfin is to bear his banner.

Merlin calls Ban, and tells him to lead forth ten thousand men.

*[Fol. 135*b*.]

Merlin tells Bohors to lead the third company.

Than Merlin firste of all called Gawein and seide, "Goode frende, take x^{Ml} men of soche as yow like beste, saf only the knyghtes, of the rounde table for hem shull ye not haue, but ye shull haue the xl knyghtes that youre vncle, the kynge, and the kynge Ban brought oute of Tamelide; and ye shull haue also the newe knyghtes and take with yow as many of other that ye be x^{Ml} in all; and drawe yow in to a parte of the felde, and take youre baner to Vlfin to bere, whiche is a noble knyght and right trewe, and do this a-noon right." Whan Gawein herde the comaundement of Merlin he departed, he and his felisship and Vlfin, and stode a-side with x^{Ml} on a part by hem-self. And than Merlin called the kynge Ban and seide, "Kynge Ban, com forth gentill knyght, for ye shull lede the secunde bataile, and ther shull be x^{Ml} in youre companye, and we shull se how well ye shull do for the socoure of youre londe, and how ye will yow a-venge vpon Claudas for the damage that he doth in youre reame, and doth purchese euery day." "Sir," seide the kynge Ban, "so be it as ye will devise, and yef ever I shall haue ioye, it is thourgh god and yow, and by my lorde the kynge Arthur." Quod Merlin, "Go, dissever youre peple, and a-raie hem a-noon for to ride a-gein her enmyes." *Than the kynge Ban dissevered oute x^{Ml} men on a part of yonge knyghtes and noble men of armes. After that Merlin cleped the kynge Bohors, and seide, "Sir, ye shull lede the thirdde bataile, and in youre companye shull be the foure hundr*e* knyghtes of the londe of the kynge Amaunt, and of hem of Carmelide, so that ye be x^{Ml} men well araied, and whan tyme is sette yow on the wey delyuerly, and loke that in yow faile no chyualrie, ffor now shall it be sene how ye will do for to delyver youre enmyes oute of youre londe." "Sir," seide the kynge Bohors, "we shull do as will vouchesaf*e*, the beste that we may;" and than the kynge Bohors dissevered his peple, and made hem to be armed and lepe to horse.

Merlin tells Arthur to lead the

Then seide Merlin to the kynge Arthur, "Sir," quod he, "ye shull lede the fourthe bataile, and in youre companye shull be the knyghtes of the rounde table, ffor thise shull not faile yow for no drede of deth." Than the kynge comaunded Nascien, and Adragain, and Hervy de rivell, to arme and aray hem; and thei so diden in all haste. Than toke Merlin the dragon and cleped kay the stiward, and seide, "Sir, ye shull bere the baner of the kynge Arthur, for it is youre right; and loke that in yow be shewed knyghthode, and wote ye what ye shull do. Ever whan ye come vpon youre e*n*myes loke that ye ride streight to the grete baner." And Kay toke the baner and seide, "Sir, with goode will." Whan these wardes were departed and dissevered, it was wele a-boute mydday, and thei made hem redy and sette hem to mete; and whan thei hadde eten, the lordes yode to counseile, for to aske Merlin what thei sholde do. Quod Merlin, "I shall telle yow this nyght at the firste som*m*e ye shull meve so that to-morow at even ye be at Trebes; and thei ly ther at sege in foure places, ffor euery prince holdith his siege by hym-self; and in euery part is xx$^{\text{Ml}}$ men and euerich of oure wardes shall go smyte on euery hoste, so that thei be assailed on alle foure partes. But thei make gode waicche and stronge, and ther-fore we moste worke wisely." "How, Merlin," quod Arthur, "have thei than moche more peple than we haue?" "Ye, Sir," quod Merlin, "more be the haluendell; but ye shull haue feire socour of xx$^{\text{Ml}}$ men that shull come to yow all be tyme, ffor thei loigge but foure myle from the hoste, with-ynne the foreste of brioke." "And how shull thei knowe oure comynge?" quod the kynge. "Sir," seide Merlin, "I shall go for to fecche hem." "Who shall than condite oure hoste?" quod the kynge. "Blioberis," seide Merlin, "shall go be-fore that well knoweth the passages by the wey that I shall hym tecche, and in the dawnynge of the day loke ye sette on alle to-geder ther as ye shull here an horn*e* blowe right high and lowde, and ye shall se a grete flame of fier renne a-bove in the heir on high, and ther-of take goode hede; ffor than shall the socour be redy that I shall yow sende." "Sir," seide the kynge, "whan shull ye meve thidirward?" "A-noon right," quod Merlin, "for in this may be no tariynge, and ther-fore to god I yow comaunde."

fourth company,

and gives Kay the dragon to bear.

The Lords ask for Merlin's advice.

Merlin tells them they shall be succoured with twenty thousand men.

Blioberis is to lead the host.

*[Fol. 136*a*.] Merlin vanishes, and comes into the host of Leonce; they make great joy when they hear of Arthur; they divide the people into four divisions.

*With that departed Merlin from the kynge Arthur, and a-noon, as he was oute of the hoste, he vanysshed a-wey so sodeynly that thei wiste not where he be com, and er it was passed noone of the day he com into the hoste of Leonces of Paerne, that a-boode nothinge elles but tidinges that he sholde lepe to horse; and than com Merlin be-fore hym ther as he and Pharien were, and Antyaume and Grascien. And than seide Merlin, "Leonces, what a-bidest thow? whi got thow not to horse, thow and thy peple? ffor thow canst not come so soone thider, but thow shalt fynde ther the kynge Arthur with all his hoste." And whan he vndirstode that, he made hym grete ioye, and seide that he was welcome, and so seide all the companye; and a-noon thei asked tidinges of theire lordes, and he seide that in short tyme thei sholde hem well seen, "ffor thei ride now a grete spede; but devise a-noon youre wardes and I shall lede yow to the hoste." "Sir," seide Leonces, "gramercy, ffor now knowe I well that we shull spede well while ye be in oure companye." With that wente the foure felowes, and departed her peple into foure parties, and the stiward*e* toke v^{Ml} and dissevered hem on a part, and Grascien other v^{Ml}, and Pharien other v^{Ml}, and Leonces toke theym that was lefte, that were well v^{Ml} and moo, and made hem to be well armed and a-rayed. But now cesseth a while of Merlin, and of leonces, and speketh of the kynge Arthur and his companye.

Arthur moves on his journey, and Blioberis rides first to lead the way. The singing of the birds cheer the soldiers;

Now seith the storye that as soone as the kynge Arthur and Merlin were departed; the same hour Arthur dide meve on his iourney euery warde after other, and Blioberis rode in the warde of sir Gawein all be-fore, as he that beste knewe the passages. Ther myght oon haue seyn many a riche garnement and many a fressh baner*e* of riche colour wave in the wynde, and the seson was myri and softe, and the contre feire and delitable, ffor many feire medowes and forestes ther weren, in whiche these briddes singen with lusty notes and cler, and than reioyse the corages of these yonge lusty bachelers that to conquere loos and pris and honour haue lefte theire londes and her contreyes, and the swete songe of these briddes remembred their armours whiche thei were wonte to haue the p*re*sence, and some dide sighe full ofte, and so thei ride forth all the nyght till it was cleir day, and whan thei be-heilde a-boute hem and saugh, thei knewe not in what parte thei weren; ffor so moche thei entended to theire myry thoughtes that hem plesed that all other thinge was leide a-side. With that thei be come into a feire launde full of floures vpon the river of leire; and this launde was full of floures and swete herbes and grasse that the horse wente ther-ynne vp to the belyes, and ther thei resten all the hoste of Arthur all the day vnto euesonge tyme, and ete and dranke thei that ther-to haue nede, and slepe at her ese for the place was pl[e]saunte and delitable, and than thei hem armed more and lesse and lepte to horse, *ffor thei hadde but vij myle for to ride to the hoste ther as was Claudas. Ther sholde ye haue sein many fressh lusty men of armes vpon stronge startelinge stedis, and swyfte rennynge well covered vndir stiell, and many a riche cote of armes of silke embrowded of dyvers colours, and many a grete spere with trenchaunt hedes of sharp grounde steill, and many an helme and many a shelde glistred a-gein the sonne, and rode so cloos oon after a-nother that whan thei were renged that oon myght have caste a glove vpon theire helmes that sholde not have falle to grounde, er thei hadde ride a butte lengthe. And Blioberis rode in the vaungarde with sir Gawein, and the kynge Ban in the secounde warde with x^{Ml} men of armes, and rode a softe paas, theire sheldes be-fore theire brestes, with goode talente to assaile theire enmyes and hem-self to diffende, and rode half a myle after the forewarde. Whan the kynge Bohors saugh his brother forth than he dressed hym and his peple after vpon her wey, and hadde many a bolde knyght and hardy, and that was well seene that day in the bataile be-fore the castell of Trebes. And he cowde hem lede and condite and hem helpe and socour in euery nede, whan the kynge Bohors was departed and dissevered. Than Arthur and his peple made hem redy to folowen after, and whan they were on horse ye sholde have sein many a riche garnement and many a bolde knyght that neu*er* wolde faile the kynge Arthur for no drede of deth. And Kay rode with the baner in his hande

they come to a land full of flowers,

and rest till evening;

the men arm themselves

*[Fol. 136*b*.]

and leap to horse;

they ride close to one another:

Blioberis rides in the Vanguard with Gawein.

then comes Ban;

then Bohors.

Arthur and his people make ready to follow.

Kay rides with his banner.

They come out of the forest of Brioke,

and rest under the olives;

they approach the host.

Those that kept watch send out spies.

They run to their arms.

Pounce Antony comes into the forest of Brioke.

Frolle, Randolf, and

*[Fol. 137*a*.]

Claudas make themselves ready.

that Merlin hadde hym delyuered; and thus thei ride streite and cloos after the kynge Bohors the space of half a myle, and thus thei rode all the nyght till a litill be-fore the day that thei were oute of the foreste of brioke, and were come into the playn and com alle after a longe while be the river vnder leyer vnder the wode side, where as thei resten vnder the Olyves till thei sie the signe that Merlin hadde hem tolde of the braundon of fier that sholde renne vp in the heir; and that thei herde the noyse of the horne that sholde blowe; and thei approched so nygh the hoste that it was but v bowe draught be-twene; and thei saugh in the hoste was grete plente of light*es* and moche peple, and thei herde the horse neye and the mules crie often, and thei were so nygh that ech hoste herde the noyse of other, and thei that kepte waicche at the siege sente oute men on horsbakke to aspie what peple it were, and thei yeden oute and saugh their armes and returned agein to the hoste, and tolde how thei hadde founde grete plente of men of armes. Whan thei of the hoste herde these tidinges thei ronne to arme hem, and issed out of the loges and renged hem in the playnes euerich at his baner, and eche man, lete other haue witinge that a grete armee was come vpon theym and thei wiste not what peple. And Pounces and Antonye, that moche cowde of werre, issed oute of the hoste all armed in to the foreste of Bryoke, in to the wodes evese ther as thei sholde come, and comaunded her peple hem for to sue, and thei so dide delyuerly as soone as thei were armed. And ffrolle the Duke of Almayne come oute after and made his *stablie vpon a litill river that is cleped Aroaise, and Randolf the senescall of the kynge of Gaule come by the gardins, and Claudas the kynge de la desert sette hym towarde the cauchie towarde the maras that com out strongly from the loigges, and from pavelou*n*s and gadered to the baners.

Merlin blows a horn,

and makes a flame of fire appear in the air;

And while thei entended to make hem redy and sette hemself in aray, in the mene tyme, Merlin com oute of his enbusshement that wele knewe all theire labour*e*. Than he toke an horne and blewe it so lowde that all the wode resounded, and than he caste a merveilouse enchauntem*e*nt ffor he made appere, and high in the heir*e* a grete flame of fire as reade as thunder, and ran ouer the loigges of hem in the hoste, and whan that Arthurs peple saugh the flame of feir renne thourgh the heir, and also herde the horne blowe, thei hem blessed and smote the horse with the spores, and it fill so that Gawein smote thourgh the herberough of the Duke ffrolle, and the kynge Ban thourgh the tentes of the kynge Claudas de la desert, and the kynge Bohors thourgh the Pavelou*n*s of Pouncy and Antony, and the kynge Arthur thourgh the loiginge of Randolf the Senescall of Gaule, and than a-roos the noyse and the shoute on bothe parties, ffor ther was throwe down many a tente and many a pavelou*n*, and many a man wounded and slain of hem that weren at the siege in the loigges, ffor thei were not alle garnysshed of her armour*e*, and these other hem slough and maymed, that the wounded men cried and braied for the peynes of deth that hem distreyned; and than the sonne be-gan to a-rise clier vpon the bright armure that be-gan to gliste*re* a-gein the bright sonne. Whan Claudas and Pounce Antony and ffrolle saugh the damage that these hem diden, hit hem for thought sore, ffor thei trowed well that thei hadde loste x^{Ml} of her men what oon and other, and the Duke ffrolle hadde loste moste of eny other, saf Randolf the Senescall that saugh the grete mortalite that these hem diden that were come out of her enbusshement; he was nygh wode for wratth, and than he com bakke toward the tentes that he hadde lefte, for to geder his p[ep]le a-boute hym, and yef he and the other ne hadde not returned a-gein to the teintes th[at thei][1] hadden lefte, by my dom, ther hadde not ascaped the halvendell,[2] and whan sir [Gawein[3]] saugh ffrolle come, he rode a-gein hym right boldely, and he hadde in his companye [many bolde[4]] knyghtes that were yonge bachelers, and ffrolle hadde yet in his companye xv[^{Ml} men of[5]] armes, and v^{Ml} hadde he loste that lay deed all to-hewen, and whan thei [hadden drawen[6]] nygh thei smote to-

then Arthur's people spur their horses.

Gawein falls upon Frolle, Ban upon Claudas, Bohors upon Pounce and Antony, and Arthur upon Randolf.

The wounded men cry out.

Claudas, Pounce Antony, and Frolle find they have lost ten thousand men.

Frolle is almost mad with wrath.

Gawein rides against Frolle.

---

[1] A hole is burnt through a portion of folios 137 and 138. The missing words have been translated from the French MS. in the British Museum (Addit. MS. 10,292) and are here inserted between brackets. The number of the folio in the French MS. is marked at the first reading from each page.

[2] The French omits all the words from *and yef* down to *halvendell.*

[3] Fr. fol. 154,

[4] mo*u*lt de hardis.

[5] ^{Ml} hommes.

[6] sentraprochent.

Frolle and Seigramor meet together;

both fall to the ground.

They fight with their swords.

*[Fol. 137*b*.]

Gawein and Ulfin ride to the rescue of Seigramor.

Seigramor and Frolle are both set on their horses.

Gawein smites down man and horse.

Gaheries is held to be the best knight after Gawein.

geder as faste as theire horse myght renne, and at the me[tynge of the] hostes[1] was Seigramore formeste, and ffrolle that was right wrorth com hym [agein and[2]] he was a moche knyght and of grete force, and Seigramor and he mette with sper[es right?] in mydde the sheldes so rudely that bothe fill to grounde, and theire horse vpon theire bodyes, but a-noon thei were lepte on foote, ffor thei were bothe stronge and light and delyuer, and thei drough swerdes oute of scauberk and couered theire hedes vnder sheldes and eche ran to other and be-gonne be-twene *hem two a bataile right grete and crewell, and yaf be-twene hem soche strokes that sore were thei hurt, and ther ne was nother of hem but he was in grete pereile of deth er he hadde eny socour, ffor bothe were thei goode knyghtes and theire suerdes were soche that no man nede to seche noon better, and thus thei fought a longe tyme er thei were departed. Whan Gawein saugh Siegramor at erthe he rode to the rescowe, bothe he and Vlfin that bare the baner; and on that other side com the meyne of ffrolle to delyuer theire maister. And thei smote to-geder with speres thourgh sheldes and many ther were leide to grounde on bothe sid*es*, ffor the bataile was grete and fell that longe endured; and with grete labour were bothe Segramor and ffrolle sette on horse, and than be-gan a-gein the bataile so grete that it dide but enforce more and more. Ther dide merveillously well the xl knyghtes that with hem were companyed. But after mydday was passed was no man*n*ys doinge like vnto Gawein, ffor he smote a-down man and horse be stroke of spere and suerde; and also dide well sir Ewein the sone of kynge Vrien and Ewein a-voutres, and Ewein white hande, and Galashin the sone of kynge Ventre of Garlot; and Gaheries dide so well that euery man hilde hym the beste knyght after sir Gawein, and also dide well Agrauain and Gueheret and Segramor and alle the other felowes.

Ban fights hard with Claudas.

On that othir side faught the kynge Ban full harde with the kynge Claudas and his peple, and ther was stronge bataile and many were ther throwen down to the grounde vpon either side; and happed so that the kynge Ban and Claudas metten in myddell of the renges that were grete and perilouse, and as soone as eche hadde sight of other, thei ronne to-geder with swerdes drawen, and Claudas was a noble knyght and a sure and moche and stronge, but he was euer enviouse a-gein alle tho that were a-bove hym, and he smote the kynge Ban so harde vpon the helme that the [spar]keles[1] of fire fly oute brynnynge bright and astoned hym so sore that he enclyned on h[is horse[2]] nekke; but with grete vigour a-roos the kynge Ban and smote at Claudas to hitte hym [on t]he[3] helme, and he saugh the stroke come and wevyd a-side, and he smote so the horse [nekke p]assinge and kutte[4] a-sonder the chyne, that he fill to grounde; but a-noon he lepe on foote [ryght hastely[5]], but yet er he myght a-rise the kynge Ban yaf hym soche two strokes vpon the he[lme that ne]re he[6] made hym to falle on knees and handes to the erthe, that the blode braste o[ute of his h]ede,[7] but the kynge Claudas was of grete force and hym kepte so that he fill not [but cover]ed his heede[8] with his shelde, and com to the kynge Ban and be-gan be-twene hem [sore?] stronge bataile that was full crewell and fell and longe enduryng.

---

[1] assambler des os.

[2] fol. 154*b*. li vint al encontre et

They run together with drawn swords.

Claudas smites Ban,

who rides and smites Claudas, and kills his horse;

he makes him fall on his knees.

Than be-gan the kynge Claudas to blede sore, and soone hadde the werre be fynysshed for euer more, yef thei two myght eny while lenger have ben to-geder. But his *men hym socoured strongly, whereof he hadde mo than the kynge Ban by the haluendell; and so were the peple of kynge Ban gretly ouer-charged, ffor thei were but x^{Ml}, and thei with the kynge Claudas were yet xviij^{Ml}, and not-with-stondinge thei fought so on bothe parties that the two kynges were remounted, and than be-gan the chaple full dolerouse and crewell and full mortall, but nedes moste the peple of kynge Ban refuse place, and yef he hym-self ne were alle hadde ben discounfited and driven oute of the feilde, but he sustened the bataile so that noon myght hym remeve more than it hadde ben a-dongon, and thus

Claudas bleeds sore,

*[Fol. 138*a*.] but his men succour him.

The two kings are remounted.

he sustains the battle.

---

[1] estincheles. [2] son cheval. [3] p*ar*mi le. [4] col del cheual si le colpe. [5] m*ou*lt iustement. [6] que par poi quil. [7] p*ar*mi la bouce et p*ar*mi le nes. [8] si iete lescu sor sa teste.

thei contened longe in this maner till that mydday was passed.

Bohors and Pounce fight.
Pounce is very wrath at the loss of men.
Bohors rides against him boldly;
they meet together.
Pounce breaks his spear on Bohors, who gives him a great wound,
and bears him to the ground.
Pounce's men run to him,
and rescue him.
He is sorrowful.

On that othar side faught the kynge Bohors and Pounce and Antonye at the tentes and pavelou*ns*, so that moche peple were loste of hem that were there lefte, ffor ther thei loste the lyves; and whan Pounce and Antonye saugh the damage so grete that so sodeinly was hem be-fallen he was wonder wroth and sorowfull; and whan he hadde assembled his men by the foreste where as thei dide a-reste, thei repeired toward the tentes where thei made this occision of hem that thei founden, and whan the kynge Bohors saugh hym come he rode a-gein hym full boldely, his shelde aboute his nekke, with a grete growe spere of aissh with a sharp heede of stiell, and whan Pounce saugh hym come he launched in to the felde a-gein hym and smote the horse with the spores a-gein hym in soche haste as he that trowed to haue taried to longe, and mette to-geder with all the myght of bothe horse that thei perced the sheldes, and Pounce brake his spere vpon the kynge Bohors, and the kynge smote hym so rudely that he made the shelde and the arme close to his side and sente the spere heede thourgh shelde and side and made hym a grete wounde so that the reade blode railed oute after, and he shof ther-on so harde that he bar hym to the erthe vp-right, and ther he lay longe astoned that noon wiste wheder he were [deed or] a-lyve,[1] and whan his men saugh hym falle thei hadde grete drede leste he w[ere deed [2]] and ronne to the rescouse bothe gret and small, and the meyne of kynge Bohors com[e hem agens and] hem resceyved[3] at the spere poynte and ther was grete turment and mortall [occision, for on] oon parte were but x^{M1} and on that other side were xx^{M1},[4] and Pou[nce and Antonye was rescewed and[5]] sette on horse, and his men founde hym somdell wounded [in the left side, but he had no wound that was like unto his[6]] deth, but he was more sorowfull for that he [had been remeved out of his sadell than he was[1]] for greef of his wounde, ffor neuer be-fore [that tyme had he fought with any] knyght that myght make hym remeve oute of his sadell,[2] and [ther-for he wold right faine be] a-venged of that shame[3] yef he myght come in place, and t[han al sodeynly he droughe[4]] his swerde and rode in a-monge the turnement that longe tyme endured [and at the laste it[5]] fill so that Pounce mette with the kynge Bohors that of hym-self shewde mervelouse dedes of armes, and as soone as he hym *saugh he remembred how he hadde hym vn-horsed and wounded, and a-noon he ran vpon hym with his swerde drawen and smote the kynge vpon the helme that he made hym to enclyne on his sadell bowe be-fore, and whan Pounce wolde have recovered a-nother stroke, the kynge spored his horse in to the stour and than returned the horse hede and com with his swerde in his hande; and also Pounce com a-gein hym that moche hym hated, and thei hewen vpon helmes grete strokes that bothe were astonyed. But theire strokes were not alle I-like, ffor Pounce smote the kynge vpon the helme that he enclyned vpon his horse crowpe, and the kynge redressed hym and yaf hym soche a buffet vpon the lefte temple that the blode braste oute of mouthe and nose, and ther-with he hurteled so harde on hym with strengthe of his horse that Pounce fell to grounde and was so astonyed that he knewe not wheder it were nyght or day, and the kynge rode ouer hym on horse bakke all armed so often, that he was all for brosed and swowned for anguyssh, and the kynge hadde grete talent to a-light for to smyte of his heede, but he hadde hym not a-right at his volunte.

---

[1] mort ou uif. [2] quil ne fust mors. [3] lor uienent al encontre et les rechouie*nt*.

[4] fol. 155. car il fure*nt* dune p*art* xx^{M} et daut*re* part x^{M}.

[5] si fu poi*n*ce antoines rescous et.

[6] el coste senestre, mais il nauoit nu plaie q*ue* p*er*illeuse fust a garir.

He rides back,

and meets Bohors.

*[Fol. 138b.]

He smites him.

Bohors smites Pounce to the ground and rides over him.

Whan the Romaynes saugh Pounce so diffouled vndir horse feet of hym that nothinge hym loved thei dide presse to the rescowe and smyten thourgh the peple of kynge Bohors all pelly melly, and made hem resorte bakke more than a bowe draught for thei were many mo than were with the Kynge.

The Romans come to the rescue of Pounce.

---

[1] fu cheus q*ue*.

[2] car onq*ue*s mais nauoit widiet le archons p*our* le cop dun ch*evalier*.

[3] si vengeroit mo*u*lt uolentiers sa honte.

[4] si traist.

[5] et lors auint.

They remount him.

They are double the number of the people of Bohors.

King Arthur fights against Randolf,

who brings 13,000 men.

Arthur's men desire to fight.

Many are slain.

The French are routed.

Arthur's men come upon the people of Pounce.

Ther was Pounce remounted full egirly; but sore was he diffouled and beten. Than the stour be-gan to renewe, and the peple of kynge Bohors were at grete myschef, for there enmyes were double so many as thei were. But in this man*ere* thei contened till mydday was passed, and on a-nother part the kynge Arthur faught full fiercely agein Randolf the Senescall, and the ffrensshemen, ffor he fonde hem in paviloun*s* moo than vij^{Ml} that alle were to-hewen and slayn; and whan Randolf saugh the grete losse and the damage, he was full sory, and in grete ire com hym a-geins with xiij^{Ml} men that weren lefte, and thei were bolde and hardy and desirouse to ben a-venged of the deth of her frendes that thei saugh slayn be-fore theire [iyen] and [1] Arthurs men com hem a-geins as tho that were desirouse of the werre, [and then they hadde] [2] a goode conditour that sette light by theire enmyes, for hem semed [that they were in nombre eue]n [3] as many for as many, and resceyued hem at the spere poynte [and they lefte there of wounded] and slayn grete plente, [4] ffor ther was many a ga[llant knyght slayn and beheded, the which was gret dole a]nd sorowe [5] to her frendes, ffor ther were the [knyghts of the round table the which dide grete [6]] wondres, for thei bar down man and horse; th[at nothinge myght stond ageyn hem. And they] with the kynge Arthur [7] hem helped so well that he scowred th[e ranks clene whersoever] ther as he com, [8] aud thourgh her grete prowesses were the frensh [rowted and dryven owt of] the felde, maugre who that it grucched, [9] that thei neuer stynte till [thei] re[tourn]ed [10] upon the peple of Pounce and Antonye that right sore greved the kynge Bohors.

---

[1] iex si.

[2] et orent. *Aüirent, oirent, Orent,* is the third pers, pl. perfect of *avoir* in the Burgundian dialect of the Langue d'Oïl. Burguy. Gram. i. 247.

[3] car il uirent quil furent p*r*is.

[4] si en laissent m*ou*lt de mors et de naures.

[5] uassal ochis et decopes dont il fu g*ra*nt duel.

[6] Illuec firent m*er*ueilles li ch*eualie*r de la table reonde.

[7] et auoec els estoit lirois art*us*.

[8] qui faisoit les rens esclairier par tout lo il aloit.

[9] et fisent tant p*ar* lor proece quil les ont romp*us* et iete de place a fine force ou il uolsiss*en*t ou non.

[10] deuant quil uindrent.

*And whan these com on ther was so grete toile and romour of noyse that wonder it was to heere, and ther-with a-roos so grete a duste, that the cleir sky wax all derk, and Kay hem pursude with the dragon in honde that Merlin hadde take hym to kepe, and hit caste oute of his throte many tymes so grete flames of fiere up in to the heire so horible that alle theire hertes trembled of hem that neuer hadde seyn it be-fore, and seide oon to a-nother that the worlde was nygh at an ende; and, neuertheles, the dragon had grete significacion in hym-self, ffor it be-tokened the kynge Arthur and his power; and the flame of fiere that com oute of the throte be-tokened the grete martire of peple that sholde be in his tyme, and the taile that was so tortuouse be-tokened the grete treson of the peple, be whom he was after be-traied that dide a-rise a-gein hym by mordred his sone that he be-gat on his suster, the wif of kynge loot as ye haue herde rehersed be-fore, ffor whan Arthur after passed ouer see to fight with the Emperour of Rome, and to take the reame of Gannes and of Benoyk for the wratthe of launcelot, that hadde hym lefte for a maltalent that was be-twene hem two for his wif, the quene Gonnere, that he was so moche with a-queynted as the tale shall declare here-after; but of alle these maters we shull cesse at this tyme till that the mater falle ther-to here-after that it shall clerly be expounded.

*[Fol. 139*a*.]

Kay pursues them with the dragon,

which is horrible to see;

the flame from its throat betokens the martyrdom of people, the tail betokens the treason of the people,

as the story will declare hereafter.

Now seith the boke that grete was the bataile be-fore the Castell of Trebes of the peple of Randolf, and the meyne of kynge Arthur. But Randolf*es* men haue for-sake place, and were driven vpon the peple of Pounce and Antonye that full short hilde the kynge Bohors and his men that grete nede hadde of socour; and whan Pounce and Antonye sangh come theym that fledden, he com hem a-geins and cried his ensigne, and returned and ran firste upon the men of kynge Bohors; and whan these saugh hem comynge thei relien and closed hem to-geder, and lete renne at the meyne of Pounce Antonye; and the kynge Bohors was so ouercharged that he was nygh discounfited and dryven oute of the felde. But as Kay com that moche hem counforted, and tho be-gan a stronge stour and mortall, and many were ther

The battle is great before Trebes.

Randolf's men forsake the place.

Pounce runs upon the men of Bohors,

who were nearly discomfited. Kay succours them.

deed on bothe sides; and than thei hilde hem somwhat *per*ingall; and also on that other side faught sir Gawein and ffrolle of Almayne that he made hem resorte vpon the kynge Claudas that faught a-gein the kynge Ban of Benoyk, that was at grete myschef; and whan these foure batailes were come to-geder that oon sustened longe that other, and grete was the martire and the noise of strokes of suerdes and gleives vpon helmes. But ther dide Gawein wondirfull dedis with his handes, ffor neuer had eny man seyn be-fore oo man a-lone do soche merveiles as he dide that day; and the storie seith that it was passed myd-day, and it fill that Gawein mette with the kynge Claudas that faught with the kynge Ban, he and a hundred with hym, and the kynge Ban hadde* no moo with hym but xix, and ther-fore was he at grete myschef; and whan Gawein com he made alle the renges to tremble and fremyssh; and whan he saugh the kynge Ban in soche distresse he rode in a-monge hem, with his suerde in hande, that was of grete bounte; and it happed that he mette firste with Claudas that sore hym peyned to greve the kynge Ban and his peple, and Sir Gawein lifte vp his swerde for to smyte the king Claudas vpon the helme, and he hym couered with his shelde; and Gawein hym smote so harde that he made it to fle in two parties, and the suerde descended upon the hynder arson of his sadell and slitte the horse a-sonder, that bothe fill to grounde, the horse and his maister; and so he rode forth and no lenger hym a-bode for that he knewe hym not, and mette so with Mysteres, that was a knyght of Claudas, and he smote hym on the shulder that he slitte hy[m] to the breste; and than he smote Antorilas that the heed fill in to the felde; and after he leide oute grete strokes on euery side, so harde that xx of hem hath he slayn be-fore the feet of kynge Claudas, and so he hym stired that noon durst hym a-bide a stroke.

Gawein does wonderful deeds.

He meets King Claudas,

*[Fol. 139*b*.]

and smites him

to the ground.

He meets Mysteres and smites him and Antorilas.

Whan the kynge Ban saugh the socour that god hadde hym sente, and he saugh the merveile of the yonge knyght; he thonked and worshiped oure lorde, and than he com to hym and seide, "Gawein, swete frende, ye be welcome at this grete nede, ffor, so helpe me god, the kynge Arthur hath well be-sette

Ban thanks God for the succour, and comes to Gawein, the lordship that he hath yow yoven to lede and gouerne his peple, ffor to a better than to yow myght he not haue yoven in all this worlde to olde ne yonge; and I praye yow that ye wolde graunte me youre companye this day fro hens-forth." "Sir," quod Gawein debonerly, "I graunte it yow with gode herte, and I thanke yow of youre requeste. But me be-houeth to seche my brethern and my cosins, for I wote not where thei be by-come and ther-fore displese yow nothinge, for as soone as I haue hem founde, I shall to yow a-gein repaire." "Sir," seide the kynge Ban, "I will gladly go with yow and peyne me to ben a-venged of myn enmy that ye dide vn-horse; and than were the werre at an ende yef he myght be deed or taken." Than seide Gawein "whiche is he." "Lo," quod the kynge Ban, "yende is he in the blake armes flortee of siluer, and hath that shelde de-parted of vert and gowles, and ther-ynne a rampaunt lion of siluer, and he is now remounted while we haue thus spoken." "Sir," seide Gawein, "yet may we well come to poynte this same day yef god will." "Now lete vs yeve hem oon assaute, ffor lo me here all redy, for I desire nothinge more than to do hym damage," quod the kynge Ban, "ffor by hym haue I all my harme that I haue, and that we alle be with I-greved." "What is he?" said Gawein. "Hit is Claudas de la desert," seide the kynge Ban, "that this day so sore hath me greved." "How," seide Gawein, "is this he that maketh alle these peple here assemble." "Ye, sir, with-oute faile," quod the kynge Ban; with that thei spored *theire horse that wey that thei saugh Claudas; and as soone as he saugh hem comynge, he com a-gein hem boldely, and be-gan the bateile stronge and crewell, and the kynge Ban, and Gawein, and the xx knyghtes a-gein the kynge Claudas, that hadde mo than an hundred; but thei were discounfited and chaced oute of the place thourgh the prowesse of the two noble men; and whan the kynge Claudas saugh the damage turne vpon hym, he rode in to the medle, where he saw thikkest, for sore he douted to mete with hem that manaced hym of nothinge but to smyten of his hede; and whan Gawein and the kynge Ban saugh hym

and prays him to give him his company.

Gawein wishes to seek his brethren and cousins.

Ban will go with him, and be avenged of his enemy.

Gawein wishes to assault him;

he asks who he is. Ban says it is Claudas;

*[Fol. 140*a*.

the battle begins.

Claudas rides into the thickest of the fight.

Gawein and Ban follow him.

go, thei preked after, and he rode here and there thourgh the bateile, and thei after, that for nothinge wolde hym haue lefte, saf for oon a-uenture that thei founde in the bataile he ne hadd neuer ascaped while that Sir Gawein and the kyne Ban entended to the bataile, and to Claudas that thei enchaced. Gawein saugh Agrauain his brother ly on the grounde, and his horse vpon him; and Gueheret was on foote, with his swerde in honde; and also he saugh Galashin, his cosin, that ffrolle the Duke of Almayne helde be the nasell of his helme, and hadde in his companye moo than two thousande men that dide hym helpe, and longe tyme past thei sholde hym haue slayn ne hadde be Segramor of Costantynnoble, and Gaheries and sir Ewein the sone of kynge Vrien, and Ewein avoutres, and Ewein de lionell, and Ewein white hande, and Ewein Esclains, and Dodinell the sauage, and kay destranx and kehedin the litill, and the xl felowes that were in Carmelide with the kynge Arthur; these sustened all the bataile a-gein the two thousande that thei myght not take the thre knyghtes that weren down on foote, and often thei hem be-raften by fyn force; but now thei ben moche at the werse for thei ben wery and mate for trauaile; and whan Gawein saugh the myschef and the pereile of his brethern and his frendes, he seide to the kynge Ban that he be not displesed, for I se yonder my brother that I moste go for to socour and to helpe, for I owe not hym to faile for no drede of deth; and than he shewde to hym theym that were at grete myschef; and than seide the kynge Ban, "Sir, ride forth, for this may not be taried;" and tho thei rode as faste as the horse myght hem bere that thei made the renges to sparble a-brode, and smyten so tweyne the firste that thei mette, that thei were deed with-oute respite; and than thei com ther as Agrauain and Gueheret weren down, and slough hem faste that thei myght a-reche with a full stroke so that noon durste hem a-bide, but made hem place the moste hardy and the moste vigerous, ffor soone were thei knowen for worthy men and gode knyghtes. Whan Agrauain and Gueheret saugh the socour thei lept vp lightly, and eche of hem hente and horse, and

Gawein sees Agravain, Gueheret, and Galashin.

Segramor, Gaheries, and the forty fellows.

Gawein goes to the succour of his brethren and friends.

Agravain and Gueheret are down;

they leap up

a shelde aboute her nekke, for I-nowe thei fonde a-boute hem; and whan thei were vp on horse-bak thei be-gonne a stronge stour, but Galashin was not all at his ese, ffor he was yet a-monge the horse feet, and that for thought sore to Gawein; and he hente a stronge spere and rode thider as Galashin* was at soche myschef, and smote in to the presse so harde that he caste down vij er he myght come ther as he was, and than he lowed his spere and smote ffrolle so harde thourgh the shelde that the spere hede stynte at the hauberke of maile. But he shof ther on so harde that he bar hym to the erthe vp-right so rudely that sore he was hurt in the fallinge; and than he hente the horse by the reynes, and anoon made Galashin lepe ther-on, that ther-to hadde grete myster and hadde gode corage, and gode will to be a-venged of his damage yef he myght come in place; and so he dide withynne short tyme after; ffor as soone as he was vpon horse he smote in to the stour amonge his enmyes, wher he saugh the Duke ffrolle a-gein sette on horse a-monge his knyghtes and his men; and he ouer-threwe hym a-gein a-monge her hande dispitously, and rode ouer hym on horsebak vj or vij tymes er he myght haue eny socour of his men; and at eche tyme that he didde releve, he smote hym with his swerde to grounde that his men wende wele that he hadde be deed.

when they see the succour.

Galashin is among the horse's feet.

*[Fol. 140*b*.]

Gawein smites down seven men;

he bears down Frolle,

and makes Galashin leap on his horse.

Galashin overthrows Frolle, who had been set on his horse again by his knights.

In this manere dide Galashin ouer-throwe the Duke ffrolle and hym diffouled er than his men myght come to voide hym oute of the place were thei neuer so woth for his anoye or his damage; all that Galashin dide to Duke ffrolle, Gawein shewde to the kynge Ban, and seide, "Sir, se Galashin, my cosin, how vigerously he hym conteneth, and boldly a-gein his enmyes." "Certes," seide the kynge, "who, that hath this Galashin in his companye may a-vaunte hym-self that he hath oon of the beste knyghtes of the worlde." At this worde that the kynge Ban spake, saugh thei alle the bateiles remeve; and that oo peple smyte thourgh the tother all pelley melley full desirouse eche other to a-paire and to damage with all her power, ffor the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and

Gawein shows Ban what his cousin had done.

Ban says Galashin is one of the best knights in the world.

Ban, Bohors,

and Arthur drive the people of Pounce and Claudas upon those of Frolle.

the kynge Arthur, and the knyghtes of the rounde table haue so do in the bataile that be fin force thei made the peple of Pounce Antonye, and Claudas men to resorte vpon the meyne of the kynge of Gaule and vpon ffrolle of Almayne, and these hem receyved well as noble men and gode knyghtes that weren full bolde and hardy and coraiouse in armes. Ther was grete entassement of men and of horse vpon hepes; and grete and huge was the duste that a-roos, that troubled sore theire sightes,

The four wards assembled together.

and whan the foure wardes were to-geder assembled, as ye haue herde, ther was so grete foison of men and horse that wonder it was to haue seyn; and than thei closed hem to-geder straite eche to other.

The people of Claudas are abashed.

But sore were the peple of Claudas, a-baisshed of the perilouse metinges that thei hadde sein; and whan that the kynge Arthur saugh that these were so ascaped and medled a-monge the tother,

Arthur presses after them.

he pressed after hem full vigerously; and than ther was grete bataile and stronge fight, ffor ther hadde the coward avauntour no nede to sitte by the chymnyes and a-vaunte that thei hadde nother herte ne hardynesse to be-holde hem and the prowesses of tho that hadde lefte londe and rentes to seche and conquere pris and worthinesse. *But lete vs speke of the two queenes that ben in the Castell of Trebes.

*[Fol. 141*a*.]

The prowess of Arthur.

Full grete prowesse dide Arthur and his companye of the rounde table; and the kynge Ban and the kynge Bohors were nothinge at soiour, ne sir Gawein and his felowes, but dide soche occision of peple that alle the felde were couered of deed peple and wounded;

The field is covered with dead.

and ther was so grete noyse, and so grete cry, that foure myle oon myght here the sound of hornes and trumpes; and whan thei of Trebes herde the cry and the shoute of peple, thei merveiled sore what it myght be, and wente vpon the walles for to se the merveiles;

The people of Trebes wonder at the shout. The two queens come on the walls;

and the tidinges ther-of com to the two queenes that thei also become to the walles of the tower and be-helden oute of the wyndowes on high down in to the meedes and saugh the greteste nombre of peple that euer thei hadde seyn; and sye the dragon that Kay bare, that caste thourgh his mouthe so grete flames of

they see the dragon,

fire that all the heir*e* that was so thikke of duste wax all reade ther as the dragon wente; and whan the ladyes and the peple of the town saugh that baner that neuer thei hadde seyen beforn; thei hem blesseden for the wonder that thei hadden, and than thei dide enquere, and asked what peple thei were, and to whom that baner be-longed, and whan the messager com to the bataile he mette with a knyght of the reame of logres that dide of his helme for to take a-newe, for his was all to rente, and the knyghtes name was Bretell; and the squyer com to hym and hym salude, and Bretell hi*m* ansuerde a-gein full debonerly. "Sir," seide the squyer, "I praye yow entirely that ye will telle me what peple ye be, that fight so with the peple of this hoste, yef it yow not displese for to telle;" "ffeire frende," seide Bretell, "now maist thow sey to hem ther with-ynne the Castell that yow haue hider sente. That is the kynge Ban and the kynge Bohors of Gannes that haue brought the kynge Arthur of the grete Breteigne for to rescewe their londes and theire contreyes from theire enmyes, that with wronge and synne be entred; but now is come the terme that thei shull be quyte of her merite, yef god kepe the force and the power of kynge Arthur, and lo ther is his baner with the dragon that the stiwarde bereth;" and whan the squyer vnderstode this, he comaunded hym to god, and thanked hym of that he hadde hym seide, and returned glad and myry for the tidinges that he hadde herde, and thought longe till he hadde it tolde the two queenes that were sustres, and rode as faste as the horse myght hym bere, till he com to the castell; but for no askinge that eny man cowde hym demaunde wolde he nothinge telle, saf that he seide who that will ought wite, lete hym come to the paleyse, and thus he passed forth; and whan the ladies saugh hym come, thei com agains hym for the grete plente of peple that thei saugh him folowinge, and whan he com be-fore the ladies, he tolde hem the tidinges so lowde, that alle that hym suwed myght it well vndirstonde, and hem tolde like as Bretell hadde hym *seide; and whan the ladies herde these tidinges, and thei that were with-ynne the place wiste it was

and wonder at it;

they send a messenger, who meets Bretell.

Bretell tells him who have come to assist them.

The messenger returns glad;

he will tell nothing till he comes to the palace;

he tells the tidings to the ladies so loud that all may hear;

*[Fol. 141*b*.]

the ladies are full of joy, and go to the walls to see the battle;

the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors that hadden brought the kynge Arthur, theire lorde; thei were full of ioye and yeden vp to the walles for to se the grettest bataile that euer thei hadde seyn be-forn, and thei foughten longe that thei weren wery for t*ra*ueile bothe oon a[nd] other. But thei of the Castell hadde but litill while be-holden the bateile, whan thei saugh come oute of the foreste of brioke foure baners that com full softe oon after another the space of a bowe draught, and whan the baners approched ner, thei knewe the baner of Antyaume the senescall of Benoyk; and the seconde, Grascien of Trebes; and the thridde, Pharien; and the fourthe, Leonce of Paerne; and whan thei of the Castell saugh hem thei weren full gladde, and fayn wolde haue issed oute yef thei myght haue hadde licence; ffor ther-ynne were gode knyghtes and worthi men; but it was hem deffended as dere as thei loved theire lyves, and Antyaume approched faste; and the kynge Ban be-helde and saugh comynge these batailes, and knewe hem well, and shewde hem to sir Gawein. "Sir," quod he, "nowe in shorte tyme shull oure enmyes be put bakke, and fayn to take flight for I se ther my baners that brynge vs riche socour, and thei be moche to alowe;" "and where ben thei?" seide Gawein. "Sir," seide the kynge Ban, "lo hem yonder," and shewde hym with his swerde, and whan that hem saugh he knewe well ther was gret strength of peple.

they see four banners come out of the forest of Brioke;

they are full glad.

Ban shows them to Gawein,

and says that their enemies will soon be put back.

Than seide Gawein, "sir, now lete vs with-drawe a litill a-bakke, and seche out oure frendes and felowes, till that we haue hem founden, and assembled; ffor it may not faile but that ther shall be grete diffoulinge of oure enmyes whan we be alle to-geder; and lete vs be all be-forn ther as ye suppose, whiche wey thei will turne, and wite ye why I sey it; ffor whan thei com ther as we be enbusshed that than thei may be sore chastised, that whan the Romanys come in to theire contre that thei may say and recorde that thei haue nother mette with ribaudes ne cowardes; and a-nother tyme to be well ware for to entre in to oure londes, and in to the fees of kynge Arthur, of grete Breteyne, and lete hem well wite that in the fin thei

Gawein desires to withdraw and seek his friends,

that the Romans may say they did not meet with cowards;

shull it not reioyse." "Sir," seide the kynge, "I will it be at youre volunte," and with that thei departed and drowgh a-side oute of the bataile, and the knyghtes of the rounde table alther firste, and the kynge Arthur, and the kynge Bohors, and after the xl knyghtes that were sowdiours in Carmelide; and after the xvj newe knyghtes, and whan thei were assembled, thei were thre hundred knyghtes that weren full noble, and worthi men, ffor thei were the flour of the hoste, and in the while that thei were thus disseuered, so be hem-self Antyaume, the senescall, smote in to the bataile with as grete randon as horse myght renne, and ther was many a spere spent, and many a sore stroke of suerdes. *Ther was the signe cried lowde of the kynge Ban, and of the kynge Bohors of Gannes, and ther was many leide deed to the grounde of men and of horse, whan that Grascien com so harde vpon hem that thei moste nede forsake place and spredde a-brode in the felde, and than be-gan the bataile so fell mortall that many a fre modres childe lay stiked, and slayn that litill hadde it deserued, where-of holy cherche was lessed full sore of xx^{ti} thousande peple that ther was slain of oon, and other and all that was for the vntrouthe of the kynge Claudas, that after er he dyed he hadde euell myschef; ffor he starf in grete age disherited as the story witnesseth; that Bohors toke so grete vengaunce after that Launcelot hadde the reame of Logres in hande, after the deth of kynge Ban, and the deth of kynge Arthur; ffor he toke the heed all white hoor in the foreste of Darmauntes, where he mette hym in gise of a palmer; ffor he was departed oute of the reame with-oute knowinge of eny man with thre knyves wher-with he wolde haue morthered in treson, Bohors, and Lyonell, his brother, that were so noble and hardy, as the tale shall shewe yow heere-after; and ye shull here how thei were kept and norisshed by Nymyane, the lady de lak that Launcelot brought vp tenderly till he was a knyght. But now of these maters cesseth at this tyme, and repeire to speke of the bateile, how the hostes fighten in the playn felde be-fore the castell of Trebes.

they draw aside.

Antyaume smites into the battle;

*[Fol. 142*a*.]

many men and horses are laid dead.

The end of Claudas,

and how Bohors takes vengeance on him after the death of Ban and Arthur,

as the tale will show hereafter.

The wards of Benoyk enter.

Full grete was the bataile and the stour mortall, where as these wardes of Benoyk were entred, and medled with theire enmyes a-gein the peple of ffrolle, Duke of Almayne, and agein the peple of Pounce Antonye, that alle were entermedled *with* the peple of Arthur, that foughten full harde on that oo part and the tother; but whan thei were spradde a-brode in the felde oon cowde not well sey who hadde the better, ffor[1] thei on Claudas side were yet xxxv^{Ml} of fightinge men, and thei on kynge Arthurs side were xxviij^{Ml}, and so thei helde hem som-what peringall; ffor the thre hundred knyghtes were drawen oute on a part, and a-mended theire helmes, and refresshed theire bodyes, and as soone as thei were departed the peple of Claudas recouered, and drof hem bakke of the reame of Logres more than thre bowe shote fro the castell, and of fin force made hem forsake place, and the tentes and pavilou*n*s that thei hadden take, and sesed; but in short tyme after the dedes wente all' other wise, while that the Romayns, and the Almaynes, and the peple of Gaule, and of la desert peyned hem to discounfite[2] theym of the reame of logres and of litill Bretayne, that moche hadde I-hadde the worse, and all day be-fore hadde the better. Thei merveiled sore where theire prowesse wer*e* be-come; but thei were not ther that hadde don the merveiles in armes all the day *be-fore, and therfore were thei gretly discounforted; ffor thei knewe of hem no tidinges, and eche man hy[m] peyned sore to diffende his body, for well thei wende that thei hadde be deed that were wonte in euery nede hem to recouer, and while thei were in this turment Com Pharien of Gannes, with v^{Ml} men of armes, and whan Claudas saugh hem come, he knewe hem wele be the baner that ofte hadde hym greved in many dedes. Than he seuered a part of his peple, and seide to Pounce Antonye and to ffrolle that thei sholde haue mynde to do well, and breke her enmyes; "and I shall go a-geins hem that I se newe comen, and yef I may do so moche that I may putte hem to flight, we shall delyuer vs wele of the surpluys; and I do yow to wite that it is the

The 300 knights refresh themselves.

The people of Claudas recover;

but the Romans, the Almaynes, and the people of Gaule are discomfited.

*[Fol. 142*b*].

Pharien comes with 5,000 men.

Claudas tells Pounce and Frolle that he will go against the new comers;

---

[1] The word "ffor" is repeated in the MS.

[2] The word "the" is inserted in the MS.

man that moste in this worlde hath me greved that hem doth gyde, and yef it myght so be that he were take or slayn, thei hadde loste oon of her beste membres." With that departed the kynge Claudas with x^{Ml} men of armes, and rode agein Pharien with her sheldes be-fore her brestes, with speres in fewtre and helmes enclyned; and Pharien com ageins hem boldely as he that was vigerouse, and of grete herte, and a wise werreour, and also a trewe knyght and moche of stature; and whan thei approched nygh thei lete renne to-geder as faste as horse myght hem beren, and at that metynge were many throwe to the grounde that neuer roos after; but at grete myschef were the peple of pharien; ffor Claudas hadde x^{Ml}, and he hadde but v^{Ml}; but yet ther was stronge bataile, and sore fightinge; ffor Phariens men were newe comen, and Claudas men were somewhat trauayled, so that thei loste more than dide Pharie*n*, and yef thei hadde not be so many thei hadden alle be slain or discounfited; but in the ende Pharien be-houed to drawe bakke towarde the foreste fro whens he was comen, and whan Claudas saugh hem goinge he wende well all hadde ben venquysed, and kepte hem so short that thei hadde no power to recouer; and that made Pharien so wo that ner he yede oute of witte, and he cried, Gannes ofte, and many tymes the signe of kynge Bohors; but it a-vayled nought, but the preised knyghtes wente gentilma*n*ly, of whom he hadde plente; ffor thei a-bode with Pharien be-hynde hem that fledden, and yaf many grete strokes that oon for the tother, but in the fin were thei euell ledde, till that leonce the lorde of Paerne hem socoured right vigerousely; and Claudas and his men were so anguysshous vpon hem that thei desired for to discounfite, that er thei wiste Leonce smote in a-monge hem so harde that mo than a thousande he threwe to grounde, that fewe of hem a-roos after, for many of hem were deth wounded, and than thei that fledde recouered a-gein vigerously, as thei hadde not smyten no stroke of all the day. Ther was the bataile crewell and mortall on bothe sides, and on that othir side full harde foughten the peple of the reame of logres a-gein the thre princes, and grete slaughter ther

he rides against Pharien with 10,000 men. Pharien comes to him.

There is sore fighting.

Claudas loses more men than Pharien,

but Pharien is obliged to draw back to the forest.

He cries out.

Leonce succours him,

and throws down a thousand of the men of Claudas.

The people of Logres

fight hard against the three princes. *[Fol. 143*a*.]

was on bothe parties; but sore were thei of the reame of logres discounfited, whan thei saugh not hem that sholde hem gouerne, and gyde, and yef ther hadde not ben *many goode and worthy men alle hadde thei be discounfited, and driven oute of the felde; and Merlin that all this knewe wiste that thei were thus entirprised, he com thider as the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and sir Gawein and his felowes were enbusshed, and to hem he seide, "What, sirs, be ye come in to this countre to be-holde the turmentis, and the prowesses of the knyghtes of this cuntrey. Now trewly ye be worthy to haue grete blame for youre peple haue moche losse hadde seth ye wente from the bataile, and sore thei ben affraide that thei may not yow seen ne here of no tidinges, and for goddes love loke youre soiour be so dere to hem yolden that thei that ascape from youre handes may sey that thei of the reame of logres be nother knaues ne harlottes, but worthi men and goode knyghtes; and ye, sir," quod he to kynge Arthur and to kynge Bohors, "is this the werre and the helpe, that ye do to youre frendes that haue putte hem-self in a-uenture of deth for youre sake in many a nede, as ye well knowe ther as alle other haue yow failed, and ye be come hider to hide yow for cowardise; and wite it well it shall be to yow grete reprof of moche peple, and of yowre love more than eny other, that is, of Gonnore, the doughter of kynge Leodogon of Carmelide, whan she knoweth how ye haue spedde."

Merlin comes to Ban, Bohors, and Gawein, who were in ambush, and reproves them;

he tells Arthur and Bohors that they have come to hide their cowardice.

He bows down his head for shame.

Whan the kynge vndirstode the worde of Merlin, he bowed down the heed for shame; but he spakke no worde er he hadde yoven a grete sigh, and he hadde grete drede lest Merlin were toward hym wroth. After that, Merlin yede to Gawein, and his felowes, and seide, "Sirs, where be now the grete prowesses that ye were wonte to atise oon to another er ye were knyghtes, and than afterwarde ye seiden ye wolde come turney with youre enmyes, and se how thei cowde bere armes; and now ye seyn hem goode knyghtes and sure, and for the drede that ye haue of hem be ye come hider yow to hiden, and ye ne haue nother herte ne hardynesse

Merlin reproves Gawein and his fellows,

hem to a-bide." And than he seide to kynge Ban and his brother, "And ye lordynges what be ye come to seche in this contrey that sholde be wise and goode knyghtes and hardy; and well ye haue it proved that men knewe well I-nough longe tyme past, but whi haue ye trowed these cowardes that ben here that haue made yow here to hiden, whan ye sholde delyuer hem that for yow ben in a-venture of deth, for to helpe delyuer youre londe of youre enmyes; ffor thei may well sey whan thei come in to her contrey, that thei haue be in sory seruise whan ye haue hem lefte in her moste nede that thei hadde of yowe." "Trewly, sir," seide the kynge Ban, "we ne did it but for good." Quod Merlin, "How-so-euer ye do, euell haue ye wrought, and therfore loke that the damage that thei yow haue don be right, dere I solde that thei that yow ascape haue no cause for to a-vaunten." "Certes, sir," seide Gawein, "as for me, I knowe well I haue don right euell, not for than I shall lete hem well wite that I am not hidde, yef in me be so moche valoure, though I sholde be deed or all to hewen, and er I departe that shall thei knowe bothe the more and the lesse. Ne neuer cowardise that I shall do shall neuer the kynge Arthur, myn oncle, be repreved, *yef god will while that I lyve, and therfore my frendes and my felowes and my bretheren, yef ye will be putte oute of blame seweth me; ffor soone shall be shewed that for cowardise I am neyther rested ne hidde."

and then censures Ban and his brother.

Ban says they hid to do good.

Gawein acknowledges he has done evil,

*[Fol. 143*b*.]

and asks his friends to follow him.

Than gan Merlin to laugh, and rode to Kay, the stiwarde, and hente the dragon oute of his hande, and seide he was not worthy to bere it; ffor the baner of a kynge sholde not ben hidde, and namly in bataile, but to be born in the formest fronte; and than Merlin rode, forth and cried with lowde voyse, "Now lete se who shall me sewen, ffor soone shall be shewed who is a knyght." And whan the kynge Ban saugh hym go, he seide to kynge Bohors, his brother, that Merlin hath be a full noble man, and thus seide many of hem, and with-oute faile he was full of merveilouse prowesse and strengthe of body, and grete, and longe of stature; but broun he

Merlin laughs and rides to Kay; he takes the banner out of his hand.

The strength and prowess of Merlin;

was, and lene, and rough of heer, more than a-nother man; but he was full well furnysshed of body and of membres, and a grete gentilman on his moder be-halue; but of hys fader I sey yow no more, for I-nough ye haue herde; but we finde not that euer he leyde honde on eny man for to do harme; but ofte whan he was in prees of peple, and bar the baner, with the breste of his horse he bar down, bothe men and horse. Whan Merlin hadde take the dragon out of Kayes hande he rode formeste vpon a blakke horse that was stronge and swyfte, and whan he approched nygh the bateile he drof in a-monge hem so harde, that alle thei fremysshed and brunt ther as Pounce Antony faught, that sore hym peyned for to discounfite hem of Logres, and well he wende that alle the beste knyghtes hadde be slain, and therfore were thei full of hevynesse in the castell of Tebres, and ronne to armes moo than xxvii squyers, and issed oute alle on horsbakke, and Banyns hem ledde that was godsone to kynge Ban, and sone to Grascien of Trebes, and he was yet but xx^{ti} yere of age, and was of grete hardynesse, and a-noon smyten in to the bataile and dide right well as of squyers for knyghtes were ther noon, and yef that thei hadde not come so soone the other were euen at discounfiture.

he never laid hands on any man to do harm;

he rides on a black horse into the battle.

Twenty-eight squires come out of Trebes, led by Banyns.

Than com Merlin and his companye, that were mo than a thousande, what oon and other, and he bar the dragon in his hande that yaf thourgh his throte so grete braundon of fier that the eir that was blakke of the duste and powder be com all reade; and thei that neuer hadde it sein be-fore seide it shewde well that oure lorde was wroth with hem whan he made soche a signe to a-pere, and than gan the chaunce to chau*n*ge fro hem that hadde the better; ffor as soone as thei were comen, thei dide soche maistries of armes, that alle were a-basshed that weren hem a-geins, ffor ther dide the kynge Arthur wondres, for he caste his shelde at his bakke, and hilde his swerde in bothe hondes that was of grete bounte, and slough so many that noon myght a-gein hym endure; and the boke seith *that he slough mo than two hundred, where-of was grete harme to cristin that ther were so many deed, and all that

Merlin's company is more than a thousand. The dragon vomits fire.

Arthur slays more than two hundred.

*[Fol. 144*a*.]

was for the reprof that Merlin hym yaf, and he hilde the reyne of his bridill in his lefte arme, and lete hym go ther as he wolde, and also the kynge Ban and the Bohors dide merveiles; ffor sore thei hem peyned to be a-venged of her enmyes, and were goode knyghtes and hardy, and euer hadde be a-bove alle the knyghtes that hadde I-ben in theire tyme.

Ban and Bohors do marvels.

Now seith the booke that the kynge Arthur was so depe paste in to the bateile, that they wiste not where he was be-come, and so was the kynge Ban and his brother, and whan the knyghtes of the rounde table it wisten thei gan make soche a disray a-monge hem that noon a-bode other, and so dide the xl knyghtes that ye haue herde rehersed, and the xvij yonge knyghtes, and be-gonne so sharpe medle, eche for other, that noon wiste which wey that thei turned, and ofte eche of hem loste other that day, and many tymes thei metten agein; at that returne dide Segramor wondres a-monge his enmyes, for the storye seith that he was oon of the beste knyghtes of the hoste; and so dide Galashin that often was he shewed, and mustred with the fynger on bothe sides, and so dide Ewein that no man nede sech a beter knyght, and the thre brethern of Gawein that all day helde to-geder that for nothinge wolde departe, and wonderly well were thei preised; and on that other side foughten the knyghtes of the rounde table that noon myght haue don better, and Adragain and Nascien and Hervy de revill made the renges to tremble ther as thei wente and com; but ouer alle other dide sir Gawein well that was so depe in a-monge his enmyes that noon cowde sey where he was seth he from hem departed; and thei sought hym sore vp and down on euery side, and Gawein serched so the renges that he mette Randolf the Senescall of Gaule, that a-noon he ran vpon hym, for he was a goode knyght and hardy, and Gawein hym smote in entirpassinge thourgh the helme to the sculle, and the horse bar hym forth and the suerde descended on the horse chyne, and kutte it a-sonder, that bothe fill on oon hepe; and than happed he mette Dodinell the sauage, and Kehedin the litill, in his wey that were smyten down of

Arthur, Ban, and Bohors go deep into the battle.

Segramor does wonders;

so does Galashin and Ewein, and three brethren of Gawein,—

Adragain, Nascien, and Hervy de Revill;

Gawein is above all;

he meets Randolf,

and smites him to the skull;

he meets Dodinell, Kehedin, and Pounce.

her horse, and Pounce Antony kepte hem right short, and whan Gawein saugh hem at soche myschef he turned that wey, and made soche stightlynge a-monge hem that alle dide resorte bakke wheder thei wolde or noon, and these lept lightly to theire horse, ffor thei fonde I-nowe in the place, and than thei helde hem a-boute Gawein as longe as thei myght; but soone thei haue hym loste that thei ne wiste where he was be-come.

The knights of the Round table do great deeds as they seek Arthur,

who is fighting with Frolle and Pounce.

*[Fol. 144*b*.]

Gawein comes with his sword in his hand.

Frolle smites Arthur.

Gawein is angry,

and snatches a spear from a man's hand,

and smites Frolle,

Grete was the stour and harde bataile be-fore the castell of Trebes, for the knyghtes of the rounde table dide maistres as thei yede sechinge the kynge Arthur thourgh the bateile, but thei cowde hym not fynde for he was so fer from hem meddelinge with *ffrolle and Pounce Antony, that hadde in her companye vij^{c} knyghtes of the beste of her hoste, and ther the kynge Arthur hadde with hem sharp*e* medle; but noon ne durste abide his strokes, and yet he was with-outen shelde, and he griped his suerde in bothe hondes, and whom that he raught a full stroke was so harde smyten that noon armure was his warante fro deth, and whan Pounce Antony and ffrolle hym sien, a-noon thei ronne vpon hym, and he faught with hem full harde, and many he slough and maymed a-boute hy*m*, and than fill that Gawein com that way with suerde in honde, and thei than fledde on euery side, for his strokes durste not thei abide were thei neuer so hardy, and whan he saugh Arthur, his oncle, that faught with Pounce and ffrolle, and with hem xx knyghtes, and ffrolle hadde hy*m* smyten with a spere be-twene the shuldres that he made hym to enclyne on his horse nekke, and yef the spere hadde holden he hadde fallen to grounde; and whan Gawein saugh the stroke that he hadde yoven his vncle he was ny wode for ire, than he putte vp his suerde and spronge in a-monge the Almaynes, and raced a spere from a knyghtes hondes so felly that he fill to grounde, and ther-with rode to ffrolle, and whan he saugh hym come he glenched for the stroke and girde in to the thikkest presse, and Gawein hym chaced that lightly wolde not hym leve; but ffrolles knyghtes smote be-twene hem two, but Gawein hym smot so rudely thourgh the shelde and the hauberke a-gein the lifte shulder that the heed and the shafte shewed on that other side, and he swowned for peyne that he felte, and his men assembled a-boute hym, and grete doell made, for well thei wende he were deed delyuered.

so that he swoons.

Whan ffrolle was vp of swownynge he made the tronchon to be pulde oute, and to bynde his wounde that sore bledde, and lept on his horse as well as he myght for sore it hym greved, and as soone as Gawein saugh hym falle he returned to his vncle that full harde faught with Pounce Antony, and with the peple of Randolf, that was remounted; and Randolf peyned to a-venge the stroke that he hadde of Gawein. Ther-with com Gawein in a-monge hem, and smote a-boute hym on bothe sides, that he hath delyuered his vncle and dide soche maistres that noon durste his strokes a-bide, ne holde place a-gein hem two; than fill that Gawein mette Pounce Antony, and hym soche a stroke on the sholder that the swerde kutte the boon, and in the ffallinge he hurte hym sore, and than he smote Randolf thourgh the helme in to the flesshe that he fill to grounde all blody, that alle men wende he hadde ben deed; and than the batailes ruseden and were driven vpon the bataile of kynge Claudas that faught with leonce of Paerne and Pharien, and whan alle these baners and alle these bateiles were assembled, thei smyte thourgh the bateile of Arthur alle entermedled; and ther than was grete harme on bothe sides, ffor thei that fledden stynted at the bataile of Claudas, and whan Arthur saugh hem thus go he cleped Gawein, and seide, "feire nevew, holde yow a-boute me, *ffor me semeth that thei be goynge, and therfore kepe yow with me." "Sir," seide Gawein, "thei haue right to go, for the abidinge here for hem is not goode. But lete vs go faste after and helpe thei were discounfited." "In all haste than," seide the kynge; and while thei helde this talkynge, the Ban and the kynge Bohors com on with swerdes naked in her handes, all blody, and chaced and slough all that thei myght a-reche before hem; and of this happed well to Randolf and to Pounce, that thei were horsed a-gein er the chace was be-gonne; and

Frolle's wound is bound up and he leaps on his horse.

Gawein returns to his uncle;

he smites on both sides of him;

he fells Pounce Antony

and Randolf.

Claudas fights with Leonce and Pharien.

Arthur tells Gawein to stay with him.

*[Fol. 145*a*.]

Ban and Bohors come with their sword in their hands.

The four are joyful at their meeting; they meet Nascien, Adragain, and Hervy.

whan these foure frendes were mette thei made grete ioye, and than be-gan the chace after the other that fledden, and hem fill than a-uenture that thei mette thre of her felowes of the rounde table that well hadde don all the day, and that oon was Nascien, and that other Adragain, and the thridde hervy de Rivell, and than were thei vij full noble knyghtes and hardy; and it was past noone, and the sonne was high and hoot whan the chace be-gan, and kay fonde the kynges shelde on the grounde liggynge, and he it saugh he hadde grete drede that the kynge were deed, and made a squyer take the shelde, and badde hym folowe after hym, for he wolde loke yef he cowde finde kynge Arthur.

Kay finds the king's shield and fears he is dead;

he follows the chase till he comes to the battle of Claudas.

And euer he folowed the chace a-monge other that stynte, neuer till thei come vpon the bateile of Claudas ther thei stynte longe, ffor thei were moche peple, and kay folowed so the chace till he fonde the kynge Arthur and the kynge Ban and his brother, and he was right gladde that he hadde hem so founden, and yede to hange his shelde aboute his nekke; and than com Merlin with the dragon, and cried, "Now on hem, gentill knyghtes, for alle be thei discounfited." And Gawein hadde hente a spere, and spronge be-fore and smote the kynge Claudas, that he perced the shelde and hauberke, and thourgh the lifte flanke, and shof ther-on so harde that he bar hym to grounde vpright, and rode ouer hym on horse-bak, that Claudas swowned for sorowe; and Gawein leide honde to his swerde and smote in to the thikkest of the presse, and passed thourgh the stour as thikke as thei weren entassed, and his felowes spake moche of the prowesse that thei saugh hym do; and Claudas men ronne for to rescowe theire lorde the more and the lesse, and drough hym oute of the presse with grete peyne, and sette hym on horse, and ther-with com Agrauain, and Gueheret, and Gaheries, that wonderly well hadde don all the day, and whan thei saugh Claudas men assembled thei smote on hem so harde that thei made hem remeve place. Ther was the kynge Claudas a-gein born to grounde, and wounded in thre places with-oute the wounde he hadde of Gawein that

Merlin comes with the dragon.

Gawein smites Claudas so that he swoons.

The men of Claudas run to succour their lord. Agravain, Gueheret, and Gaheries do well all day.

Claudas is wounded again;

ner he was the deth, and was foule diffouled a-monge the horse feet; but yet his men haue rescowed hym, but firste hadde thei grete losse.

Grete was the bateile in the medowes be-fore Trebes ther as Claudas was vn-horsed, and remounted a-gein, and than fill that her bateiles sparbled a-brode, and that oon smote in a-monge that other, and tho departed Pounce Antony, and ffrolle the Duke of *Almayne, and Randolf of Gaule, and the kynge Claudas so euyll araied, that vn-nethe myght thei ride, and the other were not alle in hele, and whan thei saugh the losse and the damage vpon hem so grete thei were nygh wood for anger, and asked what wey thei sholden goo. "Sirs," seide Claudas, "I rede we go to the desert, for that is the beste repeire that we haue; and the nexte, and we shull go by the foreste in the shadowe vndir molait, and olde wey that I knowe; but I am so euell a-raied that euell may I endure to ride," and while thei spake thus com alle the bateiles to-broken that oon vpon the tother. Than be-gan the chace so grete, and the duste to a-rise, that thei knewe not whiche wey to turne; and the kynge Bans men ouer-threwe and slough so many, that all the felde was strowed full of deed bodyes and wounded. And the kynge Bohors men wente be-fore to the passages, that thei knewe as soone as thei saugh this discounfiture, and Arthurs men hem enchaced full harde and strayte and slowgh, and toke whom thei wolden, and ther the chace endured in this maner all the day till nyght; and ther thei hadde prisoners grete plente, and the kynge Claudas, and Pounce Antony, and Randolf, and ffrolle kepte hem-self as well as thei cowde; but litill peple thei ledde, ffor the booke seith that of lx^{M1} that thei were at the bygynnynge ne ascaped not the haluendell, ne thei ledde not x^{M1}, but fledde thourgh the wilde foreste to saue theire lyves.

the battle is great.

Pounce, Frolle, Randolf, and Claudas.

*[Fol. 145b.]

Claudas says they should go to the desert.

The chase begins to be great.

Ban's men overthrow many.

Bohors' men go to the passages;

the chase endures till night.

Claudas and the others save themselves, but not half of their people escape.

CHAPTER XXIII.

THE DREAM OF THE WIFE OF KING BAN; THE DREAM OF JULIUS CESAR, EMPEROR OF ROME.

The four princes are discomfited.

Thus were the foure princes discounfited, as ye haue herde be the witte of Merlin, and whan thei hadde chaced hem to the nyght, thei returned with grete plente of prisoners, and com be-fore the castell of Trebes, where thei were loigged in tentes and pavilouns of thiers that were discounfited, and made grete ioye and feste all the nyght, for thei fonde the loigginges well stuffed of all that neded to man, that nothinge failed, and whan thei were herberowed that nyght wacched the hoste Pharien and Grascien, that thei were not assailled of somme maner peple, and the kynge Ban and the kynge Bohors ledde the kynge Arthur and sir Gawein and the knyghtes of the rounde table, and the xl knyghtes that ye haue herde named, and the newe knyghtes in to the castell of Trebes where he made to hem grete ioye and feste, and were well iij^{c} knyghtes of the contrey; and that nyght were thei well serued of all that be-hoved. But who that was gladde or noon ther was noon like to the ioye of the two queenes that were sustres, whan thei saugh theire two lordes that thei hadde so longe desired for to seen, and thei were yonge ladyes, and of grete bewte; and gretly thei hem peyned to honour the kynge Arthur, and alle his companye, wher-to sholde I tarie to reherse theire seruise and the ese of softe beddes that thei hadde that nyght, ffor thei were serued richely as worthi men, and after soper thei wente to reste for ther-to hadde thei nede, ffor thei were wery for trauaile that thei hadde that day suffred; and Arthur and Gawein, and Segramor, and Ewein, and Dodinell, and Kay, and Antor lay in a feire chamber by hem-self, and with hem

There is joy and feast all night.

Pharien and Grascien watch.

Ban, Bohors, Arthur, Gawein, and the knights go into the castle.

The two queens are very glad.

They do honour to Arthur and his company.

Arthur and his fellows, with Merlin, are in a chamber by themselves.

*was Merlin that from hem that nyght wolde not departe; and the knyghtes of the rounde table, and the newe knyghtes, and the xl felowes layn in other chambers. And whan the kynge Ban and the kynge Bohors hadde hem loigged at ese thei wente to bedde with their wiffes, and lefte grete torches brennynge be-fore hem in chambres. That nyght shewed the two kynges grete love to theire wiffes. That nyght the queene Heleyne conceyved a childe by her lorde the kynge Ban, and whan thei were on slepe the wiff of kynge Ban fill in to a merveilouse drem that longe endured, that sore she was a-feerde whan she dide a-wake, ffor she semed that she was on a high mou*n*tayn, and saugh a-boute her grete plente of bestes of all maner kendes, that were in a feire pasture of grene grasse; and whan thei hadde longe tyme fedde hem on the herbes, ther roos a-monge hem a grete noyse, that thei ronne that oon vpon the tother to dryve oute of the pasture, and thei turned in to two pastures; and the two partes wente on oon side and hem ledde a grete lyon full huge and merveillouse, and on that other side where as were not so many by the haluendell was a grete crowned lyon maister leder, but he was not so grete as the tother. This lyon crowned hadde in his companye xviij lyonsewes crowned, whereof eche of hem hadde lordship*pe* and domynacion ouer the tother bestes that were turned to the lyon crowned; and that other lyon that was not crowned hadde with hym xxx^{ti} lyonsewes that alle were crowned, wherof eche of hem hadde domynacion of a parte of the bestes that were drawe toward the lyon that was vncrowned, and whan these beestes were thus disseuered and departed, she loked toward the crowned lyon, and saugh iiij^{C} boles that alle were teyed be the nekkes be-fore a grove, and ete at a rakke small grasse and herbes that was newe mowen; and for the lyon vn-crowned semed thei hadde better pasture with the crowned lyon than hadde he, he ran upon hym for envye for to be-reve hym his pasture, and toke a partie of his bestes that he made thre grete hepes, and thei lepe to fight with the crowned lyon that hadde his bestes departed in to xviij mou*n*cels, and

*[Fol. 146*a*.]

Ban and Bohors go to bed with their wives.

The wife of King Ban has a marvellous dream.

She seems on a high mountain, and sees great numbers of beasts.

One side is led by a great lion,

the other by a crowned lion.

400 bulls are with the uncrowned lion;

the crowned lion takes away some of his beasts;

they fight.

in eche mou*n*cell was a lyonsewe that hadde lordship*pe* ouer hem to gouerne hem and gide, and the iiij^c boles that weren full fierce and full prowde and the xviij mou*n*cels were with the crowned lyon, and smote be-twene hem the grettest bateile that she euer hadde seyn or herde speke; but in the fyn the bestes with the crowned lyon be-houed to turne bakke, and the crowned lyon was sore a-dredde to lese his pasture; and while these beestes fought thus, as ye haue herde, the lady semed that a grete leopart full fierce and the moste prowde that euer was seyn, com oute of hir right thigh, and wente through a grete valey that was right depe, and whan he was entred in to the valey, the lady semed that a grete blaste toke a-wey her sight that she wiste not where he was be-come; and whan she *hadde hym loste he turned toward the beestes that yet were fightinge, and saugh that the crowned lyon and his bestes hadde moche the werse, and whan the leopart com oute of a grete foreste that was sauage, he be-hilde the bataile of the beestes full longe; and whan he saugh the crowned lyon hadde the werse, he yede to helpe hym, and ran vpon the beestes of the lyon vn-crowned that faught with hem so fiercely, that he made hem resorte bakke, and as longe as he was a-gein hem myght thei neuer haue the better of the bataile, and whan the lyon that was vn-crowned saugh he myght not haue the better while he was a-gein hym, he made departe the bataile and a-queynte hym with the leopart, till he drough hym on his partye, and ledde hym with hym. And the thridde day be-gan a-gein the bateile of the beestes as it hadde be by-forn, and the leopart was with the lyon that was vn-crowned; and the beestes fought so to-geder, that the crowned lyon turned to discounfiture, and he made signe to the lyon with-oute crowne that he sholde go crye mercy, and he so dide, and so was made the pees be-twene the two lyou*n*s in soche maner that neuer after were in no wratthe to-geder; and than the lady be-hilde the leopart to wite yef she cowde hym knowe be eny wey, and at the laste hir thought it was the same that com oute of hir thigh that was so woxen and

The beasts with the crowned lion turn back.

A great leopard comes out of the lady's thigh.

*[Fol. 146*b*.]

The crowned lion has much the worst of the fight.

The leopard helps him.

The uncrowned lion gets the leopard on his side.

The crowned lion cries for mercy.

Peace is made between the lions.

a-mended, and hir thought that alle the beestes of the bloy Breteyne to hym enclyned, and all thei of Gannes and of Benoyk, and whan he hadde alle the lordship of these beestes she knewe not where he was be-comen.

The leopard has lordship over all the beasts.

Thus she a-boode all nyght in this a-vision till it was day, and than she a-woke all affraied of the merveile of hir dreme; and when the kynge Ban saugh hir so affraied he asked hir what her eyled. And she tolde hym hir dreme as she hadde seyn in hir slepe, and whan she hadde all tolde, the kynge seide ther-of sholde come but goode with goddes grace. Than thei a-roos and wente to the firste masse bothe the kynge and his wif as erly as thei myght; but thei wolde not a-wake the kynge Arthur so erly, ne his companye that slepten sanourly for the grete trauaile that thei hadde the day be-fore, and the kynge Ban praied oure lorde with goode herte that he wolde yeve hym the deth soche tyme as he wolde it aske. And this prayour made he many tymes, till on a nyght in his slepe a voyse seide that his prayour sholde be trewe, and that he sholde haue the deth as soone as he wolde it aske the same day; but ones be-fore sholde he synne dedly in a-voutre er he dyed, but ther-of no to be dismayed, for he sholde ther-of well a-corde with oure lorde, and he was right a goode man in his feith and creaunce.

The queen awakes.

She tells her dream to King Ban.

They go to the first mass.

Ban prays.

A voice speaks to him in his sleep.

In this dreme that the kynge Ban was, hym thought whan the voyse departed that it caste soche a crye as it hadde ben a thunder the grettest and merveillouse that euer he hadde herde, and he sprange ther-with so sore ther as he hilde the queene *in his armes, that nere he hadde fallen oute of the bedde that was grete and large; and the queene was ther-with so affraied that she myght speke no worde in a longe while, and the kynge hym-self so that he wiste not where he was. And whan the kynge was come a-gein in to his memorie, he a-roos and wente to cherche and was shriven, and than herde the servyse of oure lorde, and euer after as longe as he lyved was he confessed euery viij dayes, and was hoseled with the blissed sacrement, and so dide the kynge Bohors, his brother,

He hears a cry like thunder,

and wakes, nearly falling out of bed.

*[Fol. 147*a*.]

He and the queen are much afraid.

The king goes to church.

He confesses every eight days.

that was a full goode man, and of holy lyvinge. Thus was the kynge Arthur in the reame of Benoyk, he and his men a moneth, and ronne euery day in to Claudas londes, and wasted it so that longe tyme after myght he haue no power to a-rise vpon the kynge Ban; but after he a-roos a-geins hym by the force of Pounce Antony, and by the force of the kynge of Gaule, as ye shull heren here-after, and turmented so these two brethern that he lefte hem noo foote londe, that thei died in pouerte vpon the grounde, and theire yonge wiffes lefte with-oute comfort that after were nonnes veilled in the abbey of the royall mynster for drede of Claudas. Ne neuer after myght thei haue socour of the kynge Arthur, for he hadde so moche to done in his contrey that he myght not come at that tyme, and so the heires that thei be-gat were longe tyme after disherited. But in the ende kynge Arthur hem ther-to restored, and drof Claudas oute of the londe, and yaf hem the reame of Gaule, as the booke shall reherse. But now we shall reste to speke these thinges till tyme com ther-to and returne to telle how Merlin departed from the kynge Arthur, and how he certified the kynge Ban and his wif of dyuers dremes that thei hadden mette.

Arthur and his men overrun the lands of Claudas,

but afterwards, with the help of Pounce, Claudas defeats Bohors and Ban,

and their wives are obliged to become nuns;

but afterwards Arthur drives Claudas out of the land.

Upon a day com the kynge Ban to Merlin, and seide, "Sir, I am gretly in dispeir of a vision that is be-falle to me and to my wif, wherefore I haue grete nede of counseile; and ye be the wisest man that now liveth, and ther-fore yef it plese yow telle me what it be-tokeneth." "Certes, sir," seid Merlin, "in these two a-visions there is grete significacion, and it is no wonder though ye therof be dredfull." Than asked the kynge Arthur what a-visiou*n*s ben thei, and Merlin hym tolde euen as the kynge hadde mette in his dreme, that the kynge hym-self knewe well he seide trouthe. Whan the kynge Arthur and the kynge Bohors and sir Gawein herde the fierce wordes that Merlin hadde seide, thei merveiled sore what hit myght signyfie, and thoughten I-nough of many thinges, and than seide the kynge Arthur, "ye haue tolde what were the dremes. Now, yef it plese yow, telle vs the be-tokenynges,

Ban asks Merlin for an explanation of his wife's dreams and his own.

Merlin says they are of great signification,

and tells them the dreams.

They marvel, and ask for an explanation.

for it is a thinge that I wolde fayn knowe." "Sir," seide Merlin, "of all will I not to yow declare; ne I ought not to do. But I shall telle yow a partye that to yow apendeth," and than he gan to sey,

Merlin will tell a part.

"Kynge Ban," quod Merlin, "hit is trouthe that the lyon that is not crowned be-tokeneth a prince that is right riche and mighty of londes, and of frendes that shall *conquere xxix reames by force, and make come in his companye alle these xxix kynges crowned; and that other lyon that she saugh I-crowned that hadde the xviij lyonsewes signyfieth a kinge that is right myghty that shall have xviij kynges vnder hym, that alle shall be his liege men; and the iiij^{c} booles that she saugh be-tokeneth iiij^{c} knyghtes, that alle shull be assured that oon to the tother eche of hem to helpe, and not faile for no drede of deth, and alle shull thei be the kynges men, and this prince that I spake of firste shall come vpon this kynge for to conquere his londe. But he shall hym diffende as longe as he may, and whan this prince hath the better of this kynge, than shall come a knyght vn-knowen that longe hath be loste and helpe this kynge that the prince may not hym chace oute of the felde ne discounfite; and this leopart signyfieth this knyght, ffor like as the leopart fierce and prowde a-bove alle other bestes, so shall he be the beste knyght that shall be in hys tyme, and by that knyght shall the pees be made be-twene the prince and the kynge that so sore shull haue foughten. Now," quod Merlin, "haue ye herde your a-vision and the tokenynge, and now I moste departe for moche haue I to do in other places," and whan thei hadde I-herde the merveile of the dreme that Merlin hadde tolde, thei were more a-baisshed and more pensef than thei were be-fore; and than Arthur asked yef he wolde declare eny othir wise to theire vndirstondinge, and he seide, "Nay."

The un-crowned lion betokens a rich prince.

*[Fol. 147*b*.]

The crowned lion is a mighty king.

The 400 bulls are 400 knights.

The leopard signifies an unknown knight,

by whom peace will be made between the king and prince.

Merlin will not explain any more.

With that departed Merlin oute of the kynge Bans house, where-as the kynge Arthur was with grete companye of knyghtes, and this was on the feeste of seynt John; and Merlin wente to his love that a-boode hym at the welle, for to holde

He leaves Ban's house

and goes to his love,

who asks him of many things.

She wishes to make her father and mother sleep while Merlin is with her.

He teaches her how to do it.

*[Fol. 148*a*.]

He also teaches her three names.

He remains with her eight days,

and teaches her many wonderful things.

Merlin leaves

the couenaunt that she hadde with hym I-made, and whan she hym saugh she made to hym grete chere, and ledde hym in to the chambres so prively that he was not a-perceyved of no man; and she asked and enquered hym of many thinges, and he her taught all her askynge for the grete love that he hadde to hir; and whan she saugh he loved hir so wele, she asked hym how she myght make a frende for to slepe and not to a-wake till that she wolde, and Merlin knewe well all hir thought, and neuertheles he asked her whi she enquered and ye he wiste it wele I-nough. Quod she, "for I wolde make my fader a-slepe alle the tymes that I wolde speke with yow, whos name is Dionas, and my moder, that thei aparceyve neuer of yow ne me, ffor witeth it well thei wolden me sle yef thei parceyved of vs two ought." These wordes seide the mayden ofte to Merlin, and it fill on a day that thei were in a gardin by the fountayne hem to disporte, and were sette vpon an ympe, and the mayden made hym to slepe in hir lappe, and hilde her so with hym that Merlyn loved hir merveillously wele. Than the maiden required hym so that he taught hir to make oon slepe, and he knewe hir menynge right wele; but neuertheles he it hir taught, bothe that and many other thinges *ffor so wolde oure lorde; and he taught hir iij names that she wrote for to helpe hir-self at alle tymes whan she sholde with hym ly, that were full of grete force, ffor neuer as longe as thei were vpon hir, ne myght neuer man touche her flessly; and fro thens-forth she tysed euer Merlin to come speke with hir, for he ne hadde no power to dele with hir a-gein her will, and ther-fore it is seide that woman hath an art more than the deuell. Thus Merlin a-bode viij dayes full with the damesell; but we fynde not in no writinge that euer he required eny vilonye of hir ne of noon other; but she it douted sore whan she knewe what he was, and ther-fore she garnysshed hir*e* so a-gein hym; and in tho viij dayes he taught hir many wonderfull thinges that eny mortall herte cowde thinke of, thinges paste and of thinges that were don and seide, and a partye of that was to come; and she putte hem in writinge, and than Merlin departed from hire and com to

Benoyk, where the kynge Arthur rested, that gladde were whan thei saugh Merlin.

her and goes to Benoyk.

After that Merlin was repeired fro Benoyk as ye haue herde, Gawein with a grete companye of knyghtes and men of armes rode in to Claudas londes, and brake the bourghes and townes, and sette fire all a-boute, that alle the mene peple fledde the contrey, and these ronne be-fore the yates of de la desert and distroyed alle that thei myght fynde, and Claudas ne noon of hys companye ne durste not meve, and than departed from Claudas, Pounce Antonye, and ffrolle of Almayne, and Randolf the senescall of Gaule sory and wroth for the losse and damage that thei hadden, and swore that neuer sholde thei love the kynge Ban; and as soone as thei myght be a-venged thei sholde yelde hym his guerdon as for soche seruise. But some weneth to a-venge hym of his shame, and he doth it encrece. Thus lefte Claudas pore in the Citee de la desert, ffor he cowde not haue iij^{Ml} men on horsbak, but after he recouerd all his londe and was riche, as the storye shall declare here-after, be the helpe of the kynge of Gaule and of Pounce Antonye, that repeired from Rome with grete power; but it was in euell hour, for he was slayn by the handes of kynge Ban be-fore Trebes. But Claudas hadde so moche peple that he leide sege be-fore the Castell as ye shull here afterward, whan tyme cometh ther-to.

Gawein goes into the lands of Claudas, and burns the towns.

Pounce, Frolle, and Randolf leave Claudas. They swear to avenge him.

Claudas becomes rich afterwards.

Whan Gawein and his companye hadde wasted the londe and the contrey, and taken alle the richesse, he returned to Benoyk to his vncle; and Merlin was come from his love and boode after Gawein, and whan he was come thei were gladde whan thei hym syen, and for the grete richesse that thei broughten, and ioyfull weren of the victorie that thei hadden; and on the morowen thei toke theire wey towarde Gannes, a Citee plentevouse of all goodes, and ther thei were right well come, for it was right, and the kynge Bohors peyned hym to do hem honour and well to serue, as he that full well cowde *it do; and ther thei soiourned two dayes, and the thridde day thei rode forth to the Rochell, and ther entred the see. Whan the

When Gawein had wasted the land he returns to Benoyk.

They go to Gannes.

*[Fol. 148*b*.]

They ride to the Rochell and go to sea.

Merlin tells them to go on to Carmelide.

kynge Arthur, and the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and sir Gawein sholde entre in to the shippes thei toke Merlin in counseile, and Merlin hem comaunded that as soone as thei were a-rived at the porte, in no wise that thei tarye not but two dayes. But hastely go theire wey in to the reame of Carmelide, and lede with hem but thre thousande men of armes, and that thei be chosen of the beste of the hoste. "Ffeire frende," quod Arthur, "shull ye not come with vs; thenke ye not to be at oure mariage." "Sir," seide Merlin, "I haue a thinge for to do that I moste nede performe er I come in to the bloy Breteyne. But ye shull but litill space be in the reame of Carmelide, er I shall be with yow;" with that departed that oon from that other, and Arthur and hys companye wente towarde the see, but ther-of moste we reste a-while, and speke of Merlin and his auenturis.

He says he has something to do before he comes into the Bloy Breteyne.

He goes to the forests of Rome, where Julius Cesar is emperor, who Gawein afterwards slew.

As soone as Merlin was departed from Arthur, he wente in to the forestes of Rome that were thikke and depe, and in that tyme Julyus Cesar was Emperour; but it was not that Julyus Cesar that the deed knyght slough in his pavilion of Perce. But it was that Julius that Gawein, the nevew of kynge Arthur, slough in bateile vnder logres at the grete disconfiture that after was be-twene hym and the kynge Arthur that hym diffied, and what the cause was that Merlin[1] wente that wey, it is reson it be declared. This is[2] throuthe that this Julyus cezar hadde a wif that was of grete bewte, and she hadde with hir xij yonge men araied in gise of wymen, with whom she lay at alle tymes that the Emperour was oute of hir companye, ffor she was the most lecherouse woman of all Rome; and for the dredde that theire beerdes sholde growe she lete a-noynte her chynnes with certeyn oynementes made for the nones, and thei were clothed in longe traylinge robes, and theire heer longe waxen, in gise of maydenes and tressed at theire bakkes, that alle that hem saugh wende wele thei were wymen; and longe thei endured with the Empresse vn-knowen. In

Julius Cesar's wife has twelve young men disguised as women to attend her.

---

[1] The words "that Merlin" are repeated in the MS.

[2] "it" in the MS.

this tyme that the Emperesse ledde this lif, it fill that a mayden com to the Emp*er*ours court that was the doughter of a prince, and the name of this prince was matan, Duke of Almayne; this mayden com in semblannce of a squyer, and this matan the Duke ffrolle hadde disherited and driven out of his londe, and she com to serue the Emperour, ffor she wiste not where her fader ne moder were be comen, and she was moche and semly, and well shapen and demened hir well in all maners that a man ought, saf only eny vylonye, and neuer was she knowen but for a man by no semblante, and so a-boode with the Emperour, and was of grete prowesse, and peyned tendirly to serue well the Emperour and plesed hym so well that she was lorde and gouernour of hym and his housolde; and the Emperour hir loved so well that he made hir knyght atte a feeste of seint John with other yonge *squyers, wher-of were mo than CC, and after made hir stiward of all his londe. Than the newe knyghtes reised a quyntayne in the mede of noiron, and be-gonne the bourdinge grete and huge, and many ther were that dide right wele, but noon so well as dide Grisandoll, for so she lete hir be cleped; but in bapteme her name was Anable. This bourdinge endured all day on ende till euesonge that thei departed, and Grisandols bar a-wey the pris a-monge alle other, and whan the Emperour saugh Grisandoll of so grete prowesse, he made hym stiward of all his londe and comaunder a-bove alle that ther weren, and Grisandols was well beloved of riche and pore. And vpon a nyght after it fill that the Emperour lay in his chamber with the Emperesse; and whan he was a-slepe he hadde a vision that hym thought he saugh a sowe in his court that was right grete be-fore his paleys, and he hadde neuer seyn noon so grete ne so huge, and she hadde so grete bristelis on her bakke that it trayled on the grounde a fadome large, and hadde vpon hir heed a cercle that semed of fyn golde, and whan the Emperour a-vised hym wele hym thought that he hadde seyn hir other tymes, and that he hadde hir norisshed vp; but he durste not sey of trouthe that she were hys, and while he entended to a-vise hym on this thinge he saugh come oute of his chamber xij lyonsewes, and

A maiden comes to the court disguised as a squire.

She is well shapen,

and of great prowess.

The emperor makes her a knight.

*[Fol. 149*a*.]

Her name is Grisandol.

She bears away the prize.

The emperor makes her his steward.

The emperor has a dream. He sees a great sow,

with a circle of gold on her head.

Twelve lionsewes come to the sow.

The barons say that all of them should be burnt.

The emperor awakes.

He does not tell his dream, but goes to the minster to hear mass.

He and his barons sit down to meat.

He is pensive.

com in to the courte to the sowe, and assailed hir oon after a-nother, whan the Emperour saugh this merveile he asked his Barou*n*s what sholde he do with this sowe by whom these lyonsewes hadde thus leyn, and thei seide she was not worthi to be conuersaunt a-monge peple, ne that no man sholde ete nothinge that of hir come, and Iuged hir to be brente, and also the lyonsewes to-geder; and than a-wooke the Emperour sore affraied and pensif of this a-vision. Ne neuer to man ne to wif wolde he it telle, for he was full of grete wisdom. On the morowe as soone as he myght se the day, he a-roos and yede to the mynster to here messe, and whan he was come a-gein he fonde the barou*n*s assembled, and hadde herde messe at the mynster and the mete was all redy; and whan thei hadde waisshen thei satte to mete, and were well serued. Than fill that the Emperour fill in to a grete stodye, wher-fore all the courte was pensif and stille, and ther was noon that durste sey a worde for sore thei dredde for to wrathe the Emperour. But now we moste turne a litill to Merlin that was come in to the foreste of Romayne to certefie these thinges and these a-visiou*n*s.

Merlin comes to Rome and casts an enchantment.

He becomes a great hart, and runs through Rome.

*[Fol. 149*b*.]

The people get staves and chase him to the palace.

He runs into the palace and tumbles over the meat and drink.

While that the Emperour satte at his mete a-monge his Barou*n*s thus pensif, Merlin come in to the entre of Rome and caste an enchauntement merveilouse, ffor he be-com an herte the gretteste and the moste merveilouse that eny man hadde seyn, and hadde oon of his feet be-fore white, and hadde v braunches in the top, the grettest that euer hadde be seyn, and than he ran thourgh Rome so faste as all the worlde hadde hym chaced, and whan the peple saugh hym so renne, and saugh how it was an herte the noyse a-roos, and *the cry on alle partyes, and ronne after grete and small with staves and axes, and other wepen, and chaced hym thourgh the town, and he com to the maister gate of the paleys where-as the Emperour satte at his mete, and whan thei that serued herde the noyse of the peple, thei ronne to the wyndowes to herkene what it myght be, and a-noon thei saugh come rennynge the herte and all the peple after; and whan the herte com to the maister paleys he drof in at the yate sodeynly, and than he ran thourgh the tables a bandon and tombled mete and drynke all on an hepe, and be-gan ther-in a grete trouble of pottis and disshes; and whan the herte hadde longe turned ther-ynne he com be-fore the Emperour, and kneled and seide, "Julius cezar, Emperour of Rome, wheron thinkest thow, lete be thi stodyinge for it a-vaileth nought, ffor neuer of thyne a-vision shalt thow not knowe the trouthe be-fore that man that is sauage the certefie, and for nought is it that thow stodyest ther-on eny more." Than the herte hym dressed and saugh the yate of the paleyse cloos, and he caste his enchauntement that alle the dores and yates of the paleise opened so rudely that thei fly alle in peces, and the herte lept oute and fledde thourgh the town, and the chace be-gan a-gein after hym longe till that he com oute in to the playn feeldes; and than he dide vanysshe that noon sey where he be-com, and than thei returned a-gein, and whan the Emperour wiste the herte was ascaped he was wroth and lete crye thourgh the londe that who that myght brynge the sauage man or the herte sholde haue his feire doughter to wif, and half his reame, yef that he were gentill of birthe, and after his deth haue all; and lepe to horse many a vailaunt knyght and squyer of pris, and serched and sought thourgh many contrees, but all was for nought, ffor neuer cowde thei heere no tidinges of that thei sought, and whan thei myght no more do thei returned a-gein. But euer Grisandols serched thourgh the forestes, oon hour foreward, another bakke that so endured viij dayes full; and on a day as Grisandol was a-light vnder an oke for to praye oure lorde to helpe and to spede for to fynde that he sought, and as he was in his prayours the herte that hadde ben at Rome com be-fore hym and seide, "Auenable, thow chacest folye, ffor thow maist not spede of thy queste in no maner, but I shall telle the what thow shalt do. Purchese flessh newe and salt, and mylke and hony, and hoot breed newe bake, and bringe with the foure felowes, and a boy to turne the spite till it be I-nough rosted, and com in to this foreste by the moste vn-couthe weyes that thow canste fynde, and sette a table by the fier, and the breed, and the mylke, and the hony vpon the table,

He kneels before the emperor and tells him a savage man will explain his dream.

He then makes all the doors and gates fly open, and runs out through the town.

When he gets to the fields he vanishes. The emperor is angry; he says whoever brings the savage man or the hart shall marry his daughter. Many knights and squires seek through many countries.

Grisandol seeks through the forests; she prays for help.

The hart comes to her, and tells her what to do.

and hide the and thi companye a litile thens, and doute the nought that the sauage man will come."

Grisandol leaps to horse,

Than ran the herte a-grete walope thourgh the foreste, and Grisandol lept to horse and thought well on that the herte hadde seide and thought in his corage that it was som*m*e spirituell thinge that by hir right name hadde hir cleped, and thought well that of this *thinge sholde come some merveile; and Grisandol rode forth to a town nygh the foreste vij myle, and toke ther that was myster, and com in to the foreste ther as he hadde spoke with the herte as soone as he myght, and roode in to the deepe of the foreste, where-as he fonde a grett oke full of leves, and the place semed delitable, and he a-light and sette their*e* horse fer thens, and made a grete fier, and sette the flesshe to roste, and the smoke and the sauour spredde thourgh the foreste, that oon myght fele the sauour right fer; and than sette the table be the fier, and whan all was redy thei hidde hem in a bussh. And Merlin that all this knewe and that made all this to be don couertly that he were not knowen drough that wey that he were not knowen with a grete staffe in his nekke smytinge grete strokes from oke to oke, and was blakke and rough for rympled and longe berde, and bar-foote, and clothed in a rough pilche; and so he com to the fier, ther as the flessh was rosted, and whan the boy saugh hym come he was so a-ferde that he fledde nygh oute of his witte; and he this com to the fier and be-gan to chacche and frote a-boute the fier, and saugh the mete and than loked all a-boute hym and be-gan to rore lowde as a man wood oute of mynde, and than be-heilde, and saugh the cloth spredde and soche mete ther-on as ye haue herde, and after he be-heilde towarde the fier, and saugh the flesshe that the knaue hadde rosted that was tho I-nough, and raced it of with his hondes madly, and rente it a-sonder in peces, and wette it in mylke, and after in the hony, and ete as a wood man that nought ther lefte of the flessh; and than he eete of the hoot breed and hony that he was full and swollen grete, and somwhat was it colde, and he lay down by the fier and slepte; and whan Grisandol saugh he was on slepe she and hir felowes

*[Fol. 150*a*.]

and rides to a town.

She rides to a beautiful part of the forest, and makes a fire, and sets meat to roast.

Merlin comes as a savage man,

and frightens the boy.

He roars when he sees the meat,

and rends it asunder with his hands.

After eating he sleeps. Grisandol

com as softely as thei myght, and stale a-wey his staffe, and than thei bounde hym with a cheyne of Iren streytely a-boute the flankes, and than delyuered hym to oon of the companye by the tother ende of the cheyne; and whan he was so well bounde he a-wooke and lept vp lightly, and made semblaunt to take his staff as a wilde man, and Grisandolus griped hym in his armes right sore and hilde hym stille, and whan he saugh hym so bounde and taken, he hilde hym as shamefaste and mate; and than the horse were brought forth and he was sette vpon oon of hem, and bounden to the sadell with two bondes, and a man sette be-hynde hym that was bounde to hym and enbraced hym by the myddill, and so thei rode forth her wey, and the sauage man loked on Grisandolus that rode by hym, and be-gan to laugh right harde, and whan Grisandolus saugh hym laughe he approched ner and rode side by side, and a-queynted with hym the beste that he myght, and enquered and asked many thinges, but he ne wolde nought ansuere, and Grisandol asked why he lough, but he wolde not telle. Saf that he seide, "Creature formed of nature chaunged in to other forme fro hens-forth be-gilynge alle thinges venimouse as se[r]pent, holde thi pees, for nought will I telle the till that I com be-fore the Emperour*e*."

and her fellows steal away his staff and bind him with a chain of iron.

He wakes.

He is set on a horse.

He looks at Grisandolus and laughs,

but will not tell why he laughs till he comes to the emperor.

*With that the sauage man hilde his pees and spake no more, and rode forth to-geder, and Grisandolus of this that he hadde seide spake to his companye, and thei seide that he was wiser than he shewed, and that som grete merveile sholde falle in the londe. Thus thei ride spekynge of many thinges till thei passede be-fore an abbey, and saugh be-fore the yate moche pore peple a-bidinge almesse, and than the sauage man lowgh right lowde; and than Grisandol com toward hym and swetly praide hym to telle wherefore he lough, and he loked proudly on trauerse, and seide, "Ymage repaired and disnatured fro kynde, holde thy pees, ne enquere no mo thinges for nought will I telle the but be-fore the Emperour;" and whan Grisandolus this vndirstode, he lete hym be at that tyme and no more thinge hym asked, and here-of spake thei in many maners. Thus thei ride forth all day till nyght, and on the morowe till the hour of

*[Fol. 150*b*.] The savage man speaks no more.

They come to an abbey, and the savage man laughs, but will not tell why.

Grisandolus asks him no more.

They pass a chapel, and find a knight and squire.

prime, and fill that thei passed by-fore a chapell where a preste was toward masse, and fonde a knyght and a squyer heringe the seruyse; and whan Grisandolus saugh this, thei a-light alle the companye, and entred in to here the masse, and whan the knyght that was in the chapell saugh the man bounde with chaynes he hadde merveile what it myght be, and while the knyght be-heilde the man that was sauage, the squyer that was in an angle be-hynde the chapel dore come a-gein his lorde, and lifte vp his hande and yaf hym soche a flap that alle thei in the chapell myght it here, and than returned thider as he com fro all shamefaste of that he hadde don, and whan he was come in to his place he ne rofte no-thinge, for the shame lasted no lenger; but while he was in returnynge, and whan the sauage man saugh this, he be-gan to laugh right harde, and the knyght that was so smyten was so a-baisshed that he wiste not what to sey but suffred; and Grisandolus and the other companye merveiled sore what it myght be. A-noon after the squyer com a-gein to his lorde, and yaf hym soche a-nother stroke as he dide be-fore, and wente a-gein in to his place, and the sauage man hym be-hilde and be-gan to laughe right harde, and yef the knyght be-fore were a-baisshed, he was than moche more, and the squyer that hadde hym smyten returned sorowfull and pensif to the place that he com fro, and hilde hym-self foule disceyved of that he hadde don, and whan he was in his place he rought neuer, and Grisandolus, and the companye merveiled right sore, and herden oute the seruise be leyser, and in the mene while that thei thoughten vpon these thinges that thei hadde seyn, the squyer com the thridde tyme and smote his lorde sorer than he hadde don be-fore, and ther-at lowgh the wilde man sore, and be that was the masse at an ende, and than Grisandolus and alle wente oute of the chapell, and the squyer that hadde smyten his lorde com after and asked Grisandolus what man it was that thei hadde so bounde, and thei seide that thei were with Julius cezar, Emperour of Rome, and ledde to hym that sauage man that thei hadde founded in the foreste, for *to certefie of a vision that was shewed hym slepinge. "But, sir,"

The knight marvels when he sees the savage man.

The squire slaps his lord.

The savage man laughs.

Grisandolus marvels.

The squire gives his lord another stroke.

The savage man laughs again.

Grisandolus marvels.

The squire comes a third time, and smites his lord.

He asks Grisandolus who has got bound.

*[Fol. 151*a*.]

seide Grisandolus, "tell me wherefore hath this squyer yow smyten thre tymes, and ye ne spake no worde a-gein, haue ye soche a custome," and the knyght ansuerde that he sholde it wite in tyme comynge.

Grisandolus asks the knight why he had said nothing to his squire.

Than the knyght cleped his squyer and asked hym be-fore Grisandolus wherefore he hadde hym smyten, and he was shamefaste, and seide he wiste neuer, but so it fill in his corage, and the knyght hym asked yef he hadde now eny talent hym for to smyte, and the squyer seide he hadde leuer be deed, "but that," quod he, "it fill in my mynde that I myght not kepe me ther-fro," and Grisandolus lough of the merveile. Than seide the knyght that he wolde go to court with hem for to here what the sauage man wolde sey, and with that thei rode forth on her wey, and Grisandolus by the sauage mannes side, and whan thei hadde a-while riden, he asked the wilde man wherfore he lough so thre tymes whan the squyer smote his lorde, and he loked on hir a trauerse, and seide, "Ymage repeyred semblaunce of creature wherby men ben slayn and diffouled rasour trenchaunt ffountayne coraunt that neuer is full of no springes holde thy pees, and nothinge of me enquere, but be-fore the Emperour, for nought will I telle the," and whan that Grisandolus vndirstode the fell wordes that he spake, he was all a-baisshed and pensef, and durste not no more enquere, and rode forth till thei come to Rome, and whan thei entred in to the town, and the peple hem parceyved thei wente all a-geins hym for to se the man that was sauage, and the noyse was grete of the peple that folowed, and be-hilde his facion as longe as thei myght, and so thei conveyed hym to the paleise, and whan the Emperour herde the tidinges he com hem a-geins, and mette with hem comynge vpon the greces, and than com Grisandolus be-fore the Emperour, and seide, "Sir, haue here the man that is sauage that I to yow here yelde, and kepe ye hym fro hens-forth for moche peyne haue I hadde with hym," and the Emperour seide he wolde hem well guerdon, and the man sholde be well kepte, and than he sente to seche a smyth to bynde hym in chaynes and feteres, and the sauage man badde hym ther-of not to entermete, "ffor wite it

The knight asks his squire why he smote him.

He says he could not keep himself from doing so.

The knight says he will go to court to hear what the savage man has to say.

The savage tells Grisandolus to hold his peace.

They enter Rome,

and the people follow them to the palace.

The emperor meets them. Grisandolus gives the savage to the emperor, who sends for a smith to bind him in chains.

right well," quod he, "I will not go with-oute youre leve," and the Emperour hym asked how he ther-of sholde be sure, and he seide he wolde hym asure by his cristyndome. Quod the Emperour, "Art thow than cristin?" and he seide, "Ye with-oute faile." "How were thow than baptized," seide the Emperour, "whan thow art so wilde." "That shall I telle yow," quod he, "This is the trouthe that my moder on a day com from the market of a town, and it was late whan she entred in to the foreste of brocheland, and wente oute her way so fer that the same nyght be-hoved hir to lye in the foreste, and whan she saugh she was so a-lone be hir-self she was a-feerde *and lay down vnder an oke and fill a-slepe, and than com a sauage man oute of the foreste and by hir lay, be-cause she was sool by hir-self. Durste she not hym diffende, ffor a woman a-loone is feerfull, and that nyght was I be-geten on my moder, and whan she was repeired hom, she was full pensif longe tyme, till that she knewe verily that she was with childe, and bar me so till I was born in to this worlde and was baptised in a fonte, and dide me norishe till I was grete, and as soone as I cowde lyve with-outen hir, I wente in to the grete forestes for by the nature of my fader be-houeth me thider to repeire, and for that he was sauage I am thus wilde. Now haue ye herde what I am." "So god me helpe," seide the Emperour, "neuer for me shalt thow be putte in feteres ne in Irenes seth thow wilt me graunte that thow will not go with-oute my leve." Than tolde Grisandolus how he dide laugh be-fore the abbey and in the chapell, for the squyer that hadde smyten his maister, and the dyuerse wordes that he hadde spoken, whan he asked where-fore he dide laugh, and he seide that neuer wolde he nought sey till he com be-fore yow, and now is he here, and therfore aske hym why he hath so often laughed by the wey, and than the Emperour hym asked, and he seide he sholde it knowe all in tyme, but sendeth first for all youre barouns and than shall I telle yow that and other thinges, with that entred the Emperour in to his chamber and the sauage man and his prive counseile, and ther thei rested and disported, and spake of

The savage says that he is a Christian.

His mother lost her way in the forest of Brocheland,

*[Fol. 151*b*.]

and a savage man came to her.

She bore a child, who was baptized.

When he was old enough to live without her he went to the forest.

Grisandolus tells the emperor how the savage man laughed.

The emperor asks him why he laughed. He says he will tell in time.

many thinges, and on the morowe the Emperour sente to seche his barou*n*s hem that he supposed sonest to fynde, and than thei come a-noon bothe oon and other from alle partyes.

On the morrow the emperor sends for his barons.

On the fourthe day after the sauage man was comen, where that the lordes were assembled in the maister paleise, and the Emperour [brought in] this sauage man and made hym to sitte down by hym, and whan the barou*n*s hadde I-nough hym beholden thei asked why he hadde for hem sente, and he tolde hem for a vision that hym be-fill in his slepynge, "ffor I will that it be expowned be-fore yow," and thei seide that the significacion wolde thei gladly heren. Than the Emperour comaunded this man to telle the cause why that he was sought, and he ansuerde and seide that he wolde nothinge telle till that the Emperesse and hir xij maydones were comen, and she com a-noon with gladde semblaunce as she that yaf no force of nothinge that myght be-falle, whan the Emperesse and hir xij maydones were come a-monge the barou*n*s, the lordes roos a-gein hir and dide hir reuerence, and as soone as the sauage man hir saugh comynge he turned his heed in trauerse and be-gan to laughe as in scorne, and whan he hadde a-while laughed he loked on the Emp*er*our stadfastly, *and than on Grisandolus, and than on the Emperesse, and than on hir xij Maydenys that weren with hir, and than he turned toward the barou*n*s, and be-gan to laughe right lowde as it were in dispite, whan the Emperour saugh hym so laughe he preied hym to telle that he hadde in couenaunt, and whi that he lough now and other tymes, w*ith* that he stode vp and seide to the Emperour so lowde that all myght it heren. "Sir, yef ye me graunte as trewe Emperour be-fore youre barou*n*s that ben here that I shall not be the werse ne no harme to me therfore shall come, and that ye will yeve me leve as soone as I haue yow certefied of youre a-vision I shall telle yow the trewe significacion," and the Emperour hym ansuerde and graunted that noon harme ne an*n*oye to hym sholde be don, ne that he sholde come hym no magre to telle hym that he was so desirouse for to heren, and that he sholde haue leve to go whan hym liste. "But I p*ra*ye the telle me myn a-vision

On the fourth day the lords are assembled in the palace.

The emperor tells the man to expound his dream; but he will not till the empress and her maidens have come.

The lords rise when they enter.

The savage man laughs.

*[Fol. 152*a*.]

The emperor prays him to tell why he laughs.

The savage stands up,

and says he will tell the vision and its signification, if no harm is done to him.

The emperor

prays him to tell.

in audience of alle my barouns what it was, and than shall I the better be-leve the significacion whan thow haste me tolde, of that I neuer spake to no creature," and he ansuerde as for that sholde hym not greve, and ther-fore wolde he not lette and than he be-gan the a-vision.

The savage tells the dream.

"Sir," seide the sauage man to the Emperour, "it fill on a nyght that ye lay by youre wif that is here, and whan ye were a-slepe ye thought ye saugh be-fore yow a sowe that was feire and smothe, and the heer that she hadde on her bakke was so longe that it trailed to grounde more than a fadome, and on hir heed she hadde a cercle of goolde bright shynynge, and yow semed that ye hadde norisshed that sowe in youre house, but ye cowde it not verily knowe, and ther-with yow semed that ye hadde hir othir tymes sein, and whan ye hadde longe thought on this thinge ye saugh come oute of youre chamber xij lyonsewes full feire and smothe; and thei com by the halle thourgh the courte to the sowe and lay by hir oon after a-nother, and whan thei hadde do that thei wolde thei wente a-gein in to youre chamber; than com ye to youre barouns and hem asked what sholde be do with this sowe, that ye saugh thus demened, and the barouns and alle the peple seide she was nothinge trewe, and thei Iuged to be brent, bothe the sowe and the xij lyonsewes, and than was the fier made redy grete and merveillouse in this courte, and ther-ynne was the sowe brente and the xij lyonsewes. Now haue ye herde youre sweuene in the same forme as ye it saugh in your slepinge, and yef ye se that I haue eny thinge mys-taken, sey it be-fore your barouns." And the Emperour seide he hadde of nothinge failed.

Merlin asks the emperor if he has mistaken anything.

The barons ask for the signification of the dream.

"Sir Emperour," seide the barouns, "seth that he hath seide what was youre a-vision, hit is to be-leve the significacion yef he will it telle, and it is a thinge that *wolde gladly heren." "Certes," seide the man, "I shall it declare to yow so openly that ye may it se, and knowe a-pertly that I yow shall sey. The grete sowe that ye saugh signifieth my lady the Emperesse, youre wif, that is ther; and the longe heer that she hadde on hir bakke betokeneth the longe robes that she is ynne

*[Fol. 152b.]

Merlin declares it.

The great sow signifies the empress.

I-clothed; and the sercle that ye saugh on her heed shynynge be-tokeneth the crowne of goolde that ye made her with to be crowned; and yef it be youre plesier I will no more sey at this tyme." "Certes," seide the Emperour, "yow be-hoveth to sey all as it is yef ye will be quyte of youre promyse." "Certes," seide man, "than shall I telle yow. The xij lyonsewes that ye saugh come oute of a chamber, betokeneth the xij maydenes that be ther with the Emperesse; and knowe it for very trouthe that thei be no wymen for it be men, and there-fore make hem be dispoiled, and ye shull se the trouthe; and as ofte as ye go oute of the town she maketh hem serue in hir chamber and in hir bedde. Now haue ye herde youre a-vision and the significacion, and ye may se and knowe yef that I haue seide to yow the soth."

The circle on her head was the crown.

The twelve maidens are not women but men.

Whan the Emperour vnderstode the vntrouthe that his wif hadde don, he was so a-baisshed that he spake no worde a longe while; and than he spake and seide that that wolde he soone knowe, and than he cleped Grisandolus, and seide, "Dispoile mo tho dameseles, for I will that alle the barou*n*s that be here-ynne knowe the trouthe;" and a-noon Grisandolus and other lept forth and dispoiled hem be-fore the Emperour and his barou*n*s, and fonde hem formed alle as other men weren; and than the Emperour was so wroth that he wiste not what to do. Than he made his oth that a-noon ther sholde be do Iustice soche as was right to be a-warded; and the barou*n*s Iuged seth she hadde don hir lorde soche vntrouthe that she sholde be brente and the harlott*es* hanged, and some seide that thei sholde be flayn all quyk; but in the ende thei acorded that thei sholde be brente in a fier, and a-noon as the Emperour herde the Iugement of the barou*n*s, he comaunded to make the fier in the place, and a-noon it was don, and thei were bounde hande and foot, and made hem to be caste in to the brynynge fier, and in short tyme thei were alle brent, ffor the fier was grete and huge. Thus toke Emperour vengaunce of his wif, and grete was the renomede that peple of hym spake whan it was knowen.

The emperor does not speak for a long while.

He tells Grisandolus to despoil the damsels.

The barons judge that the queen should be burnt, and the harlots hanged.

They are all burnt.

The barons think the savage man very wise.

Whan the Emperesse was brente, and thei that she hadde made hir maydenes, the barouns returned a-gein to the Emperour, and seide oon to a-nother that the sauage man was right wise and avisee, ffor yet shall he sey some other thinges wher-of shall come some grete merveile vs, and to all the worlde; and the Emperour hym-self seide that he hadde seide his a-vision as it was in trouthe. Thus wiste the Emperour the lyvinge of his wif, and than the Emperour hym called, and asked yef he wolde sey eny more, and he seide, "Ye *yef he asked hym whereof." "I wolde wite," quod he, "wherefore thow didist laughe whan thow were in the f[o]reste, and loked on Grisandolus, and also whan thow were ledde be-fore an abbey, and in the chapell whan the squyer smote his lorde, and why thow seidest tho wordes to my stiwarde whan he asked why thow loughe, and after telle me what be-tokeneth the laughter here-ynne whan thow saugh the Emperesse come." "Sir," seide the sauage man, "I shall telle yow I-nowgh. I do yow to wite that the firste laughter that I made was for that a woman hadde me taken by her engyn, that no man cowde not do; and wite ye well that Grisandolus is the beste maiden and the trewest with-ynne youre reame, and therefore was it that I lough; and the laughter that I made be-fore the abbey, was for ther is vnder erthe be-fore the yate the grettest tresour hidde that eny man knoweth, and therfore I lough for that it was vnder feet of hem that a-boode after the almesse, ffor more richesse is in that tresour than alle the monkes beth worth, and all the abbey, and all that ther-to be-longeth, and the pore peple that ther-on stoden cowde it not take; and Avenable youre stywarde, that Grisandolus doth her clepen, saugh that I lowgh and asked me wherefore, and the couerte wordes that I to hir spake was for that she was chaunged in to the fourme of man, and hadde take a-nothir habite than hir owne; and alle the wordes that I spake thei ben trewe, ffor by woman is many a man disceyved, and therefore I cleped hir disceyaunt for by women ben many townes sonken and brent, and many a riche londe wasted and exiled, and moche peple slayn; but I sey it not for noon euell that is in hir, and

The emperor asks if he *[Fol. 153a.] will say any more, and why he laughed when the squire smote his master.

Merlin laughed because of the woman. Grisandolus is the best maiden in the land.

A treasure is under the earth before the abbey gate.

The savage man laughed because Grisandolus was habited as a man.

thow thy-self maist well perceyve that be women be many worthi men shamed and wratthed that longe haue loued to-geder, yef it were not for debate of women; but now rech the not for thy wif, that thou haste distroied, ffor she hath it well deserued, and haue therfore no mystrust to other, for as longe as the worlde endureth it doth but apeire, and all that cometh to hem be the grete synne of luxure that in hem is closeth; ffor woman is of that nature, and of that disire, that whan she hath the moste worthi man of the worlde to hir lorde, she weneth she haue the werste, and wite ye fro whens this cometh of the grete fragelite that is in hem; and the foule corage and the foule thought that thei haue where thei may beste hir volunte acomplish; but therfore be not wroth, for ther ben in the worlde that ben full trewe, and yef thow haue be desceyved of thyn, yet shall thow haue soche oon that is worthy to be Emperesse, and to resceyve that high dignite, and yef thow wilt it be-leve thow shalt wynne ther-on more than thowe shalt lese. But the p*ro*phesie seith that the grete dragon shall come fro Rome that wolde distroie the reame of the grete Breteyne and put it in his subieccion; and the fierce lyon crowned maugre the diffence of the turtill that the dragon hath norisshed vndir his wynges, and as soone as the grete dragon shall *meve to go to the grete Breteigne, the lyon crowned shall come hym a-geins, and shull fight so to-geder, that a fierce bole that is prowde, whiche the lyon shall bringe with hym shall smyte so the dragon with oon of his hornes that he shall falle down deed, and therby shall be delyuered the grete lyon. But I will not telle the significacion of these wordes, for I owe it nought to do, but all this shall falle in thy tyme, and therfore be well ware of euell counseile, for grete part longeth to the. The tother laughter that I made in the chapell was not for the buffetes that the squyer yaf his lorde, but for the be-tokenynges that ther-ynne ben. In the same place ther the squyer stode was entred, and yet ther is vndir his feet a merveillouse tresour. The firste buffet that the squyer yaf his lorde signifieth that for avoure the wo[r]lde be-cometh so prowde, that he douteth nother god ne his soule, no

He advises the emperor to marry her.

The nature of woman.

Grisandolus is worthy to be empress.

The great dragon will come from Rome to destroy Breteyne.

*[Fol. 153*b*.]

The crowned lion will come against him.

The bull will kill the dragon.

The savage man will not tell the signification of these words.

The rich oppress the poor.

The usurer delights in riches.

The men of law sell their neighbours.

The squire smote his master against his will.

God does not will that men should be proud of worldly riches.

The empress and her twelve harlots.

*[Fol. 154*a*.]

The emperor's daughter is his without doubt.

more than the squyer douted to smyte his maister, but the riche wolde oppresse the pore vnder theire feet; and that make these vntrewe riche peple whan enythinge cometh to hem be myschaunce thei swere and stare and sey maugre haue god for his yeftes, and wite ye what maketh this nothinge but pride of richesse. The seconde buffet be-tokeneth the riche vserer that deliteth in his richesse and goth s[c]ornynge his pore nyghebours that be nedy whan thei come to hym ought for to borough, and the vserer so leneth hem litill and litill that at laste thei moste selle theire heritage to hym that so longe hath it coveyted. The thridde buffet signifieth these false pletours, men of lawe, that sellen and a-peire theire neyghbours be-hinde here bakke for couetise and envye of that thei se hem thrive, and for thei be not in her daungier, ffor whan these laweers sen that her neighbours don hem not grete reverence and servise, thei thenken and a-spien how thei may hem a-noyen in eny wise, and to make hem lese that thei haue, and therfore men seyn an olde sawe, who hath a goode neighbour hath goode morowe. Now haue ye herde the significaciou*n*s why the buffetes were yoven, but the squyer delited nothinge ther-ynne whan that he smote his maister, but he wiste not fro whens this corage to hym com. But god that is almyghty wolde haue it to be shewed in exsample that men sholde not be prowde for worldly richesse, for to the couetouse theire richesse doth hem but harme that slepen in auerice, and for-yete god and don the werkes of the deuell, that ledeth hem to euerlastinge deth, and all is for the grete delite that thei haue in richesse. But now shall I telle yow whi I lough to day whan I saugh the Emperesse comynge and hir lechours, I do yow to wite that it was but for dispite, ffor I saugh that she was youre wif, and hadde oon of the worthiest men of the worlde that eny man knoweth of youre yowthe, and she hadde take these xij harlott*es* and wende *euer for to haue ledde this foly all hir lif; and ther-fore hadde I grete dispite for the love of yow and of youre doughter, ffor she is youre doughter with-oute doute, and draweth litill after hir moder. Now haue ye herde alle the laughtres and wherefore thei were, and therfore may I go yef it be youre plesier." "Now a-bide a litill," seide the Emperour, "and telle vs the trouthe of Grisandolus, and also we shull sende to digge after the tresour for I will wite yef it be trewe," and he ther-to dide assent; than the Emperour comaunded that Grisandolus were sought, and so she was founden oon of the feirest maydenes that neded to enquere in eny londe, and whan the Emperour knewe that Grisandolus, his stiwarde, that longe hadde hym serued was a woman, he blissed hym for the wonder that he ther-of hadde. Than he asked the sauage man counseile what he sholde do of that he hadde promysed to yeve his doughter, and half his reame, ffor loth he was to falsen his promyse of couenaunt. "I shall telle yow," quod the man, "what ye shull do yef ye will do my counseile, and wite it well, it is the beste that eny man can yeven." "Sey on, than," seide Emperour, "ffor what counseile that thow yevest I shall it well be-leve, for I haue founde thy seyinge trewe." Than seide the sauage man, "Ye shall take Avenable to be yowre wif, and wite ye whos doughter she is. She is doughter to the Duke matan that the Duke ffrolle hath disherited and driven oute[1] of his londe for envye with grete wronge, and he and his wif be fledde, and his sone, that is a feire yonge squyer, in to Province in to a riche town that is called monpellier; and sende to seche hem and yelde hem her heritage that thei haue loste with wronge, and make the mariage of youre doughter and Auenables brother that is so feire, and ye may her no better be setten." And whan the Barou*n*s vndirstode that the sauage man seide, thei spoke moche a-monge hem, and seiden in the ende that the Emperour myght do no better after theire advis; and than the Emp*er*our asked his name, and what he was, and the hert that so pertly spake vnto hym, and than seide he, "Sir, of that enquere no more, ffor it is a thinge the more ye desire to knowe the lesse shall ye witen." "Ffor sothe," seide the Emperour, "now suppose I well what it may be, but shull ye telle us eny more." "Ye," quod he, "I tolde yow right now of the lyon crowned and of the lyon

Theyseek for Grisandolus, and find her to be a fair maiden.

The emperor asks what he is to do about his daughter.

The emperor is to marry Avenable,

and to send and seek her family.

The emperor asks the name of the savage man;

but he will not tell,

but will tell of the lions,

---

[1] The word "oute" is repeated in the MS.

volage, but now shall I telle yow in other manere, for that ye shull be better remembred whan tyme cometh. Emperour of Rome," quod he, "this is trewe prophesie that the grete boor of Rome that is signified by the grete dragon, shall go a-gein the lyon crowned of the bloy Breteyne a-gein the counseile of the turtell that hath an heed of golde and longe hath ben his love. But the boor shall be so full of pride that he will nothir be-leve, but shall go with so grete pride with all his generacion in to the parties *of Gaule to fight with the crowned lyon that shall come a-geins hym with alle his beestes. Ther shall be grete slaughter of beestes on bothe sides. Than shall oon of the fawnes of the lyon crowned sle the grete boor, and ther-fore I praye the yef thow wilt ought do for me er I departe that thow do nothinge a-gein the volunte of thy wif, after that day that thow haste her wedded, and wite well yef thow do thus thow shalt haue profite, and now I take my leve for here haue I no more to do." And the Emperour be-taught hym to god seth it myght no better be, and ther-with he wente on his wey, and whan he com to the halle dore he wrote letteres on the lyntell of the dore in grewe that seide, "Be it knowe to alle tho that these letteres reden, that the sauage man that spake to the Emperour and expounded his dreme, hit was Merlin of Northumberlande, and the hert brancus with xv braunches that spake to hym in his halle at mete a-monge alle his knyght*es*, and was chaced thourgh the Citee of Rome, that spake to Auenable in the foreste whan he tolde hir how she sholde fynde the man sauage; and lete the Emperour well wite that Merlin is maister counseller to kynge Arthur of the grete Breteyne." And than he departed and spake no mo wordes. Whan this sauage man was departed from the Emperour, he sente in to Province to seche the fader and the moder of Auenable and Patrik hir brother, in the town of monpeller, whider as thei were fledde; and a-noon thei com gladde and ioyfull of the auenture that god hadde hem sente, and whan thei were comen thei hadde grete ioye of theire doughter that thei wende neuer to haue seyn. Than thei a-bide with the Emperour longe tyme, and the Emperour restored hem

The dragon of Rome will go against the crowned lion of Bloy Breteyne,

*[Fol. 154*b*.]

and will be slain.

The savage man prays the emperor to do nothing against the wish of his wife.

He writes letters on the lintel of the door.

The savage man and the hart were both Merlin.

The emperor sends to seek the father and mother of Avenable, and Patrik, her brother.

He restores

to here herytage that ffrolle hadde hem be-rafte. But as ffrolle myght he it a-gein seide, ffor he was of grete power, and so endured the werre longe tyme. But in the ende the Emperour made the pees, and than he maried his doughter to Patrik, and hym-self toke Auenable to his wif, and grete was the ioye and the feeste that the Barou*n*s maden, for moche was she be-loved bothe of riche and pore, and as the Emperour was in ioye and deduyt of his newe spouse, ther com a massage to hym oute of Greece for a discorde that was be-twene the barou*n*s of Greese and the Emperour Adrian, that sholde hem Iustise, ffor the Emperour Adrian myght vn-ethe ride for febilnesse of age, and whan the messagers hadde spoke to the Emperour and don all that he sholde, he toke his leve to go, and as he caste vp his yie vpon the halle dore and saugh the letteres that Merlin hadde writen in griewe, and a-noon he redde hem lightly, and than he gan to laughe right harde, and shewed hem to the Emperour, and seide, "Sir, is this trewe that these lettres seyn." "What sey thei," quod the Emperour, "wote ye neuer." Quod the messager, "Thei seyn that he that tolde yow the vntrouthe of youre wif, and youre dreme expowned, and spake to yow in gise of an herte, that it was Merlin of Northumbirlande, the maister counseller of kynge Arthur of Breteyne, by whos counseile ye haue spoused youre wif Auenable." And whan the Emperour vndirstode *these wordes he merveiled sore; and than be-fill a grete merveile, whereof alle that were ther-ynne hadde wonder, and the Emperour hym-self; ffor as soone as the Emperour herde what the letteres mente, a-noon the letteres vanysshed so sodeynly that no man wiste how, and ther-of hadde thei grete wonder, and moche it was spoken of thourgh the contrey. But now cesseth the tale of the Emperour of Rome that a-bode in his paleise gladde and myry with his wif Auenable, and ledde goode lif longe tyme, for bothe were thei yonge peple, ffor the Emperour was but xxviij yere of age at that hour, and his wif was xxij, and yef thei ledde myri lif, yet Patrik and ffoldate, the doughter of the Emperour, lyved in more delite. But now returneth the tale a-gein to speke of Merlin.

their heritage to them.

He marries his daughter to Patrik, and takes Avenable as his wife.

Discord between the barons of Greece and the Emperor Adrian.

A messenger reads the letters that Merlin wrote, and laughs.

He read them to the emperor.

*[Fol. 155*a*.] When the emperor has heard them, the letters disappear.

The emperor and his wife live together happily;

as do Patrik and Foldate.

CHAPTER XXIV.

BATTLE BETWEEN THE TWELVE KINGS AND THE SAISNES BEFORE THE CITY OF CLARENCE.

Merlin leaves the emperor, and comes to Blase, and tells what he had done in Rome, and of the twelve kings before the city of Clarence, and of the battle before Trebes, and how Ban's wife was with child. The twelve princes assembled to fight the Saisnes.

Here seith the book that as soone as Merlin was departed from Julius sezar, the Emperour of Rome, to whom he hadde tolde his a-vision, he toke his wey in to the grete Breteyne, and com in to Northumbirlande to Blaase his maister, that gladde was whan that he hym saugh, but he was but litill while in comynge, ffor he com theder in half a day and oon nyght ffor he was full of grete art, and than he tolde hym all these thinges that were be-falle in Rome, and after he tolde hym how xij kynges and a Duke were assembled with xl^{Ml} men for to go fight with the saisnes be-fore the Citee of Clarence, and tolde hym of the grete bateile that hadde be vnder the Castell of Trebes in the reame of Benoyk of the kynge Arthur a-gein the Almaynes, and a-gein the Romayns, and a-gein the frenshe men of Gaule and of la desert, and how alle were discounfited, and how the kynge Ban hadde geten his wif with childe, soche oon that shall surmounte alle the knyghtes that shull be in his tyme; and whan he hadde all tolde, and Blaase hadde all writen in his book, where thourgh we haue yet the knowynge ther-of. But now we moste reste of Merlin and of Blaase till a-nother tyme, and speke of the xij princes that were assembled as ye haue herde be-fore for to fight with the saisnes.

They ride forth by night. The first ward led by Aguysans; the second by Tradilivauns;

Whan these xij kynges and this Duke weren assembled with as moche peple as thei myght haue, thei toke counseile, and ordeyned her wardes, and than rode forth by nygh*t* that thei were not seyn of no peple. The firste warde ledde Aguysans, the kynge de Cent chiualiers, that was a full noble knygh*t*, vaillaunt and hardy, and right stronge as of his yowthe, and hadde in his companye vij^{Ml} men of armes. The seconde warde ledde the kynge Tradiliuauns of North-Wales that was a full goode man and a trewe, and with hym vij^{Ml} men of armes. The thridde warde ledde[1] the kynge Belynans of South wales, his brother, that was also a noble knyght with vij^{Ml} men of armes. The fourthe warde ledde the kynge Carados brenbas with v^{Ml} men. The fithe warde ledde the kynge *Brangore with vij^{Ml} men, and the vj^{e} ledde the Duke Escam of Cambenyk with vij^{Ml} men. The seuenthe warde ledde the kynge Clarion, of Northumbirlonde, with vij^{Ml} men. The viij warde ledde the kynge ydiers of Cornewaile, that was a feire knyght and an amerouse, and welbeloued a-monge ladyes with vij^{Ml} men, and the ix^{e} ledde the kynge Vrien that was a noble knyght, and a sure of his body; but sory he was and wroth for his sones that he hadde loste, and full sore was he greved in the werre so that he hadde not but iij^{Ml} men of armes that he brought in his companye, but thei were bolde and hardy. The tenthe warde ledde the kynge Aguysans of Scotlonde, that was wonte to be so riche a londe, and so plentevouse of goode men, but he hath loste many in the werre that he hadde but thre^{Ml} men of armes. The xj^{e} warde ledde the kynge Loot of Orkanye, and hadde all loste bothe wif, and childeren, and all his feire meyne, wherfore he was so sorowfull that he hadde leuer dye than lyve, ffor so was he greved with the werre that his peple was but small, but tho were orped knyghtes, and the beste of all the hoste for to endure and suffre *tra*ueile of armes. The xij^{the} warde ledde the kynge Ventres of Garlot, that was a full noble knyght and a sure, and he was full wroth in herte for his sone that hadde hym lefte that he loved so hertely, and hadde gretly be greved with saisnes, that he hadde in his companye but two thousande men and thre hundred, what on horsebak and on foote; and whan her peple were disseuered and her wardes devided, the barou*n*s assembled and asked oon of a-nother how thei sholden don, and than thei a-corded to go fight be-fore the town of Clarence, and that thei sholde not ride but by myght and smyte sodeynly in to the hoste on all partes, ffor better is it for vs to dye with worship than to lyve in shame; and with that

the third by Belynans;
the fourth by Carados;
the fifth by Brangore;
*[Fol. 155*b*.]
the sixth by Escam;
the seventh by Clarion:
the eighth by Ydiers;
the ninth by Urien;
the tenth by Aguysans;
the eleventh by Loot;
the twelfth by Ventres.

The barons agree to fight before the town of Clarence.

---

[1] The word "ledde" is repeated in the MS.

When they have supped they command the people to make ready to ride.

A spy of king Hardogabran overhears the barons,

and tells Hardogabran.

When the Saisnes learn that there are only 40,000 Christians they are careless.

Hardogabran has the host watched day and night.

departed the counseile of the barou*n*s, and eche wente to his pavelon; and whan thei hadde souped thei comaunded her peple to arme hem and make redy for to ride; and a-noon thei were appareilled thou[r]gh the hoste and rode forth on her wey. And ther was a spie of the kynges Hardogabran that hadde herde all the doynge of the barou*n*s. This aspie paste oute of the hoste previly, and com to the sege that was be-fore Clarence grete and merveilouse, and tolde to the kynge Hardogabran all the aray that he hadde seyn, and how that the cristin com with grete spede; and whan that the saisnes vndirstoden that the cristin were comynge, thei asked how moche peple thei myght be in all, and he seide that thei were not xl$^{\text{Ml}}$, and than the saisnes ne sette nought ther-by, ne deyned not to arme the fourthe part of hem. But neuertheles the kynge Hardogabran made the hoste to be waicched bothe day and nyght; and also ther were xx kynges that after that thei herde that the cristin were comynge, thei wolde neuer be disgarnysshed of her armes. But now we moste returne to the cristin that com ridinge.

*[Fol. 156*a*.] The twelve princes come to the host before day, while all are asleep.

They divide their people into three companies.

They run into the host and cut down the tents.

*These xii princes ride so by nyght till that thei com nygh the hoste a litill be-fore day, and the weder was somwhat trouble and wyndy, and be-gan for to reyne; and thei in the hoste were the hevyer of slepe, and thei toke noon hedde that eny peple sholde come on hem at soche tyme, and whan the cristin saugh theire herberowe that noon ne come oute ne made no noyse, a-noon thei right theire armour; and whan thei were redy thei departed theire peple in to thre parties, and in that oon part was the kynge Clarion, and in that other part was the kynge Ventres of Garlot, and Carados, and Brangores, and Tradilyuans, and Belynans his brother; and in the thridde partie was the kynge Aguysas, and the kynge Vrien, and as soone as thei were disseuered thei rode a softe paas, theire hedes enclyned vnder theire helmes, and whan thei com nygh the tentes, thei lete theire horse go as faste as thei myght renne, and kutte a-sonder cordes and ropes of the loiggynges, and threwe down tentes and pavelou*n*s, and slowh and maymed alle that thei a-raught at her comynge, and than a-roos the noyse and the showte so grete that all the foreste resounded. Ther was grete martire and grete occision of saisnes, er the men of armes that sholde haue waicched the hoste were horsed, and whan thei saugh hem so surprised thei lepe to horse and rode to the kynge Hardogabrans tente, and blewe hornes on euery parte, and assembled to-geder bothe armed and vn-armed, and the xx kynges lepe to horse, and eche hadde x^{Ml} men at his baner, and ronne agein the cristen, and smote thourgh sheldes and hauberkes, that many ther were slayn on bothe partyes; and the xij princes suffred sore traueile, for thei were full noble knyghtes, and well hem helped Segurades, and Drias the lorde of salerne, and Mares, and Dorilas, and Brandins de la dolerouse garde, and Bruyns saunz pitee. These dide so well that neuer knyghtes myght do better, and on that other part were to-geder the Castelein of Gazell, and the lorde of blakeston, and the lorde of mares, and the lorde of wyndesore, and Aliers, and Gaudius, and the nevew of kynge Vrien, these ought not to be forgeten, for a-gein hem myght noon armour endure were it neuer so harde. These x knyghtes drough to the xij princes as soone as thei saugh hem at the logges where thei stode stifly, and foughten harde and sore, and so many slough the cristin that the horse wente in blode vp to the pastrou*n*s. But the saisnes were so many and so thikke, that be fin force thei drof hem fro the tentes, but thei wente not vileyusly, but as noble men and hardy; ffor whan the worthi men saugh thei were putte bakke thei were a-schamed, and hadde ther-of grete dispite. Than thei assembled and mette hem in the visages. Ther was stronge shour, and sore eche of hem shewde her hardynesse and his grete prowesse, and eche of hem seide that neuer was he worthi to [be] cleped a knyght that failed at that nede for to helpe so well that it myght be spoke of all his lif after; with this wordes eche *smote his horse with spores and cried his ensigne, and thei smyte in so harde a-monge the Saisnes, that many ther were deed and wounded gapinge vp-right ther as thei passed; but the saisnes com oute of the tentes soche foyson that no man myght counte the nombre, and hardogabran, a saisne, moche and grete oute

There is great slaughter of the Saxons.

Horns are blown.

The twenty kings leap to horse.

The twelve princes suffer.

They are helped by the knights.

The knights on the other side.

The Saxons drive the Christians away from the tents.

Each show great prowess.

*[Fol. 156*b*.]

The great number of the Saxons.

Hardogabran is fifteen feet high.

of mesure com formest; ffor the storye seith that he was xv foote of lengthe, but he was yonge of xxviij yere of age. This kynge hardogabran satte vpon a grete gray stede with a spere in his hande, grete and shorte, and hadde a staffe hanginge on his lifte side where-with that day he made many a knyght sory and wroth; and whan the cristin saugh this grete deuell comynge, thei douted for to mete hym, the beste and the moste hardyest of all the cristin hoste, and made hym wey; and Carados of the perilouse tour hym mette, for he was the grettest and the strengest of all the cristin hoste, and was xxx yere of age, and as soone as he saugh the grete devell he lete renne to hym for nothinge he hym douted, and thei mette so harde with theire speres vpon the sheldes, and in passinge fourth thei hurteled so harde with her helmes and sheldes that bothe thei fill to the grounde, and theire horse also; and whan bothe partyes saugh these tweyne falle, thei pressed to the rescowse on bothe parties. Ther suffred the cristin grete peyne and traueile er that Carados myght be remounted, and the reyne hem greved sore that thei hadde the nyght and the day, ffor it cessed neuer of reynynge till that mydday was passed, and thei were so wete grete and small, that vn-ethe myght thei eche knowe other but by theire speche.

He sits on a grey steed.

Carados meets him.

They both fall to the ground.

Both sides press to the rescue.

It rains night and day.

Full grete was the bataile and the stour mortall for sore eche other dide hate. Ther dide the cristin well preve theire prowesse, for magre hem thei sette Carados on horse, that Bloys of Plaisshie hym brought where-from he hadde smyten down the kynge Graalant, and matan and alibos, two yonge knyghtes, and the lorde of Nohaut, and the Castelein of Molehaut, mayntened the stour so well that thei ought not to be blamed till that Carados was remounted, and than be-gan the stour all newe for many ther were of goode knyghtes on the cristin partye, and on the hethen side grete pride; ffor many ther were of riche men and puyssant, and hadde soche plente of peple that the cristen were not but litill shewed a-monge hem, and therfore hadde thei moche the werse, for thei were at grete myschef; and in this maner thei foughten till mydday

The Christians set Carados on his horse.

The battle begins afresh.

The Christians get the worst of the fight.

was paste, and than be-gan the day for to clere, and the sonne to shewe out his bemes and dryed theire harneys, and than be-gan the stour to enforce more and more. But the saisnes were so many that of fin force thei droff hem oute of the feelde, and brought hem to the plaisshes, and ther thei stynted longe tyme; ffor the kynge de cent Chiualers with-stode firste and cleped his ensigne many tymes, and seide to the barou*n*s, "What *lordynges, wheder will ye go. Certes full euell holde ye the promyse that we devised hedirwarde; ffor yet be we hooll and sounde, and oure armoure hooll also, and we be thus discounfited that noon of vs dar shewe his valour, wele ought we to be reproved, and well owe we to remembre that whan we be departed oon from a-nother, that yef we be oute of sorowe issed in to moche more dolour be we entred," and whan the barou*n*s vndirstode that the kynge de Cent Chiualiers hem seide, thei returned a-gein fiercely, and eche of hem smote so the firste that he mette, that deed he fill to grounde, and ther be-gan the bataile more crewell than it hadde all the day be-fore. Ther dide the kynge de Cent Chyualiers so well that moche was he preised and be-loved of the high barou*n*s; ffor er he departed his sheilde was all to daisht, that the thridde part ne left not hooll, and his hauberke dismayled and his helme perced, and his armes all be-soiled in blode, and his horse heed and all the fore body was soyled with bloode and brayn, that he myght not be knowe, but by his speche; and also ther a-boode the kynge Vryen and Bawdemagn, his nevew, and the kynge ydiers, and the kynge loot, and the kynge ventres, and Dorilas, these wolde neuer leve the stour as longe as thei myght a-bide in place, and ther thei dide the saisnes grete damage, ffor moo thei slowgh than that thei hadde don all the day be-fore; and whan the saisnes saugh the damage that thei hem dide, the[i] blewen hornes and trumpes, and made soche noyse a tempest that oon myght it heare two myle longe, and than com Orienx a saisne with foure thousand men of armes all fressh and newe, and frusht in to the medle so harde that they made hem alle to remeve place, and than a-roos the noyse and the

The day begins to clear.

The Saxons drive the Christians out of the field.

The king de Cent Chivaliers asks the barons why they go.

*[Fol. 157*a*.]

The barons return again fiercely.

The king De Cent Chivaliers is much praised.

Urien, Bawdemagn, Ydiers, Loot, and Ventres do great damage to the Saxons.

Orienx comes with 4,000 men.

The chase continues till night.

chace all the day on ende till it was nyght that the cristin myght neuer recouer for to holde place, but were all discounfited, and yef the nyght were not so soone come vpon, more hadde thei myshapped, and whan the saisnes hadde loste the day light, thei returned to theire tentes and vn-armed hem, and esed hem, and sette hem to soper, and ete and dranke plente, and after soper thei slepe and toke theire reste as they that well wende to be sure on all partyes, but full angry thei were of the harme that the cristen hadde hem don that day, and gladly ther-of wolde thei ben a-venged, yef thei myght come in place, ffor the storie seith thei loste moo than xx^{Ml} men, and the cristen loste x^{Ml}. But now returne we to speke of the xij princes that be full of sorowe and angre for the disconfiture that is vpon hem turned, and seide a-monge hem that so wolde thei it nought leten, but that thei wolden don hem more damage er that thei wolde departed.

The Saxons return to their tents.

The Saxons lost 20,000, and the Christians 10,000 men.

The barons dismount.

Now whan the barouns were so discounfited, and were somwhat fer from the tentes of the saisnes, thei a-light on foote, and a-mended theire armours, and refresshed theire horse; but thei were all be-soiled with bloode and myre, bothe theire armes *and theire horse that no colour myght be knowen; and whan thei were redy, thei lepte to horse and rode a softe paas cloos to-geder so stilliche, that noon ne spake a worde till that[1] thei com to the tentes a-boute mydnyght, and fonde the hoste all a-slepe; ffor tho thei wende to haue ben all saf for the discounfiture that thei hadde don; and whan the cristin com to the tentes thei ronne in with so grete raveyn, for thei were yet xxx$^{ti\ Ml}$ of horsmen, and thei threwe down tentes and Pavilouns, and slowgh many of the saisnes, that noon ascaped that fill to theire handes; and the saisnes lepte oute of her beddes all slepy, and cried, "Treson, treson," and assembled at Hardogabrans tente, where oon blewe a trumpe, and the saisnes entended to nothinge elles but to renne to that trumpe, and than thei hem armed, and a-raied as faste as thei myght;

*[Fol. 157*b*.]

They leap to horse,

and come to the tents. They find the host asleep.

They throw down the tents, and slay many of the Saxons.

The Saxons assemble at Hardogabran's tent.

---

[1] The word "that" is repeated in the MS.

and thei light vp torches, and lanternes, and fire brondes grete ple*n*te, that the light myght haue be seyn iij myle longe.

The cristin neuer cessed to kille and to sle, and mangeled alle that thei myght take, that the stremes of blode ran as of a welle springe, and thus the slaughter endured all the nyght till it was day; and whan the saisnes saugh the grette losse and martire that thei maden, thei were woode for wrath and ire, and than they com on fresshly as though the[y] sholde haue all confounded in theire comynge, and the cristen hem deffended in the beste maner. But yet the saisnes droff hem oute from the tentes foule and lothly; and than be-gonne the horse of the cristin to feynte sore as they that two dayes hadde not eten, and ther-of were thei sore discounforted; ffor thei saugh that alle were thei in a-venture of deth. Than fill the barons in corage as god wolde, the yonge knyghtes that I haue named be-fore, that thei wolde Iuste with the saisnes for to wynne hem other horse where-on thei myght ride, or elles thei were in grete pereile alle to perissh. Than eche of the barons toke a grete spere, and rode in to the renges a xl of knyghtes of pris, and hit is reson to reherse theire names of the worthi lordes. The firste was the kynge ydiers of Cornewaile, and the kynge Ventres of Garlot, and his nevew that euer kepte hym a-boute hym; the fourthe was kynge loot of Orcanye; the v^e was kynge Clarion of Northumbirlonde; the sixthe was kynge *Christ*ofer, and his nevew that hilde the depe Cite of Gaunt, and the lorde of the dolerouse garde, and Bruns saunz pitee, and the lorde of Nohaut, and the lorde of the forest perilouse, and the kynge de[1] Cent Chiualiers, and the kynge Tradylyuaunt of North wales, and Polydomas his nevew, and the kynge Brangore, and the kynge aguysas of Scotlond*e*, and Gaudin his nevew, and the Duke Escam of Cambenyk, and the lorde of salerne, and the kynge Vrien, and Badmagn his nevew, and the kynge Belynans of South wales, and

The Christians kill all they can;

the slaughter endures all night.

The Saxons are wroth,

and drive the Christians out of the tents.

The horses of the Christians faint.

Each of the barons takes a great spear.

The names of the worthy lords.

---

[1] The words "kynge de" are repeated in the MS.

Carados de la dolerouse toure, and as many of other knyghtes *that thei were well thre score.

*[Fol. 158a.]

They smite down the Saxons, and seize their horses.

These com in the first fronte with speres in fewtre for to Iuste, for grete myster hadde thei of horse, and eueriche of hem smote oon so harde that he fill deed to the grounde, or wounded, and sesed the horse by the reynes, and wente with hem a-side in to the feilde, and a-light from theire horse, and lepte on hem that thei hadde wonne, and returned a-gein in to bateile, and be-gonne to smyte down men and horse to grounde, for to remounte her company vpon fresshe horses that ther-to hadden grete nede, and all the day noon of hem wolde departe from other; ffull harde and felon was the bateile ther, as these thre score were newe I-horsed, and longe it endured; but the saisnes dide euer encrese more and more, and made the cristen to voyde the place, but that was with grete peyne, ffor the saisnes peyned hem sore to a-venge the harmes that thei hadden don, and the cristin were talentif to a-venge her frendes, that the paynymes hadde slayn; but in the ende were the cristin discounfited and chaced oute of the feilde. But ther endured grete traueile the thre score knyghtes; ffor thei kepte hem-self all-ther hinderest for to diffende the other that feyntly were horsed that myght no faster go than a paas; and these thre score knyghtes wisten well that alle were thei deed or taken yef thei hem for-saken, and so thei mayntened the bateile as longe as thei myght suffre till that her companye was well paste; and than thei wente her wey after, and whan thei were ouer-taken thei with-stode and foughten with the saisnes full harde, and whan eny of these knyght*es* fill, thei alle a-boode till he were remounted; but nought for than moche thei losten at the laste, ffor right many of her men were slain and wounded, and taken prisoners. In this manere were the cristin discounfited, and the saisnes hem chaced fer in to the foreste, where-as thei hem leften be-cause of the nyght that com on, and than the saisnes returned to theire loigges with grete plente of prisoners; and alwey after that the saisnes made better waicche than thei hadde don be-fore, and the cristin were in

They remount their company.

The Saxons increase,

and chase the Christians out of the field.

The three score knights keep up the battle.

The Saxons chase them into the forest,

and return with plenty of prisoners, and keep better watch.

the foreste for socour, and rode forth till thei com in to a feire launde, and ther thei a-light on foote from theire horse and made grete doell and sorowe for theire losse, and were so discounforted, that thei wiste not what for to do ne whider to go; but in the ende thei a-corded that eche man sholde go to his repeire, and yef the saisnes come hem for to assaile eche man deffende hym-self the beste wise that he may; with that thei lept to horse, and eche comaunded other to god and departed wepinge for pite that oon from that other, and eche wente hoom to his repeire, and stuffed hem with peple, and vitaile the beste that thei myght; and after that the saisnes hadde hem thus discounfited *thei douted hem nothinge, but ronne thourgh her londes, and brente and distroied and token prisoners, and brought in to the hoste many prayes; and neuer after were the kynges so bolde to isse out of her castelles and townes for to fight with the saisnes. But now we moste speke of the kynge Arthur that is in the see towarde the grete Breteyne.

The Christians alight, and are sorrowful.

They leap to horse, and return to their homes.

*[Fol. 158*b*.]

The Saxons burn and destroy the lands.

The kings dare not fight the Saxons again.

CHAPTER XXV.

ARTHUR'S MEETING WITH LEODOGAN; MARRIAGE OF ARTHUR AND GONNORE.

Now seith the storie, that whan the kynge Arthur and the barou*n*s were assembled and entred in to the shippes, thei sailed till thei come to the bloy Breteyne; and as soone as thei were arived thei lepe vpon horse and ryde so day and nyght, till thei come to logres the thirde day, and ther were thei richely welcomed, and the moste ioye that myght be made to eny peple; and ther thei dide soiourne thre dayes with grete feeste; and the fourthe day remeved the kynge Arthur and Gawein, and his brethren, and the kynge Ban of Benoyk, and the kynge Bohors of Gannes, with thre thousande men of armes with-oute moo, and rode so by her iourneyes that

Arthur and the barons sail to the Bloy Bretayne.

They ride to Logres.

On the fourth day they ride to Carmelide, thei come in to the reame of Carmelide, a two myle from Toraise, where the kynge leodogan soiourned, and whan he herde tydinges that the kynge Arthur com, he rode a-geins hym, he and his meyne two myle or more, and whan thei were mette ther was made grete ioye, and welcomynge be-twene the[1] two kynges that well loved, and so dide alle the other barou*n*s and lordes; and whan thei com in to the town thei fonde it all hanged with riche clothes, and strowed with fresh herbes, and fonde ladyes and maydenes carolinge and daunsinge, and the moste reuell and disport that myght be made; and on that other side these yonge bachelers of pris brake speres in bourdinge oon a-gein a-nother, and thus thei conveyed hem vn-to the town, where-as Gonnore, the doughter of kynge leodogan com hem for to meten. But who so made ioye she was gladdest of alle other; ffor as soone as she saugh the kynge Arthur she ran to hym with armes spredde a-brode, and seide he was welcome and alle his companye; and she kiste his mouth tendirly, seynge hem alle that wolde, and than eche toke other by the hande and went vp in to the paleise, and whan it was tyme of soper thei ete and dranke grete plente, for I-nough thei haue where-of; and whan thei hadde disported hem a longe while after soper they wente to bedde for to resten hem, for wery they were of traueile; and on the morowe erly a-roos the kynge Arthur, and the kynge Bohors, and the kynge Ban, and Sir Gawein, and Ewein that gladly roos euer erly more than eny other, and wente to the mynster to here messe, and than com a-gein in to the paleise a-bove, and fonde the kynge leodogan that hadde herde messe in his chapell, and than thei asked horse and rode forth tho vj with-oute eny moo, and yede to disporte hem, and to se the medowes and the river; and than the kynge leodogan a-resoned the kynge Arthur, and asked hym whan he sholde spousen his doughter, ffor he seide *that it was tyme; and the kynge Arthur ansuerde that whiche hour that hym plesed, ffor he was ther-to redy; "but

where Leodogan sojourns.

Meeting of Arthur and Leodogan.

Festivities in the town.

Gonnore comes to meet Arthur.

She kisses him.

They have supper.

On the morrow Arthur, Bohors, and Ban go to hear mass.

They find Leodogan,

who asks Arthur when he is going to espouse his daughter.

*[Fol. 159*a*.]

Arthur is

---

[1] The word "the" is repeated in the MS.

I moste a-bide the beste frende that I haue, ffor with-oute hym will I do nothinge in no manere;" and than he asked whiche was that frende, and he tolde hem how it was Merlin, "be whom I haue recouered londe and honour, and all the goode that I haue ellis," and whan sir Gawein vndirstode the wordes, he seide that he hadde grete reson for to love hym well, "and eche oon of vs oweth to desire his comynge, and wite it well he shall come er ought longe seth that ye hit desire." "Certes," seide the kynge Arthur "he tolde me that he sholde be here all in tyme." "Than ther is no more," quod Gawein, "but lete vs sette the day of spousaile;" and than toke thei day to-geder the vtas after, and com thus spekynge in to the halle, and fonde the clothes leyde, and all thinge redy, and than thei waissh as thei ought to do, and weren serued as noble princes sholden be; and after mete thei wente to disporte, thei that wolde, and thus thei soiourned alle the viij dayes full. But now resteth a litill to speke of hem at this tyme, and returne to the xij princes that were disconfit be-fore the town of Clarence.

ready, but says he must first ask Merlin.

Gawein says they all ought to wish for the coming of Merlin.

They fix the espousals for that day week.

After that the kynges were thus discounfited, and were repeired eche of hem hom to his repeire; till that tydinges a-roos thourgh the londe that the kynge Arthur hadde passed the see, and hadde a-dubbed the sones of kynge loot, and the twey sones of kynge Vrien, and Galashin, the sone of kynge Ventre of Garlot, and Dodynell the sauage, the sone of kynge Belynant of South wales, and kay destranx, the nevew of kynge Carados, and Seigramour, the Emperours nevew of Costantynnoble, and his felowes that hadde brought with hym; and how the wif of kynge loot was at logres whider that his owne sones hadde hir brought and taken hir from the saisnes; and how the brethren hadde sworn, that neuer hir fader the kynge loot sholde haue theire moder in companye till that he hadde made homage to the kynge Arthur, and lete hym wele knowe that he hadde no werse enmy than that thei wolden be; and how that kynge Arthur hadde foughten with the kynge Claudas and Pounce Antonye be-fore the castell of Trebes, and

News comes to the kings that Arthur had dubbed the sons of Loot, Urien, and the others,

and that the wife of Loot was at Logres;

that Arthur had discomfited Claudas,

Pounce, Frolle, and Randolf,

with ffrolle the Duke of Almayne, and Randolf the Senescall of Gaule, and hadde hem alle discounfited, and chaced oute of the feelde, and restored the two brethern to theire londes; and how he sholde take to wif the doughter of the kynge leodogan of Carmelide, and how he hadde discounfited the kynge Rion be-fore the Cite of Danablaise, and how he was gon in to Carmelide for to spouse his wif. Of these thinges spake the princes prively to hir counseile, and seide that thei dide grete synne euer hym for to wrath, ffor alle these harmes *that to hem was fallen was but for the synne that thei hadde don a-geins hym, and thei dide repente sore of the hate that was be-twene hem, yef thei myght other-wise haue don; and preiden god hertely that thei myght come in soche poynte that thei were acorded, be so that thei ther-by be not shamed; and so ran the tydinges of the kynge Arthur, that the kynge loot it herde, and wiste how that his wif was at logres, and his litill sone Mordred, and therfore in oon manere he was gladde and in a-nother he was wroth; gladde for that she was delyuered oute of the handes of the saisnes, and angry for that his children hadde sworn that neuer sholde he haue hir in companye of hym, ne haue theire love till that he hadde made homage to kynge Arthur; but he saugh not how he myght with hym be acorded with his honour, but yef god wolde helpe hym of counseile, and than he be-thought hym how Arthur wolde sende his wif to logres Chief Citee, and as soone as he myght knowe of hir comynge he wolde gon hir a-geins with as moche peple as he myght haue and fight with hym, and assay to take Arthurs wif, and for hir myght he haue a-gein his.

and Rion; and that he was gone to Carmelide to espouse his wife.

*[Fol. 159b.]

The princes repent of their enmity to Arthur.

Loot is glad and wroth.

He will try to take Arthur's wife.

Thus thought the kynge loot, but other-wise sholde it go, yef god kepe the force of kynge Arthur and of Sir Gawein, his nevew. Than the kynge loot sente his aspies fer and nygh, for to knowe whan the kynge Arthur sholde come from the reme of Carmelyde, and how moche peple that he hadde in his companye, and he hym appareiled for to ride hym a-geins. But of these thynges cesseth the tale at thys tyme, and speketh of Merlin, that was with Blaase in Northumbirlande, that alle

He sends out spies.

The tale speaks of Merlin,

these thinges hath hym tolde, and he hath hem alle in his booke wreten; and the storye seith that as soone as the kynge Arthur hadde seide to the kynge leodogan that he a-boode nothinge elles but the comynge of Merlin, a-noon Merlin it wiste, and alle the wordes that were ther seide, and that he wiste the purpos of the xij kynges, and of the kynge loot, and how he hadde sente his aspies, and alle he tolde to Blase, and he wrote euer as he tolde; and Merlin com to Toraise in Carmelide, where-as the Barons hym a-bode, and that was the euen be-fore that the kynge sholde spousen his wif, and as soone as the Barou*ns* hym saugh, thei were of hym right gladde and ioyfull, as thei that moche desired his feliship. But now we moste a litill turne for to speke of Gonnore the stepdoughter of Cleodalis, the senescall of Carmelide, and of his kynnysmen that right moche hated the kynge leodogan.

who knows what is going on.

He comes to Toraise.

When the barons see him they are right glad.

Gonnore, the stepdaughter of Cleodalis.

Here seith the book that Gonnore, the doughter of the senescallis wif, hadde right riche kynne of goode knyghtes that sore hated the kynge leodogan, for the grete *shame that he dide to Cleodalis of his wif, that he so longe hadde holden in a-vouterie maugre Cleodalis, and alle his frendes, and longe hadde thei kept prevy the hate that thei durste not ther-of speke; but thei thought well to be wroken whan thei saugh tyme, and it fill the same day that Merlin was come thei were assembled of hem xvj, and spake to-geder, but at this parlement was not Cleodalis, ne ther-of knewe no worde; and oon of hem asked in what manere thei myght beste greve or wrathe the kynge leodogan, and theire counseile was this: ffor thei a-corded in the ende that thei sholde so speke to the maistresse of Gonnore, that was Arthurs wif, that whan she sholde be brought to bedde to the kynge Arthur, hir lorde, this olde maistresse sholde brynge hir down in to the gardin to disport, and ther while thei sholde sette ther the tother Gonnore, their cosin, in stede of hir that was Arthurs wif; and hir thei sholde sette in soche place that neuer man sholde hereafter more of hir speke, ne no man sholde wite where she were be-come; and a-noon lete vs go and do so moche to the

Her friends hate Leodogan.

*[Fol. 160*a*.]

Sixteen of them meet to decide how best to grieve Leodogan.

They agree to speak to the mistress of Gonnore,

and get her to put the other Gonnore in place of Arthur's wife.

They think they will be lords of the king and queen.

maistresse that thus it may be don, and whan we haue brought this a-boute, we shull be lordes bothe of the kinge and quene, and of alle hem that be with the kynge.

Seven of them will steal Gonnore away.

The mistress will do their will.

Merlin knows of their treason, and tells Ulfin and Bretell.

He counsels them what to do.

They are to speak to no man.

*[Fol. 160*b*.]

Than thei ordeyned that vij of hem sholde do this thefte, and stele hir a-wey be the gardin, where-as thei sholde be hidde, and haue ther a shippe redy to putte hir ynne. To this counseile thei were a-corded, and thei dide so purchese a-gein the maistresse, that she graunted hir will to performe; and thei departed than gladde and mery as thei that wende well to haue spedde, and ordeyned the ship*pe* and all that was myster; but a-noon as thei hadde this treson spoken Merlin it wiste, and tolde it to Vlfin and to Bretell, and toke hem a-side in counseile a-lone by hem-self, and tolde hem worde for worde all the vntrouthe that thei purposed to don; and whan Vlfin and Bretell herde the treson that these wolde haue don, thei hadde ther-of grete merveile, and than thei preied Merlin to telle how thei sholde spede of this thinge. "With gode will," seide Merlin. "To morowe, at even, whan ye haue souped, arme yow well vndir youre robes, and goth in to the chamber next the gardin vnder the greces that is ther, ffor thei shull come alle vn-armed saf hir swerdes, and shull come thourgh the gardin streight to the wiket, where-as ther shull bide till that the maistresse bringe hir to disporte. But loke a-noon as thei haue hir sesed that ye be no feynte her to rescowe, ffor than a-noon haue ye her loste for euer yef thei may bring hir to the shipp*e*." "Sir," seide these two goode men, "yef god will, we shull not her lese, seth we knowe so moche ther-of." "And loke also," quod Merlin, "that ye speke here-of no worde to no man of nothinge that I haue to *yow I-seide, ffor than shall I neuer yow love." "Certes," seide these two noble me*n*, "we hadde leuer be disherited and chaced oute of the londe."

The friends come into the hall.

Tho dide departe these thre frendes, and com in to the halle, and fonde that the knyghtes sholde departe and wente to theire loigginge till on the morowe that it was day, and than a-rise the barou*n*s and the knyghtes, and assembled faste in the mynster paleise; and the kynge leodogan appareiled his doughter so richely, as that neuer quene ne myght be better araied, and she ther-to was so full of grete bewte that all the worlde was gladde hir to be-holden; and whan she was all redy, the kynge Ban toke hir on that oon side, and the kynge Bohors on that other side, and ledde hir to the mynster of seynt Stephene the martir. Ther was many a baron hir to conveien holdinge be the hondes two and two, and formest that wente was kynge Arthur and kynge leodogan; and the other tweyne was nexte after was Gawein and Seigramour, and than Galashin and Agrauain the prowde, and than Dodinell and Gueheret, and than Ewein le graunt, and Gaheries; and after that Ewein a-voutres and kay destranx, and kay the stiward and antor his fader; and after hem com the maiden that the kynge Ban and the kynge Bohors ledden, that was of so grete bewte; and she was discheueled, and hadde the feirest heed that eny woman myght haue, and hadde a sercle of goolde on hir heed full of precioSe stones, the feirest and the richest that eny man knewe, and was clothed in a riche robe that trayled to the grounde more than two fadome, that satte so well with hir bewte that all the worlde myght haue ioye her to be-holden; and after hir com the stepdoughter of Cleodalis, that hight also Gonnore, whiche was right feire and auenaunt, and hir ledde Gifflet and lucas the boteller; and after com the newe dubbed knyghtes two and two; and after com the knyghtes of the rounde table; and after that com the Barou*n*s of the reame of Carmelide and the knyghtes; and after the burgeys of the contrey, and than the ladyes of the contrey, and maydenes, and so thei com to the mynster.

Leodogan apparels his daughter richly.

Ban and Bohors lead her to the minster of St. Stephen.

The order of the procession.

Gonnore has a circle of gold on her head.

Gonnore, the step-daughter of Cleodalis, follows her; then the new knights, the knights of the round table, the barons, the burgesses, and the ladies,

Whan thei com to the dore, thei fonde ther the goode Archebisshop*pe* that ther hem a-bode, and sir Amnistan the chapeleyn of kynge leodogan, that was a gode man of lyvinge; and the archebisshop hem blessed, and be-fore alle the peple wedded the kynge Arthur and Gonnore to-geder; and the goode archebisshop*pe* entred in to the chirche, and sange the high masse; and sir Amnistan hym serued, and ther was

the archbishop, and Sir Amnistan.

Arthur and Gonnore are wedded.

riche offringe of kynges and princes, and whan the servise was ffynisshed the kynge Arthur and the Barou*ns* returned in to the paleys where-as was grete plente of mynstralles, and iogelours, and other; where-to sholde I yow devise the ioye and the deduyt that thei hadden, *ffor the fourthe part cowde I not telle. Thus endured the ioye and the melodye all the mete while; and after mete, whan the boordes were vppe, than was a-rered a quyntayn, and thyder yede the newe a-dubbed knyghtes for to bourde, with sheldes a-boute theire nekkes, and the xl knyghtes that com in to Carmelide with the kynge Arthur wente with hem, and also com thider the knyghtes of the rounde table; and whan thei were comen thei be-gonne to do maistries iolily and in myrthe as thei that were worthy me[n] and noble knyght*es*. So that tidinges com to sir Gawein that satte at mete a-monge his fellowes that hadden serued; and whan Gawein vndirstode that his frendes were ouer-sette, he a-roos vp and asked his armes and horse, and his shelde, and a-noon it was brought, and so dide alle his felowes, and Gawein dide on an habergon of double maile vnder his robes for that was euer more his custome euer as longe as he lyved. Nought for that he thought to do eny vilonye ne treson. But for he douted euer that debate sholde a-rise amonge his felowes thourgh the dedes of some musarde, or eny treson where-of ther were I-nowe in the londe; but whan that Gawein and his felowes com in to the medowes where-as was the turnement well be-gonne. But the newe knyghtes were euell ledde, ffor the knyghtes of the rounde table ledde hem at her volunte, and whan that Gawein saugh that thei were so at the werse he was nothinge gladde. Than he and his companye wenten in that were well foure s[c]ore a-counted, and a-noon these yonge knyghtes com to Gawein, and asked yef he wolde be with hem, and he seide ye, bothe now and also other tymes.

Arthur and the barons return to the palace.

*[Fol. 161*a*.]

After meat a quintain is raised.

The forty knights and the knights of the round table show great skill.

Sir Gawein asks for his arms.

He puts on a breast-plate under his robes.

He and his fellows come to the tournament.

The new knights are not well led.

Whan the xl sowdiours herde that sir Gawein wolde be with hem at that same turnement, thei were wonder gladde and ioyfull, and the tother were full wroth, and than thei assured that neuer noon sholde faile other for deth ne for

The forty soldiers are glad when Gawein joins them.

lif*e*, and no more thei diden and that well shewed that day; ffor thei diden so well, that the knyghtes of the rounde table ther-of hadde envye; ffor dere sholde be bought the same turnement, in the turnement that was made at logres, ther-as Gawein was called lorde and maister for the wele doinge that he ther dide, as ye shull heren here-after whan that he was be-come the queenes knyght; and whan that Gawein hadde take the suerte of his felowes and of the xl knyghtes, of whiche ye haue herde. Thei renged hem, and a-raide hem, and girde a-gein theire horse, and Gawein sette hem in a-ray as he that was a wise knyght, and with-oute pride, and the moste curteise that was in the bloy Breteyne, and the beste taught in alle thinges, and euer trewe to god and to his lorde; and whan that Gawein hadde ordeyned his felowes in aray, thei rode two and two to-geder eche after other, and tweyne the firste was sir Gawein and sir Ewein le *graunt, the sone of kynge Vrien, that Gawein loved beste of alle other, for he was the beste after Gaheries; and the next tweyne were Seigramour and Galashyn, and than Gefflet and lucas the boteller, for to assemble theire sheldes a-boute her nekkes, and her speres streight in theire handes, and the kynge Arthur, and the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and Merlin, and Bretell, and Vlfin, and Antor were lefte with the kynge leodogan in the paleise, and were comen vp on high for to se and be-holde the bourdeyse, and with hem weren ladyes and maydenys grete plente, and saugh that thei were redy araide for to mete.

The knights of the round table envy them.

Gawein sets them in order.

They ride two and two.

*[Fol. 161b.]

Arthur, Ban, Bohors, Merlin, and the others, come to see the sport.

On that other side were the knyghtes of the rounde table redy araied, and weren an hundred and fifty, and sir Gawein sente hem xl Iusteres, of the whiche Seigramour was the firste; and on that other side com Nascien, and thei lete theire horse renne that oon agein that other; and sir Gawein smote be-twene hem two and hem departed, and cleped the knyghtes of the rounde table, and seyde, "Ffeire lordes, ye be right worthi men and goode knyghtes, the beste that eny knoweth. But doth wele, and lete vs be as many for as many oon a-geins another, by soche forwarde that yef we take eny

The knights of the round table are a hundred and fifty.

Gawein addresses them, and says that their number should be equal.

of yours, that thei shall be with vs a-geins yow, and yef ye take eny of owres, thei shull helpe yow to oure noysaunce, and be it don in soche manere that as soone as ye take eny man of oures that we shull sette a-nother in his place, and ye also as soone as we take eny man of yowres to do the same,' Thanne a-noon thei graunted to holde[1] the couenauntes, and than thei sente after theire armes in the town; and as soone as thei were brought thei hem armed spedily in alle haste, and the tidinges therof com in to the barouns in what maner that sir Gawein hadde take the turnement a-gein the knyghtes of the rounde table; and thei preised hym gretely, bothe oon and other. But a-bove alle other hym preised the kynge Bohors, and seide ther was neuer seyn soche a knyght of his age, and yef he lyve longe he shall be the beste knyght that euer was, "and that I hadde levest to resemble." Thus spake the kynge Bohors of sir Gawein, and thei hem armed hastely and soone, and lepe to horse, and hem renged and a-ray, and eche roode a-gein other. The firste that renged hym of the rounde table was Adragein le noir, his shelde a-boute his nekke, the spere in honde, and vpon a blakke stede; and on that other side com hym a-gein Dodinell le sauage, as faste as horse myght renne, and smote vpon the sheldes with sharpe grounde speres so rudely that thei perced the sheldes thourgh the myght of theire armes, and theire horse that swyftly hem bare, that the heedes stynted at the hauberkes; but thei were so stronge *that thei faused no mayle that the speres moste nede breke at the passinge thourgh of the horse, for bothe were thei goode knyghtes, and the horse swyfte, and thei hurteled so to-geder with sheldes and helmes, that bothe thei ffill to grounde, horse and man; and as soone as thei were bothe ouerthrowen, thei ronne to the rescowe on bothe parties, and mette to-geder with speres vpon the sheldes that thei splendered on peces, and some ther were that passed thourgh with-oute fallinge, and some lay stille.

They send after their arms.

The barons praise Sir Gawein.

The first of the round table is Adragein. Dodinell comes against him.

*[Fol. 162*a*.]

Both fall to the ground. Both sides run to the rescue.

---

[1] The words "to holde" are repeated in the MS.

As soone as the speres were spente, thei drough oute theire swerdes, and be-gonne the medle on foote and on horsebak, and sir Gawein and Nascien mette to-geder with speres vpon sheldes with all theire force so rudely, that thei all to perced, and Nasciens spere brake in Gaweins shelde; and Gawein smote hym a-gein so rudely, that he bar hym from his horse and his legges vp-right; but a-noon he lepte on foote, for he was full bolde and hardy, and drough his swerde and couered hym with his shelde, and apparailed hym redy for to diffende; and Gawein returned and drough his swerde and com to Nascien, and a-light on foote; and whan Nascien saugh hym come with swerde drawen, he ne douted hym but litill, for he was a full noble knyght, and hardy, and right sure, and smote Gawein vpon the penon of the shelde that he clef it to the bocle, and Gawein paide hym vpon the helme that he fill vpon the palme of his handes, but soone was he risen vp a-gein and smote Gawein so grete a stroke vpon the helme that the sparkeles fly oute flamynge reade; and whan Gawein saugh that it a-noyed hym sore, and than he hitte Nascien vpon the helme that he made it cleve, and that Nascien fill vpon bothe knees, but he was of high herte, and lepte vpon foote, and in the a-risinge Gawein caught hym be the helme, and raced it from his heede so harde, that his nose and his browes were sore hurte, and caste it as fer as he myght in to the presse, and than he cried, "sir knyght yelde the, for thow seest well how it is," and he ansuerde that he was not yet come ther-to for to yelde hym, for no man that he saugh. Than he couered hym with his shelde, and smote Gawein so harde on the shelde, that a grete pece fill on the grene, and Gawein lepte to hym and smote hym so with the pomell of his swerde on the temple, that he fill to the erthe vp-right; and than he lepte to hym and a-bated down the coif of maile of his heede and seide, "Yelde the, or thow art but deed;" and he ansuerde that sle hym he myght wele; but ther-fore wolde he not yelde hym recreaunt while he myght lyve. "What, sir knyght," quod Gawein, "sey ye this for trouthe that ye hadde leuer be deed than ye

They draw their swords.

Gawein and Nascien meet.

Gawein calls on Nascien to yield, but he will not.

Gawein says he will slay him if he does not yield.

sholde yelde yow;" and he seide, "Ye, withoute faile." "Trewly," seide Gawein, "and I will not sle yow, for it were *[Fol. 162b.] *grete damage, for ye be full noble and worthi, but I shall make yow to be so wele kept that this moneth ye shull not come on horsbak." "I wote neuer," quod he, "what ye will do; but I will neuer graunte me for outreyed while that I may lyve." Whan Gawein herde this, he saugh that he was of right high herte, and he be-thought hym on a fraunchise that many oon wolde haue be full loth to haue do, and a-noon he toke hym vp by the armes and seide, "Sir knyght, haue here my swerde, and I yelde me to yow as he that is outrayed;" and whan Nascien saugh the grete gentilnesse that was in hym, he was right gladde and seide, "Ha, sir, I crye yow mercy, ne sey not so, but holde here my swerde that I yow here yelde, for alle peple se well I-nough how well it is; ffor this guerdon ne may I yow quyte ne deserue, and than thei enbraced in bothe armes, bothe bachelers, and eche to other made grete curtesye, and than returned bothe to-geder in to the turnement that tho was well be-gonne, and Nascien turned vpon Gaweins side.

Gawein offers to give Nascien his sword,

but he yields.

They embrace each other.

Whan Gawein and Nascien com to the turnement thei fonde that Dodinell was remounted, and hadde withholde Adragain be fyn force, and the stour was right stronge and merveilouse; and Seigramour hadde smyte down hervy de rivell, and hilde hym by the helme so harde with bothe hondes that his feith be-hoved hym to yelde; and Gaheries hadde taken Mygoras; and whan Gawein com he be-gan to do so well, that alle thei be-hoved to forsake place, and Gaweins felowes dide so wele, that the xl knyghtes of the rounde table hadde thei taken be strength, therefore were the tother full sory. Than com in other xl all fressh, and than recouered to-geder alle the foure score felowes, and yaf hem a-newe enuaye, and com full sory and wroth for theire felowes that were thus taken, and these other com and receyved hem at spere poyntes full boldly. Ther was stronge stour and grete strokes with swerdes vpon helmes and vpon sheldes, and longe

Dodinell is remounted.

Seigramour smites down Hervy.

Gaheries takes Mygoras.

Gawein's fellows take forty knights of the round table.

Forty come in fresh.

it endured that oon cowde not sey whiche party hadde the werse; and so lasted the medle till that mydday was passed, and than issed sir Gawein oute of the turnement to recouer a-nother helme, for his was to rente that it was but litill worth to hym or to eny other; and as soone as he was newe helmed and hadde avented hym-self, he saugh how his felowes blenched on alle partes, and than he rode in as faste as his horse myght renne, and smote so the firste that he mette, that he fill from his horse in to the feelde, and a-noon as he was comen his felowes recouered that were in pointe to leve place, and he be-gan to do so well that alle men merveiled that hym be-heilde, and fill that he fonde sir Ewein on foote, and kay, and Gefflet, and lucas, and Bliobleris, and Osenain cors hardy, and launall, and Agrauain; vpon these viij was all the turnement stinted; ffor hem to take *coveyted the knyghtes of the rounde table, and whan Gawein saugh that, he dressed thiderward his horse with a spere in honde, and smote in a-monge hem so that thei fremyssh, and smote so the firste that he mette that he fill vp-right, and ther-with brake the spere that myght no lenger endure; and after that he overthrewe tweyne with the tronchon so felenoyusly that thei wiste not whethir it was nyght or day; and after that he drough his swerde and be-gan soche maistries in armes that alle thei were a-baisshed, ffor he slitte sheldes, and hauberkes, and helmes, so that noon durste a-bide his strokes, but made hym wey the beste of hem alle, and thei disparbeled here and there, and his felowes ther-while be remounted, and haue goode will to ben a-venged; and than be-gan sir Ewein to do so well that many were gladde hy[m] to be-holden, and so diden alle the other companye that thei were worthi to haue grete loos. Thus endured the turnement full longe, and wele thei diden in armes the newe knyghtes, and merveilously hym preved ther sir Ewein, the sone of kynge Vrien, and Galasshin, and Dodinell, and the viij felowes a-fore-seide; these hielde hem vigerously be-fore alle the tother, and hem preised moche the foure kynges that weren vpon the walles, and seide thei sholde be noble men yef thei myght live to age;

Gawein comes out of the tournament to get a new helmet.

He smites the first he meets.

All men marvel at him. The eight chief knights.

*[Fol. 163*a*.]

Gawein overthrows many.

None can abide his strokes.

His fellows remount.

Sir Ewein does well;

so do all the new knights.

The four kings praise them.

but a-bove alle other was sir Gawein comended, ffor thourgh his prowesse thei were putte bakke and chaced to the town, and ther with-stode the knyghtes of the rounde table that were wroth and angry, and seiden amonge hem-self that foule were thei demened, and than thei returned a-gein hem that kepte hem wonder shorte; and than be-gan the stour so merveilouse and fierce more that it hadde ben of all the day at the enterynge of the yates of Torayse, be-twene the knyghtes of the rounde table and the knyghtes that were newe a-dubbed, and ther be-gan Gawein soche a disray that longe was it spoken of after; and yet hadde he don well all the day, ffor whan that he saugh the knyghtes of the rounde table were stynted be-fore the yate, and diffended so harde the entre he was sore chaffed for anger. Than he putte vp his swerde in the scawberk, but it was not Calibourne, but it was a-nother turneyinge swerde; and than he caught a sparre of Oke with bothe hondes, and caste his shelde to the grounde for to be more light, and com in to the presse ther as he saugh thikkeste, and in his comynge he smote a knyght on the helme that he fill in swownynge, and than he smote a-nother that he fill to grounde, and than he leide on grete strokes on bothe sides that all that he raught voided the sadeles that noon ne ascaped, and he hurte many and maymed; and whan the knyghtes of the rounde table saugh that thei coveited nothinge but hem for to greve, and than thei ronne vpon Gawein and his felowes, and seide that to-day more thei wolde not spare to do theire werste, *and that of turneyinge hadde thei no more cure; and thei be-gonne ther a stour grete and p*er*ilouse that grete myschef ther sholde haue ben hastely, yef Merlin ne hadde cleped the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors his brother, and badde hem departe the turnement, for it was high tyme; and whan the barou*n*s vndirstode that Merlin seide, thei asked theire armes and theire horse hastely, and the squyres lepte wightly and brought hem be-fore the paleise, and thei ride a-noon thourgh the renges, and Merlin rode formeste that sore hym hasted; and these foughten full harde, that sore were chauffed with wrath oon a-gein a-nother

The knights of the round table are angry.

Gawein's deeds were long spoken of.

He puts up his sword,

and takes a spar of oak.

He smites down all he comes against.

The knights of the round table run upon Gawein and his fellows, and say they will do their worst.

*[Fol. 163b.]

Merlin bids Ban and Bohors go to the tournament.

Merlin rides foremost.

But Gawein dide moche harme with the sparre that was so harde, and thei hem diffended full vigerously, that in no wise wolde not voide the grounde; and whan Gawein saugh that thei mayntened hem so well he smote a-monge hem Irous as a wilde boor, and perced hem thourgh-oute maug[r]e hem alle; and than be-gan to do the werste that he myght hem to harmen at his power. Than Merlin and the thre kynges com hem to disseuer, and than fill that Gawein mette Meodalis that hadde smyte hym with a spere in the breste, that ner he hadde smyte down bothe hym and his horse on an hepe; and he was full wroth for the buffet that he hadde resceyved, and lifte up the barre to smyte hym on the helme; and he saugh the stroke come and blenched to eschewe the barre, but the stroke fill be-twene the sholdres and smote hym down to the erthe; and the kynge Arthur, that wele hadde seyn the stroke, cried pees, that wele was vndirstonde of may oon, and cried a-lowde, "Feire nevew, ley down the barre, for ye haue don right I-nowgh;" and Merlin caught hym be that oon hande, and in that other hande toke the barre, and seide, smylinge, "Sir knyght, thow art take yelde thow to me, for ye haue don I-nough."

Gawein does much harm.

He is like a wild boar.

Merlin and the three kings come to sever the knights. Fight between Gawein and Meodalis.

Arthur cries peace.

Merlin tells him he has done enough.

Than Gawein be-helde and saugh it was Merlin; than he seide full debonerly, "I am take seth that it yow pleseth, and ther-with he lete falle the barre, and than he asked why he dide hym take." With that worde com the kynge Arthur, and seide, "Gawein, feire nevewe, lefe the turnement, for ye haue don I-nowgh; ffor we se well that it is to be lefte." And he ansuerde a-gein that so be it seth that he dide comaunde, and than tho v wente forth, and a-noon as Gawein was oute thei departed and wente to theire hosteles for to vn-arme hem. But full sory were the knyghtes of the rounde table, for that thei hadde the werse by the chaunge that thei hadde made; and seiden than whan thei turneyed eny more, thei wolde so be a-venged that thei sholde not hem scorne ne Iape, and that thei lete hem well wite the newe knyghtes and her companye. These wordes well vndirstode a yonge knyght that rode after hem, and tolde it to sir Gawein that Arthur

Gawein lets the bar fall.

Arthur says that the tournament is to end.

The knights of the round table are sorry that they had the worst of the fight, and say they will be avenged.

*[Fol. 164*a*.] and *Merlin hadde brought to the paleise, and sir Ewein with hem, and Galasshin, and Seigramor; and whan this yonge knyght com he tolde as the knyghtes of the rounde table hadde seide, and Gawein vndirstode her manaces, and hir pride, and he hadde ther-of grete dispite; but he made ther-of no semblance, saf that he seide to his companye, that neuer he wolde hem faile in no turnement ne in werre. These wordes seide Gawein to his felowes, and he hilde it wele, ffor it was well shewed after who was the beste knyght that day that thei toke turnement at logres in the medowes, as shall be reherseth whan tyme cometh; as soone as the turnement was departed, and the kynge and his nevew were in the paleise, the knyghtes of the rounde table wente to vn-arme hem at her ostels, and the mene peple of the town conveied I-nowgh sir Gawein, and seide oon to a-nother, lo here the goode knyght, and thei gadered a-boute hym on alle partes, and conveyed him to the paleise, and in to the halle, and thei asked oon of a-nother what he was; and Merlin hem ansuerde, and seide his name was Gawein, the nevew of kynge Arthur, and the sone of kynge loot of Orcanye; and whan thei herden what he was, thei seiden as gladde peple that he shewed well fro whens he was comen, thus the peple of the town seiden her volunte, and than thei returned; and whan the knyghtes of the rounde table were vn-armed, thei clothed hem and a-raide hem in her beste robes, and com to court; and where thei saugh sir Gawein, thei drough a-boute hym and compleyned to hym of hym-self, and seide that he hadde hem euyll be seyn at that firste turnement, and that fro thens-forth he ought wele to be lorde and maister, and felowe of the rounde table; and Gawein hem herde wele, but he ansuerde hem no worde, and fro thens-forth he was a lorde and maister, and a felowe of the rounde table; and it was goode reson, ffor he was a noble knyght, and a trewe and full of alle vertues and goode tecches, and the moste curteise knyght that eny man knewe.

A young knight tells Gawein.

The knights of the round table go to unarm themselves. The people praise Gawein and ask who he is.

The knights of the round table array themselves in their best robes.

Gawein becomes a knight of the round table.

With that were the tables leide, and the knyghtes wash, and ther were thre halles full of knyghtes, and thei

There are

were well serued, and by leiser of alle thinges, and after soper whan the clothes weren vp thei enuoysed the worthi knyghtes, and eche reported of other honour as was right, and than thei ronge to euesonge in the mynster of seynt Stephene, and thider thei wente to here the seruise, and after was the bedde of Arthur blessed as was right, and than departed the knyghtes, and wente to theire hostelles for to slepe and resten; and Gonnore be-lefte in the Chamber, she and hir maistresse alone, and that day was purchesed the *treson wherby she sholde be taken and traied of the parentes of Gonnore, the stepdoughter of Cleodales the stiwarde, ffor thei hadde youen so moche to the olde maistresse of Arthurs wif*e*, that she graunted to do theire volunte, and tolde hir thei wolde a-bide in the gardin vnder the paleise, and thei sholde haue the tother Gonnore in her companye; and all thus thei were a-corded and wente in-to the gardin, and hidde hem vnder the trees x of hem; but thei were not armed saf thei hadde eche of hem a suerde, and with hem was the false Gonnore, and ther thei a-bide so longe that the barou*n*s were departed to her hostels, and thei made dispoile the quene to go to hir bedde; and than the old maistresse hir toke and ledde hir in to the gardin for to pisse, and whan the x traitoris that were quatte in the gardin vnder an ympe saugh her come, thei were stille and coy, and drough towarde the wall litill and litill, and Bretell and Vlfin hadde not foryete the wordes that Merlin hadde seide. But were well armed vnder her robes, and weren quat vnder the steyres ther as the queene sholde come down, and hilde hem so stille that thei were not a-perceyued of man ne woman, and herkened in this manere long while, and than thei saugh the queene that the maistresse brought by the hande and wente that wey, where-as the traitours hadde sette theire waicch, and whan thei saugh that thei weren oute of the chambre, thei lepe vp and sette hande on hir, and toke to the old maistresse the tother false Gonnore, and a-noon as the queene hem saugh she wiste well she was be-traied, and wolde crye as she that was sore affraied, and thei seide that yef she spake eny worde she sholde a-non

three halls full of knights.

They go to even-song at the minster.

*[Fol. 164*b*.]

The mistress agrees to betray Gonnore.

The relations of the other Gonnore will abide in the garden.

Each of the ten has a sword.

The old mistress leads Gonnore into the garden.

Bretell and Ulfin are well armed.

They keep still, so that they are not perceived.

The traitors leap upon Gonnore and give the false Gonnore to the mistress.

They drag Gonnore to the river.

be slain, and ther-with thei drough theire swerdes oute and wente toward the river that ran vnder the gardin, where thei hadde a barge I-teyed where-in thei were come in to the gardin, and the gardin was right high a-bove the river, and noon myght come ther-to but by a lane or by a barge, and the lane was full thikke and comberouse to come vp or down for the rokkes, wherof was grete plente; and yef thei myght haue brought hir in to the barge the queene hadde ben loste with-oute recouer.

Ulfin and Bretell leap up.

Whan Vlfin and Bretell saugh that thei hadde so longe a-wayted, thei lepte oute of theire enbusshement and hem a-scryed and cleped hem traitours, and seide thei sholde dye; and whan that the traitours saugh thei were but tweyne, and dide hem a-scrye, and preised hem at nought, than v of hem toke the queene, and v a-bode for to fight with the tweyne that com with swerdes drawen; and whan the queene saugh hir ledde in soche manere, she hadde grete drede, and fill to grounde vpon the grene, and thei lifte hir vp and bar*e* hir a-wey maugre hire; and whan she saugh tweyne come *hir to socour, she braied rudely oute of theire handes and down the gardin till she com to an ympe, and clippe it in hir armes full harde and thise com for to take hir a-wey; but they myght not hir remeve, and yet thei pulde and drough, but more dide thei nought; and thei were nygh woode for sorowe and angre, that for a litill thei wolde hir haue slayn, and Vlfin and Bretell be come to these v that hem a-bide with swerdes drawen, and Bretell smote so the firste that he mette that he slytte hym to the teth, and Vlfin smote a-nother that the heede fill to grounde, and the other thre smyte at hem sore, but nought thei myght hem apeire, for thei were well armed; and thei wolde haue fledde, but thei kepte hem so shorte that alle thre there were deed, and thei com to the tother fyve that peyned to lede a-wey the quene by force, but thei myght not haue hir a-wey from the ympe, and thei plukked at hir so sore that nygh thei rente bothe armes from the body, and whan that Vlfin and Bretell saugh the queene in soche turnement, thei ronne thider, and hem a-scried, and a-noon thei com hem a-geins, and yaf

Five of the traitors take the queen, and the other five stay to fight with them.

*[Fol. 165*a*.]

Gonnore lays hold of a shrub, and the traitors cannot get her away.

Ulfin and Bretell kill three of the men.

They go to the other five;

to-geder grete strokes with swerdes ther as thei myght atteyne, that thei slowgh tweyne of the v; and thei saugh thei were but thre, and thei turned to flight down the lane towarde the barge; and whan Vlfin and Bretell saugh hem fleen thei sette no force hem to enchace, but com to the olde deuell, the maistresse, and caught hir by the sholderes, and caste hir down the roche, and rolled fro roche to roche till she com to the river, and than thei caste in the bodyes of alle hem that thei hadde slayn, and than thei toke the queene and ledde hir to hir chambre sore affraied, and thei badde hir be nothinge be dismayed. Than thei toke the false Gonnore and ledde hir to theire hostell, for thei wolde that noon aparceyved her covyne.

they kill two of them; the other three run away. Ulfin and Bretell cast the mistress down the rock into the river; also the bodies of those they slew. They lead the queen to her chamber, and the false Gonnore to their hostel.

Thus as ye haue herde were the traitours demened by the counseile of Merlin, and the Queene was socoured by these two worthi men; and as soone as thei were gon, a-noon Merlin it knewe well, and than he badde the kynge sende two maydenes in to the chamber to the queene for to bringe hir to bedde, and the kynge asked wherefore is ther not I-nowgh of the maistresse, and Merlin tolde hym the trouthe all as it was be-fallen; and whan the kynge it herde he merveiled moche of this thinge, and seide he sholde not be in ese till he hadde spoken with his doughter; and than departed the kynge leodogan and com in to the chamber where-as Gonnore his doughter was, and brought with hym two maydenes to helpe hir to bedde; and whan she saugh hir fader she be-gan tenderly to wepe, and the kynge toke hir by the hande, and spake with hir sooll by hir-self, and he badde hir not to be dismayed, for she sholde no more haue no drede, and she tolde hym all the auenture that was be-fallen; and than the kynge comaunded the maydenes to make hir redy, and bringe hir to bedde, and thei a-noon dide his comaundement, *and the kynge leodogan wolde neuer departe oute of the chambre till that he saugh the signe of the crowne vpon hir*e* reynes; and than wiste he verily that it was his doughter vpon his wif, and than he couered hir a-gein, a wente oute of the chambre and spake no worde; and the dameseiles merveiled sore whi that he dide

Merlin knowing what had happened, bids Leodogan send two maidens to the queen.

Leodogan comes to see his daughter

who tells him all her adventure.

*[Fol. 165*b*.]

He will not leave her chamber till he sees the sign of the crown on her body.

The damsels marvel.

so, and than com the kynge Arthur and his companye from theire disporte, and whan he com in to the halle, the kynge Leodogan and Merlin com hym a-geins, and badde hym go to his wif to bedde, ffor it was reson and high tyme, and he seide he wolde with good will, and com in to the chambre where the two maidenes weren that hadde brought the queene to bedde, and as soone as he was in his bedde thei departed oute of the chambre, and lefte no moo but hem two, and ther thei ledde myri lif togeder as thei that well loued.

Arthur comes to bed with his queen.

Thus sholde the queene haue be disceyued be these traitours, and thourgh hem after-ward hadde she grete annoye that longe tyme endured, as the storye shall declare how that the kynge hir lefte thre yer, that she com neuer in his companye; but was with Galehaut, a riche prince in the reame of Sorloys, for the love of launcelot; and the kynge Arthur hilde in a-voutrye the false Gonnore till that a maladie hir toke, and Bertelak, a traitour, that made he wolde hir not forsake for no man, till that she stanke and rotened a-bove erthe, and the reame was therfore nygh thre yere enderdited, and stode a-cursed that neuer manes body ne womans was byried in noon halowed place, but a-cursed be the centense of holy cherche, and all this trouble suffred oure lorde hem for to haue for hir synnes that were right grete, and all this com thourgh a knyght that died after vpon myschevouse deth, as ye shull here declared in the seconde book of this storie, and it is reson to telle what was the cause that it fill.

The story will declare how the queen was with Galehaut, and how Arthur lived in adultery with the false Gonnore,

and how the realm was accursed on account of Bertelak.

This was the trouthe that the kynge leodogan was a noble knyght, and kepte well Iustice and right, and he hadde with hym a wise knyght that hadde don hym goode servise; and he was come of high lynage, and hadde be a goode knyght in his tyme, and was cleped Bertelak, and he hated a knyght dedly, for that he hadde slayn his cosin germain for his wif, that he loved, and whan Bertelak wiste that he hadde his cosin slain, and his wif diffouled, he ne deyned not to make no playnt to the kynge leodogan, but com to hym and hym diffied, and a-waited hym after many a day and many

Leodogan is a noble knight.

Bertelak, a wise knight, hated a knight who had slain his cousin.

a nyght; and it fill that same even that arthur hadde wedded his wif that the knyghtes departeden for the court, and wente to theire hostels, and happed that Bertelak mette that knyght and with hym two squyers, and a-noon Bertelak ran vpon hym and hym slowgh; and whan he hadde don he wente to his hostell, and the two squyers that were with the knyght made a grete crie, that *the peple ronne oute on alle parties with lanternes, and brondes of fire, and torches brennynge, and fonde the knyght slayn, and thei aske the two squyers that made so grete doell who hadde hym slain; and thei seide that Bertelak the rede hadde it don, and whan the squyers hadde cried and braied for theire lord longe while, thei toke hym vp and bar hym to theire hostell, and dide hym birie as oon sholde do a deed knyght, and dide the seruise at cherche as ther-to belonged; and on the morowe Vlfin and Bretell sente after Cleodalis, the stiward, for to come speke with hem in her hostell, and he com a-noon with goode chere as fre and debonair, and a-noon as he was comen, thei toke hym in counseile, and tolde hym all the a-uenture as it was be-fallen how his doughter hadde wrought; and whan he hadde herde the vntrouthe of hire he seide his doughter was she not, ffor yef she hadde be my doughter she hadde not don this for no-thinge that is in the erthe; and as thei spake to-geder a-monge hem thre. The kynge leodogan was a-risen erly, ffor sore was he affraied of the merveiles that were be-falle that nyght of his doughter, and Merlin was also a-risen, and seide, "Sir, god yeve yow goode morowe;" and whan the kynge hym saugh he made hym feire chere, and bad god hym blisse. Than eche toke other be the hande, and wente spekynge of many thinges till thei com to the hostell of Vlfin and Bretell, and thei entred in so stilliche that thei ther-of wiste no worde till thei were euen comen vpon hem, and a-noon as thei were of hem war, thei yede hem a-geins as thei that nothinge were a-baisshed to worship eny worthi man. Than thei entred in to a chambre alle v, and Vlfin brought forth Gonnore, and tolde how she and the traitours hadde wrought, not-with-stondinge thei knewe it

He meets him and kills him.

The squires make a great cry, and the people run out and find the dead knight.

*[Fol. 166*a*.]

They bury him.

Ulfin and Bretell send for Cleodalis, and tell him of his daughter.

He says she cannot be his daughter.

Leodogan rises early,

and meets Merlin.

They come to the hostell of Ulfin and Bretell.

Ulfin brings forth the false Gonnore.

alle wele, for Merlin hadde it tolde the kynge all as it was. Than spake the kinge leodogan to his stiwarde, and seide, "Sir, Senescall, I love yow well, and fayn I wolde purchace youre worship*pe* for to encrece, and so I shall do yef I may lyve; ffor full well ye haue me serued and trewly, and therfore wolde I do nothinge that sholde yow turne to shame or reprof, and witte ye wherfore I it sey. Se here youre doughter that wele hath deserued that ther sholde be don on hir Iustice. But ye haue be so trewe to me that I ought it wele to pardon for the love of yow, or a gretter thinge than is this. But for that me be-hoveth for to take vengau*n*ce in some manere, hit be-houeth yow to bringe hir oute of this reame In soche wise that neuer she be sein of man ne of woman that hir knowe; ffor so I will that it be don;" and the stiwarde ansuerde and seide that his doughter ne was she neuer. But in as moche as it was his wille and his *comaundement he wolde hit don, "ffor so god helpe me," quod he, "I hadde leuer she hadde be biried all quyk than this hadde hir be-fallen. Ne to me she ne aperteyned nothinge neuer." "Now," quod the kynge, "lete be all this matier, and loke that it be don in soche maner that I neuer here more speche of hir here-after, and that ye take of myne what that is youre plesier."

Leodogan tells Cleodalis that he loves him,

and will pardon his daughter for love of him; but he must take her out of the realm.

The steward says he will do so.

*[Fol. 166*b*.]

Thus was take the counseile of the Barou*n*s, and Cleodalis appareiled hym and his stepdoughter to go with-outen lenger respite, and rode forth by theire iou*r*neyes till thei com oute of the reame of Carmelide in to an abbey that stode in a full wilde place, and ther he hir lefte, as seith the storie, till that Bertelak the reade hir fonde, whiche by his art and his engyn by hir lay longe tyme after. But of hir as now speketh no more the tale saf that Cleodalis lefte hir there, and come a-gein to Toraise in to the grete Court of the kynge leodogan in Carmelide, wher-as was the kynge Arthur.

Cleodalis takes his stepdaughter to an abbey, where she remains till Bertelak finds her.

Cleodalis returns to Toraise.

CHAPTER XXVI.

BANISHMENT OF BERTELAK; FIGHT AND RECONCILIATION BETWEEN ARTHUR AND LOOT; ARTHUR'S COURT AT LOGRES; VOWS OF THE KNIGHTS OF THE ROUND TABLE AND THE QUEEN'S KNIGHTS; THE TOURNAMENT.

Leodogan and Merlin leave Ulfin and Bretell,

Whan the kynge leodogan hadde comaunded his stiwarde to bringe his stepdoughter oute of the reame, he and Merlin departed from Vlfin and Bretell, and com in to the halle hande to hande, where thei fonde the Barou*n*s alle redy, and oon hadde ronge to masse, and so thei wente to the mynster, and whan masse was seide thei com a-gein in to the halle, and than com the kyn of the deed knyght that Bertelak hadde slain, ffor to make theire complainte to the kynge; and the kynge leodogan sente for to seche hym at his hostell, and he com a-noon with-oute daunger well armed vndir his robes, and brought with hym grete plente of knyghtes, ffor he was full of feire courtesie and a feire speker, and a-noon the kynge hym asked why he hadde the knyght slain in treson, and he seide that of treson he sholde hym wele diffende a-gein alle tho that wolde hym apele, "and I sey no nay but that I slough the knyght, but firste I dide hym deffie, and it was not with-oute grete cause, ffor moche peple knowe wele that he slough my cosin germain for his wif that he diffouled, and me semeth that in alle maners that oon may oweth he to greve his mortall enmye after that he hath hym diffied;" and the kynge seide that that was not I-nough. "But yef ye hadde yow complayneth to me, and I wolde not haue it redressed than myght ye haue take vengaunce, but ye ne spake ther-of to me neuer worde." "Sir," quod he, "ye sey yo*ur* volunte. But a-geins yow mysdide I neuer, ne neuer ne shall yef god will." Quod the kynge, "I will that right be hadde." "Sir," seide Bertelak le Rous, "I se well that I moste be at youre volunte," and than comaunded the kynge leodogan that Iugement sholde be yoven be the rede of his barou*n*s.

and come into the hall. The relations of the knight that Bertelak slew come to complain to the king.

Bertelak comes with many knights.

He defends himself.

The king says he should have complained to him.

The ten who sit in judgment.

At this Iugement was the kynge Arthur, and the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and sir Gawein, and sir Ewein, and Galasshin, and Nascien, and Adragain, and hervy de rivel, *and Guyomar. These x were at the Iugement and spake to-geder of oon thinge and other, and thei a-corded in the ende that he sholde be disherited, and voyde the londe of the kynge leodogan for euer more; and the kynge Ban that was of feire eloquense tolde the tale as he was charged, and he spake so high that he myght wele be herde, bothe of nygh and fer. "Sirs," quod he, "these barouns that beth here a-warded that Bertelais le Rous shall be disherited of all his londe that he holdeth in youre powere, and shall for-swhere the contre for euer more; ffor that he toke the Iustice vpon hym-self of the knyght that he slough, and namly by nyght, ffor the Iustice longed not to hym, and on that other side ye holde court open and myghty that oweth to condite alle saf goynge and saf comynge to alle tho that come at this high feste," and with that sat down the kynge Ban that no more seide at that tyme; and whan Bertelays saugh he was for-Iuged, and that he ne myght noon othirwise do he returned with-oute moo wordes; ffor he durste not the Iugement with-sey, ffor the highest lordes of the worlde, and the moste puyssaunt hadde it don. But yef eny other hadde it don a-noon he wolde the Iugement haue falsed, and thus wente Bertelais le Rous, but many a knyght hadde he hym to conueye to whom he hadde yoven many feire yeftes, ffor he hadde be a noble knyght and a vigerouse, and so he past forth on his iourneyes that he com to the same abbey, wher-as was the false Gonnore, and ther he a-bode and soiourned longe tyme, and was in grete thought as he that cowde moche euell, how that he myght be a-venged of the kynge leodogan and the kynge Arthur that hadde hym thus for-juged, and for that fill to Arthur grete trouble and so grete discorde be-twene hym and his wif, that he lefte her longe tyme, as ye shull here in the secunde book of this processe yef god will vouche-saf to graunte me so longe space to writen it. But now we moste cesse of this mater, and speke of the

*[Fol. 167a.]

Ban declares the sentence of the barons, which is that Bertelak's land shall be taken from him, and he shall be banished.

Bertelak dares not answer.

He comes to the abbey where the false Gonnore is. He thinks how he may be avenged of Leodogan and Arthur.

goode kynge Arthur that is at Toraise, in Carmelide, with the kynge leodogan, and with the grete companye.

Full myry lif ledde the kynge Arthur with his wif viij dayes, and the neynthe day after that he was spoused he cleped his Barou*n*s, and badde hem make hem redy to ride, ffor he was in talent for to repeire in to the reame of logres, and thei seide that thei were all redy for to ride; and than the kynge toke Gawein in counseile, and seide, "Ffeire nevew, take with yow as many of youre companye that ther leve here but v hundred, ffor I will come ride after stilleche and esely, and ye shall go to logres my chief Citee, and ordeyne redy alle thinges that is necessarie, and of vitaile, and of deynteis, as ye may so that nothinge ne faute, and sendith fer and nygh that I will holde court this mydde August the richest that I may." "Sir," seide Gawein, "I haue drede lest ye be encombred be the wey of some maner peple." "Of that haue ye no drede," quod *the kynge, "but go ye in all haste." Than departed sir Gawein from his vncle and com to his felowes, and bad hem to make hem redy for to ride, and thei wente to theire hostelles, and hem armed; but firste thei toke leve of the kynge leodogan, and of the Barou*n*s of Carmelide, and thus departed Gawein fro the courte, he and his companye; and the kynge Arthur a-bode with v hundre men, whereof two hundre and fifty were knyghtes of the rounde table; and Gawein and his companye com to logres; but Gawein was euer pensif for his vncle that he hadde lefte in Carmelide, that hym sholde eny thinge myshappe vpon the wey, ffor he hadde fer contrey to ride that marched to his enmyes er he com in to his londe in safte, and he hym hasted to do the kynges comaundement, and sent to alle hem that the kynge loved that thei sholde come to his Court at the myddell of August, and eche made hym redy to come to court as strongely as thei myght, and Gawein ordeyned that vitaile[1] com on alle parties with cartes and Chariettis that he stuffed so well the Citee as longed to soche a feste, as he

Arthur leads a merry life with his wife for eight days.
He tells his barons to be ready to go to Logres.

He tells Gawein to go to Logres, and prepare the city.

*[Fol. 167*b*.]
Gawein departs from his uncle, and bids his fellows get ready.

He leaves the court.
Arthur remains with 500 men.

Gawein fears for his uncle's safety.

He sends to all those who love the king to come to his court at the middle of August.

---

[1] The words "that vitaile" are repeated in the MS.

He is one of the best of knights.

He goes to his uncle.

that full well coude hym entermete that nothinge ne failed; ffor as the storye seith he was oon of the beste knyghtes, and wiseste of the worlde, and ther-to the leste mysspeker, and noon a-vauntor, and the beste taught of alle thinges that longeth to worship*pe* or curtesie; and whan he hadde made all redy he toke his wey toward his vncle, ffor grete drede he hadde of that he sholde be distrobeled on the wey of som peple. But now we shull a-while cesse of hym and his companye, and speke of the kynge Arthur.

Arthur and his wife go towards Bredigan.

Ban and Bohors go with them.

Sir Amnistian goes with the queen as her chaplain. Gonnore takes also her cousin, and her brother Sadoyne.

King Loot hears of Arthur's journey, and lays in wait for him in the forest of Sapernye.

Leodogan goes with Arthur for three days, and then returns

*[Fol. 168*a*.]

Merlin takes leave of Arthur.

The thridde day after that Gawein was departed from the kynge Arthur his vncle, the kynge toke his wey towarde the Castell of Bredigan, he and his wif, and in her companye was the kynge Ban of Benoyk, and the kynge Bohors of Gannes that was his brother, and the beste knyght that eny man neded to seche, and so ther were CCL knyght*es* of the rounde table that alle were feed men with the kynge leodogan, and the queene hadde so praied sir Amnistian that was chapelein with the kynge leodogan hir fader, that he com with hir, and was sithen hir chapelein longe tyme; and so ledde Gonnore hir cosin that was feire, and debonaire, and amyable to alle peple, and Sadoyne hir brother that was elther than she, and Castelein of Daneblaise, the noble Citee; and as soone as the kynge Arthur was departed oute of the reame of Carmelide, the kynge loot hadde knowinge by his asspies, and he and his knyghtes rode a-gein hym, and hem enbusshed in the foreste of sapernye, and seide that ther sholde he a-bide the kynge Arthur, and take from hym his wif, yef he myght. But of hym we shull now cesse, and speke of the kynge Arthur that was departed oute of Carmelide, and the storie seith how the kynge leodogan conveyed hem thre dayes hole, and the fourthe day he returned in to his reame, and than com Merlin to the kynge Arthur and toke leve, and seide that he sholde go to *his maister Blaase, for longe hadde he hym not seyn, and the kynge hadde well spedde of that he hadde for to done. Than seide the kynge, "Merlin, feire frende shull ye not be at my court at logres?" "Yesse," seide Merlin, "I shall be ther er it departe," and ther-with eche of hem comaunded other to god, but he was but litill wey thens whan no man wiste where that he was be-comen; and Merlin wente to Blaase the same nyght, and he hym resceyued with grete ioye, whan that he hym saugh, and Merlin tolde hym alle the a-uentures that were falle seth that he departed, and he tolde hym how the kynge loot was enbusshed in the foreste of sapernye, and tolde hym other thinges I-nowghe that after be-fill in the reame of logres; and Blaase hem wrote as he tolde, and by his booke haue we the knowinge; but now cesseth to speke of Merlin, and Blase, and speke of Arthur.

He goes to Blase and tells him his adventures, and how Loot was lying in wait for Arthur.

Blase writes down all that he tells him.

Whan the kynge Arthur was departed from the kynge leodogan, and Merlin also, as ye haue herde, he rode with v hundre men of armes, and ledde with hym his wif Gonnore the queene, and he rode smale iourneyes till he com in to the foreste of sap*er*nye, where-as the kynge loot was enbusshed with vij hundre men of armes; and the gromes that ledde the somers wiste neuer worde till that thei were fallen euen a-monge hem; and as soone as thei saugh thei were men of armes, thei wiste well thei were not well come. Than thei a-bode and wente no ferther, and sente to the kynge Arthur that thei hadde founde men I-armed; whan the kynge saugh that he was a-spied he a-light on foote, and made his peple come a-boute hym and ordeyned for bataile, and comaunded xl. knyghtes to kepe the queene, and bad hem lede hir to garison yef thei saugh nede. And than thei ride forth her heedes bowed down vndir theire helmes redy hem to diffende, yef thei founde eny peple to stoppe hem the wey, and so thei ride till thei dide falle vpon the wacche, and the kynge Arthur was be-fore in the firste frounte, and the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and the knyghtes of the rounde table; and the kynge looth spronge oute with vij hundre men of armes, and com hem a-geins theire spers, a-gein the assels of the sadeles, and the sheldes be-fore theire breste as faste as horse myght renne, and hem a-scride so high that all the foreste resounded, and these other com vpon hem boldely with sharpe trenchaunte

Arthur comes to the forest of Sapernye.

The men that lead the sumpters see the armed men,

and send to Arthur,

who directs forty knights to protect the queen.

Arthur, Ban, Bohors, and the knights of the round table ride forth.

King Looth springs out with 700 men.

The two sides meet with spears.

speres, and mette to-geder vpon sheldes that many of hem perced and slitte, many were throwe to grounde on bothe sides, and many ther were that brake theire speres and passed forth with-oute fallinge; and whan the spers were spente thei drowgh oute theire swerdes and be-gonne the bateile right grete, that neuer of so fewe peple ne saugh no man so fierce bateile, ffor thei were full noble knyghtes vpon bothe parties; and so longe it lasted, that the kynge Arthur and the kynge looth mette to-geder with speres in hande, and lett renne that oon a-gein that other so harde *as horse myght renne, and mette so harde to-geder with speres vpon sheldes, that the spere poyntes stynte at the hauberkes, and thei ther-on shof with all theire force; and the kynge loot brake his spere, and the kynge Arthur smote hym so harde that he bar hym to grounde ouer his horse croupe; but soone was he lepte vpon foote as he that was of grete prowesse, and drowh his swerde and couered hym with his shelde, and was so doelfull that nygh he yede oute of witte, ffor that he was overthrowe be the myght of a knyght alone, ffor he was not a-customed for to falle often; and the kynge Arthur hadde made his returne and com toward the kynge loot gripinge his spere, for he coveited to take hym quyk; and whan the kynge looth saugh hym come he glenched a-side, and Arthur failed of hym and past forth, and in the passinge the kynge loot smote Arthurs horse in the bely thourgh the guttes, and Arthur fill to grounde, and his horse vpon his body, that his thigh was be-twene the horse and the grounde, so that he myght not a-rise; and the kynge loot sterte to and caught hym by the helme, and drough and pulled all that he myght, and sore hym peyned for to smyten of his heede, and soone ther sholde haue be so grete damage that neuer myght it haue be restored; but as the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and the knyghtes of the rounde table com fiercely vpon the peple of kynge loot, and be-gan sore bateile and harde, so that ther was noon but that he hadde I-nough to done; and so thei peyned hem on bothe parties that the two kynges be remounted, and be-gonne the stour grete and merveillouse; but at grete

They draw their swords.

Arthur and Looth meet together.

*[Fol. 168b.]

Arthur bears Looth to the ground.

Looth leaps up and covers himself with his shield.

Arthur comes to him again.

Loot smites Arthur's horse, so that it rolls over him.

Loot tries to smite off Arthur's head;

but Ban, Bohors, and the knights of the round table come fiercely on Loot's people.

The two kings are remounted.

myschef were the peple of kynge Arthur, ffor the kynge loot hadde two hundre knyghtes moo than hadde kynge Arthur; with that com sir Gawein with foure score felowes well armed, and kay the stiwarde bar the baner; and Arthur be-hielde and saugh Gawein come and knewe hym well by his armes, and also kay the stiwarde be the baner that he bar in his handes that sore desired the assemble, as he that was hardy and enterpendaunt, and right sure ne hadde ben oon tecche that he hadde, ffor that he was copiouse of langage in his disporte for the iolynesse that was in hym and the myrthe; for he was euer bourdinge and iapinge in game, and was the beste felowe in companye that eny man knewe, and for that euer he wolde of custome borde of the sothe hym hated many a knyght for the shame that thei hadde of his wordes, and therfore he myshapped in many a place, ffor the knyghtes that he hadde scorned in myrthe didde hym after grete annoye; but a trewe knyght was he euer a-gein his lorde, and a-gein the queene, euer in to the ende of his deth. Ne neuer in all his live dide he treson saf oon, and that was of lohoot the sone of kynge Arthur that he slough for enuye in the foreste perilouse, and for that Percevale ly Galoys was accused with grete wronge for the deth of the same hoot, like as an Ermyte hit tolde after that *hadde seyn all the dede.

Loot has 200 knights more than Arthur.

Gawein comes with four-score fellows.

Kay bears the banner.

He is hated by many knights;

but he is a true knight.

He slew Lohoot, the son of Arthur in the forest perilouse, and Percevale ly Galoys was accused of the crime.

*[Fol. 169*a*.]

Whan the kynge Arthur saugh Gawein, his nevew come so fiercely, his herte a-roos for grete ioye that he hadde. Than he com to the kynge Ban, and seide, "Sir, se how riche socour to vs cometh, knowe ye not hym that rideth be-fore vpon the blakke stede that gripeth the grete spere vnder the shelde of goolde and azur ther-ynne, a lyon rampaunt;" and the kynge Ban be-heilde, and seide, "Who is it? telle me; ffor I knowe hym not saf that me semeth it sholde be Gawein youre nevew." "Certes," quod Arthur, "he it is, and now may I me a-vaunten that in euell tyme come these vs for to assailen, ffor yef thei were yet as many moo thei myght not a-gein vs endure, yef god hym diffende from euell, he and his companye." "Trewly," seide the kynge Ban, "thei be not

Arthur is joyful when he sees Gawein, and comes to Ban to tell him of their succour.

wise yef thei hym a-bide till that he be a-monge hem medled;" and while thei spake thus to-geder com Gawein all be-fore gripinge his grete spere, and whan he com nygh he knewe well his vncle, and saugh that he hadde grete myster of socour*e*, and than he spronge in a-monge hem rudely as tempest of thunder, and fill that he mette with his fader the kynge loot that newliche was sette on horse, and heilde a stronge spere, and com a-gein hym as moche as the horse myght renne, and mette to-geder vpon the sheldes with all theire forces, and the kynge brake his spere vpon Gaweins shelde, and Gawein smote hym a-gein so harde that he perced shelde and hauberke, and wounded hym somwhat in the lifte side that the blode folowed after, and the kynge fill so harde to grounde that he wiste not wheder it was day or nyght; and Gawein paste forth rudely with-oute a-restinge, and whan he was returned a-gein he fonde his fader lyinge on the erthe vp-right, and he rode ouer hym on horsebak thre or foure tymes, and broused hym sore and foule that nygh he was ther-with slayn; and than Gawein a-light and pight his spere in the grounde, and drough oute Calibourne his goode swerde, that shone bright and clier, and com to the kynge loot that yet lay vp-right and plukked hym by the helme, and raced it of his heede so harde, that on his nose and his browes it was well seene, for he was hurte right sore; and than he a-valed the coyf of his hauberke be-nethe his shuldres, and seide that he was but deed, but yef he wolde yelde hym to prison, and he was so anguysshous that litill he hym ansuerde, neuertheles he dide hym-self enforce, so that he seide with grete sorowe at his herte, "Ha, sir, gentilman, ne sle me nought, for neuer dide I forfet a-gein the, where-fore that thow sholdest me sleen." "Yesse," q*uo*d Gawein, "that haste thow, and alle thi companye that haue assailed myn vncle for to distrouble hi*m* his weye." "How so," quod kynge loot, "who be ye that calle hym youre vncle." "What is that to the what I am, me liste nothinge the to telle, but do a-noon that as I the sey, or thow *art deed, and alle these other that ben in thi companye shull dye, and shull curse the tyme that euer

Gawein sees his uncle,

and springs into the fight.

He meets King Loot.

He wounds him in the side,

and rides over him three or four times.

He draws his sword Calibourne,

and plucks off Loot's helmet.

He asks him if he will yield.

Loot asks Gawein who he is.

*[Fol. 169*b*.]

thei were of moder born." "Telle me," quod the kynge loot, "who ye ben for the love of that ye love moste in this worlde." "But what art thow?" quod Gawein, "that this doste me demaunde." Quod he, "Myn name is looth a caitif*e* kynge of Orcanye, and of leonoys, to whom nothinge doth falle but myschef ne not hath don longe tyme. Now telle me youre name, what ye be." And whan Gawein vndirstode verily that it was his fader a-noon he nempned his name, and seide his name was Gawein, the nevew of kynge Arthur, and whan the kynge loot herde that a-noon he lepte vp, and wolde haue clypt hym in his armes, and seide, "Feire sone, ye be welcome, and I am the sorowfull caitif youre fader that ye haue thus viliche ouerthrowen," and Gawein bad hym drawe hym ferther a-rome, ffor his fader sholde he not be ne his goode frende till that he were a-corded w*ith* the kynge his vncle, and hadde cried hym mercy for his forfet, and than do to hym homage seynge alle his barou*ns*; ffor othirwise loke neuer to truste in me, ffor elles shull ye leve noon other wedde saf youre heed, and than the kynge looth sowowned and fill down to the grounde, and whan he a-woke of swownynge he cride him mercy, and seide, "Feire sone, I will do all that yow may plese, and holde here my swerde, for I yelde it to yow;" and sir Gawein that ther-of hadde grete pite hit toke with gladde chere and myri, and wepte right tendirly water with his iyen vndir his helme, ffor sore he repente in his herte of that he hadde so hurte his fader, but as moche as he myght he kepte hym so that he was not aperceyved.

Gawein first asks who he is.
He says he is King Loot.
Gawein tells him his name.
Loot leaps up and would embrace him,
but Gawein tells him he cannot be his friend till he has done homage to Arthur.
Loot swoons.
When he awakes he says he will do as Gawein pleases.
Gawein is sorry that he has hurt his father.

Than thei com bothe to theire horse, and lept vp and com to theire peple, and hem departed. But fowle were the kynge loothis men ouerleide, ffor the knyghtes of the rounde table and the felowes of sir Gawein hadde hem so euyll be seyn at the firste metynge that moo than xl thei hadde felde to grounde that thei hadde no power to remounte, and sir Gawein com and hem departed, and than wente Gawein to Arthur his vncle; and as soone as the kynge saugh hym come, he com hym ageins, and seide, "Feire nevew, ye be welcome, wherefore be ye come in to this p*ar*ties, wiste ye eny thinge of this

They come to their people.
Loot's men are in distress.
Gawein goes to Arthur,
who welcomes him.

a-wayte;" and Gawein seide that he douted hit sore, "ffor I myght neuer be in hertes ese till I hadde yow seyn, and oure lorde god," quod he, "now he thanked and honoured of this assemble, ffor it is the kynge looth my fader with whom that ye were in medle; and now hit is so be-fallen that he is come to crye yow mercy, as to his liege lorde erthly for the trespasse that he hath don a-gein yow, and therfore resceyveth his homage like as ye owe for to do, ffor he is here all redy hit to p*er*forme and do." Whan the kynge Arthur that herde he ioyned his handes toward heuene, *and thanked god of the worship*pe* that he hadde hym shewed; and with that com the kynge Loot and his knyghtes down the medowes alle on foote, and hadde don of theire helmes from theire heedes and valed theire coiffes of mayle vpon theire sholderes and com full symple; and whan Gawein saugh his fader come be-fore, he seide to his vncle, "Sir, lo here my fader cometh to yow for to do homage;" and a-noon the kynge Arthur sette foot to the grounde, and alle the other barou*n*s after; and the kynge Loot com be-fore Arthur and sette hym on his knee, and hielde his swerde be the poynte as he that hadde forfeted, and seide, "Sir, I yelde me here to youre mercy as he that hath often a-gein yow forfeted, and dide yow neuer but grevaunce, and annoye, now do yowre plesire of me and of my londe," and ther be-com the kynge Loot liege man to the kynge Arthur be-fore alle his barou*n*s, and assured his feith to do hym seruyse whan that he hym comaunded; than Arthur toke hym be the right hande and made hym to a-rise on his feet, and seide, "Sir, stondeth vp, for longe I-nough haue ye kneled, ffor I ought it yow to pardon, for that ye be so worthi a man, and a gretter forfet than this is, ffor thowgh that I haue hated yow neuer so dedly, ye haue here soche children that haue do me soche servise that I may haue no will to do yow noon euell, and therfore I offre here to yow all thinge that is myn at youre volunte, ffor the love of Gawein youre sone, that I love beste of eny knyght that is in the worlde, and ther be here two knyghtes that I owe to love as wele, and bothe ben thei kynges that moche

Gawein tells how his father Looth wishes to do homage to Arthur.

*[Fol. 170*a*.]

Arthur thanks God.

Loot and his knights come with their helmets off.

Loot kneels before Arthur,

and becomes his liegeman.

Arthur makes Loot rise, and pardons him because he is a worthy man,

and for love of his children.

haue me socoured in grete nede.” And he stode vp and seide, “Sire, gramercy.” Thus was made pees be-twene kynge Loot and the kynge Arthur, and than thei lepe to theire horse gladde and ioyfull of this a-venture, and riden so by here iourneyes till thei com to logres where thei were resceyved with the grettest ioye of the worlde, and euery day the peple dide encrese; ffor the dwellers of the contrey com thider for drede of the saisnes that hem distroyed, and the londe; and ther was so grete prees of peple that many be-hoved to loigge in the medowes, and whan the kynge Arthur saugh so grete plente of peple, he was gladde and myry, and seide that he wolde holde court open and enforced, and sente by his messangers that alle sholde come to his court roiall; and on the morowe the kynge Loot dide his homage to the kynge Arthur, and made his oth on the chief mynster seinge alle the peple that was right grete and huge, and the kynge Arthur refeffed hym a-gein in his londe that he hadde be-fore, to hym and to hys heires for euer more, and who that dide hym eny wronge he sholde hym supporte to his power, and resceyved hym gladde and iocounde as a noble man, and fro that day forth were thei goode frendes all her lif; *and whan the masse was seide thei com a-gein to the paleyse, and yede to mete, and thei were well serued and richely, and after mete wente the knyghtes to se the medowes, and the river, and the tentes, and the pavilou*n*s that were pight with-oute the town, ffor ther were many full feire and riche, and in this disporte and solace were thei viij dayes hool, and the peple dide sore encrece, ffor the kynge dide hit comaunde for that he wolde holde court roiall and plentevouse, and bere crowne he and his wif at the mydde of august, and whan it com to the evene that the feeste sholde be-gynne on the morowe, Arthur yaf his yeftes soche as to hym a-pertened of horse, and palfreyes, and armour, and money, as golde and siluer, for he hadde plente; and the queene yaf hem robes fressh and newe as she that well hadde therfore ordeyned, and moche cowde of honour and all curteysie, that alle peple hadde hir in so grete love that hem thought thei hadde recouered the

Thus was peace made between Loot and Arthur.

They come to Logres,

where there are great numbers of people.

Arthur sends messengers to tell that he will hold a court.

Loot does homage to Arthur,

*[Fol. 170*b*.]

and they remain good friends for life.

They go to the meadows and the pavilions outside the town.

The people greatly increase.

Arthur gives horses and money, and the queen gives robes.

lady of alle ladyes, and yef the knyghtes hadde riche p*re*sentes, the ladyes and dameselles hadden also, and maydenes bothe fer and nygh; and so spradde the renoun thourgh every contrey of Arthur, that the princes that weren with hym wroth wisten of the pees that the kynge Loot hadde made with the kynge Arthur, and how he sholde holde his court roiall at the myddill of August, and that alle peple were thider somowned, and some of hem seiden secretly to theire counseile that thei wolde gladly haue spedde in the same manere as the kynge Loot hadde don; and some ther were of hem that thoughten in theire hertis and praied to god that thei sholde neuer dye on no deth er thei were acorded with the kynge Arthur, ffor all this trouble and myschef that is fallen vn-to vs, is com thourgh the synne that we have don agein god and forfet to hym.

Their renown spreads through the countries,

and some of the princes wish they were at peace with Arthur.

Thus seide oon to a-nother; and the kynge Arthur was in his maister Citee in ioye and solace as ye haue I-herde, and whan it com to the day of the myddill August, thider com all the knyghtes to the courte clothed and a-raied in the richest robes that thei hadden, and the Queene was appareiled, she and hir ladyes, and maidenys, and dameseles richely as longeth to soche an high feeste; and whan thei hadde ronge to high masse thei wente alle to the mynster and herde the servise that the archebisshop*pe* dide singe; and that day bar Arthur crowne, and the queene Gonnore his wif*e*, and the kynge Ban and the kynge Bohors were crowned also for the love of hem; and after masse thei com to the halle where the clothes were leyde, and the lordes were sette thourgh the halle as thei owe for to be. That day serued Gawein at the high deyse ther as the foure kynges seten, and kay the stiward, and lucas the boteller, and sir Ewein le graunt the sone of kynge Vrien, and Gifflet, and Ewein *a-voutres, and Segramor, and Dodinell le sauage, and kay destranx, and kehedins ly bens, and kehedins le petit, and Ayglyns des vaux that was his brother, and Galegantius the walsh, and Blyoberis, and Galescowde, and Colegrenaunt, and launal, and Aglonall, and Ewein Esclains, and Ewein de lionell, and Ewein white hande, and Guyomar, and Synados, and

The knights come to court in the middle of August. The queen and her ladies are richly apparelled.

All go to the minster, where Arthur and Gonnore, and Ban and Bohors are crowned.

The names of those who served at the high dais.

*[Fol. 171*a*.]

Gosenain hardy body, and Agrauain the prowde, and Gueheret, and Gaheries, and Acon de bemonde, and alle these xxi served at the high deyse, and xl other yonge bachelers serued at other tables ther-ynne, and thei were so well served of alle maner thinges that neuer peple were better, and whan alle the meesse were served in, than spake the kynge Arthur so lowde that alle that were in the halle myght it heren, and he seide, "Now lordinges, alle ye that ben com here in to my courte me for to gladen and counforte, I yelde yow graces and thonkinge for the honour and the ioye that ye haue me don, and that ye be come for to do; and I do yow to wite that I will stablissh to my courte alle the tymes that I shall bere crowne. That neuer from hens-forth shall I not sitte to mete in to the tyme that I here some straunge tydinge, or elles some aventure. Be soche forwarde that yef it be myster I shall do it to be redressed by the knyghtes of my court, whiche for prise and honour hider to repeire and ben my frendes, and my felowes, and my peres." And whan the knyghtes of the rounde table herde this a-vow that the kynge hadde I-made, thei spake to-geder and seiden, "Seeth that the kynge hath made a-vow in his courte, hit be-hoveth that we make oure a-vow," and thei a-corded alle to oon thinge, and therwith thei charged Nascien to reherse it be-fore the kynge.

Forty other young bachelors serve at the other tables.

Arthur speaks loud,

and thanks all that have come to his court.

His knights will redress wrongs.

The knights of the round table say that it behoves them to make a vow.

Than wente alle the knyghtes of the rounde table, and Nascien be-gan to speke be-fore the kynge so high, that thei alle myght here that were in the halle. "Sir," seide Nascien, "the knyghtes of the rounde table be come here to god, and in youre audyence, and to alle the barou*n*s that here ben. In-as-moche as ye haue made a-vow thei make here a-nother that shall euer endure while her lif lasteth. That yef eny maiden haue eny nede or come to youre courte for to seche helpe or socour by so that it may be a-cheved by the body of oon knight a-gein a-nother, thei will with goode will go in to what contrey she will hem leden hir for to delyuer, and make alle the wronges to be redressed that to hir hath be don;" and whan the kynge this vndirstode, he asked of the knyghtes of

Nascien speaks so that all may hear, and says that the knights of the round table will help and succour any distressed maiden.

The knights

agree to what Nascien says.

the rounde table yef thei dide graunte to that as Nascien hadde seide; and thei seiden, "Ye;" and to this thei wolde be sworn hit for to mayntene, and not to spare for lif ne for deth, and than be-gan the ioye gretter than it hadde be byfore; and whan Gawein vndirstode the ioye that thei maden for the a-vowes that were ther I-stablisshed, he seide to his felowes as he that cowde all *norture and curtesie. "Sirs," seide Gawein, "yef eche of yow will a-corde to that I shall seyn, I shall ofre soche a-vow wher-of shall come to yow and to me grete honour alle the dayes of oure life;" and thei ansuerde and seide that thei wolde graunte and assente to all that euer he wolde speke with his mowthe. "Than," quod he, "assureth me youre feith to holde me companye;" and a-noon thei hym assured, and were xxiiij be counte."

*[Fol. 171*b*.] Gawein asks his fellows if they will agree to the vow he will make for them.

The twenty-four agree.

Gawein comes to the queen, and prays her to let them be her knights.

Whan that sir Gawein hadde take the feith of his felowes he come be-fore the Queene, and seide, "Madame, I and my felowes be come to yow, and praye yow and requere that ye will with-holde vs to be youre knyghtes and youre meyne. That whan thei come in eny strange contrey to seche loos and pris, yef any man hem aske with whom thei be, and of what londe. Than thei may seyn of the reame of logres, and be the knyghtes of Queene Gonnore, the wif of kynge Arthur." Whan the Queene vndirstode this, she dressed hir vp-stondinge, and seide, "Feire nevew, gr*a*mercy to yow and to hem alle; ffor I yow resceyve with gladde chere as lordes and my frendes, and as ye offre yow to me, so I offre me to yow with trewe herte; and I pray god lete me so long lyve that I may yow guerdon of the worship*pe* and the curtesie that ye promyse me for to do." "Madame," seide Gawein, "we be alle youre knyghtes, and ye haue us with-holde god it yow quyte. Now shull we make a-vow; That what man or woman cometh to yow for to seche socour or helpe a-geyn the body of oon knyght, he shall not faile to haue oon of vs to delyuer hym body for body, and go with hem in to what contrey thei will vs bringe; and whiche of vs so it be that take eny soche iourney on hande, and hit happe that he come not a-gein with-

The queen thanks Gawein,

who vows that one of them will succour whatever man or woman comes to her for help; and if he does not return, an-ynne a moneth, eche oon of vs shall go for to seche hym sool by hym-self, a yer*e* and a day with-oute repeire to courte; but yef with-ynne that terme he can bringe trewe tydinges of his felowe, and whan thei be come to court eueryche shall telle his a-ventures that hym be-falleth in the tyme what-so-euer thei be, gode or euell, and thei shull be sworn to sey the trouthe of all bothe in the goynge and in the comynge."

other shall go to seek him.

When they return to court they shall tell their adventures.

Whan the queene vndirstode the a-vow that Gawein hadde made, she was the gladdest woman in the worlde, and the kynge was glader than eny other that was in the courte, and for the kynge wolde comforte the queene, he seide, "Dame, seth god hath ordeyned yow this honour to haue so feire a co*m*panye, some curtesie moste I do for the love of hem, and also for the love of youre-self, and wite ye wher-of I putte in youre gouernaunce my tresour in soch maner that ye be lady and partyner of all at youre plesier;" and whan the queene this herde, she kneled be-fore the kynge and seide, "Sir, gramercy." And than the queene called sir Gawein, and seide, "Feire *nevew, I will that foure clerkes be stablisshed hereynne that shull do nothinge elles but write the a-ventures that falle to yow and youre felowes, so that after youre deth it may be remembred the high prowesse of the worthi men hereynne." "Madame," seide Gawein, "I graunte;" and than were ther chosen foure clerkes to write the a-ventures as thei fill in the courte fro thens-forth; and than seide Gawein that he sholde not here speke of noon a-venture, but he sholde go to seche it; and he and his felowes sholde do so moche that thei sholde bringe ther-of trewe tidinges to courte, and so seiden the knyghtes of the rounde table in the same manere; and all-wey fro thens-fourth was sir Gawein and his felowes called the queenes knyghtes. With that were the clothes taken vp, and than be-gan the ioye right grete of oon and other ther-ynne. But ouer alle other that were ther-ynne was I-herde Dagenet of Clarion; ffor he made gret myrthe amonge hem, so that alle thei be-hielde hym for merveile. But a fooll he was of nature, and the moste coward pece of flessh that was in the worlde;

The queen is very glad. So also is the king.

The queen says she will *[Fol. 172*a*.] have four clerks to write the adventures of Gawein and his fellows.

Four clerks are chosen.

Sir Gawein and his fellows are called the queen's knights.

Dagenet of Clarion is a fool and a coward.

this Dagenet be-gan to trippe and daunce, and cried so lowde with high voyse, and seide, "to-morow shall I go seche these a-ventures," and seide to Gawein, "will ye come? and ye, sir Ewein and Segr*a*mor will ye come thider that be so feire and moche, and ye lordinges of the rounde table. Certes, I trowe not that ye haue the herte ne the hardynesse me for to sewen, ther I shall go to-morowe." Thus seide Dagenet the coward, and the knyghtes ther-at lowen, and hadde grete game; and with-oute faile he hym armed many tymes, and wente in to the forestes, and henge his shelde on an Oke, and smote it so that alle the colours were faded, and the shelde to hakked in many places, and than wolde he seyn that he hadde slayn a knyght or tweyne; and whan he mette eny knyght armed he turned to flight as fer as he myght here hym speke at the leeste; and many tymes fill yef he mette eny knyght erraunt that were pensif that spake no worde he wolde take hym by the bridell, and lede hym forth as he hadde hym taken; of soche maners was Dagenet, and yet he was right a feire knyght and of high lynage, and yet it semed not by his countenaunce that he was soche a fooll.

He says he will go and seek adventures.

The knights laugh at him.

He hangs his shield on a tree, and hacks it in many places, when he says he has slain knights.

He is of high lineage, and does not look such a fool.

Grete was the ioye and the feeste the day of myddill of August, at logres, whan these a-vowes were made, and whan thei that hadden serued hadde eten, com kay the stiwarde, and seide, "Sirs, what thenke ye to do; shull we not to*ur*ney to be-gynne some myrthe at soche high feeste as this is?" Whan Segramor herde this he lepte vp, and seide that recreaunt and shamed be he that will not turneyn; and Mynoras ansuerde that thei wolde turney a-gein the queenes knyghtes, "and lete vs take so many knyghtes what oon and what other that we be euen like many," *and sir Gawein asked a-gein how many knyghtes thei wolde turney, and Adragain seide thei wolde haue V^c in her companye, and Gawein seide that he wolde take other V^c in his companye. "Than lete it no lenger be taried," quod Pynados, "for the day passeth." Than thei wente to theire hostels and armed hem with grete spede, and yede in to the medowes with-oute the town, and ther thei assembled

There is great joy; and Kay asks if they shall tourney.

Segramor leaps up. Mynoras says they will tourney against the queen's knights.

*[Fol. 172*b*.]

There are to be five hundred on each side.

They go to their hostels to arm themselves.

what oon what other that thei were x^{c}. Than was the ban cried that eche man sholde go on whiche part that he wolde, and thei disseuered and wente eche to his baner; and than com Gawein to hervy de rivell, and departed theire meyne, so that in eche partye ther was v hundred, and than the heraudes be-gan for to crye, *Cy est lonours darmes Ore y parra* qui *checun le ferra;* and whan it com to the assemble, a knyght cam to sir Gawein, and seide, "The kynge yowre vncle sente yow worde that ye sholde come speke with hym at the wyndowe ther-as he yow a-bideth;" and sir Gawein wente thider and ledde with hym sir Ewein his cosyn, and Segramour, and Gyfflet, and the curroyes were tho redy assembled for to mete.

Each goes to his banner.

The heralds cry out.

The king sends for Gawein.

The first that was renged was Pynodas, a knyght of the rounde table, and on that othir side com a knyght of the queenes that was brother to Gawein, and his name was Agravain the prowde, and he was wondir well horsed, and thei smote to-geder with speres vpon the sheldes so harde that thei perced that the steill heedes stynted at the hauberkes, and thei were bothe stronge and hardy, and the hauberkes of towgh mayle that the speres splyndred in peces, and in the passinge forth thei hurteled to-geder so harde with sheldes and helmes, and with theire horse, that bothe two fill to grounde, horse and man to-geder; and thei pressed to the rescew on bothe partyes and mette to-geder with sharpe speres; and sir Gawein hath so riden till he com on the diche brynke a-gein- the wyndowe ther-as kynge Arthur dide lene, and the Queene Gonnore, and the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and ladyes and maydenes, a grete companye for to be-holde the bourdeys; and than the kynge seide, "Feire nevew, I praye yow for the feith that ye owe vnto me that ye rule so this turnement that ther a-rise no debate, ne wrath amonge hem, ne ma[l]telente." "Sir," seide he, "as for me shall ther nothinge be mys-don, but I may not kepe hem alle from theire folyes. But yef ye se it turne to folye, ordeyne ye that it be departed, ffor I may not suffre that the companye of the rounde table diffoule, and ouer-lede my felowes be-fore me, but that I moste helpe

Pynodas and Agravain the Proud smite together.

They both fall to the ground.

Gawein rides to the window where is Arthur and his court.

Arthur prays Gawein not to allow any debate or wrath.

Gawein cannot promise.

Ban advises Arthur to arm a party of his people to be in readiness.

The king commands that three thousand *[Fol. 173*a*.] sergeants and squires be armed. Gawein comes to the tourney, which was well begun.

The knights of the round table try to discomfit the fellows of Sir Gawein,

who are succoured by the knights of king Looth.

The knights of the round table are succoured, and drive out Gawein's fellows.

hem at my power." "Sir," seide the kynge Ban, "sir Gawein seith wisely; ffor it is goode reson that ye take a party of youre peple, and do hem to be armed as many as nedeth that yef myster be, thei to be redy to lepe on horsebak to do youre comaundement." "In godis name," seide the kynge, "so shall it be as ye haue seide." Than the kynge comaunded to arme thre thousande what of Sergauntes and squyers, and hym-self was armed, and the thre other kynges that were in his *companye; and Gawein was come to the turney, that tho was well be-gonne vpon the two knyghtes that were throwe to grounde, and so hadde bothe parties spedde that thei haue hem bothe remounted and sette on horse; and than the turnement be-gan sore to enforce, and the knyghtes of the rounde table that were CCL peyned hem sore to discounfite the foure score felowes of sir Gawein that were at grete myschief, and hadde sore the werse, but moche thei suffred as thei that full well eche dide other helpe feithfully. But their well doynge ne gayned hem but litill, ne hadde be the knyghtes of kynge Looth that hem socoured full vigerously. Ther was made many feire Iustinges and many a knyght vn-horsed that fill to the grounde, and the horses fledde thourgh the feeldes. Ther were the knyghtes of the rounde table euell I-ledde, but as vij score knyghtes that com hem for to socoure, and than hadde the knyghtes of the rounde table the better, ffor thei were more peple than the tother, and thei made hem to voyde the place wheder thei wolde or noon; and than a-roos the cry and the shoute vpon hem that fledden.

When Gawein hears the shout of his fellows, he says to Ewein that they have tarried too long. Seigramor and Gifflet speak.

Gawein tells them to follow him, and

And whan Gawein vndirstode the shoute and the crye that was vpon his felowes, he be-helde and saugh hem at grete myscheif, and that for thought hym right sore, and seide to sir Ewein, "A-voy, cosin, we haue taried to longe." "Ewein" now quod Segramor, "neuer be he holde for a knyght that faileth to helpe at this nede." "I preise not at a boton," quod Gifflet, "the speche, but the dede be shewed. Now lete se who shall do beste;" and Gawein lowgh whan he herde this, and seide, "Sueth me;" with that he smote his hors with the spores, and spronge forth as sperhauke after partriches or quayles, and bar to the erthe foure the firste that thei mette. Than these foure be-gan to do soche maistries that the chace stynte, and in a while were thei knowen of hem that neuer hadde hem seyn; and whan the Queenes knyghtes hadde founde sir Gawein thei drough a-boute hym, and so dide the knyghtes of kynge looth that were full notable knyghtes and goode; and Segramor be-gan to do soche merveiles that thei that weren at the wyndowes marked hym with the fynger, and seide, "Lo yonder, Sir Segramor, ffor yef he be feire of body and membres, yet is he better knyght at devise, and well may she that shall hym haue, a-vaunt hir that she hath oon of the beste knyghtes of the courte; and on that other side Gifflet dide right wele, and Galashin that gretly thei were be-holden of oon and of other, and to hem com the thre bretheren of Sir Gawein that were full noble and hardy. These dide merveilously wele, and so dide Sir Ewein, that a better knyght than he neded no man to be-holde; and whan the knyghtes of the rounde table saugh how the chace was a-rested, thei be-gan to traueile sore for to drive these other oute of the place, and ther they dide wondres in armes. But who that dide well, or who nought, a-bove alle other *dide sir Gawein merveiles, ffor he fonde no presse were it neuer so thikke ne cloos, but he it perced through be fin force, ffor he smote down knyghtes and horse, and raced of helmes from heedes and sheldes from nekkes, ne noon myght in-dure a-gein his strokes, and yef the companye of the rounde table hadde the better, now haue thei the werse; ffor sir Gawein and his felowes haue holde hem so shorte, that thei drof hem discou*n*fited to the water side, and ther thei withstode stifly; and the storye seith that so moche thei suffred that x of the beste of hem were throwen to the erthe, wherof that oon was mynoras, and the secunde Natalis, and the thirde Pynados, and the fourth Bloaris, and the v^{e} Karismanx, and the vj^{e} Partreux, and the vij^{e} Grandoynes, and the viij^{e} ladynell, and the ix^{e} ladymus, and the x^{e} Traelus. These x were take with force, and hem hilde sir Ewein, and Segramor, and Agra-

they bear to the earth the first four they meet.

The queen's knights and Loot's knights draw towards Gawein.

Seigramor does such marvels that those at the windows point him out.

Gifflet and Galashin do well.

So does Sir Ewein.

*[Fol. 173*b*.]

Gawein does marvels, so that none can endure against his strokes.

He and his fellows drive the knights of the round table to the water side.

Ten of the best are thrown to the ground, and taken prisoners by Ewein, Segramor, and others, who send them to the queen.

These ten knights yield themselves to the queen, who gives them each a rich jewel.

vain, and Gueheret, and Gaheries, and kay the stiward, and sente hem to the Queene on sir Gaweins be-halue, that thei dide holde for her lorde and maister, and thei hadde reson, for he was a worthi man and wele hem helped and socoured in euery nede, and these x knyghtes that were taken com to the queene and yelde hem to hir on sir Gaweins be-halue, and she hem resceyved with grete ioye, and yaf eche of hem a riche Iuwell, and than thei wente and lened oute at the wyndowes of the paleise to se the turnement.

The knights of the round table are doleful;

but they come again into the field.

Gawein and his fellows drive them again to the river.

Whan the knyghtes of the rounde table saugh thei hadde loste x of hir felowes, thei were doelfull, for thei hadde neuer be-fore be made to voide the place. Than com theire grete bateile from the bregge that hem socoured vigerously, that thei putte hem a-gein in to the playn feelde, and the partie that was with Gawein com a-gein hem that were all fressh and newe, and that oo part smote thourgh that other and be-gonne a grete stour and traueiled so that thei gonne waxen wery, and Gawein and his felowes dide so well that thei drof hem a-gein to the river.

The knights of the round table say they will do their worst,

and smite as in mortal war.

They smite down twenty of the queen's knights.

*[Fol. 174*a*.] Sir Ewein speaks to Gawein and Segramor.

And whan the knyghtes of the rounde table saugh thei turned to discounfiture, thei seiden that to-day more wolde thei do theire werste seth it is so fer forth be-fallen. Than thei toke speres, grete and rude, and putte hem in fewtre, and that is the grettest crewelte that oon may do, ffor turnement oweth to be with-oute felonye, and thei meved to smyte hem as in mortall werre; and as soone as thei hadden speres thei smyten in a-monge the queenes knyghtes that thei sore hated, and at the firste shof thei smote down soche xx that were full worthi men, but soone were thei lept on foote and drough theire swerdes, and these rested vpon hem for to take hem prisoners, and ther be-gan the medle grete and fierce, and so thei myght a-noon haue loste *all; but as sir Ewein toke ther-of hede, and shewed it to Gawein and Segramor; and whan thei saugh the felonye that thei hadde be-gonne on her felowes; than seide sir Ewein, "Lorde, se the feire playe that these yonder haue be-gonne vpon vs;" and than seide Gawein that thei dide nothinge curteisely as worthi men ne that wolde he not suffre. Than he cleped Griret de lamball and Guyomar, and seide, "Go to the knyghtes of the rounde table, and sey that I and my felowes sende hem worde that thei haue mys-taken hem at this this tyme a-gein vs, and bidde hem cesse of that folye that thei haue be-gonne, and for that thei haue don we playne vs gretly, and shull hem a-pele be-fore the kynge, and yef ther be eny of oure felowes on this side that haue agein hem mysdon, we shall make hem a-mendes at hir volunte;" and whan these herde the comaundement of sir Gawein, thei turned with-oute moo wordes, and com to the knyghtes of the rounde table and dide theire message, and thei ansuerde that thei sette no force of all that he seide, ffor thei wolde noon other wise do, and who that ther-with wrathed lete hym chese, for yet we will do more than we haue don be-fore, and so may ye sey to Gawein and to his felowes that soone may men se the moste hardy, and who shall beste furnyssh a stour; and whan these herde the bobance and the outrage thei returned and com to sir Gawein that in that tyme hadde his felowes remounted, and thei tolde hym the ansuere that[1] thei hadden, and whan Gawein it herde, he was right wroth. "What," quod he, "is that trewe, will thei nothinge do for us? Now I do hem well to witen that seth we be comen to ernest, soone shull we be at the assay whiche is the moste hardy." Than departed Gawein oute of the turnement, and his thre brethern, and Segramor, and Ewein, and Galasshin, and Dodinell, and kay the stiward, and Gifflet, and lucas the botiller, and than he seide, "Sirs, the knyghtes of the rounde table haue take a-gein vs a fell strif, ffor that thei be greved with oure partye, and therfore thei trowe all to haue wonne for shewinge of theire crewelte and felonye, and ther-fore I will that eche of vs go fecche his hauberk, and the beste armes that he hath, and arme hym so that nothinge faile, and thei a-noon sente for her beste armours, and drough hem oute of the turnement and hem armed hastely, for longe hem semed er

Gawein sends Griret and Guyomar to the knights of the round table, to complain of what they have done, and to say that he will appeal to the king.

The knights of the round table answer that they will do as they have done.

Griret and Guyomar return to Gawein, and tell him the answer.

He is very wroth.

Gawein and his brethren and others go out of the tournament.

They arm themselves hastily,

---

[1] The word "that" is repeated in the MS.

thei were returned a-gein in to the turnement that was right grete, ffor the x hundred were assembled to-geder in bateile, and whan sir Gawein and his felowes were well araide, thei were well foure score only, and thei lepte to horse and ride a softe paas, and cloos a-gein the other felowes that well mayntened the turnement, and thei sought her felowes vp and down, and ben so sory for theire felowes that thei haue hem not founde, that nygh thei wax wode for angir, ffor thei of the rounde table hem ledde felonously in the werse maner.

and seek after their fellows.

*[Fol. 174b.] Gawein and his fellows overthrow more than forty.

*Than com Gawein and his felowes so harde that moo than xl thei ouerthrowe in theire comynge, and whan Nascien and Adragein saugh them thei stynten, and seide to theire felowes, "Feire lordes, we haue euell and folily spedde of the atynes that we haue vndirtake a-gein the Queenes knyghtes for envye and for nought." "I rede," quod Adragain, "that the turnement cesse er it be werse, ffor the nevewes of the kynge shull do vs damage fro hens-forth, and that may ye wete verily. Ne it may not endure with-oute grete losse, and also parauenture some to be slayn, and therfore it were good that it were cessed thus, ffor knowe it verily that ther be soche xx in the fore fronte of her companye that right soone thei shull xl of oure companye make to voyde place, and also thei be of high lynage, and the moste puyssaunt of the reame of grete breteigne," and the other ansuerde that it was spoken to late, "Now kepe hym that kepe may, for othir-wise now may it not be," and than thei smyte in to the medle, and the foure score felowes com hem a-geins, and eche hurte other with speres foule at theire metynge, and thei drowgh the swerdes and be-gonne the medle on horsbak and on foote full crewell and fell; and whan the vij score knyghtes of the kynge Looth knewe the foly and the disray that the knyghtes of the rounde table hadde be-gonne, thei drough a-side and armed hem right wele, and than com a-gein to sir Gawein, and seide, "Sir, now may ye ride suerly a-gein the envyouse, for we shull not this day forsake yow ne youre companye for no distresse, ffor we se well the erneste that is be-twene yow and the knyghtes of the rounde

Adragain advises that the tournament should cease;

but he speaks too late.

When the knights of king Looth know what the knights of the round table have done, they arm themselves, and come to Gawein.

table. But thei haue to fewe peple to do that thei haue purposed, and we se well that thei be CCL., and ye be but foure score, and therfore is it no merveile yef thei haue the better. But thei may hem a-vaunte that thei haue geten CC enmyes this day that well shull lete hem parceyve whethir thei be foles or wise," and sir Gawein thanked hem hertely; and than thei renged hem a-bowte hym as he that full well cowde it demenen.

They offer to help him.

Gawein thanks them.

Than sir Gawein cleped an high gentilman that was cleped by his right name Galescowde, and seide, "Go a-noon to my lorde, myn vncle, and sey to hym that he not displese though we vs diffende from them of the rounde table that haue be-gonne the foly a-gein vs, and tell hym how the caas stant all as it is," and whan that Galiscowde vndirstode the comaundement of Gawein, he turned and dide his message; and while that Gawein entended a-boute these thinges the queenes knyghtes hadde moche the worse, and the knyghtes of the rounde table rescowed hir felowes, and sette hem on horse and chaced the queenes knyghtes be fin force out of the felde, whan Gawein saugh that he com hem a-geins with alle the knyghtes of his fadres, and smote in a-monge hem so harde that alle the renges gonne fremyssh; and sir Gawein cried, "Vpon hem, gentill *knyghtes, for in euell tyme haue thei be-gonne this folye."

Gawein calls Galescowde to go to his uncle, and tell him what the knights of the round table have done.

The knights of the round table chase the queen's knights out of the field.

*[Fol. 175*a*.]

Whan the queenes knyghtes herde sir Gawein thus speke, and saugh the feire companye of knyghtes that hym sewed, thei returned as thei that were gladde and ioyfull of the socour, for tho knewe thei well that the werse sholde no be hers, and than thei recovered alle to-geders theire sheldes before theire brestes; and sir Gawein was in the fore frount with swerde drawen, for he hadde broken his spere, and smote so Dorilas vpon the helme that he smote thourgh, and the coyf of mayle, that he made hym a grete wounde in the heede, and a-stoned hym so sore that he fill flatte to the grounde, and his felowes cried, "He is ded; he is ded;" and thei ronne vpon hym on alle partyes, and he smote so the firste that he mette thourgh the helme that he yaf hym a grete wounde and fill to

When the queen's knights hear Gawein, they are glad of the succour.

Gawein smites Dorilas with his sword, and wounds him sore.

His fellows run upon Gawein, who smites them hard.

Nascien falls to the ground.

He rises up and draws his sword.

He complains that Gawein fights as if he was in mortal war.

Gawein answers.

He says Nascien's fellows commenced the folly.

Nascien says it is time to leave off, and prays Gawein to part the combatants.

grounde all blody; and than he smote a-nother right harde, and he saugh the stroke come and plukked his bridill to hym, and the stroke descended on the horse shuldres be-fore and smote the horse a-sonder, so that to grounde fill bothe horse and man, and whan Nascien saugh hym-self so fallen, he lepte on foote full delyuerly as he that was a full noble knyght and a sure, and drough his swerde, and couered hym with his shelde, for sore he douted a-nother stroke er he were redy hym to diffende; and whan that Gawein saugh that he was so redy appareiled, he returned with suerde in honde, and a-noon Nascien knewe the swerde, and seide, "A-voy, my lorde, sir Gawein, ye ne be not so wise a man ne so curteise as men of yow doth recorde; ffor ye be thus garnysshed of youre armes as ye were in werre mortall, and ye haue also brought youre goode swerde, and I do yow to wete that it shall be to yow reprof in many other places than here." Quod Gawein, "I knowe no knyght that me will a-peche of vntrouthe, but I shall me well deffende a-gein hym that dar it sey or a-gein tweyne yef nede bee oon after a-nother. But ye and youre felowes haue don vntrouthe, and haue be-gonne the folye; ffor we sente yow oure messages, but ye wolde hem not heren ne vndirstonde, but ye dide youre werste." "Sir," seide Nascien, "hit is go folyly hiderto, and hit were tyme that it were left yef it yow plesed, ffor soche haue it spoken and be-gonne that nothinge ther-on haue wonne, ffor I trowe he be wounded to the deth. But I praye yow at the reuerence of god that ye hem now departe, and than do ye well and curteisely er that eny more harme ther-of be-falle."

Gawein refuses and defies the knights of the round table.

*[Fol. 175*b*.]

"I knowe not," quod Gawein, "what harme ther-of shall falle, but neuer for me shull thei not be departed. Ne neuer shall the companye of the rounde table be-gynne malice a-gein vs; but I with as goode will shall by-gynne the first a-gein he*m* *with spere a-reised, and for that I will that ye it hem telle, and haue ye no drede of me at this tyme, and telle hem wele that neither kynge ne queene ther-of entermete, for we be soche companye that shall fynde hem hote I-nough, kepe thei hem neuer so wele owther fer or nygh." "Sir," seide Nascien, "other tyme than now haue ye do to me honour so moche that I may not yow guerdon, ne ye ther-to haue no myster. But as to this that ye sey we shull haue I-nough medle a-gein yow ne sey it nought, for ye be alle of high lynage, and men of grete puyssaunce, and thei be more alle of baas lynage than ye and youre companye, and therfore thei haue no power a-gein yow whan it com ther-to, that ye will hem greve or anoye," and with that departed Gawein, and lefte Nascien on foote, and he and his felowes smyten in to the bateile, and brake the presse, and smote down knyghtes, bothe horse and man, and ledde hem so euell that thei drof hem oute of the place all discounfited euen to the river that was right depe, and brode, and many fill in to the water a-gein theire will, ffor ther sholde ye haue sein speres and sheldes flote down the river, and the horse all quyk with-oute maister her reynes trailinge with the strem.

Nascien says Gawein has done him honour at other times,

and that Gawein's fellows are of higher lineage than the knights of the round table.

Gawein leaves Nascien on foot.

Many fall into the water.

Whan Gawein saugh thei were goinge, and that thei myght not recouer that saugh he well, he put vp his goode swerde for doute leste he slough eny man vn-war, and as he put it in to the scauberk, he saugh knyghtes of the rounde table that were enbusshed on the chauchie, and he caught a plante of an appell tre, and caste his shelde to grounde, and toke the barre in bothe handes, and seide he wolde make hem to remeve. Than he smote a-monge hem so fiersely the firste that he mette be-twene the sholdres that he rolled to grounde vp-right, and after the secunde, and than the thirde, and the fourthe, and he ne smote no man were he neuer so stronge, but he fill to grounde; and whan thei saugh that he ferde with hem so euell thei were full wroth, and ran vpon hym with swerdes drawen for sore thei hym hated, and thei smyte at hym on alle sides ther thei myght a-reche so that thei slough his horse be-twene his legges, and he lepte vp on foote full delyuerly, for he was full of prowesse and of hardynesse, and he made a shelde of his staf and drough his swerde Calibourne, and seide, "Euell happe haue thei that holde yow the beste knyghtes of

Gawein puts up his sword.

He sees the knights of the round table in the road, and he catches up a spar of wood.

He fells several to the ground.

They run upon him with swords, and kill his horse.

He leaps up and draws his sword Calibourne.

the worlde; ffor here," quod he, "haue thei it nothinge shewe, whan thei haue myn horse slayn," and ran vpon hem vigerously, and slitte sheldes, and helmes, and hew on hauberkes, and sholdres, and armes; and kutte of legges, and heedes that it blussht to grounde all that he raught, and in short tyme he hath xx so a-raied that thei *lay at grounde that hem nedeth to haue goode leches yef thei sholde ascape with the lif; with that com to the medle the foure score felowes and ten, and the vij score knyghtes of kynge looth that all day hadde hem sewed, and thei smote in a-monge hem with so grete randon that thei fonde sir Gawein on foote, and his suerde in his honde all blody of horse that he hadde slayn mo than xl. Ther was sir Gawein remounted and sette on horse, and he putte vp his goode swerde and toke the staf with bothe hondes, and ran vpon hem crewelly, and smote he rought not where, and discou*n*fited hem alle in short tyme, and put hem to flight thourgh the yates of the town, and the tother V^{c} that were left vpon the river fought with hem that were of the same partye; and as soone as the knyghtes of kynge looth hadde hem lefte, and the foure score of the queenes knyghtes ther be-gan the stour grete and crewell, and ther were many feire Iustinges that were gladly be-holden of ladyes and maydenes that were on the walles of the town, and so endured the turnement longe tyme, ffor thei were goode knyghtes on bothe sides. But at the end myght not the knyghtes endure that were on Gaweins side, for thei were not so many as the tother, and so thei be-gonne to ruse oon hour vp and another down, till that tidinge come to sir Ewein that was stinte with-oute the yates of the town, and xxiiij felowes with hym, and whan he vndirstode that his fellowes hadde the werse, he rode thider hem to socour, and as soone as thei were come thider thei be-gonne to do so well that in all the day ne hadde thei do better, and so thourgh hir prowesses thei perced hem thourgh thre or foure tymes, and hem discounfited and made hem voide the place, and drof hem in at the yates of the town thourgh the stretes where thei dide hem ouerthrowe, and fowled hem vndir hir horse feet, for noon wolde thei take

He cuts off legs and heads.

*[Fol. 176*a*.]

His fellows come to the fight and find that he has killed more than forty.

Gawein is remounted, and puts up his sword.

He puts the knights to flight.

The ladies on the walls see the jousts.

The knights on Gawein's side begin to retire.

Sir Ewein and twenty-four fellows come to succour them.

They do well,

and drive the knights of the round table into the town.

ne with-holde thei were so wroth, for the outerage that the knyghtes of the rounde table hadde be-gonne vpon hem vncurteisly thourgh her pride.

On that other side was Gawein and the knyghtes of Orcanye, that hadde chaced so the knyghtes[1] of the rounde table till thei com be-fore the chirche of seint Stephene, and thei with-stode and kepte the paas while thei myght. But in short tyme ther sholde haue ben do harme. But as the kynge Arthur com, and the kynge Ban and the kynge Bohors com thider as sone as Galescowde hadde tolde his message; and the squyers that were thre thousande armed, and the thre kynges turned toward seint Stephene, and a party of the squyers a-boute a thre hundred turned down the high strete where-as thei mette the knyghtes of Orcanye that sewed sir Gawein that full euell ferde with the knyghtes of the rounde table, as ye haue herde; and as soone *as thei saugh the squyers thei wende it hadde ben a-wayte that hadde be leide for hem; and a-noon thei be-gonne to medle and be-gonne a newe trouble right huge and crewell, but at grete myschef were the felowes of sir Gawein, ffor oo part of hem foughten with the squyers at the straite entre of the strete, where-as many were ouerthrowen and diffouled right euell. Than com tidinges to Gawein that his frendes were in soche pereill; "ffor I wote neuer," quod he that brought the message, "what peple it ben that hem assaile be-hynde, and don hem grete damage;" and as soone as Gawein herde that his felowes were assaile be-hynde, he lefte the fight with the knyghtes of the rounde table to his felowes, and com thider ther as thise weren. But first he sette goode wardes to kepe the stretes ende, that thei of the rounde table ne turned not a-gein bakke, and than he com to the strete ther these were fightinge; and as soone as he hem saugh, he swor in euell tyme come thei thider, and whan thei saugh hym come thei cried to hym and badde hym cesse, or he was but deed; and whan Gawein herde hem manace hym of deth, he wax right wroth,

Gawein and the knights of Orcanye chase the knights of the round table to the church of St. Stephen.

Arthur, Ban, and Bohors come to the place.

Three hundred squires meet the knights of Orcanye,

*[Fol. 176*b*.]

who fight with them at the entry of the street.

A messenger comes to tell Gawein that the knights are assailed behind.

Gawein comes to the street.

He is very wroth.

---

[1] This word is spelt "knythes" in the MS.

and cleped hem "fitz a-putayn traitours cowardes haue ye leyn in wayte. I do yow to wite er ye me ascape, the moste hardy wolde not haue come hider for this reame." Than he hilde Calibourne his goode swerde all blody, and these ronne vpon hym with axes, and billes, and swerdes right vigerously; and he spronge in a-monge hem, and smote the firste that he mette that the heed fill on the pament, and than he smote a-nother, and than the thridde and the fourthe, and smote of handes and armes that in a litill while noon durste a-bide his strokes, but turned to flight wroth and angry, and cried, "Fle, fle, lo here a devell that is broken oute of helle chaynes;" and whan Gawein hadde his felowes thus delyuered, he turned a-gein and toke xl. knyghtes at sette hem at the stretes ende that noon ne falle vpon hem, and seide, "Yef eny come and yow ouer-lede come fecche me." Than he wente to the tother ende of the strete ther[1] the knyghtes of Orcanye faught with the knyghtes of the rounde table, and a-noon he spronge in a-monge hem, and cried a-lowde, "Traytours;" for well he wende that thei hadde leide that a-wayte, and whan thei herde hym so seyn thei wiste not what to ansuere, ffor thei wende well that he hadde it seide for that thei be-gan firste the ernest whan thei iusted with speres in fewtre, and sore thei repented yef thei myght, ffor so hadde the shame be doubled, and therefore seith the wise man in reprof of soche. "Many oon weneth his shame to a-venge, and he it encreseth," and therefore were thei shamefast and mate; and Gawein smote in a-monge hem crewell as a lyon, and smote Adragain des vaux de gailore thourgh the helme that he kutte the quoyf of maile to the bare flessh that he fill to the erthe all a-stonyed that he wiste not whether it was nyght or day, and than he smote Pindolus on the sholdre that he kutte the gige that the shelde henge by and the hauberke and the flessh right depe that ner he was *maymed, and so fill the shelde on that oon side, and the knyght on that other; and after he smote Idonas on the iowe that he fill to grounde in

and with Calibourne he smites down all he meets.

They turn to flight, and Gawein delivers his fellows.

Gawein goes to the place where the knights of Orcanye fight with the knights of the round table, amongst whom he springs.

He smites Adragain des Vaux,

and Pindolus,

*[Fol. 177*a*.]

and Idonas.

---

[1] The word "ther" is repeated in the MS.

swowne, and whan thei of the rounde table saugh how he dide hem so grete damage, that noon armour myght endure a-gein his strokes, thei turned alle toward the cherche, and Gawein and his felowes hem enchaced, and fill that Gawein overtoke hervy de rivell, and wolde haue smyte hym on the helme, and he couered hym with his shelde, and all thei turned to-geder toward the mynster, and hervy seide to Gawein, "Cesse, sir knyght, ye haue done I-nowgh, and therfore ye may well stynte at this tyme, and trewly ye be right moche to blame for the crewelte that is in yow, ffor men were wonte to sey of yow all honour and curtesie, and now may men sey the contrarie, ffor ye ought to helpe and to socour*e* these a-gein all the worlde that hem wolde greve or annoye, and ye hem sle and diffoule at youre power; and thei haue yow nought offended." "Hervy," quod Gawein, "haue thei me not offended whan thei haue be-gonne the foly and the treson vpon my felowes to whom I moste bere feith, and ther-by wolde thei not cesse, but leide other peple for vs in a-wayte, and the turnement was not taken in that manere." "Sir," seide hervy, "yef thei haue hem mystaken a-gein yow at this tyme, thei shull a-mende it to yow at youre plesir, ffor the love of yow that from hens-forth thei will holde yow for theire frende and felowe." "To me," quod Gawein, "shull thei make noon a-mendes, for I shall hem neuer love, ffor I do hem well to wite where thei haue envye or werre a-gein eny of my felowes thei haue the same a-gein me. Ne neuer shull thei take turnoy ne Aatine, but we foure score shull turneyen a-geins vij score of the beste of hem, and thei will it vndertake, and lete hem well knowe that I shall neuer come in place in this contrey ne in noon other where ther is eny turnement or Aatine, yef eny of hem be there, but I shall greve hem at my power." "Sir," seide hervy, "ye sey euell and synfulliche, but soche is now youre talente; but here-after it shall not be so; ffor it were to grete damage yef so many worthi men sholde turne to euell for this folye, ffor rather thei shull clene forsake the court of youre vncle." "I can not sey," quod Gawein, "what thei will do, but for me shull thei it not

Gawein and his fellows chase the knights of the round table,

Gawein overtakes Hervy de Rivell.

Hervy says Gawein is cruel.

Gawein says it is the fault of the knights of the round table who began the treason.

Hervy says that they will make amends,

but Gawein will not accept any.

He says four score of his fellows will tourney against seven score of the best of the knights.

Hervy tells him he speaks sinfully.

Gawein says if the knights of the round

table leave his uncle's court, they shall be overtaken.

forsaken, and yef that thei do, thei ne shull not go in to no londe, but thei shall be ouertake, ffor we shull neuer here speke of place ther thei be conversaunt, but we shull go thider."

Hervy tells him to cool his temper.

"Sir," seide hervy, "a-slake youre mode and pese youre matalent a litill, ffor so god me helpe thei that haue be-gonne the foly thei haue it dere I-bought, ffor many ther be hurt and wounded full dolerously, ffor ther ben xxx that neuer shull bere shelde, where-of is right grete doell and pyte, ffor thei ben full noble knyghtes and worthi men;" and as thei spake thus com the kynge Arthur that hadde I-herde a partie of her wordes that thei hadde spoken, and seide, *"Gawein, feire nevew, is this the prayer that I praied yow to-day? Certes now it sheweth well that ye love me right litill whan a-gein my diffence, and in dispite of me as me semeth ye sle thus my peple, wite it well that it is a thinge that hevieth me right sore." "Sir," seide Gawein, "he that be-gan the foly it is reson that he repent. Ne in dispite of yow haue I nothinge do, and who ther-of will me accuse he is not vnder heuene, but I shall me well a-gein hym diffende; ffor as soone as the foly be-gan to a-rise I sente yow witinge by Galescoude oon of oure felowes, ffor er that tyme hadde thei vs sore diffouled, er that we wolde eny thinge do;" and the kynge looth his fader com to hym and toke hym by the bridill, and seide, "Gawein, sone, cesse of this foly, for ye haue don I-nowgh, and suffre the kynge to sey his wille, for it shall well be a-mended by leiser the wrath be-twene hym and yow, ffor well we haue sein a partye of the deede;" and the kynge Ban and the kynge Bohors com to hym, and seide so to hym of o thinge and other that thei hym apesed.

Arthur complains that *[Fol. 177b.] Gawein has not done as he promised.

Gawein says no one can accuse him,

for he sent Galescowde to Arthur.

King Looth tells his son to be quiet and let Arthur speak.

The men of Sir Gawein and the men of the round table are separated. Galescowde comes to the tournament to part the fighters,

Thus were disseuered the meyne of sir Gawein from the meyne of the rounde table, and the thre kynges hym dide bringe a-wey, and Galescowde com to the gret turnement that was with-ynne the yates that was grete and merveilouse. But to foule were thei be-seyn be-twene segramor and sir Ewein, and her other felowes; but Galescowde made hem be departed, and that was with moche peyne and sore annoye; ffor thei were sore chauffed that oon vpon that other, and than eche wente to his hostell and hem vn-armed, and waissh her nekkes and theire visages with warm water, and clothed hem in her fresshest robes, and wente to court alle tho that myghten, and thei that were hurt and wounded a-bode at theire hostelles for to hele theire woundes, and on that other parte wente Gawein and his felowes hem for to vn-arme in oon of the Queenes chambres that was assigned for hem to repeire; and whan thei were vn-armed and waissh, thei clothed hem richely, and yef thei were well serued it nedeth not to aske, ffor ther were ladyes and maydenes hem for to serue grete foyson. Ther was Segramor moche be-holden of oon and of other, ffor he was a feire knyght and semly, and so was also Dodinell le sauage; these tweyne were sore preised of alle that hem be-helden.

who go to their hostels to wash themselves. All that can go to court. The wounded remain at their hostels. Gawein and his fellows unarm in one of the queen's chambers, and ladies serve them.

Segramor and Dodinell are fair knights, and are much praised.

As soone as thei were a-raied, thei com in to the halle two and two to-geder, holdinge be the handes oon after a-nother, and thus com the foure score and x felowes, and sir Gawein and Ewein albefore in to the halle be-fore the kynge that to hem made gret ioye; and whan he saugh hem come he a-roos on his feet a-gein hem, and toke sir Gawein be the right hande, and the queene toke hym by the tother hande and wente to sitte alle to-geder, and the other knyghtes satte thourgh the halle, and pleied and disported oon with a-nother of dyue*r*se thinges, and were gladde and myry. But a-bove alle other was the quene ioyfull *of her knyghtes that hadde the victorye of the turnement. But the knyghtes of the rounde table be nother gladde ne iocunde, but were shamefast and mate for her felowes, that many were hurt and wounded, and so thei spake of many thinges till thei acorded to send hervy de rivell, that was a goode knyght and wise of counseile, and Nascien, for tweyne better myght thei not take to performe the message, and mynados that was a wise knyght and a feire speker; whan these thre knyghtes saugh thei most do the message, thei toke eche other by the hande and com be-fore the kynge; and whan the kynge saugh hem comynge he a-roos a-gein hem as he that beste cowde eny worthi man honouren and worshipen, and seide thei were well-come, and also a-roos sir Gawein. Than spake

The ninety fellows come to the hall.

The king rises and takes Gawein by the right hand, and the queen takes him by the other hand.

*[Fol. 178*a*.]

The queen is joyful that her knights have had the victory in the tournament; but the knights of the round table are sad. They agree to send Hervy de Rivell, Nascien, and Mynados with a message. They come to the king.

Hervy speaks,

Hervy to the kynge, and seide, "Sir, plese it yow to sitte, ye and youre companye, and we shull telle yow wherfore we beth come." Than sat down the kynge and his companye, and hervy be-gan his reson, "Sir, the companye of the rounde table have sente vs to speke to sir Gawein, and to my lady the quene, to whom he holdeth a partie, and first of all to yow that be oure souereigne lorde; and thei pray and be-seche yef thei haue ought mys-taken a-gein my lorde sir Gawein, or a-gein eny of his companye in what maner that it be, thei ben redy it for to amende as ye and my lady will a-warde. Be soche a maner that alle matalent be pardoned on bothe partyes;" and the kynge loked on the quene, and seide that sholde not be refuced; and the quene ansuerde and seide that it plesed hir wele, yef that sir Gawein ther-to a-corded, but he kept scilence, and spake no worde.

and says that the knights of the round table are ready to make amends for what they have done. The king and queen agree, but Sir Gawein keeps silence.

The king reproves Gawein,

Whan the kynge saugh he stodied, he seide, "Gawein, feire nevew, what thin[k] ye of this thinge that ye be so wrorth and angry; ffor in this haue ye but honour, whan the beste knyghtes of the worlde obbey hem to yow and offre to a-mende all that is mysdon." "Worthi men!" quod Gawein. "Ye feire nevew worthy men, and noble ben thei trewly." "Thei ought well to be so," quod Gawein, and with that he hilde his pees; and the kynge that saugh well he was a-gein hem Irous and angry, he loked on the quene, and seide, "Dame, praye ye hym at this tyme;" and the quene seide, "Sir, with gode will." Than she toke hym be the hande, and seide, "Nevew, be not so wroth, refroide youre maltalente, ffor wrath hath many a worthi man and wise made to be holde for foles, while the rage endureth. Now yeve credence to my wordes, and do that I praye yow at this tyme, and as my lorde doth yow pray also; ffor it is youre honour and youre profite, and ye knowe well that this londe is in sorowe and turment of the saisnes, and ye here be but a small peple, and I shall telle yow what ye shull thinke and do, ye shull love eche other and helpe a-gein alle peple; and yef youre enmyes come a-gein yow to hem ye sholde be fierce, and not to hem that to-morowe shull

and asks the queen to speak to him.

She takes Gawein by the hand,

and prays him

put her bodyes in a-uenture of deth for my lorde that is here and for me, *and for there foly that thei haue do now lightly shull ye not hem failen. But, feire nevew, p*ar*don hem for I pray yow, and so doth the kynge youre vncle, that is right wroth;" and sir Gawein loked on the quene and be-gan to smyle for the wordes that she hadde seide, and seide, "Madame, who that will lerne lete hym come to yow, and blissed be that lorde that so yow hath ordeyned, and that the companye of so goode a lady, and so wise hath vs graunted, and well may the kynge hym a-vaunt that yef ye lyve to age ye shull be the wisest lady of the worlde, and so be ye now as I beleve; and wite ye what ye haue wonne, ye may do with my body and myn herte all youre volunte, saf myn honour and myn vncle the kynges." "Now trewly," seide she, "that lady were nothinge wise that ther-of yow requered. Ne, I ne shall neuer, yef god will." Thus a-peesed the quene sir Gawein, and so was the pees grauntid, and than wente Nascien and Hervy de rivell for to fecche theire felowes of the rounde table, and com be-fore the kynge; and the quene dide clepe sir Ewein, and Segramor, and the thre brethern of Gawein, and a party of other, and tolde hem how the pees was made, and how it was required by the companye of the rounde table; and sir Ewein seide it was well don, and better it were to haue the love of hem than the hate.

*[Fol. 178*b*.]

to forgive them.

Gawein smiles, and says that the king is blessed in her.

He will do what she bids him.

So peace is agreed.

Nascien and Hervy fetch their fellows.

Sir Ewein says it is better to have their love than their hate.

With that were the knyghtes of the rounde table c̄ome be-fore the kynge, and as soone as thei were come thei kneled to sir Gawein, and folded the panes of her mantels; and than spake hervy de rivell, "Sir, we shull a-mende to yow for vs, and for oure felowes alle these thinges with-oute more seyinge, wher-of we haue a-gein yow mystaken, wher-fore we be-seche yow of pardon;" and sir Gawein lept vp on foote and seide he pardoned hem alle forfetes, and reised hem by the armes, and so dide Ewein, a[nd] Segramor, and the thre brethren of Gawein, eche of hem reised a knyght, and made alle the reuenaunt to stonde vp and a-coled eche other in armes, and foryaf all wrath and maltalent, and fro thens-forth was sir Gawein

The knights of the round table kneel to Sir Gawein.

Hervy speaks for them, and asks for pardon.

Gawein, Ewein, and Segramore raise the knights.

a lorde and a maister and felowe of the rounde table; and the quene quyte cleymed the x knyghtes that were prisoners that hir knyghtes hadde her sent, and yaf eche of hem newe robes and fressh. Thus assaied the knyghtes of the rounde table, the quenes knyghtes be soche forward that neuer after noon of hem sholde turney a-gein other; but yef it were oon that wolde assay hym-self in eny straunge turnement by stelthe vnknowen whan thei were disgised that thei wolde not be knowe till thei hadde renomee of grete prowesse; and whan the knyghtes of the rounde table hem toke in her companye for the prowesse that in hem was shewed; and the story seith that the companye of the quenes knyghtes was but foure score and x. But after thei encresed as the storie shall declare, till thei were foure hundred er the quest of the seint graal was a-cheved; wherfore thei suffred after many grete peyne and traveile, for to a-cheve the *quest that long endured, and in other questes thei traueyled many dayes, and I shall telle to yow the cause and whi.

The queen gives new robes to the ten knights, who were prisoners.

The knights of the round table and the queen's knights agree not to tourney together.

When the knights of the round table took the queen's knights into their company, there were but ninety of them; afterwards they increase to 400.

*[Fol. 179*a*.]

CHAPTER XXVII.

THE MISSION OF KING LOOTH AND HIS FOUR SONS TO MAKE TRUCE WITH THE REBEL KINGS; AND THEIR BATTLES WITH THE SAXONS.

This was the trouthe that tidinges spredde thourgh the reame of grete Breteigne of the seint Graal, In the whiche Ioseph ab Aramathie hadde geten the holy blode that dropped oute of the side of oure blissed lorde I*es*hu crist whan he henge on the gloriouse crosse, he and Nichodem*us*, and the holy vessell that com from heuene a-bove in the Citee of Sarras. In the whiche he sacrefied first his blissid body and his flessh by his Bisshop*pe* Iosephe that he sacred with his owene hande, and the holy spere, the whiche I*es*hu the sone of marie his side was with opened, was left in the Cite of Logres that Ioseph thider hadde brought. But noon cowde wite in what place, ne

The tidings of the Saint Graal spread through the realm,

and of the holy spear,

neuer ne shall, neuer be founde but by prophesie ne the merveiles of the seint graal, ne of the spere that thourgh the poynte of Iren dide blede. Till that the beste knyght of the worlde com, and by hym sholde be discouered the merveiles of the seint Graal, and herde and seyn. These tidinges were spredde all a-boute in euery contrey, and so no man cowde neuer wite who sholde it bringe first forth, and whan the companye of the rounde table herde sey that thourgh the beste knyght of the worlde these thinges sholde be brought to fin. Thei entred in to many questes for to knowe whiche was the beste knyght, and serched many a londe and many a contrey, and eche man hym peyned for to be the beste knyght; and whan thei herde speke that ther was eny goode knyght thourgh the contrey, thei entred in to a quest hym to seche a yere and a day withoute soiour in a town more than oon nyght, and whan thei hadde hym founde, thei sholde bringe hym to court; and whan he was well preved of goode recorde that he was of high prowesse thei toke hym in to her companye, and than was his name writen a-monge the other knyghtes that were felowes of the rounde table; and as eche of hem com from his quest at the yeres ende, thei sholde telle the auentures that were hem befallen in theire traueile, and the clerkes that were therfore I-ordeyned it wrote worde for worde, euen as thei tolde. Now haue ye herde why the questes were stablisshed in the reame of the grete Breteigne. But now repeireth the tale to his mater that he hath lefte for to telle this thinge, that I wolde that it were not for-getyn.

which can only be found by the best knight in the world.

The knights of the round table try to find which is the best knight,

and when they hear of any good knight, they go in quest of him, and take him into their company.

The tale returns.

Full gladde and iocounde were the companye of the rounde table for that thei were a-corded with sir Gawein, and full moche thei hym preised and comended for the grete prowesse that thei saugh hym do at this turnement, and seide a-monge hem in counseile that the beste knyghtes ther-ynne sholde not a-gein hym endure body for body. Thus the knyghtes ther-ynne seide theire volunte. But moche more *spake the ladyes and the maydenes in the chambers. Than was water asked, and whan thei hadde waisshen than sat euery

The company of the round table are glad that they are in accord with Gawein.

The ladies praise Gawein much.

*[Fol. 179b.]

The queen's knights sit with the knights of the round table. The kings sit at the high dais.

knyght as hym ought for to do, and the quenes knyghtes were sette by the knyghtes of the rounde table, and the kynge Arthur, and the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and the kynge looth sat at the high deyse as thei ought for to do, and mo sat ther not but thei foure, and that day serued Gawein and kay the stiward, and lucas the botiller, and Gifflet, and other a-boute a xl., and were so well served that noon cowde better devise, as of mees that thei hadde it nedeth not to reherse, ne of the wynes and drinkes that thei hadde in maners, and after the bordes were vp the knyghtes yede to disporte hem in the medowes vpon the river, ffor it was feire weder and clier. But the foure kynges a-bode and wente in to a chambre by hem-self, and lened out at the wyndowes ther-as thei myght se the medowes and the river ther-as was holsom aire, and a softe col[d]e wynde brought in the swete sauours of the erbes, that thei were at more ese than thei that were with-oute, for it was right hoot, and ther the foure kynges spake to-geder of many thinges as it com to theire pleiser.

The forty who serve.

The four kings go into a chamber by themselves, and enjoy the air at the window.

Ban speaks to Arthur,

Whan thei hadde be ther a-while, than seide the kynge Ban to the kynge Arthur, "Sir," seide the kynge Ban, "yef ye wolde do o thinge after my counseile that I haue thought in my herte me semeth it sholde yow moche a-vaile, and the more sholde ye be dred of straunge peple and of prive, and the more love ye sholde haue of the knyghtes of youre courte." "Sey on," seide the kynge, "ffor yef it be soche thinge that I may do with-oute shame or dishonour, I will it gladly do." "Sir," seide the kynge Ban, "in this shull ye neuer haue shame, yef god will, ne no reprof shall it be vnto yow, loke that neuer while ye will holde youre londe in pees and in reste that ye suffre not youre knyghtes to take no turnement oon a-gein a-nother; ffor soche wrath myght falle by envye for that thei be so goode knyghtes that neuer sholde be love a-monge hem. But at alle tymes whan thei will turneyen lete hem go in to the marches of youre londe to high barouns wher-of ther be I-nowe that be riche and puyssaunt;" and the kynge seide that he seide well, and that so

and counsels him not to let his knights tourney against each other,

but to go into the marches to the barons. The king and queen agree.

wolde he do with-oute faile; and ther-with com the quene that these worde hadde well vndirstonde, and seide how it was well seide and blessed be he of god that hath yove this counseile.

After that spake the kynge looth and seide, "Sir, hit were nedefull for the cristin peple that we toke soche counseile, that these false saisnes that beth in this reame and haue be-seged two Citees to-geder be theire pride, how that thei myght be driven oute. But thei be so grete multitude that thei ar not like to be dryven oute, but yef oure lorde helpe, and ye knowe well that ye haue not peple *I-now with-ynne youre power for to enchace hem oute, ne holde bateile a-gein hem in felde. But yef that oon myght do so moche to purchace a trewis be-twene yow and youre princ*es* that now be with yow at werre, In soche manere that we myght alle go to-geder vpon the saisnes, and eche to helpe other that thei were chaced oute of the londe. Me semeth this were the moste almesse and profite that myght be do in this contrey, and the trewis myght endure a yere, and than yef ther myght be made pees be-twene yow and hem, and yef it may not than eche man do his beste." "Ffor-sothe," seide the kynge, "that wolde I fayn, yef I knewe who to sende, soche a man that the barou*n*s wolde yeve to credence, ffor thei be full fierce and full of pride." "Sir," seide the kynge loot, "the saisnes haue hem so greved that I trowe whan thei here speke of the trewis, and that thei shull haue youre helpe hit shall not nede gretly hem to prayen." "I can not sey," quod Arthur, "what I sholde ther-of to yow sey, ffor as well knowe ye the neethe of the londe as do I, and I am but a man as oon of yow be, and therfore loke and cheseth soche a man that may beste this message performe." "Sir," seide the kynge Ban, "yef I wiste the kynge looth wolde conne me no magre, I wolde sey that he sholde go, ffor he sholde do better the nedes than eny that ye sholde sende, and better he cowde enforme hem of youre volunte, for he is with hem a-queynted and theire welwellinge." "Ye," seide the kynge Arthur, "and better he knoweth the passages than eny other that

Looth says they should take counsel how to drive out the Saxons.

*[Fol. 180*a*.]

Arthur could drive them out if he had the help of his princes.

It would be well if they had a truce for a year.

Arthur says he does not know who to send.

Looth believes that the princes will agree to a truce.

Arthur asks them to choose a man to go.

Ban says Looth would be the best to go.

Arthur agrees.

The queen asks whether a knight might not be sent;

I myght thider sende;" and the quene seide "that noon other man sholde so well do the needes as the kynge looth, but yef it be for the saisnes that all day gon robbinge thourgh the contrey. But ther were noon so grete losse of oon knyght in this reame as it were of hym yef hym mys-happe, as god diffende." "Dame," seide the kynge, "I knowe the princes so full of pride that ther is no knyght that sholde a-monge hem be herde that I myght sende."

but Arthur says that they are too proud to listen to a knight.

King Looth agrees to go and take with him his four sons.

Whan the kynge looth saugh how thei acorded that he sholde go vpon this nede, he knewe well how thei hadde reson. Than he seide he wolde go and haue with hym his foure sones. "Trewly," seide the kynge Bohors, "yef thei ben with yow than haue ye no drede of no man of moder born." Whan [King Arthur] saugh that thei were to this a-corded that the kynge looth sholde lede with hym his foure sones, he yaf a grete sigh, for he douted of sir Gawein, in whom he hadde so tentefly sette his love, so that ther was nothinge in the worlde that he loved so moche, and the quene knewe a partie of his thought, and seide to the kynge, "Sir, graunte the kynge looth to lede with hym his children hardely, for thei shull haue no drede, yef god will, ffor the more thei be youre frendes the better, and withe the more tendir herte *shull thei do youre message as is nede, more than sholde a-nother that ther-of sette no charge and lever I hadde that my frende counseiled with myn enmyes than a-nother that were straunge." "Dame," seide the kynge Arthur, "I me a-corde, seth the barouns haue it ordeyned;" and than he seide to the kynge looth, and praide hym to appareile hym to go secretly that no man knewe whider he wolde go, with that was Gawein cleped and his brethren that were pleyinge in the halle; and whan thei come to the quene she a-roos and wente hem a-geins, and seide thei were welcome, and thei dide yelde hir a-gein hir salew debonerly. Than Arthur tolde hem all as was devised, how thei moste go on the message, and why thei hadde it a-monge hem purveyed; and than thei ansuerde and seide that it was goode for to be done.

Arthur sighs and is sorry to lose Gawein.

The queen asks him to let Looth take his sons with him.

*[Fol. 180*b*.]

The king agrees, and prays Looth to go secretly.

Gawein and his brethren come,

and Arthur tells them what has been agreed.

After that seide the kynge Looth to sir Gawein, "ffeire sone, goth forth and appareile yow and youre brethern that ye faile nought whan we shull go." "Sir," seide Gawein, "what a-rayment sholde we haue eny more, but oure armours, and oure horse; we shull neither haue somer ne male trussed, netther grete ne small, but goode stedes and swyft, on the whiche we shull ride that may bere vs to garison yef myster be. Ne here be-hoveth noon a-bidinge, for yef ye do my counseile we shull meve yet this nyght at the first som*me*, and ride as grete iourneyes as we may for soche a nede as this is sholde not be put in no delay." "Trewly, nevew," seide Arthur, "ye sey soth. Now, go reste yow a-while and slepe." Than Gawein turned hym to the quene, and seide, "Madame, I prey that ye thinke on my felowes that leven here with yow, for the knyghtes of the rounde table ne love not hem wele in herte. But haue to hem envye as ye knowe well youre self, and parauenture whan I and my brethern be gon, thei will make som bourde or som turnement a-gein hem, wherefore I praye yow as my goode ladye that ye suffre hem to make no party." "And I yow graunte," seide the quene, "that ther ne shall noon be; yef my lorde will leve my counseile ther shall neuer be turnement as longe as the saisnes be in this londe;" and than the kynge seide, "Be the feith that I owe vn-to yow no more ther sholde."

Looth tells Gawein to get ready.

Gawein says they only want their armour and horse.

He prays the queen not to allow her knights to tourney with the knights of the round table.

The queen grants his prayer.

With that thei departed, and wente to theire chambres for to slepe and to reste; and thei that were in the halle went to theire hostelles, and departeden. But who that departed, Gyomar ne departed neuer but a-bode spekynge with Morgain, the sustur of kynge Arthur, in a wardrope vnder the paleys, where she wrought with silke and golde; ffor she wolde make a coyf for hir suster, the wif of kynge looth. This Morgain was a yonge damesell fressh and Iolye. But she was som-what brown of visage and sangwein colour, and nother to fatte ne to lene, but was full a-pert *auenaunt and comely, streight and right plesau*n*t, and well syngynge. But she was the moste hotest woman of all Breteigne, and moste luxuriouse,

They go to their chambers to rest.

Gyomar speaks with Morgain, the sister of King Arthur,

*[Fol. 181*a*.]

who is the most luxurious woman in Britain.

Merlin taught her astronomy.

and she was a noble clergesse, and of Astronomye cowde she I-nough, for Merlin hadde hir taught; and after he lerned hir I-nough as ye shull heren afterward, and so moche she sette ther-on hir entent, and lerned so moche of egramauncye, that the peple cleped hir afterward Morgain le fee, the suster of kynge Arthur; ffor the merveiles that she dide after in the contrey, and the beste workewoman she was with hir handes, that eny man knewe in eny londe, and ther-to she hadde oon of the ffeirest heed, and the feirest handes vnder hevene, and sholdres well shapen at devise; and she hadde feire eloquense, and tretable, and full debonair she was as longe as she was in hir right witte, and whan she were wroth with eny man, she was euell for to acorde; and that was well shewed afterward, ffor hir that she sholde moste haue loved of all the worlde dide she after the moste shame, wherof it was after alle the dayes of hir lif, and that was the quene Gonnore, as that ye shull it heren here-after and wher-fore it was.

She is called Morgain le fee.

She is well shaped and eloquent.

Afterwards she injures Queen Gonnore.

Whan Guyomar entred in to the chambre ther as was Morgain the ffee, he hir salued full swetly, and she hym salued a-gein curteisly, and he sette hym down by hir and helped to wynde the threde of golde, and asked hir what she sholde ther-with make, and he was a feire knyght and comly, well shapen, and his visage well coloured, and his heer crull and yelowe, and was feire and plesaunt of body and of chere laughinge, and he a-resoned hir of many thinges; and she be-hielde hym gladly, and was well plesed with all that he seide and dide; and so longe thei spake to-geder that he praied hir of love, and the more that she hym be-hilde, the better she was with hym plesed, and that she gan love hym so well that she refused nothinge that he wolde hir require; and whan he aperceyued that she wolde suffre gladly his requeste, he be-gan hir to enbrace, and she hym suffred, and he be-gan to kysse hir tend'rly that bothe thei be-gonne to chauffe as nature wolde, and fellen down on a grete bedde, and pleyde the comen pley, as thei that gretly it desired; ffor yef he were desirouse she was yet moche more, so that thei loved hertely

Guyomar helps her to wind the thread of gold.

They talk of love.

He kisses and embraces her.

to-geder longe tyme that noon it wiste; but after it knewe the quene Gonnore as ye shull here telle, wherfore thei were departed, and ther-fore she hated the quene, and dide hir after gret annoye, and of blames that she areised that euer endured while hir lif lasted. But now reto*ur*ne we to kynge looth and his sones that be go to slepe.

None know of it, but Gonnore does afterwards.

Anoon as it was past mydnyght a-roos the kynge Looth and his foure sones, and appareiled hem of hir armours; and thei hadde chosen v of the beste horse *that thei cowde fynde in all the court, and hem thei made to be ledde with hem with v gromes on foote, and thei hadde v palfreyes right goode that thei dide ride on hir iourney; and whan thei were all redy thei lept on theire palfreyes, and ride oute at the yat of Bertone and the v gromes wente be-fore and ledde the v horse couered with steill, and wente oute as softly as thei myght, for thei wolde not be a-parceyved of no peple; and whan thei hadde riden half a walsh myle, Gawein asked whiche wey thei sholde go; and the kynge looth seide he wiste not, for the contrey was full of werre. "Than shall I telle yow," quod Gawein, "what we shull do; we shull go to Arestuell in Scotlonde that is now the next londe, and moste full of wode of all this contrey, and it is better to drawe that wey than to eny other place;" and the kynge looth seide, "Feire sone, seth that it pleseth yow I will wele, for youre counseile is goode, and so shull we go be the castell of Sapine and be the playn of Reostok, and by the foreste of lespinoye vnder Carenges, and we shull go by the river of Savarne, and thourgh the playnes of Cambenyk, and fro thens we shull costinge to the Cite of North walis that longeth to the kynge Tradilyuaunt, and fro thens to Arestuell, iiij myle from the Saisnes;" and the children herto dide g*ra*unte.

King Looth and his sons rise up at midnight.

*[Fol. 181*b*.]

They leap on their palfreys and ride out of the gate of Bertone.

Gawein asks which way they shall go.

He says to Arestuell,

King Looth agrees.

They shall go by Sapine, Reostok, Lespinoye, Savarne, and Cambenyk.

The children agree.

Thus ride thise messagiers, spekynge of o thinge and other, till it was day, and on the morowe thei rode be the moste vncouthe weyes that thei cowde knowe, and lay in the forestes, and in hermytages, and thus thei ride viij dayes that neuer hadde thei disturbier till thei com in to the playns of

Thus they ride eight days by the most uncouth ways.

At Roestok they meet 7000 Saxons with 700 prisoners.

Clarion rides on his horse Gringalet.

When the Saxons see Looth and his sons they stay for them.

Gawein, his father and brothers leap on their horses,

and come towards the Saxons.

*[Fol. 182*a*.]

When they draw nigh Gawein advises his father and brothers.

Looth tells the Saxons what they are.

The Saxons say they keep the ways, and command them to deliver themselves up.

Roestok, and than it be-fill hem a-boute the hour of mydday that thei mette vij^{Ml} Saisnes that brought grete prayes and a vii^{C} prisoners, that the feet were bounde vnder the horse belies, and thei dide hem beete full lothly with staves and other wepnes, and hem dide condite Sorbares, and Monaclyns, and Salebruns, and Ysores, and Clarion. This Clarion rode on Gringalet, an horse that was cleped so far the grete bounte that he hadde; ffor as the storye seith for x myle rennynge abated he neuer his corage, ne hym neded no spore ne no skyn of hym ther-fore ne sholde not swete; and whan the saisnes hem saugh ridinge on her weye, thei knewe well by theire armes and hir conysshaunce that thei were noon of her companye, and thei hoved and a-bode; and whan Gawein saugh that, he hoved stille and bad his fader and his brethren to lepe vpon theire horses, and so thei dide a-noon delyuerly; and the gromes toke the palfreys and lepte vp and rode in to the foreste that wey streight as theire wey turned, and thei com toward the saisnes as the wey hem ledde, for thei deyned not to glenche; and mydday was than passed, and drough towarde noone, and so rode the kynge looth formest, and Gawein after, and his brethern hym be-side, a softe *paas; and whan thei hadde so riden that thei be-gan to come nygh, than seide Gawein to his fader that he ne sholde entende to noon other thinge ne coveite but to perce hem thourgh-out, and to his brethern he seide the same till thei were come on that other side. Than the saisnes hem ascride, and seide, "Ye knyghtes that come ther, yelde yow and telle vs what ye be and what ye go sechinge;" and the kynge looth ansuerde, "We ben fyve messagiers of the kynge Arthur that go on his erunde ther he hath vs sente, and more will we not sey;" and thei seide, "Cesse and go no ferther; ffor we kepe the weyes in the name of the kynge hardogabran, and Orienx the sone of Brangue of Saxoyne, and in the name of Margrat, to whom we lede this pray and these prisoners, and of yow also shull we make present." "Ye," quod the kynge looth, "whan ye may;" and thei seide in to that tyme was but litill space. "But yelde yow, and than do ye wisely er it falle yow eny werse;" and thei ansuerde that sholde neuer be. Than thei lete theire horse renne with as grete randon as thei myght go, and these a-gein to hem that nothinge hem ne douted, but smote in a-monge hem, and eche of hem bar oon deed to the erthe, and after smote other v that thei were deed vp-right; and at foure cours thei haue hem perced thourgh with-oute eny other discombraunce, and than thei ride a walop with theire speres in theire handes all blody; and whan the saisnes saugh hem goinge, than a-roos the shoute and the noyse after hem right grete, and be-gonne hem to chace that the duste a-roos so thikke that harde it was oon to knowe a-nother; with that com the vj kynges prikinge after, that hadde herde the tidinges and cried vpon her men, "Now upon hem and lete hem yow not ascape;" and thei hem-self priken after, for thei were well horsed, and so thei chaced hem fiercely, and thei wente forth a grete walop till thei be come to a Mille, where ther was a passage at a forde full of cley, and ther moste thei stinte and ride a softe paas; and ther ouer-toke hem the v kynges that dred nothinge the euell passage, and of saisnes after hem mo than v^{c}, and ther thei brake theire speres vpon hem in her comynge, and Ysors that com be-fore smote the horse of kynge looth that he fill deed be-twene his legg*es*.

Looth and his sons will not.

They ride in amongst them, and each bears down one dead.

They galop through.

The Saxons chase them.

The six kings call to their men not to let them escape.

Five kings overtake them at a mill.

Ysors kills Looth's horse.

Whan the kynge looth saugh his horse slain he lept vp lightly on his feet, and drough his swerde, and drough hym to a banke for the clay that was grete; and thei ronne vpon hym and assailed hym full harde, and he hym diffended so fiercely that thei hadde no power hym to take; and whan Gawein saugh his fader on foote, he was full of sorowe, and smote the horse with the spores that the blode ran oute on bothe sides, and smote Monaclyn thourgh the shelde and thourgh the hauberke that he fill deed to the erthe, and in the fallinge his spere brake. Than he drough his swerde that was cleped Calibourne, and loked on his fader that hym diffended a-gein mo than xl saisnes, and he ran vpon hem with his swerde, and smote soche strokes on bothe *his sides, that he kutte heedes and legges, and armes, and dide soche merveiles that thei fledde

Looth leaps up and draws his sword.

Gawein kills Monaclyn,

and draws his sword Calibourne.

He defends his father against forty Saxons,

*[Fol. 182*b*.]

and makes them fly.

He kills a Saxon and takes his horse to his father.

The three brothers of Sir Gawein make great slaughter. When they come together they slay many of the Saxons.

from hym and made wey; and Gawein smote a saisne that peyned sore to take his fader, that he slyt hym to the breste bon, and than hente the horse and ledde it to his fader, and the crye and the noyse a-roos for hym that was deed, and ther-while is the kynge looth remounted magre alle his enmyes. Than com the thre brethern of Sir Gawein that hadde made soche slaughter of the saisnes, that alle her armours were be-steyne with blode and brayn; and whan thei were to-geder thei be-gonne a stronge medle, and slough so many that it was gret merveile to se, and the saisnes com on euermore, for thei wende ther hadde be moche peple for the grete slaughter that thei hadde made.

Looth says it is time to go.

They pass the ford. The three kings cry to their men not to let them escape.

Clarion chases them.

Gawein covets his horse.

Clarion breaks his spear on Gawein's shield.

Whan the kynge looth saugh so moche peple come on alle partyes, he cleped his sones, and seide it was tyme to go, ffor it were no wisdome to a-bide le*n*ger for to resceve xl strokes for the yevinge of oon. "But go we hens," quod he, "and yef thei vs enchace let vs turne vpon hem be-tymes when we se oure leiseir; with that thei wente theire wey and passed the forde delyuerly, and whan thei were ouer thei ride forth on her wey; and whan the thre kynges saugh hem departe, thei cried vpon her men, "Now after hem, and lete not the traitours ascape." Than thei passed the forde, and chaced hem harde, and the kynge Clarion that satte vpon the Gringalet chaced hem formest the lengthe of an arblast, and Sir Gawein was be-hynde alle his felowes his swerde in his hande all blody; and the sarazin that sore peynes hym to ouer-take a-scried hym, "Wy yelde the or thow art but deed;" and Gawein loked and saugh the horse so swyftly renne that he gate grounde sore after hym, and gretly he hym coveited in hir herte, and seide yef he myght gete soche an horse, he wolde not yeve it for the beste Citee that kynge Arthur hadde, and than he gan to ride a softer paas, and rode walopinge, and Clarion hym enchaced faste after; and whan Gawein saugh he was come so nygh, he turned his shelde and Clarion smote so harde hym vpon the shelde that the spere fly on peces; and Gawein hym hitte vpon the helme that he slytte thourgh

Gawein fells him to the ground, and takes his horse, which he leads into a grove.

the coyf of mayle and the flessh to the harde boon, that he was so astoned that he fill in swowne to the grounde out of his sadill, and Gawein caught Gringalet be the bridell, and ledde hym to a grove ther faste by of half a myle, and his fader rode alwey forth be-fore and his thre sones, and entended to nought elles but to go theire wey, and wende thei hadde alle foure be by hym, and the duste and the powder was so thikke that oon myght not se fer from hym, and so thei hadde lefte Gawein be-hynde the space of half a myle; and whan Gawein was come in to the grove, he saugh the v gromes come oute of the foreste that rode on the v palfreyes, and than was he gladde and preised hem moche for that thei hadde peyned hem sore hem for to sewe. Than he a-light of his horse and lepte on the Gringalet, and toke his horse to oon of the gromes for to lede, *and comaunded hem to go after his fader and his brethern that were gon be-fore, and bidde hem spede hem faste on hir iourney, and I shall folowe a-noon after, but I will se where these peple will be come. But he a-bode for nought, for thei chaced no ferther, after thei fonde the kynge Clarion lyinge, but stode a-bowte hym, and wende well he hadde ben deed, and made gret doell that sir Gawein myght here the crye ther he was.

Here he sees the grooms.

He leaps on to Gringalet,

*[Fol. 183*a*.]

and stays to see whether the Saxons will chase them further, but they remain with Clarion.

Thus a-bode Gawein longe in the busshes to loke yef eny wolde come after, and the kynge looth and his thre sones rode forth till thei come to a litill grove, and as thei sholde entre thei loked bak and [saugh] not Gawein; and at the firste worde he seide, "Ha! I haue loste all;" and thei hym be-helden, and seide, "What eyleth yow, sire;" and he ansuerde, "My sone, youre brother, my sone; ha! certes yef he be deed I shall sle my-self, ffor after hym recche I not to lyve oo day." "Sir," seide Agravain, "ne weymente ye not so, ffor yef god will he ne hath noon harme;" and while the kynge loot made this waymentacion com the v gromes that brought the palfreies, and that oon ledde Gaweins horse on his right honde; and whan the kynge hem saugh he knewe hem wele, and whan thei approched nygh Gaheries hem ascried, "Where lefte ye

Gawein abides in the bushes. Looth and his three sons ride on. When Looth cannot see Gawein, he bewails his loss.

The grooms bring the palfreys.

Gaheries asks where

they left Gawein.
They say he is among the bushes on Gringalet.
Looth and his sons are glad when they hear of Gawein's safety.
Gawein springs out of the bushes among the Saxons,
and smites them down.
His shield is slit.
The Saxons chase him, but cannot overtake him.
He returns upon them with his sword in his hand.
*[Fol. 183*b*.]

my brother?" "Sir," seide the gromes, "amonge the yonde busshes where he is lepte vpon the beste horse of the worlde, wher-from he hath smyte down a kynge, and thei that weepe and crye, sey that his name is kynge Clarion, and the name of the stede is Gringalet, and he toke vs this horse, and sente yow worde that ye sholde ride forth, for soone shall he yow ouer-take, whan he will; whan thei herde he was hool and sounde thei were gladde, and be-hielde toward the busshes, and whan Gawein saugh thei rode no ferther he seide he wolde shewe hem the[1] gode horse er he paste eny ferther. Than he spronge out of the busshes, and thider as he saugh grettest plente of peple that entended yet to make doell and sorowe, and saugh a saisne that hilde a merveilous short spere, and the shaft was grete and short, and the heed was a foote and a half of lengthe that was clier and trenchaunt. Than he put Calibourne his swerde in the scauberke and launched toward the saisne with grete raundon, and raced it oute of his handes so felly that he pulled hym to grounde, and *with* the same cours he smote a-nother that he fill stark deed, and plonged in depe a-monge hem, and after returned thourgh hem as tempest of thunder; but er he past oute his shelde felte it well, for it was all to slitte and hewen, but er he departed he hath mo than xiiij so araied that neuer sholde thei ride on horse in hele; and than he wente and a-bode no lenger, and the crye and the shoute a-roos so grete, and the chace that merveile was to se, but for hem myght he ne be ouertake; and whan he hadde lefte hem be-hynde he returned with his swerde in his honde, and smote so the firste that he mette that deed he fill on the grene, and thus taried sir Gawein longe while; and he wente and com in *soche maner till thei be come nygh the wode with-ynne a bowe draught where the kynge and his thre bretheren were.

When Looth sees Gawein he cries out

Whan the kynge Looth saugh the saisnes come soche foyson after his sone Gawein that he desired to se a-bove all thinge, he cried, "My sones, what do ye? is not that Gawein youre brother that here cometh that these glotou*ns* chace; lete it be to hem dere solde." With that the kynge loot laced his helme hastely and smote the horse with spores, and his thre sones also, and com a-gein the saisnes; and the kynge Loot mette with Gawein, and seide, "Feire sone, grete wronge haue ye do that thus leve me and youre brethern, and where haue ye thus longe taried. Coveyte ye alle these saisnes to discounfite, though ye slough at eche stroke x, ye sholde not haue do in a moneth." "Sir," seide he, "I haue wonne soche an horse that I wolde not yeve for the castell of Glocedon, and therfore I wolde hym preve, and I haue founde hym soche that me nedeth to seche noon better in no londe, now go we for I shall not leve yow no more to-day fer nothinge that may be-falle." "Blame haue he," quod Agrauain, "that thus shall go seth we be thus be-fore er we haue slain moo of these saisnes." "Ye is that soth," seide Gawein, and thei ne hadde no speres, and thei drough oute theire swerdes, and these com prikinge and wende hem to take and to holde, and brake theire speres vpon theire sheldes and thei smote hem vpon the sheldes and helmes or ther thei myght hem a-reche, and fyghted fiercely that thei slough mo than xl er thei wente.

---

[1] The word "the" is repeated in the MS.

to his sons to assist him.

Looth meets Gawein; and asks him why he has taried so long.

Gawein says he wished to try his horse.

Agravain wishes to kill some more Saxons.

They slay more than forty.

And whan the kynge Looth saugh it was tyme to go he seide, "Gawein, goode sone, bringe a-wey youre brethern, for ye se well it is nyght, and therfore take we oure io*ur*ney, ffor to batailes we shull come I-nowe that we shull haue bothe handes full;" and Gawein com to his brethern, and seide that now is tyme to go, and than thei departed, but first thei toke v speres of the saisnes and put vp theire swerdes; and as thei departed vij saisnes haue theire speres leide in fewtre, and com overtakinge Gueheret, and tweyne smote hym be-twene the two sholderes, and the other tweyne on the side, and other two vpon the sleues of the hauberk, and the vij^{e} smote the horse thourgh the body and bar to the erthe, bothe the toon and the other. Than returned the kynge Looth and wende well he hadde be deed, and seide, "Ha-las now be

Looth tells Gawein to bring his brothers away.

They take five spears from the Saxons.

Seven Saxons overtake Gueheret, and bare him to the ground.

Looth grieves.

Gueheret leaps on his feet, draws his sword, and smites the Saxons.

*[Fol. 184*a*.]

Gawein kills one, and takes his horse to his brother.

The seven fly.

Gaheries kill one, and returns to his brothers.

The Saxons return to Clarion, who asks whether they have taken them.

He is sorrowful.

Loot and his sons ride forth on their way.

disparbled the foure frendes; ha! goode sone Gawein, this harme haue I thourgh yow, ffor yef ye hadde come with vs Gueheret ne hadde I had noon harme;" and while the kynge spake these wordes lepe Gueheret vpon his feet, ffor he was a noble knyght and an hardy, and he enbrace his shelde, and drough oute his swerde and made hym redy to diffende hymself; and the vij saisnes were returned, and ronne vpon hym; and he smote so the firste that he toke that he kutte his thigh a-sonder; and he smote another on the helme, but he myght not well come by hym, and the stroke descended *be-twene the body and the sholder, and kutte the gige with all the arme; and Gawein smote so hym that he mette that deed he fill to grounde, and than he caught the horse that was goode and ledde to his brother, and he lept vp lightly and hente his spere, for that wolde he not for-yete; and the kynge Looth, and Agrauain, and Gaheries haue felde other thre, and the vij^{e} turned to flight; and whan Gaheries saugh hym go, he priked after, and ouer-toke hym doun in a valei, smote hym with the spere a-gein the herte so harde that the heed passed thourghoute, and than returned a walop that wey ther his brethern be, and rode forth her wey, and it was nygh nyght; and the saisnes be-taught hem to the deuell all quyk, ffor for them sholde thei no lenger be chaced, and seide yef ther were x^{Ml} of soche men in the contrey, the kynge hardogabran and all his puyssaunce myght neuer a-gein hem endure; with that the saisnes returned ther the kynge Clarion lay, and founde his wounde stanched; and whan he saugh hem come a-gein, he asked yef thei hadde the glotou*n*s take, and they seide, "Nay," and tolde hym the harme thei hadde don after, and that thei myght not be take by no man of theires; and than was Clarion sorowfull and dolent, and returned toward the sege that was be-fore Clarence; and the kynge loot and his sones saugh it drough to nyght and rode forth theire wey, but who hadde sein theire armours he myght haue seide thei hadde not ben at soiourne, ffor theire sheldes were slitte and theire helmes to hewen, and theire armours all to rente, and theire horse all blode and brayn, and it semed that out of stronge stour thei were departed, with that thei be come to the grove ther the gromes hem a-biden, and thei a-light of theire horse, and lepe on the palfreyes, and the gromes ledde theire horse and bare theire speres, and theire sheldes, and theire helmes, and rode thourgh the wode that was grete till it was fer in the nyght, and the mone shone right clier till that thei come to a forester that was a goode man, and hadde foure sones that were feire yonge bachelers, and hadde a wif that was a goode lady.

They get off their horses, and leap on the palfreys.

They come to a forester's place,

This foresters place was stronge and well closed with depe diches full of water, and was environed with grete okes, and ther-to to it was so thikke of busshes and of thornes and breres that noon wolde haue wende that ther hadde be eny habitacion. Thider com the kynge Loot and his foure sones at the firste cok crowinge, and happed that her wey hem ledde to a posterne wher-by men entred in to the place, and made oon of theire gromes to crie and knokke till the gate was opened; and oon of the foresteres sones hem asked what thei were, and thei seide thei were V erraunt knyghtes that wente vpon theire grete nede. "Sirs," seide the yonge man, "ye be welcome, and ledde hem in to the middill of the Court, and thei a-light of theire horse, and ther were I-nowe that ledde hem to stable, and yaf hem hey and otes, ffor the place was well stuffed; and a squyer *hem ledde in to a feire halle be the grounde hem for to vn-arme, and the Vavasour and his wif, and his foure sones that he hadde, and his tweyne doughtres dide a-rise, and light vp torches and other lightes ther-ynne, and sette water to the fier, and waisshed theire visages and theire handes, and after hem dried on feire toweiles and white, and than brought eche of hem a mantell, and the Vauasour made cover the tables, and sette on brede and wyne grete foyson and venyson, and salt flessh grete plente; and the knyghtes sat down and ete and dranke as thei that ther-to haue grete nede, and the Vauasours two doughtres be-hilde sir Gawein tenderly, and his brethern, and sore thei merveiled what thei myght be; and the fforesters foure sones serued be-fore the

which is strong.

They knock at the postern gate.

One of the forester's sons welcomes them, and leads them in.

*[Fol. 184b.]

The Vavasour and his family light up torches.

They wash them,

and set meat on the tables.

The two daughters look at Gawein tenderly.

They sit at table.

The forester asks Looth who they are.

Looth asks first to whom the forest belongs.

The forester says it belongs to King Clarion of Northumberland.

Looth says he does not know a better man.

The forester speaks of the court of King Arthur, and the queen's knights.

The sister of Meranges de Porlesgues.

The forester's name is Mynoras.

knyghtes and the maidenes serued of wyn, and the lady satte be-fore sir Gawein, and the hoste be-fore Agravain, and Gueheret, and Gaheries to-geder; and the kynge loot satte euen be-side his hoste a litiil a-bove, and thei were well serued as a-boute soche hour, for it was full nygh mydnyght, and whan the clothes were vp the forester seide to the kynge looth, "Sir hoste, yef it sholde yow not displese, ne to these worthi men that be here, I wolde gladly knowe what ye were, and what is the cause that ye traueile yef it be not shame to aske." "Trewly," seide the kynge loot, "we shull neuer ther-of haue shame yef god will, but telle vs be-fore to whom lo*n*geth this forest and this contrey a-boute." "Certes, sir," seide he, "it is the kynges Clarion of Northumberlonde, and I it kepe vnder hym, and am forester and his liegeman, and these squyers that beth here be my sones, and these maidenes be my doughters." "For-sothe, sir," seide the kynge, "I knowe not a better man of his age than is the kynge Clarion, ne he myght no better haue be-sette the baille than vpon yow as me semeth, ffor ye haue a feire meyne a well lerned." "Sir," quod he, "yef thei will be goode men, thei haue worthi knyghtes of theire lynage that ben now in the Court of kynge Arthur of the moste preised and beste be-loved, and as it is tolde me thei beth newly be-come the quenes knyghtes, and by my lorde sir Gawein, the sone of kynge loot is this co*m*pany made, and it is seide how the kynge Looth is a-corded with the kynge Arthur." "And who be thei," seide the kynge Loot, "that aperteyneth to youre sones?" "Trewly, sir," seide the forester, "this lady that is here is suster to Meranges de Porlesgues, I can not sey yef ye knowe hym, and is cosin germain to Ayglin des vaux and to kehedin le petitz, and to Ewein lionell [that] is my nevew, for he is my brother sone Grandilus, the Castelein doucrenefar, and I my-self hadde I-nough of londe ne were these saisnes that haue all wasted." "And what is youre name?" quod the kynge to the forester. "Trewly, sir," seide the forester, "my name is mynoras, and am lorde of the new castell in Northumbirlond." Than seide the kynge loot, "Alle these that ye haue named knowe I well, and ye sey soth thei be goode knyghtes at devise these that ye haue nempned, and wolde god that *the kyngé Clarion satte by me as nygh as ye do." "How so?" seide Mynoras, "ar ye a-queynted with hym?" "Ye," seide he, "I shall neuer cesse of traueile till I haue spoke with hym." "Sir," seide mynoras, "so moche desire I the more to knowe what ye be, more now than I dide beforn." "And I shall telle yow than," quod the kynge loot; "ye may sey to alle hem that yow aske who was loged with yow, that it was the kynge looth and his foure sones." "Ha! sir," quod the forester, "we ar worthi to be deed, for we haue yow no better serued," and than thei aros from hym. "Sitte ye stille," quod the kynge, "and meve yow not, for so moche haue ye doon that ye haue wonne oure love for euermore, and youre meyne shull haue profite." "A sire," seide Mynoras, "what seche ye in this contrey?" Quod the kynge, "We seche that we myght speke with the Barouns of this contrey that we myght haue a Parliament to-geder on the kynge Arthurs be-halve to se how that we myght put oute these saisnes of this londe, and eche of vs to helpe other as brethern." "And where trowe ye for to assemble hem," quod Mynoras. "In Arestuell in Scotlonde," quod the kynge looth, "that is the nexte marche, and ther we shull assemble yef we may." "Sir," quod Mynoras, "yef it plese yow I shall wele lete my lorde haue witinge, and so moche shull ye haue the lesse to do, and tell me whan he shall fynde yow ther." "Trewly," seide the kynge, "I can yow thanke, and ye sey full well, and therfore now telle hym that he shall fynde me ther on seinte Berthelmewes day, and bidde hym loke that he be ther, for ther shull be alle the other princes." And Mynoras seide that it sholde be don, and badde hym thinke on the remenaunt, for of that was he quyte, after thei spake of o thinge and other till the beddes were redy, and than thei wente to reste, for thei were wery of traueile, and it was fer in the nyght, and thei slepte till it was day. But now a litill cesseth of hem, and speketh of kynge Pelles of lytenoys, the brother

*[Fol. 185*a*.]

Mynoras asks if Looth is acquainted with Clarion.

Looth tells him who he is.

Mynoras says they ought to have served them better.

He asks what Loot seeks. Loot answers to get the barons to agree with Arthur.

They are to assemble at Arestuell.

Mynoras will tell Clarion.

Loot will be there on St. Bartholomew's day.

They talk till bed time.

of kynge Pellynor, and of kynge Aleon that were brethern germain.

The son of King Pelles

This kynge hadde a feire sone that yet was no knyght, and he was of xv yere of age, but he was right semely and well barnysshed of body and bones, and ther-to was of grete bewte, and his fader hym asked whan he wolde be knyght, and he ansuerde that he wolde neuer be knyght before that the beste knyght of the worlde that eny man knewe hadde yove hym armes and the a-coole. "In feith, sone," than seide the kynge, "than may ye longe I-nough a-bide." "I can not seyn," seide the squyer, "but firste shall I serue hym thre yere er he make me knyght till that I haue lerned I-nough of armes a-boute hym, and wite ye whi. I will knowe and se of what prowesse he is and soche may he be, that I will teche hym the wey in to this contrey, for to a-cheve the a-uentures that hastely shull be-gynne, as it is seide, and to youre-self hath it be *seide often tymes, and I wolde be right sory, yef I myght not se myn Vncle made hooll of his woundes that he hath thourgh his thighes." "Ffeire sone, seide the kynge, "neuer therfore shall he not spede, though ye teche hym the wey, ffor hym be-hoveth to be of soche chiualrie, and so a-uenturouse, that he come by hym-self and enquere after the seint Graal that my feire doughter kepeth, that is yet but vij yere of age, and so hit be-houeth on hir to be engendred that childe by the best knyght that eny man knoweth, ffor to a-chieve the a-uentures ther be-houeth to be thre, wherof tweyne shull be virgins, and the thirde shall be caste." "Sir," seide the squyer, "my volunte is soche that I will go to the Court of kynge Arthur, ffor I here sey that ther ben the beste knyghtes of the worlde, and ther is oon that is his nevew that is cleped Gawein, whiche is the beste knyght of the worlde, hym will I go serue, and be his squyer yef hym plese to haue my seruise, and yef he be soche as men recorde, I shall take of hym myn armes, and the a-coole." "Ffeire sone," than seide the kynge Pelles, "ther be so many passag*es* be-twene this and that. That it is no light thinge to go thider, ffor the saisnes be spradde thourgh

will not be a knight till the best knight in the world gives him arms,

and he will show him the way into this country.

*[Fol. 185*b*.]

The king says it is of no use to show the knight the way, for he must come by himself, and inquire after the Saint Graal.

The squire wishes to go to the court of King Arthur,

and serve Gawein.

King Pelles says he will find it difficult to get there bethe contrey that all do distroye and waste, and on that other side ther is so grete discorde be-twene Arthur and the barou*n*s of the londe, that I shall neu*er* be in ese till I se yow a-gein hool and sounde," "Ffader," seide squyer, "we be alle in auent*ur*e, ne we may not deye but on soche deth as god hath vs ordeyned, and knoweth it well that I shall neuer cesse of labour till I be there, and I will meve to morowe erly." "Ffeire sone," seide the kynge, "I se well thow wilt go and that nothinge shall the lette, and me liketh it well for that thow coveytest prowesse and valour, and of gret corage it cometh, and on that other side me heveith, for that I trowe the neuer to seen. Nowe telle me whom thow wilt haue with the." "Sir," seide he, "I shall go sooll be my self, and haue with me but oon squyer to bere me companye. But aray me horse and armes soche as ye knowe be to me mystier." And the kynge seide as for that sholde haue no dowte, for all his thinges were ordeyned redy.

cause of the Saxons.

The squire says he will go on the morrow.

The king is glad that he has courage.

His son will only take one squire.

Thus ended the parlement be-twene the fader and the sone; and on the morowe his fader hadde appareiled hym horse and armes, and all thinge that was nedefull hym to diffende, and delyuered hym a squyer bolde, hardy, and wise, and well servinge; and this squyer trussed on a somer his armes, and his robes, and money I-nough, and whan he hadde all made redy, the childe lepte vpon an ambeler, and departed fro thens with-oute lenger a-bidinge, and comaunded his fader and his frendes to god, and thei hym also that god sholde diffende hym from euell and all aduersite, and than departed he and *his squyer, and traueiled many dayes that neuer thei fonde no man ne woman that seide nought to hem but goode; and so thei traueiled be theire iourneyes till on a day as thei com thourgh the playns of Roestok in to a depe valey, and ther-ynne was a feire river that com rennynge from a welle springe oute of a thorn, where-as Pignarus and Monagins two kynges of the saisnes that were restinge with v^c men of armes that were come from the roche of saisnes, and wente to Clarence to the grete seige that xxx kynges dide holde, and ledde wi*th* hem xl

The father gives his son horse and arms, and a bold squire.

They depart.

*[Fol. 186*a*.]

When they come to Roestok they find two Saxon kings, with 500 men,

that are going to Clarence.

somers trussed with vitaile, and thei were sette vnder the hawethorn in the shadowe by the broke, and let theire horse pasture down the medowes while the heete was so grete, for it was a-boute mydday.

When the king's son sees them he is afraid, and puts on his arms.

In to this valey that was so grete and depe entred this kynges sone and his squyer, and rode forth till thei come to an high hille, and fro thens myght thei well se the saisnes that ete vnder the hawthorne, and whan he hem saugh he was sore affraied, and asked his armes, and a-raied hym a-noon, and henge his swerde at the arson of his sadell, and than lepte on his horse, and comaunded his squyer to go be-fore that was cleped lydonas, and he dide his comaundement, and rode forth the streight wey till thei were euen falle a-monge the saisnes, and whan Pygnoras hem saugh, he made aske what thei were, and he ansuerde that he was of the other contrey, and wente on her iourney ther as thei hadde for to do; and Pignoras hit herde and comaunded his peple to arme and to lepe to horse, and comaunded hem to bringe hym a-gein other be force, or be otherwise, and this yonge squyer that rode forth the streight wey after his squyer hilde a grete spere, but he hadde no shelde, and rode softly. But er he hadde litill wey riden thei that folowe hym ascried hym with high voise, and seide, "Wy! yelde the, and thyn armes, and thyn horse to oure lorde that a-bideth under the hawthorne;" and he herde hem well and vndirstode, but he ansuerde hem no worde, but rode forth after his squyer and encresed his paas somwhat, and after that he rode a walop; and whan the saisnes saugh that he rode so faste, thei priked after, and manaced hym sore, and whan he saugh hem come he turned his horse hede, and a saisne com be-fore alle the other gripinge a grete spere, and hasted hym so faste in his comynge that he failed to smyte this yonge lorde, and he com so faste a-gein hym as his horse myght ronne and smote the saisne thourgh shelde and hauberke, and bar hym to grounde that he hadde no myster of no leche, and than he pulled oute his spere, and rode forth his wey a grete paas after lydonas his squyer that wente hym be-fore, for he desired not elles but

His squire's name is Lydonas.

When Pygnoras sees them, he asks who they are.

They ride on, but the Saxons follow them, and call to them to yield themselves up.

They ride on.

The young lord bears down one of the Saxons, and follows Lydonas.

from the saisnes to passe; and the saisnes priked after faste, for in no wyse thei wolde lete hym so ascape, and he rode euener a[t] a grete walop, his spere in his honde, that hadde chaunged his colour fro white in to reade, *ffor it was all blody of hym that he hadde slain, and thus he rode forth prayinge our lorde hym to diffende from deth a from prison, and the saisnes hym chaced with all the myght of theire horse, so that at laste thei hym atteyned, and x smote hym on the sholderes and on the sides, and he returned and smote so the firste that he mette, that the heed and the shafte of his spere shewed thourgh be-hynde, that he fill deed flat to the grounde, and a-nother he smote thourgh the throte, and he fill down of his horse in myddell of the wey; and the saisnes [com] hym a-gein with theire speres, that thei made hym to bend ouer his horse croupe, but he fill not from his sadell, for theire speres fly in peces; and he a-roos and with his spere smote oon of hem thourgh the body, that he fill deed to grounde a-monge his felowes, that were full wroth and angry, and ther-with brake his spere, and a-noon he leide honde to his swerde that henge at the pomell of his sadell, and drough it oute of the scauberke, and the saisnes ronne vpon hym on alle partyes, and he smote so the firste that he kute of his right sholdre, so that all the side opened that the bowels apered oute of the wounde, and he fill down deed, and than he smote a-nother that the heed fill of with all the helme, and than he smote the thridde that he slitte hym to the teth, and thè remenaunt smyten hym full harde strokes; and whan he saugh he myght not longe endure a-gein so moche peple, but that he moste be take or elles deed, he lefte hem and smote the horse with the spores, and rode faste after lydonas his squyer; and than a-roos the showte and noyse vpon hym right grete, and whan he hadde over-take his squyer, he rode forth by hym, and seide he wolde not leve his harneys as longe as he myght it diffende; he helde his swerde in his honde all naked, and a saisne com with spere in fewtre, and smote hym a-bove the sadell that the hauberke dide folde, and he hadde fallen down ne hadde he holde hym by his horse nekke; and whan he was

The Saxons will not let them escape.

*[Fol. 186b.]

Ten of them smite the young lord.

He kills some of them.

The others break his spear.

He draws his sword,

and kills several.

He spurs his horse and rides fast, till he overtakes his squire.

A Saxon smites him, but

vp redressed he loked on hym that hadde hym smyten, and hitte hym so sore vpon the heed that he slitte hym to the teth, and than thei come rounde a-boute hym on alle parties, and he hym diffended as he that was of grete herte, and be-gan to sle of hem bothe men and horse, and threwe to grounde all that he dide a-reche. But all his diffence a-vailed hym but litill a-gein so many as were a-boute hym, and so it myght not be but that he moste be deed or taken, ffor Pignoras and Monaquyns were come after hym; and than he turned from hem and priked his wey as faste as he myght after his squyer, and Monaquyns and Pignoras that saugh noon of her men returne, thei lept to theire horse a com ridinge the wey as the squyer wente and saugh the deed bodyes that were lyinge in the high wey that the squyer hadde slain, and thei asked who hadde this don; and thei seide that he hadde don all this *that com ridinge by hymself, and than thei asked whiche wey he was gon; and thei seide, "Yonder down in a valey, where oure peple fighted with hym, but thei may hym not take." Than seide Pignoras, "Now after hym, and lete hym not thus ascape, for he hath don me grete harme;" and whan thei herde this thei lete renne after the squyer. Now god be his gide for his grete pite, for yef thei may hym take, he may not ascape in no wise with-outen deth. But he that in euery nede helpeth hem that in hym byleve, that is oure lorde Ih*es*u Crist, sente to hym a feire a-uenture, and ther-fore is seide a proverbe, that god will haue saued, no man may distroye, and here a litill stinteth the tale of hym, and returneth to the kynge Looth of Orcanye, and to his foure sones that be in his companye.

he slits him to the teeth.

He defends himself.

Pignoras and Monaquyns come after him.

When they see the dead bodies they ask who did this.

*[Fol. 187*a*.]

Pignoras says the squire must not escape,

but our Lord succours him.

The tale returns to Looth.

That nyght that the kynge looth and his foure sones were herberowed with Mynoras, the forester of kynge Clarion, thei slepte all nyght after thei were brought to reste as thei that all the day suffred grete traueyle, and erly on the morowe thei a-rise and toke theire armes that was brought in theire chamber, and thei armed hem smartly and soone, and lepe on theire horse that were brought to the halle dore, and Mynoras and his wif*e* were at the takynge of theire horse; and the kynge

Looth and his four sons sleep well.

They arise early in the morning and ride forth.

Looth and sir Gawein comaunded hem to god and thanked hem hertely of the herberow and the goode chere that thei hadde hem shewed, and than thei ride forth oute at the yate, and the forester and his foure sones rode with hem, and conveyed hem the wey; and the foure gromes rode be-fore and ledde the v horse couered vnder stiell, and bar theire helmes, and sheldes, and theire speres that the forester hadde he*m* yoven with heedes cler and sharpe; and whan Mynoras hadde conveyed hem a-while, the kynge hym returned and bad hym do his massage to the kynge Clarion of Northumbirlonde as he hadde promysed, and Mynoras seide that he wolde do it trewly with-oute faile, and a-noon toke his leve and returned to his manoir; and a-noon he made tweyne of his sones for to make hem redy and sette hem on two swifte horse, for doute of the saisnes yef thei mette eny on the wey that thei myght ride from theym yef it were mystier; and whan these tweyne squyers were redy, than seide Mynoras, "Ffeire sones, ye shull go to the kynge Clarion that is oure lorde, and telle hym how the kynge Looth of Orcanye sendith hym to wite that he sholde be with hym at Arestuell in Scotlonde on oure lady day in Sept*em*br*e*;" and thei ansuerde and seide this massage sholde thei do well, and a-noon thei toke forth theire iournei and com to the kynge Clarion, and fonde hym at a manoir of his with a prevy meyne full pensif what he myght best do with the saisnes that so wasted his londe and his contrey; and whan he saugh the two squyers be-fore hym that the kynge Looth hym sente, he was gladde and mery, and for theire goode tidinges he yaf eche of hem a goode horse, ffor he loved the kynge looth right tendirly, and seide he wolde be ther *with-oute faile, yef god hym diffende from myschief, and a-noon as thei hadde theire ansuere thei returned hem to theire fadres place myry and gladde, and presented the horse that the kynge hadde hem yoven, for love of kynge Looth that he hadde herberowed, and now we shull returne and speke of the kynge looth and his foure sones.

The forester and his four sons go with them.

Looth bids Mynoras return and give his message to Clarion.

Mynoras sends two of his sons to Clarion with the message.

They come to Clarion,

who is glad to see them. He gives them each a good horse, and says he will come without fail.

*[Fol. 187*b*.]

The messengers return to their father.

Whan the kynge looth and his foure sones were departed from the forester, thei rode thourgh the foreste that

When Looth and his sons ride through the forest, was grete and high, and delitable in for to traueile, and it was feire weder and stille, and that nyght hadde ben a grete dewe, and the briddes songen for swetnesse of the myry seson, and thei songe so myrily and so high in theire langage that all the wode ronge; and the kynge hem herkened, and his foure sones that were yonge and lusty, and remembred hem on theire newe loves, and so thei ride a two myle thinkinge on the briddes songe, and Gaheries that was amourouse be-gan for to singe a newe made songe, and he songe right wele and merily, and well entuned; and whan the sonne was vp and he saugh his brethern were somwhat fer be-hynde hym he turned be-side the wey to make his horse stale till thei were come to hym, ffor thei herkened hym gladly; and Gaheries com to Agravain and to Geheret, and seide, "Lete vs singe;" and than thei be-gonne to singe alle thre, and than seide Gaheries to Agrauain and to Gueheret, "Now telle me by the feith that ye owe to the kynge looth my fader and yours, yef ye hadde the two doughtres of oure hoste that was this nyght, and thei were now here, telle me what wolde ye do." "So god me helpe," seide Agrauain, "I sholde haue my wille." "So helpe me god," seide Gaheries, "so wolde not I do but I wolde bringe hem to saftee." "And ye, Gueheret, what wolde ye do?" Quod Gueheret, "I sholde make hir my love yef I myght therto hir entrete, but be force wolde I nothinge do, for than were the game nought, but yef it plesed hir as well as me."

the birds sing.

Gaheries sings a new song.

Gaheries, Agravain, and Geheret sing.

The three brothers say what they would do if the two daughters of their host were with them.

While thei seide these wordes ouertoke hem the kynge looth and Gawein that wele hadde herde that thei hadde seide, and thei lough alle to-geder, and than thei asked whiche hadde seide beste. "Of that," quod the kynge, "shall Gawein youre brothere be Iuge." "And I shall soone haue seide," quod Gawein. "Gaheries hath seide beste, and Agravain werste, ffor Agravain sholde se that noon dide hem noon harme, but sholde helpe to diffende hem at his power, but me semeth ther were no werse enmy that he; and Geheret hath yet seide better than he, for he seith he wolde nothinge do be force, and that he seith so cometh hym but of love and

Looth and Gawein overhear their talk.

Gawein says that Gaheries has spoken the best, and Agravain the worst.

curtesie, and Gaheries hath seide as a goode man, for so as he seith wolde I do the same yef it were for me to do;" and than thei lough and Iaped with Agravain, and the kynge hym-self more than eny other, and rode to Agravain, and seide, "What Agravain, hate ye the doughter of youre hoste for youre foule delite, a feire rewarde yelde ye for the feire servise and the goode chere that she hath yow don, *ffor trewly she hath it evill be-sette." "Sir," seide Agravain, "thei sholde not therfore haue[1] no mayme of hande ne foote." "No," quod the kynge; "but thei shull lese all worship*pe*." "I can-not sey," quod Agravain, "of eny man that wolde hem spare, yef he hadde hem a-lone by hym-self, ffor after that he lete her passe she sholde hym neuer love." "But he sholde kepe and saue his honour," seide the kynge. "Certes," seide Agravain, "neuer after he hadde lefte hir she wolde but skorne and preyse hym the lesse." Quod the kynge, "I wolde not sette at a boton what oon seide, so that my worship were saued, so that I hadde no vylonye ne reprof." "Ya ther is no more of," quod Agravain, "but we shull vs yelden in to soche place ther we shull se no women." "Ha Agravain," quod the kynge looth, "yef ye yow thus demene as ye sey, wite ye well ye shull myscheve, and that shull ye well se;" and euen as the kynge seide so hym be-fill after that he langwissid longe a-boue the erthe for the vilonye that he dide to a mayden, that rode with hir frende with whom he faught till that he hadde hym discounfited and maymed of oon of his armes, and after wolde haue leyen by his love and fonde hir roynouse of oon of hir thighes, and seide hir soche vilonye that she after hurte his oo thigh and his arme, so that it sholde neuer be made hooll; but yef it were be tweyne of the beste knyghtes of the worlde to whom she sette terme of garison, as the booke shall yow devyse here-after, how that it was warisshed by Gawein his brother, and by launcelot de lak that was so noble a knyght; but of this matter speketh no more at this tyme, but returneth how

Gaheries spoke as a good man.

Looth censures Agravain,

*[Fol. 188*a*.]

who tries to defend himself.

Looth tells him he will come to mischief,

which he does afterwards.

A maiden gives him the itch.

He is cured by Gawein and Launcelot.

---

[1] The word "have" is repeated in the MS.

the kynge looth speketh to his sone Agravain that was prowde and fell, and thus thei rode in the foreste till it was paste pryme.

Looth and his sons meet Lydonas,

who cries and smites his hands against each other.

Agravain asks him why he weeps.

He says his lord is nearly killed by the Saxons.

He was going to seek Sir Gawein.

*[Fol. 188*b*.]

Lydonas tells who his lord is.

Gaheries and Agravain mock one

Than thei entred in to a feire launde that dured a-longe to Roestok a-longe by the wode side; and whan thei hadde a-while I-riden, thei mette lydonas comynge down the hille that was sore affraied for his lorde that faught at grete myschef as ye haue herde be-fore, and he drof the somer be-fore hym with the robes, and ledde his lord*es* palfrey in his right hande, and wepte and seide, "Lady seinte marie, vs helpe and socour*e*;" and thus he cried often, and smote that oon hande a-gein the tother; and whan the kynge looth and his foure sones hym a-perceyved thei hadde grete pitee, and Agravain hasted hym be-fore, and seide, "Why makest thow this doell and this sorowe;" and the squyer loked vp and seide, wepinge, "Sir, I haue cause I-nough wherefore, I wepe for a yonge lorde, the feireste creature that euer was formed on erthe that the saisnes haue asseilled in this valey be-nethe, and haue hym slayn, but god be his helpe and socour*e*." "And whider wente he," quod Agravain. "Sir," seide lydonas, "he was goynge to the Court of kynge Arthur for to seche sir Gawein and hym for to serue that hath so grete valour as it is seide, ffor *so moche he hath herde spoken of hym that he will neuer be made knyght but of sir Gawein;" and than he seide at the tother worde, "Ha! las caytef, now I haue hym loste, and neuer I shall se hym more," and made so moche sorowe that for litill he wolde hym-self haue slayn, and Agravain hym asked of what contrey he was. "Sir," seide lydonas, "of the reame of lystenoys, and is the riche[1] kyng*es* sone Pelles;" and Agravain loked on sir Gawein and seide, "Brother, here ye not what a-uenture yow a-bideth;" and he seide, "Yesse, he hadde it welle herde." Than thei laced theire helmes, and toke theire sheldes and lepte on theire horse, and Gaheries seide to Agravain, "Now thenke vpon the maydenes that ye this morowe haue be so goode a werkere, and loke that ye be as goode a knyght at armes a-gein the saisnes that thei may conne yow gree." "Gaheries," quod Agravain, "I pray yow be as curteyse to the saisnes as ye were to the maidenes that ye durste not assaile ne se, and no more shull ye do to the saisnes as I trowe." "Sir," seide Gaheries, "ye be elther than I, and therfore it shall be sene how ye will do better." "So god spede me," seide Agravain, "I were but litill to preise, but I dide better than ye, and elles hadde I but little power, ffor I will neuer lette for youre cowardise." "Sir," quod Gaheries, "at the leste it is no curteisie a man to a-vaunte of hym-self, but whan ye come ther do the beste that ye can;" and whan Agravain herde this, he swor*e* and seide he sholde go in to soche place where he durste hym not sewe, for the iyen in his heed; and Gaheries be-gan to lawgh, and was nothinge wroth, but seide all in game, "Go ye than be-fore, and ye can go in to no place but I shall yow sewe;" and Gawein lowgh of that thei hadde seide, for he wiste well that Gaheries pleide and Iaped, and tolde to Gueheret and his fader the wordes that thei hadde seide; and a-noon the kynge seide, "Ffeire sones, go we after hem that thei do no folye, ffor I wote well Agravain is wroth;" and whan lydonas saugh hem go he asked what thei were, and thei seide thei were of the meyne of kynge Arthur, "and he is here in our companye that ye go sechinge." "Ha! god mercy," quod lydonas, "than will I go no ferther till I wite how it shall be." "No," quod the kynge looth, "but turne a litill oute of the weye till thow knowe how it shall be-falle, and go in to the thikke of this foreste;" and the squyer seide, "So shall I do." And while thei spake so to-geder thei saugh this other squyer come prikynge faste with his swerde in hande all blody and CC saisnes after hym as thei myght ride, and often he turned and smote hym so that he dide a-reche that noon armour*e* ne waranted hym, and whan he hadde don his power he rode forth his wey; and whan he hadde a while fledde he returned and faught, and thus he demened hym till he mette with hem that com

---

[1] The word "riche" is repeated in the MS.

another about the maidens.

Gaheries says he will follow wherever Agravain goes.

Lydonas asks who they are.

Looth tells him to turn into the forest.

The other squire comes with 200 Saxons after him.

He calls to the five to help him.

*[Fol. 189*a*.]

ridinge hy[m] a-geins; and whan he saugh hem v. he cried with *lowde voyce, "ffor goddes love cometh and helpe me and haue pite of me, for ye se the grete nede that I haue;" and Agravain seide, "A-bide and haue no drede."

Agravain smites the first he meets.

Gaheries kills another,

and calls out to Agravain.

The squire asks the king who he is.

He is joyful when he knows Sir Gawein.

Looth and the squire smite in among the Saxons.

The squire follows Gawein, who draws out Calibourne,

Than Agravain spored his horse and brandisshed his spere that was sharpe and kene, and smote so the firste that he mette, that shelde ne hauberke myght hym helpe that he sente the spere heed thourgh the breste, and he fill deed to grounde; and Gaheries that com after hym smote a-nother thourgh shelde and hauberke that he fill deed vp-right, and than brake the spere, and a-noon he drough oute his swerde; and seide with high voise, "Agravain, brother, where be ye; now lete se what ye do, ffor I peyne me for these ladyes sake for curtesie, and ye peyne yow for theire vilonyes." Of these wordes lough Gawein and Geheret. Whan the kynge looth saugh hem laugh and Iape, he seide, "What do ye my children, se ye not youre brethern a-monge youre enmyes." Whan the squyer vndirstode these foure knyghtes were his sones, and that he monestede hem to do well, he asked what he was, and he hym tolde that his name was kynge looth of Orcanye, "and these knyghtes be my sones, and lo hym ther that thow sechest with the shelde of synopre," and shewed hym sir Gawein; and whan the squyer that vndirstode that the kynge hadde seide, he hadde grete ioye of the tidinges that he tolde, and hilde vp his handes toward heuene and thanked oure lorde that he hadde hym so I-founden; and than seide he to kynge looth, "How knowe ye whom I seche?" "I wote well," quod he, "that thow goiste to seche Gawein, and lo hym there;" and with that he smote in a-monge the saisnes and the squyer with hem that thre the firste that thei mette thei drof deed to the erthe, and than thei rode forth and smote other thre down deed to grounde, and ther-with brake the speres, and than thei drough oute swerdes and smote on the right side and on the lifte, and the squyer lefte the kynge looth and pursued Gawein in euery place where he wente, and Gawein hadde drawen oute his suerde Calibourne, and be-gan to slee so moche peple that alle that saugh hym do soche maistries fledde be-fore hym whan thei saugh hym come, and durste not a-bide his strokes, and he was gon so fer be-fore that he wiste nothinge of his fader, ne his brethern; and Agravain hadde so chaced and Gaheries xx saisnes that thei surbated on Pignoras that com with an hundred saisnes; and whan thei saugh how thei were chaced and were but tweyne, he cried vpon his men and medled hym a-monge hem, and thei smote tweyne so harde that deed thei fill on the grene, and than renged hem x saisnes and smote hem on alle partyes that thei bar Agravain to the erthe, and thei smyte Gaheries so harde that he bente bakwarde in his sadill be-hynde, and whan the speres were broken he smote in to the presse and be-gan to do merveiles, and Agravain was *lepte on fote and griped his swerde in hys right hande, and hente his shelde hym be-forn, and thei hym assailed full harde, and he hym well diffended as he that hadde I-nough of herte and force, and Gaheries spored his horse that wey ther he saugh his brother, and rode be-twene hym and the saisnes that sore hym assailed, and he hym diffended vigorously, that noon durste hym a-bide for the strokes that thei saugh hym yeve, and in this manere thei fought longe while, ffor the saisnes coveited hem for to take, and thei hem diffended to warante theire lyves; and the kynge Looth and Gueheret fought right harde, and wente thourgh the bataile sechinge her felowes, and so thei fonde Agravain on foote a-monge the saisnes, his swerde in his honde all naked, wherwith he yaf hem many grete strokes, and Gaheries was by hym that dide grete peyne hym to helpe and for to remounte. Than the kynge looth smote in a-monge hem and fought sore a-gein the sarazins thei foure and sloughen many of hem, and sir Gawein hadde so gon that he was come vpon the hill with his swerde all blody in his hande. Than he loked bak and saugh he hadde alle perced thourgh, and the squyer was by hym at the spore and seide, "Sir, I wolde sue yow full gladly yef my servise myght yow plese so that it liked yow for to make me knyght, whiche tyme I wolde yow requere;" and Gawein ansuerde that he was right welcome,

and kills much people.

Agravain and Gaheries chace twenty Saxons.

Pignoras and his men bare Agravain to the earth, and smite Gaheries.

*[Fol. 189*b*.]

Agravain leaps on foot, and grips his sword.

Gaheries defends his brother.

Looth and Gueheret fight hard.

They come to the other two.

Gawein says he must seek his father and brethren.

and with-hilde hym with-oute mo wordes, and than he badde hym to kepe hym by him that the saisnes dide hym not hurte ne diffoule, "ffor I moste seche my fader and my brethern that I ne wote neuer where thei beth be-come;" and than seide the squyer, "Lo hem yonder in that grete prees, for I se swerdes lifte a-loufte that bright shyneth, and a-noon Gawein knewe his fader by the helme, and than he seide, "It is my fader, sue me."

He sees them.

And than he smote his horse with the spores on bothe sides that he spronge oute xviij foote, and drof in fiercely a-monge the saisnes more than he hadde don all the day be-fore he and the squyer that thei throwe down all that be-fore hem stode, and the squyer cowde not so faste spore hys horse that he myght hym ouertake, and fonde the wey strowed full of hem that were ouerthrowen; and than seide the squyer, "Lady seint marie, I am a-ferde to lese hym here a-monge these mysbelevinge peple; ffull trewe seide thei that tolde me ther was not soche a-nother knyght in the worlde, ffor he ne gabbed no worde, for he hath in hym more goode than was seide, and yef the knyght be goode, he hath a horse at his device, and I trowe yef he will do all his power that he sholde discounfite soche xx as be here. Now wolde god that was born of the virgine marie that my fader the kynge hadde hym ones seyn, for I wote wele he wolde holde it a merveile." Thus devised the squyer what he wolde, and euer sued after Gawein as moche as he myght; and sir Gawein hath so gon that he fonde Agravain so wery for traveile that he lened on his shelde and his swerde in his honde, and myght not helpe hym-self but litill, and thei yaf hym ever *a-monge grete strokes with speres and swerdes as thei myght come to; and on that other side he saugh that Gueheret was smyte be-twene the sholdres with two speres that he was born to the erthe vp-right, and also he saugh xi saisnes that hilde his fader be the helme, and smote hym with the pomeles of hir swerdes; and Gaheries hadde caste his shelde to the ground and hilde his swerde in bothe handes, and yaf soche strokes that thei myght be herde

He and the squire throw down all before them. The squire cannot keep up with Gawein;

he says there is not such another knight in the world.

He follows as well as he can.

Gawein finds Agravain weary,

*[Fol. 190a.]

and Gueheret borne to the earth.

Gaheries rescues his father,

right cleer, ffor he smote of handes, and armes, and hedes, and legges, and slitte hem to the teth, and shewde ther soche prowesse that noon durste hym a-bide, but lefte the kynge Looth magre hem alle; and the kynge loked and saugh it was Gaheries his sone that hadde hym rescowed, he seide, "Ha! feire sone, yef we hadde youre brother Gawein with vs we shull nought lese this day for alle these false peple, and Agravain and Gueheret where be thei." "Thei be in theire enmyes handes that nygh haue hem slayn."

and shows great prowess.

With these wordes com Gawein brekinge the presse, and sleinge all that he myght a-reche, as quarell oute of arblast for swyftnesse of his horse, and hilde his swerde in his hande and smote on eche side so hevy strokes oute of mesure that alle yede to grounde that stode in his weye; and the squyer was euer [nigh] hym that for nothinge wolde hym leven, and yaf many a grete stroke with his swerde, wherfore he was be-loved after of alle the brethern; and [it befell] that mette Gawein Monaquyn that was oon of the goode knyghtes of alle the saisnes, and was a-rested vpon Gueheret for to take hym to pryson. But Gawein smote hym so harde with Calibourne that he slitte hym from the sholdre to girdell; and whan the squyer saugh that, he blissed hym for the merveile that he hadde, and blessed the arme that soche a stroke yeve; than he caught the horse be the reyne, and ledde to Agravain, and badde hym skippe vp lightly, and he dide so a-noon right as he that ther-to hadde grete nede, and the squyer helde hym the stirop, and Agravain hym thanked hertely, and seide he sholde hym quyte yef he myght.

Gawein breaks into the press.

The squire is near him.

Gawein meets Monaquyn and kills him.

The squire catches the horse, and leads it to Agravain.

Whan Pignoras saugh his brother deed he was sory and wroth, and gripid an ax with bothe handes, and com towarde the kynge Looth, and smote hym so sore on the helme that he fill flatte to the erthe, but he hadde no grete harme but that he was sore astonyed, and than he smote Gaheries that he fill to the erthe vp-right, and than was Gawein full wo, and smote the Gringalet that wey with Calibourne in his hande, and whan he saugh hym come he covered hym with

Pignoras is angry, and

smites Looth and Gaheries.

his shelde and with his axe. But Gawein smote the axe helue a-sondre, and the stroke descended on the shelde and the right sholdre and slitte hym to the breste, and the squyer caught the horse and ledde to Gaheries, and he lepte vp delyuerly; and than he toke the horse that his fader was fallen fro, and brought it to hym hastely by the bridell, and hilde the *stirop till he was vp, and than he made a new assaute vpon hem that so short hadde hem holden. But the saisnes were so abaisshed of theire two lordes that were ther deed that thei turned to flight, and toke no more hede hem to diffende, and Maundalis theire stiwarde hem ascried, "Ha, cowarde peple, what do ye that a-venge yow not on hem that haue youre two lordes slayn in this maner, and ye se well thei be but vj, and ye be yet thre hundred, and ye may be a-shamed that thei haue so longe endured;" and thei returned to the vj, and sir Gawein com be-fore and mette with hem as he that well knewe their corage, and hilde Calibourne, his goode swerde, and smote so the firste that he mette that he fill deed on the grene, and than the seconde, and the thridde, and than the fourth, and than he smote Maundalis that the heed fill from the sholderes, and the squyer caught the horse and ledde to Geheret; and whan the saisnes saugh theire stiwarde deed, thei turned a-noon to flight, who that myght sonest, so that noon a-bode other, and thei hem enchaced that sore hem hated a-bove all thinge, and slough and smote dowon all that thei myght a-take, and sir Gawein satte vpon the Gringalet that swyftly hym bar, and he made a-monge hem soche martire that it was wonder to wite, and hilde hem so shorte that thei myght hym not ascape vp ne down, ffor thei myght no side turne, but euer he was be-fore, and whan thei saugh thei myght not ascape, thei rode in to the depe of the forest for socour, and fledde oon here, a-nother there, that thei a-bide nother frende ne brother, and cursed the hour and the day thei with hem metten, "ffor thei be no peple as other be, but it be fendes of helle, for ther be but vj, and that fill neuer that so moche peple were discounfited with so small peple as we be now be hem, and therfore may we sey

Gawein kills Pignoras.

The squire catches the horse, and leads it to Gaheries.

*[Fol. 190b.]

The Saxons turn to flight when they see their two lords killed; but Maundalis calls them cowards, and they return.

Gawein smites those he meets, and kills Maundalis.

The squire leads the horse to Gueheret.

The Saxons turn to flight.

Gawein kills many of them.

They ride into the forest,

and say that their enemies are fiends of hell.

that thei were neuer of carnell men conceyved, ffor neuer mortall man myght do that these haue vs don."

Thus seide the saisnes theire volunte, and were discounfited be the prowesse of sir Gawein, and the remenaunt that ascaped lefte neuer till thei come to the siege be-fore Clarence, and tolde theire grete damage to the kynge Hardogabran what the vj knyghtes hadde hem do, ffor thei haue oure two kynges slain, and oure stiward Maundalis; whan the kynge hardogabran herde this, he was nygh woode for wrath, ffor the tweyne were his cosins germain, and cursed the hour and the day that euer thei entred in to the londe, "ffor," quod he, "we haue resceyved grete damage." But now cesseth the tale of the saisnes and speketh of the kynge Looth.

The Saxons that escape come to Hardogabran, who is very wroth.

The tale returns to King Looth.

Whan the saisnes were discounfited in the valey of Rorestok, the kynge looth was gladde for the squyer that thei hadde rescowed, and than thei wente to the somers that the saisnes sholde haue ledde to the siege before Clarence, and gadered hem to-geder and be-helde hem gretly; and than seide Gaheries a worde that was well herde. "Lord god," *quod he, "why be ther so many pore bachelers in the contrey whan thei myght thus wynne I-nough. Certes thei lese nothinge but for slouthe and cowardise, ffor thei ne sholde not slepe in no bedde, but wayte a-boute on the marches." "Ffeire sone," seide the kynge, "so myght thei haue euell suerte, ffor who that soche thinge will vndirtake yef oon tyme hym happe wele, hit falleth hym foure tymes euell;" and than seide Gaheries to his fader, "Sir, aske Agravain my brother yef he haue eny talent now to rage with*in* these maydenes yef he hadde hem here on this playn;" and Agravain loked on hym a trauerse full proudly, and seide to hym in reprof, "Gaheries, it is not longe tyme past that ye hadde no talent to iape whan the saisne smote yow down of youre horse with his axe, and ne hadde be Gawein ye hadde mette with hym in euell tyme." "Though I fell," quod Gaheries, "I may no more do ther-to. But I was not at so grete myschef, but I me diffended so as it myght be; and of that ye myght wele haue holde youre pees,

They gather the sumpters together.

*[Fol. 191*a*.]

Gaheries and Agravain mock each other.

Agravain is very angry,

and smites Gaheries on the helm thrice.

for I saugh yow to-day at soche pointe, that though the feirest lady of the worlde hadde preide yow of love ye wolde not haue ansuered hir a worde, for a maiden of v yere of age myght haue take from yow youre breche;" and whan Agravain vndirstode this, he was wroth and angry, and for that he cleped hym recreaunt, wax he rody for shame, and loked on hym with maltalent, and yef thei hadden be a-lone he wolde with hym haue foughten; but the kynge turned the wordes in to other maner, for he wolde not haue in no wise distrif be-twene hem two, and than he asked what sholde be do with the somers. Sir," quod Gaheries, "asketh of Agravain;" and than be-gan Agravain sore to wrathe, and seide he sholde it a-beyen, and hilde a tronchon of a spere in his honde, and smote Gaheries on the helme that it fly all to pec*es*, and Gaheries remeved not but suffred; and Agravain recouered and smote twys or thries, so that nought of the tronchon lefte in his handes, and his brother Gueheret ne hys fader cowde hem not so departe, but euer he ran vpon hym as he myght from hem ascape.

Gawein blames Agravain, who swears that he will not forgive Gaheries.

Agravain smites his horse, and runs upon Gaheries with his sword drawn.

Than com Gawein from the chace, and asked what a-ray that was, and the kynge tolde hym all worde for worde; and Gawein com to Agravain and blamed hym sore for that he hadde so I-don; and Agravain swor all that he myght swere that neuer he wolde it hym for-yeve, and whan Gawein vndirstode the grete felonye, he seide he sholde abye on his body, but yef he wolde be ruled. "Ffy," quod Agravain, "in dispite of the deuell this were of the newe that I sholde lette for yow to do ought." "Now shall it be sene," quod Gawein, "what thow wilt do." Than Agravain smote the horse with the spores and ran to Gaheries with swerde drawen, and smote hym on the helme that the fire sparcled oute. Ne Gaheries ne remeved litill ne moche for nothinge that he dide, and whan Gawein saugh this he drough oute Calibourne and swor by his fader sowle that in euell tyme he hadde it be-gonne, *and whan the fader be-hilde all this, he seide, "Now vpon hym feire sone, and go sle this harlot, for he is fell and proude;" and Gawein thought well what he wolde do, and com to Agra-

*[Fol. 191*b*.]

vain, and smote hym with the pomell of his swerde vnder the temple that he fill from his horse to the erthe so astoned that he wiste not where he was; and Gaheries seide to Gawein, "Sir, be not wroth for nothinge that he doth to me, for he is fell and proude, and therfore taketh nothinge to herte that he doth to me ne seith." "Ffle from hens," quod Gawein, "mysproude lurdeyn, neuer shall I love the whan thou wilt not spare for my lorde my fader ne for noon of vs." "Sir," seide Gaheries, "he is myn elther brother, and it sitteth me to do hym honour and reuerence. Ne for nothinge that I dide, ne seide to hi*m* ne dide I but Iape." "He is a fole and prowde," quod Gueheret, "but all that hast thow meved, and therfore have thow euell happe;" and Gaheries hym ansuerde, "Full euell sholde I pleye with a straunger whan I may not pley nother with yow ne with hym, and wyte ye well," quod he, "this is the firste tyme and the laste that euer I shall pleye or Iape with hym or with yow, and yef it were not for be-cause that we be comen oute to-geder, I wolde returne anoon right that no more companye sholde I yow holde;" and Geheret seide a-gein, "Euell happe haue Agravain, but he quyte yow this dere for this a-colee that he hath hadde for yow." "So god me helpe," quod Gawein, "yef owther of yow do eny thinge othir-wise than ye owe to do, I shall sette yow in soche place where ye shull not se nother hande ne foote this vij monethes, and therfore I diffende yow as dere as ye haue youre owne bodyes that ye loke ye do hym noon euell." "Sir," seide Gueheret, "we shull kepe vs ther-fro right wele seth ye it comaunde, ffor a-gein youre comaundement ne may we not do, ne we will not. But it hevyeth me whan ye will medle yow agein vs for hym, and that ye haue Agravain thus diffouled for nought." "Ffor nought is it not," quod Gawein, "whan a-gein my deffence he ran vpon hym in dispite of me in my fader sight and myn. Ne neuer Gaheries ne wrathed for buffet that he hym yaf. In dispite of the devell sholde he be so proude, ffor his pride shall greve bothe the and hym." "So helpe me god," quod the kynge Looth, "for litill I shall take

Gawein smites Agravain,

but Gaheries tells him not to be angry.

Gueheret says that Gaheries provoked Agravain.

Gawein says that if Gueheret or Agravain do any evil to Gaheries he will punish them.

Looth says

he will take away their arms and leave them.

a-wey all the armes that thow haste, and of Agravain also, and leve yow in myddell of the felde like lurdeynes." "Sir," seide Gueheret, "ye speke not this of youre owen mouthe but of others; ffor of this that ye sey ye haue no talent for to do ne power yef other ne were." "Ha boyes," quod the kynge, "thow art fell, and for-swollen. Verile art thow his brother, for ye bothe be cont*ra*riouse, and I comaunde my sone Gawein that yef thow or Agravain do ought to my sone Gaheries that he do vpon yow as grete reddure as vpon harlott*es* or ribaudes."

The squire comes to Agravain, and brings him his horse.

*[Fol. 192*a*.]

Gawein tells Agravain to go, for he will no more have him in his company.

Looth asks what they shall do with the sumpters. Gawein says they must send them to Mynoras,

and the squire shall lead them.

The squire takes a yeoman with him, and leads the sumpters to Mynoras, who is very

Whan the squyer saugh that Gawein hadde smyte down Agravain, that he bledde bothe at mouthe and nose, he ran to take his horse and brought hym by the bridill, and made *hym for to lepen vp, and Gawein com to hym and seide, "Harlot fle from hens, for with the haue I nought to do, and loke that I se the neuer more in my companye, and go where thow wilt for with me shalt thow come no more, and go ye alle forth with hym that love hym better than me and with me that love my companye;" with that Gawein rode forth his wey, and Gaheries and Gueheret and the kynge Looth asked what sholde he do with the somers. "Sir," seide Gawein, "ye shall sende hem to Mynoras the forester, that so well dide vs herberowe; ffor he serued vs well and feire in his place, and therfore well it is on hym be-sette, and better it is that the goodeman hit haue than it here be loste, ffor we it may not condite ne lede, and we may wele come in soche place that we myght all lese." "Certes," seide the kynge, "ye sey full well, but who shall it lede." "Sir," seide Gawein, "the squyer of this gentilman, and oon of youre gromes." "On god*es* name," seide the kynge; and a-noon was the squyer sought till he was founden, and charged with the message and the present that he sholde make, and after to turne after hem the right wey to Roestok; and he seide that all this wolde he well do, and toke a yoman with hym to conveye hym the wey, and wente forth with alle the somers, and ledde x stedes cowpled by the bridelis that oon to the tother, and hilde the streight wey till thei come to the rescette of Mynoras that grete ioye made of this present, and served hem so well and so feire that no peple myght be better serued than thei were, and on the morowe thei toke theire wey as soone as thei myght se the day for to go after theire lordes as thei were comaunded.

joyful, and treats them well.

They return to their lords.

As soone as the kynge looth hadde sente these somers by lydonas, and by oon of his yomen to mynoras the forester, thei rode forth her wey alle vi toward Roestok, and lefte alle the wordes of reprof that thei hadde spoken, ffor that thei saugh Gawein was ther-with greved; and than thei ride to-geder, the kynge, and Gawein, and Gaheries, and asked of the yonge squyer of whens he was, and what was his name, and he seide how his name was Elizer, and was the sone of kynge Pelles of listenoys, and nevew to the kynge Alain of the forain londes, and to the kynge pellynor of the sauage fountain that hadde xj sones that alle were of the age of xvij yere, and the eldest was newliche come to the court of kynge Arthur for to take armes, "these be my cosins germain, and I go toward the court of kynge Arthur to my lorde sir Gawein for to serven hym, and I thanke god I haue founde hym nerre, and he hath me with-holde in soche manere that he shall make me knyght whiche tyme that I hym requere." "Even so I graunte yow sir," quod sir Gawein, "for ye [be] right welcome." Thus thei rode till it was nyght, that thei fonde nether house ne herberowe, and the foreste was high and full of shadowe; but the weder was softe and stille; and than fill it that *after mydnyght thei fonde an hermytage all closed with diches, and with rayles, and the[i] cleped and called till it was opened to hem, and thei a-light from theire horse, and dide of theire brideles and the sadelis, and yaf hem grasse, for ther-ynne was nothinge elles, and thei ete soche vitaile as the hermyte hem brought, and that was breed and water, and after that thei lay down to slepe vpon the grasse for other quyltes ne pilowes hadde thei noon, and thei were wery for traveile, and were soone a-slepe, alle saf Gawein and Elizer, thei wolde not slepe, but were euer in susspecion of the saisnes that were so many in the londe, and

Looth and the others ride forth towards Roestok.

They ask the young squire who he is. He says his name is Elizer,

and that he came to seek Sir Gawein, and is glad to have found him.

They ride till night, but find no lodging.

*[Fol. 192*b*.

After midnight they find a hermitage.

The hermit brings them bread and water, and they sleep on the grass.

Gawein and Elizer will not sleep.

Gawein hears the cries of a lady and a knight.

He and Elizer ride fast,

and arrive at the place from whence the cries come.

The knight is beaten by five pantoners.

The woman cries for succour.

soone after mydnyght thei herde a grete complaint of a lady and of a knyght that passed by, and Gawein ther-of hadde grete pite and comaunded to sadill the Gringalet and bridill hym in all haste, and Elizer lept vp a-noon and brought it hym redy dight; and Gawein toke his armes and lept vp delyuerly, and rode faste after hem that ledde the lady, and Elizer lept vpon his horse also that in no maner wolde hym leve as longe as he hadde where-on to ride; and thei[1] rode so longe till thei com in to a thikke queche in a depe valey, and than Gawein hoved stille, and herkened and herde dolerouse cries, that seide, "Ha, lorde god, what shall I do, where haue I deserued to suffre this turment and an*n*oye," and praied oure lorde that he wolde sende hym hastely the deth ffor lever he hadde for to be deed than langour in soche maner, and [t]his was a knyght all naked in his breche that v pantoners dide bete with scorges that the blode ran down by his sides; and on that other side vndirstode sir Gawein a full dolerouse cry of a woman, and well it semed that she hadde grete nede of helpe, and she seide so lowde that Gawein myght it well heren. "Seint marie, blissed lady, socoure this wery caytif. Trewly," quod she, "sle me ye may well, for I shall neuer to yow concent."

Gawein does not know which to assist first.

He rides to the lady, and finds her held by seven pantoners.

One of them smites her.

Whan Gawein vndirstode the voyce, he wiste well she hadde grete nede of helpe, and be-thought hym whiche wey he sholde turne first, for he hadde grete pite of that gentilman that he herde so waymenten, and on that other side he hadde so grete pite of the woman that sholde be diffouled, but she haue the soner helpe, and thought in his herte that better it were to suffre the knyght to endure his peyne than the woman to be diffouled while he were in helpinge of the knyght; and than he smote the horse with spores down the valey where the voice cried euer more and more, "seint Marye, goode lady, helpe me and socour;" and as Gawein beheld he saugh vij pantoners that hilde this lady vnder a tre a-gein the grounde, and oon of hem smote hir grete buffett*es* with his hande I-armed on the visage; and she turned and cried, "Certes, sle me ye may well, but neuer other thinge shall I not do;" and for that she seide so, he trailed hir by the tresses that were so feire, that he griped in his handes, and a-noon as Gawein it saugh, he cried to hym that hir hilde, "Sir knyght, lete be that damesell;" and he be-hilde be the mone light, and cried to hem *that were with hym to go a-gein hym, and so thei dide all vj, and asked hym, "Sir knyght, haue we eny drede of yow;" and Gawein seide he assured hem of nothinge, "ffor I will helpe that damesell the whiche that pantoner trailed so vileyusly, and therfore diffende yow fro me;" and than he spored the Gringalet thourgh hem vj that he mette, and com to hym that yet hilde the woman be the tresses, and smote hym with his spere a-gein the breste that the shafte shewed thourgh the bakke be-hynde, and he fill deed vp-right, and the other vj com a-gein hym with sp[e]res, and smote hym on the shelde and sholdres, and on the sides, and he bowed on his horse nekke, and the tymbir of the speres fly in peces, and than Gawein dressed hym in his sadell and ficched hym in his stiropes that the Iren folded, and drough his swerde and smote so the firste that he mette, that deed he fill to the erthe, and than he smote a-nother that the sholdre departed from the body; and the thirde that the heed fly in to the feilde, and than he a-raught so the fourthe that he slitte hym to the teth; and whan the other saugh theire fellowes deed, and how at eche stroke he hadde slayn oon, thei turned to flight and durste not a-bide; and Gawein com to the maiden and sette hir vpon his horse hym be-forn, and the two felowes that fledden be comen to their felowes that were discended vnder an olyvere hem for to resten, and were leide on the grasse for to slepe; and as soone as thei com nygh, thei cried with high voise, "Gentill knyghtes, what do ye here; ffor here is a knyght that hath slayn Sortibran and foure of oure felowes, and resceved the lady; now faste rideth after hym;" and whan thei vnderstode this thei a-rise hastely angry and wroth, and lepe to theire horse, and ride after Gawein as faste as thei may that

---

[1] The words "and thei" are repeated in the MS.

Gawein cries out to him to let her alone.

*[Fol. 193*a*.]

The six come against him.

He kills the one who struck the woman.

The six smite him.

He kills four, and the other two turn to flight.

Gawein sets the maiden on his horse before him.

The two men come to their fellows and tell what Gawein has done.

They ride after him.

goth to lede the damesell to savete; and now a-while cesse of hem, and speke of the squyer that is cleped Elizer.

Anoon as Gawein was turned to helpe the damesell, Elizer that folowed after, rode thider; ther he herde the voice of the knyght, and whan he cam there he saugh vj pantoners holde hym, and hadde so beten hym that he myght not stonde vp-right, but was falle to grounde, and hadde no power to speke no worde; and whan Elizer saugh hym in this maner hit hevyed hym sore, and than he ascried hem, and cleped hem, "Fitz a-putein lechours why demene ye so that gentilman so foule what hath he trespased that ye be a-boute to sle hym in that manere." Whan thei herde hym so speke thei loked on hym, and seiden, "What is it to the, for thy wordes ne shull we nothinge lette;" and than Elizer wax right angry, and seide he sholde no more harme haue w*ith*-outen hym, and he hilde a grete spere and com toward hem that hilde the knyght, and alle thei lefte hym, and he smote so the firste that he mette of the vj that he drof down deed on the playn, and he drough oute his spere and ther-with he slough a-nother, and drough it a-gein to hym, and priked his *horse a-gein a-nother; and whan thei saugh hym come, thei made hym wey and disparbledde here and there, and he smote oon that he ouertoke so rudely that the spere ran thourgh bothe sides; and whan he loked after the tother he ne wiste where thei were be-come, ffor thei were fledde in to thikke of the foreste, and it was but litill past mydnyght that oon myght not se fer; and whan he saugh he hadde hem loste, he com to the knyght and badde hym lepe vp be-hynde hym, and whan he vndirstode this, he hadde for-yete all his peyne, and lepte vp be-hynde hym with grete peyne, and than he rode the streight wey thider as he wende to fynde Gawein. But he hadde but litill gon that he fonde hym fightinge with xx knyghtes that sore hem peyned hym for to greve with all theire power, and he hadde sette the damesell in a thikke busshe a-gein the wode side; and whan Elizer hym saugh he comaunded the knyght to a-light down, and he dide so a-noon; and Elizer hente his spere that yet was

Elizer rides to where he heard the voice of the knight.

He cries out to the pantoners,

and kills two of them.

*[Fol. 193*b*.]

He overtakes one, and kills him.

The others fly.

He bids the knight leap up behind him,

and rides to Gawein, who he finds fighting with 20 knights.

Elizer kills two.

hooll and spored his horse, and smote so the firste that he mette that he a-boode no lenger in the sadell, but fill deed to the erthe, and after he smote a-nother that the spere heed a-pered thourgh his bakke be-hynde, and Gawein hadde so don with calibourne his good swerde that he hath slain of hem vij, and vj that he hadde slain be-fore at the rescew of the lady; and Elizer hath broke his spere, and drough oute his swerde and smote so a knyght that he slitte hym to the teth; and whan Gawein saugh Elizer that so dide hym helpe, he smote the horse with the spores, and blessed the hour that he com in to the contrey, and blessed the body that he was of co*n*ceyved, ffor he saugh well he myght not faile to be a noble knyght; with that he com that wey as he saugh hym holde the medle, and smote grete strokes, and slough and slitte all that he ouertoke a full stroke, and so thei two haue don that thei haue hem alle slain, saf thre that fledde in to the foreste for socour, and the nyg̃ht was woxen so derke with clowdes that thei wiste not whiche wey that they were fledde.

He breaks his spear and draws his sword. He kills another knight. Gawein blesses the hour he came into the country.

The two kill all but three, who fly.

Than toke Elizer two horse, as he that was wight and hardy at euery nede, and brought hem to the knyght, and to the damesell, and made hem to lepe vp ther-on; but first he made the knyght to be clothed in oon of the deed bodyes robes, for his owen were loste; than thei putte vp theire swerdes, and ride forth to-geder toward the hermytage, an*d* than Gawein drough hym to the damesell, and asked hir of whens she was, and she seide she was suster to the lady of Roestok, and the knyght was hir cosin germain. Than seide sir Gawein, "How were ye thus I-taken?" "Sir," seide the damesell, "my cosin and I repeired thourgh the forest and com toward Roestok, and hadden sente oure companye be-fore, and we turned in to a lane oute of oure wey, for we toke so grete hede of oure talkinge of many thinges that we turned oute of oure wey, *and com in to a grete wode where these traitours weren a-light for to ete; and thei lepe a-noon ageins vs, and toke vs, for we myght not a-gein hem endure, ffor my cosin was all vn-armed, and neuer-the-lese he smote oon so on

Elizer brings two horses to the knight and the damsel.

They ride to the hermitage. Gawein asks the lady who she is. She says she is sister to the lady of Roestok, and that the knight is her cousin.

*[Fol. 194*a*.] They were taken prisoners in a wood.

The knight

was unarmed.

the heed that he hym slough, and therfore thei dide hym dispoile so vilously, and dide hym so bete that nygh thei hadde hym slain; and whan thei wolde haue for-leyn me by force he me diffended, and neuer me lefte for no feer of deth, but yaf hem grete strokes and merveilouse as he myght hem atteyne with his handes, for he hadde noon other armure; and than v of tho pantoners hym toke and ledde hym forth betinge hym dolerousely, and I praye yow and requere that ye will telle me what ye be, and for what cause ye be come?" and sir Gawein seide he was a knyght of the reame of logres, "and we go on soche a nede that we may not telle;" and as thei rode thus talkynge thei be come to the hermytage, where thei fonde yet her felowes slepinge, and thei a-light and dide of theire brideles of the horse, and yaf hem grene grasse to ete and lay down by hem and slepte till it was day, that the kynge looth a-roos and cleped Gueheret and Gaheries that were by hym, and hadde well slepte well all the nyght, and saugh Gawein a-slepe and Elizer, and the maiden and the knyght that were leide be the horse side, and Elizer hilde the Gringalet be the halter, for he was somwhat raginge amonge the other horses; and whan the brethern saugh the mayden lyinge by hem, thei merveiled fro whens she was come; and the kynge cleped and seide, "Now arise, Gawein, goode sone, ye haue slept I-nough se how it is feire day;" and the knyght a-woke that was sore hurte, for he slepte nothinge wele, ne the maiden neither, and thei satte vp wakinge; and the kynge asked hem fro whens thei were come; and the knyght ansuerde and seide, "Thei wiste not fro whens these two worthi men hadde hem brought thider, and praied god sholde hem diffende from perile, of the whiche oon of hem is a knyght that hath rescewed this maiden, and the squyer hath rescewed me, god make hym a good man, and sende hym ioye and honour." "Whiche ben thei," seide the kynge, and he hym shewed sir Gawein and Elizer; and whan Agravain vndirstode this, hym for-thought that he hadde not be there, and seide that he myght holde hym a cowarde, that he hilde hym no companye to go with hem; and Gaheries

The lady asks who Sir Gawein is.

They come to the hermitage, and sleep till it is day.

Looth and Gueheret and Gaheries get up. They are surprised to see the lady and the knight.

The knight tells Looth how they have been rescued.

Agravain complains that Gawein did not take him with him.

ansuerde as he that was full noble and worthi, and he loved wele to Iape in honest and myrthe, and seide he durste not yow a-wake, for ye thenke so moche on youre love that ye slepe but litill; and the kynge asked hir how she was taken, and she tolde euery worde how it was hem be-fallen, so that no-thinge was for-yeten; and than thei lepe to theire horse and rode forth theire wey toward Roestok, and rode so fro morowe to euen that no distrouble thei ne hadde till thei com to Roestok, and thei be-hilde the town that was right feire, and well sette in feire contrey and holsom air, ffor the town was envyroned a-boute with the wode and the river, and the *walles shone a-gein the sonne and the bourgh, and the castell stode right feire; and the kynge and his foure sones preised it moche whan thei it syen; and whan thei com to the yate thei fonde it clos and faste shette, and the knyght that was rescewed called the porter right lowde and the damesell hir-self; and the lady hir-self was a-bove on the walles that knewe hem wele a-noon as she hem saugh, and comaunded the yate to be opened delyuerly, and a-noon the mayden counseiled with hir suster, but thei wiste not where-of, and a-noon as thei hadde spoke to-geder she com to the knyghtes and made hem grete chere, and made hem a-light be-fore the paleys, and the castelein hym-self com hem a-geins that was the lorde, and made hem to be vn-armed and waish theire mouthes and theire visages with warme water, and after thei were sette and spake of many thinges while the soper was in makinge; and whan it was all redy and the clothes leyde, thei waish and satte to soper, and were well served, and richely of all maner thinge; and after soper the lorde asked his suster fro whens she com, and she hym tolde all hir aventure that was hir be-fallen, and whan the lorde herde this he be-gan to make soche ioye and gladnesse that ther myght be seyn noon gretter, and the kynge looth asked of whom this castell was holden, and the lorde seide that it was of the fee of kynge Arthur; and than the Casteleyn hym asked what he was, and he seide his name was the kynge looth of Orcanye, and these foure knyghtes be

They ride to Roestok.

*[Fol. 194*b*.]

The castle is very fair.

The knight calls the porter.

The lady on the walls commands the gate to be opened.

TheCastelein makes them wash.

They sit to supper.

The lord is very joyful,

and asks who King Looth and his sons are, my sones. Than the lorde lepte vpon his feet, and made grete ioye, and asked what thei wente sechinge; and he seide that he yede to seche trewys of the princes and the barouns from the kynge Arthur that the saisnes myght be driven oute of the londe; and than the Castelein thanked oure lorde. "And what wey shull ye go first?" quod he, "from hens;" and he seide that he wolde be at Arestuell in scotlonde; and than he seide that he wolde he sholde sende a massenger to the kynge de Cent Chiualers, and telle hym in my name that he be on oure lady day in Septembre at Arestuell in Scotlonde, and that he faile not for nothinge, for I shall be ther, and alle the other princes; and the Castelein seide he wolde sende thider on the morowe with-oute more taryinge, ffor he trowed well he were at the Cite of Molehaut.

and where they are going.

The Castelein will send to the King de Cent Chivalers, for him to come to Arestuell.

That nyght the kynge looth and the Castelein spake of many thinges till it was tyme to go to bedde, and sir Gawein wolde not be knowen of no man, for he thought for to serche the auentures in the contrey privele that no man sholde hym knowe in no place ther he com; and whan it was tyme thei yede to slepe all the nyght well at ese till it was day, that thei toke leve of the Castelein of Roestok, and of the lady and the maiden that was rescued, and of the knyght that hem conveyed a-while on the wey, and than returned a-gein; and whan the Castelein saugh thei were gon, he toke a massenger and sente hym to the kynge de Cent chiualers from the kynge looth of Orcanye, and tolde his massage as he was comaunded to sey, and the kynge made grete ioye for love of the kynge looth that he loved with all his herte, *and for the masseger that was a noble knyght he yaf hym a good horse as be-fill for soche a worthi man, and now shull we returne to the kynge looth and his sones.

Looth and the Castelein speak of many things.

In the morning Looth and his sons go on their way.

The Castelein sends a messenger to the King de Cent Chivalers.

*[Fol. 195a.]

Whan the kynge looth was departed from the castell of Roestok, he toke the streyght wey toward Cambenyk be-fore the Castell of leuerop, where he was herberowed a nyght, and on the morowe he rode till he com a two myle from Cambenyk, and than he herde so grete shoute and cry that hym

King Looth comes to Cambenyk where he hears a great cry.

semed all the contrey was sette on fire and flame; and it was no merveile yef ther were grete noyse and cry, and that the contrey were sore affraid, ffor ther were x^{Ml} saisnes that hadde forreyed and gadered prayes, and distroyed all the contrey, and robbed townes, and ledde so grete plente of prisoners that all the contrey was covered, and the Duke Escam was comen oute of the Cite with thre thousande men, and faught with hem longe, but in the ende was he discounfited and driven oute of the felde, and he was so wo therfore that nygh he yede oute of his witte; and the crye and the noyse was so grete that wonder it was to here, ffor eche man complayned of his losse and harme that was right grete and outragiouse.

10,000 Saxons had destroyed the country.

Duke Escam is discomfited, and almost out of his mind.

Whan the kynge looth and his sones approched that peple, thei laced theire helmes and a-light from theire palfreyes, and toke theire horses and theire sheldes and com the streight wey to the place ther the bataile hadde I-be, but now thei were with-drawen towarde the Cite; and the Duke Escam was be-hynde that diffended his peple merveillously, and hadde grete peyne and traueile as he that was in grete doute to lese his Citee; and the kynge looth that was full sory and wroth for that he saugh it so go, and[1] sped hym so that he passed the bregge, and com hym a-geins and his foure sones theire hedes bowed down vnder theire helmes, and sore affiched in theire stiropes, and com a grete walop as thei that thought longe er thei were medled with the saisnes; and whan the Duke hem saugh he a-bode stille, but he knewe hem not, and seide a worde that well a-p*er*tened to a man that was in grete nede. "Ha, lorde god, now helpe and socour thy seruaunt in this grete myschef that we be now ynne, and on that other side all that euer thy seruauntes sholde lyven by, these false vntrewe saisnes lede a-wey, and all oure richesse that was lefte in this contrey;" than he be-hilde the v knyghtes that he saugh come, but he knewe noon of hem, for theyre sheldes were all to-hewen with the strokes that thei hadde resceived, and

Looth and his sons come to the battle.

The duke does not know them, but asks for their help.

---

[1] The word "and" is repeated in the MS.

ne hadde not be that, he hadde knowe the kynge looth anoon; and whan he saugh that thei drough nygh, he knewe well that thei were not of that contrey, and neuertheles he com a-gein hem as he that was well taught, and seide, "Feire lordes, ye be welcome what wey purpose ye to go, ffor me semeth ye be traueillinge knyghtes." "Sir," seide the kynge looth, "we wolde be at Arestuell in Scotlonde." "Certes," seide the Duke, "ye *haue right moche to done, ffor fro hens thider is full felon passage, and yef ye will a-while a-bide in this contrey we shull be gladde and myri, and it is the beste that ye may do, ffor it is but fewe dayes past that the saisnes assembled vpon vs." "Sir," seide the kynge looth, "how moche is it fro hens to Arestuell?" "Sir," seide the Duke, "hit is well thre grete iourneis." "What be ye, sir," seide the kynge looth, that vs preyen for to a-bide?" "Sir, hit shall not from yow be conceiled. I am lorde of Cambenyk and of this contrey as longe as god will vouche-saf. But these vntrewe saisnes come vpon me dayly, and now I was come oute a-gein hem, and thei be crewell and so proude as ye may se all day." As the kynge and the Duke hilde theire Parliament the Duke saugh his peple come fleinge and the saisnes after, that hem pursued harde at the spore; and whan the kynge looth saugh hem come in soche manere, he seide to the Duke, "Sir, seth we be falle in to youre companye, and do pray vs to a-bide, we shull helpe yow this day with all oure power." "Gramercy lordes," seide the Duke; and than seide Gaheries to sir Gawein, "Go we a-geins hem lo where thei come."

Looth says he is going to Arestuell,

*[Fol. 195b.]

and asks how far off it is.

Looth says he will help the duke.

Than the Dukes men toke hem other helmes for theires were all to-brosed, and[1] thei hadde them sette on theire hedes, and well knyt and laced, thei turned toward hem that fledde, and whan thei saugh the Duke come that was theire lorde, thei a-bode ffor thei hadde in hym grete truste, for he was a noble knyght and a sure; and whan the saisnes saugh thei dide stinte, thei ronne vpon hem, for thei wende hem alle

The duke's men give them new helms.

---

[1] The word "and" is repeated in the MS.

for to a-taken at her wille; and sir Gawein hym derenged first of alle, and smote a saisne thourgh the body that he ouerthrewe down deed; and whan Gaheries saugh his broder medled with the saisnes than he spored his horse and smote so the first that he mette thourgh shelde and haubrek that on that other side shewed the shafte, and ther-with brake the spere that no lenger myght endure, and he drough oute his swerde, and folowed after sir Gawein in the trace as he wente, and made soche martire that alle that hym be-hilde hadde wonder; ffor he ne smote noon but he felled hym or his horse, and Gaheries dide so well that Gawein hy*m* preised and comended, and neuer in no place hadde he seyn hym do so well, and ther-of he merveiled sore, and was gladde that he myght so moche suffre in armes.

Sir Gawein kills a Saxon.

Gaheries smites another, and follows his brother.

Gawein praises Gaheries.

On that other side was the kynge looth, and Gueheret in the medle, and eche of hem hadde smyte down a saisne that deed he moste nede be; and whan the speres were broken thei drough swerdes and be-gonne a bataile, so that of v knyghtes was neuer sein more fierce bateile; and than the Duke sued after, and dide right well hem to rehete, and to contene in that grete nede, and he saugh hem do so moche er he departed fro hem that he wondred that euer mortall man myght so moche suffre of armes. But whan mydday was passed, than dide Gawein alle the merveiles of the worlde, and satte vpon *the Gringalet that was so good and feire; and he that satte a-bove was wonder wight and deliuer, and hilde Calibourne his swerde, wh[ich]e slitte helmes, and sheldes, and knyghtes, and horse, and all that he ouertoke, and com thourgh the renges as it were a tempest and slough euer*e* as he com, and he was so chaufed whan it was a-boute the hour*e* of noone that nothinge myght agein hym endure, and euery stroke of his swerde semed as it hadde be a dynte of thonder, so com it with grete ravyn and grete force; and whan the saisnes it perceived thei seide, "Lo ther a devell that is come oute of helle;" and so yede the tidinges that boydas, and Maundalis, and Oriaunces, and Dorilas, these foure hit herden that were maistris of the hoste and conditoures.

Looth and Gueheret each kill a Saxon.

The duke follows them.

The marvels that Gawein does.

*[Fol. 195*a*.]

The Saxons say he is a devil from hell.

Boydas, Maundalis, Oriaunces, and Dorilas come to find Gawein.

The duke Escam has only 2,500 men

against 10,000 Saxons.

Gaheries follows Gawein all the day, so that he loves him more than all his other brethren.

Whan these foure kynges herde the merveile that these v knyghtes dide, thei asked whiche wey thei were, and thei that hadde hem sein taught hem to the brigge ende vpon the river; with that com the foure kynges thide[r] as Gawein dide m*er*veiles the grettest of the worlde, that euer were don by oon knyght a-lone; and the Duke escam was com in to her companye with as moche peple as he myght haue of his foure Ml men that he hadde at the begynnynge, he ne myght not assemble, but two thousande and v^{C}, so were thei alle discounfited; but as soone as the kynge looth and his sones weren assembled to them, thei returned agein, and thei that hem chaced were mo than x^{Ml}, and ydonas a proude saisne that moche harme hadde hem do of her peple, and neuertheles the cristin hem putte oute of the place, and made hem to rusen vpon the foure kynges that com hem to socour; and as soone as thei were medled with the cristen ther was grete stour and right merveilouse; but the myschef was grete, ffor the cristin were not foure ^{Ml}, and the sarazins were xviij^{Ml}, and ther-fore thei moste remeve whether thei wolde or noon, and were alle discounfited ne hadde be the vj knyghtes, ffor thei wolde voide no grounde, but gate londe vpon hem. Ther dide Gawein soche merveiles that alle thei hadde wonder that eny man myght soche maistries endure, and Gaheries hym sued all the day, so that Gawein hym-self hadde merveile that he myght so moche suffre and endure, and therfore he loved hym euer all his lif more than alle his other brethern that were so goode knyghtes that ther were but fewe better in theire tyme.

The battle between 2,500 Christians and 8,000 Saxons is very great.

Dodalis, Moydas,

*[Fol. 196*b*.]

Grete was the bateile and the stour mortall in the plains of Cambenyk, at the brigge foote of Saverne of the two thousande and v^{C} cristin a-gein viij^{Ml} saisnes, but the cristin ne myght but litill space endure, ne hadde be the well doinge of the v knyght*es* of the reame of logres, and so dide well the Duke Escam of Cambenyk, ffor he was a noble knyght and a sure of his body, while thei entended to breke the presse, com Dodalis, and Moydas, and Oriaunces, and Brandalis vpon swifte stedis gripinge grete speres, and mette *the Duke Escam a-monge the renges that full wele hadde don all the day, that he ought well to be wery for traueile, and happed that Boydas and Braundalis mette hym bothe attonys, and smote hym so on the shelde that he reuersed on his horse croupe, and Oriances and Dodalus smote his horse with theire speres thourgh the flankes that he fill deed be-twene his legges and bare down to grounde bothe that oon and the tother, and whan the Duke was fallen thei a-bode vpon hym alle foure with swerdes drawen, and soone ther he myght haue ben loste, but as his men com hym for to socoure, and the saisnes com on that other side hym for to encombre, and ther was grete slaughter of peple on bothe parties; and ther was the Duke foule turmented with horse feet, ffor the saisnes were so many that the Dukes men hadde no power hym to remounte. Ne his enemyes no power hym to take, but the saisnes were so many that the cristin myght hem not sustene, but most leve place wheder thei wolde or noon; ffor thei haue take the Duke and ledde hym a-wey, magre hem alle betinge hym foule. Than the kynge loot and his sones com drivinge with swerdes drawen and fonde grete plente of peple hym for to lede. Ther were buffetes I-nowe yoven and resceyved, but ne hadde be the weldoinge of Gawein thei hadde not endured litill ne moche; ffor he was euer in the former fronte, and hilde Calibourne in his right honde and smote on the right side and on the lifte, and slough so many men and horse, that thei that saugh the merveiles turned to flight, and thourgh his prowesse he brake presse magre hem alle, and lefte not till he cam to the Duke Escam that the saisnes ledde. Ther was than fell stour and mortall, ffor ther was Agravain smyten down and Gueheret, and the kynge peyned hym sore hem to remounte, and the presse was so grete and the noyse that it was merveile; and Gawein and Gaheries ne toke ther-of noon heede, but entended to rescue the Duke so that thei haue hym geten be fyn force, and sette hym on horse, and theym that hadde hym taken thei haue driven oute of the place magre hem alle.

Oriaunces, and Brandalis meet Escam.

Oriances and Dodalus kill his horse,

and when he is fallen all four come upon him.

Loot and his sons come.

Gawein is ever in the front.

Agravain and Gueheret are smitten down.

Gawein and Gaheries rescue the Duke and set him on a horse.

And on that other side whan the kynge saugh his two sones vnder the horse feet in a-uenture to lese theire lives, and he hadde no power hem for to socour ne for to remounte; than he cried with lowde voice, "Ffeire sone, what do ye, or where be ye, for here is Agravain at the erthe that hath grete nede, and the damage was mortall that vnethe may be restored yef ye tarye lenger;" and whan Gawein herde the voice he turned his horse a-noon and brake the presse that wey with Calibourne his goode swerde a-gein, whiche noon armure myght endure that he raught a full stroke, and er he hadde paste litill wey he mette Gueheret and Agravain in meddill of the presse on foote that full vigerously hem deffended, and the kynge looth was euer be hem that sore hym peyned hem to helpe and socoure; and whan Gawein saugh the grete nede he caste to erthe the remenaunt that was lefte of his shelde, and caught Calibourne with bothe handes and spronge in to the presse so fiercely *that noon durst hym a-bide for the merveiles that thei saugh hym do, and he smote so Mydonas that he mette with first, that he slitte hym down to the sholdres, and with a-nother stroke he smote a-wey the lifte arme of Brandalis with all the shelde; and whan the sarazin felte hym-self so diffouled, he fledde cryinge and brayinge as a bole, and Gaheries hadde throwe his shilde to grounde and hilde his swerde in bothe handes and smote so Oriaunce vpon the helme that he kutte a quarter, and the swerde glent be-twene the body and the shelde, and kutte the gige that it hanged on that it fley in to the felde, and the stroke descended on the lift thigh so depe that he kutte it thourgh, and he fill down to grounde, and Gaheries toke the horse and ledde to Gueheret his brother, and made hym skippe in to the sadell, and after he smote a-nother saisne that was well horsed that he made the heed fle in to the felde, and caught the horse and ledde to Agravain his brother, and he lepte vp a-noon as he that hadde grete nede; and than thei smote in to the bateile where the kynge was, and sir Gawein that foughten full sharply, and Agravain that was full wroth with Dodalus, yaf hym soche a buffet that the heed fill in to the felde a-noon right.

Looth calls to Gawein to save Agravain.

Gawein springs into the press with Calibourne,

*[Fol. 197*a*.]

and kills Mydonas,

and smites off Brandalis's arm.

Gaheries smites Oriaunce,

and takes his horse to Gueheret.

He kills another Saxon, and takes his horse to Agravain.

Agravain kills Dodalus.

And whan the saisnes saugh that alle the high lordes were deed, a-noon thei fledden as thei that hadde theire lordes

When the Saxons find their lords

loste, ne neuer thei stinte till thei com to the baner of ydonas, and these hem chaced thider with-oute eny a-bidinge, be-fore alle other was sir Gawein and with hym CC of the Dukes men that sore hem peyned hym for to serve, and Elizer euer by and be-fore hym and hilde in hande a cornered axe where-with he delyuered his lorde whan he saugh nede. In that chace was the Duke throwe down of his horse, for a sarazin smote hym so be-hinde that he fill to grounde and was hurt right sore in the fallinge, that stroke saugh full wele the kynge looth that chaced on bothe sides, he and his sone Gueheret, and it greved hym sore for the Duke, and he spored his horse that wey and griped a grete spere that he hadde take from a saisne, and smote the saisne that hadde smyte down the Duke thourgh the sides, and thourgh liver and longes, and than toke the horse and presented to the Duke, and [a]noon he lepte vp and thanked hym hertely of that servise that he hadde hym don, and sir Gawein and Elizer chaced the saisnes and hem sued till thei com to the baner of ydonas. Ther the saisnes with-stode and foughten a-while, and Gawein that hem pursued drof in a-monge hem, and smote so on eyther side that all that he raught wente to grounde; and whan ydonas that aperceived he turned that wey, and Gawein hym smote vpon the helme that he slitte hym down right so that men myght se his longes, and a-noon as the sarazin was so smyten he fill to the grounde and the baner; and whan the Duke saugh the baner reverse he knewe well thei were discounfited, and than he cried his signe with high voyce, and relyed his peple a-boute hym and yaf hem assaute delyuerly.

killed, they fly to the banner of Ydonas.

The duke is thrown down from his horse.

Looth and Gueheret go to succour him.

They kill a Saxon, and take his horse to the duke.

Gawein kills Ydonas.

The duke calls his men to assault the Saxons.

*Whan the saisnes saugh theire baner falle, and the cristin come on hem so harde, thei durste no more a-bide, but turned to flight and lefte the place, and all theire harnoys, and eche of hem fledde from other thurgh the playnes mate and discounfited, and ther a-ros soche a duste and soche a shoute and noyse that wonder it was to here, but of hem that theym chaced was sir Gawein the firste upon the Gringalet, for ther was noon horse that myght renne so faste, and he slough of hem

*[Fol. 197b.] When the Saxons see their banner fall they turn to flight.

Gawein slays

so many that he and his horse are all stained with blood. All return but Gawein and Elizer.

so many in the chace that he and his horse were steyned with blode as he hadde fallen in a blody river; and whan thei hadde chaced hem to nyght, than returned the kynge, and his sones, and alle the other saf Gawein, that thei wiste not where he was be come ne Elizer his squyer, ffor thei had chaced the saisnes that of fin force thei drof hem in to the river of Saverne, and ther thei drof in so many that the water chaunged colour, and whan thei saugh thei were ouer he returned a-gein a softe paas, and the Duke Escam a-bode at the pray, and ledde it home with his men, and sir Gawein past by and spake no worde; and whan the kynge looth saugh him come he made merveilouse ioye, and asked how he hadde don, and he seide right euell whan eny of hem ascaped and returned as recreaunt whan thei durste not passe the foorde ther thei passed; and the kynge seide that was no light thinge to do a man a-lone for to passe.

They drive the Saxons into the river, so that the water changes colour.

Looth is joyful when Gawein returns.

The duke praises Gawein.

This worde that Gawein seide vndirstode the Duke, and seide that he hadde don right wele, ffor he and his companye hadde brought to an ende that he and his peple ne myght not do, and Gawein rode forth and spake no worde, and well semed by his armes that he hadde not be at soiourne that day; and the kynge looth hym asked where he hadde lefte his squyer, and he seide how the saisnes hadde hym all to-hewen, and ther-fore be hym to purchase a-nother, and the Duke seide he wolde yeve hym a-nother myghty and stronge, and he seide "gramercye." Than the Duke asked of the kynge looth, and praide hym full hertely to tell hym his name, for that he herde hym clepe Gawein his sone; and he ansuerde that his name was neuer hidde for no man, ne fro hym sholde it not be kept pryve, and than he seide, "Ye ought me well to knowe, for many an euell iourney, and many myry dayes haue we hadde to-geder;" and he seide how he was kynge looth of Orcanye, and how these foure were his sones; and whan the Duke this vndirstode, he seide that he was welcome, and "so verily helpe me god," quod he, "as I knewe yow not, and blissed be that goode lorde that sente yow hider, ffor this day hadde we all be distroyed ne hadde ye ben, and of this ye seide full trewe that

Looth asks him where he has left his shield. The duke says he will give him another.

Looth tells the duke who he is.

moche wele and moch*e* woo haue we suffred to-geder. Sir, are these foure knyghtes verily youre sones?" and he seide, "Ye trewly." "So helpe me god," seide the Duke, "thei be full noble and worthi men, and goode knyghtes, and yet shull be better yef thei live to age."

The duke asks if the four knights are really his sons.

*Thus thei rode alle vj to-geder spekinge till thei com to the Citee of Cambenyk, and wente to the maister paleys and a-light at the greeces, and Elizer was besy to serue sir Gawein and stable Gringalet, and helped him to vn-arme, and also the kynge looth, and while thei were in vn-armynge thei saugh comynge the squyer of Elizer, and the yoma*n* that hadde made the present to Mynoras the forester, and salued the kynge fro Mynoras, and from his wif and alle his children, and seide how thei alle hym thanked of his grete bounte. Than Gaheries be-hilde Agravain his brother, and be-gan to laugh, and asked lydonas how the doughtres of Mynoras ferden, and he seide how thei hem salued alle. "Trewly," quod Gaheries, "thei haue reson yef thei knewe the dought of my brother Agravain." At this worde thei lowen alle bothe Gueheret and Agravain hym-self and wax rody, but he spake no worde, for he wiste well that he Iaped, and thus thei laughed and pleyde till the mete was redy, and than were sette and well serued and richely, and hit neded not to aske yef the Duke were besy and gladde hem for to wurship, and that were ther-ynne; and after soper the Duke asked the kynge the names of his sones, and the kynge seide how the eldest was cleped Gawein, and the seconde Agravain, and thridde Gueheret, and the fourth Gaheries. "And this feire yonge gentilman," quod he, "that is so comely and well faringe, and is so worthy and noble, what is he?" And the kynge seide that he aparteined not to hym, "but he is the sone of a kynge that is of high lynage, and by his debonerte is come for to serue sir Gawein my sone, for of hym he will take his armes." "So helpe me God," seide the Duke of high herte, "and gentill cometh hym that corage, and blessed be the body that hym bar for he doth as debonair and gentill, and god sende hym encrece of vertu, for he is full of high

*[Fol. 198*a*.]

All six ride to Cambenyk and go to the palace. Elizer serves Gawein.

Elizer's squire and the yeoman come back from Mynoras.

Gaheries asks Lydonas how the daughters of Mynoras fared.

The duke asks the king the names of his sons,

and who Elizer is.

He says he is full of valour.

valour*e* and worthinesse, and therfore he may not faile to come to high prowesse, yef he lyve eny while;" and than he asked whi he wente so to Arestuell with so fewe in his companye so hastely. "That shall I telle yow," quod the kynge looth, "ye se and knowe how the saisnes be entred in to this londe, and waste and distroie, and it is more than two yere that thei cessed neuer to robbe and to pile oure londes, and therfore me semeth it were grete profite to sette soche counseile how thei myght be chaced oute, and ye se well that all our force ne a-vaileth not a-gein hem. Ne for vs shull thei neuer be putte a-wey, but yef god and other peple helpe ther-to, ffor we haue foughten with hem thre tymes, and we spede neuer but loste; and ye knowe well that all this londe oweth to be holde of the kynge Arthur, and thei that holde a-gein hym bith a-cursed, and therfore it were good ther-of to be a-soyled, and theire londes to be delyuered from the saisnes, and who that this myght bringe to an ende had he not well spedde." "Yesse trewly," seide the Duke. "Now shall I sey yow," quod the kynge, "how it shall be. I haue take a parliament with the kynge Clarion of Northu*m*birlond*e*, *and the kynge de Cent Chiualers at Arestuell, and with the kynge Arthur hym-self at the feste of seint Mary day in Septembre, and ye and alle the worthi princes shull be there, and we shull take trewis in soche manere that eche of vs shall assemble his power as grete as he may a-gein the day that shall be named and sette, ffor to fight with the saisnes whan we be alle assembled, and but yef thei be driven oute in this manere thei shull neuer be hadde oute of this londe;" and the Duke ansuerde that this were the grettest almesse that myght be do, "and wolde oure lorde that this were don, and wite ye wele that I haue thought often that the saisnes hadde neuer entred this londe ne were for the synne that is a-monge vs, and be my will we shall a-corde with the kynge Arthur so that we shull neuer haue a-gein hym werre, but do that he vs requereth with-oute eny delay, ffor seth he is a-noynted and sacred hit is no light thinge hym to depose that the clergie and the peple of the londe haue chosen; and the

He asks why Looth goes to Arestuell.

Looth tells him

how all that are against Arthur are accursed,

and that he is going to meet King Clarion and *[Fol. 198*b*.] the King de Cent Chivalers.

All the worthy princes are to be there.

When all are assembled they will fight the Saxons.

The duke thinks the Saxons would not have entered the land if they had not sinned against Arthur.

It is no light thing to depose him

remes of Beynok, and of Gannes holde with hym, and we se well we may neuer haue the better." "Yef ye haue thought thus," quod the kynge looth, "soone shall the pees be made be-twene yow and hym, and of my partye I sey not nay but that hit is made. Ne ye may not hens-forwarde, neyther ye ne noon other make no werre a-gein Arthur, but ye haue werre a-gein me." "How so," quod the Duke, "be ye with hym a-corded?" and he seide, "Ye, with-oute faile."

whom the clergy and people have chosen.

Looth tells the duke he is at peace with Arthur.

Than he tolde hym all how the pees hadde be made, and all the traueile as it hadde be, and how his childeren hadde hym lefte, and tolde hym all in ordre, and spake so to-geder be-twene the kynge and the Duke, that the Duke hym graunted to be at Arestuell at the day that was named, and seide the pees sholde not be letted for hym, and than yede thei to bedde to reste, for thei were wery for traueile of the grete stour that thei hadde ben ynne; and on the morowe erly the kynge looth a-roos for to here masse, and so dide his sones, and the Duke Escam, and wente to the mynster, and whan the masse was seide, the kynge com to the Duke, and seide, "Sir, it were well don that ye toke foure messagiers, and sende to the kynge ydiers of Cornewaile, and a-nother to kynge Vrien, and the thridde to kynge Aguysans, and the fourthe to kynge Ventres of Garlot, and sendeth to theym in oure be-halue that thei be at Arestuell at oure lady day in Septembre, and than sende a-nother to kynge Tradilyuaunt of North Wales, and to the kynge Belynaunt his brother, and to the kynge Carados, and to the kynge Brangore, that thei be at this parliament at Arestuell on seint Mary day in Septembre;" and he seide this sholde gladly be do, and a-noon thei sette forth the messagiers and spedde hem so that thei be come to the princes, and dide right well theire message as thei were comaunded; and the princes com as soone as thei hadde herde the message, but of hem alle now resteth a-while, and speke of the kynge looth and his sones.

The duke agrees to be at Arestuell.

They go to bed.

On the morrow they hear mass.

Looth asks the duke to to send four messengers to Ydiers, Urien, Aguysans, and Ventres,

and others to Tradilyvaunt, Belynaunt, Carados, and Brangore.

They send the messengers.

As soone as the messagiers were departed from Cambenyk, the kynge looth and his sones rode forth theire wey

Looth and his sons ride

forth to Arestuell.

towarde Arestuell, and the Duke hem conveied on the wey, and yaf eche of hem a shelde peynted with soche armes as thei were wonte to bere and helmes fresch *and newe, and than the Duke toke his leve and returned hom a-gein, and made hym redy for to come after the kynge looth, and thei hilde her streight-wey toward north wales to a Citee that longed to the kynge Tradilyuaunte, and fonde the kynge in the Citee that gladde was of theire comynge, ffor he loved well the kynge looth and asked hym in to what contrey he was goinge; and the kynge looth tolde hym all as it was; and Tradilyuans seide how a messager hadde tolde hym the same that the Duke Escam hadde hym sent, "and ther shall I be yef god will that I haue so longe lif and hele." And than was the kynge looth and his sones gladde and iocunde; that nyght was the kynge looth and his children richely served, and as soone as it was day, thei toke theire wey and com to Arestuell in Scotlonde where thei soiourned foure dayes er eny prince were come, and ledde meri lif, and a-bode after the princes till that the kynge Clarion com alther firste the lorde of Northumbirlonde that was oon of the gentillist and deboneir prince of the worlde, and ther-to he was a good knyght, and the kynge looth made of hym grete ioye, and so dide he of hym and of his foure sones, for he hadde hem not seyn be-fore.

*[Fol. 199a.] The duke makes ready to follow.

Looth finds Tradilyvaunte in his city, who tells him he will be at Arestuell.

Looth and his sons come to Arestuell, and sojourn there four days before any prince comes. Clarion arrives.

On the morowe com the kynge de Cent Chiualers, of whom theire myrthe be-gan gretly to encrece, and than cam the Duke Escam that was a good knyght and a sure, and after com the kynge Tradilyuans of No[r]th walis, and the kynge Belynans his brother, and after com the kynge Brangore and the kynge Carados of Strangore, and than the kynge Vrien and the kynge Aguysans of Scotlonde, and the kynge ydiers of Cornewaile, and the kynge Ventres of Garlot, and than com the lorde of the streite marche; and whan thei were alle assembled the kynge looth seide that on the morowe he wolde hem telle wherefore he hadde made hem to assemble, and this was on seint marie even in Septembre, and eche of hem made to other grete ioye and myrthe, and rested

On the morrow comes the king de Cent Chivalers; after him come Escam, Tradilyvans, Belynans, Brangore, Carados, Urien, Aguysans, Ydiers, and Ventres.

ther all that nyght; and on the morowe thei assembled to-geder all the prevy counseile, and sir Gawein and his thre bretheren, and whan thei weren all sette vpon a cloth of silke that was leide vpon the grene grasse, than a-roos Gawein by the comaundeme*n*t of his fader the kynge looth, and seide, “Ffeire lordes, we be come hider for to speke with yow in the name of the kynge Arthur with whom we be, and my lorde yow sendeth and prayeth as to hem that he wolde gladly haue to his frendes yef it myght be, that ye sholde yeve hym trewys saf to come and saf to go by feith and suerte be-twene this and yole; and ye also to go and come thourgh his power suerly, and he in yours at youre plesier; ffor yef it plese yow that we go alle to-geder and fight with the saisnes that be come in to this contrey till that we haue hem oute chaced, and yef god will ordeyne that thei be discounfited than acorde yow to-geder yef ye may be, and the pardon is yoven and graunted to alle tho that will go fight with the saisnes, that thei shull be clene quyte of alle ther synnes as thei were the day of theire birthe.”

They assemble in council,

and Gawein addresses them.

He says that Arthur prays them to make a truce.

They can then fight the Saxons.

*Whan the princes herde the request of sir Gawein of that he dide hem amoneste, thei asked the kynge looth his advise, and he seide it was the grettest bounte that euer was seide or don. “And I do yow to wite I sey it nothinge for that I am his sworn man, but I sey as longe as ye haue ben a-geins hym ye haue mys-happed, ffor as I trowe this peple hadde neuer entred in to this londe yef we hadde holden to-geder, and knowe it verily that it cometh thourgh oure synnes.” “What!” seide the kynge Vrien, “haue ye don hym homage, ye haue nothinge do as a trewe knyght, and I will telle yow whi, ffor yef it fill so that we yede vpon hym, hit be-hoveth vs to go a-gein yow.” “That were right,” seide the kynge looth, “with-oute faile, and wite ye well who so hath werre a-gein hym hath werre a-gein me.” “Ffor sothe,” seide the kynge Vrien, “that is vn-trewly don, ffor ye be oon of vs, and ye sholde not vs so leven.” “Sir,” seide the kynge looth, “I dide it magre myn, and a-gein my will, ffor I do yow to wite that day I wende hym moste to greve or a-noyen. I

*[Fol. 199*b*.]

The princes ask Looth for his advice.

He says that they have mishapped as long as they have been against Arthur.

Urien asks if he has done homage to Arthur.

Looth answers, Yes.

Urien says he has acted untruly.

Looth says Gawein made him act as he did.

The princes agree to keep a truce, and fix a day when each will come with all his power to Salisbery.

They say they will break the truce when the Saxons are driven out. Gawein threatens them.

dide hym homage, and all this made me Gawein for to do, that ye here se." Than he tolde hem alle worde for worde how the cas was be-fallen; and whan the other princes herde this, thei seide he myght noon other do seith it was so he was not moche to blame, and some of hem that were there wolde right gladly that thei hadde happed in the same maner*e*. Thei[1] spake of oo thinge and of other, that thei accorded to holde the trewis, and ther-to thei it assured in sir Gaweins honde hit trewly to holde, and sette hem a day that eche of hem sholde be with all his power on the playn of Salisbery with all his peple as eche of hem myght bringe. But thei seide well that whan the saisnes were driven oute of the londe that thei dide the kynge to wite that he diffende hym from theym; and sir Gawein hem tolde that whan it were come ther-to that yef thei wolde hym ought mysdon thei sholde fynde that thei sholde haue bothe theire armes wery and ouer-charged.

Some of the princes laugh, and others frown at Gawein's words.

They take leave of each other.

The land is absolved by the legate. The princes assemble their people, and come to the plain of Salisbery.

*[Fol. 200*a*.]

Whan the princes vndirstode the wordes of sir Gawein ther were some that lough and some frowned with the heede, and the kynge de Cent Chiualiers that liste not hym to a-vaunte ne noon other to manace, seide he wolde be ther at halowmesse yef god hym sende lif in the playn of Salisbery, and so seide eche of hem for his partye; and the kynge looth seide that he wolde not thens remeve till he hadde assembled all his power, and than thei toke leve eche of other, and departen, and eche of hem wente in to his contrei, and the londe was assoiled by the legat; and thei moustred and assembled all the peple that thei myght gete, and sente for to seche frendes and kynnesmen thourgh-oute all cristindome and dide proclame all the pardon that was graunted, and he that first myght assemble his peple wente in to the playn of Salisbiry, and loigged in tentes and pavilou*n*s, and ther a-bide eche of hem other, and as the story seith thider com alle that myght eny wepen weilde, and on that othir side of the *londe of kynge Clamedin, and of the londe of kynge Guygueron, a riche baron of the londe of Sorloys, and thider com the kynge Brangores, and ther was moche peple of the kynge looth of Orcanye, and of the londe of kynge helain, and of the londe of kynge pellynor, and of the londe of kynge Pelles of lystenoys, and of the londe of the Duke Roches. But here resteth the tale of hem and returneth to the kynge Arthur and his wif Gonnore.

---

[1] The word "thei" is repeated in the MS.

The tale returns to King Arthur.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

ADVENTURES OF SEGRAMOR, GALASHIN, AND DODINELL; MERLIN'S VISITS TO BLASE AND TO THE PRINCES; ARTHUR'S PREPARATIONS FOR THE WAR.

Now seith the storie that myri lif ledde the kynge Arthur and his wif after that the kynge looth and his sones were departed, and the kynge looth sente to the kynge Arthur that the trewis were graunted, and therfore was arthur gladde and iocunde, and the quenes knyghtes, and so were the knyghtes of the rounde table, and so were also the two kynges that were brethern; and on the morowe that the tidinges were come to court Segramor a-ros erly, and Galasshin and Dodinell le sauage, and armed hem right wele of alle parties, and yede to disporte in the foreste that was grete and depe, for on the nyght be-fore hadde thei caste for to a-rise erly hem to pley and disporte; and whan thei were come thider hit hem liked well, for thei herde the songe of the fowles and briddes that myrily were entuned, and thei seiden that thei wolde go serche the forest and the contrey for to wite yef thei myght finde eny a-uenture where-by thei myght be preised and comended; and also on that other side were there dissevered thre knyghtes of the rounde table from the Courte, and hadde taken straunge armes for thei wolde not be knowen, and thei desired sore for to mete with the quenes knyghtes for to prove hem-self a-geins hem; and that oon of the knyghtes was Agrauandain the brother of Belynans, the beste knyght destramors that after werred the kynge Arthur.

Arthur and his wife lead a merry life.

They are glad when they hear the truce is made.

Segramor, Galasshin, and Dodinell go into the forest

to seek for an adventure.

Three knights of the round table—

Agravandain,

Mynoras, and Monevall—

The seconde was Mynoras, and the thirde was Monevall that was a noble knyght and richely armed of alle pointes, and whan thei were in the playn felde thei ronne with theire horses oon a-gein a-nother with-oute smytinge of eny stroke, and than seide Mynoras to his felowes, lete vs go for to pley vs and disporte in this foreste to assay yef we fynde eny aventure, and his felowes therto graunted a-noon with goode chere, and ride forth towarde the Castell de lespine, for that it was the more auenturouse than eny other wey, and thus these thre felowes ride in companye till thei founde thre weyes that made hem departe, so that eche rode sooll by hym-self as auenture dide falle. But now we moste cesse of hem awhile, and returne to speke of Merlin.

also go into the forest.

They ride towards the Castle de lespine, till they come to three roads, where they separate.

Merlin goes to Blase.

Here seith the boke that whan Merlin was departed from the kynge Arthur from a thiside of Toraise in Carmelide, that he wente in to Northumbirlonde to Blaise his maister, that gladde was of his comynge, ffor he loved moche his companye; and whan Merlin a-while hadde be ther he tolde hym how the kynge Arthur was spoused to his wif, and how she sholde haue be by-traied, and how Vlfin and Bretell *hadde hir rescewed, and how the false Gonnore was banysshed, and how Bertelais slough the knyght, and of the turnement that the knyghtes made be-fore Toraise, and how the kynge Arthur hadde sente Gawein his nevew to logres for to somowne his court, and how the kynge loth wolde haue refte a-wey his wif; and how that Gawein com and hym socoured, and toke his owen fader, and how the avowis were made at the Court, and how the quenes knyghtes turneyed a-gein the knyghtes of the rounde table, and the merveles that sir Gawein ther dide, and how the kynge Ban yaf counseile to the kynge Arthur that his knyghtes sholde neuer haue turnement oon a-gein a-nother, and the counseile that kynge looth yaf for to sende messages to the princes, and all that be-fill hym and his sones on the wey, and how the princes were assembled at Arestuell, and how the trewys were take for to go vpon the saisnes; and Blaase wrote all this in his boke, and by that haue we the knowinge ther-of, and

He tells him of Arthur's marriage, and of the false Gonnore.

*[Fol. 200*b*.]

How Arthur sent Gawein to Logres.

How Gawein took his own father prisoner.

How the queen's knights tourneyed against the knights of the round table.

How the princes were assembled at Arestuell.

Blase writes it all in his book.

than Blase asked yef thei myght haue peple I-nowe for to fight a-gein the saisnes; and Merlin seide, "Nay be-fore that the peple were come oute of litill Breteigne, and thei of the reame of Carmelide, and thei of lamball that was longinge to the kynge Amaunte that Gosenges hilde, and as soone as I go fro hens I will go fecche the peple of kynge Ban and of kynge Bohors in the two reames, and make hem to come hider, and I do yow to wite," quod Merlin, "that ther shull come peple hider of many londes for the sauacion of theire soules, and for to diffende the cristin feith, and I do yow to wite it is grete nede that oure lorde helpe at this tyme, ffor neuer be-fore was ther sein so moche peple as shall be now at this assemble. Ne neuer for no power shull thei be put oute of this londe be-fore that the princes ben acorded with the kynge Arthur;" and Blase seide that he a-parceyved well that he loved a lady where-of the prophesie sholde falle and hadde be seide, and Blase hym preide full hertely and seide,

He asks if there will be enough people to fight the Saxons.

Merlin will go to fetch the people of Ban and Bohors.

So much has never been seen as will be assembled.

Blase speaks of the prophecy,

"Merlin, dere frende, I praye yow for the love of god that ye will telle me who shall be-gete the lyon to the two messages, and whan this shall be do." And Merlin seide that the terme drough faste on that it sholde be do; and blase seide that it was grete damage; and yef I knewe the tyme and place I wolde fain do my peyne it for to cesse; and Merlin seide, "Write soche lettres as I shall yow devise, and than shall ye knowe whan ye may hem helpe, and he hem wrote that seide in this wise, "Cest li comenchemens *et* li contes des auentures de pais pur coy li merveilleux lyons fu enseres et q*ue* fitz du roy et de royne le destraindra et couenra q*u*' il soit chastes et le myldres ch*eualie*rs del monde," and these l*ett*res that Blase wrote Merlin sette by alle the weyes where the auentures were, and ne myght neuer be taken a-wey, but by theym that sholde hem acheve, and ther-fore were the knyghtes the better willed for to labour. Ne neuer other-wise was distroied the grete lyon; and than seide blase, "How is it that I may it noon other weyes helpe;" and Merlin seide, "Noo." "And shall I lyve so longe," quod Blase, "that I may it knowe."

and asks who shall beget the lion.

He writes such letters as Merlin tells him.

How the lion shall be destroyed.

Blase asks if he shall live to see it.

"Haa! dere frende," seide Merlin, "ne dowte it not, and many *other merveiles shull ye se after these." Than made Merlin Blase to write soche letteres as he dide hym devise, and bar hem ther as he wolde, and sette hem by the passages in high weyes, and than comaunded hym to god, and than he wente in to litill Breteigne; and whan he toke his leve of Blase it was a-boute the hour*e* of pryme, and a-boute the houre of noone he com in to litill Breteigne, and fonde leonce the lorde of Paerne, and Pharien that grete chere hym made and ledde hym with hem full debonerly and were with hym gladde and myry thre dayes hooll; and on the forthe day thei asked Merlin why he was come in to that contrey, "ffor we knowe well that for nought be ye not come," and he hem tolde that thei moste passe the see with as moche peple as thei myght haue oute of that contrey. "Sir," seide leonce, "in to what place shall we go?" and Merlin seide "to the Roche flodomer, and fro thens in to the playn of Salisbery where ye shull fynde peple of many dyu*er*se langages that alle shull be come thider for the same cause that ye shull come fore, and ye shull loigge ther by youre-self with alle youre peple, and remeve yow not till ye se me a-gein, and loke ye make youre baner all white and ther-ynne a rede crosse and no more, and so shull haue alle the other princes that shull come thider, and noon of hem knoweth no worde of other ne wherefore it is don, and ther-ynne is grete significacion:" and leonce and Pharien seide this sholde be don. "Now," quod Merlin, "loke that ye take with yow alle the beste peple that ye may haue, ffor I do yow to wite that ther*e* shall be grete multitude of peple a-geins hem." "And who shall kepe this londe," seide leonce. "Haue no doute of the kepinge," quod Merlin, "ffor ther shall noon a-bide to kepe it, but lambuges and the nevew of Pharien, and Banyns the sone of Gracien of Trebes, and Galiers the lorde of the haut moor; and ye shull lede the hostes of youre two reames, and Grascien shall lede the hoste of Orcanye, and the stiwarde Antyaume shall be with yow, and Pharien and Dionys shull lede theym of Gaule, and loke that ye neuer leve for noon avoir, but with-

*[Fol. 201*a*.]

Merlin goes into Little Britain,

where he finds Leonce and Pharien.

They ask Merlin why he has come. He says they must take much people over the sea to Salisbery,

and stay there till he comes.

Leonce asks who shall keep the land.

Merlin says Lambuges, Banyns, and Galiers shall remain.

Leonce, Grascien, Antyaume, Pharien, and Dionys shall be the leaders.

holde all the peple that ye may haue of sowdiours yow for to serve." And leonce seide that this sholde be do as he hadde devised.

Than Merlin be-taught hem to god, and praied hem to go hastely, for it myght not be taried, "and I ne may no lenger with yow a-bide." "Sir," quod leonce, "god haue yow in kepinge, for I dare not pray yow to a-bide, for ye knowe better what is for to do than I." Than departed Merlin, and com to Nimiane his love, whiche of hym was gladde and ioyfull as soone as she hym saugh, and the love of hym encresed so moche that loth he was to departe, but taught hir grete part of his connynge; and than he wente in to the reame of lamball, that was the kynges Amaunte that the kynge Bohors hadde slayn, and bad Gosengos that he ne sholde leve in no maner but that he sholde be on the playn of Salisbery at halowmesse with all his peple, and he seide he wolde be ther with-oute faile. Than wente Merlin in to the reame of Carmelide, and dide his message ther on kynge Arthurs be-halue, and thei seide thei wolde go thider with good chere, and meved a-noon thiderward with xx^{Ml} of bolde men and hardy; and Grascien and *Pharien and Dyonis spedde hem so wele that in litill terme thei assembled xl^{Ml} men in the medowes be-fore Gannes; and whan it was tyme for to meve, these felowes toke theire wey and spedde so theire iourneyes be londe and be water till thei com in to the playns of Salisbiry, and ther thei fonde the xij princes that were there with as moche peple as thei myght assemble to-geder, and ech kepte his hoste by hym-self, and Nabulall that hadde be stiward with the kynge Amaunt somowned his peple and assembled hem to-geder, and preied the sone of the kinge Amaunt for to come with hym; and he dide his counseile, ffor he was a feire yonge squyer, bolde and hardy, and hadde loved the quene Gonnore, and fayn wolde haue hadde hir to his wif, yef he hadde be knyght, but the werre be-twene the two fadres it letted; ffor the queene hadde hym desired more than eny other man while she was a maiden, and yet ech of hem desired other to se, and sente often messages that oon to the tother [and] tokenes.

Merlin commends them to God.

He goes to Nimiane,

and teaches her his cunning.

He goes to Lamball,

and bids Gosengos go to Salisbery.

He goes to Carmelide.

*[Fol. 201*b*.]

Grascien, Pharien, and Dyonis assemble 40,000 men in the meadows before Gannes, and go to Salisbery, where they find the twelve princes.

Nabulall summons his people, and prays the son of Amaunt (a fair young squire who loved Gonnore) to go with him.

The young lord comes to Nabulall, who tells him the king's will.

The young lord says he will go with him.

Merlin comes to Bandemagn, who assembles his people.

Merlin comes to Logres, where he

Whan this yonge lorde com to Nabulall that kepte the reame to the be-hofte of kynge Arthur, he tolde hym how the kynge wolde fight with the saisnes, "and sente me in comaundement," quod Nabuall, "that I sholde bringe alle hem that myght armes bere bothe moche and litill, and therefore I wolde knowe youre will yef ye will come thider." And he seide, "Ye, trewly;" and than was Nabulall gladde, and seide thei wolde go to-geder to se alle the worthi men of the worlde; and than Nabulall assembled all the peple that he myght till he hadde xx^{Ml}, and spedde hym so till that he com in to the playn of Salesbiry; and Merlin com to Bandemagn as soone as he was departed fro Nabulall and badde hym sende to the hoste the grettest people that he myght; and the kynge Bandemagn assembled his peple that he hadde xx^{Ml}, and Merlin bad hym a-bide and sende with his hoste Patrides his stiwarde for to lede his peple, and thei shull finde at the Court Guyomar and Sadoyne, and Guyret de lamball that shull go with hym, and helpe to lede thy peple ther as thei shull go; and ther-with Merlin departed from the kynge and com to logres the same day that the vj knyghtes were gon hem to disporte in to the foreste auenturouse, where-of ye haue herde speke a-fore how thei wente for to seche her auenturous.

finds Ban, Bohors, Arthur, and the queen leaning out of the window.

They are joyful to see him.

*[Fol. 202*a*.]

Merlin tells of the people that are as-

Whan Merlin com to court, he fonde the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and the kynge Arthur, and the quene that lened oute at the wyndowes of the paleys, and loked on the medowes, and the thre knyghtes that were go in to the foreste, that were of the companye of the rounde table of whom the names were rehersed to yow be-fore; and the lordes wiste no worde till that Merlin com in euen vpon hem, and a-noon as thei were of hym war thei ronne ageins hym and made hym the grettest ioye that thei cowde; and whan thei hadde spoke to-geder of many thinges, than com Merlin to Arthur, and *bad hym sende for all his power in all haste with-oute taryinge, and dide hym well to wite how the kynge looth hadde right wele spedde, and tolde hym also how the straunge peple com oute of dyue[r]se contrees, bothe on horse and on fote, in to the playns of Salisbery, and he [asked] hym what peple ther com, and he tolde hym how the kynge looth rode with all his power, "and ye hadde full noble counseile for to take the trewys, and what peple trowe ye shall come on youre partye, ye shull haue the power of kynge Ban of Benoyk, and of kynge Bohors of Gannes, and thei be well xl^{Ml};" and whan the kynge Ban and the kynge Bohors vndirstode this, thei sterte vpon hire feet and asked by whom that was; and Merlin hem ansuerde a-noon, and seide he hadde do the message hym-self, "and thei trowed me well god yelde it hem," and the two brethern ansuerde that ther-of he hadde right well spedde, and that of nothinge myght he haue made hem so gladde; and than Merlin seide to kynge Arthur,

sembling at Salisbery,

and of the 40,000 men of Ban and Bohors.

The kings start up astonished.

"Sire," quod he, "wite ye who cometh hider also, ther cometh Nabulall de Camadayse of the reame of kynge Amaunt, that the kynge Bohors that is here slough in bataile, and with hym cometh a yonge lorde that is yet no knyght, and hider cometh all the power of Carmelide that Cleodalis the stiward doth lede; but the kynge leodogan ne cometh not, and all this chiualrie haue I yow somowned, and therfore I owe to haue guerdon." And the kynge seide, "Merlin, I can not sey what I sholde yow ofre, but I will that ye be lorde of me and of all my londe, for by yow is all that I haue." "Sir," quod he, "whan I com thus sodeinly vpon yow right now, what dide ye be-holde so ententifly down the medowes." Quod the kynge, "We loked on thre knyghtes that we saugh entre in to the foreste." "Wote ye euer," quod Merlin, "who thei be." "No," seide the kynge." "Wite it verily," quod Merlin, "that it be thre knyghtes of the rounde table that be full noble and hardy. But foles thei ben and folily haue thei don, for thei be envyouse; and I telle yow trewly that neuer in theire lif hadde thei so grete nede of socour and helpe as thei shull haue er thei come a-gein, and all is thourgh her owne folye." "Merlin," seide the kyng, "telle me who thei be I praye yow." "Sir," quod he, "that oon is Agrauadain des vals de gailore, and the seconde is Mynoras ly engres, and the

Merlin tells of Nabulall and

the young lord.

The king Leodogan will not come.

Merlin asks what the kings were looking at when he came in. Arthur answers—three knights. Merlin says they are of the round table, and that they will require succour;

for they will fight three of the queen's knights,

thridde is Monevall; and I lete yow wite that thei ne hadde ride but litill wey er thei shull meete with thre of the queenes knyghtes that shull fight with hem, and therfore yef ye do wisely sendeth after hem, ffor but yef thei be departed ther shull some be deed, and that were grete damage and pite." "Haa? lorde god," quod the kynge, "who shall go hem for to disseuer a-sonder." "Sir," seide the quene, "sir Ewein and kay the stiward, and Gifflet." "Sir," quod Merlin, "the quene seith well, sende hem forth a-noon hastely;" and a-noon the kynge hem cleped and comaunded hem to armen, and thei dide so a-noon right, and whan *thei were redy araide thei com to the kynge, and asked whider thei sholde go, and Merlin bad thei sholde go in to the foreste the streight wey to the crosse, "and ther shull ye finde vj knyghtes fightinge, and loke that ye hem departe;" and whan thei this vndirstode thei wente out of the paleis and toke theire horse delyuerly, and rode a grete walop in haste as thei were comaunded, but er thei were come there were strokes yoven. But now we shull returne to speke of the vj knyghtes how thei haue spedde.

and the king should send to divide them.

The queen says send Sir Ewein, Kay, and Gifflet.

*[Fol. 202b.]

They go,

and ride at a great galop.

The three queen's knights alight and rest.

As the storie seith the thre knyghtes of the quenes haue so riden thourgh the foreste that thei haue founde a feire launde, and thei a-light and rested hem on the grene herbes, and Galashin seide to his felowes, "Wolde our lorde god that sir Gawein and his brethern were now here, and we wolde go se the saisnes yef ye wolde assent;" and than seide Dodinell the sauage that it were a shrewe to go, for in this foreste is noon rescett*es*, and oure horse sholde dyen for the faute and for hungir; and while thei spake of these thinges, com the thre felowes of the rounde table disgised of theire armes, for fayn wolde thei haue be pursued of some of the quenes knyghtes; and Segramor asked of his felowes yef thei knewe hem ought, and thei seide, "Nay," and euer thei come faste on. Than seide Agrauadain to his felowes, "I se yonder soche thre felowes that me wolde for-thinke that thei sholde lede a-wey with hem theire horse hom a-gein." "How so," quod Mynoras, "be not we thre as well as thei;" and while thei spake thus,

The three fellows of the round table come towards them.

the thre knyghtes laced theire helmes that thei hadde don from theire hedes for to take the air; and thei lepte on theire horse, and wolde haue gon theire wey as they thought noon euell, seth that noon hem nought asked; and whan these other thre saugh hem goinge, thei hem a-scried with lowde voice, "Iuste yow be-houeth or elles ye shull vs leve youre horse, and so may ye passe quyte;" and whan Segramor that vndirstode, he turned the heed of his horse and seide, "What be ye than robbours that lyve be soche mysteir, wite it verily whan ye com home to youre hostell to nyght, ye shull have but litill to ete of the wynnynge that ye shull bringe from vs, for we yow diffie." Than thei smyte the horse with the spores that the blode stremed oute on bothe sides, and sette the sheldes be-fore theire brestes and the speres a-gein the assels of theire sadelis; and whan Segramor and his felowes saugh hem come in this maner thei dide the same, and com hem for to mete, and fill so that Segramor*e* and Agrauadain mette with speres a-gein the sheldes so rudely, that thei perced thourgh-oute, and the hauberkes brosten agein the lifte side, and Agrauadain felte the sharp*e* spere so depe that the blode folowed after; and Agrauadain brake his spere on Segramours hauberke at the same cours, and Segramor that hadde herte I-nough and force shof so harde that he threwe hy*m* to grounde and his horse bothe. But Agrauadain that was wight and delyuer, and full of grete hardynesse, lepte on his feet full lightly and drough his swerde, and appareiled hy*m* self *to diffende, and whan Segramor hadde parformed his cours he drough a litill a-side and sette foot to grounde, and tacched his horse to his spere, and Agravadayns horse ran faste to the wode, and Segramor drough his suerde and dressed his shelde, and com towarde Agravadain a grete spede, and he com for to mete hym vigerously, and smyte grete strokes vpon the helmes, and over all ther thei myght atteyne, and so endured the medle of hem longe while; and Segramor seide, "Sir knyght, thow art deed, but thow yelde;" and Agrauadain ansuerde "that to that pointe was he nothinge yet comen;" and Segramor seide he sholde come ther-to soner than

The three queen's knights leap on their horses.

The other three cry to them to joust or leave them their horses,

and then they rush on them.

Segramor and his fellows come to meet them.

Segramor throws Agravadain to the ground.

*[Fol. 203*a*.]

They fight with swords.

he wende, and that other ansuerde that right litill he hym douted, and seide he cowde well manace; and Segramor seide that verily it was the maner of a fooll, and ther-fore is seide a proverbe, that foles love neuer a thinge till he take the a-coole, and so is it yow be-fallen. Than thei ronne to-geder and fought longe, but Agravadain hadde the werse of the bataile.

Agravadain gets the worst in the fight.

Galasshin smites Mynoras to the ground.

On that othir side mette Galasshin and Mynoras, and fill that Mynoras brake his spere vpon Galashyns shelde, and Galashin hym smote with soche vigour vpon the penon of the shelde that he shof the spere thourgh his thigh, and thourgh the horse flanke that thei fill to grounde vpon an heep, and his horse slode also with all foure feet that he also fill to the erthe, but soone was he vpon his feet, and so was Mynoras, and drough theire suerdes, and[1] be-gonne the medle be-twene hem two full grete and fell with all theire power.

They fight with swords.

Dodinell meets Monevall, and throws him to the ground.

And also ran to-geder Dodinell le sauage, and Monevall, and mette with speres wher-of the hedes were sharpe I-grounden that the sheldes were perced and stinte at the hauberkes that were harde, and the speres bothe fly on peces; and in the passinge forth Dodinel hurteled so harde with his shelde and his body that Monevall fill to grounde, but a-noon he a-roos a-gein, for he was hardy and delyuer; and whan Dodinell hadde parformed his cours he returned with swerde drawen, and fonde hym redy hym to diffende. Than he drough a litill a-side and a-light, and com with his suerde in honde gripinge his shelde, and be-gonne to medle and to scirmyssh strongely. Thus faught these vj knyghtes longe from prime to mydday, and the quenes knyghtes be-gonne to gete grounde vpon hem of the rounde table, and somwhat ledde hem at hir volunte; and whan thei saugh hem glenche thei hem ascride, and seide, "Yelde yow;" and thei seide thei hadde lever be deed; and whan thei saugh it wolde noon other be thei ronne vpon hem fiercely, and Segramor saugh that his felowe wolde not yelde, and he lepte to hym lightly, and hitte so Agravadain

They fight sword in hand.

The queen's knights call to the others to yield.

Segramor fells Agravadain.

---

[1] The word "and" is repeated in the MS.

on the helme that he slitte it on two partyes, and the coyf of maile that he wounded sore hym in the heed that he fill to grounde all a-stonyed; but he lay not longe, for he douted sore a-nother stroke, and covered hym vndir his shelde the beste that he myght, and Dodinell caste a stroke of skirmerye to monevall, and smote hym so harde vpon the arme that he hilde with his shelde, that the shelde fill *to grounde that ner he hadde hym shente; and Galashin smote so Mynoras on the helme that he bente down to the erthe, and fallen hadde he; but as he kepte hym on his handes, and than Galashin hente hym by the helme and raced it of his heed so felliche that nose and browes bledde, and yaf hym soche a buffet with his swerde that he fill flatte to grounde, and than he lepte to and a-valed the coyf of maile from his heed and seide he wolde smyte it from the sholdres, but he wolde hym yelde outerly; and he seide he wolde it not do in no wise, and Galashin seide than sholde he dye with-oute raunsom.

Dodinell strikes Monevall.

*[Fol. 203b.]

Galashin fells Mynoras.

And while thei demened hem in this maner, com kay the stiwarde, and sir Ewein, and Gifflet the sone of Doo of Cardoell that the kynge hadde sent, but to longe hadde thei taried; ffor Segramor hadde so araied Agrauadain, that he was all couered in blode, and dide but glenche here and there fro oo place to a-nother, and Segramor hym chaced for to take hym a full stroke, and Dodinell hadde his felowe so be-seyn that he hadde nother shelde ne helme on his hede, and dide but glenche for to eschewe the deth, and Galashin helde his felowe at the grounde, and with that oon hande hilde hym by the ventaile, and his swerde in the tother hande redy to smyten of his heed, and in short tyme alle thre sholde haue loste theire lyves; but as sir Ewein, and kay, and Gifflet com walopinge as faste as thei myght, and cried with lowde voice, "I-nough it is, for we se well how it is, and we shull hem plegge of what ye will hem aske;" and Segramor turned toward hem and knewe hem wele, and ansuerde to sir Ewein, "Sir, gladly for more wolde I do for yow than this a-mounteth;" and in the same wise seide Galashin and Dodinell, and lefte hem with that, and these com

Kay, Ewein, and Gifflet come to the fight.

Agravadain is covered with blood.

Monevall has neither shield nor helm.

Galashin is about to smite off Mynoras's head,

when Ewein, Kay, and Gifflet come galloping to them.

They blame the queen's knights, but Segramor says the others began the fight.

to hem and blamed hem for that thei hadde be-gonne soche folye; and Segramor ansuerde hastely, and seide, "How so, my lorde, sir Ewein haue we vs so mys-taken whan of these thre vassals we haue rescewed oure horse, that thei wolde vs haue be-refte. Nay than hadde we be more shame-worthi yef thei hadde hem taken be force, ffor than sholde we neuer haue hadde honour in no place that we hadde comen, and full euell sholde he diffende his felowe that dar not diffende his owne thinge."

Ewein says they mean no evil.

"Ha," quod Ewein, "thei dide it for noon euell ne for no felonye that thei wolde yow haue don, but pleide with yow;" and Galashin be-gan to laugh vndir his helme, ffor he aparceived be that sir Ewein seide that thei were of the companye of the rounde table, and Dodinell seide that "blissed be soche pley, and hem that it be-gynne, for so shull we well lerne."

Ewein says they must repair to court.

"Lete be these wordes," quod sir Ewein, "and take youre horse, and lete vs repeire hom to the Court, ffor ther is noon so myghty ne puyssaunt that ne shall haue I-nough bataile with-ynne these vj monethes;" with that these thre knyghtes be lepte on theire horse, but the tother thre be trist and dolent. Than Segramor asked of sir Ewein what *thei thre weren. "What," quod sir Ewein, "ne knowe ye hem nought." "So moche ought thei haue the more damage;" "wite it verily," quod Ewein, "that these with whom ye haue foughten it is Agravadain des vaus de gailore and felowe of the rounde table;" and Segramor*e* seide he knewe hym not, "but seth it is so be-fallen I may no more do." "And Galashin hath foughten with mynoras." "What," quod Galashin, "Mynoras be that ye, so helpe me god ye haue yow to moche mystake a-gein vs whan that ye knewe vs well, and com vpon vs with-oute oure knowinge of yow."

*[Fol. 204*a*.] Segramor asks what the three knights are. Ewein tells them.

Dodinell asks Monevall who he is.

Than Dodinell drough hym to monevall, and asked hym what he was; "ffor," quod he, "I will here it of youre mouthe." And he seide in bas voice, "I am monevall." "Ye be-gan the foly," quod Dodinell, "and seth ye folye haue sought, folie haue ye founden, and therfore may ye seye verily that ther nys noon so moche a fole but he may finde his felowe." "Now lete be all this," seide kay, "for thus shull the knyghtes of the rounde table go to a-venge the deth of the wrenne;" and than be-gonne thei all to laughe saue the thre that were hurte sore, ffor thei hadde no talent to laugh; ffor thei were shamefast and mate for that was hem be-fallen; and forth thei riden to-geder alle ix till thei com to the court at logres, and the thre wente to their hosteles hem to vn-arme, ffor thei hadde nede of reste, and the tother*e* vj wente to court and fond the thre kynges, and the quene, and Merlin that yet were at the wyndowes of the paleys, and spake with Merlin, for longe hadde thei hym not seyn; and the vj knyghtes wente in to a chamber hem to vn-arme; and whan thei were vn-armed sir Ewein com to the kynge, and as soone as the Quene hym saugh, she seide, "Sir, telle vs of youre tidinges." "Madame," quod Ewein, "men may telle I-nowe." Than he be-gan to telle how he hadde founde the vj knyghtes fightinge, and the kynge asked whiche hadde the werse; and he tolde hem all euen as it was, and the scorn that kay hem yaf, and Dodinell and Segramor ther-at lowen faste I-nough, but sone thei lefte the wordes, for thei saugh the kynge pensif and dolent; and Merlin stode forth and seide, "Wite ye why is this discorde be-twene the knyghtes of the rounde table, and the quenes knyghtes; wetith it well," quod Merlin, "that it is but enuye that the ton hath a-gein the tother, and therfor thei will preve to-geder theire prowesses;" and thei asked whiche were the beste knyghtes owther the rounde table or the Quenes knyghtes, and the kynge seide that thei were all the Quenes, ffor the rounde table wente all by hir; and than the kynge Ban seide "that the beste myght soone be chosen, for it is my lorde, sir Gawein," and thei seide all how it was trewe; and the kynge seide that he sholde hem companye with the rounde table as soone as thei were come a-gein; and Merlin seide that sholde not be by-fore that the saisnes were chaced oute, and than thei lefte the tales and wente to mete, and after mete a-noon the kynge sent his messages thourgh the londe *to alle hem that were his men that eny armes myght bere that thei sholde come to hym araied, for to diffende the londe and mete with hym

They all laugh but the three who are hurt.

The six come to the court. The other three go to their hostels.

The six knights unarm and come to the king.

Ewein tells how he found them fighting.

Merlin speaks of the envy between the knights of the round table and the queen's knights.

Sir Gawein is the best knight.

*[Fol. 204*b*.] The king sends messages through the

land for all who bear arms to come to him.

vpon the playn of Salisbery, and that there-of thei sholde make no delay.

Arthur, Ban, Bohors, and Merlin go to the three knights of the round table.

The king blames them.

They say they will be well in eight days.

The king tells them to follow him to Salisbery.

The knights of the round table want to tourney with the queen's knights;

but the queen prays them not to speak of it.

The king commands all to make ready to start on the morrow for Salisbery.

Thus sente the kynge his messages thourgh all the londe, and a-noon as thei were fro hym departed, the kynge Arthur toke the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and Merlin, and seide, "Lete vs go se oure felowes that be seke;" and thei wente a-noon, and with hem many a knyght; and whan thei wiste it was the kynge thei wolde haue risen to haue gon a-geins hym; but the kynge hem so surprised that he wolde not suffre hem to a-rise, and blamed hem for the folye that thei hadde don; and thei seide thei myght hem not with-holde, and thei wiste not how it com, and than the kynge delyuered hem leches to couer theire woundes; and they bad the kynge be not dismayed, for with-ynne viij dayes thei sholde be hooll and sounde, so that thei myght bere armes and ride at hir own will; and than the kynge comaunded hem to god, and seide to hem at his departinge that as soone as thei were hooll thei sholde come after hym to playns of Salisbery, "ffor I go now," quod the kynge, "and ther shall be moche peple and grete assemble." With that the kynge departed, and com in to the halle, and fonde knyghtes I-nowe that wolde haue sette a turnement as many for as many a-gein the Quenes knyghtes, for that sir Gawein was not there, and for to a-venge theire felowes that were wounded; and the quene hem diffended, and seide that thei spake a-boute nought, ffor neuer shull ye haue turnement oon agein another, and ther-fore I pray yow for the feith that ye owe to my lorde and me, that neuer ye ther-of speke till that I comaunde;" and they seiden that neuer more wolde thei speke ther-of seth that she dide it comaunde, and at euensonge tyme the kynge comaunded that alle men sholde hem appareile on horse bakke, and on foote alle that myght armes bere, ffor on the morowe erly wolde he ride toward the plain of Salisbery, where-as the comou*n*te of the peple sholde assemble; and as soone as the kynge hadde comaunded, thei made hem redy in the beste wise thei myght fo[r] to go on that grete nede: knyght, and squyer, and burgeise; and than a-roos soche brut and soche noyse thourgh the town that men myght haue herde it half a myle, and on the morowe com the kynge Ban and the kynge Bohors, and the kynge Arthur, and the quene, and alle that euer ther were assembled rode forth v dayes hool er thei com to the plain of Salesbiry, ffor thei made but smale iourneyes; and whan thei were come, thei loigge a-monge theire owne peple, and kay the stiward hadde brought the grete baner wherof the champe was white as snowe, and the dragon was a-boue the crosse, ffor thus comaunded Merlin; and whan the kinge was loged he ledde his companye in grete myrthe and ioye, and a-bode ther the Princes, and the peple com on alle parties out of many a contre.

A great noise rises in the town.

They ride forth to Salesbiry.

Kay bears the banner.

The princes abide with King Arthur.

*Renomee that thourgh the worlde renneth wente so thourgh the contrey, that the saisnes it wisten by theire esspies, that thei hadde thourgh the contrey, that brought tidinges to the sege at Clarence, that the peple of the londe and the contrey assembleden on the playns of Salesbiry, but thei knewe not whiche wey thei sholde ride; and the kynge hardogabran sente for his xix kynges, and thei com to hym a-noon, and than he tolde to hem his aspies hadde hym brought tidinges how the cristin made assemble in the plain of Salisbiry, and ther-fore he asked her counseile; and thei seide it were best to wacche well her hoste bothe be day and be nyght that thei were not surprised in slepinge, ffor by day light hadde thei no drede of all the peple of the londe, ffor thei hadde so grete multitude of peple that thei thought noon myght a-gein hem endure. But for all that seide thei "we rede that alle oure peple holde, and we holde vs to-geder, and that noon go no more on forrey fro hens-forth with-oute xxx^{Ml} men at armes, or mo, so that yef thei be mette that thei be not founde oute of aray, and ye knowe well that in all this londe that is so longe and brode is not the fourthe part of peple that we haue," and in the fin thei acorded to this counseile that thei sholde alle holde hem to-geder and make gode wacche; and than repaired the xix kynges to theire tentes, and so departed in soche maner and appareiled hem full well, and comaunded alle hem that

*[Fol. 205a.] The Saxons learn the tidings from their spies.

Hardogabran sends for 19 kings.

They counsel to watch the host;

and that none go out without 30,000 men.

The kings depart to their tents.

were vnther theire Iustice, that eche man sholde euer be redy and make goode wacche; and thei lete this be knowen at the sege of Valdesbiry, and made hem alle to leve the sege, and com alle to the sege be-fore Clarence, and so ther was so grete assemble and so huge that the sege aboute the Cite dured v myle of lengthe, and the herberowes lasted fer. But now lete vs leve the saisnes, and telle how the princes com to the playn of Salesbiry oon after another eche by hym-self.

The siege of Valdesbiry is raised.

CHAPTER XXIX.

PARLIAMENT OF THE PRINCES AT SALISBURY; THEIR HOMAGE TO ARTHUR; AND DEFEAT OF THE SAXONS.

The princes that come to Salesbiry are

Here seith the storye that so spedde hem the Princes after the Parliament that was take of the trewys that thei be meved to come towarde the plain of Salesbiry wele appareiled as soche myghty princes ought for to do; the firste prince that com in to the plain of Salesbiry was the Duke Escam of Cambenyk, and brought in his companye vij^{Ml} men of armes well a-raied of alle maner thinges, and thei hem loigged streite and clos to-geder, and renged in tentes and pavelouns; after that com the kynge Tradilyuans of North-walys with vj^{Ml} men of armes vpon stedis of pris, for thei hadde a riche contrey and a plentevous of alle godes, and thei loigged hem next the Duke Escam vpon the playn; after hym com the kynge de Cent chiualers with x^{Ml} men wele a-raied, and loigged next after; and than com the kynge Clarion of Northumbirlonde that was a feire knyght, and a wise and bolde and hardy, and in his companye viij^{Ml} men, and hem dide condite with a baner as white as snowe ther-in a reade crosse, and soche baners hadde all thei that com thider, and these hem loigged; after hym *com the kynge Belynans of South walis that was brother to kynge Tradilyuaunt, and with hym x^{Ml} men, and he hadde grete desire to se his sone Dodinell le sauage that he loved so

Duke Escam,

King Tradilyvans.

King de Cent Chivalers,

King Clarion,

*[Fol. 205b.] King Belynans, the father of Dodinell,

well, and loigged hym by the kynge Clarion that was so gentill and curteise. After hym com the kynge Carados of Strangore that was a felowe of the rounde table of hem that were firste founded; but after the discorde fill be-twene Arthur and the princes neuer after wolde he be at the rounde table; and he brought with hym x^{Ml} men, and loigged hym by the kynge Belynans that was a good man; and than he asked yef the kynge Arthur were come, ffor hym thought longe to se his thre nevewes that were with Arthur, and that oon was Aglins des vaus, and the tother kay destranx and the thridde kehedin le petitz; but at that tyme was not the kynge Arthur I-comen, but he taried not longe after; and after the kynge Carados com the kynge Brangores, and brought in his companye x^{Ml} men, and loigged hym by the kynge Carados, and sore he desired to se hys wifes nevew that was in the court of kynge Arthur, ffor that he herde hym preised and comended of merveilouse bewte and valour, and his name was Segramor of Costantyn*no*ble; after the kynge Brangore com Mynoras the Senescall of the kynge lak of the grete ynde that the kynge lak hadde sente only for the love of god for to haue the pardon that the legat hadde graunted and p*ro*claymed thourgh all cristindom, and brought in his companye vij^{Ml} men well araied; after hym com the kynge Pelles of lytenoys with vj^{Ml} men that his stiward brought for the love of oure lorde, and thei were richely armed and horsed, and hem dide condite Pellynaus the stiwarde that was a full proude knyght, and he hym loged next Mynoras; after hym com the Senescall of the kynge Pellynour of the waste londes, and he brought vj^{Ml} men that the kynge Pellynour sente for the love of Ih*es*u Criste, and loigged by the peple of kynge Pellynaus; after hym com the Senescall of the kynge Alein of the forayn londes that was brother to the kynge Pellynour, and he brought vj^{Ml} men, and loigged hym by the peple of kynge Pellynor; after hym com Galehaut, the sone of the feire Geaunt that was lorde of the fer oute ylles, and brought in his company x^{Ml} men, and he com only for the love of Ih*es*u crist; after hym com Aguygneron, a merveilouse knyght, and

King Carodos,

who asks for his three nephews.

King Brangores,

Mynoras the Senescall,

King Pelles of Lytenoys,

Pellynaus the steward,

The Senescall of Pellynour.

The Senescall of Alien,

Galehaut,

Aguygneron

King Cleolas,

who leaves from sickness.

Margoundes.

*[Fol. 206*a*.] King Arthur comes. Merlin says he ought to give thanks to God.

Arthur says he trusts in God.

was Senescall to Clameden the ky*n*ge of the yles; and this kynge sente thider vj^{Ml} men for the love of Ih*es*u criste, and he loigged next Galehaut; after hym com the kynge Cleolas that after was cleped the firste conquered kynge, and in his company vj^{Ml} men, and he loigged next Aguygueron, the Senescall of Clamedien. But this kynge Cleolas hadde but litill tyme be ther whan hym be-hoved to go thens for grete sekenesse, and lefte his peple to Guyonce his Senescall that was a goode man and a noble knyght; after hym com the Senescall of Sorloys for the love of god only, and with hym vj^{Ml} men, and his name was Margoundes, and he loigged hym by the Duke Belyas; and than *com the kynge Arthur and hym loigged; and Merlin com to hym, and seide in counseile, "Sir, now be-holde what oure lorde doth for yow, and for to saue youre peple, moche ought ye hym honoure and yelde graces with goode herte whan he thus you socoured and helpeth in soche nede." "Merlin," quod the kynge, "oure lorde foryeteth not his Synner; and he hath [shewed] me yet hidyr-to that he hath me not for-yeten, and yet I truste to his mercy he will shewe me better than he hath don yet, ffor I haue in hym full by-leve, and all my truste, In so moche that I putt [me] in his volunte whiche for his grete mercy and pite haue me in his kepinge bothe body and soule."

Merlin says as long as he believes in God, he shall have victory over his enemies.

Arthur will do what Merlin counsels him.

"The goode by-leve," quod Merlin, "that ye haue in oure lorde Jh*es*u, hath yow moche a-vailed and yet shall ther-of haue ye no doute, wherfore I rede yow kepe stedfastly in that purpos while ye lyve, ffor while ye be in godes purpos shull ye haue the victorie of your enmyes." "Merlin," quod the kynge, "I be-seche oure lorde suffre me neuer to departe fro his creaunce, but that I may holde it in soche maner that I yelde hym my soule whan it shall departe from the body;" and Merlin seide, "Amen. But now moste ye take goode hede [how] ye shull yow demene a-gein this baronye that is here assembled for to diffende the cristin feith, and to chace this mysbelevinge peple oute of youre londe." "Merlin," quod the kynge, "I will do euen in all thinge as ye will counseile, for with-oute yow I can nought do, and therfore I putte me in god and in yow." "Sir," seide Merlin, "I wolde ye dide ioy and honour these lordes that here be assembled to diffende youre reame, and goth to theire tentes eche by hym-self, and thanke hem for the socour that thei haue brought; and in speciall hem that of yow nothinge holden ne be not youre men, but beth come in reverence and worship*pe* of god; ffor neuer shewde oure lorde so grete honour to no prince, ffor ther is no kynge born that euer assemblede so feire a companye wher-ynne were so many noble men and goode knyghtes. Ne neuer ther shall be so many goode knyghtes togeder assembled be-fore that the fader shall sle the sone and the sone the fader, and that shall be in this same place, and to hym shall remayne the londe of the grete breteigne with-outen lorde, and with-outen heir." Whan the kynge herde Merlin so speke, that in the same place the fader sholde sle the sone, and the sone sle the fader, and the londe of the grete breteigne a-bide with-outen heir and lordles, he hym prayed and requyred to telle a partye of that more clerly to his vndirstondinge; and Merlin seide it was not to be seide, "but I shall telle yow so moche after this iourney shall come the lyon vn-crowned, and bringe with hym foure lyou*n*s wher-of tweyne shull be crowned, and the thirdde is with-oute crowne; these shull devoure the shrewde ligne of the reame of logres. But aske me no more," quod M*er*lin, "but goth to the barou*n*s as I haue yow seide." "I shall so with goode chere," seide the kynge.

He is to go to the tents of the lords, and thank them for their succour.

There shall never be so many good knights assembled till the father slay the son, and the son the father.

The king asks for an explanation.

*Anoon the kynge lepe on his horse and ledde with hym the kynge Ban of benoyk, and the kynge Bohors of Gannes, and kay, and Segramor, and Ewein, and Galashin, and Galescoude, and Merlin. These ix com to the lordes to theire tentes, and whan thei knewe the comynge of kynge Arthur, thei com oute of theire tentes to mete hym, and the kynge and his companye a-light on foote, and salewed hem alle eche by hym-self, and thanked hem hertely of that thei were come to helpe hym in that grete nede a-gein the saisnes that thourgh theire vntrouth and felonye hadde distroied his londe, and haue also disire to distroie all cristin peple.

*[Fol. 206*b*.]

The king goes to the tents of the lords.

He thanks them.

The lords say they have come to help holy church.

"Sir," seide the lordes, "thei shull neuer haue ther-to power ne force, ffor to helpe holy chirche, and yow to diffende we be come and here assembled, and we will put oure bodyes in auenture of deth for to encrece holy chirche and the cristin feith to mayntene, and be the grace of oure lorde we shull do so moche er we departe oute of youre companye that holy cherche shall haue the victorye, and the saisnes shull haue the shame and the damage, and we will that ye wete that we be not youre men, ne neuer we hilde nought of yow, but we be come propirly for the love of god, and for to diffende holy chirche." "God yow quyte," seide the kynge Arthur, "in whos honour and reuerence ye it don, and bringe yow alle wele to youre repeire as he is al-myghty." "Amen," seide the lordes, "and be it so as ye wolde." Now reste a-while of Arthur and Merlin, and of the straunge lordes that be come hym for to helpe, and I shall telle yow of the xij princes that be alle assembled at the tente of kynge looth.

They are not Arthur's men.

The twelve princes go to thank the strange princes.

Whan the xij princes were come in to the plain of Salisbiry, thei wente alle to thanke the straunge princes of that thei were come for to diffende the londe from the hethen peple for the love of oure lorde god, and whan thei hadde this don, thei assembled alle at the tente of kynge looth, and satte down on a cowche that was covered with a cloth of silke, and spake of oo thinge and othir, and while thei were thus sette, entrid Merlin in to the tente, and as soone as thei saugh hym come, thei a-ros alle and wente to mete hym, and seide he was welcome; and he preide god yeve hem good a-uenture and grace to do so that it myght be savacion to theire soules, and honour to theire soules, and honour to theire bodyes; and that by hem myght holy chirche be diffended and caste oute of the power of her enmyes that by force were entred, "and it shall be mayntened, but yef it reste in yowre deffaute." "In vs," seide the Barons, "shall no defaute be founden, for we be come hider it to diffende." "Trewly," seide Merlyn, "the damage is full grete, but it is so be-falle that bothe prevy and straunge be here assembled for othinge and for oquarell, and

They assemble at Looth's tent.

Merlin comes to them.

He prays God that they may have good success.

well ought ye be reson a grete mater to bringe to ende be so that ye be of oon acorde, and of oon will, ffor other-wise may ye not spede, and good it were that ther were pees be-twene yow and my lorde the kynge Arthur which ought to be youre lorde, and so sholde ye be the more dredde and douted thourgh euery londe."

They will not speed well if they are not agreed.

*At this worde stode vp the kynge looth of Orcanye, and seide, "Lordes, Merlin seith wele, ffor it were grete honour to god and the worlde at this pointe, yef ye wolde acorde yow with hym." With these wordes the kynge Vrien a-roos full wroth, and stode vpon his feet full angry, and seide to the kynge looth, "Ye haue made vs to com hider by trewys till we hadde distroied the saisnes and chaced oute of the contrey, and than yef it were oure honour than myght we do as our hertes vs bar, and ye now wolde vs meve with other mater*es* and tales other weyes, and ther-fore we pray yow and requyre speke no more ther-of; ffor as for me I shall it neuer do. I wote neuer what these other will do, but yef thei it ought do I shall sey thei be for-sworn a-gein me." "Certes," seide the kynge Ventres, "I will not be[1] for-sworn, for I will not do with-oute youre counseile;" and so seide alle the other, and ther-fore was the kynge looth full wroth, but he moste nede suffre, and so he seide no more at that tyme; and Merlin be-gan to smyle and seide, "Ffeire lordes, be not wroth ne angry, for the wratthe were nothinge good at this tyme."

*[Fol. 207*a*.] Looth stands up and urges them to be at peace with Arthur.

Urien rises very wroth,

and says he will never agree with Arthur.

Ventres and all the others agree with Urien.

Looth is wrath.

While thei entended a-boute this talkinge, com the kynge Arthur, and the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and the straunge princes with hem, and saugh the xij princes that were at the teinte of kynge looth; and as soone as the kynge looth hym saugh, he lepe on his feet and seide, "Lo, here cometh my lorde;" and a-noon the princes hem dressed in honour and reuerence to hym, for that he was a kynge sacred and a-noynted; and the kynge Arthur that was full curteise and wise, and wele knewe what was for to do, hath hem

Arthur, Ban, Bohors, and the strange princes come to the twelve princes,

who do reverence to Arthur.

---

[1] The word "be" is repeated in the MS.

Arthur sits on Looth's couch,

and addresses them.

Looth says they must do Merlin's commandment.

*[Fol. 207b.] Arthur repairs to his tent.

Merlin says the princes should rest.

and go towards Clarence on Monday.

The kings agree.

salewed first er thei were alle risen vp, and seide, "Welcome was al the companye;" and thei ansuerde alle attonys that god yeve hym goode a-uenture and alle his companye, and than he satte down vpon the kynge loothis cowche; and the kynge Arthur made hem alle to sitte down by hym as he that was the curteisest man of the worlde and beste taught; and than he seide, "Feire lordinges, I thanke yow alle hertely that ye be come hider at this tyme as I haue yow required for the profite of holy chirche, and the peple and youre londes to diffende, and warant a-gein the felon saisnes that haue a grete parte brente and distroide, and our peple slain and maymed, and for that ye be come at my request, I thanke yow hertely alle, and goode it were yow to a-raye in soche maner that we were not surprised ne blamed. Ne that the saisnes may not sein a-monge theym that thei haue vs founde foles ne musardes." "Sir," seide the kynge looth, "as of apparailinge be-hoveth Merlyn to devise, ffor he shall comaunde, and we shull do his comaundement; ffor he knoweth better what we shull do than we knowe oure-self;" and the princes seide that ther-to acorde thei well, and so thei putte the rule all to Merlin, and ther-with lefte the speche; and the kynge *Arthur repeired hem to his teinte, and alle the princes hym conveyed bothe prive and straunge, and after eche of hem repeired to his pavelon; and the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and Merlin entred in to the chambre of Arthurs Pavelon, and than seide Merlin in counseile, "Ffeire lordes, these peple that be comen here ben wery of traueile, ffor some ther be that be come right ferre, and thei haue nede of reste and ese, and therfore will I that thei reste to-day and to-morowe, and on monday by goode distyne we shall meve alle to go towarde Clarence, for ther is the moste plente of saisnes, ffor thei that were at the sege of Valdisbery be ther alle assembled, and I shall do euery prince to wite by hym-self that thei be appareilled the same day to meve and to go vpon theire enmyes." To this counseile called the thre kynges sir Gawein with hem, and seiden alle be it so in the honour of Ih*es*u criste and his moder Marie, and than thei departed from this counseile, and com to the maister pavelon and ther a-bide. Than com Elizer, Gaweins squyer, and kneled down be-fore sir Gawein, and seide, "Sir, I am come oute of lytenoys, and lefte the kynge Pelles my fader for to seche yow, and by the will of oure lorde I fonde yow in soche place that but god hadde sente yow thider I moste haue ben deed; but the grete prowesse of yow rescowed me from the saisnes that me wolde haue putte to deth, and ther-fore I knowe well that the renomee that renneth of yow thourgh the worlde is trewe, and I knowe also verily that of a more worthi man than ye myght I not take my garnementes wher-fore I pray yow and requyre of youre grete fraunchise that ye make me knyght. So that I may prove my firste chiualrye vpon these false mysbelevinge peple that thus desire for to destroye holy chirche, ffor I shall neuer be knyght of all my lif tyme, but I it resceyve of youre hande, and ye it me promysed the firste day that I yow saugh that ye shull me yeve armes at my request, and I yow require be-fore my lorde the kynge youre vncle that is here be-fore this baronye." Whan sir Gawein saugh Elizer his squyer be-fore hym on his kne, he a-reised hym vp be the armes, and seide swetely, "Dere frende, I graunte youre request, ffor ye be full digne to resceyve the ordre of chiualrie, and ther-fore all youre will shall be per*formed*." "Sir," seide the yonge lorde, "gramercy." Than sir Gawein be-helde and saugh Gaheries his brother, and seide, "Feire brother, do ordeyne me armes soche as is a fieraunt for a kynges sone, and to so noble and worthi a man as is this." "What is he than feire nevewe," seide Arthur. "Sir," seide Gawein, "it is the sone of kynge Pelles of lytenoys, and is nevewe to the kynge pellenor and to the kynge Alain, and wite ye well yef he lyve he shall be oon of the beste knyghtes of the worlde." Than he tolde the kynge of the grete occision and the merveile that he hadde sein hym do of the saisnes; and whan the kynge it herde he hadde grete wonder how so yonge a childe myght endure so grete dede of armes, and the two kynges ther-of were gretly astonyed; and the kynge Arthur

Elizer comes and kneels to Gawein,

and asks to be made a knight.

Gawein raises him,

and asks Gaheries to get him arms fit for a king's son.

Arthur asks who he is.

and wonders to hear of his deeds.

Arthur commands Gaheries to bring

*[Fol. 208*a*.] the richest arms in his coffers.

comaunded to *Gaheries that he sholde do be brought the richest armes that myght be founde in his cofers, "and the beste swerde after myn owne." "Sir," seide Elizer, "I haue armes and horse and al thinge that is to me mystier." Than he cleped lydonas his squyer and badde hym bringe his armes that his fader hadde hym yoven, and lydonas dide his comaundement as he that was ioyfull and Gladde, and brought hem be-fore the kynge and the other barou*n*s that hem be-hielde for merveile, ffor thei were alle white saf a bende of golde enbelynk, and his hauberke was stronge and well holdinge of double mayle. And ther-to it was so light that a childe of ix yere myght it bere, and arthur preysed it moche, and the other barou*n*s whan thei it saugh; and sir Gawein armed Elizer, and Gaheries dide hym helpe, and dide on his hauberk that was of grete bounte that in all the hoste was not the pareile. Than thei laced his aventaile that was as white as snowe, and whan he was all apareiled, sir Gawein dide on his right spore and girde his swerde on his side, and Gaheries dide on his lefte spore; and whan he was thus araied sir Gawein yaf hym the a-colee, and seide full debon*er*ly as he that was the moste deboner knyght of the worlde. "Holde, feire swete frende, and resceyve the ordre of chiualrie in the name of Ih*es*u crist oure savioure, that in soche maner lete yow it mayntene that it be to the profite of holy cherche and youre honour*e*." "Sir," seide Elizer, "so graunte me oure lorde to his pleisier."

Lydonas brings Elizer's arms.

His hauberk is strong and light.

Gawein arms Elizer, and Gaheries helps him.

Sir Gawein gives him the embrace.

Whan sir Gawein hadde a-doubbed Elizer, the sone of kynge pelles of lytenoys, and toke hym a-noon Gueheret a Gaheries, and ledde hym in to the kynges chapell for to wake, and thei bar hym companye till on the morowe that thei hadde herde masse, and than thei returned to the court of kynge Arthur that made grete ioye to Elizer; ffor he satte that day at the kynges table be-twene the kynge Ban and the kynge Bohors, and after mete their dide reise a quyntayn on the plain, and these yonge bachelers yede hem to prove, and so dide the knyghtes of the rounde table and other, and that day was many feire strokes yoven with speres; and Elizer dide so well that

Gueheret and Gaheries take Elizer to the chapel to watch.

On the morrow Elizer sits between Ban and Bohors.
They raise a quintain.

Elizer does well.

moche was he comended, and seide neuer hadde the[i] sein a feirer Iuster*e* with spere; and the knyghtes of the rounde table wolde gladly haue taken a turnement a-gein other straunge knyghtes that were come in the hoste; but the kynge Arthur wolde it not suffre, for he douted that some sholde ben hurt, and therfore was it lefte, and repeired hem to their teintes gladde and myry.

The knights of the round table wish for a tournament.

Than com Merlin to the kynge Arthur, and seide, "Sir, ther is no more but eu*er*y man hym appareile and make redy, for to morowe erly be-houeth vs to meve, and loke that ye lete noon knowe whiche wey ye shull ride; but folowe me ouerall whider that I shall yow lede, and so shall I sey to alle the princes that thei be redy at the poynte of day for to ride." "Merlin," seide the kynge, "all be it at youre volunte, ffor I putt me all hooll in god and yow;" and than wente Merlin to the pavelons of the princes, and tolde oon after *another in counseile to be redy to ride erly on the morowe, and thei lete trusse teintes and pavilou*n*s and alle her other harneys and cart*es*, and chariet*es*, and somers, cofers, and malis, and lepe armed vpon theire stedes as hir bodyes to diffende and her enmyes to assaile, saf only of sheldes, and speres, and helmes that thei made theire squyers bere be-fore, and made the baners to be bore all white, and eche hadde a reade crosse in the myddell, and so hadde Merlin comaunded to all the princes at the be-gynnynge of theire comynge; and Merlin rode on a grete grey courser and bar the baner of kynge Arthur be-fore all the hoste, and thus thei departed alle in this maner from the playn of Salisbiry, and wente alle as Merlin dide hem gide the streight wey toward Clarence, that the kinge hardogobrand hadde be-seged and with hym xix kynges that alle his londe hadde environed, and he hadde sente his forriours thu[r]gh the londe a xx myle or xxx that distroied and wasted the contrey; and a partie of the forreyours com by the Cite of Garlot that was the Chief forteresse of the kynge ventre, and were in that companye foure myghty kynges, and with hem grete plente of saisnes that hadde sesed prayes by strengthe,

Merlin comes to Arthur, and says it is time to make ready.

He goes to the princes.
*[Fol. 208*b*.]

He bears the banner of King Arthur. They depart to Clarence.

The Saxon foragers come by Garlot,

and hadde do grete harme in the contrey and in esspeciall to hem of the town, ffor thei were come oute to hem to bateile for to rescowe the pray, and ther was grete slaughter of oon and other, but thei of Garlot myght not endure, ffor ther were of the saisnes grete force, so that thei of the town loste the pray and theire horse, and the moste parte of theire chiualrie; and the foure kynges swor that thei wolde neu*er* departe thens er thei hadde take the town, and the Quene that was with-ynne saugh the sege leide, and hadde grete drede to be taken by force, and toke counseile of hir stiward what were beste for hir to do, and hir stiward yaf hir counseile to go oute by nyght thei tweyne sooll by hem-self, by a posterne that opened a-gein the river, and sholde go to a-nother place of theires that was thens vj myle, that was cleped the rescouse, for that Vortiger was rescowed whan Aungis the saisne was slain and chaced oute of the place.

and do great damage to the people of the town.

The queen has great dread,

and takes counsel of her steward.

Euen as the quene and the stiward hadde devised thei diden, ffor thei wente oute a-boute mydnyght, and hadde no mo in her companye but two squyers. But the saisnes that were maliciouse hadde sette espies on euery side of the town, and so was the Quene taken and the stiward slain, wherof was grete harme, and the squyers fledden, and were wounded sore, ffor that oon was smyten thourgh the body with a spere, and the tother on the heed with a swerde, and so thei wente as a-uenture hem brought to the hoste that Merlin ledde, and thei stinte neuer of goinge till thei herde hem a foure myle from Garlot; and whan the squyers saugh the comynge of the hoste and parceyved the white baners with the reade crosses, thei knewe wele that thei were cristin and dressed hem that wey, and made the grettest dolour of the worlde; and whan Merlin, that com all be-fore, herde hem make soche doell, he asked hem what thei eiled, and thei hym tolde all *as was be-fallen, and how the saisnes ledde a-wey the Quene, "and whiche wey wente thei," seide Merlin. "Sir," seide thei, "she is yet in the hoste, but the pray goth by the cauchie;" and Merlin cried, "Sewe me, ffor the Quene shall thei not lede yef god will."

They go out at midnight with two squires.

The Saxons take the queen and kill the steward.

The squires come to the host that Merlin leads.

*[Fol. 209*a*.]

They tell what has befallen them.

Merlin calls out for the host to follow him.

Than he spored his horse and sir Gawein after, and Elizer, and the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors his brother, and ech had in his hande a stronge spere, and leonce of Paierne condited the peple of Benoyk; and Dionas theym of Gannes, and Gracien hem of Orcanye, and Dorilas condited the peple of kynge Ventre, and the other batailes com alle in ordre, and Merlin rode so till that he com do[w]nward of an hill, and than they saugh the pray that passed at the bregge, and ther were well a foure thousande saisnes; and whan Gawein saugh hem come, he seide now may we a-bide to longe. Than he spored the Gringalet, and than seide Elizer, "Sir, suffre and a-bide for guerdon of my seruise and for all frendship, and graunte me the firste stroke of the bateile, ffor I entred neuer in to no stour seth I was knyght." "And I it yow graunte," quod sir Gawein, all in laughynge, "for in yow it is right well employde."

Sir Gawein and the others do as he bids them.

They come to four thousand Saxons.

Elizer asks Gawein to let him give the first stroke.

With that Elizer hem a-scride, and seide, "Lete be the pray, ffor ye shall it no ferther lede;" and than com Dioglus that was the stiward of the kynge Magloras, and turned the heed of his horse, and he and Elizer mette with speres vpon the sheldes so harde that thei perced vpon the bokeles, and Dioglus brake his spere, and Elizer hym smote so harde that he shof the spere thourgh the breste, and caste hym down deed to the erthe, and his spere ther-with fly in peces. Than he drough his swerde and launced in a-monge the other that sore hem peyned to passe the pray, and smote so Antidolus that was stiward to the kynge Brandon that he slitte hym down to the teth; and Gawein seide to Merlin that he hadde wele be-gonne as of a newe knyght. "Ye," quod Merlin, "yet shall he do better." With that Merlin cried the signe of kynge Arthur, and than spronge forth Gawein and his companye a-monge the forreyours that many were there slain and wounded; and thei be-hoved to forsake place and fledde toward Garlot where the kynge Magloras was, and the kynge Brandon, and the kynge Pynsonars, and the kynge Pignores that right vigerously assailed the Castell, and thei were full wroth whan thei saugh her men com fleinge, and lefte the assaut and com to theym that

Elizer calls out.

He meets Dioglus and kills him.

He smites Antidolus.

Gawein and his company spring among the foragers, who fly.

The Saxon kings come to the host,

fledde; and whan thei saugh the hoste comynge thei merveiled fro whens so moche peple myght come. Neuertheles thei sette in a-monge hem for thei were moche peple and stronge, and the cristin hem resceyved full fiercely, and made the saisnes for to resorte a-gein a spere lengthe; and whan the foure kynges that were hethen saugh sir Gawein and the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and Elizer make of her men so grete slaughter, thei ascride her men, and be-gonne to sle horse, and men, and knyghtes as thei were wode, ffor thei were Geauntes, and the strengest peple of the worlde; and thei made the peple of kynge Ban and kynge Bohors to blush vpon the peple of kynge Ventre, and vpon the bateile of the Duke Escam of Cambenyk, and ther *suffred sir Gawein, and the kynge Ban, and his brother, and Elizer many sharp*e* strokes, and full sore were thei greved; and whan these two bateiles were come on, ther myght men se merveiles don of armes, and sore were the saisnes greved at that enuay, ffor many ther*e* were of hem leide to the grounde. But the kynge Brandon and the kynge Pyncenars dide grete merveiles bothe with theire bodyes and theire meyne that were full bolde and hardy; ffor after theire strokes a-bode but fewe cristin in sadell, and so were thei of the grete Bretigne sore a-basshed, ffor thei made hem alle resorte bakke hadde not be the grete prowesse of sir Gawein, and Elizer, and the kynge Ban and his brother, and the kynge Ventre of Garlot, and the Duke Escam of Cambenyk; and neuertheles Grascien, and Pharien, and Dorilas, and leonce of Paerne dide so wele that thei ought to haue no blame; and Merlin that rode fro oo renge to a-nother ascride hem often "ore auaunt;" and while thei were in this angwyssh the kynge Pignores cleped xl saisnes of the beste and moste hardy, and comaunded hem to take the Quene of Garlot, and lede hir to the sege of Clarence, and presente hir to the kynge hardogobran, and these seide thei sholde do his comaundement, and departed and ride forth the streight wey to Clarence, and ledde with hem the quene that grete doell made for the a-uenture that was hir befallen.

and slay horse and men.

*[Fol. 209b].

Brandon and Pyncenars do great marvels.

Pignores calls forty Saxons to lead the queen to Clarence.

After that the kynge Pignoras smote in to the stour with his swerde in honde, and be-gan to yeve soche strokes that noon armure hym myght endure. So that the moste hardy douted hym to meten, for he smote down horse and men so thikke that the moste hardy made hym wey, till that Gawein that to euery nede was nygh it a-parceyved, and saugh the grete harme that he dide of her peple, and seide to hym-self yef this feende lyve eny while we may moche lese. This worde vndirstode Elizer that kepte hym euer nygh Gawein and smote his horse with spores thider as he saugh Pignoras that hadde all his arme be-soiled with blode and brayne of hem that he hadde slayn; and whan Elizer saugh the harme that he dide, he seide to hym-self, "Certes, it were to vs grete harme yef this deuell lyve longe, what mysauenture hath he be suffred so longe;" and than he drough ner and leide his reyne in his sadilbowe, and threwe his shelde at his bakke and ficched hym in his stiropes, and caught his swerde in bothe handes, and smote the kynge Pignores thourgh the helme that nother coyf ne helme myght hym warant till that the suerdes egge touched hys brayn, and he drough a-gein hys suerde and Pignoras fill down to grounde; and whan Merlyn hym saugh falle, he seide to sir Gawein, "This hath take with vs trewys." "Ye," quod Gawein, "god kepe vs that knyght that is so worthi;" and than thei smyte vpon the saisnes that be sorowfull and wroth for the deth of Pignores, and so dide theire other felowes that sore thei harmed the saisnes. But a-bove alle other dide sir Gawein wele, and Elizer, and the kynge Ban of Benoyk, and the kynge Bohors of Gannes, *and leonce of Paierne, and Grascien of Trebes, and Pharien, for thei were not yet assembled but v bateiles. But tho that were assembled dide wonder wele, for a-gein theire strokes myght endure nother Iren ne stiell; and whan the kynge Pyncenars, that was bolde and hardy, saugh his peple so a-peire, he seide he hadde leuer dye but Pignores were a-venged, and he hilde a swerde in his right hande, and ran in to the presse where he saugh it thikkest, and be-gan to throwe down all that he raught, and slough a knyght of the

He gives great strokes and smites down horse and men.

Elizer kills Pignores.

Gawein praises him.

Those that did well.

*[Fol. 210*a*.]

Pyncenars kills a knight.

reame of Benoyk, that wele hadde don in armes all the day; and tho the kynge Ban was nygh wood for Ire, and spronge that wey with his swerde vp teysed to hym that hadde his knyght slayn, and smote hym with so grete ire that he slitte hym to the teth, and that was a thinge that hym moste discounforte all the day, the deth of his knyght, and than thei closed the saisnes rounde a-boute, and the bateile was grete and horible, ffor the Bretoun*s* were noble knyghtes; and whan Merlin saugh the hostes were assembled on bothe sides, he cleped Gawein, and Elizer, and the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and tolde hem how xl saisnes ledde the quene of Garlot to the sege of Clarence, "and yef thei lede hir thider it will turne to reprof, and therfore I rede we go after." "Now ride," quod Gawein, "and we shull yow sue." Than Merlin rode forth his weye, and well an hundred knyghtes in his companye; ffor thei douted to meten with moo peple on som part. But shull we speke of the xl saisnes that ledde the Quene of Garlot that was the wif of kynge Ventre.

Ban kills Pyncenars.

Merlin tells of the queen of Garlot.

He rides forth with a hundred knights in his company.

Whan the xl saisnes were past the bateile two myle, thei entred in to a wode, where-ynne was a feire medowe and a welle springe, and thei turned that wey hem for to a-kele and drinke of the clier water, and a-lighten with the quene be-fore the welle, that made the grettest doel of the worlde, and thei myght not hir conforte for nothinge that thei cowde do; but she cried with lowde steuen, "Haa, kynge Ventres, this day shall departe the love of me and of yow; ffor I trowe yow neuer to se no more;" and than she swowned in theire armes that hir hilde, and whan she was oute of hir swownynge she cried and made grete sorowe, and the saisnes were ther-of doelfull and wolde well she hadde be in place that she hadde liked beste, and counforted hir moche, but ther-of was no nede; ffor she braied and cride lowde, so that Gawein and his companye it herde clierly, and turned thider her wey, and saugh the knyght*es* and the Quene that cried so lowede.

The Saxons alight with the queen,

who swoons.

Gawein hears her cries.

Whan Gawein saugh his aunte, he spored his horse and seide to the saisnes, "Ffeire lordes, lete be the Quene,

He calls to the Saxons to leave her alone.

and go youre wey quyte, ffor I can yow good thanke for that ye haue of hir pite, and gramercy for that curtesie." Whan Margou*ns* the botiller of kynge Pignores herde sir Gawein thus speke, he asked of his felowes what was her rede, and thei seide thei hadde leuer to dye than leve the Quene. "And to that ar ye come a-noon," quod Gawein. Than he ran to hem with swerde drawen, and smote so the firste that he mette that the heed fill on the grene *be-fore his aunte, and the saisnes sterte vp a-noon, and the myschef was grete, for that thei were on foote, and neuertheles thei slough bothe horse and knyghtes, for thei were of grete prowesse, but ther-of myght not a-vaile, for alle were thei deed, that nought oon ascaped, saf only Margons the botiller that hidde hym in a bussh, and sir Gawein and his companye com a-gein to the Quene, and counforted hir swetly, and she hem asked what thei were. "Madame," he seide, "I am Gawein, youre nevewe, the sone of kynge looth of Orcanye, and this lorde that is here is the kynge Ban of Benoyk, and these other knyghtes ben oure felowes." Whan the lady this vndirstode she was gladde, and thanked hem hertely of the socour, and than thei sette hir on a palfrey that thider was brought, and returned to the hoste where-as was the kynge Arthur and the other princes fightinge; and many of her frendes loste the cristin er the saisnes myght be disconfited. Whan Arthur hadde slain Magloras the kinge that was the sustenement of the saisnes, and the kynge looth hadde smyte of the hande of the kynge Syuarus, than fledde thei alle; and whan sir Gawein and his companye were returned, the hoste enchased the saisnes so nygh euer at the spore; and Brandons returned often, and he ne smote noon a right stroke, but he were ther-with a-noon deed; and whan sir Gawein saugh hym so demene, and saugh the grete slaughter that he made of the peple, he thought wele that he was som high lorde of grete lynage, and wele it shewed by his armes that he were a kynge or a prince, and Gawein preised hym moche in his herte, and fain wolde he hadde be cristin yef it myght haue be, and seide, "Knyght, thow art right bolde and full of grete hardynesse, art

He kills the first he meets.

*[Fol. 210*b*.]

None escape but Margons.

The queen thanks Gawein and the others for their succour.

Arthur slays Magloras, and Looth smites off the hand of Syvarus.

Gawein meets Brandoris,

thow Duke or kynge that hast in the soche valour and strength?" "In feith," quod he, "my name is Brandou*n*s, and am kynge of a partye of Saxoyne, and am nevew to the richest kynge of all the world, that is the kynge hardogabrant, that is chief lorde of all Saxonie." "Certes," seide Gawein, "it semeth well, for in the is grete valour and high prowesse, and it is grete harme that thow art no cristin, and fain I wolde that thow so were to respite the fro deth." "Of that," quod the kynge, "that thow spekest haue I merveile, for I haue lever to be deed than to be cristin." To that shalt thow come hastely," quod Gawein, "and that me repenteth sore, ffor moche wolde I love thy companye yef it the liked." "Hit shall neuer me plese," quod Brandou*n*s; and whan Gawein that herde, he ran vpon hym full Irousely, and smote hym so with Calibourne his good swerde that the heed clef a-sondre; and whan the saisnes saugh theire lorde deed, thei were sore dismayed; and after that in hem was litill defence, and the cristin hem wounded on euery side, and hem slough, and all to-hewe; and whan thei hadde do this, thei thanked moche oure lorde of the grete honour*e* that he hath hem do at this iourney. Than com sir Gawein and the kynge Ban be-fore the kynge Arthur, and be-fore all the baronye, and p*re*sented the kynge Ventre with his wif, and tolde herynge hem alle how he hadde hir rescowed, and the kynge hem thanked hertely, and made grete ioye, and alle the barou*n*s were gladde, and than thei drough a litill a-side from the felde where the bataile hadde be, and Arthur made *picche his teintes in the medow be-fore Garlot vpon the river, and so dide alle the other princes, and rested till on the morowe, and the Quene entred in to the castell of Garlot; and on the morowe, as sone as it was day, Arthur sette forth his peple the streight wey towarde Clarence. But now a-while shull we reste of Arthur and his baronye, and speke of Margou*n*s the botiller.

and tells him he wishes he was a Christian.

He smites off his head.

Gawein presents Ventre's wife to him.

*[Fol. 211*a*.] Arthur pitches his tents before Garlot.

He sets forth for Clarence on the morrow.

So longe dide Margou*n*s hidde hym in the busshes till that Gawein, and the kynge Ban, and her companye were gon with the Quene; and than he repeired to the welle and fonde his horse that he hadde tacched to a tre, and than he rode forth faste till he com to the hoste be-fore Clarence, and tolde the kynge hardogobran how alle the forreyers that he hadde sente be-fore the town of Garlot were deed and discounfited; and whan Hardogobran this dide vndirstonde he was sorowfull and pensif. Than sterte vpon his feet the kynge Gondofles, and seide to the kynge Hardogobran, "Sir, yef it like yow I will go se what it is, and lede with me Salebrun and Magaloes, and Sorbare, and Meliadus, and the kynge Brangore, and in oure companye xl^{Ml} men, ffor I may not trowe that foure so myghty kynges as the kynge Brandon youre cosin, and the kynge Pyncenars, and the kynge Pignores, and the kynge Magloras myght not be brought to disconfiture by no power of the cristin;" and while thei spake these wordes com Syuarus that hadde his hande smyten of, and tolde hem trewe tidinges, and the tokenynge of his arme; whan the kynge Hardogobran saugh the kynge Syuarus so araied, he was wo for sorowe, ffor he hadde hym moche loved; and whan he knewe the deth of the foure kynges than was he wood oute of witte, ffor Magloras and Brandou*n*s were bothe his nevewes; and than he comaunded to the kynge Gondofles to go take vengaunce for his nevewes, and he seide he wolde, and in all haste rode forth his wey, and with hym fifty Ml men, and devided her peple in v bateiles, and in euery bateile x^{Ml} men; and the first bataile ledde Salubru*n*, and the Duke lonor the lestregues that other, and the kynge Sorbares, and the kynge Meliadus, and the Eirll ffragelles the thirde, and the kynge Brangoires, and the Castelein Melekins the fourthe, and the kynge Gondofles, and his brother Transmaduc the fifte; these rode fro the sege of Clarence oon after a-nother towarde the Castell of Garlot, and rode so by day and by nyght till thei mette the hoste that Merlin dide gide in a feire grene medow that was a myle and a half*e* of lengthe, and ther hadde Merlin devised vij batailes that after hym dide folowe; and the first bateile condited the kynge Ventres, and the kynge Tradilyuaunt, and the Duke Escam with xx^{Ml} men, and the kynge

Margouns comes to Hardogobran, and tells of the defeat of the Saxons.

Gondofles says he will go to see.

Syvarus comes in.

Hardogobran is very angry,

and commands Gondofles to go and be revenged.

He takes with him 50,000 men.

They ride towards Garlot, and meet Merlin's host.

The leaders of the Christians.

The names of the leaders.

*[Fol. 211*b*.]

The two hosts meet.

Triamores smites Salubrun, who kills him.

Escam kills Salubrun.

Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and the kynge de Cent Chiualers ledde the seconde with xxx^{Ml} men; and the kynge of Northumbirlonde, and the kynge of South-walis, and Nabulall the thridde with xxx^{Ml} men; and the fourthe ledde Cleodalis the Senescall of Carmelide, and the kynge Carados, and the kynge looth of Orcanye with xxx^{Ml} men; and Aguyneron the Senescall of kynge Clamedien, and ffamus the Senescall of Evadain, and the Senescall of kynge Pelles of lytenoys ledden the fifte bataile with xxx^{Ml} men; and the kynge Brangoires and the *Senescall of kynge lak ledden the vj bateile with xxx^{Ml} men; and Sir Gawein, and his brethern, and the companye of the rounde table were with the kynge Arthur in the vijth bateile wher-in were so moche peple that vnethe myght eny man hem nombre. In this maner mette the tweyne hostes of the Cristin, and the paynymes in the medowes from Garlot half a walsh myle; and as soone as the kynge Salubruns hem saugh he lete renne a-geins hem, and so dide Margons the botiller; and the Duke Escam com hem a-geins; but Triamores that was Castelein of Cambenyk rode be-fore, and smote Salubrun so harde a-mydde the shelde *that* the spere splindred on splyntes, and the hethen kynge hitte hym so sore that the shafte shof thourgh his body and bar hym deed vpright to the erthe; and than was the Duke Escam full angry, and smote Salubrun through the breste more than a spanne lengthe, and than he seide, "Hethen hounde, thy deth thou hast hent, yet haue I not my frende, and that me mysliked."

The two sides meet.

Ban, Bohors, and the King de Cent Chivalers run upon the Saxons.

Ther-with assembled the bateiles on bothe two sides, ther was many a grete growen spere frusshed a-sonder, and many a gome to the grounde glode in a stounde; but as soone as the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and the kynge de Cent Chiualers were come with the seconde bateile, and saugh the seconde bateile of the saisnes meve; than thei ronne to-geder fiercely, and ther myght a man haue sein many a helme hurled on an hepe, and many a shafte and shelde frayen to-geder, and many hauberke rente of double mayle; grete and hidyouse was the bateile, and the slaughter grete on bothe sides. Neuertheles whan Merlin saugh the saisnes so vertuouse, he ascride the kynge Ban, "Sir, what do ye now, ye myght haue hem putte oute of the place longe seth, ffor ye be moo peple be that oon half than thei be." Whan the kynge Ban and the other princes herde Merlin so crie, thei were half shamefast. Than thei ronne on the saisnes with grete vigour, and made hem resorte a-gein magre them alle, and made hem frusshe on the thridde bateile, that the kynge Meliadus, and ffragilles, and lanor de beting*es* dide condite, and these sette hem a-geins; ther was harde bateile, and merveilouse and grete occision on bothe sides that piteouse was to be-holden, and grete traueile thei hadden on bothe parties. And than assembled Brancors and Malaquyn the Castelein with the fourthe bateile, and Gelegny*a*unt, and the kynge Cleoles, and ther was crewell bateile and fell that in litill while was the felde couered with deed bodyes and wounded peple. In that metinge was Margou*n*s the botiller deed, and he was sore regreted of the saisnes, and with-oute faile the kynge Ban hym slough with a spere; and whan the kynge Sorbares it saugh he hadde hertely sorowe, and he com to the kynge Ban, and wende to smyte hym on the helme, but he kepte the stroke on his shelde, and he smote ther-on so sore that he slitte it to the bocle, and the stroke glood and smote of the horse heed, and the kynge fill to grounde, and his horse be-twene his legg*es*, *and the kynge Sorbares a-bode vpon hym with swerde drawen. But Pharien com hym a-geins that full sory was that his lorde was fallen, and smote so harde to the kynge Sorbares vpon the helme that he clef hym to the brayn, and he drough to hym his swerde, and he fill down deed; than he caught the horse be the reyne, and brought it to the kynge Ban; and whan the kynge was vpon horse he smote in to the bateile wroth and angry; and the kynge Bohors, and Dionas, and the kynge Ventres, and the Duke Escam, and alle the other princes dide merveiles of armes, ffor after theire strokes a-bode noon in sadill, and the saisnes were so grete and so myghti that thei dide hem grete damage of her peple, ffor so many thei slough

Merlin tells Ban they ought to have driven the Saxons back.

The third division of the Saxons.

The fourth division.

Margons is killed by Ban.

Sorbares comes to Ban.

*[Fol. 212*a*.]

Pharien kills Sorbares.

Bohors, Dionas, Ventres, and Escam do marvels.

Many of the Christians are slain.

of the cristin that it was wonder; and so many were deed and wounded of cristin and hethen, that the felde was all couered, so that oon myght not come to a-nother but ouer deed cors.

While this grete occision and this mortall strif dide dure were alle the bateiles assembled on bothe partyes, saf only the bateile of kynge Arthur, and that Merlin ledde a trauerse till thei were come vpon hem be-hynde, and than thei girde in a-monge hem crewelly; and after sir Gawein, and his brethern, and Elizer, and sir Ewein, and Segramor, and the companye of the rounde table were come to the bateile, ther myght men haue sein a-pertly wonder chyualries shewed of armes; and thei slough horse and men, and made sheldes to shiver, and hewen helmes from hedes, and kutte handes and legges a-sonder, and dide so wonderfull dedes that vn-ethe myght eny man be-leve the merveiles ne the grete hardure that thei made of the saisnes; and kay the stiwarde, to whom Merlin hadde yove the grete baner to bere of the kynge Arthur, was euer in the fore frounte as he that was of grete hardynesse, ther be-fore alle other dide well sir Gawein, and so dide the kynge Arthur, ffor he araught no saisne a full stroke, but he were deed; and full wele dede the princes that were come for the honor of god, these dide so well in that iourney, that thei ought wele to haue the pardon; and also full wele dide the knyghtes of the quene Gonnore, ffor after theire strokes a-bode noon standinge, but straught to grounde all that thei myght atteyne; and whan the saisnes were thus for-closed, thei were sore a-baisshed and turned to discounfiture, and with-oute faile thei were waxen so feble that of v kynges, and an erle, and a Duke, and of fifty thousande saisnes ne ascaped not foure Ml that all ne were deed or maymed; and with-oute doute it was right dere I-bought, ffor thei hadde slayn so many of the cristin that it was sore be-wepte as longe as the kynge Arthur lyved, ffor many a gentill lady be lefte wedowe, and many a gentill mayden dysolat, and with-outen counseile.

The company of the round table do wonders.

Kay is ever in the front.

The princes do well,

as do the queen's knights.

Four thousand Saxons only escape.

*[Fol. 212b.] Gondofles and Lanor de

*When the kynge Gondofles, and lanor de betinges saugh the grete slaughter of her peple that the cristin hadde slain and alle to-hewen, and sye how thei were for-closed in soche maner that thei myght not returne to theire hoste, and than were thei wroth, ffor thei sye wele thei were but deed, but yef thei toke counseile of hem-self. Than thei loked a-boute and be-helde towarde the see where thei saugh the cristin a litill vn-closed, and that wey thei toke the flight thourgh the medowes, streight toward the see that was ther nygh; and whan the kynge Arthur saugh hem goinge, he cried, "Now after hem alle attonys;" and ther*e* was many a stroke smyten in the chace, ffor the saisnes were grete and stronge, and bolde and hardy, and full of grete prowesse, and often thei returned vpon hem that hem pursued, and the cristin hem resceyved with good will, and ther*e* were many of the saisnes deed and sore wounded, and the chace so endured, turnynge often as thei were in flight, till that thei com to the see, where thei fonde thre of theire Galeyes, that Landalus dide guyde, and a-boode ther for vitaile that sholde come from hem that were gon in forrey to the Castell of Garlot; and whan the saisnes saugh the Galeyes thei were full gladde, and ronne in who that myght first in the grettest haste. But thei cowde not hem so hasten but ther was of hem drowned mo than two thousande, and thei that were entred kutte a-sonder the ropes and [dressed] theire sailes, and ascaped in to the see, and wente ther as the wynde and fortune wolde hem drive, that in euell maner hadde theire ioure araied; and whan the kynge Arthur and his barou*ns* saugh that thei haue hem so loste, thei returned to the playnes of Garlot to theire tentes, and yolde graces to oure lorde of the victorie that thei hadde in this bateile; and for thei were wery for traueile, thei hem resten at theire ese of all that thei myghten as thei that hadde grete myster, ffor wery thei were of the traueile of the strokes yevinge and also rescey[u]inge in the stour, that hadde be right grete, and than ete and dranke, and than loked the wounded and hurt peple, and hadde hem to the castell of Garlot, and were of hem xxxv knyghtes, and v were wounded of the companye of the rounde table, wherfore the kynge Arthur was full pensif and sory, and that oon was hervy de rivell, and

Betinges are very wroth.

They take to flight.

Arthur orders them to be followed.

The chace continues to the sea.

The Saxons are glad when they see the galleys, but more than 2,000 are drowned.

Arthur and his barons return to Garlot.

They are weary.

Five of the round table are wounded.

males le bruns, and the thridde was Clamedos, and the fourthe was Arestobolus, and the v^{e} landou*ns* of Carmelide; and the kynge Arthur p*ra*ied the leche to take of hem good hede, and thei badde he sholde not be dismayed, ffor in short terme thei sholde be hool, and sounde with helpe of god; and ther-fore was the kynge gladde and alle the Barou*ns*, and ther thei soiourned that nyght till it was day, that Merlin bad hem trusse tentes and Pavilou*ns*, and that thei sholde come after hym redy armed her enmyes to assaile, and a-non it was don as he comaunded; and than thei ride forth toward Clarence, and whan thei were so nygh, that thei myght se tentes and Pavelou*ns*, Merlin hem shewed to the kynge Arthur, and seide, "Sir, lo yonder theym by whos comaundement the londe is distroied of yow and youre barou*ns*. Now shall it be shewed how ther-of shall be take vengaunce, ffor this day be ye come all for to lese or all for to wynne, this day shull men se who is bolde and hardy, or who is of valour, this day shall be sein who can smyte *with swerde or spere, this day shall be shewed the grete prowesse of the reame of logres, thys day is the grete nede and the myster, ffor this day shall the reame of logres be distroied or honoured, and I do yow to wete alle the barou*ns* that be here assembled that ye praye oure lorde to diffende the reame of logres from shame and myschaunce;" and thei alle seide, "Amen." And than alle thei cried bothe prevy and straunge that thei wolde alle do at his wille and at his pleiser; and he seide that seth thei wolde do after his counseill, thei sholde haue no drede of nothinge, and "ye shull haue this day the victorye;" and thei ansuerde, "We be alle ther-to redy and appareiled." Than seide Merlin, "I will that ye me graunte that in all thinge ye shull do my wille;" and thei seide thei wolde with good will. "Yet," quod Merlyn, "I will that the kynge Arthur me graunte firste of alle;" and than he graunted hym a-noon right, and so dide alle the other; and than seide Merlin, "Ffeire lordes, this day is come the grete distruxion of the grete Breteigne, but yef god put to his hande and his good counseile, ne it may not be distrued in no man*er*. Ne these

Arthur prays the leech to take care of them.

The host ride towards Clarence.

Merlin says that on this day the prowess of Logres shall be shewn.

*[Fol. 213*a*.]

All are to do his pleasure,

and they will have the victory;

but the Saxons will not be defeated till the barons peple shull neuer be disseuered ne departed er ye haue pees with the kynge Arthur, and that haue ye me graunted."

are at peace with Arthur.

Whan the barou*n*s this vndirstoden ther were some that it liked nothinge, but other-wise myght it not be, and so thei graunted alle to the volunte of Merlin, and dide homage to the kynge Arthur oon after a-nother, and of hym resceived theire londes and theire fees all tho that ought it for to do; and than the ioye was grete thourgh all the hoste; and than thei devised theire bateiles, and wente a-gein the saisnes that weren at the sege be-fore Clarence that it dide assaile from day to day, but it was so stronge that thei myght but litill wynne, ffor it was well garnysshed of good peple and vitaile, ffor alle tho that eny armes myght bere of x myle a-boute were with-ynne the town bothe knyght, and burgeise, and oon and other, wher-of ther was lv.^{Ml} that many of hem were full bolde and hardy, and defensable, and diffended the town a-gein the saisnes full vigerously, and launched at hem many a quarell, and many a sharp*e* spere and dart wher-with many a saisne was slain and sore wounded, that neuer after ne dide ride ne go; and grete and hidouse was the assaut the same hour that the cristin com vpon; and Merlin and his companye com with the grete baner in his hande, and whan he com nygh the saisnes he sente his peple in four partyes of the hoste of saisnes, and smyten thourgh the tentes and thou[r]gh the pavelons, and kutte a-sonder ropes and cordes, and threwe down all that stode vpright, and the saisnes that of this comynge toke no rewarde, herde the noyse, and the bruyte, and the lowde cries, and saugh theire pavelou*n*s ouerthrowen on euery side, thei were gretly affraied and lefte the assaute, and turned that wey who that myght sonest, eche hastyer than other; and than ther was soche noyse and shoute whan eche man cried his ensigne that oon myght here it a myle of lengthe; and than be-gan the bateile fierce and merveilouse, and smyte sore with speres and swerdes that oon vpon the tother, and grete was the slaughter on bothe sides. But for oon *that was deed of the cristin was foure deed of the saisnes, neuertheles thei were moo peple, and

The barons do homage to Arthur.

They go against the Saxons.

The people of Clarence defend the town.

Merlin and his company come with the great banner.

They throw down the tents of the Saxons.

The battle is very sore.

*[Fol. 213*b*.]

Hardogobran comes against Cleoles.

They fight.

Both fall to the ground.

The Saxons remount Hardogobran.

Cleoles's left arm is broken.

His men go into the battle to avenge their lord. They slay Brangore and Margounces.

of gretter strengthe than were cristin. But the cristin were wonder light and delyuer, and full of high prowesse to furnyssh a bateile, and at the firste brunt was many a cristin leide to grounde, and many a saisne deed, wherfore the kynge hardogobran was full wroth and angry, and he griped in his hande a grete plante of an oke ther-on an heed of steill sharp I-grounde, and com rynnynge with grete randon a-gein the kynge Cleoles that for the love of oure lorde was come to that iourney with vij^{Ml} men that full well dide in that stour*e*; and whan Cleoles saugh hym come, he deigned not to fle as he that was of grete hardynesse, but turned the heed of his horse with his spere in fewtre, and mette so with grete raundon and force that the sheldes perced and hauberkes dismayled, but the flessh thei not touched, but thei hurteled so to-geder with theire helmes and sheldes, for the horse com with grete ravyn, and mette breste a-gein breste that bothe fill to grounde, horse and the men, ffor the speres were spent, and thei lefte lyinge on the grounde sore a-stonyed that thei myght not meve, ffor the horse lay vpon hem as thei hadde be deed, and the two kynges were bothe in swowne theym vnder; and grete was the bateile to rescowe the two princes, ffor alle the bateilles of the saisnes ronne that wey, and also dide the cristin. Ther was many a hevy stroke yoven and resceyved, and the saisnes remounted*e* the kynge hardogobran; but first was deed moo than two thousande what oon and other, and on that other side the cristin remounted Cleoles, but thei fonde his lifte arme broken in the falle that he hadde, and ther-fore were his men sory and wrorth, and a-noon lete bere hym to the harneys; and whan thei hadde leyde hym on a cowche, he preide his men for goddes love to go to the bateile, and thei so dide full Irouse, and in talent to avenge theire lorde, and thei slough at that enuaye two kynges of the saisnes wher-of that oon was cleped Brangore, and the tother Margou*n*ces. This Margounces was cosin germayn to Aungis the saisne, and than thei be-gonne to do so well in armes that moche were thei preised and comended, and be-holde for grete merveile of the saisnes and of the cristin; and also on that other side faught the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and the kynge Ventres, and the kynge Vrien; and on a-nother side of the bateile faught the kynge Tradilyuaunt of north walys, and the kynge de Cent Chiualers, and the kynge Clarion of Northumbirlonde, and the Duke Escam of Cambenyk; and on that other side of the hoste faught the kynge Belynans, and the kynge of Strangore, and the kynge of Scotlonde, and the kynge of Cornewaile, and Mynoras the senescall of the kynge lak, and of the kynge Euadain that were brethern to the kynge Clamedien, and Galegnynans the Senescall of Galehaut, the sone of the Geaunt, and the Duke Belyas of loseres, and Margondes, the senescall of Sorloys, that alle were come for the love of oure lorde; *and on that other side Gosenges, the sone of kynge Amant, and Nabunall his Senescall, and Cleodalis the Senescall of kynge leodogan of Carmelide; and on a-nother part of the hoste was the kynge Arthur, and the kynge looth, and sir Gawein, and his brethern, and sir Ewein, and Segramor, and kay the stiwarde that bar the baner, and the bateile was so well be-gonne on euery parte that it was merveile; and Merlin wente from o bateile to a-nother, and satte vpon a courser, and cried lowde, "Now lete se now gentill knyghtes, now is come the day and the houre that youre prowesse shall be shewed;" and whan the kynge and the princes herde Merlin crie, thei constreyned hem-self to shewe the grettest force that thei hadden; and whan thei of the town saugh the bateile so mortall and so dolerouse, and thei saugh the cristin and the saisnes throwen to grounde so thikke, that oon fill on a-nother. And thei saugh the signes of the reade crosse in the white baners, and thei thought wele it was socour that god hadde hem sent, and made the yates to be opened and issed oute of the town alle armed and smote in to the bateile full vigerously, and be-gonne to do full well in armes, and so dide alle the other. But a-monge the saisnes thei fonde grete diffence. But the barouns and the saisnes that herde Merlin crye that the day was come of the grete nede, and than eche of hem shewed his grettest force, and be-gonne to do so well on

The fighters among the Christians.

*[Fol. 214*a*.]

Merlin moves about in the battle.

When the people of the town see the red cross, they open the gates and issue forth.

The Saxons get the worst of the fight. Arthur, Gawein, Ban, and Bohors do marvels.

euery side that the saisnes were sore atte the werse. But who dide wele or who nought in that iourney, hem alle dide Arthur surmounte, and sir Gawein, and his brethren, and sir Ewein, and Segramor, and Elizer, and the kynge Ban, and the kinge Bohors. These shewed wonderfull merveiles with theire bodyes, ffor a-gein theire strokes hadde no knyght power to a-bide in his sadell, ne no steill hem with-stode; and dide so well be the grete hardynesse of theire bodyes that the saisnes were putte to discounfiture, ffor thei toke no rewarde to sle the pore saisnes, but turned the heedes of theire horse thider as thei saugh the richeste apparence of armes and stedes; and dide so well that of alle the kynges that the kynge Hardogobran hadde brought, ne ascaped but he and v kynges, and of hem oon was the kynge Orienx, and the seconde the kynge Sorbar, and the thridde the kynge Cornycans, and the fourthe was the Admyrall Napin, and the vth was the kynge Murgalans de trebahan; these v kynges ascaped with the kynge Hardogobran, and hadde well in her companye xxx^{Ml} saisnes, that alle departed from the bateile mate and discounfited be strengthe of the swyftnesse of horse, and fledde to theire navie, and the cristin hem chaced to the see, and hilde hem so shorte in the entringe to the shippes that ther were of hem slain and drowned the haluendell or more; and thei that were in the shippes ascaped wroth and sorowfull for the losse that thei hadden, and thei hadde but litill while gon whan thei saugh the shippe of kynge Gondofles, and lanor *that were fledde fro the discounfiture, and eche of hem knewe well other, and made full grete sorowe for theire grete losse, and in this maner thei went sailinge thourgh the see. But of hem at this tyme speketh not the storie, but turneth to speke of the kynge Arthur, and of his companye.

Hardogobran and five other kings only escape,

with 30,000 Saxons.

The Christians chase them to the sea.

*[Fol. 214*b*.] The Saxons are sorry for their loss.

CHAPTER XXX.

DEPARTURE OF BAN AND BOHORS, AND THEIR VISIT TO AGRAVADAIN.

Arthur and his barons thank God

Whan the kynge Arthur hadde discounfited the saisnes, he and his baronye repeired gladde and ioyfull in to the felde ther as the bateile hadde I-be, and thanked our lorde hertily of the honour and victorie that he hadde graunted hem for to haue, and of the grete wynnynge of clothes of silke and golde, and siluer, and riche pavelou*n*s, and goode stedes, and armures; and the kynge Arthur hem departed by comon assent of alle the Barou*n*s after thei were of astate or degre, and withhilde not to hym-self the valew of a ferthinge; and than the princes entred in to the town gladde and ioyfull, and dide entere the deed corps, and hem that were wounded serched theire sores, and hadde good leches, and soiourned ther v dayes; and the tidinges ran thourgh the londe how the saisnes were discounfited, and chaced from the town of Clarence oute of the londe, and distroied and slain; and than alle the saisnes that were thourgh the londe, whiche hadde not be at the bateile, thei returned in to Saxoyne sory and wroth, for theire frendes that thei hadde loste; and whan the kynge Arthur hadde a-biden in the town of Clarence v dayes with grete feste and ioye, than departed the princes fro hym, and eueriche of hem wente in to his owne contrey, and thus thei departed fro hym with grete love, and hilden of hym theire fees and honours; and the straunge princes that for love of oure lorde were come to that iourney returned home in to theire contreyes; and the kynge Arthur, and the kynge Ban of Benoyk, and the kynge Bohors of Gannes, and the kynge looth of Orcanye, and sir Gawein, and his brethren, and theire companye, and theire meyne were resceyued with grete ioye at Cameloth of the Quene Gonnore, and of alle the peple; and than com Merlin to the kynge Arthur, and seide, "Sir, thanke be god ye haue the londe delyuered of the euell peple at this tyme, and ther-fore ye owe to haue grete ioye and all cristin peple, ffor now be thei sure all the peple of this londe; and ther-fore now may wele the kynge Ban and the kynge Bohors repeire hom in to theire contrey, ffor longe tyme is it past that thei saugh not theire wiffes ne theire meyne, and thei haue a full felon neighbour that gladly wolde hem annoyen, and that is the kynge Claudas de la desert, and therfore shull thei passe the

for the victory.

Arthur divides the booty.

The princes enter the town.

The Saxons return to Saxony.

The princes depart to their own countries.

Arthur, Ban, Bohors, Looth, and Gawein come back to Cameloth.

Merlin says Ban and Bohors should return to their country.

see and take kepe to theire lond*es*, and of that thei haue for to do;" and whan the kynge Arthur this vndirstode, he ansuerde full debon*er*ly.

Arthur agrees to what Merlin says.

"Feire frende, Merlin," seide the kynge, "the princes shull do theire volunte, and ye shall yours. But moche more I love to haue youre companye than youre departynge; ffor the companye of so worthy men as thei ben ne ought annoy to no prince. But seth it pleseth yow, and that ye will it be so I moste it nede suffre and do youre volunte." "Sir," seide Merlin, "it be-houeth to be so at this tyme, ffor ye haue now no myster of theire a-bidinge;" and in this maner departed the two kynges and ride towarde the see in grete ioye, and Merlin that moche hem loved hem conveyed; and fill that the firste nyght that thei departed from Cameloth that thei come to a Castell that stode in a maresse, so wele and so feire sittinge, and so cloos that it douted noon assaute, and this Castell was closed rounde with *vij walles thikke and high, and feire enbateiled, and right deffensable; and with-ynne the bailie were v. toures that were high and streight all rounde, and foure were mene, and the fifthe was gret and high, and well hurdeysed a-boute with-ynne and with-oute, and grete diches, and depe full of water, and the dongeon that stode in the myddill was grete and high, and all a-boute the walles of the Castell was marasse that dured two myle so full of myre and water that noon myght come ther-to, but he were drowned. In to this castell was but oon entree, and that was so streite that two horse myght not ther-on mete, oon be-side a-nother; and a-bove this marasse was a chauchie fro place to place of the breede of a spere lengthe made of chalke and sande stronge and thikke and wele made, and this cauchie was of lengthe a stones caste, and the remenaunt was made of plankes and of tymbir, so that noon ne myght passe ouer yef the plankes hadde be take a-wey, and at the ende of the cauchie was a grete water, but ther-to com no shippes, but it was right feire and plesaunt, and good fisshinge; be-fore the foot of this cauchie was a pyne tre a litill fro the water in a medowe of the space of an acre

The two kings ride to the sea.

They come to a castle.

*[Fol. 215*a*.] with seven walls,

and five towers.

There is only one entry.

On a pine tree,

londe or more, where-ynne the grasse was feire and high, and the pyne tre was right feire and full of bowes, so that oon braunche passed not a-nother of height, and vpon a braunche of this pyne was hanged by a cheyne of siluer, an horne of yvorie as white as snowe, ffor that thei sholde it sowne that com for to be herberowed in the castell, or elles who that passed forth by that wolde aske Iustinge. Of these two thinges serued the horne that ther was hanged.

there is a horn of ivory fastened with a silver chain.

Whan the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and her companye come to the pyne, and saugh the horne that ther did hange, thei seide that for nought was it not sette, and a-noon thei supposed it was for to aske passage of the foorde or elles to aske Iustes. But thei saugh the Castell so fer fro thens that thei trowed not the sounde of the horne myght not thider ben herde, and on that other side thei saugh the Castell so feire and so riche and well sette, that thei hadde neuer seyn noon soche of the grettenesse, and saugh the cauchie and the entre so stronge, and so streite, that thei were alle merveiled; and the two kynges seide to Merlin, and asked yef he knewe what the castell was cleped that was so feire and well closed; and Merlin seide it was the castell of marasse, and was longinge to a knyght that was of grete puyssaunce, and of grete renon, and ther-to he was bolde and hardy at armes, and his name is Agrauadain ly noir*e*. "Certes," seide the kynge, "of Agrauadain haue I herde well speke in many a place, and so helpe me god he ought wele to be a noble man that is here so well herberowed; ffor a-bove alle the Castelles that euer I sigh is this the feirest, and gladly wolde I lye ther-in to-nyght." "To that shull ye well come," quod Merlin; "but no straunge knygh[t] cometh to this castell er he haue sowned this horne, ne noon dar very ouer the water er he haue blowe this horne, ffor than shall he not passe with-oute bateile." "I will sowne the horne," seide the kynge Ban, "yef ye * will yeve me leve." "In feith," seide Merlyn, "ther-in is no pereile, but other to aske a Iustinge or elles the feriage." "In feith," seide the kynge Ban, "and though ther were more pereile I shall it

Ban and Bohors come to the pine.

They think the horn cannot be heard at the castle.

Merlin says the castle belongs to Agravadain ly Noir.

No strange knight can come to the castle till he has sounded the horn.

Ban says he will sound the horn.

*[Fol. 215*b*.]

sowne, seth that ye graunte me ther-to leve." "And I will well it so be," quod Merlin; "ffor yef god will, ther-of shall come noon euell." A-noon wente the kynge Ban to the horne, and sette it to his mouthe, and blew it so high and so cler as he that I-nough hadde of force and power*e* and breth, that all the marasse ther-of resowned, and the sowne of the water and the marasse bare the sownde in to the castell, that the lorde of the place it herde, and a-noon he asked his armes, for so was his custome; and the kynge be-gan to blowe a-gein thries to-geder lightly, for the Castell was so fer that the kynge wende the noyse myght not haue come thider.

He blows it.

He blows again thrice.

When the lorde of the Castell herde hym blowe so harde, and that he was so hasty, he hilde ther-of grete dispite, and for anger lepte on a grete stede in haste with shelde a-boute his nekke, and his spere in honde, and a-noon the yate was open; and he rode oute a grete raundon, and com to the foorde, and whan he saugh the peple on the tother side, he cried and asked what peple thei were; and the kynge Ban ansuerde, "Sir, we be knyghtes, that requere herberowe this nyght yef it plese yow, and feriage for oure horse at this foorde." "With whom be ye," quod Agrauadain. "Sir," quod Merlin, that was nigh; "we be of this other contrey of the partyes of Gaule." "And of what parties of Gaule," quod Agrauadain. "Sir," seide Merlin, "thei holde theire londes of god and of kynge Arthur." "In godis name," seide Agrauadain, "thei haue a gode lorde, ffor of the kynge Arthur may thei not empeire, for he is a noble kynge, and a good knyght, and he is my lorde, and for his love shull ye haue hostell at youre volunte." "Gramercy, sir," seide the kynge; than a-noon right Agrauadain hym turned, and badde the knyghtes hym sewe, and seide thei were alle welcome; and thei wente a-noon after hym oon after a-nother ouer the bregge to the gat*es* of the castell, and entred in after that the lorde of the place was entred, ffor ther was no space to turne on his horse er he were entred and paste the yate; and than the lorde hymself condited hem in to the castell, and a-noon lepen oute squyres

The lord of the castle is angry,

and comes to the ford, and asks who the people are.

Merlin answers they hold their lands of Arthur.

Agravadain bids the knights follow him,

and he conducts them to the castle.

and yomen to make hem a-light, and the lorde toke the two knyghtes be the hande, for that hym semed thei were princes and lordes of the othere, and ledde hem in to a chambir of the tour hem to vn-arme, and hym-self dide helpe for to vn-arme, and ther-while entred in thre maydenes of right grete bewte, wher-of tweyne were neces vn-to agrauadain; and the thridde was his doughter, and thei brought thre mantels furred with ermyn, and the cloth was scarlet, and thei caste hem vpon the two kynges; and the thridde vpon Agrauadain, and the kynge Ban that was a lusty knyght be-hilde the maydenys, and liked well theire companye, and countenaunce that were right feire and of grete bewte, that it was wonder to be-holde, and alle thre were of feire age, ffor the eldest was but xiiij yere, but a-bove alle the other was the lordes doughter the feirest; and Merlin be-hilde hir with grete anguyssh, and thought in his herte that *well were he that with soche a creature myght ly, "and ne were the grete love that I haue," quod he "to Nimyane, my love, I sholde haue hir this nyght in myn armes, and seth I may not hir haue, I shall lete hir be knowe with the kynge Ban;" and than he made a coniorison softly, and a-noon as he hadde it made the kynge Ban loved the mayden, and she hym also right sore.

Three maidens bring mantels for the two kings.

Ban is pleased with the maidens.

Merlin makes Ban *[Fol. 216*a*.] and the lord's daughter love each other.

Whan these two knyghtes were araide with these two mantels that the maydenys hadde brought, than Agrauadain, the lorde of the castell, sette hym down by hem, and loked on these two kynges, and knewe hem a-noon; and than he made hem gretter chere than he hadde do be-forn, and dide hem more reverence; and whan it was tyme to go to soper, the clothes were spradde vpon the tables thourgh the paleys that was grete and large, and the two kynges that were brethren satte down at the high table, and made agrauadain sitte down by hem and his wif that was a feire yonge lady of xviij yere of age, and the knyghtes were sette at other tables thourgh the halle, and the thre maydenys that were so feire and auenaunt were stondinge be-fore the two kynges, and be-fore Agrauadain; and Merlin that was with hem transformed in to

Agravadain sets the two kings down by him.

His wife is a young lady.

Merlin is transformed

into a young knight.

His head is yellow and curly, and his eyes are grey.

The daughter of Agravadain fixes her eyes on Ban,

and can think only of him.

the semblaunce of a yonge knyght of xv yere age, and was clothed in a short garnement party read and white, and was girt with a bawdrike of silke of brede of a spanne wele and richely harnysshed with golde and stones, and ther-on hinge a gipser of purpill samyte bete with golde, and hadde a peire of gloues hanginge hym be-hynde, and his heed was yelow and curle, and his iyen grey and grete in his heed, and kerved be-fore the kynge Ban knelinge, and he was moche be-holden of oon and other, ffor ther was noon that hym knewe saf the two kynges, ffor tho that were her meyne wende he hadde be with the lorde of the place, and for his grete bewte the maydenys be-hilde hym often ententifly. But the doughter of Agrauadain hadde sette hir iyen moste vpon the kynge Ban more than on eny othir thinge, for the co*n*iurison that Merlin hadde made, and putte hir to grete affray; and she liked hym so well that it made hir to chaunge colour ofte sithes, and longe her thought er the clothes were taken vp, ffor fain wolde she haue leyn be-twene his armes, and she cowde not wite how that volunte to hir com. But so moche she hath ther-on sette her thought, that to noon othir thinge she toke no tent but to thenke of hym.

This is through Merlin's spell.

Ban loves the girl,

and is angry with himself because of his wife,

*[Fol. 216*b*.]

and is ill at ease;

In this thought and this anguyssh was the mayden by the coniurison of Merlin; and on that other side was the kynge Ban so a-raied that he left pley and laughinge at the table, and cowde not wite how it was to hym come, and he was sory and wroth of that he hadde his love so turned, ffor he hadde to wif a yonge lady of grete bewte, to whom he ne wolden not false his feith; and on that other side he thought how he was herberowed ther-ynne, and the lorde of the place was a noble man and a curteyse, and hadde hym don grete honour*e*, and hym semed it were vntrouthe and treson, and to grete vilonye sholde it to hym turne yef he required hir of shame or dishoneste. Ne no gretter shame myght he hym do than diffoule his doughter in soche maner; and *ther-with he wax so euell at ese that he wiste not what to do, and alwey he seide in his corage that he wolde neuer hir requyre of no soche thinge. But Merlin thought wele in his herte that so sholde it not go, ffor he thought it hadde be grete harme yef thei hadde not come to-geder, ffor soche fruyte sholde come be-twene hem wher-of all the londe of Breteigne sholde be honoured by the grete prowesse that he sholde haue.

but Merlin intends them to come together.

All thus seide Merlin to hym-self; and whan the clothes were drawen, and thei hadde waisshe theire handes thei yede to the wyndowes, and be-helde the marasse; and on that othir side thei saugh the foreste and the forteresses that were ther a-boute, and the erable londe and the feire fisshinge, and saugh the vynes and the contrey so feire that merveile it was to be-holden; and ther thei stode till it was tyme to go to bedde, and entred in to a chambre by the halle where the maydenys hadde made redy two beddes soche as apertend to two soche princes, and thei were brought to bedde with grete ioye and feste; and whan the two kynges were brought to bedde, the lorde of the place wente to bedde with his wif, and the thre maydenys lay in a-nother chamber next by the chamber of Agrauadain, so that noon myght entre but thourgh his chamber; and a-noon as thei were a-bedde, Merlin be-gan an enchauntement, and made hem to slepe alle that were with-ynne the Castell saf only the kynge Ban and the mayden. These tweyne were so surprised that oon vpon that other, that thei myght nother slepe ne reste, and Merlin, that wolde acheive that he hadde be-gonne, com in to the chambre ther the mayden lay, and toke hir softly by the hande and seide, "Now, feire lady, a-rise, and come to hym that so moche yow desireth;" and she that so sore was enchaunted myght not with-sey his volunte, but a-noon a-roos vp oute of hir bedde naked saf, she first dide on hir smok, and Merlin her ledde by her fader beddes side, and by the beddes of other knyghtes ther-ynne; but thei were so stronge a-slepe, that thei myght not a-wake. Thus wente Merlin and the mayden till thei com in to the chambre ther the two kynges lay, wher-ynne was light I-nough, and fond the kynge Bohors sore a-slepe, as he that was in the power of Merlin, and thei com streight to the kynge Ban that was at

They go to the windows.

Two beds are prepared for the two princes,

and the lord of the place goes to bed with his wife.

Merlin makes an enchantment, so that all sleep but Ban and the maiden.

Merlin takes the maiden by the hand.

and leads her to King Ban.

moche mysese, and seide, "Sir, lo here the gode [and] the feire whiche shall bringe forth the feire and the good, of whom the grete renomede shall renne thourgh all Breteigne."

Ban receives the maiden.

Whan the kynge saugh the mayden, and he hadde vndirstonde Merlin, a-noon he spradde his armes, and hir resceived gladde and myry, as he that moste do the comaundement of Merlin, and he hadde no power it to with-stonde, for the enchauntement wher-with he was so surprised that he myght it not forsake in no maner; ffor yef it were in poste he wolde it not haue do for all the reme of grete Breteigne, for sore he dredde oure lorde; and satte vp and resceyved the mayden in his armes, and she dide of hir smok, and leide hir down by hym, and her toke in his armes and she dide hym, and eche of hem made feire chere and right good semblaunt, as thei hadde be to-geder xx yere, for noon of hem was a-shamed ne dismayed of other, and all this hadde Merlin it ordeyned. In this manere *was the kynge and the damesell till day, and than com Merlin to the kynge Ban, and seide that it were tyme that the damesell yede a-gein, and she dide on hir smok and hir kirtill; and the kynge toke a ringe of his fynger, and side, "Swete love, kepe this ringe for my love;" and the damesell it toke and sette it on hir finger, and so thei departed; and Merlin brought hir a-gein in to hir bedde, and made hir to ly down all naked that hadde conceyved a sone, of whom launcelot after hadde grete ioye and honour for the bounte and Chiualrie that was in hym. Whan Merlin hadde brought the damesell in hir bedde, he wente to his owne bedde and lay down, and than brake the enchauntement, and alle that were in the castell a-woke, and it was than feire day; and than a-rise knyghtes and squyres, and alle seruauntes, and made redy theire armures, and sadeled theire horse, and trussed coufres and males, and Merlin com to the kynge that was a-slepe, ffor the enchauntement of the love of the damesell was cessed, and he wiste well that he hadde by hir leyen, but he knewe not in what maner ne how he hadde hir in his bedde, saf he supposed it was by Merlin; and Merlin com to hym, and seide it was sone tyme

*[Fol. 217*a*.] They remain together till daybreak.

Ban gives the maiden a ring.

Merlin brings her back to her bed.

He breaks the enchantment so that all awake.

He comes to the king and

to ride; and whan the two kinges were vp, and alle tho that were ther-ynne; than com the lorde and the thre damesselles to the two kynges and salued, and thei hem grete a-gein godely; and whan the kynge Ban saugh the doughter of Agrauadain that al nyght hadde leyn with hym he be-heilde hir full ententifly, and she hym full swetly bowinge down with the heed as she that was shamefaste, that she hadde be so prevy with hym, and that she hadde be so bolde; and but yef the force and the enchauntement hadde not cessed, she ne hadde ther-of be nothinge a-baisshed for hym, and ther was neuer hour after but she hym loved more than eny other man, and that shewed well, for neuer after that wolde she neuer haue a-do with no man, but seide to hir-self that a woman that hadde ben so with a kynge ne ought neuer be so famyler with noon other man of lower degre. Ne neuer after wolde she be maried; and the kynge Ban toke hir be the hande, and seide, "Damesell, I moste nede departe at this tyme, but wher-so-euer I be I am youre knyght as trewly as eny man may be, and I praye yow haue in mynde to kepe youre body, ffor ye be conceyved with a sone, and that I do yow verily to wite of whom ye shull haue ioye and honour;" and of this Merlin hadde do hym to vndirstonde that knewe a partye of thinges that were to come; and the damesell ansuerde in baas voyce sore syghinge, and seide, "Sir, yef it so be god to his pleiser̃ sende me more ioye ther-of than I haue of youre departinge, ffor neuer here be-forn was love so soone departed, and seth yow be-hove nede for to go, I shall conforte my-self the beste wise I may with this that I am with conceyved; now god sende me grace that I be a gladde moder, ffor yef I lyve so longe that I may it se, hit shall be to me a myrour and confort in remembraunce of yow;" with that worde the kynge toke hir in his armes, and with sighinge comaunded hir to god; and the damesell returned to hir chamber with the maydenes *and the two kynges; and Merlin comaunded the lady to god, and thanked hir for the grete curtesie and chere that thei hadde founden; and after thei toke theire horse and departed oute

tells them it is time to ride.

The daughter of Agravadain is ashamed when she sees Ban.

She loves him more than any other man.

Ban tells her of the son she has conceived.

She says that it will be a comfort to her.

*[Fol. 217*b*.]

Merlin and the two kings

depart out of the castle.

They come to Benoyk.

Merlin takes leave of the kings, and goes to Nimiane.

He then goes to Blase, and tells him what has happened.

of the Castell, and rode forth the cauchie oon after a-nother, and Agrauadain hem conveyed to the pyne tre, and than returned; and the two kynges rode forth to the see, and founden shippes, and passed ouer; and whan thei were landed thei ride forth till thei come to Benoyk, where thei were resceived with grete ioye; but a-bove alle other were the two sustres, the Quenes gladde and ioyfull, and so the two kynges soiourned viij dayes in Benoyk with theire two wifes, and with hem also Merlin; and the ixthe day he toke leve of the two kynges and the Quenes, and of the other barou*n*s, and repeired to Nimiane, his owne love, that made hym grete chire, and of hym was gladde and ioyfull, ffor moche she hym loved for the grete debonerte that she hadde in hym founden, and he loved nothinge so wele as he dide hir, and wele it shewed, ffor he taught hir that he wolde not teche to noon other, and so he a-bode with hir viij dayes, and than dep*ar*ted and com to Blase, his maister, that so moche desired hym to se; and Merlin hym tolde the assemble on the playn of Salisbery, and how thei rescewed the Quene of Garlot, and the pray, and tolde hym alle thinges that were be-fallen seth he fro hym departed, and he hem wrote in his boke. But now shull we returne to speke of the kynge Arthur.

CHAPTER XXXI.

ARTHUR'S GREAT FEAST AT CAMELOT; THE BATTLE BEFORE TORAISE, AND DEFEAT OF KING RION.

Arthur abides at Cameloth.

He tells Gawein that he will hold a court,

Whan the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and Merlin were departed from the kynge Arthur for to go in to theire owne contrey, the kynge a-bode stille at Cameloth, gladde and myri with the Quene Gonnore that moche hym loved, and he hir, and so thei a-bide in ioye and myrthe longe tyme, till it drough nygh the myddill of Auguste; and than seide the kynge to sir Gawein, his nevew, that at the feste of assumpcion he wolde holde court roiall, and that all sholde be sent fore that were of hym holdinge londe or feo; ffor he seide he saugh neuer his hool power to-geder at no feeste that he hadde holden be-fore; "and therfore," quod he, "I will that alle be sent fore bothe fer and nygh bothe prive and straunge, and also I will that eche bringe with hym his wif or his love that my court may be the more honoured;" and sir Gawein seide that he hadde well devised, and that of gentell herte meved this purpos, "and ther-fore I be-seke yow that this be so don that it be to youre honour;" and the kynge seide, "Certes, feire nevew, I desire to do so that I haue ther-of honour, and that all the worlde ther-of may speke." Than sir Gawein lete write lettres and writtes, and sente hem to the Barouns, and to knyghtes of the londe, and comaunded hem alle as dere as thei hym loved that thei be on the assumpcion even at Cameloth, ffor than wolde he holden court grete and roiall, and euery man to bringe with hym his wif or his love; and the messagers wente to the princes and Barouns, and shewed hem theire lettres, and dide theire message thourgh the contrey; and the princes and the barouns made hem redy in *the moste roiall wise and com to the court as the kynge hadde comaunded, and euery man brought with hym his wife, and he that hadde no wife brought with hym his love; and than ther com thider so many that merveile it was to be-holde the nombre, ffor ther ne myght not the tenthe part in to the Citee of Cameloth, but loigged with-oute in the feire medowes in tentes and in Pavelouns; and the kynge hem resceived with grete ioye and grete honoure, and the quene Gonnore, that was the wisest lady of the worlde, resceyved the quenes, and the ladyes, and the maydenes, and damesels with grete honoure eueriche of hem by hem-self as she that hadde more witte and curtesie than eny lady in hir dayes, and yaf to hem riche yeftes of golde and siluer, and clothes of silke eueriche after theire astate; and she demened hir so well that thei seide ther was not soche a-nother lady in all the worlde as was she; and the kynge departed to knyghtes robes and armes, and horse, and dide hem so moche worshippe that day and curtesie, that thei loved hym the better as longe as theire

to which all far and near are to be invited,

so that all the world may speak of it.

Gawein sends to the barons and knights for them to come to Cameloth.

*[Fol. 218*a*.]

They come, and each brings with him his wife or his love.

Not a tenth part can get into the city. The others lodge in tents.

Queen Gonnore receives the ladies,

and gives them rich gifts.

The king divides robes, arms, and horses among the knights.

lif*e* endured; and that shewed well after in many a stour, and in many a nede, as ye shull heren her-after.

He holds a rich feast on the eve of the Assumption.

All the minstrels in the land of Britain come to Cameloth.

The joy and mirth endures till bedtime.

On the morrow the king, queen, and the barons hear mass at the minster of St. Stephen.

Arthur and the crowned kings ride;

so does Gonnore and the queens.

The kings and queens sit at the high dais.

Grete was the feeste that the kynge hilde on the euen of the assumpcion to the riche baronye that to hym were come. Whan the kynge and the barou*n*s hadde herde euesonge at the mynster of seint Steph*e*ne, the tables were sette in teintes and Pavelons, ffor thei myght not alle in to the town; and on that othir side was the Quene Gonnore, and the ladyes and damesels with soche ioye that merveile it were to reherse, ffor in all the londe of Breteigne, ne in all the power of kynge Arthur, ne lefte mynstrall ne iogeloure*e* ne oon ne other, but alle were come to that feeste; and at that soper were thei served so well as was convenient to so myghty a prince as was the kynge Arthur*e*, and thus endured thei in ioye and myrthe till tyme was to go to reste till on the morowe. And on the morowe a-roos the kynge Arthur*e*, and the riche barou*n*s, and the Quene, and wente to hire masse at the mynster of Seint Stephene, and the servise was honorably seide in the worship and reuerence of that high feste, and grete and riche was the offrande; and the kynge Arthur and alle other kynges and Quenes that day bar crownes in worship of the day, and so ther were lx crownes, what of kynges and quenes; and whan the masse was seide, and the seruise ended the kynge Arthur lepe on his palfrey, and alle the other kynges after hym I-crowned, and so dide the quene Gonnore and alle the other quenes, and eu*er*yche of hem a crowne of golde on theire heed*es*; and the kinge Arthur satte at the high deyse, and made alle the xij kynges sitte at his table downwarde a renge; and also in honour of the high feste of oure lady, he made the Quene Gonnore sitte by hym crowned, and so dide alle the other xij quenes by-fore theire lordes; and at other tables satte other princes, Dukes, and Erles, and othir knyghtes were sette richely thourgh the medowes in tentes and Pavelou*n*s with grete ioy and melodye that neuer was seyn grett*er* in no Court.

*[Fol. 218*b*.]

Kay brings the first dish

*And as thei were in this ioye, and in this feste, and kay the stiward that brought the firste mese be-fore the kynge, ther com in the feirest forme of man that euer hadde thei seyn be-fore, and he was clothed in samyte, and girte with a bawdrike of silke harnysshed with golde and preciouse stones, that all the paleys flamed of the light, and the heir of his hede was yelowe and crispe with a crowne of golde ther-on as he hadde ben a kynge, and his hosen of fin scarlet, and his shone of white cordewan orfraied, and bokeled with fin golde; and hadde an harpe a-bowte his nekke of siluer richely wrought, and the stringes were-of fin golde wire, and the harpe was sette with preciouse stones; and the man that it bar was so feire of body and of visage that neuer hadde thei sein noon so feire a creature; but this a-peired moche his bewte and his visage for that he was blinde, and yet were the iyen in his heed feire and clier; and he hadde a litill cheyne of siluer tacched to his arme, and to that cheyne a litill spayne was bounde as white as snowe, and a litill coler a-boute his nekke of silke harneysed with golde; and this spaynell ledde hym streight be-fore the kynge Arthur, and he harped a lay of Breteigne full swetely that wonder was to here, and the refraite of his laye salewed the kynge Arthur, and the Quene Gonnore, and alle the other after; and kay the stiward that brought the firste cours taried a-while in the settinge down to be-holde the harpur ententifly. But now we moste cesse of hem a-while, and speke of the kynge Rion.

before the kings. A fair man comes in

with a harp set with precious stones.

He is blind, and has a chain of silver attached to his arm, by which a spaniel leads him.

In this partie the storie seith that whan the kynge Ryon was discounfited of the kynge Arthur, and of the kynge leodogan of Carmelide, he departed from that stour sory and wroth, as he that all hadde loste in that bateile, and rep[e]ired hom in to his contrey triste and sorowfull, and swor his oth that neuer sholde he haue ioye ne reste till he hadde distroied the kynge leodogan, and chaced hym oute of his londe, and sente writtes and l*ette*res to alle the lordes and knyghtes of his reame in lengthe and in brede, and to alle the reames that he hadde conquered, and that were ix by a count, and assembled so moche peple that it was merveile to se; the first kynge that com at the comaundement of kynge Rion was the kynge

When Rion was discomfited by Arthur, he departed very angry.

He sends letters to his lords, and assembles much people.

The princes who came at his commandment.

Rion's princes.

Rion complains to them,

*[Fol. 219*a*.]

and requires them to help him.

They are to be ready at Toraise within two months.

They all agree, and return to their countries.

Rionbesieges Torayse.

Cleodalis comes out with 20,000 men, and fights fiercely.

Palerens, and hadde in his companye xv^{Ml} men that were bolde and hardy; after com the kynge Tasurs with xij^{Ml} men; and the kynge Brinans brought xiiij^{Ml} men wele horsed and a-raied for to helpe theire lorde, and the kynge Argans brought xi^{Ml} men; and the kynge Taurus brought xi^{Ml} men whiche hadde grete corage to a-venge the shame of kynge Rion; after that com the kynge Arade de galoire with xv^{Ml} men in his companye; and the kynge Solimas brought xx^{Ml} men wele horsed; and the kynge Kahadins brought x^{Ml}; and the kynge Alipantius of the londe des pastures brought xx^{Ml} men; whan thei were come and assembled at the comaundement of the kynge Rion, and he hem saugh alle be-fore hym he made his complaynt and his clamour*e* heringe hem alle, and seide to hem full sympilly, "Lordinges, ye be alle my liege men, and of me ye holde youre londes and youre fees, and *ther-fore ye owe to bere me feith a-gein alle men; and for I knowe youre hertes fin and trewe, and that ye wolde in nothinge a-gein me not erre, and therfore I yow pray and require that ye me helpe to a-venge my shame, nought only myn but alle youres; ffor he that doth to me shame or vylonye, he doth it not only to me, but to yow alle in generall, and therfore I pray yow and require be the oth that ye haue made to me that ye be with-ynne this two monethes be-fore Torayse a-gein the kynge leodogan of Carmelide that by his force hath me discounfited and chaced oute of the feilde, and therfore I require yow that ther on be take vengaunce;" and thei ansuerde alle with oo voice, and seide, "Of that it nedeth vs neuer to preyen, for this shall be don at yo*ure* plesier." With that thei departed and wente hom in to theire contrey, and made hem redy, and com at the day that was named with grete force be-fore the castell of Torayse; and the kynge Rion com with all his peple, and be-seged town all a-boute, and gadered the prayes in her comynge. But Cleodalis the stiward of Carmelide that was a noble knyght, and a trewe to his lorde chalenged it full fiercely of the forreyours, ffor he com out with xx^{Ml} men that he hadde with-holden to kepe the marches, and faught with hem fiercely, and rescowed the pray, and brought it in to the Castell and made shette the yates; and the kynge Rion and his peple logged a-boute the castell, and sette vp teintes and Pavelons, and rested the firste nyght, and on the morowe thei assailed the town and the castell; and the kynge leodogan and Cleodales cam oute by a posterne that opened a-gein the river, euen right a-geins the teinte of kynge Solymas that was gon to the assaute of a yate, and the kynge leodogan drof*e* thourgh the teintes and Pavelou*n*s, and with hym Cleodales, and caste down to the erthe all that vp-right dide stonde, and toke golde and siluer, and vesselles of golde and other Iuwelles, and brought in to the town, and in to the Castell by strengthe. Than were thei of the hoste full sory and wroth; and the kynge Rion seide all that sholde nought hem a-vaile, ffor he wolde neuer departe from the castell till he hadde it taken, and the kinge leodogan putte in his mercy; and than thei with-drough hem from the assaute, and so a-bide fyve dayes with-outen shotte or other dedes, and while that the kynge Rion lay thus at soiour, hit was tolde how the kynge Arthur hadde discounfited the saisnes, and chaced hem oute of the londe, and that at the assumpcion he sholde holde court roiall in the towon of Cameloth; and whan the kynge Rion herde thus, he seide, "Now lete hym feesten, ffor as soone as I haue the kynge leodogan in my bailly, I shall go vpon hym with so moché peple that he shall it not endure; and neuertheles yef the kynge Arthur come to me to aske mercy er I come vpon hym with myn hoste I will haue of hym pite, and suffre hym to regne, and of me holde his londe." "Sir," seide his men, "sende hym a message, and do hym to wite that it were better to hym to be-come youre man than to be distroied and his londe waste." "So will I do," quod the kynge Rion;" and than he lete write a letter, and it dide ensele with his seell, and than he cleped to hym a knyght in whom he moche trusted, and made *hym for to swere that he sholde take this letter to kynge Arthur in his owne hande, and he swor that in the same maner it sholde be do; and than the kynge Rion delyuered

Leodogan and Cleodales come out and bring in gold and silver to the town.

News comes to Rion how Arthur has discomfited the Saxons.

Rion says when he has conquered Leodogan he will go against Arthur.

He writes a letter to Arthur, and sends it by a messenger.

*[Fol. 219*b*.]

Rion commands his men to arm and assail the castle.

hym this letter*e*, and a-noon he departed and rode forth the nexte wey toward Camelot, and with hym but a squyer; and the kynge Rion a-bode stille be-fore Torayse, and comaunded his peple to armen hem, and to assaile the castell, ffor he hadde grete dispite that soche a place with so fewe peple sholde a-geins hym holde day or hour*e*, ffor hym semed he hadde mo knyghtes in his hoste tha*n* ther were men, and women, and childeren in the town, "and therefore it is grete shame to ley the sege, ffor we myght haue taken it at oure first comynge by force, and therfore shull we be the lesse preised in other contreis, and turne vs to reprof and cowardise, and thei that we shull werre vpon here-after shull haue of vs the lesse drede."

The princes and barons are ashamed.

Leodogan, Cleodalis, Guyomar, Hervy and Males issue out of the castle.

Cleodalis kills Margant.

He and his company return to the castle.

Whan the princes and the Barou*n*s herde the kynge thus speke, thei were somdell a-shamed, for thei dredde leste he sholde holde hem cowardes, and ronne to theire armes in all haste, and be-gonne to assaile the castell strongly; and thei that were with-ynne hem deffended manly and casten out stones, and sharpe speres and dartes, and slough of hem I-nowe in the diches; and the kynge leodogan, and Cleodalis, and Guyomar his cosin, and hervy de rivell, and Males le bruns issed out armed vpon horse of prise couered with still, and smote a-monge the peple of kynge Rion that by force hadde take a barbican, and ledde a-wey xv sergauntes that were bolde and hardy, and of that harme hem thought shame; and Cleodalis smot the kynge Margant with a spere that neither shelde ne hauberk myght hym a-vaile, for the spere shaft shewed thourgh his bakke be-hynde, and he blussht down deed to grounde; and whan his men saugh hym falle, thei lefte the prisoners and ronne thider; and whan thei founde hym deed, than be-gan the cry and the noyse, and lefte the assaute, and Cleodalis and his companye rescowed the xv men, and brought hem in to the Castell, and closed the yates, and thei of the hoste also with-drough theire peple, and bar the deed kynge in to the tente of kynge Rion, that was therfore sorowfull and wroth. But now shull we leve hem makynge theire doell, and speke of the message that kynge Rion sente to kynge Arthur to Cameloth.

Whan this messager was departed from his lorde, he and his squyer rode forth till thei com to Cameloth on the day of the assumpcion, and a-light down of his horse, and com in to the halle as kay hadde sette the firste cours be-fore the kynge Arthur. This knyght saugh these kynges and these quenes that satte at the high deyse alle crowned for the high feeste, and saugh the harpour*e* crowned with golde, he was all a-stonyed, and for the dogge that hym ledde thourgh the paleis; and he asked of kay that served whiche was the kynge Arthur, and kay hym shewed a-noon right; and the knyght, that was wise, and well cowde speke, com be-fore the kynge, and seide so lowde that alle myght it vndirstonde, "Kynge Arthur, I grete the nought, *ffor I am not ther-to comaunded by hym that hath me to the I-sente. But I shall do the to vndirstonde what he doth to the sende; and whan thow hast herde his comaundement do as thow art a-vised, and yef thow do his will thow shalt finde ther-in profite, and yef thow wilt it nought do the by-hoveth to forsake thi londe, and fle in exile;" and whan the kynge this herde he be-gan to smyle, and seide, "Full sobirly a-vise the of thi message, ffor of all that thow art comaunded thou mayst say boldly all thy will with-oute eny encombraunce of me or of eny other;" and than he seide,

Rion's messenger comes to Cameloth.

He asks Kay which is King Arthur.

He addresses the king.

*[Fol. 220*a*.]

Arthur tells him he may speak boldly.

"Kynge Arthur to the sente me the kynge of allė cristin*e* that is the kynge Rion of the yles, whiche is at sege be-fore Toraise in Carmelide, and with hym ix kynges that alle ben his liege men, and holde of hym theire londes and theire fees in honour, ffor he hath made hem alle enclyne to hym by his prowesse, and of alle the kynges that he hath conquered wher-of ther be ix, he hath flayn of theire beerdes. Now my lorde sendeth the comaundement that thou be-come his man; and that shall be to the grete honour*e* to be-come liege man to so puyssaunt a kynge as my lorde, ffor he is lorde from the east in to the west of all the londe;" and whan the knyght hadde thus seide he drough oute the letter of kynge Rion, that was seled with x seles roiall, and seide to the kynge Arthur, "Sir, do rede this letter that my lorde hath the sente, and

The messenger says Rion is before Toraise with nine kings, whose beards he has flayed off.

He draws forth Rion's letter.

than shalt thou heren his wille and his corage;" and ther-with he delyuered hym the letter, and the kynge hit toke to the archebisshop*pe*, that was come thider, to vndirstonde the massage, and he it vnfolded and be-gan to rede a-lowde that thei myght it wele vndirstonde that were in the halle.

The archbishop reads it.

The letter.

"I the kynge Rion, that am lorde of all the west, do hem alle to wite that these letteres shull seen, that I am at sege be-fore Toraise in Carmelide, and with me be ix kynges of my meyne, and alle theire peple of theire londes that armes may bere, and of alle the kynges that I conquere I haue theire suerdes be my prowesse, and also I haue made a mantell of reade samyte furred with the beerdes of these kynges, and this mantell is nygh all redy of all that ther-to longeth, saf only tasselles, and for the tassels faile I haue herde tidinges of thy grete renoun that is spredde thou[r]gh the worlde, I will that it be honoured more than eny of the other kinges, and therfore I comaunde the that thow sende me thy beerde with all the skynne, and I shall hit sette on the tassels of my mantell for the love of the, ffor neuer be-fore this mantell be tasselled shall it not hange a-boute my nekke. Ne I will of noon other haue it made but of thy beerde, ffor a-boute the handes and the nekke ought euery prince sette the moste honorable thinges, and for thow art the most puyssaunt kynge as the renoun of the recordeth, I will that thow sende me thy beerde by oon or tweyne of thy frendes, and after come thou to me and be-come my liege man and holde of me thy londes in goode pees; and yef thou wilt nought thus don I comaunde the that thou go exiled and forsake thi londe, ffor as soone as I haue conquered the kynge leodogan I *shall come vpon the with all myn hoste, and make thy beerde be flayn, and drawe from thy chyn boustously, and that thou shalt knowe verily."

Rion has a mantle made of kings' beards.

He commands Arthur to send his beard,

and afterwards come to him as his liege man.

*[Fol. 220*b*.]

Whan the archebisshop hadde redde this letter be-fore the kynge Arthur, and be-fore alle the Barou*n*s he delyuered the letter a-gein to the kynge that was full wroth and angry with this comaundement; and the messager seide, "Kynge Arthur, do that my lorde the comaundeth that I may

The archbishop delivers the letter back to the king, who is very angry.

returne;" and the kynge seide he myght wele returne whan-so-euer he wolde, and telle his lorde that his beerd sholde he neuer haue while he myght it diffende; and the knyght departed and com to his horse and rode forth, he and his squyer, till thei come to Toraise, in Carmelide, where he fonde the kynge Rion that assailede the Castell full fiercely; and thei with-ynne diffended hem full harde, that thei with-oute loste moche of theire peple, and therfore was the kynge Rion full wroth; and whan the knyght was come be-fore the kynge Rion, and tolde his ansuere from the kynge Arthur, he seide he sholde not so soone haue take the kynge leodogan, but a-noon he wolde come vpon hym with so grete power that he sholde not hem sustene ne endure, and now shull we speke of the kynge Arthur, and of his Barou*ns*.

Arthur tells the knight he may return, but that Rion shall never have his beard.

The knight tells Arthur's answer to Rion.

The story returns to Arthur.

Whan the knyght that hadde brought this message from the kynge Rion was departed, the kynge Arthur lefte stille sittinge at mete in myrthe and in ioye; and the harpour*e* wente from oon place to a-nother, and harped myrily, so that thei be-hilde hym for a merveile bothe oon and other, and hem liked more the melodye of this harpour than eny thinge that this other mynstralles diden; and the kynge Arthur hadde grete merveile fro whens this man myght come, and yet he ought hym well to knowe, for many tymes hadde he hym seyn in other maner and in other*e* semblaunces; and whan thei hadde eten and the clothes were taken up, the harpour com be-fore the kynge, and seide, "Sir, yef it plese yow graunte me reward for my servise." "Certes, frende," seide the kynge, "it is reson, and ye shull it haue with goode will, and ther-fore sey youre will, for ye shull not faile yef it be soche thinge as I may yeve, savinge myn honour and my reame." "Sir," seide the harpour, "ye shull neuer haue ther-in but honour, yef god will." "Than sey youre volunte," seide the kynge boldely. Than seide the harpour, "I aske yow, and require to bere youre chief baner in the firste bataile that ye shall go to." "Ffeire frende," seide the kynge, "sholde that be worship to me and my reame; oure lorde hath sette yow in his prison; how myght

They marvel at the harper.

Arthur asks where he comes from.

The harper asks Arthur to grant him a reward,

and requests to bear the chief banner.

ye youre-self guyde that may nought se to bere a baner in bateile of a kynge that ought to be refute and counfort to alle the hoste." "Haa, sir," quod the harpour, "God that is the very guyde, me shall condite and lede that in many p*er*ilouse places me hath ledde, and wite ye well it shall be for youre prowe;" and whan the barou*n*s it vndirstode thei hadde merveile; than be-hilde hym the kynge Ban, and remembred hym of Merlin that in the Castell of the marasse hym served in disgise of a yonge knyght of xv yere age, and thought it sholde ben he, and seide a-noon to the kynge, "Sir, graunte hym his request, for he semeth to be *soche a man that his desire ne ought not to be refused." "Why," seide Arthur, "trowe ye it sholde be to oure profite and oure honour that a mynstrall sholde bere oure baner in bateile, whiche may not lede hymself, though I hit with-sey I do nothinge a-gein right, for it is a thinge that I sholde not graunte lightly, but I knewe right well the persone that it sholde bere;" and a-noon as this worde was seide, the harpour*e* vanysshed a-monge hem that noon wiste where he be com. Than Arthur be-thought hym on Merlin, and was sory and wroth that he ne hadde it hym graunted, and alle that were ther-ynne were a-baisshed, for that he was loste so sodeinly; and the kynge Ban of Benoyk that well a-parceived it was Merlin seide to the kynge Arthur, "Certes, sir," quod he, "ye ought hym wele for to knowen." "Trewly," seide Arthur, "ye sey full trewe, but for that he hath made a whelpe hym for to lede that hath take a-wey fro me the knowinge." "Sir," seide Gawein, "what is he than?" "Nevew," quod the kynge, "it is Merlin oure frende." "Yee," seide Gawein; "so helpe me god, I trowe yow wele that it be he, ffor often hath he be disgised be-fore youre Baronye, and this hath he don to make yow solas and counfort." And as thei stode spekinge here-of, in the halle com in a litill childe, that semed of viij yere of age, and he was all naked and brecheles, and bar a staf in his honde and com be-fore the kynge, and seide, "Sir, appareile yow for to go a-gein the kynge Rion in bateile, and delyuer me youre baner for to bere;" and whan

Arthur refuses.

Ban recognises Merlin in this disguise.

*[Fol. 221*a*.]

The harper vanishes. Arthur then thinks it was Merlin, and is sorry he did not grant his request.

Gawein asks who it was.

He remembers Merlin's disguises.

A little child comes into the hall,

and asks to bear the banner.

thei that were in the paleys saugh hym in that aray, thei begonne to laugh harde; and the kynge ansuerde all in laughinge, as [he] that soposed well it was Merlin, "So helpe me god, ye owe it well to bere, and I it yow graunte." "Gramercy, sir," seide the childe, "ffor in me it shall be wele employde;" and with that he comaunded hem alle to god, and wente oute of the paleis, and than a-noon he toke his owne semblaunce soche as he was wonte to haue, and seide to hym-self that now hym be-hoveth to somown the kynges hoste, and wente toward the see and passed ouer and com to Gannes, to Pharien, and to leonces of paierne, and badde hem to assemble theire power of all that thei myght bringe oute of the londe and come to Cameloth, and thei seide thei wolde do hys comaundement; and Merlin com to the see, and passed ouer and wente to the londe of kynge Vrien, and by the londe of kynge looth, and seid to the Barou*n*s, and to other princes that thei be with-ynne xv dayes afte oure lady day, the Natiuite in Septembr*e* be-fore Cameloth, and thei hym graunted alle; and than he departed from them, and com a-gein to the court er euesonge were all seide vpon the same day of the assumpcion, and the kinge of hym made grete ioye, and asked why he hadde hym so kept oute of sight; and he ansuerde that he ought hym wele to knowen. "Ye certes," seide the kynge, "yef in me were eny witte." Thus thei a-bide in feeste and ioye all that day.

Arthur grants the request.

The child goes out and Merlin takes his own form.

He goes to Pharien and Leonces, and bids them assemble their power, and come to Cameloth.

He goes to Urien and Looth, and bids them come to Cameloth.

He returns to Arthur's court.

On the morowe the kynge made alle his princes to assemble in his paleis, and ther also was Merlin; and the kynge Arthur seide how hem be-houeth to somowne all the power *that thei myght assemble, for he wolde socour the kynge leodogan that was fade[r] to the Queene Gonnore; and Merlin seide how thei were alle somowned bothe at Gannes and at Benoyk, and thourgh alle the londes of the other barou*n*s; and the kynge Arthur hym asked whan that was don, and he seide, "Seth yesterday after mete;" and whan the kynge and the other princes this vndirstode that he hadde this don, thei hadde grete wonder, and were ther in ioye and in feste till all here peple was assembled, and than meved the kynge Arthur and

All the princes assemble on the morrow, and Arthur tells them he will succour Leodogan.

*[Fol. 221*b*.]

They ride to Carmelide, and Merlin bears the banner.

his baronye, and rode towarde the reame of Carmelide; and the kynge graunted his baner to Merlin as he hadde promysed be-fore, and sped theire iournyes till thei come a litill iourney fro Toraise, where the kynge Rion had be-sege the kynge leodogan; and whan thei were nygh the hoste, Merlin seide to Gawein, and to sir Ewein, and to Segramor, "Loke ye be euer nygh a-boute me;" and thei seide thei wolde don his pleiser. "Now than," quod Merlin, "sueth after me softely, and alle thei of the hoste till we be in bateile, and ye shull smyte vpon hem of that other partye with-oute rennynge of youre bateile, and thinke euer to come nygh after my baner what wey that euer ye se me turne;" and thei ansuerde that so thei wolde with goode will, and so he seide to Arthur and to alle the other*e* princes, and wente forth till thei com in to the hoste of kynge Rion, and Merlin be-fore hem all so harde as his horse myght renne with the dragon in his hande that caste thourgh his mouthe fire and flame, that alle thei ther-of were a-baisshed; and Gawein that folowed hym next mette with the kynge Pharaon that with all his bateile com hym a-geins; and as soone as he saugh hem approche, Sir Gawein hym smote so, that shelde ne hauberk myght hym warante, but bar hym thourgh the body deed to the erthe; and than he seide in game, "He this is sworn to pees, for by hym shall neuer the kynge Arthur lese acre of his londe ne his beerd be flayn from his chyn;" with that assembled bothe hostes that oon a-gein that other, and grete was the noyse, and the fray of the people of kynge Rion, and of the peple of kynge Arthur; and ther dide Gawein, and Ewein, and Segramor, and Gaheries, and the knyght*es* of the rounde table merveiles with theire handes; ffor whan bothe hostes were mette, ye myght haue sein many oon leide to grounde of oo party and of other, ffor thei were bold and hardy on bothe sides; and Merlin that bar the dragon drof in to the prees, and sir Gawein and his companye after, and smote hem so harde that thei metten that thei neded no salve, and the speres fly in peces; and that was a thinge that discounforted the kynge Rion and his peple, ffor thei wende verily that fendes

He tells them all to follow him.

They come to the host of Rion.

Gawein kills king Pharaon.

Both hosts are assembled against each other.

Merlin drives into the press.

Rion and his people think

were fallen a-monge the hoste. But thei were so bolde and so chiualrouse that ther-fore thei wolde not be discounfited, but hilde bateile grete and merveilouse a-gein the peple of kynge Arthur, and made hem resorte bakke at hir first comynge, and therfore was sir Gawein and his companye full of dolour; and Merlin that rode be-fore hem cried, "What lordinges, what shall this be-mene, be ye now a-rested? sueth me yef ye will *youre loos encrese and your pris." Than these felowes smyten in a-monge hem of Irelonde that well hem resceyued with trenchaunt wepenes. But sir Gawein and his companye dide so well in armes that thei pressed thourgh the peple of kynge Rion, but first was ther many a hevy stroke yoven and resceived, and many a knyght straught deed to the erthe; and the kynge Arthur, and the kynge looth of Orcanye, and the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors were smyte in to the bateile on a-nother side, where thei dide merveiles a-monge theire enmyes, ffor a-gein theire strokes endured noon armure. But the peple of kynge Rion mette hem so fiercely, that thei smote down the kynge looth and the kynge Bohors from theire horse a-mydde the presse, and so thei myght soone haue hadde grete damage ne hadde ben the grete prowesse that was in hem bothe, for thei lept on foot full vigerousely with theire swerdes drawen, and be-gonne to smyte down horse and men so crewelly that ther ne was noon that hem saugh, but he hilde it for a merveile; and the kynge Arthur and the kynge Ban pressed that wey hem to remounte, and Merlin com drivinge with the baner in his hande that thourgh his throte caste fire and flame, and smote in to the grettest presse; and whan the peple of kynge Rion saugh the grete merveile of the dragon that so caste fire, thei hadden grete drede and forsoke place, and the two kynges on whom thei dide a-bide, and Merlin com to them and delyvered to euerich of theym a good horse and a swifte, for I-nowe ther were a-stray thourgh the felde, and thei a-noon lept vpon horse, and rode in to the bateile, and be-gonne to do so well in armes, and so dide alle theire companye. But the force of kynge Rion was so grete that thei of the reame of grete Bre-

fiends have fallen among them,

but they drive back Gawein and his company.

*[Fol. 222*a*.]

Arthur, Looth, Ban, and Bohors do marvels.

The people of Rion smite down Looth and Bohors.

Merlin comes with the banner that casts out fire and flame,

and brings good horses to the two kings.

Rion's force is very great.

teigne myght it not endure, but sholde alle haue be discounfited as to my felinge, ne hadde be the prowesse of sir Gawein and his companye, and the knyghtes of the rounde table, for these shewed merveiles wher thei com, ffor thei smyte down men and horse, bothe that alle that hem with-stode semed it were feendes.

Ventres, Tradilyvans, Urien, and the King de Cent Chivalers fight fiercely against the people of the isles.

On a-nother side of the bateile was the kynge Ventres, and the kynge Tradilyuans, and the kynge Vrien, and the kynge de Cent Chiualers that full fiercely faught a-gein the peple of the yles that kept hem short; ffor of the yles was many a vailaunt knyght, and bolde in armes, and hadde smyte down the ky*n*ge Tradilyuans of No[r]th wales, and hilde hym by the helme; and Merlin com to Gawein, and seide, "Now lete se what ye will do, ffor we haue loste the kynge Tradilyuans, but he [have] hastely socour; sewe me." Than wente Merlin that wey, and sir Gawein and his felowes folowinge till thei com to the kynge Tradilyuans that was in grete auenture of deth, and than be-gonne thei so harde bateile that wonder was to beholde, so that thei that hilde the kinge Tradilyuans that were bolde, and hardy, and durable in bateile were all a-baisshed; but yet dide thei grete peyne hym to with-holde, and thei of the rounde table haue hym rescowed, and sette on horse, and were full wroth and angry, and be-gonne a-gein the bateile, and the medle that hidiouse was to haue seyn, ffor oon fill deed vpon a-nother, so that ther were grete mountayns of deed cors *thourgh the feelde ther as the bataile was; ffor sir Gawein hadde so many slain with his swerde, that bothe swerde and arme were all be-soiled with blode and brayn.

Merlin and Gawein come to succour Tradilyvans,

who is rescued.

*[Fol. 222*b*.]

Gawein slays many.

Than the kynge leodogan saugh the bateile so crewell and so fell ther as he stode lenynge out at a wyndowe, and saugh the dragon that Merlin bar that caste fier thourgh his mouthe, so that the heyr was all reade; and he knewe it well, for he hadde it sein be-fore tymes, and knew well it was the signe of kynge Arthur; and than he called vpon his knyghtes and cried, "As armes, for my sone the kynge Arthur fighteth with oure enmyes, and is come me for to socour, god quyte hym;" and whan thei this vndirstode, thei ronne alle to armes

Leodogan sees the dragon that Merlin bears, and knows it is Arthur's banner.

He calls his knights to arms,

thourgh the castell, and com oute at the yate I-armed x^{Ml}, and moo of bolde men, and hardy, and smyten in to the hoste of the kynges of the yles full fiercely, and thei hem resceived, for thei were of grete hardynesse; and Cleodalis the stiward, and hervy de rivell, and her other felowes be-gonne to do merveiles of armes; and the bateile was so grete and so thikke on alle sides of the hoste of kynge Rion, that it was merveile so many ther were deed of oo parte and of other; and whan the kyng Rion saugh the grete mortalite and slaughtur of his peple, and also of the peple of kynge Arthur, his herte wax tender, and hadde ther-of pitee, and seide to hym-self that that mortalite wolde he no lenger suffre, and than he toke a braunche of sicamor in his hande, and wente be-fore the hoste to disseuer the bateiles, and wente forth till he fonde the kynge Arthur, and spake so high that he myght wele ben herde, "Kynge Arthur, wher-fore doost thow suffre thi peple to be slayn and distroied, and also myn; do thow now well yef ther be so moche worthinesse in the as the worlde recorded delyuer thy peple fro deth, and I shall deliu*er* also tho of myn, and we shull make oure peple with-drawe on bothe parties a-rowme, and thow and I shull fight to-geder body for body by soche covenaunt, that yef thow may me co*n*quere, I shall returne to my contrey with the peple that is me be left on lyve, and yef I may the conquere thow shalt holde thi londe of me, and be my soget as ben these other kynges that I haue conquered, and I shall haue thy berde with all the skyn to make the tasselles of my mantell." "In the name of god," quod the kynge Arthur, "thow sholdest so haue the better part of the pley, whan thow sholdest repeire in to thy contrey all hooll yef I the conquered, and ne sholdest not be-come my man, and thow desirest that I sholde be thy man yef thow myght me conquere. But I will fight with the in this maner as thow hast seide that yef I the conquere, thow shalt be my liege man, and in the same wise I graunte it the yef thow me conquere." "Sir," seide the kynge Rion, that was so stronge that he douted no man body for body, and he hadde conquered so ix

and 10,000 come out of the gate.

Cleodalis and Hervy do marvels.

Rion grieves at the great slaughter,

and goes to Arthur with the branch of sycamore in his hand.

He asks him to fight, and let the people withdraw.

If he is conquered he will leave the land; but if Arthur is conquered, he is to become his liege. Arthur says Rion must become his liege if he conquers.

Rion agrees.

kynges that alle were his liege men, "and I it yow graunte like as ye haue seide." Than thei sured theire feithes be-twene hem two to holde these covenauntes, and made departe the bateiles that were so horible; and the Barou*n*s drough a-side that were wroth and angry with these couenauntes; and sir Gawein that was wrother than eny other come to the kynge, his vncle, and seide, "Sir, yef it plese yow graunte me *this bateile." "Now ther-of, require ye no more," quod the kynge Arthur, "nother ye, ne noon other; ffor noon other than I shall sette ther-to noon hande, ffor I shall do the bateile with the helpe of god, seith he hath me ther-to requireth."

The barons draw aside.

*[Fol. 223*a*.] Gawein asks to be allowed to fight Rion, but Arthur will not suffer it.

Than bothe hostes were drawen a-side on that oon part and on that other, and the two kynges were armed full richely all that nedeth to a noble prince, and eche of hem toke a spere stronge and rude; and than rode eche of hem from other more than two but lengthe, and than smote the horse with spores and mette to-geder as tempest, ffor well ran bothe horse, and were of grete force, and the two kynges were fierce and hardy, and mette with so grete raundon with speres that were grete and shorte, and the heedes sharp I-grounden vpon the sheldes that thei perced; but the hauberkes were so harde, that thei fauced no mayle, and the horse were of grete force, and the knyghtes of grete prowesse, that the speres splindered in splyntes; and than thei leide hande to theire swerdes that weren of grete bounte, and smyten grete strokes vpon helmes, that thei breke the serkeles of golde and stones which weren of grete vertu, and to-hewen the sheldes and hauberkes, and in the flessh so depe that the blood stremed after, and in short tyme eche of hem so a-raied other that ther ne was nother of hem but he hadde nede of a leche; and theire sheldes weren slitte and hewen that ther was [not] left of theym so moche that thei myght with he*m* couer; and than thei caste the renenaunt to grounde, and caught the swerdes in bothe hondes, and smyte pesaunt strokes at discouert, so that thei to slitte helmes and to-rente hauberkes, so that the flessh shewed all bare, and ther ne was noon of hem bothe, but he was wery for

The two kings richly armed meet each other.

Their spears are splintered, and they take their swords.

They cut into each others flesh.

Their shields are slit, and they cast them down.

They are weary of fighting.

traveile of yevinge of strokes and receivinge; and that was oon thinge that lengest hem hilde, ffor yef thei hadde ben fressh and newe to that thei weren with-outen sheldes, and theire hauberkes to-rente, and theire helmes to-quasshed, thei myght not haue endured, neuertheles ther ne was noon of hem bothe but he was sore hurt and wounded.

Rion is astonished at Arthur's prowess,

Whan the kynge Rion that was bolde and hardy a-bove alle thoo of the londe, saugh the kynge Arthur hym contene a-geins hym he hadde ther-of grete merveile, ffor he wende that he sholde not a-gein hym haue endured, and seide to hym-self that neuer be forn hadde he seyn so goode a knyght, and than he douted hym sore, and seide, "Kynge Arthur! hit is grete harme of the, ffor thow art the beste knyght that I faught with euer be-forn, and I se well and knowe verily that thy grete herte that thow hast shall make the to dye, ffor it will not suffre the to come to my mercy; and I knowe well that thow haddest leuer dye than be conquered, and that is grete damage, and therfore I wolde pray the and requyre for the grete prowesse that is in the that thou haue pitee on thy-self, and yelde the for outraied for to saue thi lif, thourgh the couenauntes that ben be-twene vs, so that my mantell were parformed in my live; ffor better I love thi lif than thi deth, and thow art come to thi fin that knowest thow well, and so don alle these barou*n*s *here a-boute that here ben." Whan the kynge Arthur vndirstode the wordes of the kynge Rion he hadde grete shame, for so many a vailant*e* prince hadde it vndirstonde; and than he ran vpon hym with his swerde in bothe handes as he that was full wroth and full of maltalente, and wende to smyte hym on the helme, but the kynge Rion blenched that saugh the stroke comynge with so grete ravyne, and neuertheles he a-raught hym vpon the helme, and kutte of the nasell, and the stroke descended and smote the stedes nekke a-sounder, and the kynge Rion fill to the erthe; and as he wende to haue rise, Arthur smote hym on the lifte shuldre in to the flesshe two large ynche, and the kynge Rion stombeled ther-with a*nd* fill a-gein to the erthe; and whan the kynge

and prays him to yield,

*[Fol. 223*b*.]

but Arthur runs upon him with his sword in both hands,

and fells him to the earth.

Arthur saugh the kynge Rion falle a-gein to grounde, a-noon he a-light to grounde, and ran to hym lightly, and caught hym by the helme, and drough it to hym with so grete force, that the laces brast a-sonder, and he it raced from his heed, and than lifte vp the swerde, and seide he was but deed, but he wolde yelde hym outerly; and he seide that wolde he ne neuer, for he hadde leuer dye than live recreaunt; and whan Arthur saugh that he myght hym not ther-to bringe to holde hym for outraied, he smote of the heed in sight of alle that were in the feelde, and than ronne to the princes on alle parties, and made grete ioye, and sette hym on a horse, and brought hym in to the castell of Toraise, and hym vn-armed, and serched his woundes; and the baronye of kynge Rion com to hym and resceived of hym theire londes, and theire fees, and dide hym homage, and than returned in to theire contrey, and with hem bar the body of kynge Rion; and it biried with grete lamentacion and wepinge; and the kynge Arthur was at Toraise gladde and ioyfull of the victorie that godde hym hadde yoven, and soiourned in the castell till he was warisshed of his woundes that he hadde in the bateile; and whan he was all hool, he departed fro Toraise with grete ioye and feste; and the kynge leodogan conveyed hym on his wey, and after returned; and the kynge Arthur and his companye ride till thei come to Cameloth, where-as the Quene Gonnore and the other quenes were a-bidinge that of theire comynge made grete ioye; and ther soiourned the princes iiij dayes, and on the fifte day thei departed, and euery man repeired to his owne contrey, and ledde with hem theire wyves thei that eny hadden; and the kynge Arthur com a-gein in to the Citee of logres, and soiourned ther longe tyme with the quene, and with hym was sir Gawein, and the companye of the rounde table, and Merlin that dide hem grete solas and grete companye, and he com to kynge Arthur, and seide that from hens-forth he myght hym wele for-beren, ffor he hadde somdell a-pesed his londe, and sette it in reste, and ther-fore he wolde go take his disporte where hym liked.

He calls on him to yield, but Rion will not; so he smites off his head. The princes are joyful, and bring Arthur into Toraise.

Rion's barons do Arthur homage.

When Arthur's wounds are healed, he rides to Cameloth.

The princes sojourn there four days, and then return to their own lands. Arthur comes to Logres.

Merlin says he is going away.

Whan the kynge this vndirstode he was pensif and sory, for he loved hym entirly, and fain wolde he that he a-bood stille yef it myght be; and whan he saugh he myght hym not with-holde, he praied hym dierly that he wolde come to hym a-gein in short *tyme, and Merlin seide he sholde come a-gein all be tyme er he hadde nede. "Certes," seide the kynge, "euery day and euery hour haue I to yow nede and myster, ffor with-oute yow I can nought, and ther-fore I wolde we sholde neuer departe companye;" and Merlin seide, "I shall come a-nother tyme to youre nede, and I shall not faile day ne hour." And the kynge was stille a longe while, and be-gan to stodie sore; and whan he hadde be longe in this thought, he seide all sighinge, "Ha, Merlin feire swete frende in what nede shull ye me helpe, I pray yow telle me to sette myn herte in more ese." "Sir," seide Merlin, "and I shall yow telle, and after I shall go my wey. The lyon that is the sone of the Bere, and was be-geten of a leopart, shall renne by the reame of the grete Breteigne, and that is the nede that ye shall haue." With that Merlin departed, and the kynge be lefte in grete myssese, and sore a-baisshed of this thinge; ffor he knewe not to what it myght turne. But ther-of shull we cesse at this tyme, and returne to speke of Merlin.

Arthur is sorry,

*[Fol. 224*a*.] but Merlin says he shall come again.

The king asks when he shall be in need.

Merlin speaks of the lion that was son of the bear and leopard.

Arthur cannot understand him.

CHAPTER XXXII.

MERLIN'S INTERPRETATION OF THE DREAM OF FLUALIS, AND HIS VISIT TO NIMIANE; THE KNIGHTING OF THE DWARF; THE EMBASSY FROM THE EMPEROR OF ROME; ARTHUR'S FIGHT WITH THE GIANT; THE BATTLE WITH THE ROMANS.

In this partie, seith the storye, as soone as Merlin was departed from the kynge Arthur, as ye haue herde, he departed from the Cite of logres so faste, that in all the worlde was noon so swyfte a horse that myght hym haue sewed, so

Merlin departs at great speed.

that alle that euer hym saugh wende he hadde ben oute of his witte; and a-noon he drof in to the foreste that was grete and depe, and come to the see, and passed ouer that no tyme wolde a-bide be see ne be londe till he come to the parties of Iherusalen, where ther was a kynge of grete puyssaunce that was named ffualis; he was a goode man of grete renoun as of his lawe, ffor he was a sarazin, and he hadde assembled alle the wise men of his londe, and of other londes as many as he myght gete; and whan thei were come all to the assemble be-fore hym in his paleys, he seide to hem so high that thei myght hym wele here and vndirstonde: "Lordinges," quod he, "I haue sente for yow, and ye ben come at my comaundement, and ther-fore I thanke yow, but ye knowe not the cause why, but yef I do yow to vndirstonde, hit be-fill that I slepte this other day in my paleys, and hilde the quene that is here in myn armes as me semed; and as I was in this a-vision com to me two serpentes, where-of eche of hem hadde two heedes, foule and hidouse, and of eche of hem com a grete flawme of fire wher-of all my contrey was light, and that oon of the serpentz caught me be-twene his feet by the flankes, and that other toke the quene be-twene myn armes, and bar vs bothe an high vpon the roof of my paleys that is so high; and whan thei hadde brought vs thider, thei rente of oure armes and legges from oure bodyes, and caste hem down oon here a-nother there; and whan thei hadde thus vs dismembred, ther com viij smale serpentes a-noon, and eche of hem toke a membre, and wente vp in to the heir a-bove the temple of Diane, and ther thei rente a-sondre oure membres in to smale pecis, and the two serpentes that hadde rente oure membres from oure bodyes *lifte vs an high a-bove the paleys, and sette fire on the paleis with-ynne, and brent vp oure bodyes in to aisshes; and the wynde a-roos, and gadered the powder and bar it ouer all the londe a this half the see, ne ther ne was no goode town, but ther-ynne lefte moche or litill. Soche was the a-vision that I saugh in my slepe, that me-semed was right perilouse and grevous; and ther-fore I haue yow hider somowned and assembled, and

He goes to Jerusalem, where is king Flualis.

The king assembles all his wise men,

and asks them for an interpretation of his dream.
The vision.

*[Fol. 224b.]

therfore I pray yow and requyre in all seruises and guerdons yef ther be eny of yow that can telle the significacon of these thinges lete me wite, and here be-fore yow alle I graunte trewly to hym that telleth me ther-of the verite, that he shall haue my doughter to his wif, and all my reame after my deth, or yef he be maried he shall be lorde of me and all my londe alle the dayes of my lif*e*."

Whoever explains the dream shall have the king's daughter for his wife.

Whan the wise men herde the promyse and the wordes of the kynge, and thei hadde herde the a-vision, thei hadde merveile what it myght be-tokene, and oon seide othinge, and some seide a-nother, eche after that hym semed beste; and Merlin that was in soche semblaunce that noon cowde hym knowe ne sen, spake whan alle other hadden seide so high that alle that were ther with-ynne myght it here clerly, and seide, "Vndirstonde to me, and I shall telle the thy dreme;" and whan he hadde seide thus, thei loked aboute hem to se hym that hadde this spoken, and so dide all thei that weren in the paleis, but nothinge thei saugh, and yet hem semed it was a-myd monge hem that seide, "Vndirstonde to me kynge ffualis, and here the be-tokenynge of thyn a-vision. The two serpentes that thow saughest be-fore the in thi slepe that hadde iiij hedes, and of alle foure heedes casten oute fier and flame, thei ben foure cristin kynges that to the marchen, and shull sette all thi contre in fier and flame; and that the serpent*es* bar the and the quene in to the highest part of thi paleis, signifieth that thei shull haue all thi londe in bailly, euen to the yates of thi chife fortresse. Of that the serpent*es* raced a-wey the membres of the and thi wif, be-tokeneth that thow shalt forsake the euell lawe that is roted in thyn herte, and shalt caste it oute from the to come to the be-leve of Ih*es*u crist. Of that the viij smale serpentes toke the membres of thi body, and of the quene, and bar it a-bove the temple of Diane whider as thi men shull fle for socour; of that thei rente thi membres, and the membres of the quene thi wif, signifieth that thi cheldren that shull be thy membres, and thi flessh shull be slain withynne the temple of Diane; of that the serpent*es* lefte the on

Merlin says he will tell the dream.

All look to see him, but they cannot.

Merlin explains the vision.

high on thi paleis, and the quene also with the sooll be youre-self signifieth that thourgh the and hir shall cristin feith be encreced and strengthed; of that the serpentes brente the paleis vndir the signifieth that the shall not be lefte the valew of a peny of thinges that thow hast of this euell lawe; of that thow and the quene were brent in to aisshes signifieth that thow shall be purged clene of all thy synne by the water of baptyme; of that the powder of the fly ouer all the londe a this side the see signifieth that thow shalt haue *children in thi good creaunce that shull be bolde knyghtes, and hardy, and shull be worshiped thourgh alle the londes of the worlde. Now hast thow herde thyn a-vision that thow haste sein in thi slepinge, and shall be-falle the like as I haue the tolde."

Signification of the vision.

*[Fol. 225*a*.]

With that departed merlin; and the kynge a-boode pensif of the voice that he hadde herde, and nothinge ther-of hadde sein; and Merlin wente a grete spede, that neuer he stinte, till he com to the reame of Benoyk, and yede to Nimiane his love that sore desired hym for to seen, ffor yet cowde not she of his art of that she desired for to knowe, and she made hym the grettest ioye that she myght, and ete and dranke, and lay in oon bedde; but so moche cowde she of his connynge that whan he hadde will to ly with hire she hadde enchaunted and coniured a pelow that she kepte in hir armes, and than fill Merlin a-slepe; and the storie maketh no mencion that euer Merlin hadde flesshly to do with no woman, and yet loved he nothinge in this worlde so wele as woman, and that shewed well, ffor so moche he taught hir oo tyme and other, that at laste he myght holde hym-self a fooll, and thus dide he soiourney with his love longe tyme; and euer she enquired of his connynge, and of his maistries, ech thinge by hit-self, and he lete her all knowe, and she it wrote all that he seide as she that was well lerned in clergie, and lerned it lightly all that Merlin hir taught; and whan he hadde soiourned with hir longe tyme, he toke his leve, and seide that he sholde come a-gein at the yeres ende, and so eche of theym comaunded other to god full tendirly; and than com Merlin to Blase his

Merlin departs, and the king is pensive. Merlin goes to Nimiane,

who enchants him.

He teaches her much.

She writes down all he tells her.

maister, that gladde was of his comynge, and sore he longed hym for to se, and he hym also; and Merlin tolde hym alle the a-uentur*es* that were be-falle seth he fro hym departed, and how he hadde be with Nimiane his love, and how he hadde hir taught of his enchauntmentz; and Blase wrote all in his boke. Whan Merlin hadde tolde to Blase his maister alle thinges as were be-fallen oon after a-nother, he soiourned with hym as longe as hym liked, and than toke his leve of hym and com streight in to the Cite of logres, where-as the kynge Arthur and Gonnore his wif, and resceyved Merlin with grete ioye, and a-noon as he was come. Ther com in a maiden to the halle dore, and a-light down from a mule, and hadde brought be-fore hir on hir sadell a dwerf, the moste contirfet and foulest that eny hadde sein, ffor he was [deformed], and his browes reade and rowe, and his berde reade and longe, that henge down to his breste, and his heeir was grete and blakke, and foule medled, and his sholdres high and courbe, and a grete bonche on his bakke be-hinde and a-nother be-fore a-gein the breste, and his handes were grete, and his fyngres short, and his legges short, and his chyne longe and sharp*e*, and the mayden was yonge and of grete bewte, and thei were sore loked on of oon and other; and a-noon as she was a-light she toke hir dwerf in hir armes, and toke hym down of the horse swetly, and brought hym in to the halle be-fore the kynge Arthur that was sette atte mete at the high deyse, and than she salued the kynge right curteisely as she that was connynge and wele taught, and the kynge greete hir a-gein full debonerly, and than seide the mayden,

Merlin goes to Blase, and tells him all that has befallen since he left him.

He goes to Logres.

A maiden comes with a dwarf on her saddle.

The maiden is young and beautiful.

She brings the dwarf into the hall before Arthur.

*"Sir, I am come to yow from fer contrey, for the grete renomede that of yow renneth thourgh the worlde; ffor to aske and require of yow a yefte, ffor as the grete renou*n* of yow recordeth that no mayden shall faile of no request that she yow demaunded, and for that ye be holde the worthiest kynge of the worlde. I haue trauailed for to come to youre court for to aske of yow a request, and ther-fore loke ye graunte me nothinge but ye will it me parforme." "Damesell," seide

*[Fol. 225*b*.] She asks Arthur to grant her a request.

The king promises to perform it.

the kynge, "aske what yow liketh, for I am redy it to parforme, yef it be soche thinge that I may it do savinge myn honour and my reame." "Of that," quod she, "that I will yow require shull ye haue but honour." "Damesell," than seide the kynge, "sey your volunte." "Sir," seide the maiden, "I am come to pray yow, and require that ye of my love that is here, this gentill yonge lorde that I holde by the honde, make hym knyght, for he is ther-to digne and right worthi; ffor he is bolde and hardy, and come of grete lynage, and longe here-toforn sholde haue ben knyght yef he wolde of the kynge Pelles of lytenoys that is a full noble kynge, and a trewe; but my leif*e* here will not, but hath made his oth that he shall neuer be knyght, but of youre hande, and ther-fore I pray yow, and require that ye make hym knyght;" and than alle thei that were in the paleis be-gonne to laugh bothe oon and other; and kay the stiwarde, that was an euell speker*e*, and scornfull of wordes, seide all smylinge, "Kepe well youre leef, and holde hym nygh yow that he be not take from yow of the quenes maydenes, for soone myght thei do yow that forfet for the grete bewte that is in hym." "Sir," seide the mayden, "the kynge is so good a man, and so right-full, that he wolde it not suffre, yef god will, that noon sholde do me that wronge." "Certes, damesell," seide the kynge, "ther-of be ye sure, and I it yow graunte well." "Sir," seide the mayden, "Gramercy. Now do than that I haue yow required." "Damesell," seide the kynge, "at youre plesier." With this worde entred in to the court two squyres vpon two rounsies stronge and swyfte amblinge, of which that oon bar a shelde with thre leopartes of golde crowned of azure, and the champ of the shelde was sable, and the gige orfrayed of golde harnysshed, and a swerde hanged at his sadill, and the tother brought a stede in his right hande that was feire shapen, and the bridill and the harneys of silke and golde, and the two squires drof be-fore hem a somer with two cofers, and thei a-light a-noon vnder the pyne tre, and tacched theire horse, and vn-lokked the cofres, and toke oute an hauberk as white as snowe, for it was all of fin siluer and

The maiden asks him to knight the dwarf, who is a lord of noble lineage.

All in the palace begin to laugh.

Kay tells her to take care of the dwarf, or the queen's maidens may take him from her.

Arthur agrees to do her pleasure.

Two squires come into the court, one bearing a shield, and the other leading a horse.

They drive a sumpter before them.

They take out of the coffers a

doble maile, and hosen of the same werk, and an helme of siluer and golde, and com in to the halle where the kynge and the Barou*n*s were be-fore the maiden; and whan she saugh thei were come, than she seide to the kynge, "Sir, I aske of yow my request, for I a-bide here longe, ffor here is althinge redy that longeth to a knyght, ffor with these armes that ye se here shall my leef be a-dubbed." "Ffeire love," quod the kynge, "I shall do youre plesier and your volunte with goode will, but cometh to youre mete;" and she seide that she wolde neuer ete mete er hir lief were a knyght. Thus was the damesell in the paleis be-for the kynge, and euer hilde hir lief by the right hande; and whan the kynge hadde eten, and the clothes *weren vp, the damesell drough oute of an awmener*e* a peire of spores of golde that weere wounden in a cloth of silke, and seide to the kynge, "Sir, delyuer me, for I haue ben here longe." With that lepte forth kay the stiwarde, and wolde haue sette on his right spore; and the damesell hym sesed by the hande, and seide, "What is that," quod she, "sir knyght, that ye purpose to do." Quod kay, "I will sette on his right spore, and also make hym knyght with myn owne hande." "Of youre hande," seide the maiden, "shall it neuer be-falle, yef god will, for noon ther-to shall sette hande saf only the kynge Arthur, ffor he hath me graunted in couenaunt, and I truste that he will me not faile, yef it be his plesier, ffor so myght he me bringe to the deth and me be-traye. Ne noon ne ought to touche so high a persone as is my lief, but he be kynge or worthy prince." "So helpe me god," seide the kynge, "ye haue right, and I shall do all youre volunte." Than the kynge toke his right spore of the damesell, and sette it on the right hele, and the damesell sette on the lifte; and whan the kynge hadde don on his hauberk vpon the dwerf, the kynge girt hym with his swerde, ffor the maiden wolde not suffre noon to touche hym saf only the kynge; and whan he was all appareiled of all that longeth to a knyght, the kynge yaf hym the a-colee, and seide, "God make hym a good knyght;" and than the mayden asked yef he sholde do eny more. "Damesell," seide the

hauberk and a helmet.

The king says he will do her pleasure.

*[Fol. 226*a*.]

The damsel draws out a pair of golden spurs.

Kay leaps forward, and says he will make him a knight,

but the maiden will not let him.

The king says she is right, and puts the right spur on the dwarf.

He knights him.

kynge, "I haue don that to me ap*er*teneth." "Sir," quod she, "than now pray hym that he be my knyght;" and the kynge hym preide; and than wente thei oute of the halle, and com vnder the pyne tre; and the maiden made the dwerf to lepe vpon his stede that was so feire, and she hir-self henge the shelde a-boute his nekke that was of soche colour*e*, as ye haue herde, and than she toke hir mule and than made the two squyres to take theire horse, and sente hem bothe home in to theire contrei, and she and hir knyght yede another wey in to the foreste that was grete and merveilouse; and the kynge Arthur a-bode stille in his paleis, he and Merlin, and sir Gawein, and his companye; and I-nough thei lough of the maiden that so hadde yoven hir love to the duerf. "Certes," seide the quene, "I haue grete merveile, fro whens this thought myght hir be-falle, for so foule a thinge, and so lothly ne saugh I neuer; and the damesell is full of grete bewte, that in foure remes sholde not be founden hir pareile, and I trowe verily that it be som fende or of feire that thus hath hir disceived." "Madame," seide Merlin, "she is not disceived, but for the grete lothlynesse that is in hym; ffor neuer in youre lif saugh ye so hardy a pece of flesshe as is this duerf, and he is bothe kynges sone and quenes." "Sir," seide the quene, "the damesell semeth well to be of high lynage, for she is right feire, and hir lief right lothly." "Madame," quod Merlin, "the grete bounte of hym shall a-bate the grete lothlynesse that ye se in hym, and that shall ye knowe hastely more verily." "Ffeire frende, Merlin," seide the kynge, "what is the damesell; know ye *hir eny thinge?" "Sir," seide Merlin, "I telle yow in trouthe that I saugh hir neuer be-fore, and yet I knowe well what she is, and what is hir name, and that she shall telle yow hir-self with-ynne short tyme, and so shall she be better be-leved than sholde I, and by the duerf hym-self shall ye knowe what he is soner than ye wene, and ther-of shull ye haue bothe ioye and sorowe." "Ye," seide the kynge, "therof I praye yow to telle me the verite." "Sir," seide Merlin, "it falleth not at this tyme that I sholde it sey, ffor

The king prays him to be the maiden's knight.

The maiden hangs the shield about the dwarf's neck.

She sends the squires home, and she and her knight go another way.

The company laugh when they have gone.

Merlin says the dwarf is the son of a king and queen.

The king asks who the *[Fol. 226*b*.] damsel is.

Merlin says he will know soon,

but it is not time to tell now, and the

ye shull right soone haue other weyes to vndirstonde, ffor Luce the Emp*er*our of Rome hath sent yow his messages, and thei be at the grees of the halle."

messengers from Luce are waiting.

And as Merlin spake to the kynge Arthur, ther com vp xij princes full richely be-seyn, and clothed in riche clothes of silke, and com two and two holdinge eche other be the handes, and eche of theym bar a braunche of Olyve in his hande, and that was a signe that thei were messagiers: and in this maner thei com be-fore the kynge Arthur that satte at the high table in the paleis, and his barou*n*s hym[1] be-forn; and the messagiers com in and made no salutacion to noon that ther was, and than spake oon that was maister of hem alle, and seide, "Kynge Arthur, we be xij princes of Rome that be sente to the from Luce the Emperour." Than he drough oute a letter that was wrapped in a cloth of silke, and straught it to the kynge, and bad hym do rede the letter, and the kynge toke the letter and delyuered it to the Archebisshop*pe* that satte hym be-side, and comaunded hym to rede, and the archebisshop be-gan in this maner:

Twelve princes come up.

They make no salutation.

One addresses Arthur, and draws out a letter,

which the archbishop reads.

"I Luce, Emperour of Rome, that haue the powste, and the signiourie of the Romayns, sende to myn enmy the kynge Arthur in-as-moche only as he hath agein me deserued; and agein the power of rome, and it merveileth me sore, and I haue ther-of grete disdeyn, that he thourgh his grete pride leste to a-rise a-gein Rome as longe as he knoweth me on lyve, and this formednesse is come to the by fole hardynesse, and of malencolie whan thow durst euer a-rise a-gein Rome that hath the power and signiourie ouer all the worlde as thou thy-self hast well seyn and knowen, and yet shalt thou knowe and se a-pertly that thow hast don as a fooll that Rome durst wrathe, thou hast trespassed a-gein rightwisnesse whan thow hast with-holde the seruise and the trewage of Rome, and takest oure rentes and oure londes that thow knowest aperteneth to the power of Rome; wher-fore dost thou that, or what right

The letter of Luce, Emperor of Rome.

---

[1] The word "hym" is repeated in the MS.

The letter of Luce.

hast thou ther-to, wite thow right wele yef thow holde it longe thow shalt be as wery ther-of as the lambe is of the wolf, ffor thow art a-gein vs as fooll hardy as the shepe a-gein the shepherd; ffor Iulius cesar oure auncestre toke it be force, and by his hardynesse toke bateile in Breteigne, and trwys was hym yolden, and so it was of alle the yles ther a-boute; and thow woldest it vs be-reve thourgh thy folie, and thi grete pride, and the grete outrage that is in the; and I the comaunde as Emperour that thow do right, and with-ynne the day of the holy Natiuite that thow be by-fore vs for to a-mende that thow hast mysdon; and yef thou wilt not this do, I shall take from the all Breteigne, and all the londe that thou hast in bailly, and I shall passe mongin this first somer with so grete force of peple that thou shalt haue no hardynesse me to a-bide. Ne thou shalt not knowe *whider to fle, but I shall the sewe, and I shall take the, and bynde and caste the in my prison."

*[Fol. 227*a*.]

There is a great murmur and noise in the palace.

The king retires to take counsel with his princes.

Cador says they have been too long idle.

Gawein says it is good to have peace after war.

Whan the archebisshop*pe* hadde redde this letter in this maner as ye haue herde, in the paleis was grete murmur and noyse of hem that this hadde vndirstonde, and swor and seide thei sholde dishonour the messagiers that these lettres hadde brought, and a-noon thei sholde hem haue don shame I-nough, but as the kynge seide to hem full debonerly, "Ffeire lordes, lete hem be, thei be but massengiers, and be sent by comaundement of theire lorde; and ther-fore thei owe to sey that thei were with charged, and thei sholde ther-fore haue no doute of no man." Than the kynge cleped his princes and his barou*n*s, and entred in to a chambre to counseile; and than spake a knyght that was bolde and hardy, and his name was Cador, and seide that "longe haue we be idill and in slouthe in deduyt a-monge ladyes and damesels in Iolite and wast; but on this day we be a-waked by these Romayns that come to chalenge oure londes and oure contrey; and yef thei do as the lettres speke thei haue grete prowesse and hardynesse that be in so fer contreyes." "Certes," seide Gawein, "full good is it to haue pees after the werre, for the londe is the better*e* and the more sure, and full good is the game and pley a-monge ladies and maydenes, ffor the druweries of ladies and damesels make knyghtes to vndirtake the hardynesse of armes that thei don." Than the kynge comaunded hem alle to sitte, and thei dide his comaundement, and he him*m*self a-bode stondinge, and seide, "My frendes and my felowes in my prosperite, and in myn honour and traueile that ye haue me mayntened in grete bateiles, and in werres that I haue hadde seth I com to haue londe, and yow haue I ledde in many a grete nede bothe be see and by londe, and ye haue me helped, god quite yow, to conquere the londes that I haue wonne, that by youre helping*es* beth alle to me obeysaunt, and ye haue herde the maundement that the Romayns haue sent that I-nough haue vs contraried. But yef oure lorde kepe me and yow thei shull nought haue ours but it be dere bought at the departinge, ye se here the message of the Emperour*e*, and ther-fore yeve me counseile in what maner*e* I may hem ansuere moste auenauntly by honour and by reson; ffor oon ought to purveye er the stroke falle ther as is pereile, for he that seeth the arow comynge he ought to blenche that he be not smyten; ye se how the Romayns will a-rise a-gein vs, and therfore we ought vs so to appareile that thei vs not greve ne annoyen. Thei wolde haue trewage of Bretaigne, and of other yles that of me beth holdinge; and sein that Cezar hem conquered by force, and that the Bretou*n*s ne myght hem not diffende a-geins hem but paide hem trewage, and force is no right, but it is pride and oute of reson, and he holdeth not of right that holdeth of force. Thei haue vs reproved by the shames and damages that thei haue vs don, and the traueiles, and the annoyes that thei haue do to oure *auncestres, in that thei a-vaunte hem how thei haue hem venquysshed, and that thei paide hem trewage, and so moche the more ought we to hate hem and to greve, and the more thei haue to restore, ffor we moste hate hem that haten vs, and for thei hadde trewage of hem thei wolde it haue of vs by heritage and by auncestrie; and by soche reson may we chalenge Rome, ffor Belyns that was kynge of Breteigne, and Brenne his brother,

The king commands them to sit down, and addresses them;

and asks their counsel how he shall answer the emperor's letter.

Force is not right.

*[Fol. 227*b*.]

Belyns and Brenne conquered

Rome; after them came Constantinus and Maximian.

conquered Rome and henge xiiij of her ostages in sight of her frendes, and after hem com Constantynus that was kynge of Bretaigne, and was Emperour of Rome; and also maximian was lorde of Bretaigne, and was lorde of Rome, alle these were oure auncestres, and were kynges of Bretouns, and eche of theym was Emperour and lorde of the Romayns, and therby may we knowe that I owe to haue Rome by heritage as I haue Bretaigne. Romayns haue hadde trewage of vs, and my parentes haue hadde trewage of theym. Thei clayme Bretaigne for theiers, and I clayme Rome for myn; and so this is the ende of my counseile that he haue the londe, and the rente that may it gete; ffor in this I se noon other rightwisnesse, but who that all may gete, all shall haue, ffor as for my part I will noon other-wise do but as I haue yow seide."

Arthur claims Rome.

The princes and barons answer that Arthur has well said.

Whan the princes and the Barons herde the kynge thus speke, thei ansuerde with oon voice that he hadde well seide, and counseiled to sende for his peple fer and nygh, and assemble all his power, and go a-gein the Emperour of Rome, that thourgh his grete pride hadde sente outrage of crewelte and felonye, "and put the signiourie of Rome in youre powste, and remembre yow of the signiourie and prophesie of Sibile, that seide ther sholde thre Bretouns come oute of Bretaige that Rome sholde conquere be force, and ther hath ben tweyne that Rome hath conquered. The first was Belyn that was kynge of Bretouns, and the seconde was Constantinus, and thow shalt be the thridde that shall it conquere by force, and so shall the prophesie be fulfilled. Now a-vaunce yow to resceyve the honoure that god hath yow ordeyned." With these wordes the kynge com oute of the chamber, and the barouns and the knyghtes com in to the paleis, where as the massagiers that were xij princes were a-bydinge, and than spake the kynge, and badde hem returne to theire Emperoure, and telle hym that his ancestres of Bretaige hadde Rome in her bailly, "and therfore in-as-moche as myn auncestres dide it conquere, and were ther-of Emperours, and ther-of hadde trewage, I will hit haue of auncestrie and heritage, ffor that thei haue not done that thei ought do a-gein

He shall be the third British king to conquer Rome by force.

He bids the messengers return to their Emperor and tell him.

me of right;" and with this ansuere they departed, and the kynge hem yaf riche yeftes and presentes at theire departinge, as he that was the moste curteise prince of the worlde, and full of largesse, and therfore he wolde not that thei sholde speke eny euell of hym ne vilonye; and thei returned in to theire contreye as soone as thei myght, and tolde Luce the Emperour the ansuere of kynge Arthur, and ther-of was the Emperour wroth and angry, and somowned his peple, and assembled his power, and passed the mountaynes of mongin, and com in to Burgoyne nygh a Cite that is cleped Oston, and sesed the londe in lengthe and brede. But *a-while we shull reste of hym, and speke of the kynge Arthur.

He gives them rich gifts.

The emperor is angry at Arthur's answer, and summons his people.

*[Fol. 228*a*.]

Now seith the storie than whan the xij Massagiers were departed from the kynge Arthur, the kynge and his baronye a-bide stille full wroth and angry, for the maundement of Luce the Emperour; and Merlin seide, "Sir, sende for youre peple hastely, for the Emperour appareileth hym right faste." "Merlin, frende," seide the kynge, "I shall mete with hym sonner than he wolde." "He shall you mete," seide Merlin, "to his damage; and a-bide here in ioy, for I go to make the message to the Barouns." With that he vanysshed, that Arthur ne wiste where he be-come; and Merlin wente first in to Orcanye and dide the message to the kynge looth, that with xv dayes he sholde be at logres with all his power; and he seide he wolde so with good will, and than Merlin departed, wher-for sholde I make yow longe tale, he warned alle the princes and barons that of the kynge arthur were holdinge to be the xv day at logres, saf only the kynge Ban of Benoyk, and the kynge Bohors of Gannes; and after that he returned a-gein, and fonde the kynge Arthur in his chambre, and seide, "Your message is don to alle the Barouns, and thei shull be redy here fro hens xv dayes." Whan the kynge this vndirstode he was gladde and ioyfull, and soiourned at logres till his baronye was come, and thider come the kynge looth first, and his companye with vj^{Ml} men, and the kynge Vrien with iij^{Ml} men, and the kynge Carados foure Ml men, and the kynge de Cent Chiualers iiij^{Ml},

Merlin tells Arthur to send for his people.

He vanishes and goes to King Looth in Orcanye.

He then goes to warn all the princes,

and returns to Arthur, who is joyful.

The princes arrive.

Arthur thanks them heartily.

They enter the ships and go to Gannes.

Merlin goes before and meets them.

They rest.

Arthur's vision of a bear and a dragon.

*[Fol. 228*b*.]

and the kynge ventres foure Ml, and the kynge Tradilyuans iiij^{Ml}, and the kynge Belynans iiij^{Ml}, and the kynge Clarion iiij^{Ml}, and the Duke Escam ij^{Ml}, and Gosenges and Nabunall his senescall iiij^{Ml}, and the kynge ydier iiij^{Ml}, and the kynge Aguysans iiij^{Ml}; and whan thei were alle assembled in the medowes be-fore logres, the kynge Arthur was gladde, and thanked hem hertely, and tolde hem the outrage that the Emperour hadde hym sente, and thei hym counseiled to haste that he were a-venged of the shame. Than was the navie appereiled and entred in to shippes; and Merlyn was be-fore, and stinte neuer till he com to Gannes, and fonde the kynge Ban and the kynge Bohors, and he badde hem thei sholde hem appereile, for the kynge Arthur is entred in to the see for to go vpon the Romayns, and thei seide thei wolde be redy hym to mete; and Merlin returned and com to the port er the kynge Arthur were londed, and whan he hym saugh he asked whens he com; and he seide he hadde ben at Gannes for to somowne bothe two kynges that shull be redy with yow to mete with grete companye of peple; of this thanked hym Arthur, and than thei issed oute of the shippes, and logged a litill from the port vpon the river in tentes, and in pavilou*n*s for to take theire reste of traueile that thei hadde in the see, and slept that nyght; and as the kynge Arthur slepte hym com a vision, that a grete bere was on a grete mountayne, and as hym semed ther com a-gein hym a grete dragon from the Clowdes of the orient, and caste fire and flame thourgh his throte so merveilouse that all the contrey ther-a-boute ther-of was light, and this dragon assailed the bere full fiercely, and the bere hym diffended full wele; *but the dragon enbraced the bere as hym semed, and cast hym to the erthe, and hym slough.

The king prays Merlin to tell him the signification of his dream.

The bear signifies a great giant,

Whan the kynge a-woke he merveiled sore of his dreme, and made Merlyn come be-fore hym, and praied hym dierly to tell hym the significacion of his dreme, and than he tolde hym all worde for worde to Merlin as he hadde seyn in slepinge; and than seide Merlin, "Sir, I shall sey you the tokeni[n]ge the bere, the bere that ye saugh signifieth a grete monstre, a grete Geaunt that is here nygh in a mountaigne that is come oute of the contrey of spayne in to this londe, and here he a-bideth, and doth the contrey shame from day to day ne noman dar hym a-bide for the grete force that is in hym; the dragon that ye saugh in youre a-vision that caste thourgh his throte fire and flame so grete that all the londe ther-of was light signifieth youre-self by the fire of youre hardinesse that is clier and feire shyni*n*ge by grace, and the dragon that assailed the bere so vigerously signifieth that ye shall assaute the Geaunte, of that the dragon enbrased hym and caste to the erthe signifieth that the Geaunte shall enbrace yow, but in the ende ye shull hym sle, of that be ye nothinge in doute." With that the[i] trussed tentes and pavilons, and ride forth on theire wey, but thei hadde not longe gon whan tidinges com to the kynge Arthur of the Geaunte that distroied the londe and the contrey, so that ther-ynne duelled nother man ne woman, but fledde thourgh the feldes as bestes disolate for drede of the Geaunte, and hadde born by force a mayden of the contrey that was nyece to a lorde of the contrey that was a grete gentilman, and he hadde born hir with hym vp to a mounteigne, where-as he repeired that was all closed with the see, and that monteigne is yet cleped the mounte seint Michel, but at that tyme ther was nother mynster ne chapell, ne ther was no ma*n* so hardy ne so myghty that durst fight with the Geaunte; and whan the peple of the contrey dide hym assaile, thei myght not a-gein hym endure neither on londe ne on se, for he slough hem with the roches, and made theire shippes to sinke; and the peple of the contrey fledde thourgh the wodes and forestes, and mounteynes with theire children in theire armes, and so thei lefte theire londes and theire richesses.

and the dragon signifies Arthur,

who will slay the giant.

Tidings come of the giant,

who had borne off a maiden to a mountain,

which is called Mount St. Michael.

When the people assail him, he kills them and sinks their ships.

Whan Arthur herde how the Geaunte distroied so the londe, he cleped kay the stiward, and Bedyuer, and badde hem make hem redy armed a-boute mydnyght, and thei dide his comaundement, and com to-geder thei thre and two squyres only, and no mo, and rode till thei com vpon the mounte, and saugh a grete fire bright shynynge on that o side;

Arthur calls on Kay and Bedyver to be ready.

The three ride to the mountain.

They see another mountain,

and on that othir side was a-nother mounte that was not so grete as that, and ther-on was a fire merveilouse grete, and thei wiste not to whiche thei sholde gon; than he cleped Bediuer, and bad hym go loke on whiche mounte the Geaunte was. Than Bediuer wente in to a bote that was full of the flos of the see, and whan he was come to the next monteyn he wente vp hastily on the roche, and herde grete wepinge; and whan he that herde he hadde doute, ffor he wende the Geaunte hadde be there, but he toke vpon hym hardynesse, and drough his swerde, and wente forth and hoped for *to fight with hym as he that for no drede of deth ne wolde be founde no cowarde, and in this thought he clymbed vpon the mountein; and whan he was come vp he saugh the fier that was clier bren*n*ynge, and saugh a tombe faste by that was newly made, and be-side that tombe satte an olde woman dischеueled, and all to-rente hir heir, and wepte and sighed full sore; and whan she saugh the knyght, she seide, "Haa, gentilman, what art thow, what dolour hath brought the in to this place, ffor with grete dolour thou shalt ende thy lif*e*, yef the Geaunte the finde, ffle hens hastely as faste as thow maist, for thou art to vn-happy yef thow a-bide till that this deuell come that hath no pite of nothinge, fle hens as fer as thou maist, yef thou wilt thi lif saue."

and Bediver goes to it.

He hears great weeping.

*[Fol. 229*a*.]

He sees the fire and a tomb with an old woman beside it.

The woman tells him to fly for fear of the giant.

Whan Bediuer saugh the woman so wepe, and so pitously regrated helayn sighinge, and bad hym to fle but yef he wolde dye, and he seide, "Good woman, lete be thy wepinge, and telle me what thou art, and why thou makest so grete sorowe, and why thou art vpon this mounte by this tombe, and telle me all the occasion of thy sorowe, and who lith here in this sepulture." "I am," quod she, "a dolerouse caitif that wepe and make waymentacion, for a mayden that was nyece to Hoell of nauntes that I norished and yaf souke with my mylk, and she lith vnder this tombe, and it was me comaunded hir to norish and to kepe. Now is ther a deuell that hir hath taken a-wey and brought hider her and me, and wolde haue leyn by the childe that [was] yonge and tender. But she myght hym not svffre ne endure, for he was moche and hidiouse,

Bediver asks the woman why she weeps.

She weeps for the niece of Hoell, who lies under the tomb.

The giant had brought them here.

and lothly, and so he made the soule departe from the body, and thus he be-rafte my doughter falsly and be treson, and ther I haue hir biried, and for hir wepe bothe day and nyght." "And wherfore," quod Bediuer, "gost thou not hens seth thou art left here a-lone, and hast hir loste seth that ther is noon recouer." "Sir," quod she, "I knowe well ther is no recouer, but for that I se ye be a gentilman, and ther-to so curteise I will kepe nothinge from youre knowinge, but I will telle yow the trouthe, whan that my dere doughter was entered, for whos love I wende wele haue loste my witte, and dyed for doel, the Geaunte made me to a-bide stille to haue his foule lecherouse lust vpon me, and he hath me diffouled by his strengthe that I moste suffre his wille whedir I wolde or noon, for I haue no myght a-gein hym, and I take oure lorde god to recorde it was neuer my will, and ner ther with he hadde me slain, ffor with hym haue I suffred grete peyne and gret anguyssh, ffor he is vn-mesurable grete, and he cometh hider to fulfille his lecherie vpon me, and thou art but deed, and maist in no maner ascape, for he cometh a-noon right, for he is ther a-bove in that mountayn where thou seist that fier, and ther-fore I pray the go hens thy wey, and lef me here to compleyne, and make my mone for my doughter."

The woman weeps for her daughter day and night.

Bediver asks her why she does not go away.

She has no power against the giant.

She tells Bediver where the giant is.

Grete pite hadde Bediuer of the woman, and moche he hir counforted, and seth he com a-gein to the kynge, and tolde that he hadde sein, and seide how the geaunte was vpon the high hill ther he saugh the grete fier and smoke. Than the kynge made *his felowes go with hym vpon the mounteyne, and thei were come vpon the hill; than the kynge comaunded his felowes to abide, and seide that hym-self alone wolde go fight with the Geante, "neuertheles," seide the kynge, "loke that ye waite well vpon me, and yef it be myster cometh me to helpe," and thei seide thei wolde with good will, and thei a-bide; and the kynge wente toward the Geaunte that satte be-fore the fire, and rosted flessh on a spite, and kut of the side that moste [was] I-nough, and ete it; and the kynge wente toward hym with swerde in honde drawen a softe pas gripinge his

Bediver comforts the woman, and comes to the king,

*[Fol. 229b.]

who goes to fight with the giant alone.

The giant is sitting before the fire.

The king goes to him softly with his sword drawn, but the giant hears him. The giant catches a great club out of the fire, and comes against the king;

shelde, for he wende hym to haue supprised. But the Geaunte that was full false and maliciouse be-helde, and saugh the kynge come and lept up, ffor the kynge hadde his swerde in his hande, and the Geaunte stert to a grette clobbe that stode by hym that was grete and hidiouse of a plante of an oke that was a grete birthon for a myghty man, and caught it from the fire, and leide it on his nekke, and com fiercely a-gein the kynge as he that was of grete force, and seide to the kynge that a grete fooll was he to come ther, and reised the batte for to smyte the kynge on the heed, but he was wight and delyuer, and lept a-side, so that he of hym failed, and ther-with the kynge smote at hym and wende to smyte hym on tho heed; but the Geaunte that was bolde and hardy kept it on his clobbe, or elles hadde he be deed, neuertheles somdel he touched hym with Marmyadoise his good swerde, that he conquered of the kynge Rion, and touched hym be-twene the two browes that he wax all blinde, for the blode that ran ouer his yen, and that was a thinge that sore hym greved, for he myght not se where to smyte, and be-gan to scarmyshe and to grope a-boute hym with his staffe as a wood devell and sore a-baisshed, and the kynge hasted hym full harde but a-reche hym myght not, ffor the Geaunte caste a-boute hym grete strokes that yef he hadde hym smyten he hadde ben all to-brosed, and thus thei foughten longe, that the oon ne touched not that other, and therfore thei were sore anoyed; and than the Geaunte wente tastinge here and there that he sesed the kynge by the arme; and whan he hadde hym caught, he was gladde and ioyfull, ffor a-noon he wende hym to haue threst to deth, and so he hadde, but that the kynge was wight and delyuer, and wrast out of his gripinge with grete peyne, and than he ran vpon hym with his swerde, and smote hym on the heed and on the lifte sholdre that all the arme fremysshed, and so harde was the hide of the serpent that in the flessh myght it not atame; and the Geaunte myght hym not se, ffor his iyen were all couered with blode, and than he saugh the shadowe of the kynge, and than he ran that wey; but the kynge that wiste he was of

who leaps aside.

Arthur blinds the giant with his sword Marmyadoise, so that he knows not where to strike.

The giant seizes Arthur by the arm,

but the king gets away,

and smites him.

The giant sees the king's shadow,

grete force durste not come in his hand*es*, and so hath he gon vp and down that he stombeled on his clubbe, and it sesed and ran ther as he wende to finde the kynge. But the kynge blenched so that he myght hym not a-reche, and ther-fore hadde he grete sorow in herte, and than he caste a-wey his clubbe and tasted to chacche the kynge in his armes, and so he wente gropinge and frotinge his iyen till he saugh *the light and the shadowe of the kynge; and than he spronge to hym and caught hym by the flankes with bothe his armes that nygh he hadde with his gripes brosten his chyne, than he be-gan to craspe after his arme, for to take from hy*m* his swerde out of his honde. But the kynge it well perceyved and threwe down the swerde, that in the fallinge he myght here it ringe cler; and than he griped the kynge with that oon hande, and stouped down to take the swerde with that other hande, and in the stoupinge the kynge smote hym with his kne that he fill in swowne, and than he lept to the swerde and hente it vp, and stert to the Geaunte ther he lay, and lifte vp the serpentes skyn, and rof hym thourgh the body with the swerde, and so was the Geaunte slain; and kay the stiwarde, and Bediuer made grete ioye of the kynge, and be-helde the Geaunte that so grete was that wonder was to be-holden, and thanked oure lorde of the honour and the victorie that he hadde yove the kynge, ffor neuer hadde thei seyn so grete a feende; and the kynge bad Bediuer smyte of the heed that it myght be born in to the hoste to se the grete merveile of the gretnesse of hym, and he dide his comaundement, and than com down of the mounteyn*e*, and lepe on theire horse, and the flode was come a-gein that gretly hem disesed, and with grete peyne thei passed the greves and com a-gein to the hoste; and the Barons were sore a-baisshed for the taryinge of the kynge, for that thei wiste not whider he was wente, and thei were meved hym for to seche in diuerse parties, ne hadde ben Merlin that bad hem be nothinge dismayed, for he sholde come hastely.

*[Fol. 230*a*.] and gropes after him. He catches him.

The king throws down his sword.

The giant stoops to pick it up, and the king kills him.

Kay and Bediver marvel at the size of the giant.

Bediver smites off the giant's head.

They return to the host.

While the princes and the barou*n*s were in this afray, for the kynge Arthur, he and the stiwarde and Bediuer

The barons see the giant's head at Bediver's saddle.

They marvel at the sight.

They praise God for the king's victory.

They ride forth till they come to the river Aube, where they hear of the Emperor Luce.

Ban and Bohors come to the host.

*[Fol. 230*b*.]

Grascien, Pharien, and Leonce keep the land against Claudas.

Arthur sends messages to Luce,

by Gawein, Segramor, and Ewein.

com down in to his teinte, and hadde the heed of the Geaunte trussed at Bediuers sadell by the heir, and thider com alle the Barou*n*s whan he was a-light, and asked fro when she com, for he hadde put hem in grete afray; and he seide he com fro thens ther he hadde foughten with the Geaunte that distroied so the londe and the contrey ther-aboute and how he hadde hym slayn thourgh the grace of oure lorde; and than he shewed hem the heed that Bediuer hadde trussed, and whan the barons it saugh thei blessed hem for the wonder ther-of, and seide that neuer in all theire lif had thei not seyn so grete an heed, and alle that were in the hoste preised god for the kynges victorie, and than thei dide vn-arme the kynge with grete ioye and gladnesse, and rested ther all that day, till on the morowe that thei trussed teintes and Pavilou*n*s and ride forth the streight wey towarde Burgoyne, and spedde hem so in her iourneyes till thei com vpon the river of [Aube][1] and ther thei herde tidinges of Luce the Emperour was com a-gein hem, and than was the kynge Arthur gladde that he hadde founde hym so nygh, and sory for that he hadde so distroyed and wasted the contrey, and loigge his hoste by the river; and the same day com the kynge Ban and the kynge Bohors in to the hoste with vi^{Ml} *knyghtes and good men of werre. But Grascien and Pharien ne leonce of paierne were nought there, but dide a-bide to kepe and to diffende the londe a-gein the kynge Claudas de la desert, yef it were myster, and a-noon as the two kynges were come in to the hoste thei dide picche theire teintes be-fore the kynge looth, and he made hem grete cheir and feste, for he loved hem hertely, and ther thei a-bide till the kynge Arthur hadde fortefied a Castell that thei myght repeire to yef thei hadde mysteir; and than sente the kynge his messages to the Emperour Luce by the counseile of his barou*n*s, and sente hym to sey that he was folily come vpon his londe, and but he wolde come to a-mendement he wolde hym chace oute of Rome; and on the message he sente sir Gawein, and Segramor, and sir Ewein, ffor that thei were curteise and well I-taught, and ther-to hadden grete hardynesse and high prowesse; and the kynge seide to sir Gawein, "Ffeire nevew, ye shull go to the Emperour on my message, and bidde hym returne hom a-gein, and leve the londe, for it is myn, and yef he will not so, lete hym come to bateile, and prove whiche of vs hath right, ffor while I live I shall it diffende a-gein the Romaynes, and conquered it by bateile, and prove it a-gein hym body for body, whiche of vs two shall it haue of right." Whan the kynge Arthur hadde seide these wordes the messagiers hem turned wele I-armed in stiell with sheldes hanginge at theire nekke, and girde theire goode swerdes, and in theire handes grete speres; and his felowes that were yonge and lusty bachelers counselled sir Gawein to do soche thinge er thei returned agein, that it myght be spoken of euer after, and that men myght sey the werre was well begonne "wherewith the Romaynes haue vs manased;" and thus thei ride till thei com nygh the hoste; and whan thei saugh the messagiers comynge thei lepe oute of theire teintes on all partes to se hem and be-holde and for to wite what thei were com to seche and asked what thei were, and fro whens thei com. But thei hilde with hem no ple ne wolde not stinte till thei com to the Emperou[r]s teinte and ther thei a-light and made theire horse to be holde with-outen. And than thei come be-fore the Emperoure, and tolde hym theire message that thei brought from the kynge Arthur.

---

[1] There is a blank in the MS.; the French MS. (fol. 206, col. 2) has "la riuiere daube."

Arthur tells Gawein what he is to say to the Emperor.

The messengers depart.

They want to do something that shall be spoken of ever after.

The Romans come out of their tents to see the messengers,

who come before the Emperor.

"Sir," quod Gawein, "the kynge Arthur sente the to vndirstonde that thow voide his londe and his contrey for it is all his quytely and he defendeth the to be so hardy to sette ther-ynne foot, and yef thou wilt ought chalenge be bateile he shall it diffende, ffor Romaynes had it conquered be-fore tyme be bateile and be bateile shall he it conquere. Now lete it be proved by bateile whiche oweth to haue the signiourie and the poweste, and com forth to-morowe yef thow wilt the contre chalenge or elles go bak a-gein for here hast thow nought to do; ffor we haue take the londe, and thow hast it loste, and ther-fore yef thow be wise do after my counseile."

Gawein gives Arthur's message.

The emperor is wroth, and says he will not leave the land which is his.

Whan the Emperour herde sir Gawein speke in this maner he ansuerde with-oute more a-bidinge full sory and full wroth, and seide, returne wolde he not, for the londe and the contrey was his, and therfore he wolde holde his wey forth; and he was well plesed with *soche maundementes, and yef he hadde his londe loste he wolde it recouer whan he myght, and that he trowed sholde be hastely. A knyght ther was that satte by the Emperour that Tutillius was cleped, and was the Emperou[r]s suster sone, he ansuerde full felliche, and seide that Bretouns coude well manece but at the dedes thei were but esy, and therfore ought thei to haue the more reprof. But sir Gawein ther-with wrathed and drough his swerde, and lept to hym and smote of his heed, and than he bad his felowes go to theire horse lightly, and a-noon thei dide his comaundement, and Gawein lepte on his horse also with-oute other leve-takinge nother of the Emperour ne of the romayns, and than was all the court trouble and full of romur, ffor the Emperour cried, "Take hem and lete hem not ascape." Than thei cried, "Ore as armes." Ther sholde ye haue seyn peple arme hem in euery side and lepe to horse, and prike after the messengiers, and thei ride forth a grete randon, and the Romayns com after hem on euery side by the weyes thourgh the feldes here v, here iiij, here vj or vij. Oo knyght ther was that richely was horsed and passed alle his felowes, and cried to the massegers full fiercely, "Parde ye shull a-bide, for I shall delyuer yow to the Emperour." Whan sir Gawein this herde, he griped his shelde, and turned his horse and hym hitte so harde that he bar hym deed to the erthe; and than he seide, "Now is it werse for the that thyn horse was so swifte, for thou hadest ben better haue be a myle be-hynde, or a-biden stille in the hoste;" and Segramor lete renne to a knyght that com shovinge after hym, and he smote hym thourgh the throte that he fill deed vp-right; and than he seide, "Sir knyght, with soche morsels I can yow fede and myn other enmyes. Now be stille ther and a-bide hem that come after, and telle hem that this wey gon the messagiers of the kynge Arthur, that is theire rightfull lorde."

*[Fol. 231*a*.]

Tutillius says the words of the Britons are greater than their deeds.

Gawein smites off his head.

The messengers then leap to horse.

The emperor cries out for them to be taken.

The Romans come after them on all sides.

One knight passes all his fellows, and cries out to the messengers.

Gawein kills him.

Segramor kills another knight.

After hym com a knyght that was born in Rome, and come of high lynage, and was cleped Marcell, he satte on a stronge horse, and a swyfte, and hadde no spere for grete haste; he ouer-toke sir Gawein, and seide he sholde hym yelde to the Emperour, and Gawein loked and saugh hym come costinge his wey, and turned his horse at the passinge forth, and Gawein hym smote so harde in to the brain so depe that the swerde entred to the teth, and Gawein that seide, "Thow haddest to moche haste, thou myght better haue come be-hynde." Than thei turned alle thre, and smote down thre romayns deed. A knyght ther was that was cosin to Marcell, and satte on a stronge horse that was swyfte, and was sory for his nevew that he saugh ly deed, and be-gan to prike ouerthwert the felde, and sir Ewein it saugh and ran that wey, and smote hym so harde that he hadde no leiser to turne a-gein, for ther he loste his heed, and thre romayns brake theire speres vpon sir Ewein, and he smote of the heed of that oon, and the arme of the seconde, and smote the thirde vpon the helme that he fill from his horse to the erthe, and than he wente forth after his felowes, and the romains hem chaced till thei com to a wode that was nygh the castell that kynge Arthur hadde fortefied. But now we shull stinte a while of the messengers, and speke of the kynge Arthur.

Marcell overtakes Gawein,

who kills him.

A cousin of Marcell comes to revenge his death,

but Sir Ewein kills him.

Three Romans set on Ewein, who smites all three.

*When Arthur hadde sente his message to Luce the Emperour he sent after hem vj^{Ml} men by the counseile of Merlin for to socour hem, yef it were myster, and thei rode till thei com to the wode, and ther thei a-bide on horsbak till thei saugh hem comynge, and after hem all the feilde couered with kny[g]thes and horsemen that chaced the knyghtes that were messagiers, and whan thei saugh this thei spronge oute of the wode hem a-geins, and the romayns resorte a-noon right as thei saugh hem come, and many of hem were wroth that thei hadde chaced hem so fer, ffor the bretons than hem chaced full crewelly, and ther was many of hem taken and many slain. A knyght ther was of grette renoun, whos name was Petrius, ffor in Rome was not his pareill of prowesse and of hardynesse, and herde speke of this a-wayte that the Bretouns hadde made, and a-noon

*[Fol. 231b.] Arthur sends 6,000 men after the messengers to succour them. They ride to the wood.

They spring out on the Romans.

Petrius rides to them with 6,000 men, and chaces the Britons back to the wood.

he rode thider with vj^{Ml} men of armes, and as soone as he was come in to the stour, he made the bretons be fin force entre in to the wode, for thei myght not hym and his peple endure, but turned to flight, and the chace dured to the wode, and ther thei stode at diffence, and Petrius hem assailed full vigerously, but many he loste of his men, ffor the Bretou*n*s slough of hem grete plente, and many ther were deed on bothe sides.

Arthur sends Ydiers after the messengers.

Whan Arthur saugh the messangiers taried so longe, he cleped ydier the sone of Vunde and comaunded hym to go after hem till he hadde hem founden, and he dide his co*m*aundeme*n*t and rode forth till he fonde bothe hostes that fought to-geder, and sir Gawein and his felowes dide merveiles and wele, and ydiers and his companye spronge in vpon the Romayns fiercely, and than com alle the bretou*n*s oute of the wode, and haue recouered the felde; and Petrius that was a noble knyght, and bolde and hardy, relied his peple a-boute hym, and cowde well fle and returne at a vauntage, and well fight with his enmyes, and who that will mete an hardy knyght lete hym go to hym, ffor whom that he smote died hym be-houed, and the bretou*n*s pressed to the bateile as thei that were desirous to Iuste and covetouse to do chiualrie, so that thei rought not how it yede so the werre were be-gonne; and on that other side was Petrius full dolent, and kepte his felowes clos a-boute hym, and Segramor of Costantinnoble wente thourgh the bateile smytinge down knyghtes and horse, and was war of Petrius that threwe down bretou*n*s, and maymed and slough, and saugh wele by the merveiles that he dide that soone myght the bretou*n*s have grete losse, but yef Petrius were deed or taken quyk, ffor by his prowesse all only a-boode alle the Romayns, and Gawein toke counseile of the beste of his frendes, and seide, "We haue be-gonne this stour with-oute the leve of kynge Arthur, and yef it happen vs wele he will conne vs thanke. And yef it myshappe we shull haue magre, and therfore it be-houeth vs to sle Petrius or take hym quyk and yelde hym to kynge Arthur, ffor otherwyse may we not departe with-oute losse, and therfore I pray yow do as I shall do, and foloweth me;" and thei

Ydiers and his company spring in among the Romans, and the Britons recover the field.

Segramor smites down knights and horses.

Gawein takes counsel of his friends,

and says they must either kill Petrius or take him alive.

seide thei wolde with good will; and whan Segramor this herde he was gladde, *ffor he hadde well sein and parceyved whiche was Petrius. *[Fol. 232*a*.]

Than Segramor shof that wey as he saugh Petrius, and alle his felowes after that neuer thei stinte till thei come in to the place ther Petrius gouerned his meyne, and Segramor spored his horse so nygh, that he caught hym in his armes that thei bothe fill to the erthe as he that trusted wele vpon his felowes, and he lay at the erthe, and griped hi*m* sore in his armes; and Petrius peyned hym sore to a-rise and turned wrastelinge; but all that availed not, ffor Segramor helde hym faste so that he hadde no power to meve; and whan the Romayns saugh hym falle thei pressed hym for to rescowe, and ther was harde stour and rough medle, and Gawein com thourgh the presse makinge wey with the trenchaunt suerde, wherwith he slough down right all that stode in his wey, so that ther was no romayn so hardy ne so myghty but he made hym wey; and ydiers the sone of vut made grete lardure of Romayns; and sir Ewein the sone of kynge Vrien so peyned hym to perce the presse, that eche of hem laboured for other so vigerously that thei haue remounted Segramor by force, and sette hym on horse, and take Petrius that sore was beten, and diffouled, and haue hym drawen oute of the presse be fin force, and delyuered hym to goode wardeynes, and returned a-gein in to the stour, and the Romayns that hadde no gouernour hadde loste theire diffence whan he was gon that hem dide condite; and the bretou*n*s hem slough and caste to grounde so thikke that thei passed ouer grete hilles of deed bodyes to pursue hem that fledde, and thei slough many in the chace, and toke prisoners and hem bounden and presented the kynge Arthur, and the kynge hem thanked hertely; and than thei counseiled hym to sende hem in to the reame of Benoyk, and sette hem ther in prison till the Romayns hadde don his plesier, ffor yef he kept hem in the hoste thei myght hem wele ascape. Than the kynge cleped Borell, and Richer, and Cador, and Bediuer, that were gode knyghtes and hardy, and of grete perage, and comaunded hem to a-rise erly on

Segramor spurs his horse against Petrius, and catches him in his arms.

They both fall to the ground.

Gawein slays all that stand in his way.

Ydiers and Sir Ewein remount Segramor,

and deliver Petrius to a guard.

The Britons slay the Romans, who have no leader,

and present the prisoners to Arthur.

The king commands Borell, Richer, Cador, and Bediver to convey the prisoners to a safe place.

the morowe, and conveye the prisoners till thei were in saf warde; and here shull we reste of the prisoners, and of hem that shull hem conveye, and speke of the Emp*er*our.

The emperor is angry when he hears the prisoners will be led to Benoyk; he commands 10,000 men to prepare to rescue them.

He commands five princes to lead them. They depart and abide where the prisoners will pass.

*[Fol. 232*b*.]

The men of Arthur lead the prisoners, who are bound.

The Romans spring out on them.

Bediver leads the prisoners into a safe place, and leaves them with the squire.

The Britons are divided into four companies.

Whan the Emperour wiste of the damage that his men hadde resceived, he was full of dolour and wrath, and than com asspies that seide how the prisoners sholde on the morowe be ledde in to the londe of Benoyk; whan the Emperour herde this, he made x^{Ml} men lepe to horse, and traueile all nyght for to come be-fore ther the prisoners sholde passe, and hem to rescowe yef it myght be; and than the Emperour cleped Gestoire that was lorde of lybee, and the kynge of Surre that Euander was cleped, and Calidus of Rome, and Maus, and Cathenois. These v cowde skile of bateile, and moche thei knewe of werre, and the Emperour hem comaunded to condite these x^{Ml}, and than departed these v princes w*ith* alle these x^{Ml} men, and rode till thei come in to the wey ther as these prisoners sholde passe, *and ther thei a-bode stille in a delitable place that thei fonde nygh the wey. And on the morowe a-roos the meyne of kynge Arthur as thei were comaunded, and ledde the prisoners, and rode in two parties for doute of peple, and hem condited Bretell, and Richer, and Cador, and the companye ther the prisoners were made hem be ledde with theire handes bounden be-hynde at theire bakke, and theire feet vndir the horse belyes; and thei that wente be-fore blusht vpon the wacche of the Romayns; and the Romains spronge out hem a-geins so harde that the erthe trembled, and the bretou*n*s hem diffended as peple of grete vertu; and whan Bediuer that com be-hynde herde the strokes resounde he made lede the prisoners in to a sure place, and comaunded the squyres hem to kepe, and than smote theire horse with the spores, and wolde not stinte till thei com to here felowes, and hem diffended with grete force and vigour; and the romains shof here and there, and hadde not so grete entente to disconfite the bretou*n*s as for to rescowe the prisoners and hem to seche; and whan the bretou*n*s saugh hem thus demened, thei departed in foure bateiles, and Cador hadde in his companye the peple of Cornewaile, and Bediuer the peple of bediers, and Richer hadde a companye of his owne peple, and Bretell hadde hem of Galvoye; whan the kynge Evander saugh his peple turne to disconfiture, and that theire force be-gan to amenuse, he gadered hem a-boute hym clos; and whan thei saugh the bretons recouer, thei ronne vpon hem in ordre, and than be-gonne a stour right grete; and than hadde the bretons moche the werse, for thei loste grete plente of theire knyghtes, and ydiers le fitz vut was mette so sore with the kynge Euander, that he fill deed to the erthe, and ther-fore were the bretons sore dismayed, for thei loste moche peple at that shoofte, and alle thei hadde be deed or taken; but as Cleodalis the Senescall of Carmelide com with v^{Ml} men that the kynge Arthur hadde sent by the counseile of Merlin; and whan Bedyuer hem perceived, he seide to his companye, "Holde stille now, and fle not, lo here cometh socour;" and than thei cried the signe of kynge Arthur so high, that Cleodalis com with v^{Ml} men, and the Romayns entended to take the bretou*n*s, and toke no tent to hem of Carmelide till thei were falle, euen vpon hem, and in theire comynge thei ouerthrewe a hundred of romayns that neuer rise after. And than the romayns were alle a-baisshed, ffor thei wende it hadde be the kynge Arthur, and his power; and so thei were dismayed that thei fledde toward theire herberges, for thei coueited noon other garison, and these hem chaced that cowde hem not love, and in that chace was slayn the kynge Euander, and Chachelos, and of other moo than two thousande, and many ther were taken prisoners; and than thei repeired in to the feelde of the bateile, and toke the erle bourell and other deed cors that lay thourgh the felde, and hem biried, and bar a-wey hem that were wounded; and these that the kynge hadden comaunded to kepe and conveie the prisoners thei ledde hem forth, and other that thei hadde taken in the bateile newly, and bounde hem streite, and sent hem thider as thei were comaunded; and Cleodalis and his companye returned to the kynge Arthur, and tolde hym how thei hadde spedde. But here a-while we shull reste of hem, and speke of the Emperour luce.

Evander gathers his people about him.

The Britons lose many of their knights.

Cleodalis comes with 5,000 men.

Bediver sees them coming, and calls out to his company.

One hundred Romans are overthrown.

The others fly.

Evander and Chachelos are slain.

The Britons bury the dead, and bear away the prisoners.

Cleodalis and his company return to Arthur.

*[Fol. 233*a*.]

The emperor is full of sorrow when he knows of the discomfiture of his people, and of the death of Evander.

He makes his people leap to horse and come to Logres.

Arthur makes his people ride privily.

They come to a valley called Toroise on the way from Oston to Logres.

The Earl of Gloucester leads 6,766 knights, who are to remain in a wood till they are needed.

Arthur is constable of another company.

His dragon is held for a sign.

He divides the people into eight companies.

*Full of sorowe was the Emperour whan he knewe the discounfiture, and the grete losse of his peple, and wepte full tendirly for the kynge Euander, and for other that were deed and taken, and saugh well the myschef, and that dismayed hym sore, and was in doute whedir he sholde fight with the kynge Arthur, or he sholde a-bide his rere-warde that sholde come after; and than he hym be-thought and made his peple lepe to horse and come to logres with all his hoste, and loigge hym in the vales vnder the Citee; and whan the kynge Arthur wiste that, he wiste well that he wolde not fight, though he hadde more peple, and so wolde not he suffre hym soiourne ne sitte nygh hym, and made p*re*vely his peple lepe to horse, and rode on the right side of the Cite be-twene the town and the hoste of the Emperour, and lefte the hoste on the left side, and that was to disavaunce the Emperour, and by-reve hym the wey to Oston, and laboured all the nyght till on the morowe, and com in to a valeye that was cleped Toroise, and that was the streight wey fro Oston to logres; and ther the kynge made to arme his companye lest the romayns com vpon hem, and that thei myght lightly put hem bakke; and the cariage, and the mene peple that hadde no myster of bateile, the kynge made hem to a-bide by an hill, and made a mustre of armed peple that yef the romayns hem saugh thei sholde be dismayed, for the grete multitude of peple; after that the kynge sette in a wode vj^{Ml} knyghtes vij^{c} lxvj, and comaunded hem to the Erle of Gloucester to lede, whiche was bothe Duke and Castelein, and the kynge he*m* comaunded that thei sholde not meve thens in no maner till thei saugh the nede. "And yef I haue myster," seide the kynge, "I shall turne to yow, and yef the Romayns turne to discounfiture, loke ye hem not spare;" and thei hym ansuerde that so thei wolde do with good chere, and than tolde the kynge a-nother companye of knyghtes that were well appareile, and sette hem in a place, and hym-self was constable; and ther was his prevy meyne that he hadde norisshed, and made his dragon to be holde in myd wey for a signe; and than departed his peple in viij parties, and putte in each Partye ij^{Ml} knyghtes, and the half were on foote, and half on horse-bak, and tolde to eche partie in what maner thei sholde hem contene, and also he putt to so moche peple, that in eche partie was viij^{Ml} and v^{C}, and so hadde the kynge Aguysans the first bateile, and that other ledde the Duke Escam of Cambenyk, and Belcys the Danoys kynge, and the kynge Looth of Orcanye ledde a-nother. And the kynge Tradilyuans of North walis, and sir Gawein was with the kynge Looth as he that was a kynge of grete pris; after these iiij firste bateiles that wente be-fore come iiij other after wele a-raied, of whiche the kynge Vrien ledde the firste, and with hym was sir Ewein his sone, and Ewein a-voutres, and the kynge Belynans, and the kynge Ventres, and hadde in her companye the peple of her companye and contrey. The seconde bateile of these foure ledde the kynge de Cent chiualers, and the kynge Clarion of Northumbirlonde, and the kynge Carados, and in theire companye the peple of theire contreyes. The thridde bateile ledde the kynge Bohors, and thei of his contre, and Cleodalis the Senescall of Carmelide, and thei that he brought oute of his contrey; the fourthe of these iiij, and the laste *ledde the kynge Ban of Benoyk, and hadde with hym alle the sergeauntes, and arblastiers, and iiij^{Ml} men wele horsed; and whan the kynge hadde stablisshed his peple and his bateiles devised, he seide to his barons and to his people, "Lordes, now it shall be sene how wele ye will do; ffor all that euer ye haue don in all youre lif is loste, but ye do well at this tyme a-gein these Romayns;" and the princes hym ansuerde a-noon with oo voice that lever hadde thei to die in the felde, but he hadde the honour*e* and the victorie; and whan the kynge Arthur herde this he was gladde and ioyfull. But now shull we ret*ur*ne to speke of the Emperour.

In each there are 8,500 men.

The leaders of the first division.

The leaders of the second division.

The leaders of the third division.

The leaders of the fourth division.

*[Fol. 233*b*.]

The king addresses the people.

Here seith the book, that whan the Emperour was loiged in the vale vnder logres, he and his Baronye that were noble knyghtes and sure, that ther he lay that nyght, and on the morowe he departed from logres, and wende to go to Oston, and than com tidinges how the kynge Arthur hadde leide a-waite a-gein hym, and so he saugh wele that he moste nede fight or

The emperor and the barons go towards Oston.

They hear tidings of Arthur.

elles returne, and that wolde he not do in no maner, ffor that sholde be holde cowardise, and yef he fledde his enmyes wolde hym chace on euery side, and do hym anoy and damage, and the two thinges myght not oon do lightly bothe to fle and to fight.

The emperor calls his princes and addresses them.

Than he made his princes come be-fore hym, wher-of he hadde two hundred of hem that were of his counseile; and than he spake to hem and seide, "Gentill knyght*es*, good conquerours, the sones of good auncestrie, that the grete honours and londes conquered, by theire grete prowesse and hardynesse is Rome the heed of the worlde; and yef this Empire falle in youre tyme it were shame to yow, ffor bolde and hardy were youre auncestres, and by reson of gentill fader ought come gentill issue, youre fadres vailaunt and worthi, and eueriche of yow ought to enforce hym to resemble his fader, ffor grete shame oueth he to haue that leseth the heritage of his fader, and that for slouthe lete falle that his fader conquered, not that ye be euell ne a-peired. Thei were bolde and profitable, and so I holde yow the same; and the bretons haue be-rafte vs the wey toward Oston, that we may not passe but by bateile; take youre armes and a-dubbe yow, and yef thei vs a-bide loke that thei be well beten, and yef thei fle we shull hem pursue by force, and peyne vs to a-bate theire pride, and distroie theire powestee."

Rome is the head of the world.

It would be shameful if they lost the heritage of their fathers.

The Britons will not let them pass to Oston without a battle.

The Romans prepare for battle.

Than the romayns ordeyned theire bateiles, and theire sheltrons renged, and many a paynym medled a-monge the cristein peple that were come to deserue theire fees and theire londes that thei hilde of Rome, and many of hem on foote, and many on horse, and sette some on the hill, and some in the valey. Than sholde ye haue herde grete sown of hornes and trumpes, and mules and Olyfaunt*es*, and thei ride forth clos holdinge till the[i] fill on the wacche of kynge Arthur, and than sholde ye haue sey shotte of arowes and quarelles fle so thikke that noon durste discouer his heed, and after that com thei to brekinge of speres vpon the sheldes; and whan the speres were spent thei gripe the axes, and gleves, and swerdes, and smyte sore vpon helmes and hauberkes, ffor ther was stour merveilous and sore fight; ther was no nede of foles ne of *cowardes, for

There was great sound of horns and trumpets.

The arrows fly about quickly.

The fight is very sore.

*[Fol. 234*a*.]

longe thei foughten to-geder and hurteled, that neuer the Romayns ne rused ne the bretons myght nought recouer vpon hem, ne noon wiste whiche hadde the better ne the victorie, till that the warde of kinge Vrien and kynge Ventre, and kynge Belynans frusshed a-monge the Romayns with all theire peple where thei saugh the thikkest presse, and the thre princes smyten in wonderfully, and kay the stiward that was in theire companye dide as a noble knyght; ffor the thre Princes seide, "Mercy god whiche a stiward is this;" and the same thei seide of Bediuer the constable, and ther was many a knyght leide to grounde, and many deed, and many grete strokes yoven and resceived, and kay and Bediuer dide merveiles, for thei trusted in theire prowesse, and hilde hem to-geder, and a-vaunced to fer forth, and mette a bateile that the kynge of mede dide bringe, and his name was Boclus, a paynym of grete prowesse, and thei medled with hem and her peple, and many thei slough; and whan the kynge boclus saugh the two knyghtes that dide hym so grete damage of his peple, he was sory, and hilde a grete short spere, and ran to Bediuer, and smote hym with so grete ire, that the stele heed passed thourgh the bouke; and yef he hadde touched hym a litill lower, deed hadde ben for euer, and neuertheles he bar hym down to the erthe out of his sadill all in swowne; whan kay saugh hym falle, he hadde grete sorowe at his herte, ffor he wende verily he hadde be deed, and com toward hym with as moche people as he myght, and made theym of mede resorten, and com to Bedyuer, and clipte hym in his armes, and wolde haue born hym oute of the presse from the horse feet for the grete love that was hem be-twene, and the kynge of Mede hym turned and smote kay with his suerde vpon the helme that he yaf hym a grete wounde on the heed so that he be-houed to lete Bedyuer ly stille, and bothe hadde thei soone haue be slain ne hadde be theire meyne that full stifly hem diffended; and a knyght spronge in to the presse that was cleped Segras, and was nevew to Bediuer; and whan he saugh his vncle so ly at erthe, he wende he hadde be deed, and he assembled his kyn and frendes that were well thre hundred,

Urien, Ventre, and Belynans set on the Romans.

Kay and Bediver do marvels.

They slay many of the people of King Boclus.

Boclus smites Bediver and bears him to the ground.

Kay comes to Bediver and takes him in his arms to bear him away,

but Boclus smites Kay on the head.

Segras, a nephew of Bediver, assembles his friends, and comes towards Boclus, whom he kills,

and hews into small pieces.

He bears his uncle out of the press.

*[Fol. 234*b*.]

King Ventres is wounded.

Gawein and Hoell smite into the battle.

The people of little Bretayne do great deeds.

They come to the emperor.

and seide, "Seweth after me, and lete vs a-venge the deth of myn vncle." Than he lefte the Romayns, and a-spide the kynge of mede, and turned that wey, and cried the signe of kynge Arthur as a wood man oute of witte for angre to a-venge the deth of his vncle, and his felowes sewed after hym with sharp grounden speres wher-with was slain many a paynym; and whan Segars saugh the kynge Boclus that hadde smyte down his vncle, he smote hym on the helme with so grete ire, that he cleft hym to the teth that he fill deed to grounde, and than he light down and caught hym vp, and hym lede on his horse and brought hym ther as his vncle lay, and ther he hewe hym in to smale peces; and than he seide to his peple, "Sle these hethen houndes, that in oure lorde haue no creaunce;" and with that he herde his oncle sighe, and than was he gladde in herte, and toke hym vp softely, and bar hym oute of the presse to the harneys, *and than returned to the bateile that was full crewell and fell; and the kynge Ventres mette the kynge Alipatin, and the kynge Ventres was wounded thourgh the body, ffor the Romayns were of so grete power*e* that the bretou*n*s be-hoved to rusen of fin force; and whan sir Gawein and hoell of the litill Bretayne saugh hem resorte, thei were wroth and sory. Than thei smote in a-monge hem, and the peple of the litill Bretayne hem slough euer nygh theire lorde, so that no presse myght hem with-stonde, and so wele thei dide that thei made them turne theire bakkes to hem and fledde, and ther was many slain and throwe to grounde; and in this wise thei hem demened till thei com to the maister Gawfanon of the Egle of golde, and ther was the Emperour, and the myghthiest men of the worlde, and the grettest gentles of Rome.

Hermans is killed.

The people of the emperor slay 2,000 of the Britons.

Ther sholde ye haue seyn stiffe stour and fell, and crewell bateile, and hermans that was Erle of Tripill was in companye of sir Gawein and hauell, but a knaue hym slough with a gauelok, and the peple of the Emperour smyte so on the bretou*n*s that thei slough of hem two thousande in the self place wher-of was grete damage and pite, for thei were full worthi men and many noble knyghtes, and whan sir Gawein saugh his companye thus dye, he spronge in a-monge the Romayns as a wood lyon a-monge wilde bestes, and he was of noble high prowesse, and was not wery to smyte grete strokes vpon eyther side till he com nygh the Emperour; and whan he saugh the Emperour he knewe hym wele, and he hym also, and a-noon that oon lete renne to that other, and smyten to-geder with grete myght, but thei dide not falle, for bothe were thei of grete force; and the Emperour was right stronge and hardy, and was gladde that he was mette with Gawein, for he knewe hym by his armes that men hym hadde devised, and the signes, and seide to hymself, yef I may ascape a-lyve, I may ther-of a-vaunte me at Rome. Than he griped his swerde, and couered hym with his shelde, and faught with sir Gawein full fiercly, and sir Gawein hym smote with Calibourne his good suerde, that he slitte his helme, and his heed down to the teth; and whan the romayns saugh the Emperour deed, thei ronne vpon the bretou*n*s and yaf hem a dispitouse shour and crewell, and smyte down in her comynge moo than thre hundred; whan Arthur saugh the romayns recouer, and his peple so demene, he cried with an high voyce, "What lordinges, what do ye holde stille youre grounde, and lete noon of hem ascape, for I am the kynge Arthur, that for no man will forsake the felde; sewe me, and loke ye be not recreaunt, and remembre you of youre noble prowesses that so many remes haue conquered, ffor ther shall noon passe quyk oute of this felde, but I haue the victorie vpon these romayns, ffor this day shall I lyve or dye;" with that he spronge in a-monge the romains, and be-gan to smyte down knyghtes, and horse and men, that whom so he a-raught be-houed to dye, ffor he smote no stroke with his swerde, but he slough other man or horse, and in his wey he mette hestor the kynge lubye, and he smote hym so that his heed fill to grounde; and than he seide, "Cursed be thow that euer thou hider com to do vs soche damage to my men;" and after he smote Polibetes, the kynge of mede, that he fonde in his wey, that he fill deed to grounde; whan the barou*n*s saugh the kynge Arthur do so wele, thei assailed the romayns, and the romayns hem vigerously, that

Gawein springs in among the Romans.

He comes to the emperor.

They smite together.

Gawein kills the emperor with Calibourne.

When the Romans see their emperor dead, they rush on the Britons, and smite down more than three hundred.

Arthur calls out to his people,

and springs in among the Romans, and smites down horse and men.

He kills Hestor

and Polibetes.

The Britons and Romans fight vigorously.

*[Fol. 235*a*.]

The 6,666 come down from the mountain,

and smite the Romans from behind.

The Romans fly.

grete *damage dide to the bretons, and yef the Emperour ne hadde be slain, the bretou*n*s ne myght not a-gein hem endured, for that discounforted hem alle; neuertheles thei contened hem so wele, that noon wiste who sholde haue the better. Than the vj$^{\mathrm{Ml}}$ and vj$^{\mathrm{C}}$ lxvj com down of the montaigne to whom the kynge Arthur sholde haue recovered yef he hadde myster, and thei com in to the hoste in soche maner*e*, that the romayns were not war; and thei smyte on hem be-hynde so harde, that thei slitte the bateile in two parties, and so thei wente diffoulinge hem vnder horse feet and slough hem with theire suerd*es*; and after these were come myght the romayns not endure, but turned to flight, for sore were thei discounforted, for the Emperour that was slain, and the Romains and the sarazins fledde discounfited, and the bretou*n*s hem enchaced, and slough of hem as many as thei hadde talant.

Arthur is glad at the victory that God had given him.

The dead bodies are buried.

Arthur sends the body of the emperor to Rome.

He asks Merlin where he shall go.

Merlin says he is to go on his way.

He tells of a devil by the lake de Losane,

Full gladde was the kynge Arthur of the discounfiture of the Romains, and of the victorie that god hadde hym yoven, and than com in to the feelde ther the bateile hadde be and biryed the deed bodies in chirches and abbeyes of the contrey; and the wounded lete hem be ledde to townes, and serched theire sores, and after made take the body of the Emperour, and sente it to Rome on a beere, and sente worde to the romains that it was the trewage of Bretaigne, that he sent to Rome, and yef thei wolde aske eny more he wolde hem sende soche a-nother in the same wise; and whan he hadde don thus, he toke counseile wheder he sholde holde forth his wey, or turne a-gein in to Gaule, and the princes seide he sholde take counseile of Merlin. Than the kynge called Merlin, and seide, "Dere frende, how pleseth it you that I shall do." "Sir," seide Merlin, "ye shull not come at Rome, ne ye shull not yet returne, but holde forth youre wey, ffor ther be peple that haue grete nede of youre helpe." "How so," seide the kynge, "is ther werre in this contrey." "Sir," seide Merlin, "ye! beyonde the lak de losane, for ther repeireth a devell, an enmy so that ther dar nother a-bide man ne woman, for he distroieth the contrey, and sleth all that he may gete." "How so," seide the kynge, “may ther no man hym endure, than is he no man as other ben.” “No,” quod Merlin, “it is a catte, full of the devell that is so grete and ougly, that it is an horible sight on to loke.” “Ih*es*u mercy,” seide the kynge to M*er*lin, “whens myght soche a beeste come?” “Sir,” seide Merlin, “that can I telle yow.”

which is a great and ugly cat.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

ARTHUR'S FIGHT WITH THE GREAT CAT; THE SEARCH FOR MERLIN, AND HIS IMPRISONMENT; THE TRANSFORMATION OF GAWEIN INTO A DWARF, AND RETURN TO HIS PROPER FORM; THE BIRTH OF LANCELOT.

“Hit be-fill at the assencion hens a-foure yere, that a fissher of the contrey com to the lak de losane with his nettes and his engynes; and whan he was redy to caste his nette in to the water, he p*ro*mysed to oure lorde, the firste fissh that he sholde take; and whan he drough vp his nette, he toke a fissh that was worth xxxs.; and whan he saugh the fissh so feire and grete, he seide to hym-self softly be-twene his teth, “God shall not haue this, but he shall haue the next that I take.” Than he threwe his nett a-gein in to the water, and toke a-nother fissh that was better than the firste; and whan he saugh it was so good and so feire, he seide that yet our lorde god myght wele a-bide of this. But the thridde sholde he haue with-oute eny doute; and than he caste his nett in to the water, and drough oute a litill kyton as blakke as eny cool. And whan the *ffissher it saugh, he seide that he hadde nede ther-of in his house for rattes and mees, and he it norisshed and kept vp in his house till it strangeled hym, and his wif and his children, and after fledde in to a mountayn that is be-yonde the lak, that I haue to you of spoken, and hath be ther*e* in to this tyme, and distroieth and sleth all that he may se and a-reche; and he is grete and horible that it is merveile hym to se; and we shull go that wey, for it is the right wey toward Rome, and yef god

A fisher came to the lac de Losane with his nets.

He vowed to give to God the first fish he should take,

but he breaks his vow three times.

The third time he cast in his net he drew out a kitten;

*[Fol. 235*b*.]

he nourished it, and it strangled him, his wife, and children, and fled to the mountain, and destroyed all it saw.

will, ye shull sette the peple in reste that be fledde in to straunge londes." Whan the barons undirstode these wordes thei gonne to blesse hem for the grete merveile that thei hadden, and seiden that it was vengeaunce of oure lorde, and a tokne that he was wroth, for the synne that the fissher hadde broken his promys, and ther-fore thei trowed oure lorde were wroth with hym, for that he hadde falsed his couenaunt. Than the kynge comaunded to trusse and to make hym redy to ride; and thei dide his comaundement, and toke theire wey toward the lak de losane, and fonde the contrei wasted and voide of peple, that nother man ne woman durste ther-ynne enhabite. And thei laboured so till that thei com vnder the mounte, wher-as this devell dide a-bide; and loiged hem in a valey a myle fro the mountein; and the kynge Looth toke his armes, and sir Gawein, and Gaheries, and the kynge Ban, and Merlin, for to go with the kynge Arthur, and seide thei wolde go se this feende that so grete damage and harme hadde don in the contrey; and thei clymbe vpon the mountein as Merlin hem ledde, that well knewe the wey, for the grete witte that was in hym. And whan thei were come vp, than seide Merlin to Arthur, "Sir, in that roche ther is the Catte;" and shewed hym a grete cave in a medowe that was right large and depe. "And how shall the Catte come oute?" seide the kynge. "That shull ye se hastely," quod Merlin, "but loke ye be redy you to diffende, for a-noon he will yow assaile." "Than drawe yow alle a-bakke," seide the kynge Arthur, "for I will preve his power;" and thei dide his comaundement, and a-noon as thei were with-drawen, Merlin whistelid lowde; and whan the catte that herde, a-noon he lept oute of the cave, for he wende that it had be som wilde beste, and he was hungry and fastinge, and ran woodly a-straye toward the kynge Arthur; and as soone as the kynge saugh hym comynge he bar a-gein hym a short spere, and wende to smyte hym thourgh the body. But the feend caught the steill heed in his teth so harde, that he made it bende, and in the turnynge that the kynge made, the shaft to brake faste by the heed that was in the cattes mowthe; and he be-gan to make a grym noyse

The barons marvel and say that it is God's vengeance.

The king commands them to make ready to ride. They go towards the Lak de Losane.

Looth, Gawein, Gaheries, Ban, and Merlin, go up the mountain with Arthur.

Merlin points out where the cat is.

Arthur tells them all to draw back.

The cat leaps out of the cave, and runs towards Arthur, who prepares to receive it with a spear, which the cat breaks in his mouth.

as he were wood, and the kynge caste down the tronchon of the spere, and drough his suerde, and caste his shelde hym be-fore; and the catte lepte to hym a-noon, and wende to sese hym by the throte, and the kynge lifte the shelde a-gein hym so fiercely, that the catte fill to grounde; but soone he lepte vpon his feet and ran vpon the kynge full fiercely, and the kynge lifte vp the suerde and smote the catte on the heed that he cutte the skyn; but the heed was so harde that he myght not entre; and neuertheles he was so astonyed, that he fill to the erthe vp-right, but er the kynge myght his shelde recouer, the catte sesed hym at discouert *be the sholdres so harde that his clawes griped thourgh his hauberke in to the flesshe, and plukked so harde that he braste moo than iiij^{c} mayles, that the reade blode folowed his clawes, and ther failed but litill that the kynge hadde falle to the erthe; and whan the kynge saugh his blode, he was wonder wroth, than he caste his shelde be-fore his breste, and hilde his swerde in his right hande, and ran to the catte vigerously, that likked his clawes that were weet of blode; and whan he saugh the kynge come toward hym, he lepe hy*m* a-geins, and wende to sese hym as he hadde do be-forn, but the kynge launched his shelde hym be-fore, and the catte smote ther in his two feet be-fore with so grete fiersnesse thourgh the shelde, and breied so harde that the kynge enclyned to the erthe, so that the gige of the shelde fly from his nekke; but he griped the shelde so faste by the euarmynge that the catte myght it not hym be-reve, ne pulle oute his clawes, but henge in the shelde be the two feet be-fore; and whan the kynge saugh this, he griped faste the shelde and smote hym with his swerde vpon bothe legges, that he cutte hem a-sonder by the knees, and the catte fill to grounde; and the kynge caste a-wey his shelde, and ran to hym with swerde drawen; and the catte sterte vpon the hynder-feet, and grenned with his teth, and coveited the throte of the kynge; and the kynge launched at hym and wende to smyte hym on the heed, and ther-with the catte strayned hys hynder feet and lept in his visage, and griped hym with her hynder feet, and with hir teth in to the flesshe

The king draws his sword,

and smites the cat on the head.

The cat seizes the king,

*[Fol. 236*a*.]

and makes the blood to flow.

The king runs to the cat, with his shield before him.

The cat fixes its claws in the shield,

and cannot pull them out.

The king cuts off its two fore legs.

The cat flies at the king's throat,

and bites him, that

the blood streams out.

The king cuts off its hind feet.

The cat creeps towards the cave; but the king goes between the cave and the cat, which he slays.

Merlin and the others run to him.

*[Fol. 236*b*.]

The barons look at the feet left in the hauberk.

The king goes to his tent, and unarms.

The leeches wash his wounds.

They return towards Gaul.

that the blode stremed out in many places of breste and sholdres on high; and whan the kynge felte hym holde so harde, he sette the point of his swerde to the bely for to launche hym thourgh, and whan the catte felte the suerde she lefte hir bitinge, and wolde haue falle to grounde; but the two hynder feet were so depe ficched in the hauberke, that the heed of the catte hanged down-warde, and than the kynge smote a-sonder the two hynder feet, and the body fill to grounde; and as soone as the catte was fallen she be-gan to whowle and to bray so lowde, that it was herde thourgh the hoste; and whan she hadde caste this cry she be-gan to crepe faste down the foreste by the grete strengthe that was in hir, and drough toward the cave where-as she com oute; but the kynge wente be-twene hir and the cave, and ran vpon the catte, and the catte launched toward hym, and wende to cacche hym with hir teth; but in the launchinge the kynge smote of hir two legges be-fore, and than Merlin and the other ronne to hym, and asked how it was with hym. "Well," seide the kynge, "blessed be oure lorde, ffor I haue slain this devell, that grete harme hath don in this contrey, and wite it verily that I hadde neuer so grete doute of my-self as I hadde now a-gein this catte, saf only of the Geaunte that I slough this other day on the mountein, and ther-fore I thanke oure lorde." "Sir," seide the barou*ns*, * "ye haue grete cause." Than thei loked on the feet that were lefte in the shelde, and in the hauberk, and thei seide that neuer soche feet hadde thei sein be-fore, and Gaheries toke the shelde and wente to the host makinge grete ioye; and whan the princes saugh the feet and the clawes that were so longe thei were a-baisshed, and ledde the kynge to his tente and vnarmed hym, and loked on the cracchinges, and the bitinge of the catte; and the leches waisshed softly his woundes, and leide ther-to salue and oynementes to clense the venym, and dight hym in soche maner, that he letted nothi*n*ge to ride; and that day thei soiourned till on the morowe that thei returned toward Gaule, and the kynge lete bere the shelde with the cattes feet, and the feet that were in the hauberk lete put in a cofer, and comaunded to be well kept; and the kinge asked Merlin how this mountein was cleped, and Merlin seide that peple of the contrey cleped it the mountein de lak, ffor the lak that was in the valey. "Certes," seide the kynge, "I will that this name be taken a-wey, and I will it be cleped the mountain of the catte, ffor the catte hadde ther his repeire, and was ther slain;" and after that the name of that hill neuer chaunged, ne neuer shall while the worlde dureth; and now a-while cesseth the tale and returneth to hem that ledde the Prisoners.

The king asks how the mountain is called;

and says it shall hereafter be called the mountain of the cat.

Now seith the storie, that whan the kynge Arthur hadde comaunded the knyghtes to lede the prisoners of the romayns that were repeired f[r]om the disconfiture of the romayns that the prisoners wende to haue rescowed, that thei toke the prisoners that the squyers kepte out of the stour, and wente toward fraunce, and in euery town that thei com thei toke condite fro oo town to a-nother, and laboured day and nyght till thei com nygh a Castell that longe to Claudas de la desert; and ther com a-gein hem xlv knyghtes of the londe of kynge Claudas, that by theire esspies wiste that the kynge Arthur sente prisoners in to fraunce that were knyghtes of the romains, and yef they myght yelde hem to kynge Claudas he sholde conne hem grete thanke, ffor he loved the romayns and the Emperour. Thei were well horsed and a-raied, and com a-gein hem that ledde the prisoners that were well CC knyghtes and squyres, and of hem of the contrey that bar hem companye; but with-oute faile thei ne were but xl knyghtes, and thei on that other side were xlvj, and were nygh the castell where-ynne were I-nowe of squyres and sergeauntes on foote in whom thei trusted moche. Thei en-busshed hem in a grove a litill oute of the wey; and whan thei saugh hem come, thei spronge oute a-gein hem, and hem assailed that nygh thei haue hem supprised; but a-noon as thei saugh hem breke, thei ronne hem a-geins, and mette so harde vpon the sheldes that thei perced and rente hauberkes, and many ther were smyte thourgh the bodies, and slain and wounded on bothe parties; and whan thei that were with the prisoners saugh the knyghtes reuerse, thei

The knights that lead the prisoners go towards France.

They come near a castle belonging to Claudas. Forty-five of his knights come against them,

and spring out of a grove.

Many are slain on both sides.

The people of the castle come to succour the knights of Claudas.

*[Fol. 237*a*.]

Many of the Britons are killed.

Pharien and Leonce come with a company of 700 knights.

When the people of the castle see them, they are dismayed and fly to the castle.

Thirty of them are killed.

Pharien asks the Britons what they are.

They all go to Benoyk, and put the prisoners into prison.

ronne hem to socour, and for to take the other, and grete was the afray and the medle, and gretly were a-peired the peple of kynge Claudas, and yet sholde thei haue hadde more damage; but as the peple of the Castell hem socoured, be strengthe that were well an hundred and fifty of horsemen, and the bateile wax right sharp*e* and fierce, for the *bretou*n*s were stronge and hardy, and Claudas peple were stronge and hardy in her owne londe, and diffended hem wele; and than com oute of the castell fifty sergeauntes with bowe and arowes, and be-gonne to shete at the bretou*n*s, and slough many in her comynge, and ther-fore were the bretou*n*s sore dismayed, and of fin force were made resorte to the prisoners that the yomen on foote dide kepe; and elles hadde the bretou*n*s all loste ne hadde be oon auenture that hem be-fill, as god wolde, ffor Pharien of Trebes and leonce of Paierne com that wey for to prise the Castell, and hadde in her companye vij^{c} knyghtes wele horsed and richely armed, and com vpon hem fightinge euen as the bretou*n*s were at disconfiture; and whan thei of the castell hem a-perceived, and knewe theire armes thei were sore dismayed, and lefte the assaute of the bretou*n*s and fledde toward the castell, and gat in who that myght sonest, that the sone a-boode not the fader, ne the fader the sone, but so faste cowde thei not haste, but that leonce, and Pharien, and her companye slough of hem moo than xxx; and the[i] ronne in to the castell to garison, and thei vpon the walles lete falle the portcolys vpon hem and slough of hem two horse; and Pharien and leonce repeired toward the bretou*n*s that hadde gadered a-gein alle the prisoners that thei ledde; and Pharien hem asked what thei were, and thei ansuerde, "We be with the kynge Arthur that these prisoners sendeth in to ffraunce;" and whan thei vndirstode this, thei seide thei were welcome. Than thei wente alle to-geder to Benoyk, and made the prisoners a-light be-fore the paleis, and after lete sette hem in prison as the kynge Arthur hadde comaunded, and after thei hem vn-armed and duelled ther in ioye and in feste. And now shull we returne and speke of the lorde of the marasse and of his doughter.

A-noon with-ynne xv dayes after the kynge Ban, and the kynge Bohors, and Merlin were departed from the castell of the marasse, where thei hadde ley in ioye and feste, a riche man of the contrey com to the castell on a nyght; and the lorde of the castell, that was a worthy knyght and a wise, made hym grete chere, and in reuerence of hym made his doughter to serue of the cuppe as she that was full wise and wele lerned; and the knyght that ther-in was herberowed be-helde the damesell that he liked right wele, and requered her of hir fader, and seide he wolde hir haue to his wif yef it hym liked, and the fader hym thonked of the honour that he hym profered, and was ther-of full gladde, for he was the highest lorde of that contrey, and seide he wolde speke ther-of to his doughter, and than yeve hym ansuere; whan thei hadde soped, thei yede to reste, and on the morowe thei a-rise erly, and agrauadain a-resoned his doughter of that the knyght hym requered, that was so myghty a lorde, that by hym myght alle his frendes be a-vaunced and worshiped; and whan the damesell this herde she ansuerde hir fader debonerly, and seide, "Sir, it is not yet tyme for me to be maried, for I am yonge, and ther-fore I be-seche yow speketh not ther-of, but suffre me a-bide yef it plese yow." "Ffeire doughter," quod he, "to leve spekinge herof I se no profite; ye ought to haue grete ioye in youre herte, for that so high a lorde deyneth to aske yow in *mariage; ffor ye be a woman but of lowe lynage a-gein hym, and therfor I pray yow and comaunde to do my will." "Sir," quod she, "ye may well yet suffre a-while, for be the feith that I owe to yow that be my fader, I am not yet in will to be maried." "How so, feire daughter," quod he, "will ye than refuse my plesier and my volunte." "Sir," quod she, "I knowe well youre will is not for to haue me I-loste." "I-loste," seide he, "nay, but I-wonne to grete honour." "Nay, sir," quod she, "but I-loste; for I sholde neuer haue ioye at myn herte, yef I were maried to eny other than to hym that I haue my-self promysed and graunted, and yet I knowe well that I shall neuer hym haue, but I shall holde me to hym that he hath me

A rich man comes to the castle of the Marasse,

and demands the lord's daughter for his wife.

The father is glad,

and speaks to his daughter.

She says she is too young to be married.

Agravadain says she ought to be joyful that *[Fol. 237b.] so great a lord desires her for his wife.

His daughter says she should never have joy if she married him.

She tells of Ban, and how she was with child by him.

lefte, and he is of higher astate and feirer knight than is this." "Doughter," seide he, "of whom speke ye; tell me more clerly youre thought and soche thinge I may of yow heren, that I shall put this thinge in respite." "Sir," seide the damesell, "I shall yow telle, seth that ye will it knowe, and I shall of no worde make yow lesynge." Than she tolde hym all in ordore how it was hir be-falle be-twene hir and th[e] kynge Ban of Benoyk, and how she was by hym with childe; "and he tolde me that I sholde haue a sone by whom all my lynage shall be a-vaunced; wher-fore I praye yow be not a-boute to marye me to noon other but to the kynge, ffor be the feith that I owe to god and to yow, I shall neuer haue other but hym."

The father is angry,

but says he will speak to the lord.

He tells the lord that he shall have his daughter in two years.

The lord swears that he will take her by force.

He summons his men,

and pitches his tents before the castle.

The lord of Maras has provisions for five years.

Whan the fader vndirstode his doughter, he was pensif and wroth, but chere ne semblaunt durste he noon make, and ansuerde soberly, "Doughter, seth it is thus, I moste it suffre, and therfore disconfort yow no-thinge, and I shall go speke with this lorde, and telle hym youre will and nothinge myn;" and than he com to the knyght that was in doynge on his spores, and salued hym curteysly, and seide, "Sir, yef it plese yow to suffre this two yere, I will do youre volunte;" and that he seide, for he knewe well he wolde it not graunte that respite; whan the knyght this vndirstode, he ansuerde ther-to no worde, but lepe to horse, he and his men, and departed with-oute leve takinge, and swor that seth he myght hir not haue with love he wolde hir haue be force, and after hym sholde haue hir who that wolde; and in this maner he departed and com in to his contrey and somowned his men, till he hadde wele viij^{c} knyghtes, and squyres, and yomen, and many other sowdiours, and com with an hoste be-fore the Castell des Maras, and pight his teintes by the pyne tre nygh the cauchie, and swor his oth that neuer sholde he departe thens till he hadde hir to his wif; and whan the lorde des Maras saugh hym-self be-seged, he was full of hevynesse, not for no drede to be taken by strengthe, ne famyn myght thei not lightly for all the reme myght hym not take, for I-nough he hadde of vitaile, for v yere that neuer hym neded to com oute at the yate; and he hadde ther-ynne xlij knyghtes that were bolde and hardy in armes, ffor the lorde des Mares was a noble knyght; and thus thei were be-fore the Castell viij dayes that neuer was caste ne shotte, *and the ix$^{\text{the.}}$ day, a-boute the hour of prime, be-fill that a knyght of the hoste that was cleped Maudras com to the horn that ther henge, and sette it to his mouthe, and blewe thries with grete myght, so that the lorde of the castell it herde clerly; and than a-noon he armed hym richely, and lepte vpon a stede with shelde be-fore his breste and a spere in hande, and the yate was hym opened, and he rode oute a grete raundon all the cauchie towarde the hoste, and cried with high voice whiche was he that was so hardy to blowen his horne with-oute his leve, and in euell tyme hadde he it be-gonne, yef in hym were so moche hardynesse with hym to Iuste, and Maudras seide that for noon other cause was it do, "and I shall Iuste be soche couenaunt that he that falleth shall yelde hym-self taken prisoner with-oute more doynge." "And I it graunte," seide Agrauadain, "yef youre lorde will assent that I haue of hym no doute ne encombraunce ne of noon saf only of yow." "In feith," quod he, "ye shull haue no doute of noon other seth ye be come so fer." Than Agrauadain com down of the cauchie, and he a Maudras ronne to-geder; and the knyghtes were renged rounde a-boute to be-holde the Iustinge, and the two knyghtes mette with so grete raundon, that the sheldes perced, Maudras brake his spere, and Ag*ra*uadain shof so sore, that he bar hym to grounde so rudely, that he brake his lifte arme be-twene the hande and the elbowe. Than he straught oute his hand and hente the horse by the reyne, and sette hym on the cauchie; and than he seide to Maudras that he sholde hym sewe and holde his couenaunt, and than he rode forth towarde the Castell, and drof Maudras horse hym be-fore, and entred in at the yate where he was resceyved with ioye; and leriador and his knyghtes com to Maudras, and fonde hym on swowne, and thei wende he hadde be deed. And in a while after he yaf a grete sigh, and opened his iyen, and comaunded that oon sholde bringe hym to the

*[Fol. 238*a*.]

Maudras blows the horn thrice.

The lord arms and rides out towards the host.

He calls on Maudras to joust with him.

The two run against each other with great force.

Agravadain bears Maudras to the ground,

and drives his horse before him to the castle.

Leriador sends Maudras on a bier to the castle.

castell to a-quyte hym of his oth. Than leriador lete make a beere of smale bowes on horsbak, and leide hym ther-ynne, and couered with a riche cloth of silke and henge this litter be-twene two horse, and sente hym to the castell. And Agrauadain hym resceived, and lete put hym in a feire chambre where is arme was well dight with salues and oynementes. And thei that brought hym thider returned a-gein, and fonde leriador sori and wroth, and so were all the other.

Agravadain puts him in a fair chamber.

Each day comes a knight, and Agravadain conquers them all.

On the twelfth day Leriador blows the horn himself.

On the morowe com a-nother knyght, and blewe the horne; and agrauadain com and Iusted with hym, and smote hym down, and toke his feith to be prisoner, and wente with hym to the castell, and thus Agrauadain wan xj, and therfore was the lorde sory and angry; and the xij$^{the.}$ day he blewe the horne hym-self; and whan Agrauadain was come as he was wonte to do, than seide Leriador that at this Iustinge sholde be fynysshed the werre, and the sege departe; ffor yef Agrauadain hym conquered, he wolde returne a-gein in to his contrey with all his hoste. Ne neuer he ne noon of his sholde touche nothinge of his, "and yef I yow conquere ye shull me yeve youre doughter to be my wif, for I aske yow no more." This was graunted on bothe parties. And than wente the two knyghtes to-geder, and mette with grete raundon on the sheldes a-bove the bokeles *that thei perced and rente the hauberkes, that the spere poyntes passed be the sides, so that the blode spronge oute of bothe parties; than thei hurteled so harde with bodies and sheldes, that eche bar other to grounde, bothe horse and man, that bothe were sore astonyed, and lay longe while at the erthe; but bothe thei lept vpon foot, and drough theire suerdes and smote grete strokes at discouert, and made grete woundes and merveilouse, and bothe waxen feble for the blode that thei bledde; but in the ende leriador be-hoved to com̄e to mercy, and departed from the sege, and wente hom to his contrie; and Agrauadain returned to his castell, and leide salue to his woundes, and sente the prisoners in to her contreyes; and he a-bode gladde and myrye till his doughter was delyuered of a sone, that after was of grete renoun in the reame of logres, and

The two knights meet.

*[Fol. 238*b*.]

They bear each other to the ground.

They fight on foot,

but Leriador has to cry for mercy, and returns to his country.

Agravadain's daughter is delivered of a son, in many other contreyes, and was cleped by his right name Estor; and of hym hadde Agrauadain grete ioye, and made hym be norisshed in his chambre, and delyuered hym thre norices; and the damesell hir-self yaf hym sowke of hir owne mylke, ffor ther was nothinge that she loved so moche, ffor he was so like the kynge Ban as he hadde be portreyed. But now shull we cesse of hym a-while, and of his moder, and of Agrauadain, that helde hym dere, and returne to speke of the kynge ffualis that longe hath be stille.

whose name is Estor.

She gives the child suck.

Now whan that Merlin was departed from the kynge ffualis, to whom he hadde tolde his a-vision; and the kynge ffualis a-bood sore dismayed of that Merlin hadde seide, and in short tyme after be-fill like as he hadde tolde, for he saugh his children in the temple of diane I-slayn, and the temple caste down and dispoiled, and his londe distroied, and his paleys brente, and hym-self taken and his wif; but thei that hym toke ne slough hym not, but shewed hem the poyntes of the cristin feith, and made hem so to vndirstonde fro day to day, that thei were baptised and waisshe fro the filthe of synne of mysbeleve, and was cleped be the same name that he hadde be-fore, and that was ffualis; but the ladies name was chaunged, and cleped hir misiane, and hir name was be-fore cleped Lumble; and after were thei longe to-geder till thei hadde foure doughtres, that after hadde foure princes that were cristin, and were full good peple and trewe, and hadde many children; ffor the elthest hadde x sones, that were alle good knyghtes by the kynge ffualis lif, and viij doughter*es*; and the seconde hadde xij sones and thre doughtres; and the thridde vj sones and xij doughtres; and the fourthe xv sones and a doughter, and were alle maryed, and the sones knyghtes while the kynge was lyvinge, and the quene Misiane, that ther-of hadde grete ioye and gladnesse, and thonked our lorde. Whan the kynge ffualis and the foure princes saugh that thei hadde liiij children that were alle bretheren and cosins germain, thei made grete ioye, and seide that oure lorde hadde hem sent to avaunce the cristin lawe, and seide thei sholde neuer cesse till

It befalls Flualis, as Merlin had said.

His children are slain.

He and his wife are baptized.

The lady's name is changed.

Afterwards they have four daughters, who marry four princes.

They have fifty-four children.

thei hadde made alle paynyms cristin, and obbeye the lawes of god and holy cherche.

They summon their power, and overrun pagan lands.

Than thei somowned and assembled all her power, and ronne thourgh paynym londes, and toke townes, and slough many a paynym, and conquered the londes of the straunge contreyes, and passed *in to Galys, and in to Spayne, so that nothinge myght a-gein hem endure, till that the kynge ffiualis was deed in spayne, and ther-fore were the foure princes full dolent and the nevewes, and was biried in a Cite that tho was cleped Nadres; and than thei repeired towarde the parties of I*eshuralem*, and set the londes in her handes, and after departed by diuerse londes, and hem conquered and toke the honours, that oon hilde Costantynnoble; and that other greece, where he hadde foure regiou*ns*; and the thridde hilde barbarie; and the fourthe Cipre; and some come in to the reame of[1] logres for to serve the kynge Arthur, for the grete renoome that of hym was thourgh the worlde, and with hem com foure knightes that were bolde and hardy in armes, but litill tyme thei lyved, and that was grete harme to all cristin peple, ffor thei were noble and trewe, and the tweyne were deed in a bateile that launcelot made a-gein the kynge Claudas; and the thridde in a bateile that the kynge Arthur made a-gein Mordred as shall be rehersed here-after. But now shull we returne to speke of the kynge Arthur.

*[Fol. 239*a*.]

Flualis dies in Spain.

They take divers lands.

Some come to serve Arthur;

Four knights come with them.

Arthur and his company stay for eight days at the castle on the River Aube, and then go to Benoyk.

In this partie, seith the storie, that whan the kynge Arthur and his companye had disconfited the romayns, and the kynge hadde slayn the catte, thei returned and rode till thei com to the castell that the kynge hadde fortefied vpon the river of Aube, and were there viij dayes; and after thei departed and rode forth till thei com to Benoyk, ffor it was tolde hem that there were the prisoners, and Pharien and Cleodalis hem resceyved with grete ioye; and after thei tolden how thei hadde rescowed theire peple, and the Prisoners and all thinge as it was fallen, and how thei of the castell wolde haue taken hem be force. "Be my feith," seide the kynge, "in euell tyme thei it be-gonne, for dere shall it be bought." Than the kynge cleped sir Gawein, and bad hym go to the castell that was cleped the marche, and throwe it down to the grounde, so that thei of other contreyes be not so hardy eny more to encombre me ne noon of myn, and sir Gawein made x$^{\text{Ml}}$ lepe to horse, and rode forth till thei com to the castell a-boute mydnyght, and enbusshed hem in a wode that was v bowe draught ffrom the castell, and ther thei a-bide till on the morowe that thei of the castell sette oute theire beestes, and a-noon as it was oute sir Gawein sent oute xiiij knyghtes that passed the pray, and drough toward the yate, and with hem v arblastres for to shete vp to the barbycans, and to kepe the yate till he were come, and thei dide as Gawein hem comaunded; and it was yet so erly that un-ethe oon myght knowe a-nother, and thei hem dressed toward the yate as soone as the pray was oute; whan sir Gawein sye the praye come nygh he wiste well that the other were be-fore; and he sente be-yonde hem that drof the praye xx knyghtes; and whan thei hem saugh thei lefte the praye and wolde haue turned a-gein to the yate, but the knyghtes and the arblastres that sir Gawein had sente diffended hem the entre till that Gawein was comen, and smyten in at the yate moo than vj$^{\text{C}}$. Than was ther grete crie and noyse, and thei that were in the tour lete falle the portcolys, and smote[1] a-sonder two horse be the croupe and the knyghtes fill with-ynne, with-oute more harme; and than a-ros the noyse and the crye thourgh the contrey, and thei ronne to the barbicans and caste *stones and caliou*n*s; and the v arblastres shote vpwarde, and the other be-gonne to hewe the yates a-sonder, and thei that were with-oute entred in; and thei that were of the castell dide hem yelde to the volunte of sir Gawein, and he made hem be ledde to Benoyk; and than he lete beete down the walles and the bretesches, and after returned to the kynge Arthur that ther-of was gladde and

---

[1] The word "of" is repeated in the MS.

Arthur bids Gawein go to the castle of the March and throw it down.

Gawein takes 10,000 men.

They ambush in a wood.

Fourteen knights go towards the gate where the herds come out.

The knights and bowmen defend the entry, and 600 smite into the city.

There is a great noise and cry.
*[Fol. 239*b*.]

The people of the castle yield to Gawein.
Gawein returns to Benoyk.

---

[1] The word "smote" is repeated in the MS.

Arthur makes the prisoners to be sworn, and sends them back to their country.

A messenger brings tidings that Leodogan is dead.

Arthur leaves Ban and Bohors, and never sees them again.

ioyfull; and the kynge made the prisoners to swere that thei sholde neuer be a-gein the kynge Ban, ne the kynge Bohors; and so made he hem swere that were of Rome that thei sholde neuer be a-gein the reame of logres; and whan thei were thus sworn, he sente hem a-gein in to theire contrey, and soiourned all that day, and on the morowe with the kynge Ban with grete ioye and grete feeste. With that com a messager*e* to the kynge Arthur that brought tidinges that the kynge leodogan of Carmelide was deed, and that was the cause he departed so soone fro the kynge Ban. On the morowe the kynge Arthur departed fro the two kynges that were brethern, and after that tyme he saugh hem neuer more; and that was grete scade that thei sholde die so soone, as the storie shall declare whan tyme cometh.

He goes over the sea and lands at Dover. He rides to Logres, and comforts Gonnore.

He abides at Logres with the knights of the round table and Merlin.

Merlin tells the king he must leave. The king and queen pray him to return soon.

Whan the kynge Arthur was departed fro the two kynges that were brethern, that so moche honour hadde hym don, he traueiled so by his iourneyes that he com to the see and entred in to shippes, and passed ouer and landed at the port of Dover, and lepe on their horse and ride forth to logres, and ther thei fonde the Quene Gonnore, that hem resceived with grete ioye, and tolde how hir fader was passed oute of this worlde, and he hir counforted in the beste wise he myght; and after the kynge departed his peple and thei yode hom in to theire contreyes, and the kynge Arthur a-boode at logres, and sir Gawein and the knyghtes of the rounde table, and Merlin soiourned ther longe tyme. Than he hadde grete talent for to se Blase his maister, for to telle hym of all that was be-fallen seth he fro hym departed; and fro thens he wolde go to Nimiane his love, for the terme drough faste on that was sette; and he wente to the kynge and seide that hym be-hoved to go; and the kynge and the quene prayed hym right entierly soone for to come a-gein, for he dide hem grete solas and counfort of his companye, ffor the kynge hym love[d] feithfully; for in many a nede he hadde hym socoured and holpen, ffor by hym and by his counseile was he kynge; and he seide to hym right tenderly, "Dere frende M*er*lin, seth ye will go, I dar yow not with-holde a-gein youre wille a volunte; but I shall neuer be in hert*es* ese till that I may se yow, and therefore I pray you for the love of oure lorde haste you soone to come a-gein." "Sir," seide Merlin, "this is the laste time, and ther-fore to god I you comaunde." Whan the kynge herde how he seide it was the laste tyme that he sholde hym se, he was sore a-baisshed; and Merlin departed with-oute moo wordes sore wepinge, and trauailed till he com to Blase his maister, that grete chere hym made, and asked how he hadde sped sethen, and he seide wele; and than he tolde him alle thinges as thei were be-falle of the kynge Arthur and of the Geaunte that he hadde slayn; and of the bateile of the Romains; and how he hadde slain the cat; and tolde hym also of the litill duerfe how the damesell hadde hym brought to court, and how the kynge hadde made hym knyght. "But thus *moche," seide Merlin, "I shall telle yow, he is a grete gentilman, and is no duerf by nature, but thus hath a damesell hym myshapen whan he was xiij yere of age, for that he wolde not graunte hir his love, and he was than the feirest creature of the worlde; and for the sorowe that the damesell hadde a-raied she hym in soche wise that now is the lothliest creature and of moste dispite; and fro hens ix wikes shall cesse the terme that the damesell sette, and shall come in to the age that he ought for to be, for at that day shall he be xxij yere olde." Whan Merlin hadde all thinges rehersed, and Blase hadde hem alle writen oon after a-nother in ordre, and by his boke haue we the knowinge ther-of; and whan Merlin hadde be ther viij dayes he toke leve of Blase, and seide, "This is the laste tyme that I shall speke with yow eny more, ffor fro hens-forth I shall soiourne with my love, ne neuer shall I haue power hir for to leve ne to come ne go."

Merlin says it is the last time they will see him.

He departs and goes to Blase.

He tells him all that has happened.

*[Fol. 240a.]

The dwarf was mis-shapened by a damsel,

who is now the loathliest creature.

After eight days Merlin takes leave of Blase,

Whan Blase vndirstode Merlin, he was full of sorowe, and seide, "Dere frende, seth it is so that ye may not departe cometh not ther." "Me be-houeth for to go," quod Merlin, "for so haue I made hir couenaunt, and also I am so supprised with hir love, that I may me not with-drawen; and I haue her taught and lerned all the witte and connynge that she can, and yet shall she lerne more, for I may not hir with-

who is sorry to hear that he will never see Merlin again.

sein ne it disturue." Than departed Merlin from Blase, and in litill space com to his love, that grete ioye of hym made and he of hir, and dwelled to-geder longe tyme; and euer she enquered of his craftes, and he hir taught and lerned so moche that after he was holden a fooll and yet is, and she hem well vndirstode and put hem in writinge, as she that was well expert in the vij artes. Whan that he hadde hir taught all that she cowde aske, she be-thought hir how she myght hym with-holde for euer more; than be-gan she to glose Merlin more than euer she hadde do euer be-forn, and seide, "Sir, yet can I not oon thinge that I wolde fain lerne, and ther-fore I pray you that ye wolde me enforme;" and Merlin that well knewe her entent, seid, "Madame, what thinge is that?" "Sir," quod she, "I wolde fain lerne how I myght oon shet in a tour with-outen walles, or with-oute eny closure be enchauntement, so that neuer he sholden go oute with-outen my licence;" and whan Merlin it herde he bowed down the heed and be-gan to sigh, and she it a-parceived, she asked whi he sighed. "Madame," seide Merlin, "I shall telle yow; I knowe well what ye thinke, and that ye will me with-holde, and I am so supprised with love that me be-houeth to do youre plesier;" and than she caste hir armes a-boute his nekke and hym kiste, and seide, "that wele he ought to be hirs seth that she was all his; ye knowe wele that the grete love that I haue to you hath made me forsake alle other for to haue yow in myn armes nyght and day, and ye be my thought and my desire, for with-oute yow haue I neither ioye ne welthe. In you haue I sette all my hope, and I a-bide noon other ioye but of yow, and seth that I love you, and also ye love me, is not right than that ye do my volunte and I yours." "Certes, yesse," seide Merlin, "now sey than what ye will." "I will," quod she, "ye teche me a place feire and couenable, that I myght enclose by art in *soche wise that neuer myght be vn-don, and we shull be ther, ye and I in ioye and disporte whan that yow liketh." "Madame," seide Merlin, "that shall I well do." "Sir," quod she, "I will not that ye it make, but lerne it to me that

Merlin comes to his love, who learns all his craft.

She says there is one thing she wants to learn;

that is, how to make a tower without walls, so that he who was in should never be able to come out.

Merlin sighs.

The maiden kisses him,

and tries to persuade him to teach her how to enclose a place by art.

*[Fol. 240b.]

I may it do, and I shall make it than more at my volunte." "Well," seide Merlin, "I will do youre plesire." Than he be-gan to devise the crafte vnto hir, and she it wrote all that he seide; and whan hadde alle devised, the damesell hadde grete ioye in herte, and he hir loved more and more, and she shewed hym feirer chere than be-forn; and so thei soiourned to-geder longe tyme, till it fill on a day that thei wente thourgh the foreste hande in hande, devisinge and disportinge, and this was in the foreste of brochelonde, and fonde a bussh that was feire and high of white hawthorne full of floures, and ther thei satte in the shadowe; and Merlin leide his heed in the damesels lappe, and she be-gan to taste softly till he fill on slepe; and whan she felt that he was on slepe she a-roos softly, and made a cerne with hir wymple all a-boute the bussh and all a-boute Merlin, and be-gan hir enchau*n*teme*n*tz soche as Merlin hadde hir taught, and made the cerne ix tymes, and ix tymes hir enchaunte-ment*es*; and after that she wente and satte down by hym and leide his heed in hir lappe, and hilde hym ther till he dide a-wake; and than he loked a-boute hym, and hym semed he was in the feirest tour of the worlde, and the moste stronge, and fonde hym leide in the feirest place that euer he lay be-forn; and than he seide to the damesell, "Lady, thou hast me disceived, but yef ye will a-bide with me, for noon but ye may vn-do this enchauntementes;" and she seide, "Feire swete frende, I shall often tymes go oute, and ye shull haue me in youre armes, and I yow; and fro hens-forth shull ye do alle youre plesier;" and she hym hilde wele couenaunt, ffor fewe hours ther were of the nyght ne of the day but she was with hym. Ne neuer after com Merlin oute of that fortresse that she hadde hym in sette; but she wente in and oute whan she wolde. But now moste we reste a-while of Merlin and of his love, and speke of the kynge Arthur.

Merlin says he will do her pleasure.

He loves her more and more.

They disport in the forest of Brochelond.

Merlin sleeps, and the damsel makes a circle.

Merlin awakes,

and says she has deceived him.

Merlin never came out of the fortress, but she went in and out.

The same hour that Merlin was departed fro the kynge Arthur, and that he hadde seide how it was the laste tyme that he sholde hym se; the kynge a-boode sore a-baisshed and full pensif of that worde, and in soche maner he a-boode

Arthur is heavy on account of

the absence of Merlin.

Gawein asks what ails him.

Arthur prays Gawein to go and seek for Merlin.

*[Fol. 241*a*.]

Gawein, Ewein, and their fellows agree to go in quest of Merlin.

They divide into three parties at a cross.

The damsel and the dwarf.

after Merlin vij wikes and more; but whan he saugh that he com nought he was full pensif and full of hevynesse, aud on a day sir Gawein asked what hym eiled. "Certes nevew," seide the kynge, "I thinke on that I trowe I haue loste Merlin, and that he will neuer more come to me, ffor now hath he a-biden lenger than he was wonte, and gretly I am dismayed of the worde that he seide whan he fro me departed, ffor he seide this is the last tyme, therfore I am in doute that he sey soth, ffor he ne made neuer lesinge of nothinge that he seide, ffor so helpe me god I hadde leuer lese the Cite of logres than hym, and ther-fore fain wolde I wite yef eny myght hym finde fer or nygh, and ther-fore I pray you as derely as ye me love that ye hy*m* seche till ye knowe the verite." "Sir," seide Gawein, "I am all redy to do youre volunte, and a-noon ye shull se me meve fordwarde, and I suere to you be the oth that I made to you whan ye made me *knyght, that I shall seche hym a yere and a day, but with-ynne that space I may knowe trewe tidinges." In this same wise swor sir Ewein, and Segramor, and Agrauain, and Geheret, and Gaheries, and xxv of her felowes, and that oon was Doo of Cardoell, and Sacren of the streite Marche, and Taulus le rous, and Blioc de Cassell, and Caues de lille, and Amadas de la Crespe, and placidas li gais, and laudalus de la playne, and Aiglins des vaus, and Clealis lorfenyns, and Grires de lamball, and kehedins li bens, and Caros de la broche, and Segurades de la forest p*er*ilouse, and Purades de Carmelide, and Carmeduk the blake; alle these swor the same oth with sir Gawein, and departed fro the Cite of logres alle to-geder by the volunte of kynge Arthur, and wente alle in the quest for Merlin; and whan thei were oute of the Cite thei departed alle at a crosse that thei fonde at the entre of a foreste where ther mette thre weyes, and ther thei departed in thre parties. But of hem shull we reste a-while, and speke of the damesell that ledde a-wey the duerf knyght.

Whan kynge Arthur hadde a-dubbed the duerf by the preier and request of the damesell, and she hadde hym ledde as ye haue herde gladde[1] and ioyfull, and returned to hir contrey, and rode so the firste day till it was nygh the nyght; and than thei com oute of the foreste and entred in to a feire launde that was grete and large; and than the damesell loked be-fore hir and saugh comynge a knyght armed vpon a stede, and she shewde hym the duerf; and he ansuerde, "Damesell, dismaye yow nought but ride forth boldly, for ye shull haue no drede of hym." "Sir, he will me bere a-wey be force, and he cometh hider for noon other cause;" and the duerf ansuerde a-gein, "Damesell, ride forth suerly, and beth not a-ferde;" and the knyght hym ascried with lowde voys, "Welcome be my damesell and my love, ffor now haue I founde that I haue longe sought." And the duerf that well hy*m* vndirstode, seide debonerly, "Sir, be not to hasty, for ye may desire hir to moche at the be-gynnynge, ffor yet ye haue hir not in youre bailly, wherfore ye sholde make so grete ioye." "I owe well to make ioye," quod the knyght; "for I am of hir sure I-nough, ffor though I haue hir not, yet I shall right soone;" and euer he com on as faste as he myght ride; and whan the duerf saugh hym com so faste, he caste his spere in fewtre, and couered hym with his shelde that nothinge apered saf the shelde only, and smote the horse with the spores on bothe sides faste by the skirtes of his sadell, for his legges were so shorte, and the horse hym bar with so grete raundon that it semed as he hadde flowen, and cried to the knyght that he sholde hym diffende; and he that was full fierce and prowde hadde shame to iuste with so litill a wrecche, and lifte vp his spere, and seide, yef god will, with soche a disfigure worme sholde he neuer Iuste, and hilde his spere vp-right, but neu*er*theles he couered hym with his shelde; and the duerf hym smote so harde, that he perced shelde and hauberk, that the spere passed by the side and hurtled so harde with his shelde, and with the grete myght of his horse, that to grounde goth the knyght horse and man, and in the fallinge his sholdre spronge oute of ioynte, and the

They come to a forest.

The damsel sees a knight coming,

and fears he will take her away by force;

but the dwarf tells her not to fear.

The knight welcomes the damsel,

and comes as fast as he can ride.

The dwarf covers himself with his shield, and rushes on the knight,

who thinks it shameful to joust with a dwarf;

but the dwarf smites him and his horse to the ground.

---

[1] "Gradde" in the MS.

*[Fol. 241b.] The knight swoons. The damsel takes him off his horse,

and the dwarf calls on him to yield,

and requires him to go as a prisoner to Arthur.

The knight tells the dwarf where he will find his place.

The damsel draws him up on to his saddle.

Six squires come for their lord.

They take him up on a bier, and send for leeches.

The knight makes the best cheer he

duerf rode ouer his body and hym all to-brosed, so that the knyght swowned for anguyssh *that be felte; and whan the duerf that saugh, he cleped the damesell, and prayed hir to take hym down, and she toke hym in hir armes, and helped hym down of his horse, and he drough his swerde and ran to the knyght and vn-laced his helme, and manaced hym to smyten of his heed, but he wolde hym yelde vtterly; and the knyght that was hurt saugh the suerde that he hilde ouer his heed, and hadde drede of deth, and cride "mercy," and put hym in his wille of all thinge. "Than," quod the duerf, "shalt thow go, yelde the to the Prison of kynge Arthur, and sey hym that the litill knyght that he dubbed hath sent the to be his prisoner, and that thou shalt put the only in his mercy;" and the knyght ensured hym his feith to do in this maner. Than he badde hym go to his horse, and he seide he hadde ther-to no power, for his sholdre bon was oute of Ioynte; "but here I moste a-bide," quod he, "till I fynde oon that me may beren, but ye shull go take youre horse and ride to the ende of this launde in a valey where ye shull finde a place of myn, ffor it is tyme for you to herberowe, and a-bide ye ther stille, and sende some of my men that may bere me thider, and haue ye no doute of nothinge." And the duerf hym graunted, and com towarde the Damesell that hilde his stede, and she stouped ouer the nekke of hir palfrey, and caught hym by the armes, and drough hym vp with grete peyne till that he myght nyghe his sadell; and than turned toward the knyghtes recete, and a-geins hem com vj squyres that were ther-ynne, and toke hym down, and the damesell and hym vn-armed, and dide hym on a mantell full riche; and the duerf hem seide how hir lorde was hurt, and thei toke a biere and brought hym a-gein to his recete, and hym vn-armed, and sente after leches, and dight hym softly in the beste wise thei cowden; and after thei asked who hadde hym thus araied; and he sede a knyght that he nothinge knewe, ne he durste not sey for shame that the duerf hadde it don; and than he made his hoste the beste chere that he myght, and made hem richely be serued at ese in a feire chambre where-ynne were two riche beddes, and ther thei slepte till on the morowe that thei a-rise and made hem redy, and the maiden armed hir duerf, for she hym loved feithfully, and wolde not suffre noon to sette on hym eny hande but hir-self; and whan she hadde hym armed, and a-pareiled saf only of his helme, she toke hym by the hande and ledde hym in to a chambre ther the lorde of the place lay, and bad hym good morowe; and he hem salued right curteisly, and thei be-taught hym to god, and thanked hym of the honour that he hadde hem don. Than wente thei oute of the chambre, and the mayden laced on his helme, and helped hym on his horse, and delyuered hym his spere and his shelde; and than the squyres brought the mayden hir palfrey, and sette hir ther-on; than thei departed fro thens and toke the wey toward Eastrangore; and the knyght that was hurt thought to a-quyte hym of his feith, and lete make an horse liter*e* full riche, and hadde with-ynne a feire bedde, and the liter couered with a riche cloth of silke, and the knyght was leide with-ynne; and the liter leide vpon two palfreyes softe amblinge, and toke the wey streight to Cardoell in walis where the kynge and the quene soiourned with grete companye *of peple; and the kynge satte at dyner in the halle, and the knyght made hym to be born in to the halle be-fore the kynge, and seide, "Sir kynge, for to a-quyte me my feith and my graunte I am I-come to put me in thi prison, and in thy mercy, as he that is full sore a-shamed of the lothlyest creature of this worlde, that by his armes me hath conquered;" and whan he hadde seide thus, he badde his squyers bere hym thens; and than seide the kynge, "Sir knyght, what is this, thou seidest thou were come to my prison and my mercy." "Ye sir," seide the knyght. "Than I requyre," quod the kynge, "that ye as a pr*i*soner you mayntene, and that ye telle me in whos be-halue ye yelde yow take, and how that ye were conquered." "Sir," seide the knyght, "I se well I moste telle my grete shame and myn annoye, and I shall telle it you seth I am come ther-to for to parforme you*re* will and my feith for to a-quiten. This is the trouthe that I haue loved a damesell

can for the dwarf and the damsel.

The damsel leads the dwarf to the lord of the place. They wish him good morrow,

and go on the way to Eastrangore.

The knight has a litter made, and is led to Cardoell.

*[Fol. 242*a*.]

He is taken before the king, and tells why he has come.

How he loved a

damsel of great beauty,

of grete bewte, and a kynges doughter, and yef ye will knowe her name it is the feire beaune the doughter of kynge Clamedien that is riche and puyssaunt, but neuer myght I bringe hir therto nother for prayer, ne for love, ne for chiualrie, that I myght do for hir, she ne wolde neuer graunte me hir love, and I wolde gladly haue hadde hir to my wif, and hir fader wolde it well also, and ther-of was gladde, for I am kynges sone and quenes, but she euer for-soke me for the moste vile and lothsom creature of the worlde, and fill me so that I rode this other day thourgh a launde all alone I-armed, and mette my damesell that repeired from youre contre, and hir dide condite the duerf knyght to whom she is love; and whan I saugh hir come with so small condite I was right gladde, and thanked god that thider hir hadde sente, and I wende to haue hir ledde awey with-oute more with-seyinge. But the duerf seide that I come to sone, and that it was folye for me so sore to haste, for it sholde go all othere wise than I wende, ffor I trowed to haue my desire with-oute diffence; and ther-fore I seide my volunte was well a-complisshed, and I rode faste a-gein the damesell hir to haue taken, and haue ledde hir with me to a place of myne that was not fer thens; and whan the duerf knyght saugh me so be-fore he leide his spere in fewtre, and I wolde not Iuste with hym with my spere, for me thought it shame and dispite to Iuste with soche a creature, and therfore I wolde not smyte, and he bar me so rudely to grounde, that in the fall my lifte sholdre yede oute of Ioynte that I swowned for anguyssh; and he vn-laced myn helme and wolde haue smyten of myn heed, but yef I hadde hym assured to yelde me to youre prison, and ther-fore I do me in youre grace."

who would not grant him her love;

but forsook him for a vile and loathsome creature.

He saw her come,

and rode fast against her;

but the dwarf smote him to the ground.

"Trewly, frende," seide the kynge, "in good prison hath he you sette that to me hath you sente, ffor I clayme yow quyte; but ye shall telle me youre name." "Sir," quod he, "my name is Tradilyuaunt, and am the kynges godsone of North walis, that for grete cherite yaf me his name;" with that his squyres toke hym vp, and bar hym oute of the paleise, and leyde hym on two palfreyes, and ledde hym a-gein in to his

The king asks the knight what is his name.

He is Tradilyvaunt, the godson of the king of North Wales. His squires bear him home.

contrei; and the kynge Arthur and his barouns spake I-nough of the duerf, and of the damesell, and seide it were grete ioye yef the duerf myght come a-gein in to his bewte; and *preyse the damesell that in no myschef wolde forsake hir love for no lothlynesse. But now at thys tyme cesseth of hem, and returneth to speke of Segramor that wente in to the quest of Merlin, and with hym ix knyghtes full profitable bolde and hardy.

Arthur and his barons speak of the dwarf.

[*Fol. 242b.]

Segramor's quest.

Whan Segramor was departed fro sir Gawein, he ledde with hym ix of his felowes of the same enquest, and rode till the sonne was go to reste; and than of a-uenture thei loked at the comynge of the foreste at the issue of a roche, and saugh a celle where-ynne woned an hermyte, and that wey thei turned ther for to be herberowed, and thei knokked at the yate, and the hermyte it opened a-noon and herberowed hem that nyght as wele as he cowde; and on the morowe erly he seide masse; and than thei departed fro thens, and com to the entringe of a foreste, and than seide Segramor to his felowes that thei sholde departe thourgh the foreste, and so thei diden; and so that oon wente here and a-nother there, as a-uenture hem ledde, and in that quest be-fill many feire a-uentures wher-of this storie maketh no mencion, but so thei yede vp and down by diuerse contrees that thei performed that enquest that neuer cowde thei lerne no tidinges of that thei were meved for to seche; and at the yeres ende thei com a-gein and tolde theire a-uentures, and some ther were that tolde more theire shame than theire honoure, but trouthe moste thei sey by theire oth that thei hadden sworn; and in tho dayes gentilmen were so trewe, that thei wolde rather lese theire lif than be for-sworn; and now shull we speke of Ewein.

He and nine of his fellows

come to a hermit's cell, where they sleep.

On the morrow the hermit says mass.

Segramor and his fellows separate in the forest.

They can learn no tidings of Merlin.

A gentleman would rather lose his life than be forsworn.

Whan Ewein and his felowes were departed fro Gawein, he rode till he com to the issue of a foreste, and ther thei mette a damesell that rode vpon a mule, and made the moste sorowe of the worlde, and rente hir heer, and cried lowde, "Alas, where shall I be-come whan I haue loste hym that I haue loved so wele, and he me. And for the love of me hath

Ewein and his fellows meet a damsel,

who mourns for the loss of her love's beauty.

he loste the grete bewte that was in hym;" and whan sir Ewein this herde, he hadde ther-of grete pite, and com hir a-geins and asked why she made soche sorowe; and she ansuerde, "Gentill knyght, haue pite of me and of my love, that v knyghtes sle in this valey be-nethe this hill." "Who is youre love, damesell," quod sir Ewein. "Sir," quod she, "it is Auadain the duerf, the sone of kynge Brangore." "Now let be youre doell," seide sir Ewein, "for by the feith that I owe to you he shall noon harme haue, yef I may come be-tyme." "Sir, gramercy," seide the damesell; "but ye moste you hasten." Than sir Ewein rode that wey as the maiden hym taught as faste as his horse myght renne; and the damesell hym sewed as moche as she myght, for her mule wente werily, and sir Ewein hath so riden that he saugh the duerf that vigerously faught with two knyghtes, and saugh thre ly in myddell of the feilde that hadde no power to a-rise; ffor that oon was smyte with a spere thourgh the sholdre, that al was disseuered fro the body, and that other was smyte with a suerde down to the teth; and the other tweyne were full feble, and hadde grete doute of theire deth, for the duerf sought on hem vigerously; and whan sir Ewein saugh hym thus contene, he shewed to his felowes, and seide *that it was grete harme of the duerf that was so mysshapen, "for he is bolde and hardy, and of grete herte." "Certes, sir," seide oon of his companye, "neuer no man of his stature dide soche prowesse, but for goddes sake departe hem that thei no myscheve, for that were pite, yef hym mysshappe." "Ye sey trouthe," quod sir Ewein; and than he priked thider. But er he com he hadde leyde oon to grounde, and rode ouer his body thre tymes, that nygh he hadde hym slayn; whan the fifte saugh he was a-lone, he hadde drede of hym-self, and be-gan to blenche, and wolde haue fledde, and with-oute faile he was wounded in thre places right depe; but the duerf that richely was horsed hilde hym so straite, and so hym hasted, that deed he hadde I-be ne hadde sir Ewein come the son*er*, and seide, "Feire, sir, ne do no more, but lete hym be for curtesie, for we se well how it is, and I-nough haue ye

She says five knights will slay him.

Ewein rides to the place. The damsel follows him.

Two knights lie in the middle of the field.

Two others are feeble.

Sir Ewein and his fellows praise the dwarf.

*[Fol. 243*a*.]

Ewein throws down one of the knights.

The fifth would fly; but the dwarf keeps him, and would have killed him, but Ewein calls out to let him be.

don;" and whan the duerf herde how he hym required so curteisly, he ansuerde as he that was curteise and deboneir. "Sir, pleseth it you that I cesse thus." "Ye," seide Ewein, "and ther-of I thanke you, for we se well how it is." "And I shall do youre request," seide the duerf, "for ye seme well to be a worthy man;" with that com the knyght[1] that had foughten with the duerf to sir Ewein, and seide, "Sir, gramercy, for ye haue saued me fro deth by youre comynge, and blissed be that lorde that hider you hath brought." Than he dide yelde his suerde to the duerf, and the duerf hit resceived; and in the same wise dide the tother that were lefte on lyve, and he hem sente in to the prison of kynge Arthur, and sir Ewein and his companye departed fro the duerf and fro the damesell, and spredde a-brode thourgh diuerse contrees, and sought M*er*lin vp and down, but neuer myght thei here of hym tidinges, and ther-fore were thei sory and wroth, and repeired to court at the yeres ende, and eche of hem tolde his auenture *tha*t was hym be-falle in his quest, but the kynge Arthur made all to be writen. But now cesseth of the kynge, and of alle the other companye, and returne to sir Gawein.

The knight thanks Ewein,

and yields his sword to the dwarf.

Sir Ewein and his company depart from the dwarf and the damsel.

They repair to court at the year's end.

Whan that sir Gawein was departed fro his felowes, he rode forth thourgh the foreste, he and v knyghtes of his companye, and ther thei departed, and eche wente his wey, for he wolde ride sooll by hym-self, and in this wise thei departed, so that eche of hem toke his wey; and sir Gawein rode so a-lone serchinge grete part of the londe, till it fill on a day that he rode pensif and hevy, for that he myght not finde Merlin; and in this stody he entred in to a foreste, and he hadde riden a-boute two walsh myle ther com a damesell hym a-gein that rode on the feirest palfrey of the worlde, and was all blak, and the sadell and the stiropes were all of golde, and the cloth of scarlet trailinge to the erthe, and the bridill of golde, and she was clothed in white samyte, and hir kirchir*es* of silke, and richely atired, and com ridinge be-fore sir Gawein

Sir Gawein and five knights of his company separate in the forest.

Gawein rides into a forest.

He is pensive.

He meets a damsel,

---

[1] "Knyghtes" in the MS.

but does not salute her.

She calls to him,

*[Fol. 243b.]

and upbraids him.

She says he will repent his rudeness.

Gawein asks her to forgive him.

She says he will be loathsome for a time,

and will be like the first man he meets.

He meets the dwarf knight and the damsel.

as he was in this pensifnesse, that he dide her not salue; and whan he was passed the Damesell she reyned hir bridill, and turned the heed of hir palfrey, and seide, "Gawein, Gawein, *hit is not trewe the renomee that renneth of the thourgh the reame of logres; ffor it is seide of the that thou art the best knyght of the worlde, and of that thei sey trouthe. Also it is seide that thou art the gentilest and the most curteise knyght, but in that faileth the renoon, for thou art the moste vileyn knyght that euer I mette in my lif, that in this forest so fer fro peple haste me I-met a-lone, and so grete felonye in the is roted, that thow deynest not me ones to salue ne to speke a worde, and knowe thow verily thow shalt it repente of that thow hast don, in so moche that thou shalt wissh thou haddest it not don for all the reame of logres." And whan sir Gawein vndirstode the damesell, he was sore a-shamed, and turned a-gein hir his bridell of gringalet, and seide all shamefast as ye shull heren. "Damesell," quod sir Gawein, "so helpe me go[d], I thought vpon a thinge that I go sechinge, and ther-fore I pray yow that ye for-yeve it me that I haue mys-don." "So helpe me god," quod the damesell, "rather shalt thou a-bye it full dere, ffor I-nough thou shalt haue of shame and lothlynesse, and ther-fore remembre a-nother tyme whan thou metest with eny lady or damesell, that thou hir salue for curtesie. But I sey not that it shall the euer endure, ne of that thou goist sechinge shalt thou finde noon in the reame of logres that the can telle no tidinge, but in the litill breteigne maist thou here som maner tidinges; and I will go now ther as I haue to don, and thou shalt go seche that thou art moved fore; and the firste man that thou metest with mote thou be like till thou se me eft-sones." Than departed sir Gawein and the damesell; but he hadde not riden fully half a walissh myle thourgh the foreste that he mette with the duerf knyght; and the damesell that on the euen be-fore were departed fro sir Ewein, and hedde sent the foure knyghtes in Arthurs prison, and it was on trinite sonday a-boute mydday, and than he remembred hym on the damesell that he hadde mette be-fore, and lefte his pensifnesse, and seide to the damesell, "God yeve you good day and moche ioye of hir companye;" and the damesell and the duerf hym ansuerde that god yeve hym good a-uenture; and so thei past a litill a-sonder, sir Gawein on that oon part, and thei on that other; and whan thei were departed a litill thens the duerf knyght be-com a-gein in to his bewte as he hadde be at the first tyme, and was in the age of xxij yere, right wele furnysshed and wonderly well shapen of large stature, and ther-fore hym be-hoved to do a-wey his armes, for thei were to hym nothinge meete; and whan the damesell saugh hir love come a-gein in to so grete bewte, she hadde so grete ioye that no tonge myght it telle, and caste hir armes a-boute his nekke, and hym kiste an hundred tymes, and ride forth that oon by that other gladde and ioyfull in grete solas, and thanked oure lorde of the honour that he hadde hem don, and praied oure lorde to sende sir Gawein good a-uenture, that hadde seide that god yeve hem ioye, and so hadde he don, and thus thei ride forth theire iourney. But now shull we speke of Gawein.

He salutes the damsel. The damsel and dwarf answer him.

When they part the dwarf comes back to his beauty.

The damsel is very joyful, and kisses him a hundred times.

Whan that sir Gawein was passed the duerf knyght, and the damesell wele a two bowe draught, a-noon he felte that the sleeves of his hauberk passed fer of lengthe ouer his hondes, and *also the lengthe of his hauberk henge down be-nethe his feet, and his legges were waxen so short that thei passed not the skirtes of the sadill; and be-hilde and saugh how his hosen of stiell resten in the stiropes, and saugh how his shelde henge toward the erthe, and a-perceyved wele that he was be-come a duerf, and seide to hym-self that that it was that the damesell hadde hym promysed, and ther-with he wax so wroth, that for a litill he hadde gon oute of his witte, and rode forth so in that wrathe and in that anguyssh in the foreste, till he fonde a crosse and a ston therby; and thider he rode and a-light vpon the ston and toke his stiropes, and made hem shorter, and his hosen of stiell, and the renges of his swerde, and the gige of his shilde, and the sleves of his hauberk, with thonges of lether vpon his shuldres, and a-raied hym in the beste wise he myght, so wroth and angry, that he hadde

When Gawein leaves them he feels his body shrinking.

*[Fol. 244*a*.]

He perceives that he has become a dwarf.

He is almost out of his wits,

He rides to a stone, and shortens his stirrups.

leuer to be deed than on lyve; and after that he lepte vp and rode forth his wey, and cursed the day and the hour that euer he entred in to that quest, for shamed he was and dishonoured; and so hath he gon in this maner that neuer he lefte castell, ne town, ne burgh, but that he asked tidinges of Merlin of alle the men and women that he mette, and many oon he mette that grete shame and grete reproves hym seiden; and neuertheles he dide many prowesses, ffor though he were a duerf and mysshapen he hadde not loste his strengthe, neithir his hardinesse, and many a knyght he conquered; and whan he hadde serched the reame of logres vp and down, and saugh that he cowde not finde Merlin, he thought to passe the see, and go in to the litill Breteigne; and so he dide, and serched it fer and nygh, but neuer cowde he here no tidinge of Merlin, and so it drough nygh the terme that he hadde promysed to returne; and than he seide to hym-self, "Allas, what shall I now do for the terme a-proched that I muste returne by the oth that I haue sworn to myn oncle to repeire; returne moste I nede, for elles sholde I be for-sworn and vn-trewe, and that will I not in no maner, ffor the oth was soche that yef I were in my delyu*er* powste, and in my powste am I nought, for I am foule disfigured and a thinge of grete dispite, and I haue nought of my-self, and therfore may I wele a-bide of goinge to court. Certes now haue I euell seide, ffor neuer will I be for-sworne for to go ne to come what persone that euer I be, and for that I am not shet in prison I may go at my wille, and I may not a-bide but I be for-sworne, and ther-fore me be-houeth to go, ffor vntrouthe will I never do; but I pray to god to haue of me mercy and pite, ffor my body is shamefully and lothly arayed." In these complayntes that sir Gawein ther made, he returned bak for to com to courte, and fill as he rode thourgh the foreste of Brocheliande, and wolde turne for to come to the see, and euer as he rode he made grete moone; and as he made this weymentacion he herde a voice a litill vpon the right side a-bove, and he turned that wey where he hadde herde the voice, and loked vp and down, and nothinge he saugh, but as it hadde ben a

He curses the day that he entered on the quest,

but he asks for Merlin, and shows great prowess;

for he has not lost his strength.

He goes into Little Britain.

The time draws near for him to return.

He is ashamed of appearing at court,

but he will never be forsworn.

He rides through the forest of Brocheliande.

He hears a voice, but can see nothing.

smoke of myste in the eyre that myght not passe oute; than he herde a voice that seide, "Sir Gawein, disconfort you nothinge, for all shall falle as it be-houeth to falle."

*Whan sir Gawein herde the voyce that hadde hym cleped by his right name, he ansuerde and seide, "Who is that in the name of god that to me doth speke?" "How is that," quod the voice, "ne knowe ye me nought, ye were wonte to knowe me right wele, but so goth the worlde, and trewe is the proverbe that the wise man seith that 'who is fer from his iye is soone for-yeten,' and so fareth it be me; ffor while that I haunted the Courte, and serued the kynge Arthur and his barouns, I was wele be-knowen of yow and of many other, and for that I haue left court I am vn-knowen, and that ought I not to be, yef feith and trouthe regned thourgh the worlde." Whan sir Gawein herde the voice thus speke, he thought a-noon it was Merlin, and ansuerde a-noon, "Certes, it is trouthe I ought you wele for to knowe, for many tyme haue I herde youre speche, and ther-fore I pray you that ye will a-pere to me so that I may yow se." "My lorde sir Gawein," quod Merlin, "me shull ye neuer se, and that hevieth me sore that I may do noon other; and whan ye be departed fro hens, I shall neuer speke with yow no more, ne with noon other saf only with my leef; for neuer man shall haue power hider for to come for nothinge that may be-falle. Ne fro hens may I not come oute, ne neuer I shall come oute, ffor in all the worlde is not so stronge a clos as is this where-as I am, and it is nother of Iren, ne stiell, ne tymbir, ne of ston, but it is of the aire withoute eny othir thinge be enchauntemente so stronge, that it may neuer be vn-don while the worlde endureth. Ne I may not come oute ne noon may entre, saf she that me here hath enclosed, that bereth me companye whan hir liked, and goth hens whan hir liste."

*[Fol. 244b.]

He asks who speaks. The voice asks how it is he does not know.

Sir Gawein thinks it is Merlin, and prays him to appear;

but Merlin says he will never see him,

for he cannot come out.

She who enclosed him bears him company.

"How is that, swete frende," quod Gawein, "that ye be in this maner with-holden, that noon may you delyuer by no force that may be do? Ne ye may not you shewe to me that be the wisest man of the worlde." "Nay, but the

Gawein asks how it is that he cannot get out.

Merlin says he is foolish.

Gawein says his uncle will be sorry.

Merlin says no one will speak with him again;

but Gawein is to tell the king, queen, and barons.

Gawein will meet the damsel, who caused him to be misshapened.

moste fole," quod Merlin, "for I wiste wele that sholde befalle, and I am soche a fole that I love a-nother better than my-self, and haue hir lerned so moche, where thourgh I am thus be-closed and shette in prison, ne noon may me oute bringe." "Certes," seide sir Gawein, "that me hevieth sore, and so will the kynge Arthur, myn vncle, whan he it knoweth as he that maketh you to be sought thourgh alle londes." "Now he moste it suffre," quod Merlin, "for he shall me se neu*er* more ne I hym, for thus is it be-falle. Ne neuer shall no man speke with me after you, ther-fore for nought meveth eny man me for to seche; ffor youre-self, a-noon as ye be turned fro hens, ye shull neuer here me speke; and ther-fore now returne and grete wele the kynge Arthur, and my lady the quene, and alle the barou*n*s, and telle hem how it is with me, and ye shull fynde the kynge at Cardoell in wales; and whan ye come thider ye shull finde alle youre felowes ther that fro you were departed; and discounforte yow not of that is yow be-falle, ffor ye shall fynde the damesell that so hath yow mysshapen in the foreste, where-as ye hir mette, but for-yete not hir to salue, for it were folye." "Sir," seide Gawein, "ne nought I shall, yef god will." "Now," quod Merlin, "I b*e*-teche yow to god that kepe the kynge Arthur and the reame of logres, as for the best peple of the worlde.

*[Fol. 245*a*.] Gawein departs glad and sorrowful.

He meets the damsel,

*Than departed sir Gawein gladde and sorowfull: gladde for that Merlin hadde hym assured to be releveth from his lothlynesse, and sory for that he hadde Merlin thus loste, and rode so forth till he come to the see, and passed ouer hastely I-nough, and than toke his wey to ride to Cardoell in walis, and fill that he mette the damesell that [he] hadde passed by withoute saluynge in the foreste; and than he remembred of that Merlin hadde hym seide that he sholde not for-yete hir to salue whan he hir mette; and he hadde grete feer, and douted lesse she passed er he myght hir salewe, and dide of his helme of his heed for to se hir more clerly, and be-gan to be-holde be-fore and be-hynde, and on alle sides, till that he com in the same place where he mette the damesell; and than he loked be-twene two busshes, for the forest was somdell depe and thikke, and saugh two knyghtes that were armed at alle poyntes, saf of theire sheldes and helmes, that thei hadde don of, and hadde theire horse reyned to theire speres that were pight in the grounde, and hilde a damesell be-twene hem two, and made semblaunce hir to enforce, and yet ther-to hadde thei no talent; ffor the damesell made hem it for to do for to assaye the will and the corage of sir Gawein, and she made countenaunce like as thei hadde constreyned hir be force; and whan sir Gawein saugh this, he wax wroth and rode thider gripinge his spere, and seide to the knyghtes that thei were but deed, for that thei dide force the damesell with-ynne the lordship*pe* of kynge Arthur; "ffor ye knowe wele," quod he, "that thei sholde go sure." And whan the damesell hym saugh, she hym ascried and seide, "Gawein, now shull it be sene yef ther be soche prowesse in you that ye may me delyuer from this shame." "Damesell," seide Gawein, "so god be my socour*e*, as ye shull haue no shame ther as I may you diffende, for owther I shall dye or I shall you delyuer;" and whan the knyghtes this vndirstode thei hadde ther-of grete disdeyne and dispite, and lepte on foote and laced theire helmes, for yet thei douted of hym, and neuertheles the damesell hadde hem assured that of hym sholde thei haue noon harme, and hadde hem so enchaunted by hir art, that no man myght hem anoye, and ther-fore thei were the more sure at that tyme; and whan theire helmes were laced, thei henge theire sheldes aboute theire nekkes, and seide to sir Gawein, "So helpe me god, false duerf, countirfeted thou art but deed, and neuertheles shame vs semeth to dele with soche a wrecche as thou art;" and whan sir Gawein herde hym-self cleped duerf, and so dispised, he hadde grete sorowe in herte, and seide, "As lothly a wrecche as I am, in euell tyme I am com to youre be-hof. But lepe vpon youre horse, for vilonye me semeth to requere you on horsebak while ye be on foote." "Trustest so moche in thy-self," seide the knyghtes, "that thou wilt a-bide till we be horsed." "I truste so moche in god," quod Gawein, "that whan ye departe fro me ye shull

who is held by two knights, who pretend to be keeping her by force.

Sir Gawein is wroth, and rides to the knights, and tells them he will kill them.

The damsel cries to him.

The knights leap on foot,

and the damsel enchants them.

They call Gawein a dwarf.

Gawein tells them to get on their horses.

neuer forfete to lady ne damesell in the londe of kynge Arthur.” Than thei lepe to theire *horse, and hente theire speres, and seide to sir Gawein that he was but deed, and drough hem to the wey that was moste playne, and with-drough that oon fro that other, and than thei bothe lete renne a-gein sir Gawein, and he a-gein hem; and thei smote bothe vpon his shelde so harde that theire speres braste a-sonder, but thei hym meved not from his sadill, and he smote so that oon that he bar hym to the erthe vpright, and the spere brake in peces, and he rode ouer hym that was fallen, and vn-horsed, so that he brosed hym sore. Than he drough his suerde and rode toward that other, and wolde smyte hym vpon the helme; and than the damesell cried, “I-nough, sir Gawein, ne do no more.” “Damesell,” seide Gawein, “will ye that it so be;” and she seide, “Ye.” “And I will suffre than for youre sake, that god yeve you than good a-venture, and to alle the damesels of the worlde; and wite ye well ne were it for youre prayer thei sholde be slayn, for thei haue don you to grete shame and anoye, and to me seide vilonye, and countirfet duerf haue me called; and yet ther-of thei seide soth, for I am the moste lothly creature of dispite that is in the worlde, and in this foreste it me be-fill viij monethes passed;” and whan the damesell and the knyghtes hym vndirstode thei be-gonne to laugh; and than seide the damesell, “What wolde ye yeve hir that of that wolde warisshen.” “Certes,” seide Gawein, “yef it myght be that it were warisshed I wolde yeve my-silf firste and formest, and after all that I myght raunsome in all the worlde.” “It shall not nede you yeve so moche,” seide the damesell, “but ye shull make to me an oth soche as I shall you devise.” “Lady,” seide Gawein, “I will do all youre volunte.” Quod she, “Ye shull to me swere be the oth that ye made to the kynge Arthur, youre vncle, that neuer ye shull faile lady, ne maiden, ne damesell; ne neuer mete lady ne damesell, but ye shull hir salue er she salue you yef ye may.” “Lady,” quod Gawein, “this I graunte, as I am trewe knyght.” “And I take the oth in this maner that yef ye breke youre oth that ye be-come in to the

*[Fol. 245*b*.]

They leap to horse,

and both run on Gawein,

who smites one to the earth.

He draws his sword,

but the damsel calls on him to cease.

Gawein says he would slay the knights but for her prayer.

The damsel asks Gawein what he would give the damsel who cured him.

She says he must swear that he will never fail to salute a lady.

same poynte that ye be now." "Lady," quod he, "to this I assent; with that the quarell be trewe of hir that of helpe me requereth, ffor vntrouthe will I not do in no maner wise, nother for lif ne for deth." "Thus I you graunte," quod the damesell, "ffor I will that ye be soche as ye were be-fore." A-noon brake the layners that he had bounden vp his hosen of stiell, for his membres that were strecched oute and com a-gein, a-noon in his owne semblaunce; and whan he felte that he was come a-gein in to his power, he kneled be-fore the damesell, and seide that he was hir knyght for eueuer more; and the damesell hym thanked, and raught hym vp be the honde. Than toke the damesell leve of sir Gawein and departed, and hir two knyghtes with hir, and comaunded eche other to god; and sir Gawein a-bood there and lengthed his hauberke, and appareiled his shelde and his armes full richely, and lepte vpon the gringalet with his shelde aboute his nekke, and his spere in hande, and rode forth toward Cardoell so fro day to day, till that he com thider at the terme devised; and the same day that sir Ewein and Segramor, and her felowes were comen, and eche of hem hadde seide his a-uenture of that was hem be-fallen in[1]

He assents,

and returns to his own semblance.

He kneels to the damsel, and says he will be her knight for evermore.

He rides to Cardoell, and comes there on the same day as Ewein and Segramor.

[this Quest. And when Sir Gawain was come, then was the joy and mirth complete. And Sir Gawain told them all the things that had happened to him in this Quest, and the barons marvelled at it very greatly. And King Arthur was much grieved about Merlin, but could do nothing more in it, and must needs suffer: so they betook themselves to making the greatest mirth they could for Sir Gawain.

Gawein tells all that has happened to him.

Whilst they were thus rejoicing, there entered into the hall Evadeam, who was twenty-two years old, and so beautiful and gentle that no one handsomer could be found in the two kingdoms. And he held his damsel by the hand, and they came before the king, and saluted him right courteously. And the king returned him his salute; and the knight said to him, "Sire, you know me not; and no wonder, for you never saw me but once, and that was in such guise that no one who saw me now and had seen me then, would know me unless he had known me from childhood." "Certes, handsome friend," answered

Evadeam enters, holding a damsel by the hand.

He addresses the king,

---

[1] The MS. is imperfect and breaks off here, the conclusion is a translation from the French original (see pp. 700–1), the MS. of which is in the British Museum Library.

King Arthur, "I do not recollect that I ever saw you before, but you are a very handsome knight." "Sire," said Evadeam, "do you remember a damsel who brought you a dwarf that you knighted ?" "Yes," said the king, "I may well remember that, for the knight has sent me five captive knights whom he conquered by his prowess."

and reminds him of the dwarf.

"Sire," said then Evadeam, "I am the dwarf you knighted, and see here is the damsel who prayed you to do it. And without doubt I sent you those captives, and the four last of them Sir Ywain saw, for he found me fighting them in the valley on Trinity eve; and next day by good hap I rode right at noon in the forest of Broceliande, I and my damsel, and we met my lord Gawain, whom I neither hear nor see here [?] And he saluted us, and we him, and he said, "May God give you joy." And so God did, for at the very moment that the words slipped from his mouth I recovered the shape and look that you see; for then was I a dwarf, ugly and hideous. So I believe verily that his words and his prayer availed me so far that God brought me out of the great shame in which I was; and I thank for it our Lord and him." And then the King asked him who he was, and of what people; and he told him all in order, as you have heard herein before. And when the King, and Sir Gawain, and the others heard this, they were all right glad and right joyous; and the King received him as a companion like those of the Table Round. And the damsel dwelt with the Queen in right great joy and in right great mirth. Now here the story becomes silent about King Arthur and his company, and returns to tell of King Ban of Benoy[c], and King Bohort, his brother, who was King of Gannes, who are both in their own lands.

He is that dwarf,

and recovered his shape after Gawein had saluted him.

The king receives him as a companion of the Round Table.

Here says the story that when King Arthur had departed from King Ban of Benoyc, and his brother King Bohort of Gannes, that the two brothers dwelt in Benoyc in right great joy and in right great mirth, and with them were their wives, who were right beautiful and gentle. Then it happened, as it pleased our Lord, that King Ban had by his wife a son, who was named at his baptism Gallead, and surnamed Lancelot. This name of Lancelot remained to him all his life, and King Ban and the Queen his wife had right great joy of him, and the Queen loved him so much that she fed him with her own milk. And the wife of King Bohort had a son whom they called Lyonel, who was a right lovely child and well mannered; and in the twelfth month afterwards she had another son whom they called Bohort; and these three children were afterwards of great renown in the kingdom of Logres, and they made themselves known through all lands by their prowess. Soon after Bohort was born—the youngest of the two children of King Bohort—the

When Arthur leaves Ban and Bohort, they dwell in great joy.

Ban's wife has a son, surnamed Lancelot.

The sons of Bohort.

King Bohort fell into a great sickness, and lay long in the city of Gannes, for which King Ban, his brother, was very sorrowful and in great distress; for he could not be with him as his will was, on account of a neighbour of his, who bordered on him, and who was very fell and cruel. This was King Claudas of the Desert, who was so grieved and angry (about his Castle which King Arthur had caused to be levelled), that he was nearly going out of his senses; and he did not know on whom to take vengeance, except on King Ban of Benoyc, and on King Bohort, who bordered on him, because they were King Arthur's men. So he warred on them, and wrought so that he had for helper a prince of Rome, who was named Poince Antony, and who came to him right willingly, because he too hated King Arthur and all his, for the love of Luce, the Emperor of Rome, whom they had slain. And in this contest was killed Hoel of Nantes, who had warred greatly on Claudas. And the Romans wrought so that they had all Gaul under their dominion; and they sent the men of Gaul, and the men of the Desert, and Poince Antony with all his Romans, to attack King Ban of Benoyc. And the King defended himself right vigourously, as one who was of great heart and of great prowess, and he fought often with the enemy in the open field, and often lost and often won; and Leonces of Paerne, and Graciens of Trebes, and Bannins, a godson of King Ban, did marvellous deeds of arms, and destroyed and slew many of the people of King Claudas; and Graciens died there, but Phariens died not. And King Ban became so weakened in men [?] that he could not endure against the Romans, but they attacked him so from day to day that they took his castles and his fortresses, and he could never get help from King Bohort, his brother, who was lying sick in bed, whence he never after rose. And this did him great discomfort, for Poince Antony had brought so many people that they took from him his city of Benoy[c] and all his land, so that there was left to him neither castle nor city, except only the castle of Trebes, where Queen Helaine was, and Lancelot her son, who lay still in his cradle. And king Ban had there with him as many people as he could get together, but they were few to endure such attacks. Bannins his godson was there, in whom he trusted much, and with reason, for he was a good and loyal knight. And he had a seneschal, whom he had brought up from childhood, to whom he had entrusted all his land after Gracien's death; and this was he who betrayed him, and by whom he lost the Castle of Trebes, as the Story will tell you hereinafter.

Bohort is very sick at Gannes, and Ban cannot come to him because of Claudas.

Poince Antony helps Claudas.

Hoel is killed. The Romans get all Gaul under their dominion.

Ban defends himself vigorously,

but he cannot endure against the Romans,

who take from him all his castles, save Trebes.

Bannins is with his godfather Ban.

Ban's Seneschal betrays him.

Explicit the shutting up of Merlin.
May God bring us all to a good end !]

MS. Add. 10292, *fol.* 216, *col.* 3, *l.* 14 *from bottom.*

| en cele queste, Et q*ua*nt mesire G*auuain* fu uenus. si fu la ioie & la feste enterine. Et mesires, G*auwain* lor conta toutes lez coses q*ui* auenues li estoient en cele q*ue*ste, & li baron sen meruell*er*ent m*ou*lt durement. Et li rois artus fu m*ou*lt dolans de merlin, mes pl*us* nen pooit faire, si len estuet souffrir, si ente*n*dire*n*t a monseignor G*auwain* fere feste la gregnor q*ue* len puet.

Tantdis quil estoient en cele ioie entra laiens en la sale, euadeam, q*ui* estoit en la-age[1] de .xxij. ans. et estoit si biaus & si gens *co*m ne trouuast nul plus bel en .ij. roialmes. Et tenoit sa damoisele p*ar* le main, et sen uindrent deuant le roy & le saluere*n*t m*ou*lt cortoisement. Et li rois li re*n*di son salu, et li ch*iual*e*rs li dist, "Sire, vo*us* ne me *con*nissies mie, & ce nest pas m*er*uelles, q*ua*r onq*ue*s mais ne me ueistes fors vne fois. Et ce fu en tel habit q*ue* nus ne me uerroit ore, & adont meust ueu qui me *con*neust, se ce nestoit denfance." "Certes, bia*us* amis," fait li rois art*us* "il ne me souuie*n*t q*ue* iou onq*ue*s mais vo*us* ueisse, mais m*ou*lt estes biaus ch*iual*e*rs." "Sire," fet euadeam, "vo*us* souient il dune damoisele q*ui* vn nain vo*us* amena q*ue* vo*us* fesistes ch*iual*e*r?" "Oil," fet li rois, "il men puet b*ie*n souenir, q*ua*r il ma envoiet .v. ch*iual*e*rs prisons, quil *con*q*ui*st p*ar* sa proece."

"Sire," fet dont euadeam, "iou sui li nains q*ue* vo*us* adoubastes, & uees chi la damoisele q*ui* vous en pria. Et sans faille lez ch*iual*e*rs vo*us* enuoiai iou. et tout ce uit mesire yw*ain*. dez iiij. daerrains a q*ui* il me troua *com*batant en la ualee la ueille de la trinite, & lendemain p*ar* bone destinee cheualchoie droit a heure de miedi en la forest de broceliande entre moi et ma damoisele, et encontrames mon seignor G*auwain*. qui chi noi se oir, si nous salua, & nous lui. et dist q*ue* ioie no*us* donast diex. Et il si fist, q*ua*r tout maintena*n*t que la p*ar*ole fu coulee de la bouche, reuing iou en la forme & en la sambla*n*ce q*ue* vo*us* uees, q*ua*r lors estoie iou nains, lais et hideus. Si croi b*ie*n b*ie*n [*sic*] que sa p*ar*ole & sa proiere me ualut a ce que diex me geta de la gr*a*nt honte ou iou estoie, si en mercie nostre seignor et luj." Et lors li demanda li rois qui il est, & de

MS. Add. 10292, *fol.* 216*b*, *col.* 2.

q*ue*l gent, et il li conte tout en ordre, si *com*me vo*us* aues oi cha auant. Et q*ua*nt li rois & mesires G*auwain*, & li aut*r*e lentendirent, si en fure*n*t tout m*ou*lt lie & m*ou*lt ioiant, si le rechut li rois a co*m*paignon auec ceuls de la table roonde. Et la damoisele demora auec la royne a m*ou*lt gr*a*nt ioie & a m*ou*lt gr*a*nt feste. Si se taist ore li *con*tes del roy artu et de sa *com*paignie, & retorne a p*ar*ler del roy ban de benoy[c], & del roy bohort sen frere, qui estoit rois de gannes, qui sout e*n* lors terres.

Ce dist li co*n*tes q*ue* q*ua*nt li rois artus se fu p*ar*tis del roy ban de benoyc & de son frere le roi bohort de gannes, q*ue* li doi frere demorere*n*t en benoyc a m*ou*lt gr*a*nt ioie & a m*ou*lt gr*a*nt leesce, & furent aueq*ue*s euls lors molliers q*ui* m*ou*lt estoient beles & gentes. Si auint ensi, *com* il plot a n*ost*re seignor, q*ue* li rois bans ot .i. fil de sa fe*m*me q*ui* ot no*n* en baptesme galaad, & en sorno*n* lancelos. Icelui non de lancelot li dura toute sa vie, si en ot li rois ba*n*s & la roine sa fe*m*me m*ou*lt gr*a*nt ioie, si lama ta*n*t la roine q*ue* elle le norri de so*n* lait, & la fe*m*me au roy bohort en ot .j. *con* apeloit lyonel, q*ui* m*ou*lt fu bia*us* enfes de gr*a*nt man*ere*; & el xijsime mois ap*re*s, en ot .j. *con* apelloit bohort, & fure*n*t p*uis* cil .iij. enfa*n*t de m*ou*lt gr*a*nt renomee el roialme de log*r*es, & p*ar* toutes t*er*res se fire*n*t *con*noist*r*e p*ar* lor p*r*oesces. vn poi de ta*n*s ap*re*s ce q*ue* bohors fu nes, li pl*us* iouenes dez .ij. enfa*n*s au roy bohort, chai li rois bohors en vne gr*a*nt maladie, & iut longeme*n*t e la cite de gannes, si en fu li rois ba*n*s sez freres m*ou*lt dolans & m*ou*lt coroucies, q*ua*r il ne pooit mie estre auec lui a sa uolente, p*our* .j. sien uoisin q*ui* a lui marchissoit, q*ui* m*ou*lt estoit fel & cruels. Che iert li rois claudas de la deserte, q*ui* ta*n*t estoit dola*n*s & corocies de son castel q*ue* li rois art*us* auoit fet abatre, q*ua*poi q*ui*l nissoit del se*n*s, si ne*n* sauoit a qui p*re*ndre ue*n*iance, fors au roy ban de benoyc, & au roy bohort q*ui* marchissoie*n*t a lui, p*our* ce [col. 3] q*ui*l estoient ho*m*me au roi artu, si lez g*ue*rroia & fist ta*n*t q*ui*l ot en aide .i. p*r*ince de rome, q*ui* auoit a no*n* poince antoine; & cil y uint m*ou*lt uole*n*tiers, q*ua*r aussi haoit il le roy artu & to*us* les sie*n*s p*our* lamor luce, le*mpe*reor de rome, q*ui*l auoie*n*t ocis. Et en cel *con*te*n*t estoit hoel mors de na*n*tes, q*ui* m*ou*lt auoit claudas g*ue*rroie. Si refire*n*t ta*n*t li romai*n* q*ui*l ore*n*t gaulle en lor baillie,

---

[1] Fol. 216 back.

& e*n*uoiere*nt* cil de gaule & cil de la deserte, & poince antoine a tout sez rommains assaillir le roy ban de benoyc, & il se desfe*n*di m*ou*lt uiguereusem*ent* *com*me cils q*ui* estoit de g*ra*nt cuer & de g*ra*nt p*ro*esce, si assa*m*bla souue*nt* a euls a plain cha*m*p, si y p*er*di soue*nt* & gaigna, & m*er*uelles y fire*nt* darmes leonces de paerne & g*ra*ciens de trebes, & banins .i. filleus au roy ban, cil destruise*nt* m*ou*lt & ocistre*nt* de la ge*nt* le roy claudas ; si y morut g*ra*ciens, mes pharie*n*s ni morut mie ; & li rois bans fu ta*nt* afebloies de sa ge*nt* q*u*il not as romai*n*s duree, ains le men*er*ent si de ior en ior q*u*il p*r*istrent sez castia*us* & sez forteresces, ne onq*ue*s ne pot auoir ayde du roy bohort son frere, q*ui* gisoit malades au lit, & do*n*t il p*uis* ne leua. Et ce li fist g*ra*nt des*con*fort, q*ua*r tant auoit poince antoine g*ra*nt de gent amene, q*u*il li tolirent sa cite de benoy & toute sa t*er*re, si q*u*il ne li remest ne castel ne cite, fors seulem*ent* le castel de trebes ou la royne helaine estoit, & lanc*elos* so*n* fil, q*ui* encore gisoit en berch. Et li rois ba*n*s ot illuec auec luj ta*nt* de ge*nt* *com* il pot assa*m*bler, mes ce fu poi a tel effors soffrir. Il y fu banins sez fille*us* en qui il se fia m*ou*lt, & il auoit droit, q*ua*r il estoit boins ch*iualer*s & loiaus. Et il ot .j. senescal quil auoit norri dez enfance a qui il auoit toute sa t*er*re co*m*mandee ap*re*s la mort g*ra*cien : et ce fu cil qui le trai, et par qui il p*er*di le castel de trebes, si *com*me li contes le vo*us* deuisera cha auant.

Explicit lenserrem*ent* de m*er*lin ;
diex no*us* mai*n*t to*us* a boine fin.

10

INDEX TO MERLIN.

ABBEY of the Royall Mynster, 416.

ABIGANS, king, 159.

ACALAS, Acolas, a Saxon, 355, 357.

ACES, Aces de Bemonde, Aces of Campercorentin, Acon, Acon de Bemonde, 284—287, 294, 375, 481.

ADAX, 276.

ADRAGAIN, Adragain des vaux de gailore, Adragain li bruns, Adragains, Adragayn, Adragayn li bruns, Adragayns li bruns, Adragein le noir, Adrageins. *See* Agravadain.

ADRASTUS, king of Greece, 340.

ADRIAN, Adryan, emperor of Constantinople, 186, 373, 374, 437, 449; his daughters, 186; son-in-law Brangore, 186.

AGLONALL, a knight of Arthur, 480.

AGRAVADAIN, Agrauadain, Agrauadain des vals de gailore, Agravadain des vaus de gailore, Agrauadain ly noire, Agravadayns, Agrauadins, Agrauandain, Agragayns, 257, 327, 329, 330, 331, 337, 342, 343, 345, 351, 356, 383, 407, 410, 456, 458, 470, 484, 490, 496, 561, 562, 566—574, 604—609, 611, 670, 672—675; his wife, 607; his daughter, 607, 608, 670, 671, 672, 674, 675; his daughter's son, *see* Estor; his brother Belynans, 561; his brother Madagot, 345; his nieces, 607, 608; his castle, 257, 604, 672, 673; best knight destramars, 561, cf. 345.

AGRAVAIN, Agrauuayn the prowde, 147; his mother, 86, 372; father, 179, 285, 526, 555; second son of Lot, 555; his aunt Basyne, 373; resolves to join Arthur, 183, 240, 251, 260, 439, 557; accompanies Galeshyn, 190, 191; battle with the Saxons, 193, 194, 230; rescues Gaheries, 196; upset by a Saxon, 198; rescued by Gawein, 199; upset by Guynebans, 199; rescued by Galeshyn and Gaheries, 199; slays the nephew of Guynebans, 199; sojourns at Logres, 201, 202; Arthur is told of his coming, 230; slays Orienx's nephew, 265; upset by Orienx, 265; horsed afresh, 265; goes to Camelot, 267; fells Guynebant, 268; Merlin calls him coward, 269; Gawein goes to help Ewein, 280; leads the first ward of the army, 280, 282; charges the Saxons, 283, 284; retreats, 285; a reverse, 287; keeps the bridge, 282; at Arondell, 290—293; prowess, 294; a strange quest, 297—301, 314; cuts Taurus in pieces, 299, 300; returns to Arondell, 301; at Logres, 301; makes a vow, 301, 314, 449, 450; Arthur is coming, 370; goes to meet him, 370, 371; salutes Arthur on his knees, 371; Gawein tells Arthur they are come to be knighted, 371, 372; Arthur promises, 372; presented to Arthur, 372; Arthur makes great joy of him, 373; goes to Logres with Arthur, 374; the vigil in the minster, 374; dubbed knight, 374, 449; Arthur gives him a treasure sword, 374; goes with Gawein's host to Dover, 377, 378; has part command, 378; his prowess at Trebes, 388, 407, 410; falls under his horse, 396; rescued by Ban and Gawein, 396; horsed again, 396, 397; at Carmelide, 447, 448; at the marriage of Arthur and Gonnore, 453, 454; in the tournament at Toraise, 459; at Arthur's court Royal at Logres, 481; tournament at Logres, 485; jousts with Pynodas, 485; his deeds, 487, 488, 489; the reconciliation of the Round Table and Queen's knights, 500; is to go with his father and brethren with a flag of truce to the princes, 505, 506, 507; they start at midnight, 509, 510; encounter with Saxons, 510, 511, 512; can't find Gawein, 513, 514; Gawein comes, 514, 515; butchery of Saxons, 515; rescues Gueheret, 516; arrives at a forester's house and lodges there, 517, 518; on the journey again, 524, 525, 526; his foul-mindedness, 526, 527, 528; his foulness duly punished, 527; cured of his sickness by Gawein and Launcelot du Lak, 527; the rescue of Elizer and Lydonus his squire, 528, 529, 531; taunted about his foulness, and gets angry, 528, 529; quarrels with Gaheries, 529, 530; unhorsed, 531; sore bestead, 532; horsed by Gawein, 533; quarrels with Gaheries, 535, smites him, 536; but is knocked down by Gawein for his pains, 536, 537, 538; a general squabble, 537, 538; horsed by Elizer, 538; is turned out of the company, 538; with them again at the hermitage, 544; jealous of Gawein, 544, 545; at Roestok castle, 545, 546; battle with Saxons before Cambenyk, 547—551; unhorsed, rescued, 552; slays Dodalus, 552; rout of the Saxons, 554; in Cambenyk, 555; Gaheries chaffs him about the maidens again, 555; goes to North Wales and then to Arestuell, 557, 558; in the battle of Garlot, 525; vows to find Merlin, 682.

AGRESIANX, one of the forty-two fellows, 212.

AGUYGNERON, Aguygueron, Aguyneron, seneschal to Clameden, 577, 578, 594.

AGUYSALE de desirouse, one of the forty-two fellows, 212.

AGUYSANS, Aguysant, Aguysanx, the Roy de Cent Chiualiers, 235, 313; with the twelve kings, 152; a sudden attack by Arthur, 153; unhorses Kay, 156; horses Ventres, 156; attacks Arthur, 157; felled by Arthur, 158; his steward Margnam unhorsed, 158; goes with his men to the strait near the river, 160; Bors comes, 161, 162; succours Carados, 163; his prowess, 163; attacks Ban, 163, 164, who unhorses him, 164; fights on foot, 164; is worsted, 165; leaves Sorhant, 184; goes to his lady at Malonant, 184; his high position, 184, 185; the reason of his name, 185; goes to succour Tradilyuant, 233; his deeds, 233, 234; the Saxons worsted, 234, 242; counsels Tradilyuant, 235, 312; rides to Arundell, 236; goes to Malohaut, 236; his messengers see the princes, 312; at Leicester, 312; counsels war at once, 313; his cousin Calchous, 173; the expedition to Clarence against the Saisnes, 438, 439; leads the first ward of 7,000 men, 438; a night attack, 439, 440, 441; his courage, 443; discomfited by the Saisnes, 444; makes a fresh night attack, 444, 445; totally beaten, 446, 449; goes home, 447, 449; hears of Arthur's arrival at Logres, 449, 450; wishes for peace with Arthur, 450, 451; a messenger of peace on his way from Arthur, 546; his joy on seeing him, 546, 556; a conference agreed to, 556; the conference with Lot at Arestuell, 558, 559; a truce, 560; the assembly of the hosts at Salisbury, 565, 575, 585; leads the second ward in the battle of Garlot, 594; in battle before Clarence, 601; in the battle between Arthur and Rion's hosts, 626; aids Arthur against Luce, 643; in the second division, 659.

AGUYSAS, Aguysans, of Scotland, 108, 439, 558; a fresh young knight, 108; goes to Arthur's court at Logres, 108; disdains Arthur and his gifts, 108; threatens Arthur's life, 108; son of Briadas and Ygerne's daughter, 121; unhorsed in the battle against Arthur at Bredigan, 156; felled by Lucas, 158; leads his men to the strait between the wood and the river, 160; his host aids Ydiers, 161; leaves Sorhant, 187; at Corengers in Scotland, 236; the Saxons come, 236; tells his barons to arm, 236; in the forefront of his host, 237; his cousin-german Gaudius, 237; has great loss, 237; Urien and Baudemagn come to the rescue, 238, 239, 242; discomfited, 239, 242; leads the tenth ward to Clarence against the Saisnes, 438, 439; a night attack, 439, 440, 441; discomfited, 444; a fresh onset on the Saisnes, 444, 445; his nephew Gaudin, 445; is totally beaten, 446, 447, 449; goes home, 447, 449; hears Arthur is at Logres, 449, 450; wishes for peace with Arthur, 450, 451; a conference with Arthur's envoy, 557, 558, 559; the host assembles at Salisbury, 565, 575; in battle before Clarence, 601; aids Arthur against Luce, 644; leads the first division against the Romans, 659.

AGUYUAS LI BLOIS, 151.

AIGLINS des vaus, Ayglin de vans, one of the forty-two fellows, 212, 682.

ALADAN the crespes, one of the forty-two fellows, 212.

ALAIN, Alechin, Ales, 286, 294; dubbed knight by Arthur, 375, 449.

ALAIN, Alein, Aleon, de Lille in Lytenoys king, 173, 229, 520, 583, 539, 577; called Mehaignyes, 229; kin to king Pelles, 173, 520, 539, 577; of the forain londes, 539, 577; uncle to Elizer, 539; kin to king Pellynor, 173, 520, 539, 577.

ALECHIN, Ales. *See* Alain.

ALI PATIN, Alipatin, Alipantius, king, 349; of the londe des pastures, 616, 662.

ALIAUME, steward to Ban of Benoyk, 152.

ALIBOS, a young knight, 442.

ALIERS, a knight, 441.

ALMAYNE, 303, 306, 379, 380, 386, 394, 398, 402, 411, 419, 421, 450.

ALMAYNE, duke of. *See* Matan *and* Frolle.

ALMAYNES, 402, 408, 438.

AMADAS, Amynadus, the rich king of Ostrich, 252; his brother Maglaas, 252; king of Danes, 152.

AMADAS DE LA CRESPE, knight, 682.

AMANT, Amaunt, Amaunte, king, 350, 351, 358, 359, 364—370, 375, 382, 563, 565, 567; his son Gosenges, q.v.

AMNISTAN, Sir, chaplain to Leodogan, 453, 472.

AMORET LE BRUN, one of the forty-two fellows, 212.

AMYNADUS. *See* Amadas.

ANABLE, Auenable, Avenable, Avenables. *See* Grisandoll.

ANADONAIN, king, 173.

ANGIER, Angiers, Aunger, Aungier, Aungiers, Aungis, Aungys, a Saxon, 27; his daughter, 27, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 49, 50, 54; his uncle, 152, 243, 585; his kin, 172, 248, 600.

ANMADIUS, the proude, one of the forty-two fellows, 212.

ANTICOLAS LE ROUS, one of the forty-two fellows, 212.

ANTIDOLUS, steward to king Brandon, 587.

ANTONY, Antoneyes, Antonye, Antonyes, 303, 306, 315, 375, 379, 380, 387, 390, 392, 393, 398, 402, 406, 408, 409, 411, 416, 419, 449, 450. *See* Antoynes.

ANTONY and Pounce, 303. *See* Pounce.

ANTOR, Arntor, Merlin tells Uter Pendragon he is a good man, 88; his wife good and wise, 88; poor, 88; his wife in child-bed, 88; goes to Uter Pendragon, who makes great feast to him, 88; swears to keep counsel, 88; Uter Pendragon asks him to send his son Kay (who is six months old, 112) out to nurse and adopt Arthur in his place, 88, 91; hesitates, 88, 89; he promises, 89; has great gifts from Uter Pendragon, 89; tells his wife all, 89; his wife demurs, 89; they find a nurse for their son Kay, 89; Arthur is brought by Merlin, 90, 91, 111; asks if he is christened, 91; the messenger says No, 91; christens him Arthur, 91; puts out his son Kay to nurse, 91, 97, 102; nourishes Arthur until he is fifteen, 97, 112, 347; he has nourished him well, 97; always calls Arthur "son," 97; and Arthur calls him "father," 91; makes his son his knight, 97; goes to Logres withwno two sons (? Kay and Arthur), 97; Kay brings him Calibourne, 101; Kay says he drew it, 101; he tells Kay he lies, 101, 102; tells Arthur to replace the sword, 101; he does so, 101, and Kay cannot draw it, 101; tells Arthur he is not his father, 102; Arthur cries, 102; tells Arthur how he got him to nourish, 102; asks Arthur that when king he will make Kay his steward, 102; Arthur swears to do it, 102; tells Arthur to draw the sword, 103; he and his friends side with Arthur against the rebel barons, 103; the archbishop in council with him, 104; Kay made steward, 102, 104, 109, 136, 405, 453; Merlin tells the barons Arthur is not his son, 109; Bretell comes to fetch him, 109, 110; goes to the barons, 110; confirms the story of Arthur's youth, 112; in council, 114; strikes down king Carados in battle, 119; watches the tourney at Logres, 133; in council, 138; knows Arthur's parentage, 139, 178; Merlin leads him to Bredigan, 150; horsed by Kay, 158; upsets Margnam, 158; horses Bretell, 158; fights with Escam, 159; Arthur's incest, 180; one of Arthur's forty-two fellows, 212; felled by Sorfarin, 220; unwounded, 224; at Toraise, 224; in the fights with Rion, 337; the fight with the Saxons, 349; on foot, 352; Arthur sees him thus and gets fierce, 352; Arthur aids him, 353; tries to dissuade Bors from fighting Amaunt, 366; lodged in Trebes castle, 412; at the marriage of Arthur and Gonnore, 453, 454; the tournament, 455.

ANTORILAS, knight, ally of Claudas, 394.

ANTOYNES, Antony, 130; steward of Benoyk, 146, 163.

ANTYAUME, 381, 384, 400, 401, 564; steward of Trebes; seneschal of Benoyk.

ARADE DE GALOIRE, king, an ally of Rion, 616.

ARANS, Aroans, Aroant, king, son of Brangue, 291, 292, 293, 295, 296, 329, 330.

ARCHBISHOP? of Toraise, 453, 454, 620. ? of Logres, 639, 640.

ARESTOBOLUS, knight of the Round Table, 598.

ARESTUELL, in Scotlande, 509, 519, 525, 546, 548, 556, 557, 558, 562.

ARGANS, king, an ally of Rion, 616.

ARIDOLUS, knight, 321.

ARNTOR. *See* Antor.

AROAISE, a little river, 386.

AROANS. *See* Arans.

ARONDELL, Arundell, a castle in the marsh of Cambenyk, 188, 231, 232, 233, 236, 247, 277, 278, 287, 290, 296, 301, 377.

ARSON, a river in Strangore, 248, 250, 292.

ARSUNE, 306.

ARTHUR, 32; his death, 147, 401; is begotten of Ygerne by artifice, 77, 177, 320, 341; is promised to Merlin, 78, 80, 81; is born, 90; given to an old and rimpled man, 90, 111; brought to Antor, 91, 349; christened and named Arthur, 91, 112; fair and well grown, 94; future foretold, 95; nourished by Antor till fifteen, 97; begets a child, 122; miracle of the sword, 98; goes to fetch Kay's sword, 101; cannot find it, 101; sees the miraculous sword and draws it, 101, 339, 374; brings it to Kay, 101; Kay boasts that he himself drew it, 101; Antor tells him to replace it, 101; does so, 101; Kay cannot draw it, 101; hears he will be king, 102; and that Antor is not his father, 102; and of his sending away, 102; swears to make Kay his steward, 102; the barons assemble, 103; his sin of incest, 180, 316; takes out the sword, 103; the barons' anger, 103; people pleased, 103; replaces the sword, 103, and all the barons fail to draw it, 103; called a "garcion," 103; none else can draw it, 104; draws it again before all the nation, 104; replaces it, 104; great parliament at Easter, 105; archbishop speaks in his favour, 105; the barons and people consult, 105, 556; but they defer the consecration, 105; gifts brought, 106; they try him, 106, without success, 106; barons assemble at Whitsuntide at Logres, 106; no one else can draw the sword, 106; his vigil, 106; dubbed knight, 106; barons sue for pardon, 107; his coronation oath, 107; draws the sword, 107; consecrated and crowned at Karlion, 107, 320, 399, 556, 581; his generosity, 108; his sister, 108; the barons' disdain, 108, 129; the gifts refused, 108; his life threatened, 108; his escape, 108; Bretell comes to fetch him, 110; goes to the barons, 110; dreads treason, 110; archbishop pleads for him, 110; the story of his birth by Merlin, 111, 152; people love him, 112; barons call him "Bastard," 112; they defy him, 113; arms his men, 113; a council of war, 114; addresses Merlin, 114; Merlin tells him to help Rion, 115; who will give him his daughter, 115; the dragon-banner, 116, 321; puts his men in order, 116; Kay banner-bearer, 116, 596; besieged by the barons, 116; they are excommunicated, 116, 556; their tents fired, 116, 129; puts them to flight, 116; his prowess, 117, 129; Ventres of Garlot seeks his life, 117; unhorses him, 117; Lot comes to rescue Ventres, 117; upsets Lot, 118; melée, 118; his sword at work, 118; seven kings charge and upset him, 118, 119; remounts, 119; kills Ydiers' horse, 119, 120; routs them, 120; goes to Karlion, 120; to Cardoell, 120; becomes popular, 120; provisions and arms his castles, 120, 231; court at London, 120; dubs knights, 121; takes counsel of Merlin, 121; the story of Merlin's birth told him, 121; and Merlin's history, 122; Merlin tells him of the son he (Arthur) begat of Lot's wife at Logres, 122, 179, 180, 295, 393; of Gawein, who will aid him greatly, 122, 405, 420; of his sister, Ventres' wife, 122; of Galeshyn, 122; of Ewein le gaunte, 122; of Ban of Benoyk, 122; of Bors of Gannes, 122; is told to send for them, 123; and to go with them to Leodogan, 123; swears to keep Merlin's counsel, 123; sends for Ban and Bors, 124; his messengers find Claudas land destroyed, 125; go to Trebes, 125; they are attacked by Claudas' men, 126; whom they slay, 128; at Logres, 131; Ban and Bors come, 132; their grand entry into Logres, 132; Merlin's counsel, 131, 132; the revels at Logres, 132—138; presides at the tourney, 133; his war-cry "Clarence!" 136, 287, 294; praises Kay, 136; end of the tourney, 137; prize given to Kay, Lucas, and Gifflet, 138; conference with Ban and Bors, 138, 557; Merlin relates the messengers' adventures, 138; sends for Merlin, 139; Merlin is proved by Guynebaude, 139; receives the homage of Ban and Bors, 140, 173; takes counsel with them, 141; Merlin tells him to marry Gonnore, 141, 177; to go to Leodogan her father at Carmelide, 141, 142; to get his army together, 142, 144; prepares his men, 144; has ten thousand horse, 144; no infantry, 144; leads his host to Bredigan, 144; his precautions, 145; the seven kings seek revenge, 145; their spies captured, 146; their army is sixty thousand, 146; is joined by Merlin and his force, 148; the seven kings have forty thousand (fifty thousand, 149) well-horsed men, 148; has thirty-five thousand men, 148, 149; advised to be liberal, 150; makes ready for the battle, 151; the leaders of division, 151, 152; joins Ulfyn's division, 151; [Danish kings assemble and ravage Cornwall and lay siege to Vandelers, but are driven out by him again, 152;] king Lot's dream, 153; attacks the sentries, 153; throws the enemy into confusion, 153; chases the fugitives, 153; takes them in the rear, 157; upsets Tradilyvaunt, 157; severe battle, 157; is attacked by Aguysans, 158; issue doubtful, 159, 160; ruse of the enemy, 160, 161; rescues and horses Ban, 164, 165; slays a knight, 165; routs the seven kings, 165; chases them over the bridge, 165; wants to follow, 165; but Merlin forbids him, 165; to go back to Logres, 166; divides the spoil, 167; at Bredigan, 167; the "great churl," 167; sees the churl is Merlin, 170; intrigue with Lysanor, 171; their son Hoot, 171; goes to Tarsaide in Tamelide, 171, 202, 240, 260, 294, 303, 307; to succour Leodogan, 175, 202, 203; barons afraid, 175; his sister's sorrow for him, 182; his fame spreads, 183, 184, 186, 190; his sister Morgein, 185, 507, 508; worsts the Saxons, 185; who have ravaged his lands, 186, 188; fame reaches Constantinople, 186; his nephews Galaishin and Gawein, and his brethren are coming to aid him, 191, 192, 197, 240, 251, 260, 285, 290; has a band of forty knights to aid Leodogan, 203, 396, 454; they are all in disguise, 203, 204; Merlin bears the great dragon-banner, 206; description of it, 206; dashes at the Saxons, 206, 207; does marvels with Calibourne, 210, 220; Gonnore wonders who he is, 210; the name of his forty fellows, 212; [marries Gonnore, 213, 451;] slays Margalyvaunt, 217, 224; laughs at Merlin, 219; his prowess, 219; Gonnore watches his deeds, 220; dashes at Sorfarin, 221; Ban dissuades him, 221; Merlin calls him a coward, 221; attacks Sorfarin, 221, 222; is wounded, 222; overthrows Sorfarin, 222; Gonnore watching, 222; slays Malore, 222, 223; slays Ffreelent, 223; puts the Saxons to flight, 223; Rion prepares revenge, 223; Leodogan gives him the spoil, 225; his largess, 225, 257; Gonnore serves him at the feast, 225, 257; Leodogan thinks he might marry Gonnore, 226; she brings him wine, 227; he falls in love with her, 227, 229; she praises him, 227, 228; Ban asks Leodogan why she is not married, 228; the answer, 228; Merlin smiles at Ban, 228; Leodogan wonders at the respect they all show Arthur, 229; is told by Merlin of Gawein's and Galeshyn's deeds, 230; Arthur's castle of Arondell, 232; his men help Tradilyvaunt, 233; his sister's son Ewein the grete, 238, 285; of Dodynell the savage, 247; of Kay Destranx, 249; Seigramor lands at Dover, 259, 262, 270; Merlin comes disguised to Camelot, 261—271; repentance of Ydiers, 282; a band of young nobles coming to him, 292, 293; Lot's repentance, 295; Logres his capital, 301, 316; the obstinacy of the barons, 304; the quest of the St. Grail in his time foretold, 304; his cousin Leonces, 307; Merlin comes, 312, 314; Merlin's counsel, 314; Merlin tells him of his nephews, 314; and of their vow, 314; sorrow for Ban and Bors, 315; Merlin's dark saying, 315; is to go to Forest Denoyable and knight his nephews with the twelve good swords there, 316; Guyomar comes to fetch him to Leodogan, 316, 317; goes, 317; Leodogan wonders who he can be, 318; Merlin tells Leodogan that they seek a wife for Arthur, 319; Leodogan at once offers Gonnore, 319; betrothal to Gonnore, 319, 320, 341, 357; discovers his name and estate to Leodogan, 320; Leodogan's joy, 320; Leodogan, Bors, Ban, and the barons do homage, 320, 341; leads the first ward, 321; [the fair adventure of the rings and Ydiers of Norway, 321;] Leodogan's court royal, 322; sits at the head of the dais, 322; Gonnore arms him, 322; Merlin laughs at this, 322; Merlin says she must make him a real knight, 322; he asks how, 322; she must let him kiss her, 322; kisses her, 323; she gives him a wondrous helm, 323; sets on Rion's host, 323, 324, 325; Merlin tells him to think of Gonnore's kiss and be brave, 325; attacks and unhorses Jonap, 325; is unhorsed, 325; Nascien, 326; [counselled by him, 327;] his prowess, 327; follows the dragon-banner, 327, 332, 334, 335; follows Merlin to rescue Nascien and Bors, 331, 332, 333; the marvel of the banner, 332; one against four, 332, 334; slits a Sarazin, 333; Saydoynes comes to the rescue, 334, 335; Merlin says he has forgotten the kiss, 335; he becomes furious at this, 335; slays Clarell, 336; upsets Rion, 336; giants in revenge bear him down, 336; Merlin comes to the rescue, 336; horsed by Ban, 336; throws down Rion's standard, 337; defeat and retreat of Rion, 337; dashes alone after Rion, 338; overtakes him, 338; Rion fourteen feet high, 339; overthrows Rion, 339; Arthur twenty and Rion forty-two years old, 339; grips

Calibourne, which gives out a great light, 339, 340; Rion slips and drops his club, 339; Rion draws his sword Marmadoyse, 340; Arthur covets it, for it flames like his, 340; Rion offers to let him go if he will give up his arms, 340; answers disdainfully, tells Rion to submit, 340; tells Rion he is Arthur, 341; hears Rion's name and estate, 341; Rion swears not to eat till he has killed him, 341; tells him it will be a long fast, 341; gives Rion a great wound, 341, 342; Rion rushes at him madly, 342; hits him a great stroke, but can't "attain" him, 342; Nascien, Adragains, and Hervy come, 342; Rion flies, 342; chases him, 342; six kings attack Arthur, and Rion escapes, 342, 343; king Kehenyns attacks him, 343; maims him, 343; the other five attack him, 343; slits Ffernicans and fells Heroas, 343; the rest fly, 343; chases them, 345; comes to Ban and Bors, 345; [slays a nephew of Madagot, 345; Madagot in revenge captures Galeshyn, 345; Galeshyn rescued by Gawein, 345;] three of Rion's kin slain, 346; Rion in a rage comes to Arthur, 346; his shield slit by Rion, 346; smites Rion on the arm, 346; Rion's sword sticks fast in the shield, 346; throws down the shield, 346; Rion seizes him by the shoulders, 346; throws down Calibourne lest Rion should get it, 346; and holds on to his horse's neck, 346; Ban comes and Rion lets go, 346, 347; Ban wounds Rion, 346; Rion flies, vowing future vengeance, 346, 347, 450; unwounded, 347; tells Ban he has won a jewel, 347; shows him Marmadoyse, 347; is proud of it, 347, 648, 351, 352; his fellows follow the Saxons, 348; goes to Toraise, 349; some of his knights lose him, 349; goes to Danablaise, 351, 450; finds Guyomar, Ydiers, and Synados fighting with Saxons, 351; dashes at the Saxons, 352; does well with Marmadoyse, 352; is pleased with the sword, 352, 353; the knights say he will be a noble knight when old enough, 351; meets some of his knights fighting Saxons, 352; finds Antor fighting on foot, 352; dashes down the Saxons, 352, 353; likes Marmadoyse better than Calibourne, 353; beats off the Saxons, 353, 615; meets Merlin and the dragon-banner, 353: goes to help Leodogan, 353; the banner sheds light, 353; does marvels on the Saxons, 355, 356; the bright dragon, 356; Merlin leads him to the three Saxon kings, 356, 357, 359; slays Ysdras, 357; the day breaks and they rest, 357; returns to Leodogan's tents, 357; collects the spoil, 357; distributes it as Merlin tells him, 357, 358; raises a company of twenty thousand bachelors, 358, 382; goes with Bors and Leodogan to Toraise, 358, 359, 360; Bors goes to Charroye, 358, 359; Leodogan asks him to marry Gonnore, 360; Merlin says they must wait a bit, and tells him to meet Bors at Bredigan, 360; leaves Leodogan, 360; Gonnore says "be quick back," and he says he wishes he was back already, 360; at Bredigan, 363; Ban comes, and tells him of Guyneban's magic, 363; hears of the fair lady, and says he would marry her but for Merlin, 363; waits at Bredigan for Bors, 363, 364, 365; Amaunt refuses allegiance, 365; Bors fights and slays him, 365—370; Amaunt's men split, some go away, others come with Bors to do homage, 368, 369; praises Bors, 370; digs for the treasure Merlin told of, 370; carries it to Logres, 370; finds twelve good swords in the Forest Denoyable, 370; his nephews hear he is coming, and come out to meet him, 370; waits for them, 370; Gawein is their spokesman, and says Arthur's renown has made them come to be knighted by him, 371, 372; commends Gawein, and promises to knight them all, and to make them lords in his court, 372; asks their names, 372, 373 [*i.e.* Gawein, Agravain, Gaheret, and Gaheryes, sons of king Lot; Galaishin, son of Ventres; the two Eweins, sons of Urien; Dodynell the sauage, the son (?sons) of Belinans; Alain and Acon, nephews of king (? Brangore) of Strangore; Kay Destranx and Kehedin; Ewein white hand; Ewein Esclins; Ewein Cyvell; Ewein de lyonell; Seigramor]; puts his arms round Gawein's neck and kisses him, 373; makes great joy of Seigramor, 373; makes Gawein constable of his household, 373, 374; Gawein thanks him, 374; all go to Logres, 374; his sister, Lot's wife, comes to meet him, 374; and Morgne le fee, 374; goes to the palace, 374; his welcome, 374; the "children" go to keep their vigil in the minster, 374; Ban and Bors wait on them, 374; before high mass next day takes Calibourne, 374; girds Gawein with it, 374; dubs him, 374, 449; gives him a treasure sword, 374; dubs Gaheret, Gaheries, and Agravain, Ewein and Ewein Avoutres, Galaishin, Kay Destranx, Kehedin, and gives them treasure swords, 374, 449; dubs Dodynell, 374, 449; dubs Seigramor, and puts on his spurs, 374, 375, 449;

dubs Ewein white hand, Ewein Esclyn, Ewein Cyuell, Ewein de Lyonell, Alain, Acon, and gives them treasure swords, 375, 449; all go to mass, and then to a banquet in the palace, 375; forbids quintain because of the Saxons, 375; his largess, 375; Merlin tells him to prepare to go to Benoyk, 375; tells Gawein to get the host of forty thousand men ready to move at midnight, 376; Doo is to guard Logres with twenty thousand men, 376; remains at Logres, 378; Merlin tells him to wait for him at Rochell, 378; Merlin goes to Blase, 378; goes from Logres to Dover, 379; arrives at The Rochell, 379; meets Merlin there, 379; Merlin tells him to start for Trebes, 381, 382, 400; leads the fourth division with the knights of the Round Table, 382, 383; Kay is to bear the dragon-banner, 383, 385, 386, 393; Blioberis is to lead the host, 383, 384; Merlin's departure for Briogue, 383, 384; the start for Trebes, 384, 385, 386, 399; the army waits for Merlin's signal, 386; Claudas on the alert, 386; the signal given, 386, 387; the battle begins, 387; attacks Randolf, 387; Claudas loses ten thousand men and is wroth, 387; routs the French under Randolf, 392; helped by the Knights of the Round Table, 392; attacks Pounce and Antoyne, 392, 393; succours Bohors, 392, 393; Kay's dragon-banner terrifies the enemy into confusion, 393; the meaning of the banner, 393; the dragon signifies his power, 393; the flame the slaughter of his time, 393; the tortuous tail the treason of Mordred and his band, 393; [passes over sea to fight the emperor of Rome, and to take the realm of Gannes and Benoyk, because of the false love of Launcelot, who had seduced Gonnore, Arthur's wife, 393;] the battle is fierce, 393; Gawein succours Ban, 394, 395; and unhorses Claudas, 394; Claudas discomfited, 397, 398; the prowess of the company of the Round Table, 398; the field covered with the dead, 398; the Trebes folk come on the wall to see what is amiss, 398; the two queens, Helayn and her sister, come on the tower, and see the dragon-banner, 398, 399; they wonder at it, 399; they send a messenger, 399; Bretell tells him that it is Arthur, and the two kings come to raise the siege of Trebes, 399; joy in Trebes, 399; the joy of the besieged queens at his rescuing them, 400; lays an ambush with three hundred chosen knights, 401, 402, 404; [after his death, and Ban's and Launcelot's guardianship of Logres, Bors slays Claudas, 401;] the battle begins again; he has twenty-eight thousand, and Claudas has thirty-five thousand men in the field, 402; the three hundred knights withdraw to repair their armour, 402; Claudas is getting on better, and drives Pharien and his men back a little, 402; but Leonce succours Pharien, 403; people of Logres are getting worsted, 404; Merlin scolds him for his idleness, 404, 407; and asks him what Gonnore will think of his cowardice, 404; ashamed, 40 ; hangs his shield on his back, and does wonders with his two-handed sword, 406, 408; slays more than two hundred, 406; attacks Frolle, Pounce, and Antony, 408; Frolle makes him bend over the saddle with his spear, 408; Gawein is furious at this, and unhorses Frolle, 408, 409; asks Gawein to stay by his side, 409; enemy confused 409; meets Bans and Bors, 409, 410; and Adragain, Nascien, and Hervy de Rivell, 410; it is past noon, 410; Kay finds Arthur's shield on the ground, fears he is dead, and searches for him, 410; Kay finds him, and is glad he is alive, 410; his shield round his neck again, 410; Merlin comes with the dragon, 410; Merlin's signal for onset, 410; Gawein upsets Claudas, 410; Claudas routed, and half his army destroyed, 411, 412, 438, 449, 450; the pursuit lasts till dark, 411, 412; many prisoners, 412; finds great spoil in the tent, 412; Pharien and Grascien keep watch the night, 412; Ban and Bors lead him into Trebes castle, 412; Ban's queen Helayn and her sister the queen of Bors welcome him, 412; well housed, 412; Helayn's marvellous dream, 413, 414, 415; is tired with the day's work, 415; sojourns there a month, 416, 417, 418; makes daily inroads into Claudas' land, 416; [succours Ban and Bors' heirs, who are reduced to straits by Claudas, 416, 699; troubles at home, 416; death of Ban and Bors, 416, 699;] Merlin tells him of Helayn's dream, 416; and partly explains it, 416, 417; Merlin's return, 419; Gawein ravages Claudas' lands, 419; Gawein returns with much plunder, 419; all go to Gannes, 419; stays there two days, 419; goes to the Rochell, and thence to the sea, 419, 420, 447; Merlin tells him to make haste to Carmelide with three thousand men, 420; asks Merlin to come now so as to be at his marriage, 420; Merlin says he will follow soon, 420; Merlin goes to Rome, 420; [defies Julyus

Cesar, who invades Logres, 420; battle with Julyus at Logres, and Julyus slain by Gawein, 420;] Merlin his master counsellor, 436, 437; [the fight at Trebes was with the Almaynes, Romaynes, and the Frenchmen of Gaule and la Deserte, 438;] arrives at Bloy Bretayne, 447; at Logres, 447; all ride to Carmelide, 447, 448, 468, 471; welcomed to Toraise by Leodogan, 448; Gonnore's joy at seeing him, 448; a day set for his marriage with Gonnore, 448, 449, 450, 561, 635; awaits Merlin's arrival, 449, 451; the barons begin to repent of their enmity, 450; Lot schemes to get back his own wife, and to capture Gonnore, 450, 472; a plot to substitute the step-daughter of Cleodalis for Gonnore, 451, 452, 463, 562; Merlin is counter-plotting, 452; the marriage procession, 453; married to Gonnore, 213, 451, 453, 482; Gonnore's extreme beauty, 453; wedded at the minster door, 453, 467, 562; the tournament at Toraise, 454, 461, 562; Leodogan hears of the plot to kidnap Gonnore, 465; Merlin and Leodogan lead him to Gonnore, 466; [his wife leaves him and is three years with Galehaut, 323, 466, 470; her love for Launcelot, 466; his adultery with Gonnore, step-daughter of Cleodalis, 466; the realm is accursed on account of Bertelak, 466, 470;] the false Gonnore is banished, 468, 469, 562; the trial and banishment of Bertelak, 469, 470, 562; Bertelak vows revenge, 470; prepares to return to Logres, 471; tells Gawein to go to Logres, and get all ready for the court royal, 471, 562; Gawein goes, 470; is left with only five hundred men, 471; Gawein anxious for Arthur's safety, 471; three days afterwards he starts with Gonnore and Ban and Bors for Bredigan, 472, 473; Merlin goes to Blase, but says he will be at the court royal, 472, 473, 562; Lot lays an ambush to capture him, 472, 473, 562; Lot has seven hundred men, 473; meets the enemy, 473; unhorses Lot, 474; his horse killed by Lot, 474; his horse falls over him, and pins him down, 474; Lot essays to cut his head off, 474; rescued by his knights, 474; Gawein and Kay come to help with eighty fellows, 475, 562; Kay is a true knight to him, 475, 476; [his son Lohoot (*see* Hoot) slayn in treason by Kay, 475; Percevale ly Galoys is wrongly accused of the deed, 475;] asks Gawein how he knew he was in trouble, 477, 478; Lot and his knight do homage to him, 478, 479, 480, 518, 557; returns to Logres with Lot, 479; great joy in Logres, 479; he and his wife give great gifts, 479, 480; the court royal assembles, 480, 481; establishes his court royal, 481; vows that he and his knights will redress all wrongs brought before them, 481, 484, 562; the knights of the Round Table vow to aid distressed maidens, 481, 484, 562; Gawein and his fellows vow to be the queen's knights, and do her pleasure, 482, 483, 484, 562; gives his queen charge of his treasure, 483; sends for Gawein, 485; tells Gawein to prevent strife and disorder in the lists, 485; the tournament, 485, 500, 562; Gawein won't promise, 485; he and Gonnore watch the jousting, 485; ordains a band of men to keep order, 486; foul play by the Round Table knights, 489, 490, 492; a messenger from Gawein, 491, 495, 498; stops the fight, 495; upbraids Gawein for his conduct, 498; cessation of the tourney, 499; reconciliation of the Queen's knights and Round Table knights, 499—502; the quest of the St. Grail, 502; in council, 504; Ban says don't let the knights tourney unless with strangers, 504, 562; Lot says, drive out the Saxons, 505; the queen commends Ban's advice, 505; Lot proposes a truce with the princes, and a confederation against the Saxons, 505 562; agrees to send Lot as an ambassador to the princes, 505, 519, 559; Lot agrees to go, and will take his four sons with him, 506, 510, 546, 559, 561; sorry to spare Gawein, 506; but the queen persuades him to let him go, 506; the embassy getting ready, 507; it meets with the Saxons, 510, 562; Elizer setting out for his court, 520, 521, 528, 539; the eldest son of Pellynor of the sauage fountain comes to take arms of him, 539; his castle of Roestok, 545; a truce made with the barons, 560, 562, 576; land is released from the excommunication, 560, 577; a day of meeting on Salisbury plain, 560; great preparations for attacking the Saxons, 560; glad of the truce, 561; Merlin is busy collecting forces, 565; Merlin comes, 566; is told by Merlin to hasten the preparations for attacking the Saxons, 566, 567, 574; hears that Nabulall de Camadayse and a young lord, son of Amaunt, and Cleodalis, are coming to the assembly, but Leodogan does not intend to come, 567; Merlin tells him the treason of the three Round Table knights, 567, 568; sends Ewein, Kay, and Gifflet to stop the three traitors, 568; their return, 573; pacifies the knights, 573; upbraids the three Round Table knights, 574; bad blood between the Queen's and the Round Table knights, 574; goes to Salisbury, 575, 578; the Saxons on their guard, 575, 576; talks with Merlin, 578, 579; Merlin's prophecy that the father and the son shall slay each other, and of the crowned and uncrowned lions, 579; visits each of the lords in their tents, 579, 580; consultation with the twelve princes, 581, 582; a start for Clarence agreed to, 582, 585; Elizer is to be knighted, 583, 584; offers Elizer arms and sword, 584; departure with the host to Clarence, 585; his banner borne by Merlin, 585; slays Magloras, 591; the rescue of Morgeins, 591, 592; Gonnore in Garlot, 592; start of the host for Clarence, 592; the battle before Garlot, 594; takes the Saxons in the rear, 596; rout of the Saxons, 597, 617; his losses, 598; advance to Clarence, 598; the barons do him homage, 599; the battle before Clarence, 599, 601, 602; utter rout of Saxons, 602; division of the spoil, and five days' revel in Clarence, 603; return to Gonnore at Camelot, 603; Merlin tells Ban and Bors to return home, 603; their stay at Agravadain's castle, 606; ordains a court royal at Camelot, 613, 614, 615, 617; Merlin enters disguised as a blind harper, 615; receives a letter of defiance from Rion, 617, 618; Rion wants his beard to add to the eleven he has flayed already, 619; laughs at Rion's request and defiance, 620, 621; the blind harper wants to be banner-bearer, 621, 622; refuses, and the harper vanishes, 622; knows it is Merlin, 622; a little naked child comes in, and asks to be banner-bearer, 622, 623; and tells him to prepare to fight Rion, 622; he thinks it is Merlin, and grants his request, 623; Merlin resumes his form, 623; preparations for battle, 623, 624; starts for Carmelide, 624; arrival at Toraise, 624; battle with Rion's host, 624, 630; Rion offers to settle the question by a personal encounter, 627; Arthur consents, 627, 628; Gawein wants to go instead, but he won't allow him, 628; the combat, 628; vanquishes Rion, who, however, will not yield, 630; cuts his head off, 630; his joyful entry into Toraise, 630; his wounds healed, 630; Rion's barons pay their homage, 630; leaves Toraise, 630; joins Gonnore at Cameloth, 630; returns to Logres, 630; Merlin talks of leaving him now that his work is done, 630; is much disturbed by Merlin's dark saying that a lion, son of a bear and leopard, shall aid him, 631; departure of Merlin, 631; Merlin's return, 635; the advent of the maiden and dwarf, 635, 679, 698; the maiden asks a boon, 635; he grants it, 635, 636; she wants him to knight her lover the dwarf, 636; Kay scorns her, 636; two squires appear with shield and horse for the new knight, 636, 637; dubs the dwarf knight, 637, 679, 682; the two strange lovers depart, 638; Gonnore and the knights ridicule the dwarf, but Merlin tells them he is of royal blood, 638; an embassy from Luce, emperor of Rome, 639; ordering him to do homage to Luce, 640, 644; he answers that he will take Rome, not Rome him, and claims Rome by right of his ancestors, 642, 643; invasion preparing, 643; his princes assemble, 644; his host take ship to Gannes, 644; has a vision of a bear and a dragon, which Merlin interprets, 644, 645; hears of a great dragon which is the terror of the country, 645; goes with Kay and Bedyuer to attack the giant, 645, 649; the sorrow of the woman whom the giant has enthralled, 646; attacks the giant single-handed, 647; slays the giant with his sword Marmadoise, 648, 668, 679; returns victorious with the giant's head, 649, 650; advance to Burgoyne, 650; joined by Ban and Bors, 650; sends defiance to Luce, 650, 651, 653; the adventures of his embassy, 650, 653; sends succour to his ambassadors, 653, 657, 669; erects a castle, 650, 653, 676; return of Gawein from the embassy with prisoners, 655; an attempt at rescue of the Roman prisoners, 656; return of the succourers, 657; goes to Oston, 658; prepares for battle with Luce, 658; his dragon-banner is set up, 658; appoints leaders of his divisions, 659; the battle, 660, 664; the great gonfanon of the Gold Eagle of Luce, 662; Luce is slain by Gawein, 663, 699; the battle is critical, 663; dashes into the fight and slays Gestoire and Polibetes, 663; rout of the Romans, 664, 676, 679; sends the body of Luce on a bier to Rome as his trewage, and asks Merlin what to do next, 664; Merlin says, go on your way, as some people want your help, 664; the devil cat at Lak de losane, 664; goes against the cat, 666; fights with the devil cat, and slays it, 667, 676, 679; fight between some of his and Claudas' knights, 669, 670; kinsmen of Fflualis come to serve him; his battle with Mordred, 676; goes to the castle on the Aube and to Benoyk, 676; sends Gawein to destroy the castle of the Marche, 677, 678; Gawein returns successful, 678; hears that Leodogan is dead, 678; goes to Logres and comforts Gonnore, 678; Merlin's farewell, 678, 681; sends his knights in search of Merlin, 682, 694, 697; the further adventures of the maiden and dwarf, 684; at Cardoell, 685, 694; the maiden and dwarf bring a captured knight, 685, 687, 690; the adventures, in quest of Merlin, of Seigramor, 687; Ewein, 689; Gawein, 692; Gawein finds Merlin's prison, 693; Gawein's coming back, 695, 697; the dwarf returns in his own shape as Evadeam, 697, 698; the story becomes silent about king Arthur, 698.

ARUNDELL. *See* Arondell.

ATALAS LAMNACHOUR, 348.

AUADAIN, Evadeam; turned dwarf by sorcery of his love the Feire Beaune, 635—638, 679, 682—691, 697, 698; knighted by Arthur, 637, 638, 682; son to king Brangore, 638, 688.

AUBE, river in Burgoyne, a castle there, 650, 676.

AUENABLE. *See* Grisandoll.

AUNGIER, AUNGIS. *See* Angier.

AUNGIS, 243.

AURELIUS AMBROSE, 42.

AYGLYNS DES VAUX, Ayglin des Vaux, Aglins des Vaus, brother to Kehedins le petit, 480; kin to Meranges de Porlesgues, 518; nephew to Belynans, 577.

BAHARANS, king, 248.

BALAN, a giant slain by Ulfin, 217.

BALFINNE, Balfinnes, 345; kin to Rion, 346.

BAN OF BENOYK (brother of Bors, 472, etc.); parentage, 122; his enemy, 122, 124; dispute with Claudas, 124; lands ravaged, 124, 382; his castle holds out, 124; goes against Claudas, 124, 125; puts him to flight, 125; his wife Elein, 125, 144, 380, 381, 603; goes to Arthur, 125; Arthur's messengers, 128; they tell him of Merlin and of Arthur, 129; fears to leave because of Claudas, is assured by Merlin of safety, 130; agrees to go, and entertains the messengers, 130; entrusts his lands to Leonces and Pharien, 130, 131; goes by ship, 131; his magnificent reception by Arthur, 132; the revels, 133, 138; the tourney, 133, 137; his brother Guynebande, 133, 139; praises Kay, 136; conference in the chamber, 138; asks about Merlin, 138; Merlin comes and questions him, 139; confronts him with his brother, 139; does homage to Arthur as his lord, 140, 173; in council with Arthur, 141, 557; withstands Merlin's advice at first, but agrees to it, 142, 146; collects reinforcements for Arthur, 142, 143; Merlin his messenger, 142, 143; his godson Bawdewyn, 144; his son Launcelot, 147; Merlin comes, 149; Merlin leads him to Arthur, 150, 173; arranges his forces, 151, 152; leads the fourth division and is the "best knight in the host," 151; Aliaume bears his banner, 152; takes the enemy in the rear, 154; rescues Arthur, 160; assails Ydiers, 161; his banner borne by Anthony his steward, 163; routs his foes, 163, 164; attacked by Loot, 164; upsets Roy de Cent Chevaliers, 164; attacked by Brangore, 164; upsets Brangore, 164; Arthur comes to the rescue, 164; on foot, 164; horsed by Arthur, 165; with Arthur at Bredegan, 167; the great churl, 168; goes to Tarsaide, 202; to Tamelide, 171, 175, 303, 307; worsts the Saxons, 185; his age, 203; incog. at Tamelide, 203, 204; the battle with the Saxons, 206, 207, 212; he gives great strokes with Carchense, 210; slays Clarion with it, 210, 211; Merlin's counsel, 216; puts Sonygreux to flight, 216; his prowess, 220; wants to fight Sorfarin, 221; follows Arthur, 221; slays Sortebran, 222; assailed by Malore and Freelent, 222, 223; rescued by Arthur, 223; cuts off Randoul's arm, 223; served by Gonnore, 225; asks Leodogan why Gonnore is not married, 228; his answer, 228; Merlin goes to Logres, 258; Merlin's fears for him, 303; his cousin Leonces, 305; half Brioke forest his, 308; his vassal Dionas, 308; gives Dionas half Brioke forest, 308; Merlin comes, 312, 314; Merlin's counsel, 314—316; hears of Claudas, 314, 315; Merlin's dark saying, 315; goes to Leodogan, 317, 318, 382; Arthur's betrothal, 319, 320; discovers his name, 320; does homage to Arthur, 320; in the first ward, 321; Leodogan's court royal, 322; sits at the head of the dais, 322; praises Gonnore's love for Arthur, 322; follows the dragon-banner, 327; goes to the rescue of Nascien and Bors, 331, 332; does marvels, 332, 333; slays Minap, 333; help comes, 335; horses Arthur, 336; throws down Rion's standard, 337; pursues Glorienx, Mynados, and Colufer, 338, 343; they are reinforced, 343; slays three of their fellows, 343; fells Pignoras, 344; kills Sinagrex, 344; Bors comes, 344; in a strait, 344; Rion comes, 344; cuts Rion's shield in two with Corchense, 344, 345; Bors in danger, 345; goes to the rescue, 345; slays Magoras and another, 345; goes to help Arthur, whom Rion has seized, 346; cuts Rion with Corchense, 346; Rion flies, 346, 347; Arthur shows him Rion's magic sword, 347; Arthur's prowess, 352; aids Leodogan, 355, 356; slays Acolas, 357; sends to Bors at Charroye, 360; sets out with Guynebans through the forest perilouse, 360, 361; a marvellous adventure in the forest, 361; a window full of ladies and knights, 361; the beautiful lady, 361; a knight of fifty winters, 361; Guynebans loves the lady, 361; Guynebans' enchantments, 362, 363; the chess-board, 362, 363; goes to Bredigan, 363, 364; Bors comes, 369; praises his prowess, 370; the nephews of Arthur and Segramor come out to meet Arthur, 370, 371; commends Gawein, 372; the names of the knights, 372, 373; with Arthur at Logres, 374; attends on the "children," 374; puts on Gawein's left spur when knighted, 374; of higher lineage than Arthur, 377; remains at Logres, 378; goes with Bors and Arthur to Dover and to the Rochell, 379; meets Merlin, 379; his wife besieged in Trebes, 380, 381; the expedition to Trebes, 381, 382, 399, 400; to lead the second division of ten thousand men, 382, 383; the battle begins, 387; dashes at the host of Claudas, 387—389; fight with Claudas, 389, 393; kills his horse, 389; Claudas fights on his knees, 389; hard bestead, 389, 390; only nineteen against one hundred, 394; Gawein comes to help him, 394; Gawein upsets Claudas and succours Ban, 394; wonders at the young Gawein's prowess, 394, 395; his thanks and gratitude, 394, 395; swears friendship with Gawein, and goes with him to attack Claudas again, 395; his men are only twenty against one hundred, 395; dashes after Claudas, 396; diverted from chasing Claudas by the distress of Gawein's brethren, 396; goes to help them, 396; applauds Galaishin, 397; discomfiture of Claudas, 397, 398; busy in the fight, 398; sees his own army arrive, 400; lays an ambush, 401; battle renewed, 401; the enemy are getting the best of the fight, 404; Merlin taunts him with idleness, 404, 405; sees Merlin ride into the fight with the dragon-banner, 405, 406; praises his valour, 405; his godson Banyns, 406, 699; his prowess, 407, 409; meets Arthur, 409, 410; Kay comes, 410; rout of Claudas' army, 411; the pursuit, 411; leads Arthur into Trebes castle, 412; joy of his queen Helayn at seeing him again, 412; goes to bed with his wife, 413; his wife conceives a child, 413; who shall be the noblest knight of the world, 438; Helayn's marvellous dream, 413—417; she wakes up in terror, and tells him the dream, 415; he comforts her, and they go to mass and pray God that nought but good may come of the dream, 415; he continues the prayer daily, 415; it is answered, and a voice says he shall have what he asks, and that when he wants to die he shall, 415; the voice says he shall sin in adultery before he dies, 415; thunder follows the answer, 415; is shriven and hoseled every eight days afterwards, 415; is a good Christian, 415, 416; Arthur wastes Claudas' lands, 416; so that Claudas leaves Ban alone for a bit, 416; Claudas, aided by Pounce, Antony, and king of Gawle, ravages his lands, 416; dies of starvation, 416; his queen Helayn takes refuge in a nunnery, 416; but when Arthur has time he comes and restores the lands to his heir, 416; asks Merlin what Helayn's dream means, 416; Merlin partly explains it, 416, 417; departure of Merlin, 416, 417; the enemy vow revenge for the defeat of Trebes, 419; goes to Gannes, the Rochell, and to sea, 419, 420; starts for Carmelide, 420, 447, 448; in Toraise, 448, 449; he and Bors lead Gonnore in the marriage procession, 453; marriage of Arthur and Gonnore, 453; the tournament at Toraise, 455, 461; trial and banishment of Bertelak, 469, 470; sets out with Arthur and Bors for Bredigan, 472; battle with Loot, 473, 474; rescues Arthur, 474; Gawein also comes, 475; Lot does homage to Arthur, 478, 479; the court royal at Logres, 480, 481; watches the tournament at Logres, 485; advises Arthur to have a band of men to keep order, 486, 495; pacifies Gawein, 498; in council with Arthur, 504; advises Arthur to let his knights tourney with strangers, not amongst themselves, 504, 562; Arthur and Gonnore agree to this, 504; proposes that Lot should go and make a truce with the princes, 505; so that all together may drive off the Saxons, 505; glad of the truce with the barons, 561; his men fetched to Salisbury by Merlin, 563; Merlin comes, 566, 567; the treason of three Round Table knights, 573, 574; goes to Salisbury, 575; with

Arthur at Salisbury, 579, 581; a start for Clarence agreed to, 582; the story of Elizer, 583, 584; the rescue of Morgeins, the wife of Ventres, 587—592; slays Pyncenars, 590; leads the second ward at the battle of Garlot, 594, 595; derided by Merlin, 595; slays Margouns, 595; unhorsed by Sorbares, 595; rescued by Pharien, 595; in battle before Clarence, 601, 602; goes to Camelot 603; Merlin tells him to return home, 603; starts, 604; at Agravadain's castle, 604—607, 612, 622, 671; Merlin enchants him, and makes him fall in love with Agravadain's daughter, and he lies with her, 608, 612, 672; Merlin says the son of the amour will be celebrated, 609, 672; departs from the castle, and reaches home, 612; at Arthur's court royal, 622; recognises Merlin disguised, 622; in the battle with Rion's host, 625; Luce contemplates an invasion of Britain, 643; Arthur's expedition to Rome, 644; joins it, 650; in the fourth division, 659; goes against the devil cat, 666; his illegitimate son Estor is born, 674; Arthur's departure, 678; never sees him again, 678; his death, 678; his son Gallead Lancelot born, 698; attacked by the Romans and La Desert men, 699; his city Benoyk captured, 699; only Trebes left, 669; betrayed by his seneschal of Trebes, 699.

BANDEMAGU, Bandemagn, Bawdemagn, Badmagn, 172, 240, 566; nephew to Urien, 171, 237, 239, 241, 441, 443, 445; his son Meliagans, q.v.; wives, 238.

BANYNS, Banyn, Bannins, son of Grascien, 381, 406, 564; godson to Ban, 406, 699; kin to Leonce, 381.

BARAHANS, a Saxon, 248.

BARBARIE, 676.

BARRE, 124.

BASYNE, wife of Ventres, q.v.; daughter of Hoel, 177; sister of Arthur, 177; her son Galashyn, 177.

BAWDEWYN, grandson of Ban, 124; son of Grassien, 144.

BEAUNE THE FEIRE, 635—638, 679, 682—685, 687, 689, 690, 691, 698; daughter of king Clamedien, 686; her dwarf love, Evadeam, Auadain, 688, 697.

BEDIERS, 657.

BEDYUER, the Constable, 661; a knight of Arthur, 645; the adventure of the great giant, 645; the giant slain by Arthur, 649; cuts the giant's head off, 649, 650; has charge of some captured knights, 655, 656; attacked by a Roman ambush, 656; in the great battle between Arthur and the Romans, 661; upset, but rescued by Kay, 661; his nephew Segras, 661; rescued by Segras, 662; retires badly wounded, 662.

BELCYS LI LOYS, Blecys the Blake, Belcys the Danoys kynge, 321, 349, 659.

BELINANS, Belynans, Belynant, Belynaunt, 241, 249, 250, 373, 447, 450, 451, 565, 577, 580, 581, 582, 585, 601, 644, 659, 661, lord of Strangore, 247, 601; lord of South Wales, 247, 594; his wife Esclence, 247; his son Dodynell, 247, 449, 576; his brother Tradilyuaunt, 247, 439, 440, 557, 558, 576; his brother Agrauandain, 561; his father-in-law Natan, 247; his brother-in-law Ventres, 247.

BELLANDE in Northumberland, the chief city of king Clarion, 184.

BELYAS, Duke of Loseres, 578, 601.

BELYAS the amerouse of maydens castell, one of the forty-two fellows, 135, 151, 159, 212.

BELYNS, Belyn, early king of Bretaigne, 641, 642.

BEN-OYC, Benoy(c), Benoyk, Beynoyk, a city in Barre, now called Bourges, 26; Burges, 124; 25, 124, 128, 130, 144, 146, 380, 400, 419, 612, 670, 676, 677; steward, *see* Antoynes; seneschal, *see* Antyaume.

BENOYK, Beynok, realm, *see above for its chief city*; 133, 134, 135, 303, 304, 305, 316, 360, 375, 379, 393, 402, 415, 416, 438, 557, 563, 587, 590, 623, 634, 655, 656. *See* Ban of Benoyk.

BERENNAIN, Brinans (?), king, 173, 616.

BERNAGE, king of Saxon, 196.

BERTELAK, a traitour, Bertelak, Bertelak the rede, Bertelak the reade, Bertelak le Rous, Bertelais le Rous, Bertelays, Bertelanx the traitour, 322, 467, 469, 562; amour with the false Gonnore, 466, 468, 470.

BERTONE, a gate of the city of Logres, 509.

BETINGES, 595, 596.

BILAS, a Saxon, 278.

BISSHOP of Logres, 110.

BLACK CROSS, 180.

BLAGNE, 186.

BLAIRES, a vauasour, 204; his wife Leonell, q.v.

BLAKESTON, lord of, 441.

BLASE, hermit, counsels Merlin's mother and aunt, 5; tells Merlin's mother to come to him whenever she is in trouble, 6; she comes to him, 7; and tells him of her sister's fall, 8; counsels her, 8; she is steadfast in his doctrine, 9; the other sister slanders him, 9; the devil's plot, 9; she comes to tell him how she has been beguiled, 10; does not at first believe her innocence, 11; gives her a penance and absolution, 11, 12; she is great with child, and comes to him, 12, 13; promises to aid her when accused, 13; questioned by the judges, 13; tells the judge to wait till the child is born before burning her, 13; and to put her in a strong tower, 13; they act on his advice, 14; the birth of Merlin, 14, 16; the trial, 16, 23, 121; Merlin devises the book for him to write, 23; Merlin tells him he will go where the holy Grail is, 23; messengers from Vortiger, 30, 31, 32; is told by Merlin to follow him to Northumberland, 32, 33; and that he shall be supplied with all the matter for the book there, 32; the book shall be called the Boke of the St. Grail, 32; goes to Northumberland, 33; Merlin comes with news for the book, 41, 42, 46, 47, 53, 56, 81, 88, 97, 143, 166, 259, 260, 261, 303, 305, 327, 378, 635; Merlin's book of prophecies, 53, 54; Merlin tells him of the Round Table, 61, 62; Merlin's love for him, 123; Merlin's dark sayings, 303, 304, 305; another visit from Merlin, 438, 450, 451; more news for his book, 438, 451, 472, 562, 563, 679; another visit from Merlin, 472; asks Merlin whether the Saxons will be driven out, and about the dark prophecy of his, 563; Merlin's answer, 563; writes letters which Merlin sticks up in the highways, 563, 564; Merlin's departure, 564; Merlin again comes, 612, 635, 679; Merlin's farewell, 679, 688.

BLEORIS, Blaaris, Bloaris, knight, 162, 212, 487; godson of Bors, 162; son of Bors, 212.

BLIOBERIS, Blioberes, Bliobleris, Blyoberis, one of the forty-two fellows, 136, 137, 151, 212, 349, 352, 383, 384, 385, 459, 480.

BLIOS, lord of Cloadas castle, 321.

BLIOS, Blioc de Cassell, Blios del Cassett, Blyos de la Casse, 682, one of the forty-two fellows, 135, 136, 212.

BLOY BRETAIGNE. *See* Bretayne.

BLOY MOUNTAYNE, 307.

BLOYS of PLAISSHIE, 442.

BOCLUS, king of Mede, 661, 662.

BOHORT, son of Bors, 698; brother of Lyonel, 698.

BOORS of BENOYK, 125. *See* Ban.

BORELL, 655. *See* Bretel.

BORS of GANNES, Bohort of Gannes, 698; brother of Ban, 472, etc.; parentage, 122; his enemy, 122, 124; ravages Claudas' land and subdues Claudas, 125; marries Elein's sister, 125, 144, 380, 603; messengers from Arthur, 125; they are attacked, 126; fears to go to Arthur because of Claudas, 130; is reassured by Merlin, and goes by ship, 130; grand reception, 132; revels, 133, 138; the tourney, 133, 137; his brother Guynebande, 133, 139; praises Kay, 136; the conference in the chamber, 138; does homage to Arthur as liege lord, 140, 173; in council with Arthur, 141, 146, 557; his castle Mouloir, 144; Merlin comes, 149; Merlin leads him to Arthur, 150, 173; his forces set in battle order, 151, 152; his ensign borne by Pharien, 151; leads the third division, 151; takes the enemy in the rear, 154; rescues Arthur, 160; assails Ydiers, 161; "the grete baner," 161; dashes into the fight, and attacks Carados, 162; his godson Blaaris bears his banner, 162, 212; prowess, 163; with Arthur at Bredigan, 167, 168; goes to Tarsaide, 202; to Tamelide, 171, 175, 303, 307; worsts the Saxons, 185; his age, 203; the battle with the Saxons, 206, 207, 212; his prowess, 210; smites Sarmedon, 211; upsets Seleuaunt, 217; his prowess, 220; follows Arthur, 221; slays Clariel, 222; served by Gonnore, 225; Merlin goes to Logres, 258; Merlin's fears for him, 303; his cousin Leonces, 305; his vassal Dionas, 308; gives him a town, 308; Merlin comes, 312, 314; Merlin's counsel, 314—316; hears of Claudas, 315; Merlin's dark saying, 315; goes to Leodogan, 317, 318; Arthur's betrothal, 319; name discovered, 320; does homage to Arthur, 320; in the first ward, 321; Leodogan's court royal, 322; sits at the head of the dais, 322; praises Gonnore, 322; follows the banner in the fight, 327; chases king Saron, 328; gets a great stroke, 328; is surrounded, 328; attacked by Rion, 328; unhorses Saron, 328; despairs of his life, 329; hits Rion, 329; rescues Hervy the Rivell, 329; upsets Aroans, 329; upset by Rion, 330; rescued by Hervy, 330; and by Nascien, 331; Ban and others come, 332, 333; fighting on foot, 330, 333; help comes, 335; overthrows Rion's standard, 337; meets Ban, 344; his great deeds, 344; he and his brother hard bestead, 344; Rion comes against them, 344; overthrown by Rion, 344, 345; surrounded by Saxons, 345; can't rise, his horse has fallen upon him, 345; wounded, 345; rescued, 345; rises again, 345; slays Maltailliet, 345; slits Rion's helm, 345, 346; Rion cleaves his shield, 346; Uter Pendragon gives him Carroie castle, 350; gives it to Guynebant his brother, 350;

Amaunt tries to recover it, 350, 351; Arthur does well with Marmadoyse, 352; aids Leodogan, 355, 356; slays Dodrilas, 357; goes with Arthur to Toraise, 358; quits them, and goes to Charroye castle, 358—360, 363; a message from Ban, 360; Ban sets out with Guynebans, 360; the forest perilouse, 360; Arthur waiting, 363—365; the barons welcome him, 363, 364; departs from Bredigan, 364; escorted by Ffragien part of the way, 364; Amaunt hears of his journey, 364; Amaunt lays wait for him, 364; Amaunt wants Carroie castle given up to him, 364; Bors says he got it fairly, and will keep it, 364, 365; offers to give it up if Amaunt does homage to Arthur, 365; a single combat agreed upon between them, 365; if he loses, Amaunt to have Corroie; if he wins, Amaunt to homage Arthur, 365; he is bigger of bones than Amaunt, 365; his knight would dissuade him, 366; but he persists, 366; sends to tell Amaunt that if Amaunt loses, his men may go free, 366, 367; the combat, 367, 370; his son Lyonell, 367; his courtesy, 367; offers Amaunt his life if he will acknowledge Arthur, 368; cleaves him down to the shoulders, 368, 565, 567; is sorry for his death, 368; two hundred of Amaunt's men go away, 368; but three hundred say they will acknowledge Arthur, 368, 369; founds a cloister there, with a clerk to sing for Amaunt's soul, 369; reaches Bredigan, and is welcome, 369; Arthur's nephews and Seigramore come, 370, 371; commends Gawein, 372; the names of the company, 372, 373; with Arthur at Logres, 374; attends on the "children," 374; puts on Seigramor's left spur, 374, 375; gives Dodynell Amaunt's sword, because he is somewhat of his kin, 375; of higher lineage than Arthur, 377; remains at Logres, 378; goes with Ban and Arthur to Dover and then on to the Rochell, 379; meets Merlin, 379; his wife is besieged in Trebes by Claudas, 380, 381; the expedition to Trebes, 381, 382, 385, 399, 400; to lead the third company, 382, 385, 386; the battle begins, 387; attacks Pounce and Antony, 387, 390; combat with Pounce, 390; upsets him, 390; Pounce rescued by his men, 390; Pounce's wrath, 390, 391; Pounce again attacks him, 391; again overthrows and defouls him, 391; Romans rescue Pounce, 391, 392; Bohors' men are getting the worst of it, 392, 393; but fight on until past midday, 392; Arthur and the knights of the Round Table come to the rescue, 392, 393; a hard fight of it, 393; Kay comes with the banner, 393; discomfiture of Claudas, 397, 398; busy in the fight, 398; the joy of the besieged queens, 400; battle renewed, 401; [slays Claudas in revenge, 401; who lay in wait to slay him, and Lyonell, 401; he is preserved by Nimiane, 401;] Pharien fights with Claudas, 402, 403; he is repulsed, 403; but Pharien is succoured by Leonce, 403; the enemy is getting the best of it, 404; Merlin comes and taunts him with idleness, 404, 405; Merlin rides into the fight with the banner, 405, 406; his prowess, 407, 409; meets Arthur, 409, 410; Kay comes, 410; rout of Claudas, 411; intercepts the fugitives, 411; half Claudas' army lost, 411; leads Arthur and Gawein into Trebes castle, 412; joy of his queen at seeing him again, 412; goes to bed with his wife, 413; Helayn's dream, 413—415; Ban's dream, 415; is confessed and hoseled every eight days, 415; of holy life, 416; Claudas, aided by Pounce, Antony, and king of Gawle again ravages the land, 416; his queen becomes a nun, 416; dies of starvation, 416; his heir succoured at last by Arthur, 416; Merlin explains Helayn's dream, 416, 417; at Gannes, 419; welcomes Arthur, 419; goes to the Rochell, and thence to sea, 419, 420; starts for Carmelide, 420, 447, 448; in Toraise, 448, 449; he and Ban lead Gonnore in the marriage procession, 453; marriage of Arthur and Gonnore, 453; the tournament at Toraise, 455, 461; praises Gawein, and says he'd like to be like him, 456; trial and banishment of Bertelak, 469, 470; sets out with Arthur and Ban for Bredigan, 472; battle with Loot, 473, 474; rescues Arthur, 474; Lot does homage to Arthur, 478, 479; at the court royal at Logres, 480, 481; watches the tournament of Logres, 485, 495; pacifies Gawein, 498; in council with Arthur, 504, 506; Lot is to go to propose a truce to the barons, 506; glad of the truce, 561; his men brought to Salisbury by Merlin, 563; Merlin arrives at Logres, 566, 567; the treason of three Round Table knights, 573, 574; goes to Salisbury, 575, 579, 581; a start for Clarence agreed to, 582; the story of Elizer, 583, 584; the rescue of Morgeins, Ventres' wife, 587—590; leads the second ward at the battle of Garlot, 594; his valour, 595; in battle at

Clarence, 601, 602; goes to Camelot, 603; Merlin tells him to go home, 603; starts, 604; at Agravadain's castle, 604, 612, 671; departs, 612; reaches home, 612; in the battle with Rion's host, 625; unhorsed, 625; horsed by Merlin, 625; Luce prepares to invade England, 643; Arthur's expedition to Rome, 644; joins Arthur's host, 650; in the third division, 659; Arthur's farewell visit, 678; his death, 678, 699; his children Lyonel and Bohort, 698; falls sick, 699; and can't help his brother Ban, who is in trouble, 699; worried by Claudas, 699.

BOURELL, Earl, 657.

BOURGES, Burges, a city in Barre, anciently known as Benoyc, which see, 26, 124.

BOYDAS, Moydas, Mydonas, king, a Saxon, 549—552.

BRANCORS. *See* Brangoires.

BRANDALIS, Braundalis, Saxon king [called Maundalis, 549]—552.

BRANDELIS, 366; lord of Gingabresell, 366; nephew of Amaunt, 366.

BRANDINS de la dolerouse garde, 441, 445.

BRANDONS, Brandon, Brandouns, 236, 587, 588; king of a part of Saxonye, 592; nephew of Hardogabrant, 592; slain by Gawein, 592.

BRANGORE, Brangoires, king, 152, etc.; unhorsed in the battle at Bredigan, 156, 159, 161; the defeat, 165; sends for the other kings, 172, 173, 174; of South Wales, 185; goes from Sorhant to Strangore, 185, 186, 187, 247; his wife the daughter of the emperor Adrian of Constantinople, 186, 577; the Saxons waste his land, 247; he arms, 247; the battle, 247—250; Carados comes to aid him, 249; and Belynans, 249; the Saxons escape, 250; returns to East Strangore, 250, 251; his cousins, 292; king of Strangore, 373; his nephews, 373; leads the fifth ward in the expedition to Clarence against Saisnes, 438, 439; a night attack, 439—442, 444; discomfited, 444; but makes another attack, 444, 445; is totally beaten, 446, 447, 449; goes home, 447, 449; hears Arthur is at Logres, 449, 450; wishes for peace with Arthur, 450, 451; a conference with Arthur's envoy, 557, 558, 559; a truce, 560; leads his men to Salisbury, 561, 565, 575; at Salisbury, 577, 585; wants to see Seigramor, 577; in the battle of Garlot, 593, 594, 595; his dwarf son Auadain, 688; son-in-law to Adrian, 186.

BRANGUE, Brangu of Saxoyne, Brangore of Saxon, Brangare, a Saxon king, 239, 252—255, 510; his nephew (or son?) Orienx, q.v.; his son Arans, 291; slain, 600.

BRAUREMES, a Saxon king, and an ally of Rion, 342.

BREDIGAN, a castle in the marche of Breteyne the grete, and in the marche of Carmelide, 146, 148, 152, 167, 171, 202, 277—280, 282, 286, 288, 289, 316, 360, 363, 364, 365, 369, 472.

BREDIGAN, the marche of, 350.

BREDIGAN FOREST, 142, 144, 148, 149, 150, 153.

BREDIGAN MEADOWS, 142, 145, 167.

BREIGHAN, Bregnehan, Brekehan, Brekehen, a forest on the river Sevarne, 272—275, 277, 313.

BRENNE, brother of Belyns, 641.

BRETAYNE, Bretaige, Bretaigne, Bretayne the grete, Breteigne, Bretein, Breteyne la Bloy, Breting, Bloy Bretaigne, Bloy Breteyne, Gret Bretein, Grete Bretaigne, Grete Bretayne, Grete Breteigne, Grete Breteyne, Grete Bretigne, 23, 32, 49, 121, 124, 129, 130, 140, 146, 147, 167, 186, 191, 227, 229, 230, 259, 304, 315, 316, 326, 341, 347, 350, 399, 400, 415, 420, 433, 436, 438, 447, 455, 490, 502, 503, 507, 588, 598, 609, 610, 614, 615, 625, 631, 640, 641, 642.

BRETEL, Bretell, Bertel, a knight of Hoel, duke of Tintagil, 67, 399; sent by Hoel to Ygerne with a cup, 67; in Hoel's confidence, 76; Merlin takes his form, 76, 77; sent by the barons to Arthur, 110; in council with Arthur, 114; Arthur's battle with the seven kings, 118, 119; Ydiers attacks him, 119; sent by Arthur for Ban and Bors, 124; well acquainted with Ban and Bors, 124; goes by sea to Benoyk, 124; at Trebes, 125; starts for Benoyk to meet Ban and Bors, 126; attacked by Claudas' men, 126, 127, 128, 131; slays one, and arrives at Benoyk, 128; sees the two kings, 131; all return to Logres, 131; serves at the banquet at Logres, 133; finds Merlin has told Arthur all his adventures, 138; in council with Arthur, 141; purveyor, 143; leads the second division at the battle of Bredigan, 151; aids Kay, 155; fights Clarion, 155; both unhorsed, 156; the battle severe, 157; Antor horses him, 158; his prowess, 158, 159; recognises Merlin disguised, 169; aids Leodogan, 209, 212; goes to the rescue of Cleodalis, 212; the fight with the giants, 216; smites Cordaunt, 217; felled to the earth, 220; tries to dissuade Bors from fighting Amaunt, 366; in the battle before Trebes, 399; is asked by a messenger from Trebes what the army

is, 399; tells him it has come to raise the siege and release the two queens, 399; a plot to kidnap Arthur's wife Gonnore, 452; his counterplot, 452, 463; the tournament, 455; rescues Gonnore from the plotters, 463, 465, 562; tells Cleodalis of the plot, 467; the false Gonnore banished, 468, 469, 562; trial and banishment of Bertelak, 469, 470; takes convoy of prisoners to Benoyk, 656; an ambush laid for him, 656, 657.
BRETOUNS, 147, 590, 641, 642, 652—655, 657, 660, 661, 663, 664, 670.
BRIADAS, 121; his son Aguysas, q.v.
BRIALEN, near Tintagell, 175.
BRIAN OF ARONDELL, 287.
BRIOK, Briogne, Brioke, Bryoke, a forest, 307, 308, 309, 314, 381, 383, 386, 400.
BRIOLORS, a Saxon, 244.
BROCHELONDE, Broceliande, Brocheliande, a forest, 178, 179, 189, 190, 235, 681, 692, 698.
BROLENDE, a castle near the river Sourne, 243.
BRULENT, a city, 237.
BRUNS saunz pitee, Bruyn saunz pitee, Bruyns saunz pitee, 273, 441, 445; his castle of the depe slade in Northumbirlonde, 256.
BRUTUS flies from Troy to Bretaigne, 146; afterwards called Bretaigne after him, and founds Newe Troye, 147.
BURGOYNE, 307, 643, 650.
BURGOYNE, duke of, 307, 308; his niece marries Dionas, 307, 308.

CADOR, one of Arthur's barons, 640, 655, 656.
CALCEDOYNE, duke of, 340.
CALCHOUS, cousin to Aguysans, the Roy de Cent Chivaliers, 173.
CALIBOURNE, Escaliboure, Arthur's miraculous sword, which he afterwards gives to Gawein, 98—107, 112, 118, 120, 129, 178, 210, 220, 339—343, 353, 374, 460, 476, 492, 493, 511, 514, 530, 533, 534, 536, 543, 549, 551, 552, 592, 663.
CALIDUS of Rome, a Roman prince, 656.
CAMADAYSE, 567.
CAMBENYK, Cambanyk, Cambenek, a city of duke Escam, 145, 157, 159, 160, 161, 253, 255, 271, 274, 276, 277, 313, 439, 445, 546, 547, 548, 555, 557, 576, 588, 594, 601, 659; a marche, 188; plains, 509, 550; castelein, *see* Triamores.
CAMELOT, Cameloth, Kamelot, Arthur's town, 259, 260, 261, 266—270, 603, 604, 612, 613, 617, 618, 619, 623, 630.
CAMPERCORENTIN, Campercorentyn, a castle, 171, 287.
CANADE, one of the forty-two fellows, 212.
CANAGUS, Arthur's nephew, 257.
CANDELMESSE, 103, 143, 145, 150.
CANLENT, king, 210.
CARADOS, of the perilouse tour, 442; of the dolerouse toure, 250; de la dolerouse toure, 446.
CARADOS BRENBRAS, 108, 119, 438—441, 449, 450, 451, 565, 575.
CARADOS of STRANGORE, his nephews Alain and Acon, 373, 375; king of Strangore, 146, 577; the battle at Bredigan, 160, 161, 165; rides against Bors, 162, 163; goes to his chief city Eastrangore, 187; fights the Saxons, 187; goes to aid Brangore, 248—250; his nephew Kay Destranx, 251, 577; a conference with Arthur's envoy, 557, 559; the meeting of the princes at Salisbury, 577, 585; [discord between Arthur and the princes, 577; leaves the company of the Round Table, 577;] asks after his nephews Aglin des vaus and Kehedin le petitz, 577; leads the fourth ward at Garlot, 594; in battle before Clarence, 601; aids Arthur against Luce's invasion, 643; in the second division, 659.
CARDOELL, Cardoel, Cardoll, a city of Arthur in Wales, 60—65, 69, 72, 79, 81, 82, 120, 133, 135, 180, 200, 201, 277, 278, 301, 376, 571, 682, 685, 694, 697; its Castelein Doo, q.v.
CARMEDUK the BLAKE, fellow of Gawein, 682.
CARMELIDE, Carmalide, Carmelyde, Tamalide, Tamelide, Talmelide, a realm, 114, 123, 141, 171, 173, 175, 188, 192, 205, 209, 212, 259, 260, 266, 294, 303, 307, 315, 321, 327, 349, 352, 358, 375, 376, 378, 382, 396, 401, 404, 420, 448, 450, 451, 453, 454, 468, 471, 472, 562, 563, 565, 567, 594, 598, 601, 615, 616, 619, 620, 621, 624, 657, 659, 678, 682; a marche, 167, 350; a city, 202; steward, seneschal, *see* Cleodalis; king, *see* Leodogan.
CARNILE, Carnyle, an enchantress and sister to Hardogabrant, 176, 185.
CARNYLE? country, 232.
CAROS DE LA BROCHE, one of Gawein's fellows, 682.
CASSELL? 682.
CATHENOIS, Chachelos, a Roman prince, 656, 657.
CAUES DE LILLE, fellow of Gawein, 682.
CEZAR, 641.
CHALIS the ORPHENYN, Clealis lorfenyns, one of the forty-two fellows, 212, 682.

CHARROYE, Carroie, Carroye, a castle in the marche of Tamelide and Bredigan, 350, 351, 358, 359, 360, 363, 364, 365, 369; its Castelein, Ffragein, 364.

CHRISTOFER, king, 445; his nephew, 445.

CHRISTOFER DE LA ROCHE BYSE, one of the forty-two fellows, 212.

CIPRE, 676.

CITIE DE LA DESERTE, 124, 125, *see* Claudas.

CLAMADAS, king, 173.

CLAMEDEN, Clamedien, Clamèdin, king, 560, 594; king of the yles, 578; his brother, king Lak, 601; his brother king Euadain, 601; his daughter, the Feire Beaune, 686; his seneschal, Aguygneron, q.v.

CLAMEDOS, a Round Table knight, 598.

CLARELL, king, slain by Arthur, 336.

CLARENCE, Clarance, Clarion, a rich city, 145, 255, 258, 275, 277, 292, 438, 439, 440, 483, 516, 521, 535, 575, 576, 582, 585, 588, 590, 592, 593, 598, 599, 603.

CLARENCE! Arthur's war-cry, 136, 284, 287, 294.

CLARIAS of GAULE, one of the forty-two fellows, 212.

CLARIEL, slain by Bors, 222.

CLARION, king, giant, slain by Ban, 210, 211.

CLARION, king of Northumberland, meets the rebel kings at Bredigan, 146; Clorion, 155; in the battle at Bredigan, 155, 156, 159, 160, 161, 165; of Northumberland, 159, 160; the council of kings, 172; goes to his city of Bellande, 184; the battle before Toraise, 210, 220; encounter with Ban, 210, 211; the Saxons destroy his land, 255; sends to Escam, 255, 256; battle with the Saxons, 256, 257, 258, 271—275; goes to Cambenyk, 276; the spoil divided, 277; leads the seventh ward in the expedition to Clarence against the Saisnes, 438, 439; a night attack, 439, 440, 441; discomfited, 444; but makes another attack, 444, 445; is totally beaten, 446, 447, 449, 525; goes home, 447, 449; hears Arthur is at Logres, 449, 450; wishes for peace with Arthur, 450, 451; his forester entertains Lot and his sons, 518, 519, 524, 535; a messenger from Lot, 525; agrees to meet Lot at Arestuell, 525, 556; the conference of the barons and Lot, 558, 559; the assembly of the host at Salisbury, 565, 575, 585; leads the third ward in the battle of Garlot, 594; in battle before Clarence, 601; aids Arthur against Luce, 644; in the second division, 659.

CLAUDAS DE LA DESERTE, his town of Benoyk or Burges in Barre, 124; dispute with king Ban about a castle, 124, 401, 699; wastes Ban's land, 124, 130, 382, 603, 167; battle with Ban, 124, 125; is defeated and his lands ravaged, 125; his chief city La Deserte, 125; his power paralyzed, 125; his knights attack Ulfin and Bretell, 126, 127, 128; does homage to the king of Gaul, 303, 305; compact with Rome, 303, 305, 306, 315; Dionas does him great damage, 308; his men again invade Benoyk, 375; disappointed in his hopes of plunder, 380; resolves to besiege Trebes, 380; the siege of Trebes, 380; assembly of Arthur's host, 381, 382, 385; Arthur's army approaches, 385, 386; gets ready for battle, 386; Arthur's host arrives, 386; the battle begins, 387; attacked by Ban, 387, 388; suffers great loss, 387; mad with wrath, 387; encounter with Ban, 389; his horse slain, 389; fights on his knees, and is rescued by his men, 389; Ban is hard bestead, 389, 390, 394; Gawein comes and rescues Ban and unhorses Claudas, 394; many of his knights slain by Gawein, 394; is remounted 395; his coat of arms, 395; attacked again by Ban and Gawein, 395; is furious, 395; pursued by Gawein and Ban, 395, 396; escapes by chance, 396; discomfited, 398; the battle renewed, 401, 402; [his sad end, 401; disinherited, 401; seeks to slay Bors and Lyonell by treason, 401;] decapitated by Bors whilst disguised as a palmer, 401; has thirty-five thousand and Arthur's twenty-eight thousand men in the field, 402; Pharien with five thousand men comes on the field, 402; combat with Pharien, 403; rides against him with ten thousand men, 403; vow of revenge on Pharien, 403; drives back Pharien, 403, 409; upset and ridden over by Gawein, 410; sore wounded and overthrown, 410, 411; diffouled under horse feet, 411; utterly routed, 411, 449, 450; advises a retreat to the Desert, 411; loses half his men, but escapes, 411; Arthur wastes his lands, 416, 699; [reinforced by Pounce Anthony and king of Gawle, and reduces Ban and Bors to great straits, 416, 419; Ban and Bors die of starvation, 416; their wives take refuge in a nunnery from him, 416; Arthur can't help Ban and Bors, his hands are full, 416; driven out by Arthur at last, 416;] Gawein ravages his lands, 419; Pounce, Antony, Frolle, and Randolf depart full of rage, 419; is left poor, 419; his Citee de la deserte, 419; lays siege to the castle, 419; Arthur's expedition to Rome, 650; a fight between his knights and Arthur's, 669, 670; battle with Launcelot, 676; gets aid from Pounce Antony, 699; attacks Ban with Romans' help, 699, his enemy Hoel of Nauntes is slain, 699.

CLEODALIS, Cleodales, 207, 337; seneschal of Carmelide, 657, 659; steward of Tamelide, 205, 463, 467, 468, 469, 567, 594, 601, 627; attacks the Saxons, 207, 209; on foot, 211, 214; his nobility, 212; his love for a maiden at court, 212; marries her, 213, 451; his king, Leodogan, beguiles her, 213; she bears a daughter, 214; who is named Gonnore, 214, 451; his wife is shut up by Leodogan, 214; his forbearance towards Leodogan, 214; bears the banner of Leodogan, 215, 217, 219; his bravery, 215—219; Merlin's band come to the rescue, 219; encouraged by the ladies on the wall, 219; his nephew Landons, 321; leads, together with Leodogan, Arthur's tenth division, 321, 337; he and Leodogan are separated from their men in the dark, 347; in peril, 348, 353; Leodogan is unhorsed, 348; gives Leodogan his horse, 348; Leodogan sees his devotedness, and repents his foul deed, 348; Leodogan is felled, 354; he stands over and defends him, 354; Leodogan asks his forgiveness for the foul deed, 354; their great peril, 355; Merlin comes to the rescue, 355; seneschal of Carmelide, 451, 601; a plot to seize Arthur's wife Gonnore, 451, 452, 463; his kinsmen hate Leodogan, 451; knows nothing of all this treason, 451; Ulfin and Bretel tell him of it, 467; says she is not his real daughter, 467; his step-daughter banished by Leodogan, 468; takes her to an abbey in Carmelide, 468, 469; Bertelak's intrigue with her, 468; returns to Toraise, 468; leads the army of Carmelide to Salisbury, 567; leads the fourth ward at Garlot, 594; in the battle before Clarence, 601; is besieged by Rion, 616, 617; stout defence, 618; slays king Margent, 618; sally out to aid Arthur, who is attempting to raise the siege, 627; succours Bediu[illegible] and his party, 657; returns to Arthur, 657; in Arthur's third division, 659; visit from Arthur, 676.

CLEOLES, Cleolas, king, 595, 600; called "the firste conquered kynge," 578; his seneschal Guyonce, 578.

CLOADAS, a marvellous castle of Blios, 321.

COLCHOS, Isle of, 339.

COLEGREUAUNT, Calogreuant, Colegrenaunt, one of the forty-two fellows-212, 349, 480.

COLOCALLUS, Colocaullus, Caulus, king, ally of Rion, 348, 355, 356, 357.

COLUFER, king, ally of Rion, 338, 343, 344.

CONSTANCE, king of Bretayne, 23, 24, 27, 40, 41, 42; his three sons are Moyne, Pendragon, and Uter.

CONSTANTINUS, Constantynus, a king of Bretaigne and conqueror of Rome, 642.

CONSTANTYNENOBLE, Constantynnoble, Costantinenoble, Costantinnoble, Costantynnoble, 186, 230, 259, 263, 271, 280, 373, 374, 396, 449, 577, 654, 676; *see* Segramore; Emperor, 186, 230.

CORBENYK, castle belonging to king Pelles, 229.

CORCHENSE, Corsheuse, Ban's sword, 210, 211, 344, 346.

CORDAUNT, a Saxon, 217.

CORENGE, Carenges, Corenges, an important city in Scotland, 187; chief city of Aguysans, 236.

CORNEUS flies from Troy to Cornwall, which is named after him, 147.

CORNEWAILE, Cornewaile in Bretaigne, Cornewayle, 146, 147, 152, 172, 176, 177, 253, 258, 277, 278, 283, 439, 445, 557, 558, 601, 657; whence named 147; for king, *see* Ydiers.

CORNYAX, Cornycans, a Saxon king, 602; kin to Aungis, 248.

CRISTEMASSE, 96.

DAGENET OF CLARION, a knight and a fool, 483, 485; *see* Malory's Morte d'Arthur.

DAMSEL OF BRULENT, whose love is sought by Gaudius, 237.

DANEBLAISE, Danablaise, Danablise, a noble city, 224, 333, 349, 351, 450, 472; Castelein, *see* Sadoyne and Nablaise.

DANES, Danoys, 27, 42, 55, 56, 91, 152, 659; their king Amynadus, 152; *see* 228, 659.

DARMAUNTES FOREST, 401.

DENMARK, Denmarke, 228, 252; for king, *see* Rion.

DIANE, the goddess, 307, 632, 633, 675.

DIOGLUS, a Saxon, slain by Elizer, and steward to Magloras, 587.

DIONAS, Dionys, Dyonis, a knight, 159, 564, 565, 587, 595.

DIONAS, a vauasor, 307, 308, 310, 418; his wife niece of the duke of Burgoyne, 307, 308, 418; his daughter Nimiane, 308, 418, *which see*; godson of the goddess Diana, 307.

DODRILAS, an Amyrall, slain by Bors, 357

DODYNELL the SAVAGE, son of Belynans, 247, 373, 449, 576; his mother Esclence, 247; cousin of Galeshyn, 247, 373; hears Lot's sons are going to join Arthur and resolves to go too, 251; goes with Kay Destranx and Kehedin to Logres, 251, 252, 258, 377; battle with the Saxons, 294; meets Arthur, 373; dubbed knight by Arthur after the usual vigil, 374, 449; who gives him a treasure sword, 374; the banquet, 375; goes with Gawein, 377; in command under Gawein, 378; his prowess at Trebes, 396; unhorsed, 407, 408; succoured by Gawein, 407, 408; lodged in Trebes castle, 412; at the marriage of Arthur and Gonnore, 453, 454; in the tournament of Toraise, 456, 458, 459; at Arthur's Logres court royal, 480, 481; his deeds in the Logres tournament, 489; his comeliness, 499; goes seeking adventures with Seigramor and Galaishin, 561, 562, 566; the treason of Three Round Table knights who attack them, 561, 562, 566, 573; overthrows Monevall, one of them, 571; the fight stopped by knights sent by Arthur, 571, 572.

DOLEROUSE GARDE, 273. *See* Ladris, Lord.

DOO of CARDOEL, his son Gifflet, 133, 135, 138, 571; castelein of Cardoell, 197; a noble man and a true, 197; bears the banner, and aids Gawein, 200; overthrown by Madelen, 200; capture of Logres, 200, 376; divides the spoil, 201; makes great joy of Gawein and his fellows, 301; asks Gawein about Merlin, 302; master forester to Uter Pendragon, 133; vows to find Merlin, 682.

DORILAS, Dodalis, Dodalus, a Saxon leader, slain by Agravain, 348, 549—552

DORILAS, Doriax, a Round Table knight, kin to Ventres, 243—246, 441, 443, 491, 587, 588.

DOUCRENEFAR, a castle, 518; castelein, *see* Grandilus, 518.

DOULAS, a Saxon, slain by Gosenaym, 217.

DOVE, Doue, Dione, river and bridge, 281, 282, 286, 287, 288.

DOVER, 250, 259, 377, 378, 379, 678.

DRIANT the REDE, a Saxon, slain by Seigramor, 268.

DRIAS DE LA FOREST SAUAGE, Drias de la foreste sauge, Diras, one of the forty-two fellows, 135, 151, 157, 159, 212.

DRIAS LE GAIS of the forest Perilouse, 250, 441.

DRIAS, the lord of Salerne, 441.

EASTRANGORE, the chief city of Carados, 187; of Brangore, 247, 250, 685.

EBRON, husband of Enhyngnes, 326.

ELEIN, *see* Helayne.

ELEINE, Elein, wife of Ban of Benoyk, 125.

ELIZER, son of Pelles of Lytenoys, 521—524, 528—535, 538, 540, 542—546, 550, 553—556, 584, 585, 587—590, 596, 602; Pellynor his uncle, 520, 539, 583; his cousin germain, 539; his uncle king Alain, 583.

ELUNADAS, a young lord, and nephew to the wise lady of the foreste saunz retour, 321, 361, 362, 363.

EMPRESSE of ROME, wife to Julius Cezar, 420, 421, 429, 430, 431, 434; burnt for her untruth, 432, 433.

ENGELONDE, kings of, 53.

ENHYNGNES, sister to Joseph (Abaramathie), wife to Ebron, 326.

ENTRE of ROME, 422.

ESCALIBOURE, *see* Calibourne.

ESCAM, duke of Cambenyk, comes to help the seven kings against Arthur, 145; in the battle of Bredigan, 157, 159, 160, 161; arms Cambenyk his city against the Saxons, 188; a messenger from Clarion, 255; leads his men to aid Clarion against the Saxons, 256; a battle, 256, 257, 258, 271—277; his castle Suret, 313; leads the sixth ward in the expedition against the Saisnes before Clarence, 438, 439; a night attack, 439, 440, 441; discomfited, 444; but makes another attack, 444; is totally beaten, 446, 449; goes home, 447, 449; hears Arthur is at Logres, 449, 450; wishes for peace with Arthur, 450, 451; Lot and his sons come to aid him just as he is driven in by a Saxon host, 547—551; unhorsed, 551; horsed and rescued by Gawein and Gaheries, 551; unhorsed again, 553; horsed by Lot, 553; complete rout of the Saxons, 554; finds who Lot is and his company, 554, 555; entry into Cambenyk, 555; praises Elizer, 555, 556; Lot proposes peace with Arthur, 556; agrees, 556, 557; sends messengers to the other barons to come to the conference, 557, 558; Lot and his sons go to Arestuell, 557, 558; the conference, 558, 559; the assembly of the host at Salisbury, 565, 575, 576, 582, 584, 585; the battle before Garlot, 588; leads the first division, 593, 594; slays Salubrun, 594; in battle before Clarence, 601; aids Arthur against Luce, 644; in Arthur's first division, 659.

ESCLENCE, wife of Belynans, daughter of king Natan, sister to Ventres, and her son Dodynell, 247.

ESTOR, bastard son to Ban, son of Agravadain's daughter, 674, 675.
ESTREMORS, Destramors, ? city, 345, 561.
ETHIOCLES, 340.
EVADAIN, Euadain, a Christian king, 594, 601, his seneschal Fflamus.
EVANDER, Euander, king of Surre, 656, 657; slain 658.
EVADEAM, *see* Auadain.
EWEIN, son of Urien, 122, 388, 396, 449, 455, 459, 480, 655; his names, le gaunte, 122; the More, 238, 242, 279, 284; the Grete, 258; le graunde, 283; le graunt, 285, 453, 455, 489; li grans, 286, 287, 288; future foretold, 122; left in Sorhan, 238; his foster brother Ewein Avoutres 238; resolves to be dubbed by Arthur only, 238; talks to his mother about it, 241; she consents to his journey, 241; tells Ewein Avoutres about it, 241, 242; they both set off, 242, 251, 258, 277, 349; arrives at Arondell, 277; leaves Arondell, 278; fight with the Saxons, 278, 289, unhorsed, 283; his cousins come to his aid, 280, 288; defeat of the Saxons, 288, 289; at Bredigan, 289; beats the Saxons again, 294; meets Arthur, 373; welcome, 373; his vigil, 374; dubbed by Arthur, 374, 449; goes with Gawein to Dover, 377, 378; the great battle before Trebes, 388; his prowess, 388, 407; lodged in Trebes castle, 412; in Toraise, 448, 449; is an early riser, 448; at the marriage of Arthur and Gonnore, 453, 454; in the tournament at Toraise, 455, 459, 462; the trial and banishment of Bertelak, 469, 470; at Arthur's Logres court royal, 480, 481; Dagenet's cowardice, 484; cousin of Gawein, 280, 485; his deeds in the tournament of Logres, 486—489, 494, 495, 498; the meeting in the hall, 499; reconciliation of the Queen's knights of the Round Table, 500, 502; the treason of three Round Table knights, 568; sent by Arthur to them, 568, 569, 570, 573; brings the knights to Arthur, 573; at Salisbury, 579; in the battle of Garlot, 596; in the battle before Clarence, 601, 602; in the battle between Rion and Arthur, 624; sent on Embassy to Rome by Arthur, 650, 651; Gawein's rashness, 652; flight, 652; pursuit, 652; slays a pursuer, 653; hard pressed, 655; victory, 655; in Arthur's first division, 659; vows to find Merlin, 682, 687; his adventures, 687; helps Auadain, 688, 690; cannot find Merlin, 689; his meeting with Evadeam, 698.
EWEIN with the white hands, 238, 292, 294, 373, 375, 377, 388, 396, 449, 480.
EWEIN CYUELL, 373, 375, 377, 378, 449.
EWEIN DE LIONELL, 292, 294, 373, 375, 377, 378, 396, 449, 480, 518.
EWEIN ESCLINS, 373, 375, 377, 396, 449, 480.
EWEIN ESTRANIS, 292, 294, 378.
EWEIN AVOUTRES, son of king Urien and the wife of Cleodalis, 238, 449; his father's bounty, 238; why so named, 238; his foster brother Ewein, 238; swears not to be dubbed unless by Arthur, 238; keeps his father's town Sorham, 238; goes with Ewein on the way to Arthur, 241, 242, 258, 277, 280, 285; they arrive at Arondell, 277; leave Arondell, 278; fight with the Saxons under Bilas, 278, 279, 280, 282, 289; they are both unhorsed, 283; Gawein and his cousins come to the rescue, 280—288; defeat of the Saxons, 288, 289; withdraws to Bredigan, 288; another victory over the Saxons, 294; meets Arthur, 373; is welcomed, 373; the vigil in the minster, 374; dubbed knight by Arthur, 374, 449; goes with Gawein to Dover, 377, 378; his prowess in the battle before Trebes, 388, 396; at Arthur and Gonnore's wedding, 453, 454; at Arthur's Logres court royal, 480, 481; in the battle at Garlot, 595; in Arthur's first division at Oston, 659

FALSADRES, king, 244, 245.
ffANNELL, 268.
FANSOBRES, king, 243.
FER OUTE YLLES, dragon there, 316; their lord, 577.
ffERNICANS, king, 342, 343.
FIENDS, assembly of, 1, 2, 3; their project, 23; its execution, 10.
ffLAMUS, seneschal of Evadain, 594, 601.
FLAUNDRYNS LE BLANKE, 135.
FLAUNDRYNS LE BRET, 151, 159, 212.
ffLUALIS, king of Jerusalem, 632; his death, 676; a Sarazin, 632; his queen, 632, 633, 634; named Lunble, 675; her christian name Misiane, 675; his marvellous dream, 632, 634; his daughter, 633.
ffOLDATE, daughter of Julius Cæsar, Emp. Rome, 423, 434, 437; her husband Patrik, q.v.
FOREST, *see* Bredigan, Briok, Rome, and Romayne.
FORESTE denoyable, 316, 370.
FORESTE in the shadowe undir Molait, 411.
FORESTE perilouse, forest perilouse, afterwards called forest saunz retour, 360, 361, 364; lord of the, 445, 475, 682.
FORESTE saunz retour, 321, 360; wise lady of the, 321, 361, 362, 363.

FORESTER, is a Vavasour, 517, 518 (*see* Mynoras); his wife, 517, 518; his four sons, 517, 518; his two daughters, 517, 518, 526, 527, 528, 530.

ffORFRAIN, king, 215, 216.

FORREYOURS, king, 243.

FORTY fellows, 396, 203, 401, 412, 413, 454, 455.

FORTY-TWO fellows, 212.

FOURSCORE fellows, 458, 486, 494, 497; and ten, 494, 499, 502.

ffRAGELLES, Ffagilles, a Saxon earl, 593, 595.

ff RAGIEN, 242; castelein of Carroie castle, 364.

FRAUNCE, Ffraunce, 669, 670.

ffREELANT, 220, 222, 223.

FRENSHE book (the), 147.

ffRENSSHEMEN, Frenshe, 392, 438.

ffROLLE, Duke of Almayne, 303, 306, 315, 375, 379, 380, 386, 387, 388, 394, 397, 398, 402, 408, 409, 411, 419, 421, 435, 437, 450.

GAHERET, his mother, 86, 372; his aunt Basyne, 373, 285, 526, 545, 553; father, 179; resolves to join Arthur, 183, 184, 240, 251, 260, 557, 439; joins Galeshyn, 191; the battle with the Saxons, 193, 194, 230; upset by Guynebans, 194; remounted by Gawein, 195; rescues Gaheries, 196; kills Guynebans, 199; sojourn at Logres, 201, 202; Arthur is told of him, 230; slays Vabibre, 265; goes to Camelot, 267; fells Taurus, 268; Merlin calls him coward, 269; Gawein goes to help Ewein, 280; leads the second ward, 280; charges the Saxons, 284; forced to retreat, 285; a reverse, 287; keeps the bridge, 288; at Arondell, 291, 293; prowess, 294; a strange guest, 297, 301, 314; cuts Taurus to pieces, 299, 300; return to Arondell, 301; at Logres, 301; makes a vow, 301, 314, 449, 450; Arthur is arming, 370; goes out to meet him, 370; salutes Arthur on his knees, 371; Gawein tells Arthur they are come to be knighted, 371, 372; Arthur promises it, 372; presented to King Arthur, 372; Arthur makes great joy of him, 373; goes to Logres with Arthur, 374; the vigil in the minster, 374; is dubbed knight by Arthur, 374, 440; who gives him a treasure sword, 374; goes with Gawein's host to Dover, 377, 378; has part command, 378; prowess at Trebes, 388; unhorsed 396; rescued by Gawein and Ban, 396, 397; horsed again, 396, 397; prowess, 407, 410; at Carmelide, 447, 448; at Arthur and Gonnore's marriage, 453, 454; at Arthur's Logres court royal, 481; his deeds in the Logres tournament, 487, 488, 489; reconciliation of the Round Table and Queen's knights, 500, 502; is to go with his father and brethren to make a truce with the princes, 505, 506, 507; the start, 509, 510; his encounter with Saxons, 510, 511, 512; can't find Gawein, 513, 514; unhorsed, 515; rescued by Gawein, 516; they lodge at a forester's house, 517, 518; on their journey again, 524, 525, 526; their talk by the way, 526, 527; the rescue of Elizer, 528—531; thrown to the earth, 532; captured by Monaquyn, 533; rescued by Gawein, 533; horsed by Elizer, 534; angry with Gawein, 537; insults his father, 538; the sumpters are sent to Mynoras, 538, 555; rests at a hermitage, 539, 544; at Roestok castle, 545, 546; battle with Saxons outside Cambenyk, 547—553; unhorsed, 551; rescued, 552; Saxons routed, 554; entry into Cambenyk, 555; third son of Lot, 555; go to North Wales and thence to Arestuell, 557, 558; keeps vigil with Elizer before he is knighted, 584; in the battle of Garlot, 594; vows to find Merlin, 682.

GAHERIES, fourth son of Lot, 555; his mother, 86, 230, 272; his aunt Basyne, 373; father, 179, 230, 285, 526, 545, 555; resolves to join Arthur, 183, 184, 240, 251, 260, 439, 557; joins Galeshyn, 190, 191; battle with the Saxons, 193, 194, 230; chases Guynebans, 194; upsets him, 195; surrounded by Saxons and overthrown, 195; rescued by his brothers, 196; rescues Agravain, 199; sojourn at Logres, 201, 202; Arthur is told of him, 230; slays Solunant, 265; goes to Camelot, 267; fells Ffannell, 268; Merlin calls him coward, 269; Gawein goes to help Ewein, 280; leads the third ward, 280; charges the Saxons, 286; a reverse, 287; keep the bridge, 288; at Arondell, 291, 293; prowess, 294; a strange guest, 297, 301, 314; cuts Taurus to pieces, 299, 300; return to Arondell, 301; at Logres, 301; makes a vow, 301, 314, 449, 450; Arthur is coming, 370; goes out to meet him, 370, 371; salutes Arthur on his knees, 371; Gawein tells Arthur they are come to be knighted, 371, 372; Arthur promises it, 373; presented to King Arthur, 372; Arthur makes great joy of him, 373; goes to Logres with Arthur, 374; the night-long vigil in the cathedral, 374; dubbed knight by Arthur, 374, 449; who gives him one of the swords Merlin found, 374; goes with Gawein's host to Dover, 377, 378; has part command, 378 ; the battle before Trebes, 388 ; next best knight to Gawein, 388 ; his prowess, 396, 407, 410 ; at Carmelide, 447, 448 ; at Arthur's marriage with Gonnore, 453, 454 ; Ewein le graunte next best knight after him, 455 ; in the tournament at Toraise, 458 ; at Arthur's Logres court royal, 481 ; his deeds in the Logres tournament, 487, 488, 489 ; reconciliation of the Round Table and Queen's knights, 500, 502 ; is to go with his father and brethren to the princes with a flag of truce, 505, 506, 507 ; the start, 509, 510 ; encounter with Saxons, 510, 511, 512 ; can't find Gawein, 513, 514 ; rescues Gueheret, 516 ; they lodge at a forester's house, 517, 518 ; on their journey again, 524, 525, 526 ; their talking on the way, 526, 527 ; the rescue of Elizer, 528, 529, 531 ; quarrels with Agravain, 529, 530 ; rescues Agravain, 531 ; his valour, 532, 553 ; rescues Lot, 532, 533 ; felled by Pignoras, 533 ; horsed by Elizer, 534 ; quarrels with Agravain, 535 ; Agravain strikes him, 536 ; his forbearance, 536 ; Gawein is angry with him, 537 ; the sumpters are sent to Mynoras, 538, 539, 555 ; at a hermitage, 539, 544 ; taunts Agravain again, 544, 545 ; at Roestok castle, 545, 546 ; battle with Saxons outside Cambenyk, 547—551 ; his prowess, 549, 550 ; is Gawein's favourite brother, 550 ; rescues Escam, 551 ; maims Oriaunce, horses Gueheret and Agravain, 552 ; rout of the Saxons, 554 ; squire Elizer's entry into Cambenyk, 555 ; chaffs Agravain again about the daughters of Mynoras, 555 ; goes to North Wales and thence to Arestuell, 557, 558 ; gets arms for Elizer, who is to be knighted, 583, 584 ; keeps the vigil with him, 584 ; Elizer knighted, 584 ; in the battle of Garlot, 594 ; in the battle between Rion and Arthur, 624 ; goes against the devil cat, 666, 668 ; vows to find Merlin, 682.

GAIDON, 220.

GAILORE, country, (?) 496, 567.

GALAAD, son of Helayn, 229.

GALAAD, son of Launcelot, 326, (?) 502.

GALAD, lord of Pastures, 350, 351, 358, 359.

GALAGNES, king, 244.

GALE, city of, 179.

GALEGANTIUS, the Walsh, 480.

GALEGNYNANS, senescall of Galehant and son of the giant, 601.

GALEHAUT, 173 (? 466), the son of the giant that was lord of the fer out isles, 577, 578.

GALEHAUT, lord of the fer out isles, 329

GALEHAUT, of Sorloys, 466, 601.

GALEINCE, 250.

GALES, 212, 352.

GALESCOWDE, 212, 349, 480 ; an high gentleman, 491, 495 ; one of Gawein's fellows, 498, 579.

GALESHYN, Galaishin, Galasshin, 459 ; son of Ventres of Garlot, 122, 177, 188, 197, 230, 242, 373, 388, 449 ; his mother Basyne, 122, 177, 230, 242 ; nephew of Arthur, 178 ; future foretold, 122, 177 ; his age, 177 ; knight of the Round Table, 177 ; Duke of Clarence, 177 ; asks his mother of Arthur, 177, 178 ; resolves to join him, 178 ; sends to his cousin Gawein, 178, 179, 197 ; who agrees to meet him at Newerk, 189 ; his joy, 190 ; unknown to his father goes to Logres, 190, 191, 230, 240, 251 ; the fight with the Saxons, 193 ; helps Gawein, 193 ; slays Sarnagut, 194 ; rescues Gaheries, 196 ; and Agravayn, 199 ; sojourn at Logres, 201, 202 ; Arthur is told of him, 230 ; Ventres is angry when he finds his son gone, 242, 439 ; his cousin Dodynell, 247, 373 ; slays Pinados, 265 ; goes to Camelot, 267 ; slays Placidas, 268 ; tries to take Orienx, 268 ; leads Gawein's fifth ward, 281 ; beats off the Saxons, 287, 288 ; a reverse, 287 ; at Arondell, 291, 293 ; prowess, 294 ; a strange quest, 297, 301 ; return to Arondell, 301 ; at Logres, 301 ; captured and condemned to die by Madagot at Estremors, 345 ; rescued by his cousin Gawein, 345 ; hears Arthur is coming and goes out to meet him, 370, 371 ; Gawein leads the way, 370, 371 ; salutes Arthur on his knees, 371 ; Gawein tells Arthur they are come to be knighted, 371, 372 ; Arthur promises, 372 ; presented to the king Arthur, 373 ; "shorte and fatte," 373 ; Arthur makes great joy of him, 373 ; goes to Logres with Arthur, 374 ; the joy of the inhabitants, 374 ; the vigil in the cathedral, 374 ; dubbed knight by Arthur, 374, 449 ; who gives him a treasure sword, 374 ; goes with Gawein's host to Dover, 377, 378 ; has part command, 378 ; his prowess at Trebes, 388 ; overthrown by Frolle, 396 ; who holds him by the "nasell of his helme," 396 ; rescued by Ban and Gawein, 396 ; is amongst the horse's feet, 397 ; Gawein fells Frolle, 397 ; horsed again, 397 ; rushes at Frolle, upsets him, and rides over him, 397 ; Gawein applauds him, 397 ; one of the best knights of the world, 397 ; does wonders, 407 ; at Carmelide, 447, 448 ; at Arthur's marriage with Gonnore, 453, 454 ; in the tournament at Toraise, 455, 462 ; trial and banishment of Bertelak, 469, 470 ; his deeds in the tournament at Logres,

487, 489, 498 ; goes with Segramore and Dodinell in quest of adventures, 561, 562, 566 ; the treason of three Round Table knights, Agrauandain, Mynoras, and Monevall, 561, 562, 566, 567, 568, 573 ; overthrows Mynoras, 571 ; Arthur sends to stop the fight, 571, 572 ; at Salisbury, 579.
GALIERS, the lords of the haut moor, 564.
GALLEAD, surnamed Lancelot, 698.
GALNOYE, 176.
GALUONYE, marches of, 176.
GALVOYE, a country, 657.
GALYS, 676.
GANNES, Pharien's war-cry, 403.
GANNES or Gawnes, a citee plentevouse of all goodes, 122, 124, 125, 131, 143, 144, 151, 152, 162, 175, 185, 202, 210, 212, 303, 320, 350, 379, 380, 381, 393, 399, 401, 402, 403, 415, 419, 447, 472, 557, 563, 565, 567, 579, 587, 589, 603, 623, 643, 644, 698, 699.
GARLOT, 86, 108, 117, 119, 122, 146, 156, 177, 179, 242, 388, 439, 440, 445, 449, 557, 558, 585—588, 590, 592, 593, 594, 597, 612.
GAUDIN, nephew of Aguysas of Scotlande, 445.
GAUDIUS, cousin-german to Aguysans, 237.
GAUDIUS, 441.
GAUNT, the depe citee of, 445.
GAWEIN, his mother, 86, 122, 179, 374 ; his aunt Basyne, 373 ; prowess foretold, 122 ; eldest son of King Loot, 178, 179, 183, 197, 266, 279, 285, 291, 296, 314, 372, 405, 408, 409, 419, 555 ; the mystery of his strength, 180, 181, 388, 462, 476, 477, 478, 491, 507, 509—512, 514, 518, 531, 532, 562, 591 ; his mother tells him to go to his uncle Arthur's court, 183, 230 ; resolves to go, 183, 258, 260, 262, 439 ; and to make peace between Arthur and Loot, 183, 240, 557, 551 ; his cousin Galeshene, 189, 345, 395, 397 ; agrees to and meets him at Newerk, 189 ; his joy, 190 ; prowess in fight with Saxons, 193, 197 ; slays Noas, 194 ; remounts Gaheret, 195 ; receives Gaheries, 196 ; people of Logres come to aid him, 197, 198 ; upsets Guyneban, 198 ; deep in among the Saxons, 199 ; slays Madalen and rescues Doo, 200, 201 ; defeat of the Saxons, 201 ; enters Logres, 201 ; his prudence, 201 ; in favour with the citizens and sojourns at Logres, 202 ; Arthur hears of him, 230 ; goes to Camelot, 261 ; Merlin comes, 261, 262, 263 ; goes to aid Segramore, 264 ; battle with Orienx, 264, 265 ; fells Orienx, 265, 271 ; Merlin as a knight, 266 ; welcomes Segramore, 266 ; returns to Camelot, 266, 267 ; encounter with Orienx, 267, 268 ; upsets him, 268 ; tries to take him, 268 ; at Camelot, 269, 270 ; the churl and horse, 270 ; assembles an army, 277 ; goes to Cardoell and Bredigan, 278, 279 ; goes to help the Eweins, 280, 281 ; his cousin Ewein, 280, 376, 395, 485 ; the leaders of his army, 280, 281 ; routs the Saxons, 288 ; returns to Bredigan, 288, 289 ; Merlin's craft, 290, 302, 376 ; goes to Arondell, 290—293 ; dashes at the Saxons, 293 ; his prowess, 294 ; warned by an old man, 294, 295 ; keeps in Arondell, 295 ; the mysterious knight, 296, 297, 376 ; rescue of his mother and Mordred, 296—303, 314, 376 ; slays Taurus, 299, 303 ; returns with his mother to Arondell, 301, 303 ; sees Mordred, 301 ; goes to Logres, 301, 370 ; he and his brothers vow Lot shall not see his wife till peace is made with Arthur, 301, 314, 449, 460 ; enquires after the mysterious knight, 301 ; the mystery solved—it is Merlin, 302, 376 ; captures Madagot at Estremors and frees Galeshyn, 345 ; hears Arthur is coming to Logres, 370 ; all go out to meet Arthur, 370 ; leads the way, 370, 371 ; his courtesy, 371 ; asks for Arthur, 371 ; Nascien points Arthur out and salutes him on his knees, 371 ; made spokesman, 371 ; tells Arthur that they have heard of his fame and are come to be knighted, 371, 372 ; reminds him of their service at Logres, 372 ; Arthur takes him by the hand, and bids them all rise, 372 ; Arthur promises to knight them all, 372 ; tells Arthur their names and lineage, 372, 373 ; Arthur makes great joy of him and kisses him, 373 ; made constable of Arthur's household, 373 ; chief commander, 373, 376 ; thanks him, 374 ; goes to Logres with Arthur, 374 ; the joy of the people of Logres, 374 ; the night-long vigil in the minster, 374 ; Ban and Bors keep the vigil with them, 374 ; girded with Calibourne the next day by Arthur at high mass, 374 ; Arthur puts the right, and Ban the left spur on, 374 ; is dubbed a knight, 374, 449 ; Arthur gives him one of the treasure swords, 374 ; and bids him be a good knight, 374 ; Arthur tells him to get the host ready, 376 ; tells Arthur it is all ready, 376 ; sees Merlin with Arthur, 376 ; Arthur, at Merlin's request, asks who led him to rescue his mother at Glocedon, 376 ; and who brought the letter from Ewein, 376 ; astonished at this, 376 ; and asks what Merlin has to do with it and how Arthur knows it, 376 ; recollects Doo's

words, 376; says it was one called Merlin, 376; Arthur laughs and tells him all, 376, 377; says he is at Merlin's service, and wants to see him, 377; his eyes are opened, 377; Merlin tells him to take leave of his mother, 377; and then lead the host to Dover, 377; and to assemble ships there, 377; takes leave of his mother, 377; Sir Ewein, Galaishin, Dodynell, Seigramore, Ewein Avoutres, the four Eweins, and his brethren lead the host under his command, 377, 378, 395; Keheden and Kay Destranx with him, 377, 378, 395; arrives at Dover, 378; assembles a great navy, 378; at the Rochell, 379; makes great joy on meeting Merlin, 379; the expedition to Trebes preparing, 381, 382; is to lead the first division of ten thousand knights, 382, 384, 385, 395; Ulfyn to bear his banner, 382; the start, 384, 385; the battle begins, 387; falls upon Frolle's host, 387, 394; slays five thousand of his men, 387; a fresh onset, 388; rescues Seigramore, 388; his prowess, 388, 394; sees Claudas fighting Ban and fells him, 394; slays Mysteres and Antorilas and two thousand others, 394; Ban's gratitude, 394, 395; their friendly feelings, 395; Ban wants his company, but Gawein says he must go to see if his cousins and brethren are safe, 395; dashes after Claudas, 395, 396; as he goes he sees his brethren and cousins in distress, goes to succour them, leaving Claudas to escape, 396; Agravain unhorsed, Gaheret also, and Galaishin in the hands of Frolle, 396; Ban and he succour their fellows, 396; fells Frolle and releases Galaishin, 397; applauds Galaishin's bravery, 397; busy in the fight, 398; defeat of Claudas, 398, 399; Ban's own men appear on the field, 400; suggests an ambush, 400; taunted with cowardice by Merlin, 404, 405; prowess, 407; slays Randolf, the seneschal of Gawle, 407; meets with Dodynell the savage and Kehedin the litill, unhorsed and in trouble, 407, 408; aids them, 408; the enemy shun his onset, 408; wounds Frolle because he smote Arthur, 408, 409; at Arthur's side, 409; fells Pounce Antony and wounds Randolf, 409; Arthur asks him to keep by his side, 409; meets Ban and Bors, 410; Merlin gives the signal for another onset, 410; wounds, upsets, and rides over Claudas, 410; is admired for his valour, 410; Claudas loses half his army and is routed, but escapes, 411; led by Ban and Bors into Trebes castle, 412; well housed, 412; Queen Helayn's dream explained by Merlin, 416, 417; ravages Claudas' lands, 419; returns to Benoyk, 419; Merlin is waiting for him, 419; goes to Gannes the Rochell and to sea, 419, 420; starts for Carmelide, 420, 447, 448; slays Julyus Cesar in battle at Logres, 420; in Toraise, 448, 449; at Arthur's marriage with Gonnore, 453, 454; the tournament at Toraise, 454, 461; always wears a habergeon of double mail for safety, 454; his victory in the tournament at Logres, 455, 462; ever true to God and to his lord, 455; gets furious, seizes a beam of oak and rushes again into the tornament, 460; the knights of the Round Table are angry at his victory, and swear revenge, 461; becomes a knight of the Round Table, 462; trial and banishment of Bertelak, 469, 470; starts for Logres with all Arthur's host but five hundred men, 471, 562; anxious for Arthur's safety, 471; makes great preparations for the court royal at Logres in August, 471, 472; his character detailed, 472; goes with forty fellows to aid Arthur who is hard bestead by Lot, 475, 476, 562; overthrows Lot, and rides over him, 476; is about to slay Lot, 476; but finds who it is, 476, 477; Lot tries to embrace him, 477; will not know him until he has done homage to Arthur, 477, 560; takes Lot to do homage to Arthur, 477, 478, 562; at the court royal at Logres, 480, 481; he and twenty-four of his fellows vow to be Queen Gonnore's knights, 482, 483, 484, 518, 562; the details of the vow, 482, 483; the queen appoints four clerks to write his and his fellows adventures, 483; they are called the Queen's knights, 483; Dagenet's cowardice, 484; makes ready the tournament at Logres, 484; the tournament, 484, 500; Arthur sends to speak with him, 485; Arthur asks him to keep order in the tournament, 485; would not promise, 485, 486; a band of squires and sergeants to keep order, 486; drives back the Round Table knights, 487; sends ten of them captured to the queen, 488, 502; again worsts the Round Table knights, 488; the Round Table knights are wroth, and in felony use war spears and drive in the Queen's knights, 488; remonstrates with them, 489; they will not cease their foul play, 489; arms himself and his fellows in complete armour, 489, 490; returns to the tournament, 490; Lot's knights offer help, 490; accepts it, 491; sends Galescowde to tell Arthur of the state of the tourney, 491, 495, 498; the Round Table knights getting the best of it, 491; fells Dorilas, 491; unhorses Nascien, 492; who begs him to stop the tourney, 492; says the Round Table knights began the folly, and will not do so, 492, 493; overthrows many, 493; sees an ambush, 493; takes a young apple tree and fells many with it, 493; they slay his horse, 493; draws Calibourne, 493, 494; slays right and left, 494; succoured and remounted by his knights, 494, 495; puts up his sword, and takes his tree staff, 494; puts his opponents to flight, 494; drives them into the city, 494; the other wing of his men is driven back, 494; but Ewein succours them, and drives the Round Table knights into the town, 494, 495; the Round Table knights are driven right up to the minster, 495; the squires come to interfere, 495; his men mistake them for opponents and give battle, 495; his knights get the worst, 495; draws Calibourne, and dashes at the squires, 496; attacks the Round Table knights again, 496; overthrows Adragain des Vaux de Gailore, 496; also Pindolus and Idonas, 496; Hervy de Revell says he is cruel, 497; Hervy wants to pacify him, 497; refuses to stop, 497; vows eternal enmity to Round Table knights, 497; Hervy says the Round Table knights will leave Arthur's court if they are so cruelly used, 497; don't care, says Gawein, 497, 498; says he will follow them if they do, and have his revenge, 498; Arthur upbraids him, 498; Lot takes his bridle and entreats him to cease, 498; Ban and Bors entreat too, 498; cools down, 498; the Round Table knights are in a great rage, 498, 499; end of the tournament, 499; all go to their lodges, 499; he and his band go to their chambers in the queen's palace, 499; the meeting in the hall, 499; reconciliation with the Round Table knights, 500, 501, 502; at first refuses to be reconciled, but yields to the queen's entreaties, 500, 501, 503; made a lord of the Round Table, 502; the quest of the St. Grail, 502, 503; serves at the high daïs, 504; is to go with his father and brethren to make a truce with the princes, 506; Arthur is loth to part with him, 506; gets ready to go, 507; asks the queen to prevent ill-will with the Round Table knights, 507; she promises, 507; the start of the embassy at midnight, 509, 510; encounter with Saxons, 510, 511; slays Monaclyn, a Saxon, 511; draws Calibourne, and rescues his father, 511, 512; fights Clarion, a Saxon, 512; upsets him, and seizes Gringalet's horse, 512, 513, 514; the chase relinquished, 513; Lot and the three others go on in front, 513; Lot's grief at missing him, 513, 514; busy killing Saxons, 514, 515; is pleased with his new horse Gringalet, 515; rescues Gueheret, 516; they arm and lodge at a forester's house, 517, 518, 519; the forester's daughters admire him, 517; Elizer sets out to seek knighthood of him, 520, 521, 528, 530; on their journey again, 524, 525, 526; Agravain's foul thoughts, 526, 527; and the punishment of them, 527; cures Agravain's sickness, 527; taunts Agravain, who gets furious, 528, 529; the rescue of Elizer and his squire Lydonas, 528—531, 583; draws Calibourne, 530; and does wonders, 531; promises Elizer knighthood, 531, 532, 539, 555, 583; his prowess, 532, 533; finds his father and brethren in great peril, 532, 533; rescues Gueheret, 533; horses Agravain, 533; slits Monaquyn to the waist, 533, 534, 535; slays Pignoras, 534, 535; horses Lot, 534; slays Maundalis, 534, 535; puts the Saxons to flight, 534, 535; captures all the sumpters, 535, 536; Gaheries and Agravain quarrel again, 535; Agravain smites Gaheries, 536; knocks Agravain down, 536, 537, 538; Gaheries intercedes for Agravain, 537; is angry with his brothers, 537; a great squabble, 537, 538; turns Agravain out of their company, 538; sends Mynoras the sumpters, 538, 555; asks Elizer of his estate and parentage, 539; they arrive at a hermitage, 539; in the night saddles Gringalet and goes with Elizer to succour a lady and a knight, 540, 541, 546; a dilemma, 540, 541; slays Sortibran and his men, and succours the lady, 541, 542, 544; attacked by twenty knights, 542; Elizer having rescued the knight comes to aid Gawein, 542, 543; they return to the hermitage, 543; the lady tells who she is and who the knight is, 543, 544; Lot is astonished when he wakes to find what Gawein and Elizer have, 544; Agravain is jealous, 544, 545; at Roestok castle, 545, 546; goes to aid Escam, who is beset with Saxons, 547, —551; commends the prowess of Gaheries, 549; the Saxons deem him a devil of hell, 549; loves Gaheries best of all his brothers, 550; rescues Escam, 551, rescues Gueheret and Agravain, slays Mydonas, maims Brandalis, 552; slays the Saxon banner-bearer Ydonas, 553; flight of the Saxons, 553; the pursuit, 553, 554; total defeat of the Saxons, 554; loses his shield, as it is cut to bits, 554; Elizer a good squire, 555; in

Cambenyk, 555; go to North Wales and thence to Arestuell, 557, 558; the conference with the barons, 558, 559; is Arthur's spokesman, 559; proposes a truce until Yule, 559; truce agreed to, 560; lands absolved from the excommunication, 560; preparations for the war with the Saxons, 560; all are to meet on a set day on Salisbury Plains, 560; the treason of the Round Table knights, 568, 574; in council with Arthur, Ban, Bors, and Merlin, 582; Elizer his squire asks to be knighted, 583; tells Arthur of Elizer's bravery, 583, 584; consents to knight Elizer, 583; tells Gaheries to get arms for Elizer, 583; knights Elizer, 584; the rescue of his aunt Morgeins, Ventres' wife, 587, 588, 590, 591; Elizer's prowess, 587, 588, 589; rescues his aunt, 591; slays Brandouns, 592; restores to Ventres his wife, 592; in the battle of Garlot, 594, 596; in the battle before Clarence, 601, 602; goes to Camelot, 603; the feast at Camelot, 612, 613, 622; in the battle between the hosts of Rion and Arthur, 624, 625, 626; slays king Pharaon, 624; wants to take Arthur's place in a personal combat with Rion, but Arthur refuses, 628; Arthur slays Rion, 630; a message of war from Rome to Arthur, 640, 641; sent by Arthur to Rome with a message to Luce, 650, 651; gives Arthur's message, 652; reviled by a Roman knight, 652; is enraged and cuts the knight's head off, 652; flight and pursuit, 652; slays one of his pursuers, 652; slays another named Marcell, 653; hard pressed, 654; succour comes, 653, 654; victory, 655; they take Petrius prisoner to Arthur, 655; in Arthur's first division, 659, 662, 663; slays Luce the Emperor with Calibourne, 663; goes against the devil cat, 666; destroys the castle of the Marche at Arthur's command, 677; with Arthur at Logres, 678; Arthur is sorry at Merlin's saying he would never return, 682; is sent in search of Merlin, 682, 689, 692; his adventures, 689; meets a damsel, 690; omits to salute her, 690; she tells him he is not the best knight of the world as men say, 690; and that he shall be like the first man he meets, 690; she says he may hear of Merlin in Little Britain, 690; meets Auadain the dwarf and the maiden, 690, 691; becomes a dwarf, 691, 692; is loth to appear at court, 692; a strange voice comforts him, 692, 693; finds it is Merlin's voice, 693; Merlin tells him to tell Arthur to stop the quest, as none will see him or hear him again, 694; starts for Cardoell, 694; sees the damsel whom he omitted to salute, 694, 695; she deceives him, 695, 696; he fights with and overcomes two knights who were oppressing the damsel, 695, 696, 697; she promises to disenchant him if he will always salute ladies, 696, 697; he swears and returns to his own shape again, 697; at Cardoell, 697; contradiction, 698.

GAWLE, Gaule, king of, 25, 212, 303, 305, 306, 375, 380, 386, 387, 398, 402, 407, 419, 436, 438, 303, 305, 375, 380, 381, 398, 411, 416, 419, 449, 564, 606, 664, 668, 699.

GAZELL, ? town, 441.

GEAUNT, 644, 645; slain by Arthur, 649, 650, 668, 679.

GEAUNTES, 147.

GELEGNYAUNT, a Saxon, 595.

GEROMELANS, 366; Guyromelans, 368.

GESTOIRE, Emperor, 656; lord of Lybee, 656; *see* Hestor.

GIFFLET, Gyfflet, 485; son of Doo of Cardoel, 133, 135, 138, 571; the tournament at Logres, 133; tilts with Ladynas, 133, 134; his cousin Lucas, 134; his prowess, 134, 135; tilts with Blioberes, 136; and upsets him, 137; upsets Placidas and Jervas, 137; is highly praised, 138; in command, 143; the great battle at Bredigan, 151, 156, 158, 159; rescued by Arthur, 159; on guard, 166; one of the famous band of forty-two, 212; aids Cleodalis, 214, 216; slays Mynadap, 217; felled by Sorfarin, 220; victory, 224; the battle with Rion, 337; the fight with Saxons, 349; tries to dissuade Bors from fighting Amaunt, 366; at the marriage of Arthur and Gonnore, 453, 454; in the tournament at Toraise, 455, 459; at Arthur's Logres court royal, 480, 481; goes to Arthur, 485; the Logres tournament, 485—500; his deeds, 486, 489; serves at the high dais, 504; sent by Arthur to frustrate the treason of the Round Table knights, 468, 473.

GINGABRESELL, 366; Guygebresill, 368; nephew of Amaunt.

GLOCEDON, 250, 295, 298, 376, 515.

GLORIENX, giant, 338, 343, 344; kin to Rion, 346.

GLOUCESTER, earl of, 658; is duke and castelein, 658.

GOLDEN FLEECE, the, 339.

GONDOFFLES, the grete king, 236; his brother Trausmaduc, 593, 596, 602.

GONNERE, Gonnore, daughter of Cleodalis, 214, 225, 322, 451—453, 463, 465—468, 470, 562.

GONNORE, wife of Arthur, 213, 482, 635; secret mark on her body, 213, 465; baptism, 114, parentage, 114, 115, 141, 208, 222, 404, 448, 472, 623, 678; of royal blood, 141, 213, 465; her beauty, 141, 227; Merlin counsels Arthur to marry her, 141, 177; an heiress, 141; the battle at Tamelide, 208; sees her father taken prisoner, 208, 209; sees him rescued by Arthur, and Merlin, 210; her joy, 210; her anxiety for Arthur, 219; sees him upset Sorfarin, 222; serves Arthur at the feast, 225, 257; the three kings, 225; pleased with Arthur, 225; brings him wine, 227; praises him, 227, 228; loves him, 229; her wisdom, 229; injures Guyomar, 316; Arthur comes, 317, 318, 319; her father offers her to Arthur, 319; Arthur and she are betrothed, 319, 320, 341, 357; "is glad of her new lord," 320; at the court royal, 322; her likeness to Cleodalis' daughter, 322; arms Arthur, 322; kisses him, 323, 325, 335; gives him a wondrous helm, 323; her father is anxious for the marriage, 360; Merlin postpones it, 360; Arthur goes to Bredigan, 360; asks him to come back soon, 360; the love treason of Launcelot, 393; Merlin taunts Arthur with cowardice, 404; Arthur comes back again, 448; makes great joy of him, 448; the wedding day fixed, 448—451; Lot's scheme to capture her, 456, 472; a plot to kidnap her and to substitute Gonnore, the step-daughter of Cleodalis, 451, 452, 463; her mistress, 452, 463; the marriage, 452, 453, 562, 213, 451; her extreme beauty, 453, 562; led up to the ceremony by Ban and Bors, 453, 562; seized by the plotters, 463, 464; rescued by Ulfyn and Bretel, 463, 464, 465; leaves Arthur and dwells with Galehaut for the love of Launcelot for three years, 466, 323, 470; Arthur's adultery with Gonnore, step-daughter of Cleodalis, 466; the false Gonnore banished, 468, 469; Gawein goes to Logres, 471; Arthur is left with only five hundred men, 471; sets out with Arthur for Bredigan, 472, 473; begs Sir Annestan as chaplain, 472; her cousin and her brother Sodoyne accompany her, 472; has an escort of forty knights, 473; Kay is a true knight to her, 475; in Logres with Arthur, 479, 480; the court royal, 480, 481; accepts the vow of Gawein and his fellows to be her knights, 482, 483; Arthur gives her the charge of his treasures, 483; chooses four clerks to write the adventures of Gawein and his band, 483, 503; watches the tournament of Logres, 485; Gawein sends her ten captured knights, 488, 502; foul play in the tournament, 492; grants her knight a chamber in his palace, 499; makes great joy of Ewein and Gawein, 499; reconciliation of her knights with the Round Table knights, 499—502; claims the ten captive knights as her own, 502; the quest of the Holy Grail, 502, 503; commends Ban's counsel, 505; and Lot's, 506; persuades Arthur to let Gawein go with Lot, 506; Gawein asks her to see that the knights of the Round Table and her knights don't quarrel again, 507; she promises, 507; Arthur's sister, Morgain, shames her, 508; because she discovered the amour between Morgain and Guyomar, 509; glad of the truce with the barons, 561; is loved by Amaunt's son, but her father and his are at strife, so cannot marry him, 565; constant intercourse with him, 565; Merlin comes, 566; the treason of the three Round Table knights, 468; the three knights brought in by Ewein, 573; discord between her knights and the Round Table knights, 574; goes with Arthur to Salisbury, 575; in Garlot, 592; valour of her knights at Garlot, 596; return of Arthur and his men to Camelot, 603; court royal at Camelot, 613, 614, 615; Merlin disguised as a harper enters and sings a lay in her honour, 615; victorious return of Arthur from Toraise, 630; goes with him to Logres, 630; Merlin's return, 635; a strange maiden brings a dwarf, her lover, to be knighted by Arthur, 638; she loathes the dwarf, 638; but Merlin says he is of royal blood, 638; death of her father Leodogan, 678; Arthur's return, 678; the maiden and dwarf come again, 685; Merlin's imprisonment, 694; the fair Beaune dwells with her, 698.

GORGAIN, fellow of Merangis, 349.

GORRE, 108, 145, 146, 176, 623.

GOSENAIN, hardy body, 481.

GOSENGES, Gosengos, son of King Amaunt, 563, 601, 565, 566, 567; his seneschal Nabunal, 644.

GOSNAYN DE STRANGOT, Grosenayne, 220, 292, 294.

GOSNAYNS CADRUS, 212, 217, 220, 352.

GRAAL, the, 32, 59, 173, 229, 304, 326, 341, 502, 520.

GRAALANT, 442.

GRANDILUS, his son Ewein Lionell, 518; castelein of Doucrenefar, 518.

GRANDOYNES, a knight of Round Table, 487.

GRASCIEN, 124, 135; of Trebes, 136, 144, 167, 306, 380, 381, 384, 400, 401, 406, 412, 564, 565, 587, 588, 589, 650, 699; death, 699.

GRASSIENS LI BLOYS, 151.

GREECE, 340, 437, 676.

GREKES, 146.

GRETE YNDE, king of, 577.

GRINGALET, a horse of Clarion, 510, 512, 513, 514, 532, 533, 534, 540, 541, 544, 549, 553, 554, 555, 587; Gawein, 690, 697.

GRIRET DE LAMBALL, 489; Grires de lambal, 212 Guyret de lamball, 566, 220, 366, 682.

GRISANDOLL, alias Anable, daughter of Matan, q.v.; Grisandolus, 421, 423—429, 431, 432, 435; wife of Julius Cesar that Gawein slew, 420, 423, 436, 437.

GROALES, king, 243.

GROINGE poire mole, "cat nose," 321.

GUEHERET, 285, 294, 388, 453, 481.

GUYGUERON, king, 560; a rich baron of the land of Sorloys, 561.

GUYNAS LE BLEYS, Guynas le Bloy, 135, 157.

GUYNEBANS, Guynebande, 138, 139, 170, 194, 195.

GUYNEHAM? 198, 199, 200.

GUYOMAR, knight, 316, 317, 321, 334, 335, 337; cousin germain of Lynados, 348, 351, 352, 470, 480, 488, 507, 508, 509, 566, 618.

GUYONCE, senescall of Cleolas, 578.

GYNEBANS, the clerke, 322.

GYNEBANT, 268, 350, 360—363.

HALOWMESSE, Halowtide, 63, 97, 100, 123, 124, 140, 560, 565.

HARDOGABRANT, king, 152, 255, 277, 440; a saisne, 441, 442; is 25 feet long, 444, 510, 516, 575, 585, 588, 600, 602; nephew to king Amynadus, 152; his sister, 175, 185; *see* Carnyle, 185; his cousin germain, 535; his nephews, 592, 593; chief lord of all Saxons, 592.

HARDRANS, king, 248.

HAUELL? Hoel, 662.

HELAIN, king, 561.

HELAYN, daughter of Pelles, of Lytenor, etc., 229, 520, 636.

HELAYNE, queen, 125, 144, 380, 398, 399, 400, 412—416, 603, 608, 612, 630, 698, 699; her sister, 380, 398, 399, 400, 412, 413, 415, 416, 603, 612, 630; her son Lancelot, 698, 699; her sister's sons Lyonel and Bohort, 698.

HERCULES, 339, 340.

HERMANS, erle of Tripill, and slain by a knave, 662.

HEROARS, king, 342, 343.

HERVY DE REVILL, 407, 206, 218, 220, 226, 329, 330, 337, 342, 343, 345, 351, 383, 410, 458, 485, 497, 499, 500, 501, 597, 618, 627.

HERVY DE RIVEL, 470.

HERVY THE RIVELL, 205.

HESTOR (*see* Gestoire), king of Lubye, 663; slain by Arthur, 663.

HOEL, duke of Tintagel, Uter goes with his wife Ygerne to Cardoel to the Pendragon's feast, q.v., 63, 64; Uter Pendragon's love for Ygerne, 64 (see Uter Pendragon and Arthur); greatly honoured, 64; quits the court, 64; again at Cardoel, 64; Uter Pendragon asks his permission to give a cup to Ygerne, 67; his knight Bretell, 67; finds his wife in tears, 68; she tells him of Uter Pendragon's lust for her, 68; is wroth, 68; returns suddenly to Tintagel, 68, 69; Uter Pendragon is furious, 69; refuses to return to court, 69; Uter Pendragon prepares to attack him, 69, 70; is defied, 70; puts Ygerne in Tintagel Castle, 70; and takes refuge in another castle, 70, 71; attacked by Uter Pendragon, 70, 71; Uter Pendragon's artifice to seduce Ygerne, 76, 77; dies, 77, 78, 140; his eldest daughter wife of King Lot of Orcanye, 84, 85, 86, 121; his five daughters, 121, 122, 177.

HOEL OF NAUNTES, his niece, 646; his sister, 646, 647; of the litle Bretayne, 662.

HOOT, son of Arthur and Lysanor, 171, 475.

HUCENT, a poet, 259.

HUMBIR (river), 259.

HUNGRE, 186.

HURTANT, 254.

HUYDECAN (city), 174.

IDONAS, knight of the Round Table, 496.

IRELONDE, Irlonde, 57, 205, 208, 228, 625.

ISDRAS, *see* Ysdras, 355.

ISELONDE, 194, 252.

ISLES, king of the, 578; people of the, 626, 627.

JASON, 339, 340.

JEROAS, 137.

JEROHAS LENCHES, 212.

JESHURALEM, 676.

JHERUSALEN, 632.

JONAP, giant, 325.

JORDAN, 76.

JOSEP ABARAMATHIE, 23, 59, 61, 326; bishop, 502.

JUDAS, 59.

JUDAS MAKABEUS, 341.

JUES, 59.

JULIUS, Emperor of Rome, 303.

JULIUS CEZAR, Julyus Cesar, Emperor of Rome, killed by Gawein, 420, 423, 426—431, 435, 436, 438 ; his daughter Ffoldate, 423, 434, 437 ; his wife Avenable, q.v. ; his first empress, q.v., empress of Rome.

JURDAN, 76. *See* Jordan.

KAHADINS, king, ally of Rion, 616.

KARISMANX, a knight of the Round Table, 487.

KARLION, 108, 109, 120.

KAY, second son of Antor, 88, 453 ; his mother, 88, 135 ; born, 89 ; sent away, 89, 90, 112, 135 ; knighted, 97 ; Arthur brings him Escalibur, 101 ; thinks by it to be king, 101 ; says he drew it, 101 ; his father incredulous, 101 ; confesses his ruse, 101 ; gives it to his father, 101 ; Arthur replaces it, 101 ; he can't draw it, 101 ; Arthur's steward, 102, 104, 109 ; chief banner-bearer, 116, 136, 405, 453, 475, 480, 484, 488, 489, 596, 614, 645, 649, 575, 571, 504, 661, 475, 596 ; rescues Arthur, 119 ; chases the rebel kings, 119 ; serves at the banquet to Ban and Bors, 133 ; rushes into the tourney, 135 ; his character, 135 ; he is a japing, reviling man, 136, 636 ; unhorses Lydonas and Grascien, 136 ; cries "Clarence !" 136 ; praised by Arthur, Ban, and Bors, 136 ; attacked by Blioberes, 136 ; Gifflet comes to the rescue, 136 ; attacked by Placidus, 136 ; rescued by Gifflet, 137 ; his followers join in the melée, 137 ; honours awarded him, 138 ; in council, 141 ; leads Arthur's first battalion, 151 ; the banner, 151, 155, 596 ; Ulfyn comes to the rescue, 155 ; goes himself to the rescue, 156 ; is unhorsed, 156 ; helped by Gifflet, 156 ; helps Antor, 158 ; helped by Arthur, 159 ; meets Merlin, 169 ; an incident of his youth, 180 ; aids Arthur at Tamelide, 212 ; overthrows Sonygrenx, 214 ; fights a giant, 216 ; upsets Dandevart, 217 ; is whole and sound, 224 ; in the battle with Arthur against Rion, 337, 349 ; tries to dissuade Bors from a single combat with Amaunt, 366 ; bears the great dragon banner in the battle before Trebes, 383, 393, 398, 399 ; people of Trebes scared by the fiery banner 399 ; Merlin snatches the banner from him, 405, 406 ; finds Arthur's shield on the field of battle, 410 ; fears Arthur is dead, and searches for him, 410 ; finds him with Ban and Bors, and restores the shield, 410 ; lodged in Trebes castle, 412 ; at the marriage of Arthur and Gonnore, 453, 454 ; in the tournament at Toraise, 459 ; goes to help Arthur, 475 ; his character detailed, 475 ; slays by treason Lohoot, the son of Arthur, 475 ; Percival by Galoys is accused of the deed, 475 ; at Arthur's court royal at Logres, 480, 481 ; the tournament at Logres proposed by him, 484 ; his deeds in it, 488, 489 ; serves at the high dais, 504 ; sent by Arthur to stop the treason of the Round Table knights, 468—473 ; takes the great banner to Salisbury, 575 ; it has a red cross under the dragon on it, 575 ; at Salisbury, 579 ; in the battle before Garlot, 596 ; also that before Clarence, 601 ; banner-bearer again, 601 ; at the court royal at Camelot, 614, 615, 619 ; the unknown maiden and her dwarf lover, 636 ; scorns the dwarf, 636 ; when Arthur agrees to knight the dwarf he wants to set his spur on, but the maiden stops him, 637 ; the adventure of the giant, 645, 649 ; the giant slain by Arthur, 649 ; in the battle between Arthur's host and the Romans, 661 ; succours Bediuer, 661 ; overthrown, 661.

KAY-DESTRANX, his nephew Kehedin, 251, 293 ; squire to Carados, 249 ; Carados wants to knight him, 249 ; but he says he will only be knighted by Arthur, 249 ; meets Dodynell, 251 ; goes with Dodynell to Logres, 252, 258 ; leads a band of squires against the Saxons, 291, 292, 377 ; his prowess, 294 ; meets Arthur at Logres, 373 ; vigil, 374 ; dubbed knight, 374, 449 ; given a treasure sword, 374 ; the banquet, 375 ; in command under Gawein, 378 ; his prowess at Trebes, 396 ; nephew of Carados, 449 ; at Arthur's Logres court royal, 480, 481 ; at the Salisbury conference, 577.

KEHEDIN DE BELLY, 212 (251).

KEHEDIN LE BEL, 349.

KEHEDIN LE BENS, Kehedin li bens, 251 ; nephew of Kay Destranx, 251, 252, 377, 378 ; goes with Kay Destranx to Logres, 252, 258 ; he and Kay Destranx lead the squires against the Saxons, 291, 377 ; meets Arthur, 373 ; nephew of the King of Strangore, 373 ; dubbed knight after a vigil, 374, 449 ; is given a treasure sword, 374 ; the banquet, 374 ; in command under Gawein, 378 ; at Arthur's Logres court royal, 480, 481 ; vows to find Merlin, 682.

KEHEDIN THE LITILL, 294, 396, 407.

KEHEDINS LE PETIT, 480, 518, 577 ; his brother, 400, 518, 577.

KEHENYNS, knight, 342, 343.

KINGS, four mighty Saxon, 585, 586, 588.

KINGS, the twenty, 440, 441, 575, 585, (thirty kings) 521.
KNIGHTS of King Lot, 486, 487, 490, 491, 494, 495.
KNIGHTS of Orcanye, 495, 496.
KYNGNENANS, king, 248.

LA DOLEROUSE GARDE, 441, 256, 445.
LADRIS DE LA DOLEROUSE GARDE, 256, (445 ?).
LADY DAY, 120, 525, 546, 556, 557, 558.
LADY DE LAK, 401.
LADY OF ROESTOK, her sister, 543—546; cousin germain, 543—546.
LADY OF THE LONDE SUSTEYNE, 361, 362, 363.
LADYMUS, a knight of the Round Table, 487.
LADYNAS, Lydonas, Ladunas, a knight of Benoyc, 133, 136, 151; de Benoyk, 212.
LAIDON, 222.
LAK, king of the grete ynde, 577; his general, 594, 601.
LAK DE LOSANE, 664, 665, 666; cat-devil there, 664, 665, 669, 679; mountain de Lak, 665, 666, 669.
LAMBALL (country), 563, 565 (212, 220, 366, 419), 566.
LAMBEGES, Lambuges, 144, 564.
LAND of king Clamedin, 560; Guygueron, 560; Helain, 561; Pellynor, 561; Pelles of Lystenoys, 561; duke Roches, 561.
LANDALUS, a Saxon, 597.
LANDONS, nephew of Chadlis, 321.
LANDOUNS OF CARMELIDE, Round Table knight, 598.
LANNERIUR, 236.
LANOR DE BETINGES, a Saxon, 595, 596, 602.
LAUDALUS DE LA PLAYNE, one of Arthur's knights, 682.
LAUEREP, town? 313? castle of leuerop, 546.
LAUNALL, 459, 480.
LAUNCELOT, Lancelot, 326, 393, 401, 466, 610, 676, 699; de lak, 527.
LAWS of a tournament, 456.
[the] LAYS HARDY, 212, 349; Lait, 349; lylais the hardy, 352.
LEGATE, Pope's, 560, 577.
LEIRE, leyer, river, 306, 385, 386.
LENTON, 142.
LEODEGAN, his wife, 114, 212, 213, 225, 465; king of Tamelide (Carmelide, 404), 114, 173, 175; an old man, 114; a widower, 114; his only child Gonnore, 114, 448, 450, 465, 623, 678; at war with Rion, 114; Merlin counsels Arthur to help him, 115, 123, 141, 142; his daughter will be married to Arthur, 115; king of Carmelide, 123, 141, 450; the knights of the Round Table aid him, 141; Rion has warred against him for two years, 173; Arthur, Ban, and Bors go to rescue him, 175, 202; defeated by Rion, 202; Rion besieges Nablaise, 202; the arrival of Arthur and his company, 203; the forty-two knights, 203; Arthur, Ban, and Bors are incognito, 203; is offered their aid against Rion, 203; confers with the Round Table, 203; accepts their services, and summons his forces, 204, 205; his army assembles at Toraise, 205; the men of Rion ravage the land, 205; they come to Toraise, 205; his men make ready for battle, 205; his steward Cleodalis, 205; Hervy the rivell commands the Round Table, 205; the battle begins, 206, 207; overthrown and taken prisoner, 208; Gonnore weeps for pity of her father, 208; rescued by the forty-two fellows, 209; Gonnore is glad, 210; praises Ban, 211; the marvellous forty-two, 211, 212; the peril of Cleodalis, 212, 213; how he had wronged Cleodalis by violating his wife, 212, 213; Cleodalis forgives him and keeps still loyal to him, 212, 213, 214; his wife, 212; Gonnore, 213; the two Gonnores, 213, 214; shuts Cleodalis's wife up from him for five years, 214; asks Hervy to join Merlin, 218; felled by Sorfarin, 221; Rion swears vengeance, 223; safe in Toraise, 224; his generosity, 224; bids Arthur and his company into the palace, 225; makes Gonnore dress richly, 225; she waits upon Arthur, 225; notices the respect shown to Arthur, 225, 226; wishes Arthur would spouse Gonnore, 226; in a brown study, 226; his gloomy conduct causes complaint, 226; rouses himself, and is merry, 226; Arthur gets pensive too, 227; makes Gonnore serve Arthur kneeling, 228; Ban tells him that he wonders why Gonnore has not yet been married, 228; says he's been too busy, 228; would like to marry her to a bachelor who could defend the land, 228; says he thinks he knows one, 228; Merlin and Bors see through it and laugh, 228; tries to find out who they are, 229; notices the great respect shown Arthur, 229; banquets, 231, 257; honours Arthur greatly, 257; Merlin counsels him to arm for battle, 314, 315; his cousin germain Guyomar, 316; the three kings and Merlin come, 317: Merlin's advice, 317; he is overwhelmed with grief, 318; Merlin says they seek a wife for Arthur, 319; he

says they need go no further, for Arthur shall have Gonnore, 319; brings Gonnore in, 319; gives her to Arthur, 319, 341, 357; Merlin tells him who Arthur is, 320; his joy, 320; does homage to Arthur, 320; prepares his army, 321, 330; he and Cleodalis lead the tenth division, 321; holds court royal, 322; slain by Bertelanx the traitor, 322; the two lovers kiss, 322, 323; a fierce onset, 332; his nephew Saydoynes comes to the rescue, 334; they smite in fiercely, 335; chases Rion, 337; he and Cleodalis get separated from their men in the dark, 347; the giants see they are but two, and turn on them, 348; overthrown, 348; Cleodalis gives him his horse, 348; he repents his foul deed to Cleodalis, 348; his knights think he is lost, 349; Amaunt takes advantage of his troubles, 350, 351, 365; is in great peril, 353; the noble truth of Cleodalis, 353, 354; asks Cleodalis to forgive his foul deed, 354; fight together against their foes till midnight, 355, 615; Merlin comes to the rescue, 355; horsed again, 355; they all return to their tents at dawn, 357; gives all the spoil to Arthur, 357; goes to Toraise, 358; asks Arthur to marry Gonnore, 360; Merlin says they must wait a little, 360; Arthur's departure, 360, 404; Arthur's return, 448; at Toraise, 448, 471; Arthur's wedding day fixed, 448, 449, 451; Merlin comes, 451; the marriage of Arthur and Gonnore, 213, 451, 452, 453; his chaplain Sir Annistan, 453, 472; the tournament afterwards, 455; hears of the plot to kidnap his daughter, 465, 466, 468; leads Arthur to Gonnore, 466; his knight Bertelak, 466; Bertelak's complaint, 466, 467; banishes the false Gonnore, 468, 469; Bertelak has slain a knight in revenge, 467, 469; brings Bertelak to judgment, 469, 470; banishes him, 470; Bertelak vows revenge, 470; Gawein takes leave and goes to Logres, 471; Ban and Bors, and Arthur and Gonnore take their leave, 472; Merlin leaves, 472, 473; does not go to the Salisbury assembly, 567; Rion prepares to re-attack him, 616; besieged by Rion in Toraise, 616, 617, 624; makes a stout defence, 618; in the battle between Arthur and Rion outside Toraise, 626, 627; Arthur slays Rion, 630; departure of Arthur from Toraise, 630; his death, 678.

LEODOBRON, king, 191.

LEONCES DE PAERNE, a knight of Ban and Bors, 129; is left in charge of their lands, 130; cousin of Ban and of Bors, 143, 307, 381; gathers his people together before Benoyk, 144; Merlin comes, 144; goes with Merlin to the Rochell, 146; arrives at Great Britain, 147; leads Ban's second ward at the battle of Bredigan, 151; the battle, 152, 161; his prowess, 161; keeps watch, 166; returns to guard the lands, 167; Merlin comes, 305, 308; Merlin prophesies, 305, 306; counselled by Merlin, 306, 315, 381; is to lie in ambush, 306; Merlin goes away, 307, 379; cousin to Ban and Bors, 305, 315; prepares to resist the invaders, 379; at Benoyk, 380; nigh cousin to Banyn, 381; goes to the forest of Briogne, 381; his nephew, 381; Merlin comes, 384; his host gets ready for battle, 384; before Trebes, 400; goes to aid Pharien, 403, 409; his valour, 403; Merlin comes, 564; is told by Merlin to get the host ready and go to Salisbury Plain, 564; is to carry a red cross banner, 564; agrees to follow Merlin's advice, 565; goes to the rescue of Morgeins, Ventres' wife, 587, 588, 589; Merlin tells him to start for Camelot with his host, 623; keeps the land against Claudas, 650; succours some of Arthur's knights, 670; his valour, 699.

LEONELL, wife of Blaires, 204.

LEONES DE PAERNE, Leonces, 129, 130, 143, 144, 146, 151, 161, 166, 167; cousin to Ban and Bors, 305—308, 315.

LEONOYS, Leoneys, 254, 285, 291, 295, 372, 477.

LEONPADYS OF THE PLAYN, 212.

LERIADOR, 671, 673, 674.

LESPINE, castle de, 562.

LESPINOYE, a plain, 509.

LEYCESTRE, 312.

LILLE, Caues de, 682.

LITTLE BRITAIN, 121, 124, 146, 147, 166, 173, 402, 563, 564, 662, 690, 692.

LOGRES, see New Troy and Bloy Bretaigne, 57, 67, 97, 104, 106, 107, 110, 120, 121, 123, 124, 131, 132, 134, 135; fellowship of the Table of, 136, 141, 149, 180, 186, 191, 192, 194, 196, 200, 201, 230, 240, 252, 258, 262, 283, 301, 303, 314, 316, 341, 374, 376, 378, 379, 401—404, 406, 420, 447, 449, 450, 455, 462, 471, 472, 473, 479, 484, 502, 550, 562, 566, 573, 579, 598 630, 631, 635, 643, 644, 658, 674, 676, 678, 682, 690, 692.

LOGRYN, Logryns, 147.

LOHOOT, son of Arthur, and slayn by Kay, 475.

LONDE DES PASTURES, Londe of pastures, 114, 616.

LONDE of GEAUNTES, 114.

LONDON, *i.e.* Logres, Arthur's chief city, 95, 120.

LONOR, the lestregues (duke), a Saxon, 593.

LOONOIS, 108, 146.

LORD of the DOLEROUSE GARDE, 445.

LORD of the STREITE WEYES, 247.

LORDE of the FOREST PERILOUSE, 445.

LORDE of the STREITE MARCHE, 247, 249, 558.

LOSERES (land), 601.

LOTH, Kynge in Bretayne, named Constance, 23.

LOTH of ORCANYE (Loot, 439; Looth, 486); is to marry Hoel's eldest daughter, 84, 121, 179, 230, 393; consents, 85; the marriage, 86; his sons are Gawein, Agrauuayn, Gaheret, Gaheries, and Mordred, 86, 122, 179, 230, 439, 449, 450, 462, 518, 519, 524, 545, 554, 555, 557, 591; goes to Arthur's court royal, 108; holds Arthur in disdain, 108; battle with Arthur, 117, 118; unhorsed by Arthur, 118; upset by Kay, 119; Merlin prophesies Gawein's disobedience, 122; the great battle at Bredigan, 146, 165; has a fearful dream, 153; upset by Kay, 156; revenged and rehorsed by Aguysans, 156; the battle turns against him, 160, 162, 163, 165; smites Ban, 164; who returns the blow, 164; defeated, 165; in trouble with the Saxons, 175; counsels the kings, 175; goes to the city of Gale, 179; assembles a great host, 179; Arthur's amour with Lot's wife, 180, 181; his wife wants Gawein to make peace between Lot and Arthur, 182, 251; the Saxons ravage his lands, 254, 258, 291, 295; loses many men with fighting the Saxons, 295, 349; retires with his wife to Glocedon, 295; curses the day he quarrelled with Arthur, 295; his little son Mordred two years old, 295; his wife captured by the Saxons, 296; his squire escapes with his little son, 296, 298; his wife ill-used by the Saxons, 298, 299; Gawein kills Taurus and rescues her, 299, 300, 301; returns to Glocedon, 298; his cousins, 292, 373; bewails his lost wife and son, 312, 439; his sons determine to make him at peace with Arthur before they bring back his wife, 304; she is with Arthur at Logres, 374, 449; the expedition against Saisnes to Clarence, 438, 449; leads the eleventh ward, 439; sorrowful, 439; a night attack, 439—444; his courage, 443; discomfited, 444; another onset, 444, 445; totally beaten, 446, 447, 449; goes home, 447, 439; hears Arthur is at Logres, 449, 450; is glad his wife and son Mordred are safe, 450; but angry about his grown-up sons' vow, 450; resolves to get back his wife, 450; and to capture Arthur's so as to be quits, 450, 472; sends spies, 450, 472; lays an ambush, 472; rushes out on Arthur, 473; borne to ground by Arthur's spear, 474; slays Arthur's horse, 474; Arthur preserved, 474; a hard fight, 474, 475; overthrown by Gawein, 476, 562; who will not embrace him until he does homage to Arthur, 477, 560; makes peace and does homage, 478, 479, 480, 518, 557, 559, 560; goes to Logres with Arthur, 479, 480; his knights in the tournament of Logres, 486, 487, 490, 491, 494, 495; persuades Gawein to cease the tournament, 498; in council with Arthur, 504, 507; a truce with the princes proposed by him, 505; so that a general attack may be made on the Saxons, 505, 556; Ban wants him to go as ambassador, 505; Arthur and Gonnore agree, 505, 506; will take his four sons with him, 506, 546, 559, 561; preparing for the start, 507; starts at midnight, 509; encounter with Saxons, 510, 511; unhorsed, 511; horsed and rescued by Gawein, 512; cuts his way through the Saxons, 512; misses Gawein and is sorrowful, 513, 514; sees Gawein surrounded with Saxons, 514, 515; slaughtering Saxons, 515; Gueheret unhorsed by Saxons, 515, 516; Gueheret rescued by Gawein, 516; they lodge at a forester's house, 517, 518, 524; the country they are in belongs to king Clarion of Northumberland, 518; the forester [Mynoras] talks of Arthur's court, 518, 519; Mynoras has friends and kin at Arthur's court, 518; tells him who he is and his mission, 519; Mynoras will tell Clarion Lot is coming, 519, 556; takes leave of Mynoras, 524, 525, 526; Agravain's foul thoughts, 526, 527, 528; meets Elizer's squire, Lydonas, flying from a host of Saxons, 528; goes to the rescue of Elizer, 528—531; tells Lydonas who he is, 529; in great peril, 532, 533; rescued by Gaheries, 532, 533; felled by Pignoras, 533; horsed by Gawein, 534; the quarrel of Gaheries and Agravain, 535; is angry with Agravain, 536; his sons' quarrel, 537; Gueheret insults him, 538; sends the captured sumpters as a present to Mynoras, 538, 539, 555; hears of Gawein's midnight rescue of a lady, 544; at Roestok castle, 545, 546; starts for Leuerop castle, 546; at Cambenyk, 546; tussle with the Saxons, 546; to the rescue of Escam of Cambenyk, 547—551; calls Gawein to rescue Gueheret and Agravain, 552; horses Escam, 553; utter rout of the Saxons, 554; tells Escam who they are, 554, 555; entry into Cambenyk, 555; talks with Escam about peace with Arthur, 556; Aguysant agrees to the conference, 546, 556; Escam agrees to the conference, 557; Escam by his advice sends messengers to bid all the rebel barons to the conference, 557; go to North Wales and thence to Arestuell, 557, 558; the conference, 558, 559; Gawein addresses the barons from Arthur, 559; confirms all Gawein says, 559; Urien is angry at his taking Arthur's part, 559; a truce, 560; leads a large host to Salisbury, 561, 565, 575; tells Arthur of the truce, 561; consultation with the princes, 580; urges them to do homage to Arthur, 581; they demur, 581; Arthur speaks to them, 582; Merlin advises a start for Clarence, 582; maims Syuarus, 591; leads the fourth ward at Garlot, 594; in the battle before Clarence, 601; goes to Camelot, 603; reassembly for battle, 623; battle with Rion's host, 625; unhorsed, 625; horsed by Merlin, 625; prepares for the invasion of Britain by Luce, 643; in Arthur's eighteenth division, 659; goes against the devil-cat, 666; Loot's wife is Arthur's sister, 179, 372, 373; her sons, 179, 295, 372; Arthur lies with her unknown, 180, 393; birth of Mordred, 181, 393; talks to Gawein about Arthur, 181; her three sons to join Arthur, 183, 184; their prowess, 188; at Glocedon, 295; her beauty, 298, 376; captured by Saxons, 296, 298, 312; her sorrow, 298; ill-used by Taurus, 298, 299; rescued by Gawein, 300—303, 376; tells her Mordred is safe, 301; sorrow for Lot, 300, 301; conveyed to Arondell, 301; sees Mordred, 301; goes to Logres, 301, 449; welcome, 301; her sons' vow, 301, 314, 449; Arthur enters Logres, 374; goes to meet him with Morgne le fee her sister, 374; Arthur's joy, 374; all go to the palace, 374; Gawein takes leave, 377; her sister Morgain, 507.

LUCAS THE BOTILLER, son of a castelein, 133; of great prowess, 133; the banquet at Logres, 133; cousin-german to Gifflet, 134; the tournament at Logres, 134, 135, 136, 138; upsets Blios, 136; is praised, 138; governor, 143; the battle at Bredigan, 151, 156, 158, 159; on the watch, 166; one of the forty-two knights, 212; assists Cleodalis, 214, 216, 217, 220, 224; the battle with Rion, 337, 349; at the marriage of Arthur and Gonnore, 453, 454; in the tournament at Toraise, 455, 459; at Arthur's Logres court royal, 480, 481; his deeds in the Logres tournament, 489; serves at the high daïs, 504.

LUCE, emperor of Rome, 639—643, 650, 651; his sister's son Tutillius, 652, 653, 656, 657, 660, 662; slain by Gawein, 663, 664, 669.

LYBEE, Lubee, country of, 656,663; lord of, *see* Gestoire.

LYDARUS, king, 248.

LYDONAS, squire to Elizer, 522, 523, 524, 528, 529, 538, 539, 555, 584.

LYONELL, son of Bors, 367, 401, 698.

LYSANOR, daughter of earl Sevain, 171.

LYTENOYS, Lystenoys, 173, 229, 326, 519, 528, 539, 561, 577, 583, 584, 594, 636.

MADAGOT, knight of the Black Isle tournoye, 345.

MADELANS, 198, 200, 201.

MADYENS LE CRESPES, 135.

MAGALOES, a Saxon, 593.

MAGDALEYN, 313.

MAGLAANT, 281.

MAGLAAS, the riche kinge of Iselonde, 252.

MAGLANS, 244, 245, 253, 254, 255, 286, 287, 289.

MAGLORAS (a Saxon) king, 236, 587; slain, 591; nephew of Hardogabran, 593.

MAGONDES, king, 243, 245, 246, 255.

MAGORAS, 345.

MAHIDRAP, king, 342, 345.

MAIDEN and DWARF, 635, 638, 679, 682, 685, 690, 691; her name Beaune, 686; his Evadeam, 697, 698.

MALES LE BRUNS, 205, 598, 618.

MALET, 217.

MALOHAUT, 236.

MALONANT, a city, 184.

MALORE, cousin to Ffreelant, 220, 222, 223.

MALTAILLEES, king, 342, 345.

MANDALET, king, 191.

MANDONES, kin to Rion, 346.

MARASSE, castel of, 605, 622, 671, 672, *see* Agravadain, lord of, 670; his daughter, 670.

MARCELL, a Roman knight slain by Gawein, 653; his uncle, 653.

MARCHE, castel of the, 677.

MARES, 158, 441.

MARGALYVAUNT, 217.

MARGAMOUR, 164.

MARGANORS, 165, 233, 234.

MARGANS, king, 152.

MARGANT, a king, slain, 618.

MARGNAM, steward to Roy de Cent Chevaliers, 158, 233, 234.

MARGOIRES, 236.

MARGONDRE, king, 244; cousin-german to Aungis the Saxon, 600. *See* Margounces.

MARGOUNCES, Saxon king, 600; slain, 600.
MARGOUNDES, seneschal of Sorloys, 578, 601.
MARGOUNS, 591—594; slain, 595; botiller of King Pignores, 591, 592, 595.
MARGRAT, a Saxon, 510.
MARKE, Lord of Roestock, 256.
MARKE DE LA ROCHE, 135, 151.
MARMYADOISE, Rion's sword, 339, 340, 346, 347, 352, 353, 357, 648.
MARTIN-Masse, 96.
MARTYN, Maister, 23.
MATAN, a young knight of the baron's side, 442.
MATAN, duke of Almayne, 421; his daughter Grisandoll or Anable, q.v., his wife, and his son Patrick, 435, 436.
MATHEU, 59.
MATHUCUS, king, 255.
MAUDRAS, 673, 674.
MAUNDALIS, Saxon steward, slain, 534, 535.
MAUS, a Roman (? prince), 656.
MAXIMIAN, lord of Bretaigne and Rome, 642.
MEDE, 661, 662; king of, 661. See Boclus.
MEDEA, wife of Jason, 340.
MEHAIGNYES, *see* Alain de Lille, 229.
MELEKINS, Malaquyn, saxon Castelein, 593, 595.
MELIADUS, a Saxon, 593, 595.
MELIADUS LE BLOYS, 212.
MELIADUS THE BLAKE, 151.
MELIAGANS, 238.
MENIADUS, 236.
MEODALIS, 461.
MERANGES DE PORLENGES, Meranges de Porlesgues, 212, 217, 220, 349, 363; his sister, 518.
MERLIN, of Northumberlande, 436, 437, his aunts, 479; his grandfather Merlin, 15; his mother, 33, 723; begotten of the devil, 302, 405; the fiends' plot, 10, 302, 405; his mother's sorrow, 11; consults Blase, 7, 22; accused, 13; birth of her son, 14; names it Merlin, 15; again accused, 16, 17; to be burnt, 16, 17, 121; saved by her son, 21; a nun, 121; his birth, 14; counsels his mother, 15, 16; taken for a devil, 16; pleads for his mother, 17; accuses the judge's mother, 18, 20; confesses his parentage, 20; prophesies, 21; delivers his mother, 21; Blase to make a book of his sayings, 22, 23, 32, 327; life in danger, 23; sends Blase after the Grail, 23; appears to the sages, 28; life is sought, 29; takes his pursuers to his mother, 30; and to Blase, 31; their terror, 31; sends Blase to Northumberland, 32; takes leave of his mother, 33; the churl story, 33; priest's child story, 34; counsels the messengers, 34; goes to Vortiger, 36; clears up the tower mystery, 37; and the dragon mystery, 39, 42; releases the clerks, 40; foretells Vortiger's downfall, 40, 41; takes leave of Vortiger, 41; goes to Blase, 41; sought for by Pendragon, 42; leaves Blase, 42; meets the messengers, 43; Pendragon comes, 44; he sees Pendragon, 44, 45; disguises himself, 43, 46; goes to warn Uter, 46; back to Blase, 46; goes disguised to Uter, 47; reveals himself, 47; proves his identity, 49; will help Pendragon and Uter, 49; Pendragon to send for the Saracens, 49; advises Pendragon, 50; barons jealous, 50; trap laid, 51, 52; story of the baron, 51, 53; goes to Blase, 53; returns to court, 54; Pendragon and Uter swear to obey him, 55; his plans, 55; goes to Blase, 56; at court, 57; builds Stonehenge, 57, 58; tells Uter Pendragon of his parentage, 58; of the source of his power, 58; of the Graal, 59; designs the Round Table, 59; to found it at Cardoell, 60; chooses fifty knights for it, 60; the vacant seat, 61; goes to Blase, 61; three years away, 61; his enemies' spite, 61, 62; on the alert, 62; said to be dead, 62; fate of one enemy, 63; goes to court, 63; the vacant seat, 63; appears disguised to Ulfyn, 72, 74; discovered, 74; plan to seduce Ygerne, 75, 121; goes with Uter Pendragon and Ulfyn to Tintagel, 76; disguised as Bretel, 76; plan succeeds, 77; is promised the child, 78; comes to Uter Pendragon, 80, 302; praises Ulfyn, 80; arranges for the child, 80; tells Uter Pendragon to marry Ygerne, 81; quits Uter Pendragon, 81; goes to Blase, 81; to Ulfyn, 87; sees Uter Pendragon, 87; guilty still, 87; his plan, 88; goes to Blase, 88; secretly to Ulfyn, 89; to Uter Pendragon, 92; foretells Uter Pendragon's death, 93; shows him how to beat the Danes, 92, 94; goes to the dying Uter Pendragon, 94; death of Uter Pendragon, 95; sent for by the nobles, 95; the vacant throne, 95: tells the barons to wait till Yule, 96; goes to Blase, 97; to Karlion, 109; barons send for him, 109; his advice about Arthur, 109; says Arthur is of good blood, 109; tells them to bring Antor, Ulfyn, and Arthur before him, 109; barons send Bretell for them, 110; they arrive, 110; tells Arthur's history, 111; barons resist still, 113; warns them, 113; counsels Arthur, 114; tells him of

King Rion, 114, 115; of the daughter Gonnore, 115; promises his help to Arthur for ever, 115; the dragon banner, 115; sets the barons' tents on fire, 116, 120, 129; counsels Arthur, 121; explains his nature, 123; makes Arthur swear secrecy, 133; counsels Arthur, 131; goes to Arthur, 131; arranges the reception of Ban and Bors, 132; accounted the greatest astronomer, 133; tells Arthur of the messengers, 138; Ban wants to see him, 138; sent for by Arthur, 139; he goes, 139; is questioned by Guynebande, 139; tells Ban the history of Arthur, 139; and that Arthur is his liege lord, 139; instructs Guynebande, 143; swears that Arthur is the son of Uter Pendragon, 140; Ulfyn corroborates him, 140; in council, 141; tells Arthur to marry Gonnore, 141; to go to Carmelide for a year or two, 141; Ban withstands this, 142; foretells that Arthur will gain Leodogan's kingdom, 142; and the battle with the barons, 142; goes to collect reinforcements, 142, 143, 144; and to Blase, 143; to Little Britain, 143; to Gannes, 143; delivers the ring taken to Leonces, 144; leads the reinforcements by ship to Arthur, 144, 146; the seven kings vow revenge on Merlin, 145, 148; the ships arrive at Bloy Bretaigne, 146; Arthur's death, 147; his precautions, 147; joins Arthur with the army, 148; goes to the three kings, 148; arrives at Logres same day, 149; says that Arthur will lose only twenty-four men in the battle, but the three kings, thousands, 149; leads them to Bredigan, 150; shows Arthur a great treasure in the ground, 150; prepares for the battle, 151; rides in front of the army, 151; attacks the sentries, 153; appears to Arthur, 165; tells him to return to his kingdom, 166; goes to Blase, 166; Arthur sojourns at Bredigan, 167; the great churl, 167; is recognised by Ulfyn, 168; resumes his usual form, 170; helps Arthur's amour, 171; his counsel, 173, 175; barons fear his power, 173, 175; love for Nimiane, 185, 607; goes with Arthur to Leodogan, 202, 203, 212, 257; sojourns with Blaire, 204; bears Arthur's dragon-banner, 206, 209; town gate flies open at his bidding, 206; the great battle with the Saxons, 206, 207; raises a storm of wind, 209; rescues Leodogan, 209; and the knights of the Round Table, 210; the marvel of the dragon banner, 210, 219; aids Cleodalis, 211, 215; his advice, 216, 224; rests his men, 218; is joined by the Round Table knights, 218; charges the Saxons, 218, 219, 221; calls Arthur coward, 221; king Leodogan gives them the spoil, 224, 225; his advice, 225; Gonnore serves Arthur, 225; sees Leodogan, wants Arthur to marry Gonnore, 228; tells Arthur of his nephews, 230; says he must go to Logres, 258; goes to Blase, 259, 260, 261; in disguise to Camelot, 261; questioned by Gawein, 262, 263; tells him of Seigramor, 263, 302; battle with Orienx, 265, 266; again disguised, 269, 270, 279; goes to Bredigan, 279; his crafty letter, 279, 280, 290; disguised, 294; goes to Leoneys in Orcanye, 295; disguised as a knight, 296, 302; sends Gawein and his company to the rescue of Mordred and his mother, 296, 301, 302; discovered, 302; Blase's books ordered by Merlin, 327; goes to Blase, 303; tells him he is going to Benoyk, 303; his fears for Ban and Bors, 303; the wolf that shall bind the leopard, 304, 563; foretells his own fate, 304; the quest of the St. Grail, 304; goes to Leonces at Benoyk, 305, 308, 315; takes him into confidence, 305, 315, 381; the serpent shall overcome the leopard, 305; tells Leonces to victual and arm his castles, 306; foretells an incursion into Benoyk, 306; foretells the great battle with the Saxons and giants, 307; goes to the forest of Briok to meet Nimiane, 307, 308; his love has been foretold by Diana, 307; disguises himself as a young squire, 308; temptation, 308, 309; sees Nimiane, 308; her beauty, 307, 308; her prudent answer, 309; tells her of his power in magic, 309; she promises her love, 309; he grants her powers, 309, 310, 314; raises a magic bower and company, 309, 310, 311; the fatal pledge, 310, 311; converses with her, 311; teaches her some magic, 312; agrees to see her again on St. John's Eve, 312; goes to Toraise in Tamelide, 312, 314; his welcome, 312, 314; counsels the three kings, 314; tells Arthur of his nephew's doings, 314; and Ban and Bors of Claudas, 314, 315; counsels them, 315; great dragon shall overcome the lion, 315; but a leopard shall aid the lion, 315, 316; the kings wonder at his dark saying, 315, 316; tells Arthur he is concerned in it, 315; tells him of the swords in the forest, 316; goes to Leodogan and counsels him, 317, 318; Leodogan wonders who he is, 318; his craft, 319; tells Leodogan that they seek a fit wife for Arthur, 319; Arthur's betrothal, 319, 320; discovers Arthur's name and estate to Leodogan, 320; discovers himself to the Round Table knights, 320; Leodogan's court royal, 322; sits at the head of the daïs, 322; laughs at Arthur and his love Gonnore, 322; tells them to kiss each other, 322, 323; leads the first ward, 323; the dragon-banner borne by him, 323, 324, 327, 332, 336; sets on Rion, 324; makes a storm, 324; disguises himself and encourages Arthur, 325; leads Arthur to the rescue of Nascien and Boors, 331, 332, 333; raises a tempest, 332; the dragon-banner throws out fire and flame, 332; help comes, 335; collects the fellowship of the Round Table, 335; encourages Arthur, 335; dashes into the fight again, 336; Arthur overthrown, 336; goes to the rescue, 336; follows a band of Saxons, 349, 350; raises a storm over them, 350; and a river in their front, 350, 351; causes friends to take each other for foes, 351; fetches Arthur to aid Leodogan, 353; the dragon-banner lightens the darkness, 353; goes to Leodogan, 353, 354; finds Leodogan on foot and weary, 354; fetches reinforcements, 356; in the thick of the fight, 356; bears the dragon, which lights up the darkness, 356; leads Arthur to the three Saxon kings, 356, 357; they rest at dawn, 357; returns to Leodogan, who is glad, 357; tells Arthur how to divide the spoil, 357, 358; Leodogan wants Arthur's marriage to come off, 360; says it must wait until he has been to Benoyk, 360; at Bredigan, 363; Ban comes, 363; asks Ban about Guynebans, 363; Bors comes, 369; the treasure, 370; the twelve swords, 370, 374; Galeshyn, Seigramor, Gawein, and his brethren come to meet Arthur, 370, 371; they all enter Logres, 374; counsels Arthur to gird Gawein with Calibourne, 374; tells Arthur not to let the knights joust in the meadows, because of the Saxons, 375; teaches Morgne le fee astronomye and egremauncye, 375, 508; tells Arthur to get ready to move to Benoyk, 375, 376; asks Gawein about the mysterious knight, 376, 377; tells Gawein to take leave of his mother and to lead the host to Dover, 377; remains at Logres and tells Arthur to move to the Rochelle, and not to move until he sees him again, 378; goes to Blase in Northumberland, who is joyful at seeing him, 378; tells Blase of Nimiane, 378; Blase chides him, and tells him of prophecies, 378; goes to Arthur at the Rochelle, 379; arranges the expedition to Trebes with Arthur and the others, 381, 382, 383; Blioberis is to lead the host, 383; goes off to Leonce, 384; vanishing powers, 384; the hosts encompass Claudas, but wait for Merlin's signal, 386; gives the signal, 386, 387; the battle begins, 387; his miraculous powers, 386, 387; the wonder-working banner, 393; sends Arthur and the two kings to help the people of Logres, who are being worsted, 404; scolds and taunts Arthur, 404, 407; taunts Gawein, 404; taunts Ban and Bors, 405; takes the banner from Kay, 405, 406; his marvellous deeds, 405, 406; rides into the thick of the battle, 405, 406; Merlin's personal appearance described, 405, 406; on a black horse, 406; never known to slay any man unless by riding down, 406; his company counts a thousand, 406; dragon vomits fire, 406; leads on Arthur and his knights to the attack, 410; utter rout of Claudas, 411, 412; many prisoners, 412; lodged in Trebes castle, 412, 413; Helayn's marvellous dream, 413, 414, 415; relates and explains the dream, 416, 417; on St. John's day departs and goes to his love Nimiane, 416, 417, 418; she meets him at the well, 417; she conducts him secretly into a chamber, 418; p. 418 tells her how to make people sleep at will, 418; tells her three names which will guard her chastity from violence, 418; stays there eight days, 418; he is quite chaste, 418; teaches her the past and future, 418; she puts them in writing, 418; leaves her and goes to Arthur at Benoyk, 418, 419; waits for Gawein and goes to Gannes, 419; welcomed by Bors and stays two days, 419; goes to la Rochelle and to the sea, 419, 420; tells Arthur, Gawein, and the two kings to sail for Carmelide, 420; Arthur wants him to come too so as to be at the marriage, 420; says he will follow soon to Carmelide, 420; leaves Arthur, 420; goes to the forests of Rome, 420, 422; this was in the time of Julius Cesar that Gawein slew, 420; Julius has a beautiful but lecherous wife, 420; her devices, 420; she disguised a dozen squires as women to serve her will, 420; the arrival of Grisandoll, 421; the dream of Julyus Cesar, 421, 422; Julyus is pensive, 422; arrives at the entry of Rome, 422; casts an enchantment and becomes a large hart, 422, 435, 436, 437; is chased through Rome, 422; rushes into the Emperor's palace, upsetting the dinner tables, 422, 423; tells the Emperor he will never understand the dream until a savage man explains it, 423, 436, 437; enchants the doors of the palace and runs out into the fields, 423; chased, 423, 436; vanishes, 423; the Emperor is wroth, 423; half the kingdom and the Emperor's daughter promised to anyone who will discover the hart or the savage man, 423, 435; the knights of the Emperor make an unsuccessful search, 423; Grisandoll is searching too, 423; the hart (Merlin) appears to her, and tells her how she can find the savage man, 423, 436; disappears in the forest, 424; comes to Grisandoll as the savage man, 424, 425; eats heartily of the food and sleeps, 424; Grisandoll steals his staff, 425; on horseback in chains, 425; will not speak to Grisandoll, but only laughs, 425; tells her he will not speak until he comes before the Emperor, 425; they come to an abbey, 425; laughs to see a host of beggars outside the gates, 425; goes to mass, 426; the incident of the undutiful squire, 426, 427; laughs again, 426; the knight smitten by the squire asks the savage man who he is, 427; Merlin won't say, and is led into Rome, 427; a crowd of people followed, 427; Grisandoll gives him into the Emperor's hands, 427; chains are sent for, 427, 428; but he offers his word as a christian man not to escape, 428; Emperor amazed to hear he is christened, 428; is asked his story, 428; says he was got by a savage man on his mother, was baptised when born and led up by his mother, 428; but his blood yearned for the forest, and he escaped to it and became a wild man, 428; is not to be fettered, 428; Grisandoll tells the Emperor of his laughing, 428; he says he will tell why he laughed when the barons are all assembled, 428; the barons assemble, 429; the Emperor asks him to tell the barons why he came, 429; will not until the Empress and her twelve maidens are there, 429; they come, 429, 434; laughs again when they come, and the Emperor wants to know why, 429; says he will tell if no harm will be done to him, 429, 430; tells the Emperor the dream and asks if it were not so, 430, 438; the Emperor says yes, 430; says the great sow in the dream is the Empress, 430; will not go on until the Emperor intreats him, 431; the twelve lyonsewes that accompanied the sow mean the twelve squires disguised as maidens to serve the Empress's lust, 431, 432, 436; the Emperor is sad, 431; Grisandolus strips the maidens and finds it as Merlin says, 431; the Emperor casts the Empress and her squires into the fire, and they are burnt alive, 431, 432; it is noised all over the country, 431; praised by the barons, 432; explains why he laughed at Grisandolus, at the undutiful squires, 433, 444; and at the Empress, 432, 434; laughed at Grisandolus because he was snared by a woman, 432; at the beggars because great treasure lay in the earth under their feet and they knew it not, 432; says Grisandoll is a woman though disguised as a man, 432, 433; says the Emperor shall have a good Empress after all, 433; gives the Emperor a dark prophecy about a great dragon from Rome going to destroy great Bretayne and to subdue a crowned lion in spite of a turtill, but a bull shall aid the lion and slay the dragon, 433, 435, 436; will not explain this, but tells the Emperor to eschew evil counsel, 433; tells the Emperor that his child is his really, and wants to depart, 435; Emperor wants to know about Grisandol and to see the treasure, 435; Grisandoll, the Emperor's steward, is found a fair maiden, 435; the Emperor is in a fix about the promise of his daughter and half the realm, 435; tells the Emperor to make Avenable (Grisandoll) his wife, 435; tells him her parentage and kin, 435; tells him to restore her brother's heritage and marry his daughter to him, 435; the barons commend this counsel, 435; won't tell his name nor who the hart was, 435; amplifies his dark prophecy about the dragon, etc., 435, 436; the boar of Rome is the dragon which shall against the advice of his love the turtill go into Gaule against the crowned lion of the Bloy Bretayne; one of the fawns of the crowned lion shall slay the boar, 436; strongly advises the Emperor never to go against his wife's counsel, 436; as he takes his leave he writes his name and who the hart was on the lintel of the Emperor's door, 436; the Emperor reads the letters and they disappear, 437; the Emperor sees it is Merlin, Arthur's counsellor, 436, 437; goes by art to Northumberlande to Blase in half a day and one night, 438, 450; tells Blase all about the Emperor of Rome, and how twelve kings and a duke are getting ready to attack the Saisnes before Clarence, of the great battle before Trebes, and how Ban's wife was with child, which child should be the first knight in the world, 438; Blase writes it all down, 438; Arthur's wedding day fixed, 449; goes to Arthur at Toraise, 451; a plot to kidnap Gonnore, 451, 452, 463, 467; his counter plot, 452, 463; takes Ulfin and Bretell into his secret, 452; the tournament, 455, 461; stops the tournament, 460, 462; tells Leodogan of the plot to kidnap Gonnore, 465, 468; leads Arthur to Gonnore, 466; consults with Leodogan, 467; the false Gonnore banished, 468, 469; the trial of Bertelak, 469, 470; takes leave of Arthur, but promises to be at the court royal, 472, 473, 562; goes to Blase, 472, 473, 562; tells Blase everything, how Lot lies in wait for Arthur, 473, 562; Blase asks about the chance of driving out the Saxons, 563; is going to fetch Ban and Bors' people to the gathering at Salisbury, 563; says the Saxons will not be driven out until peace between Arthur and barons, 563; makes Blase write letters, and sticks them up in highways, 563, 564; goes to little Britain, 564; instructs Leonce and Pharien to go to Salisbury with their host, 564, 565; goes to Nimiane and teaches her some of his cunning, 565; goes into Lamball, into Carmelide, 565; with Nabulall and Bandemagn, 566; goes to Logres, 566; Arthur makes great joy of him, 566; tells Arthur of the assembly collecting, 566, 567; tells Arthur of the treason of the three Round Table knights, 567, 568; the three knights are brought back, 573, 574; Arthur's great dragon-banner has a red cross put on it, 575; others like it, 576, 585, 586, 601; talks with Arthur at Salisbury, 578, 579; his prophecy that the father and the son shall slay each other, and of the crowned and uncrowned lions, 579; visits the lords with Arthur, 579, 580; consultation with the twelve princes, 580, 581, 612; urges them to do homage to Arthur, and they demur, 581; advises a start for Clarence, 582; the start, 585; bears Arthur's great banner, 585; meets squires who say the Saxons have taken Ventres' wife, 586; goes to the rescue, 587, 588, 590, 612; Elizer's prowess, 587, 589; meets the Saxon host, 593; the disposition of his host, 593, 594; the attack, 595, 596; tells Arthur to take the Saxons in the rear, 596; defeat of Saxons, 597; Arthur advances to Clarence, 598; tells the barons they must make peace with Arthur, 598, 599; they do homage, 599; the battle before Clarence, 599; carries the great banner, 599; harangues the host, 601; rout of Saxons, 602; tells Ban and Bors to return to their homes, 603; goes with Ban and Bors, 605; at Agravadain's castle, 605—608, 612; causes Ban to lie with Agravadain's daughter, 607, 612; is transformed into a young knight, 608, 622; goes to Benoyk, to Nimiane, and to Blase, 612; goes disguised to Arthur's court royal at Camelot, 615, 621; and asks to be banner-bearer, 621, 622; recognized by Ban, 622; Arthur refuses his request, and he vanishes, 622; makes the request again, disguised as a naked child, 622; Arthur grants it, and he throws off his disguise, 623; beats up reinforcements in Gannes, Paerne, Benoyk, Gorre, and Orcanye, and returns to Camelot, 623; the battle with Rion, 624; rescues Bors and Loth, 625; Arthur slays Rion in personal combat, 630; at Logres, 630; tells Arthur he must go now that his work is done, 630, 631; another dark saying of his of the lion that was son of the bear and leopard, 631; departure from Arthur, 631; goes to Flualis, king of Jerusalem, 632; explains Flualis's marvellous dream, 633, 634, 675; is invisible while he does it, 623; goes to Benoyk to Nimiane, 634; he never loses his chastity, 634; goes to Blase, 634, 635; goes again to Arthur at Logres, 635; the dwarf and maiden adventure, 638; a message from Luce, Emperor of Rome, to Arthur, 639; preparations for war with Luce, 643; warns Arthur's princes to get ready, 643, 644; Arthur's host at Gannes, 644; Arthur's vision, which he interprets, 644, 645; an embassy to Luce, 650, 653, 657; defeat of the Romans and death of Luce, 664; tells Arthur to go on his way still, 664, 665; to tackle the devil-cat, 664, 665; goes against the devil-cat, 666, 669; with Arthur at Logres and takes farewell of Arthur and Gonnore, 678; and sets out for Blase and Nimiane, 678, 679; farewell to Blase, 679, 680; with Nimiane, who gets power over him, 680; is shut up by her through enchantment, and never returns, 681, 693; Arthur's quest for him, 682, 687, 689, 690, 692; speaks to Gawein, 692; Gawein recognises his voice, though he can't see him, 693, 694; calls himself a fool, 694; tells Gawein to tell Arthur the quest is useless, as none will see or hear him again, 694.

MINAP, king, 333.

MOLAIT, 411.

MOLEHAUT, castelein of, 442; cite of, 546.

MONACLYNS [Saxon], 510, 511.

MONAGINS, Monaquyn, Saxon king, 521, 524; brother of Pygnoras, 524; cousin-german to Hardogabran, 535.

MONEVALL, a knight of the Round Table, 561, 562, 566, 567, 568, 573, 574.

MONGIN, 640; mountains of, 643.

MONPELLIER, a riche town in Province, 435, 436.

MORAS, 222.

MORDRED, 147, 180; his mother, 86, 179, 180; father, 179, 180, 393, 450; youngest son, 179; carried to Glocedon, 295, 312, 439; rescued by Gawein, 298; his mother thinks he is lost, 300; Gawein reassures her, 301; at Arondell with his mother, 301; his treason, 393.

MORE, 250.

MORET DE LA ROCHE, 156, 212.

MORET DE LA VEYE, 151.

MORGAIN, sister of Arthur, 185; an enchantress, 185, 316, 374; Morgne le fee, 374, 375; why called le fee, 507, 508, 509, 592.

MORGEINS, 86, 108, 588—592.

MOULOIR, 144.

MOYDAS, Mydonas, a Saxon, 550, 552; slain, 552. See Boydas, 551.

MOYNE, first son of king Constance, 24, 40; king, 24; slain, 25, 26.

MURGALANS DE TREBAHAN, 602.

MYCENES, king, 255.

MYGORAS, 458.

MYNADAP, 217.

MYNADOS, a knight of the Round Table, 499.

MYNADUS, king, 254, 255, 338, 343, 344.

MYNORAS, a knight of the Round Table, 484, 487, 561, 562, ly Engres, 567, 568, 574.

MYNORAS, lord of the new castle in Northumbirlond, 518, 519, 538, 539; his sons, 517, 518, 525, 555; his wife, 518, 524, 555; his brother, 518; his two daughters, 517, 518, 526, 530, 535, 555.

MYNORAS, the senescall of the kynge lak of the grete ynde, 577, 601.

MYSTERES, a knight of Claudas, 394; killed by Gawein, 394.

NABLAISE [city], 202, 314; of da Nablaise, 332; of Danablaise, 333, which see.

NABULALL, steward to Amaunt, 565, 566; de Camadayse, 567, 594.

NABUNALL, senescall of Gosenges, 601, 644.

NADRES, a city in Spain, 676.

NAMELES, city, 363.

NAPIN, Admyrall, 276, 602.

NASCIEN, duke de Breting, 326.

NASCIEN, a Round Table knight, 490; named after the duke of Breting, 326; a young knight, 326; the best knight of Uter Pendragon's and Arthur's time, 326; cousin germain to Percevall de Galoys, and kin to Joseph Abaramathie, and son of Ebron and Enhyngnes, 326; has the care of Galaad the son of Launcelot, 326; becomes a devout hermit and a priest, 326; his heavenly visions, 326, 327; makes a book of his visions and annexes it to Blase's book, 327; counsels Arthur in his peril, 327; with Arthur in the battle against Rion, 327; smites Rion down and rescues Bors, 331; his horse slain, 331; overthrows Rion's standard, 337; chases the Sarazins, 342, 345; flight of the Saxon kings, 343; goes to Danablaise, 351; does marvels, 355, 356; slays Colocaullus, 357; returns to the tents, 357; assembly of Arthur's host, 383, 385; prowess at Trebes, 407, 410; in the tournament at Toraise, 455, 457, 458; trial and banishment of Bertelak, 469, 470; at Arthur's Logres court royal, 481, 482; his deeds in the tournament of Logres, 490, 492, 493; goes with a message of peace to Arthur, 499; reconciliation of the Round Table and Queen's knights, 500, 501, 502.

NATALIS, a knight of the Round Table, 487.

NATAN DE LILLE PERDUE, king, 247.

NAUNTES, in breteyne, 176, 646. 662, 669.

NEW TROY, name changed to Logres, 147.

NEWEWERKE in Brochelonde, 178, 189, 190.

NICHODEMUS, 502.

NIMIANE, Nimyane, meaning of the name, 308; her birth, 308; Merlin loves her, 185, 607; dwells near Briok forest, 307; her parentage, 307, 309; her beauty, 307; Merlin comes to her at Briok, 308; he is disguised as a young squire, 308; her prudent answer, 309; her compact with Merlin, 309, 310, 311, 314; he shows her his power of magic, 309; the magical bower company, 309, 310, 311; converses with him, 311; he teaches her some magic, 312; he leaves her and goes to Tamelide, 312, 314; she will meet him again on St. John's Eve, 312; Merlin tells Blase of her, and Blase is angry, for he knows she will outwit Merlin, 378; a visit from Merlin, who teaches her more of his art, 565; Merlin comes, 612; another visit, 634, 635; Merlin's last visit, 678, 681; he teaches her how to imprison by enchantment, 680, 681; she uses it on him and imprisons him for the rest of his life, 681.

NOAS, king of Iselonde, 194.

NOHANT, castelien of, 256.

NOHAUT, lord of, 442, 445.

NOIRON mede, 421.

NORHAM (? castle), 253.

NORHANT (a place), 259; lord of, 273.

NORTH WALES, Northwalis, 242, 146, 161, 174, 185, 231, 236, 312, 438, 445, 509, 557, 558, 576, 594, 601, 626, 659.

NORTHUMBERLONDE, 518; Northumberlande, 436; Northumbirlonde, 32, 33, 43, 44, 56, 121, 159, 160, 161, 165, 172, 184, 252, 253, 255, 256, 259, 260, 271, 303, 378, 437, 438, 439, 445, 450, 525, 556, 558, 562.
NORWEY, 321.
NUNADUS, 253.

OATH on relics, 55.
ORCANYE, 84, 85, 86, 108, 117, 118, 146, 172, 176, 189, 254, 260, 266, 285, 292, 295, 439, 445, 462, 477, 495, 496, 525, 530, 545, 546, 554, 561, 564, 581, 587, 591, 594, 603, 623, 625, 643, 659.
ORIAUNCES, Saxon king and leader, 549, 550, 551; maimed, 552.
ORIELS, 236.
ORIENX, son of Nunadus, 253; son of Brangue of Saxoyne, 510; nephew of Brangue, king of Saxoyne, 253; and of Maglaans, king of Iselonde, 253; ravages Northumberland, 253, 254, 259; arrives before Norham, 253; his men meet with Seigramor, 259, 263; battle with Gawein and his fellows, 264; one of his nephews slain by Agravain, 265; fells Agravain, 265; smitten down by Gawein, 265, 268; his men come to the rescue, 265; taken up for dead, 265, 266; he recovers, 267; pursues Gawein and his band, 267; attacks Gawein in a fury, 267; rescued, 268; defouled under feet, 268; mad with rage, 268; swears revenge on Gawein, 269, 271; in the lands of Clarion and Escam, 271; lodges by the river Sauarne, 272; battle, 274, 275; the escape of the enemy, 275, 276; goes to Cambenyk, 276; his foragers destroyed, 276; joins Hardogabran at Clarence, 277; a battle with the barons, 443, 444; defeat of the barons, and a fresh attack by the barons, 444, 445; who are utterly routed, 446, 447; his men meet Lot and his sons, 510, 511; defeated before Clarence, 602.
ORIGINAL HISTORY alluded to, 147, 150, 152, 166, 179, 181, 189, 202, 253, 254, 256, 259, 271, 303, 313, 340, 349, 351, 393, 394, 406, 407, 411, 437, 438, 450, 451, 562, 576.
OSENAYN CORS HARDY, 212, 459.
OSTON, city in Burgoyne, 643, 658, 659, 660.
OSTRICH, 252.
OUT ISLES, 173.

PAERNE, 143, 151, 161, 167, 305, 308, 315, 379, 381, 384, 400, 403, 564, 587, 588; Paierne, 589, 623, 650, 670, 699.
PALERENS, king, an ally of Rion, 616.
PALERNE, lord of, 272.
PALES DE TREBES, 151.
PARLIAMENT, 253, 576.
PARTREUX, a knight of the Round Table, 487.
PASCH, high feast, 63, 64, 189; Passh, 104; Phasche, 178.
PASTURES, land of, 350.
PATRIDES, steward of Bandemagn, 566.
PATRIK, 435; son of Matan and brother of Avenable or Grisandoll, 436, 437.
PELLES of LYTENOYS, Pelles of Lystenoys, 173, 229, 326, 519, 520, 521, 528, 539, 555, 561, 577, 583, 584, 636; his seneschal, 594.
PELLYNAUS, steward to Pelles of Lytenoys, 577.
PELLYNOR, 173, 229, 519, 561, 583; of the sauage fountain, 539; his sons, 539; his seneschal, 577; of the waste londes, 577; his brother, 577; Pellynour, 577.
PENDRAGON, second son of king Constance, 24, 25; carried to Benoyc, 25, 26; returns to Britain, 41, 42; seeks Merlin, 41; their welcome, 42; attacks and burns Vortiger in his castle, 42; is made king, 42, 173; besieges Aungier, 42; is told the mystery of the dragons, 42; seeks Merlin, 42; return of the messengers, 43; goes after Merlin, 44, 121; meets him without knowing it, 44; again meets him, 45, 46; returns to Uter, 47; Merlin comes, 48; wants him to stay, 49; makes a compact with him, 49; sends messengers to the castle and consults Merlin, 50; barons grumble, 50; proves Merlin, 51, 52; makes a book of Merlin's prophecies, 53; is warned of the Saracens, 54; Merlin's counsel, 54, 55; takes an oath on the highest relics to obey Merlin, 55; Merlin foretells his death, 55; summons his nobles, 55; sends to Merlin, 55; who prophesies victory, 56; his deeds, 56; death in battle, 56, 57, 121; his tomb, 58.
PENTECOSTE, 55, 60, 62, 63, 65, 105, 307, 314, 321, 327, 374.
PERCE, 420.
PERCEVALE LY GALOYS, 475.
PERCEVALL DE GALOYS, 326.
(The) PERILOUSE TOURE, 442.
PESCEOR, uncle of Helayn, 229.
PETRIUS, a Roman knight, 653, 654, 655.
PHARAON, king, ally of Rion, slain, 624.
PHARIEN, of Trebes, 379; of Gannes, 402; a friend of Leonces, 129; conducts Arthur's messengers to Ban and Bors, 129; gives the messengers a welcome, 130; cousin germain to Ban and Bors, 130; left in charge of their lands, 130; his nephew Lambuges, 144, 564; Merlin comes, 144; goes with

him to the Rochell, 146; arrives at Bloy Bretaigne, 146, 147; leads Ban's first ward, 151, 161; bears Bor's ensign, 151; the great battle of Bredigan, 161; governor of the watch, 166, 167; returns to his country, 167; a confidant of Leonces, 306; reinforces Leonces, 379; at Gannes, 380; a messenger from Leonce, 381; sets out for Briogne forest, 381; Merlin's arrival, 384; preparations for battle, 384; before Trebes, 400; rides into the battle with five thousand men, 402; attacked by Claudas with ten thousand men, 403; obliged to retreat, 403; cries "Gannes!" 403; Leonce comes to the rescue, 403; who does great execution, 403, 409; watches the post at night, 412; Merlin comes, 564; is to get the host ready and go to Salisbury plains, and to bear a red cross banner, 564; his preparations, 565; at Salisbury, 565; the battle at Garlot, 588, 589; rescues Ban, 595; slays Sorbares, 595; Merlin tells him to lead his men to Arthur, 623; but he remains to guard the land, 650; succours some knights of Arthur, 670, 676; visit from Arthur, 676.
PHARIOUNS, king of Irelonde, 205.
PIERON, 23.
PIGNARUS, Pygnoras, Saxon king, 521, 522, 524, 531, brother of Monaquyn, 533, 534; cousin germain to Hardogabran, 535.
PIGNORES, 593; Pyngnores, king, 243; Pyngnoras, 245, 286, 287, 344, 587, 588; slain, 589; his brother, 591, 593.
PILATE, 59.
PINADOS, 265; a knight of the Round Table, 485.
PINDOLUS, a knight of the Round Table, 496.
PLACIDAS, 268.
PLACIDAS LE GAYS, 135, 136, 137, 144, 212, 682.
PLACIENS, king, 208.
PLAISSHIE, BLOYS OF, 442.
PLANTAMORE, king, 255.
POIGERES, 236.
POINCE ANTONY, a prince of Rome, 699. See Antony.
POLEMYTE, 340.
POLIBETES, king of Mede, slain by Arthur, 663.
POLYDAMAS, 231, 232, 234; Polydomas, nephew of Tradylyuant of North Wales, 445.
POUNCE, 390, 391, 392, 408, 409.
POUNCE ANTONY, tweyne of the counseillours of Rome, 303, 387, 406, 408, 409, 411, 416.
POUNCE and ANTONY, 379.
POUNCE ANTONYE, 393, 398, 402, 419, 449.
POUNCE and ANTONYE, 306, 390, 392, 393.
POUNCES and ANTONY, 375.
POUNCES and ANTONYE, 386.
POUNCES and ANTONYES, 306, 315, 380.
POUNCY and ANTONY, 387.
PREVY COUNSEILE, 251.
PROVINCE, 435, 436.
PURADES DE CARMELIDE, Arthur's knight, 682.
PYNADOS, 484, 485, 487.
PYNCENARS, Pynsonars, 236, 587, 588, 589, 593; slain, 590.
PYNGRES, king, 255.
PYNOGRAS, 289.

QUEEN'S KNIGHTS, 483, 484, 485, 487, 488, 490, 491, 494, 499, 504, 518, 561, 562, 568, 570, 573, 574, 596. *See* Gonnere and Gawein.
QUEST OF THE SEINT GRAAL, 502. *See* Graal.
QUINTAIN, 133.

RAHIER DE HAUT MUR, 144.
RANDOLF, steward of Gaul, 380; seneschal of the king of Gaul, 386, 387, 392, 393, 407, 409, 411, 419, 449.
RANDOLL, castle, 278, 279, 280, 282.
RANDOUL, 223, 242.
REOSTOK, playn of, 509.
REPAYRE of Joye and of Feeste, 311.
RESCOUSE, a place of Ventres', 586.
RICHER, a knight of Arthur, 655, 656, 657.
RION, king of the land of giants and of pastures, 114; of the lynage of giants, 141; king of Irelonde, 175, 208, 228, 327; king of Denmarke, 327, 328; of Iselonde, 327; of the yles, 619; has nine conquered kings as lieges, 628; war with Leodogan, 114, 141, 173, 350; a cruel man, 115; has a mantle made of the beards of twenty conquered kings, 115; swears he won't stop until he has got thirty, 115; lodges at Narblaise, 202, 314, 317; Arthur comes to aid Leodogan, 202; swears to imprison Leodogan, 223; assembles and victuals his host, 223, 224; Leodogan prepares to attack him, 314; Leodogan gets ready, 321; a night surprise, 323; his camp in confusion, 324, 325; his great banner, 327, 330; fight with Bors, 328, 329; overthrows Bors, 330; fight with Herog, 330, 331; the battle increases, 332, 333; tries to take Bors, 333; felled by Arthur, 336; his men rescue him and bear down Arthur, 336; diffouled, 336; dashes down all near him, 336, 337; his standard thrown down and defeat, 337; Arthur pursues him, 338;

the fight between them, 338, 343, 346, 347; flies, 347, 450; his sword Marmadoise, q.v., captured by Arthur, 346, 347, 352, 353, 615, 648; his friends' rage and sorrow, 349; prepares for revenge on Arthur and Leodogan, 615, 616; besieges Torayse, 616, 617, 619, 620, 624; hears that Arthur has beaten the Saxons, 617; sends defiance to Arthur, 617—620; wants Arthur's beard, 619; Arthur laughs at his request and defiance, 620, 621; battle with Arthur's host, 624, 630; offers to settle the matter by a personal combat with Arthur, and Arthur agrees, 627, 628; the combat, 628, 629, 630; vanquished but will not yield, so Arthur kills him; his body taken home and buried, 630.

RIVER at Cambenyk, 550. See Saverne.

ROCHE FLODOMER, 564.

ROCHE MAGOT, 256, 274.

ROCHE OF SAXONS, castle, 176, 185, 188, 242, 247, 250, 252, 341, 521.

ROCHELL, the, 378, 379, 419.

ROCHES, Duke, 561.

ROESTOK, 538.

ROMANS, 303, 306, 391, 392, 400, 402, 438, 639—642, 651—661, 663, 664, 669, 676, 679, 699.

ROME, 303, 305, 306, 393, 419; forests, 420, 422, 423, 426, 427, 433, 436, 437, 438, 639, 641, 642, 650, 653, 656, 660, 664, 665, 678, 699.

RORESTOK, valey of, 535.

ROSTOCK, 250, 256; a plain or plains, 509, 510, 521, 528; valley, 535, 538, 539, 543; lord of, 545, 546.

ROUND TABLE, founded by Uter Pendragon, 60; empty seat, 61, 108, 114, 141; members and governors, 205, 208—211, 215, 217, 218, 224, 247, 316, 319—322, 325, 327, 331, 332, 335, 336, 337, 345, 348, 349, 358, 360, 371, 374, 378, 382, 383, 392, 398, 401, 407, 408, 410, 412, 413, 453, 454, 455, 458—462, 471, 474, 477, 481—484, 486—499, 500—504, 507, 561, 562, 566, 567, 568, 570, 572, 573, 577, 584, 585, 594, 596, 597, 624, 626, 630, 678, 698.

ROY DE CENT CHIUALIERS, reason of the name, 185. See Aguysans.

RYOLENT, king of Ireland, 205.

SACREN of the STREITE MARCHE, knight of Arthur, 682.

SADOYNE, Sadoynes, nephew of Leodogan, 334, 337; the castelein of Daneblaise and brother of Gonnore, 472, 566.

SADUC, 217.

ST. BARTHOLOMEW'S DAY, 519.

ST. JOHN, feast of, 381, 417, 421.

SAISNES (Saxons), 173—176, 179, 182, 185, 187, 188, 191, 192, 193, 195—199, 201, 213, 214, 217, 219, 221, 223, 224, 225, 230—240, 242—250, 252, 253; siege of, 254, 256, 257—260, 262—267, 271, 277, 278, 302, 312, 313, 314, 316, 332, 348, 349, 350, 352—355, 356, 357, 359, 371, 377, 438—444, 447, 450, 479, 500, 505, 506, 509, 510, 511, 513—516, 518—525, 528, 534, 535, 539, 547—554, 556, 559, 562, 568, 573, 575, 576, 579, 580, 582, 585—592, 594, 595, 598, 599, 602, 603.

SALEBRUN, Salubruns, Saxon, 510, 593; slain, 594.

SALERNE, lord of, 256, 273, 274, 441, 445.

SALISBERI, 147; Salisbury, 565, 585; Salesberye, Salisburye playne, 54, 55; the battle, 56, 57, 121, 560, 564—567, 574, 575, 576, 580, 585, 612.

SALUBRIUS, 236.

SAPERNYE, forest, 472, 473.

SAPHIRUS, king, 255.

SAPINE CASTELL, 509.

SARAZINS [Saracens, heathens], 49, 50, 54, 55, 94, 172, 174, 194, 209, 210, 307, 325, 327, 330, 333, 335, 336, 342, 351, 664.

SARMEDON, the gonfanoned, 211.

SARNAGUT, king, 194.

SARON, king, 328, 329.

SARRAS, city, 502.

SATHANYE, gulf, 341.

SAVARNE, river of, 256, 257, 271, 272, 277.

SAXOYNE, Saxoynie, king of, 172, 250, 292, 510, 592, 603.

SCOTLONDE, 108, 145, 121, 158, 160, 161, 187, 236, 237, 439, 445, 509, 519, 546, 548, 558, 601.

SEGAGAN, king, 191.

SEGARS, Segras, nephew of Bediuer, 661, 662.

SEGURADES [on barons side], 441.

SEGURADES de la forest perilouse, 682.

SEIGRAMORE, son of a king of Blagne and Hungary; a knight, 186; goes when fifteen to Great Britain to Arthur, 186, 271; heir to Adrian, emperour of Constantinople, 86, 230, 262, 270, 280, 373, 449; Arthur is told of him, 230; his prowess foretold, 230; goes with knights to Dover, 259; his adventures, 260—263; Gawein comes to aid him, 264; welcomed by Gawein, 266, 302; goes to Camelot, 266, 267; smites Driant, 268; tries to take Orienx, 268, 279; revels at Camelot, 271; leads Gawein's fourth ward, 280, 281; charges the Saxons, 287; a reverse, 287; at Arondell, 290—293; prowess, 294; a strange quest, 297—301; return to Arondell, 301; at Logres, 301; Arthur is coming, 370; meets him, 370, 371; salutes him kneeling, 371; Gawein tells

Arthur they are come to be knighted, 373; Arthur promises, 373; Gawein presents him to Arthur, 373; his comeliness, 373; he and Gawein to be fellows in arms, and Arthur makes great joy of him, 373; goes to Logres with Arthur, 374; the night-long vigil, 374; knighted by Arthur, 374, 449; who girds him with Adrian's sword, 374; Arthur puts on the right, and Bors the left spur, 374, 375; his good array, 374; goes with Gawein's host to Dover, 377, 378; has part command, 378; the battle before Trebes, 387; encounter with Ffrolle, 388; his prowess, 388; keeps two thousand foes at bay, 396; does wonders in battle, 407; in Trebes castle, 412; at Arthur's marriage with Gonnore, 453, 454; in the tournament at Toraise, 455, 458, 462; at Arthur's Logres court royal, 480, 481; Dagenet's cowardice, 484; the tournament at Logres, 484, 500; goes to Arthur, 485; his prowess is commended, 487; his deeds, 486—489; his comeliness, 499; the reconciliation of the Round Table and Queen's knights, 500, 502; he, Dodinell, and Galaishin go out seeking adventure, 561, 562, 566; and meet with three Round Table knights, Agravandain, Mynoras, and Moneval, who attack them, 562, 566, 573; overthrows Agravandain, 570, 571; Arthur sends to stop the fight, 571, 572; his uncle king Brangores, 577; at Salisbury, 579; in the battle before Garlot, 596; in the battle before Clarence, 601, 602; in the battle between Rion and Arthur, 624; sent with a message to Rome by Arthur, 650, 651; Gawein's impudence, 652; flight, 652; slays one of his pursuers, 652; struggle with Petrius, who is captured at last, 655; vows to find Merlin, 682, 687; unsuccessful, 687.
SELEVAUNT, 217.
SELYDOYNE, son of duke Nascien de reting, 326.
SEMPTIPRES, king, 255.
SENEBANT, 220, 222.
SENSADOYNS, castelien of Nohant, 256.
SENYGRES, king, 205.
SERANS, king, 205.
SEREBRUNS, lorde of Salerne, 256.
SERNAGE, king, 195.
SERNAGUT, king, 191.
SEVAIN, eirll, 171.
SEVARNE, Saverne, Savarne, 313, 509, 550, 554.
SIEGE perilous, 61, 62, 63.
SOLIMAS, king and ally of Rion, 616, 617.
SOLUNANT, a Saxon, 265.
SOLYNAS, knight, 325, 326; cousin of Rion, 331.
SONYGRENX, 214, 215, 216, 218, 255, 344.
SORBARE, Sorbares, Saxon king, 510, 593, 595, 602.
SORBARIES, 236, 255.
SORFARIN, 216, 217, 220, 221, 222.
SORFRAINS, 214, 215, 218.
SORHAN, 239, 277, 280.
SORHANT, 171, 179, 184—188, 239.
SORIONDE, bridge of, 280.
SORIOUNDES, nephew of king Brangue, 253, and Maglaans, 254; ravages the lands of Ydiers, 253, 254; lodges in the meadows of Bredigan, 277; a battle with Ydiers, 278, 279; drives Ydiers away, 281, 282; goes to the bridge of Doue, 282; fight with the Eweins and Agravain, 283, 284, 285; Gawein's fellows join in the battle, 284—287; Segramor and Galaishin come, 287; is worsted, 288, 289; takes counsel, 289.
SORLOYS, king of, 173, 243, 466, 561, 578.
SORTEBRAN, 220, 222; Sortibran, 541.
SOURNE, river of, 243.
SOUTH WALIS, 185, 247, 373, 439, 445, 449, 576, 594.
SPAYNE, 676.
STEPHENE, seynt, the martir, minster of, 453, 463, 495, 614.
STEWARD OF BENOYK, 130.
STONEHENGE, 57.
STRANGORE, land of, 108, 146; a city, 185, 247, 291, 293, 373, 558, 577, 601.
STRANGOT, 220, 292, 294.
STREITE MARCHE, 247, 249, 682.
STREITE OF THE ROCHE MAGOT, 256, 271.
STREYTE WEY CASTLE, 247.
SURET CASTLE, 313.
SURRE (? Syria), king of, 656. *See* Evander.
SYMOND LEPROUSE, 59.
SYNADOS, cousin germain of Guyomar, 348, 351, 352, 480.
SYNAGONS, king, 255.
SYUARUS, a Saxon king, 591, 593.

TAMELIDE, see Carmelide.
TAMYSE, 55.
TARSAIDE, city, 202.
TASURS, a king, 616.
TAULUS LE ROUS, knight of Arthur, 682.
TAUMDES, lord of, 257.
TAURUS, king, 268, 298, 299, 300, 303, 616.
TEBRES (? Trebes), 406.
TEMSE, river of, 134, 138.
TEUCUS (? king), 296.
THOAS, king, 255.
THORNE CASTELL, 251.
TIDEUS, son of the Duke of Calcedoyne, 340.

TINTAGEL, duke of, named Hoel on p. 177. *See* Hoel.

TORAISE, 204, 205, 210, *see* 257, 307, 215, 217, 220, 224, 229, 257, 307; bishop of, 320, 349, 358, 359, 360; city in Carmelide, 448, 451, 471, 460, 468, 562; castle of, 616, 618—621, 624, 630.

TORNOYIER, castle, 363.

TOROISE, a valley, 658.

TOURNAMENT AT LOGRES, 133, 484.

TOURNOYE, isle, 345.

TOWER OF VORTIGER, 27, 29, 31, 35, 36; the mystery, 37; the dragons, 37, 38, 41, 121; Vortiger takes refuge in it, 42; the tower surrenders, 50, 121.

TRADILYUAUNT, Tradilyuant, Tradilyuans, king of North Wales, 157, 161; upset by Arthur in the battle of Bredigan, 157; the battle, 157, 159, 161; counsels how to drive out the Saxons, 174, 176; leaves Sorhant and goes to N. Wales, 185; the enchantments of Carnile, 185; attacks the Saxons, 231; loses ground, 232; Aguysanx comes to aid him, 233, and some of Arthur's men, 233; defeats the Saxons, 234, 242; takes counsel of Aguysanx, 235, 312; goes to Arundell, 236; returns to N. Wales, 236; his brother Belynans, 247, 249, 557, 558, 576; the expedition to Clarence, 438, 439; leads the second ward of seven thousand men, 437, 438; a night attack, 439, 440, 441; discomfited, 444, but makes another attack, 445; his nephew Polydomas, 445; totally beaten, 446, 447, 449; goes home, 447, 449; hears Arthur is at Logres, 449, 450; wishes for peace with Arthur, 450, 451; his city in N. Wales, 509, 558; conference with Arthur's envoy, 557, 558, 559; the host assembles at Salisbury, 565, 575, 585; leads first division of Merlin's host, 593; in battle before Clarence, 601; in the battle between Rion and Arthur's host, 626; unhorsed and rescued by Merlin and Gawein, 626; aids Arthur against Luce, 644; in the first division, 659; his godson Tradilyuaunt, 683, 687, 690.

TRAELUS, a knight of the Round Table, 487.

TRAMELMENS, king of North Wales, 146.

TRANSMADUC, a Saxon, brother of Gondofles, 593.

TREBAHAN (place), 602.

TREBES, 125, 126, 136, 144, 151; castle of, 449, 564, 589, 670, 699.

TRIAMORES, castelein of Cambenyk, slain, 594.

TRIPILL, Hermans, Earl of, 662.

TROY, destruction of, 146.

TUTILLIUS, a Roman knight, slain by Gawein, and nephew of Luce, 652.

(the) TWELVE PRINCES, 580, 581.

UENTRES OF GARLOT, Ventres, 161, 443; Ventre, 449; Ventrez, 197; V. marries a daughter of Ygerne, 86, 121, 179; goes to Arthur's court royal, 108; holds Arthur in disdain, 108; refuses Arthur's gifts, 108; rebels, 108; marvellously strong, 117; swears to take Arthur's life and rushes at him, but is felled to the ground, 117; cousin-german to Lot of Orcanye, 117; fights with Ulfyn, and both fall, 119; his son Galeshyn, 122, 188, 373, 388, 439, 449; meets the other rebel kings at Bredigan, 146; unhorsed, 156; horsed again, 156, 157; unhorses Kay and Gifflet, 159; makes a vigorous defence, 161, 165; goes to Wydesans, 177; his wife Basyne, 177; his son wants to join Arthur, 177, 178; leaves Sorhant, 179; is angry about Galeshyn's departure with Basyne, his wife, 242, 439; won't speak to her for a month, 242; goes against the Saxons, 242, 243, 244; shows great powers, 244, 245, 246, 439; escapes in the dark, and goes to Wyndesore, 246; his sister Esclence, 247; the expedition to Clarence against the Saisnes, 438, 439; leads the twelfth ward, 439; a night attack, 439, 440, 441, 444; his courage, 443; discomfited, but makes another attack, 444, 445; totally beaten, 446, 447, 449; goes home, 447, 449; hears Arthur is at Logres, 449, 450; wishes for peace with Arthur, 450, 451; conference with Arthur's envoy, 557, 559; the host assembles at Salisbury, 565, 575, 581; hesitates to homage Arthur, 581; his chief fortress Garlot surrounded by Saxons, 585; his wife in danger from them, 586; his steward slain by Saxons, 586; his wife captured by them, 586, 588, 590; the rescue, 588, 590, 612; his wife restored to him, 592; leads Merlin's first division, 593; valour, 595; in the battle before Clarence, 601; in the battle between the hosts of Arthur and Rion at Toraise, 626; aids Arthur against Luce, 644; in the first division, 659, 661; wounded by Alipatin, 662.

ULFYN, sent by Uter to the Saxons, 50; hears of Uter's love for Ygerne, 65; a favourite, 65; tells Uter to offer gifts to her companions, 65; speaks with Ygerne, 66; gives her Uter's gifts, 66; she resents it, 66; tells her of Uter's love, 66; her scorn, 66;

tells Uter of her speech, 67; inveigles Ygerne into accepting a gold cup, 67; finds Ygerne pensive and angry, 67; she says she will tell Hoel, 67; tell her to beware if she does, 68; Uter asks his advice, 79; tells him to send for Merlin, 71; comforts Uter, 71; meets with Merlin in disguise, 72, 74; leads Uter to him, 73; in council with Uter and Merlin, 74, 75; Merlin's plan to beguile Ygerne, 75, 76; transformed like Jordan by Merlin, 76, 77; goes with Uter and Merlin to Tintagel, 76; successful villany, 77; returns to his own semblance, 78; advises the barons, 79; a wise and true knight, 80; at Cardoel, 81; in council with Uter Pendragon, 81, 82, 109; the barons ask his advice, 83, 84, 85; the treaty with Ygerne, 85; the king, Uter Pendragon, tells him of Ygerne's anxiety, 87; sees Merlin privily, 87; somewhat acquit of his sin, 87; gives Merlin's message to Uter Pendragon, 89; gives credence to Merlin, 93; sent for by the barons, 109; Bretel comes to fetch him, 110; meets Merlin, 110; keeps Uter Pendragon's seal, 111; the covenant with Merlin, 75, 78, 80, 81, 111, 112; in counsel with Arthur, 114; combat with Ventres, 119; in counsel with Arthur and Merlin, 121; sent by Arthur to Ban and Bors, 124; an old friend of Arthur's, 124, 130; goes by sea to Benoyk, 124; comes to Trebes, 125; meets seven knights of Claudas, 126; the combat, 126, 127, 128; slays one, 128; upsets another, 128; goes to Benoyk, 127; Leones and Pharien welcome him, 129; sees Ban and Bors, 129; delivers Arthur's message, 129, 130, 131; tells of the combat with the knights, 130; returns to Arthur with Ban and Bors, 131; arrives at Logres, 132; serves at the banquet to Ban and Bors, 133; tells Arthur of the combat, 138; is sent to fetch Merlin, 139; in council, 141; made governor, 143; wants to go to the three kings instead of Merlin, 148; leads Arthur's third division, 151; aids Kay, 155; unhorsed, 155; aided by Bretell, 155; on foot, 157; Arthur aids him, 157; his valour, 159; sees through Merlin's disguise, 168; aids Arthur at Tamelide, 212; fights a giant, 216; overthrows Balan, 217; follows Arthur to fight, 221; slays Iaisdon, 222; Arthur's battle with Rion, 337; tries to dissuade Bors from fighting Amaunt, 366; sent by Bors to Amaunt, 366, 367; bears Gawein's banner, 382, 388; rescues Seigramor, 388; a plot to kidnap Arthur's Gonnore, 452; his counterplot, 452, 463, 562; the tournament, 455; rescues Gonnore from the plotters, 463, 465, 562; tells Cleodalis of the plot, 467; the false Gonnore accused before Leodogan and banished, 467, 468, 469, 562; trial and banishment of Bertelak, 469, 470.

VABIBRE, 265.

VALDESBIRES, 201, 234, 236, 250, 254, 258, 289; Valdesbiry, Valdisbery, siege of, 576, 582; Vandeberes, castle of, in Cornwall, 172; Vandesberes, 172; Vandesbires, 187; Vandesbyry, 250.

VANDELERS, a castle in Cornwall 152.

VENGERESSE, a spear, 229.

VENTRES OF GARLOT, king, 242. *See* Uentres.

VLCAN, 340.

VRIEN OF GORRE at Arthur's court royal, 108; holds Arthur in disdain, 108; marries a daughter of Ygerne, 121; his son Ewein le gaunte, 122, 388, 396, 449, 455, 459, 480, 655, 659; goes with seven thousand men to Bredigan, 146; the battle of Bredigan, 156; unhorsed, 156, 159; his prowess, 161, 165; defeated, 171; at his town Sorhant, 171, 172; distressed by the Saxons, 188, 238; his nephew Bandemagn, 237, 441, 443, 445; helps Aguysanx against the Saxons, 237, 238, 242; retreats to Sorhan, 239; more fighting the Saxons, 239, 240; his son Ewein's wish to join Arthur, 241, 251, 258, 277, 280, 349; his son Ewein Avoutres, 241, 242, 258, 277, 280, 285, 290, 294, 373, 374, 376; leads the ninth ward in the expedition to Clarence against Saisnes, 438, 439; a night attack, 439, 440, 441, 444; his courage, 443; discomfited, 444; a fresh onset, 444, 445; totally beaten, 446, 447, 449; goes home, 447, 449; hears Arthur is at Logres, 449, 450; wishes for peace with Arthur, 450, 451; a conference with Arthur's envoy, 557, 559; angry with Lot for his submission to Arthur, 559, 581; the host assembles at Salisbury, 565, 575, 581; in the battle before Clarence, 601; reassembly for another battle, 623; in the battle between Rion and Arthur's host, 626; in the first division, 659, 661.

VORTIGER, a wise man, 24; made king of Britain, 25, 307; consecrated, 26; executes the slayers of Moyn, 26, 40; offends the barons, 26; marries Angier's daughter, 27; builds a tower, 27; is overthrown, 27; consults the clerks, 28; their answer, 29; sends after Merlin, 29, 31, 121; examines him, 36; the secret of the tower, 37, 38; the meaning of the dragons, 40, 41, 42; his anger, 41; summons his army and arrives at Wynchester, 41; the arrival of his foes, 41, 42; his people fail him, 42; flies to his castle wherein he is attacked and burnt, 42, 121; his Danes in trouble, 42; rescued, 586.

VTER, third son of King Constance, 24, 25; carried to Benoyc, 25, 26; returns to Britain, 41, 42; seeks Merlin, 41; their welcome, 42; attacks Vortiger's castle, 42; is left in charge of the kingdom, 44; slays Aungier, 44, 341, 248; Aungier tries to kill him, 47; return of Pendragon, 47; his mistress, 47; Merlin's deceit, 47; sees Merlin, 48, 49, 121; reproved by Merlin, 52; takes an oath to obey Merlin, 55; his counsel, 56; the battle with the Danes, 56, 152; his courage, 56; victory, 56; succeeds his brother as king, 57; crowned at Logres, 57; Merlin at court, 57; tells Vter to change his name to Vter Pendragon, 57.

VTER PENDRAGON, makes a gold dragon, 57; prepares to build Stonehenge, 57, 58; Merlin tells him of the Graal, 59; the Round Table founded, 59, 60; goes to Cardoell, 60; the vacant seat at the Table, 61; Merlin's explanation, 61; some knights defame Merlin, 62; his fate, 63, 71; Merlin comes, 63; builds a palace, 63; rules of the Round Table, 63; loves Ygerne, 64; his plans, 64, 66; takes counsel of Vlfyn, 65, 109; sends him to her, 65; her anger, 65; he persists, 67; she tells her husband, 68; and they go away secretly, 69; his anger, 69, 70; he sends for them, and they refuse to come, 69; he collects his barons, and defies the duke, 70; ravages his territory, 70; besieges the duke, 71; love-sickness, 71; the story of the old man and the cripple, 71, 73; discovers Merlin, 74; asks his advice, 74; Merlin's plan, 76; goes with Merlin and Ulfyn to Tintagel disguised as the duke, 76, 121; he seduces Ygerne, 77, 180, 320, 341; promises the child to Merlin, 78; hears the duke is dead, 78; consults the barons, 79; Ulfyn's guile, 79, 80; to marry Ygerne, 81; goes to Cardoel, 81; takes counsel, 81; proffers peace, 82; is accepted, 82; conditions left open, 82; Ygerne comes, 82, 83; her plans, 83; asks counsel, 83; Ulfyn's plans, 85, 121; marries Ygerne, 86, 177; he questions her, 87; she admits the truth, 87; and agrees to give up the child, 87; tells Ulfyn, 87; consults Merlin, 87; Merlin's plan, 88; sends after a knight, 88; the children to be exchanged, 88, 90; goes to the queen, 90; sends the child away, 90, 112; has the gout, 91; Danes arise, 91; collects an army, 92; it is worsted in fight, 92; Merlin comes, 92; his counsel, 92; his death foretold, 93; Merlin goes, 94; he vanquishes the Danes, 94; borne in a litter to battle, 94; goes to London, 94; gives all away in alms, 94; falls sick and Merlin comes, 94; his death, 95, 180; burial, 95; at Martinmass, 96; Arthur's parentage laid on him, 111, 130, 139, 241, 326; his master forester, 133; wars upon Amant, 350; captures Amant's castle of Carroie, 350, 364; gives the castle to Bors, 350, 364, 365; who gives it to Guynebant, 350; Amant tries to recover it, 350, 351.

VUNDE, father of Ydier, 654, 655.

VUT, 655, 656.

VYSEE, castle, 42.

WALIS, Wales, Walys, 60, 120, 146, 157, 180, 189, 685, 694.

WELSH, Walissh, mile, 594, 689, 690.

WHITE TOWER, lorde of, 257.

WISE MAN, ? Solomon, 496.

WITSONDAY, 60, 322.

WITSONEVEN, 62, 106.

WITSONTYDE, 60, 62, 106, 312.

WITSONWIKE, 351.

WYDESANDE, Wydesans, a city in Cornwall, 177.

WYNCHESTER, 41.

WYNDESORE, in Brochelonde, 235, 246, 247, lord of, 249, 441.

YDIERS [king] of Cornewaile ? son of Vunde, 654; of Vut, 655, 659; at Arthur's court royal, 108; rebels, 108; defeated, 119; brings seven thousand men to Bredigan, 146; unhorsed in the battle, 156; swears revenge, 157; "sore battle," 161, 162, 165; takes refuge at Nantes, 176; fights the Saxons, 176, 253, 258, 278, 279, 280; routs some of them, 281; is drawn back, 281; repents of his rebellion, 282; leads the eighth ward in the expedition to Clarence against the Saisnes, 438, 439; a night attack, 439, 440, 441, 444; his courage, 443; discomfited, 444; another onset, 444, 445; totally beaten, 446, 447, 449; goes home, 447, 449; hears Arthur is at Logres, 449, 450; wishes for peace with Arthur, 450, 451; a conference with Arthur's envoy, 557, 559; the assembly of the host at Salisbury, 565, 575; in battle before Clarence, 601; aids Arthur against Luce, 644; succours Gawein and his party, 654, 655; slain by Euander, 657.

YDIERS, Ydier, knight, 348, 349, 351, 352.
YDIERS OF NORWEY, 321.
YDONAS, a proud Saxon, 550; slain, 553; banner-bearer, 553.
YDRAS, YSDRAS, king, 348, 357, 359.
YGRINE, Ygerne, wife of Hoel, duke of Tintagel, 177; previous marriage, 121; two daughters, 121; five daughters, 121; comes to court, 64; discovers Uter Pendragon's base love, 64; her modesty and grief, 64; the king's suit, 65; Ulfyn's visits, 66; her resentment, 66, 67; threatens to tell her husband, 67; tells him, 68, 69; his anger, 69; they return to Tintagel secretly, 69; king's anger, 69; he summons them to return, 69; they refuse, 69; the king collects an army, 70; and defies them, 70; she is placed in Tintagel, 70; the duke besieged, 70, 71; king tells Merlin of her, 75; Merlin's plan, 76; carried out, 77, 111, 121, 140; hears of her husband's death, 81; messengers from Uter Pendragon with peace, 81; she consents to peace, 82; the conditions, 82; goes to the king, 82, 83; her plans, 83; Ulfyn comes to her, 84; his advice, 84, 85, 121; she agrees to marry Uter Pendragon, 86; marries him, 86; her two daughters married, 86; her troubles, 86; she confesses how she became with child, 86; agrees to give it up, 87; lies down, 89; is delivered, 90; the child sent away, 90; her sorrow, 90; her death, 93; her daughters' marriages, 121; her sister Basyne, 177.
YOLE, 63, 97, 559.
YOOLE, 96, 97, 129, 144.
YOOLE EVEN, 97.
YROYS, land of, 191.
YSORES, Saxon, 510, 511.

GLOSSARY.

a, conj. and, 523, 6; 524, 12.
a, interj. ab. 8, 7.
Aatine, s. quarrel, 497, 30.
abaisshed, v. abashed, defeated, 12, 25; 232, 4.
a-bakke, adv. aback, 40, 16.
a-bandoned, v. risked, sacrificed, 354, 29.
abide, v. to wait for, endure, 44, 24; 50, 12.
a-bidinge, s. waiting, stay, delay, 45, 18; 256, 17.
abode, v. waited for, 205, 17; 379, 8.
a-boode, v. remained, 297, 15; 432, 25.
a-bouten, adv. about, 7, 30.
a-bouen, prep. above, over, 134, 4.
abreedeed, pp., 275, 14.
a-brethe, v. to give time to recover breath, 335, 17.
a-brode, adv. open, abroad, 396, 28.
absoyle, v. to absolve, 11, 88.
a-coled, v. embraced, 501, 35.
acolee, s. embrace around the neck of the newly dubbed knight, 374, 25.
a-complysshen, v. to accomplish, 61, 17.
a-coole, s. same as acolee, 520, 9; 570, 4.
acooley, s. 267, 3.
a-corded, v. agreed, 380, 13.
a-dongon, s. dungeon, 389, 33.
a-dubbe, v. to dub, furnish with arms, 122, 20; 183, 14; 637, 7.
afeerde, 14, 29; afeirde, adj. afraid, frightened, 16, 32; a-ferde, 221, 28.
aferid, v. feared, took fright, 15, 26.
affiaunce, s. trust, 103, 22.
afficched, v. fixed, fastened, 117, 21.
affiered, belonged, 225, 36.
affraied, pp. frightened, 8, 2.
aflayed, pp. frightened, alarmed, 296, 5.
after, prep. until, for, 50, 12.
after that, according as, 167, 8.
again, 1, 7; ageyn, 26, 28; prep. against.
a-geins, conj. by the time, 55, 15.
a-geyn, prep. towards, 94, 19.
ageyn, adv. again, 12, 1.
a-guylte, pp. guilty of, sinned, 19, 15.
aissh, s. ash, 390, 12.
aisshen, adj. of ash, 117, 18.
a-kele, v. to cool, 590, 21.
alle, gen. pl. of all, adj., 3, 10.
almesse, s. alms, benefit, 12, 7; 505, 17.
a-lowe, v. praise, approve, 355, 35.
als, conj. as, 48, 14.
alther, gen. pl. of all, 138, 6.
alther, firste, *i.e.* first of all, 401, 3.
ambeler, s. ambler, 521, 24.
amenuse, v. get less, 657, 4.
a-merveyled, adj. surprised, 30, 20.

amoneste, v. advise, 559, 20.
amyrall, adj. admiral, 281, 28.
an, conj. and, 92, 24.
and, conj. if, 45, 1; 46, 31.
and, adj. an, 221, 20.
a-newe, s. another one, 399, 8.
anguyshous, adj. sad, painful, 257, 15.
angwisshouse, adj. anxious, 262, 10.
annoye, s. annoyance, injury, 154, 22; 156, 27.
a-noon, adv. anon, 47, 33.
a-noyed, pp. hurt, affected, 300, 14.
ant, conj. and, 263, 19.
a-pair, v. injure, 397, 35.
a-paraile, v. apparel, 241, 31.
a-peche, v. accuse, 492, 17.
a-peire, v. to impair; a-peired, pp. impaired, 110, 30; 355, 23.
apele, v. challenge, 469, 15.
aperceyvaunte, pres. p. understanding, 73, 36.
a-perceyve, v. to perceive, 29, 10; aparceyved, pt. 64, 28; aperceyved, pt. 12, 14.
a-pert, adj. free, open, 507, 34.
aperteneth, appertaineth, 106, 2.
aperteliche, 76, 23; apertly, 35, 22; adv. openly, clearly.
appareile, v. prepare, furnish, 357, 26.
appareilleden, v. prepared, got ready, 360, 17.
apperly, adv. dexterously, 155, 12.
a-putayn, adj. 496, 1.
a-putein, adj. 542, 10, same as a-putayn.
a-quyt, a-quytte, pp. acquitted, 87, 27.
a-race, v. remove, 346, 26.
arached, v. pulled off, 134, 19.
a-rafte, v. struck, smote, 210, 22.
araide, pp. beaten, thrashed, 343, 18.
araied, v. 571, 21; same as araide.
a-raught, v. reached, 264, 26.
a-rayment, s. dress, 507, 4.
arblast, s. cross-bow, 196, 4; 254, 30.
arblaste, s. bow-shot, 194, 31.
arblastiers, 659, 21; arblasters, 143, 7; arblastis, 113, 18; s. cross-bowmen.
a-reche, v. reach, come at, 154, 8; pt. a-raught, 193, 19.
a-reised, v. raised, 57, 4.
a-resoned, v. 508, 25; a-resoned, v. 17, 10; a-resonde, pp. 18, 33; questioned, examined.
aried, pp. arrayed, 107, 13.
a-rivage, s. 54, 29; aryvage, s. arrival, landing, 56, 1.
a-rived, pp. arrived, 42, 13.
aryve, v. to arrive, land, 54, 27.
armure, s. armour, 242, 9.
a-rome, adv. aloof, off, 477, 13.
a-rowme, 627, 20; same as a-rome.
arson, s. the bow of a saddle, 119, 17.
artrye, s. artillery, 115, 21.
as armes, to arms! Fr. aux armes! 192, 34.
a-say, v. try, prove, 51, 2.
ascaped, v. escaped, aschaped, 56, 33; 240, 15.
aschape, v. to escape, 154, 12.
a-scride, a-scryed, v. cried out upon, 343, 1; 464, 13; 473, 35.
ascry, s. shout, outcry, 160, 4.
a-sege, v. besiege, 258, 18.
asked, v. asked for, 317, 7.
assaie, s. trial, test, 100, 11 (assay, 219, 24).
assaien, v. to try, prove, 99, 4.
assaute, 71, 1; a-saute, 157, 6; a-sawte, 217, 17; s. assault.
assawte, v. to assault, 69, 27.
asseles, s. shoulders, *cf.* N. E. D., 116, 30.
assels, s.; same as asseles, 473, 33.
assoiled, v. pardoned, 11, 35; 560, 26.
asspie, s. spy, 306, 30.
assured, v. agreed, 362, 16.

astoned, 48, 12; astonyed, 21, 22; astonyd, 8, 4; pp. astonished.
at, prep. on, 265, 27.
atame, v. penetrate, 648, 33.
atise, v. brag of, 404, 31.
atised, v. challenged, provoked, 366, 12.
attones, adv. at once, 118, 31.
attonys, 551, 3; same as attones.
atynes, s. hatred, wrath, 490, 14.
auctorite, s. authority, power, 21, 3.
auenaunt, adj. becoming, graceful, 507, 34; 607, 35.
auerouse, adj. avaricious, 106, 13.
auenture, 5, 18; a-uenture, 188, 29; aventure, s. adventure, danger, chance, 35, 35.
auer, s. horse, 167, 20; 272, 11.
auers, s. possession, property, 92, 31; 106, 22; 176, 20; Fr. avoir.
auncyent, adj. ancient, 305, 27.
auoir, s. property, goods, 173, 28; 357, 31.
aust, s. august, 132, 33.
auter, 102, 34; awter, 98, 29; s. altar.
a-valed, v. let down, lowered, 476, 24; 571, 13.
a-vaunte, v. boast, 263, 9; 275, 28.
a-vaunter, s. a boaster, braggart, 126, 36.
avauntour, s., 398, 17; same as a-vaunter.
a-vented, pp. lowered the aventaile, 335, 20; 459, 6.
aventeed, v. opened the aventaile for the purpose of breathing, 371, 9.
avise, 79, 21; a-visement, 78, 28; s. advice, counsel; v. look at, 308, 31.
a-vised, pp. advised, assured, 45, 36.
avoure, s. possessions, 433, 35.
avouterye, s. adultery, 17, 34.
a-voy, v. away, leave, 486, 31.
a-vye, v. advise, ask, 284, 25.
a-wayte, s. trouble, mischief, 478, 1; 653, 36.
awmenere, s. purse, 637, 13.
axed, v. asked, 3, 23.
axeden, v. 12, 15.
ayre, s. air, 56, 5.

baas, adj. low, whispering, 611, 23.
baile, 113, 22, 248, 28; baill, 113, 14; s. an enclosure by the keep of a castle.
baile, 350, 15; baille, 350, 26, 518; 18; s. power, custody.
bailly, 111, 13; baillye, 185, 20; s. custody, government.
baisyers, s. kisses, 323, 7.
bakke, s. back, 101, 8.
bapteme, s. baptism, 214, 2.
bar, v. 16, 36, bore, carried.
bar hir on-hande, 9, 18; to keep a person in play, to pretend for a sinister purpose, to deceive.
barbe, s. beard, 117, 14.
barbican, s. an outwork, a watch tower, 618, 23.
barnysshed, pp. made, proportioned, 520, 5.
baronye, s. baronage, 106, 34.
baste, s. bastardy, 86, 12.
bataille, s. army, 56, 33.
bawdrike, s. belt, 608, 3; 615, 3.
be, pp. been, 1, 13; 263, 28.
be, prep. by, about, 3, 3; 14, 2.
be-come, pp. gone, 259, 6.
beerdes, s. beards, 619, 29.
beere, s. bier, 674, 2.
be-fill, adj. suitable, 546, 29.
be-fill, v. happened, 12, 35; 153, 1.
be-heilde, v. looked, beheld, 7, 8; 158, 16.
be-hielde, v. 514, 8.
be-hote, v. to promise, 59, 33.
be-hoved, v. were compelled, forced, 479, 9.
beilde, v. to build, 63, 27.
be-knowe, v. to confess, acknowledge, 20, 22.
be-lefte, pp. remained, left, 202, 32.
beleve, 27, 11; bileve, 50, 36; s. belief.

be-leve, 48, 13; bileve, 17, 23; v. believe.
ben, v. to be, 2, 3.
bendes, s. bands, stripes, border, 279, 26; 161, 32.
be-raffte, pp. bereft, 2, 19.
be-raften, v. carried away, seized, 396, 19.
berde, s. beard, 43, 1; 279, 28.
bere, v. bear, 176, 16.
be-reve, v. to bereave, deprive of, 145, 32.
be-seged, 42, 22; besieged.
be-seke, v. to beseech, 37, 9.
bestes, s. beasts, 3, 27.
be-taught, v. committed, handed over, 12, 6; 162, 13.
bete, v. covered, overlaid, 608, 5.
betell, s. mallet, 329, 17.
beth, imper. be, 16, 13.
betid, pp. happened, 53, 16.
betyden, v. to happen, come to pass, 69, 23.
bewte, 12, 29; 177, 18; bewtee, 347, 27; s. beauty.
beyes, s. horses, 117, 36.
beyeth, v. buys, purchases, 93, 7.
biried, v. buried, 95, 22.
birthon, s. burthen, 648, 6.
bith, v. be, 556, 14.
blenche, v. to start, deviate, 159, 31.
blisse, v. bless, 8, 23; 170, 7.
blissynge, s. blessing, 11, 35.
blody, adj. bloody, 193, 18.
bloy, adj. sad, unhappy, 147, 16.
blusht, 265, 22; blusshet, 120, 3; 494, 5; v. fell, dropped.
blusshed, v. came upon, 259, 32.
bobaunce, s. boasting, bombast, 116, 23.
bode, v. waited for, 329, 15.
bokill, s. buckle, 339, 31; bocle, 395, 22.
bole, s. bull, 343, 17.
bon, s. bone, 338, 24.
bonche, s. bunch, 635, 18.
boorde, v. to tourney, jest, sport, 100, 28.
bordclothes, s. tablecloths, 240, 8.
bordes, s. tables, 454, 7.
bore, pp. born, 1, 9.
borough, v. borrow, 434, 8.
botiller, s. butler, 349, 4.
boton, s. button, 486, 34.
bounte, s. goodness, favour, 102, 16; 122, 18.
bourde, s. table, game, feast, 67, 32.
bourded, v. tilted, 133, 16.
bourdeyse, s. sport, play, 455, 24.
bourdinge, part. pres. 31, 29; 311, 14; playing, sporting.
bourdise, s. tournament, play, sport, 100, 29.
boustouse, adj. rough, clumsy, 42, 36.
bowes, s. boughs, 349, 11.
boysteis, adj. rough, 168, 7.
braied, v. started, 464, 19.
braied, 298, 33; brayed, 343, 17; v. shouted.
brakke, v. broke, 53, 8.
brasen, adj. of brass, 339, 33.
braste, v. broke, burst, 200, 21.
braundon, s. flame, 386, 7.
brayt, s. a cry, 216, 36.
breche, s. breeches, 536, 4.
bregge, 53, 6; brigge, 53, 9; 165, 31; s. bridge.
breke, v. to break, 52, 31.
brenne, v. to burn, 18, 27.
brennynge, part. burning, 18, 25.
brent, pp. burnt, 16, 26.
breres, s. briars, 517, 13.
brestes, s. breasts, 268, 18.
bretesches, s. brattices, bartizans, ramparts (Fr. les bretesces), 677, 33.
briaunt, adv. brilliant, well, 117, 20.
briddes, s. birds, 168, 14; 169, 2; bridde, 183, 35.
briste, adj. breast, 194, 10.
bristelis, s. bristles, 421, 30.
broder, s. brother, 8, 35; brothern, 122, 13.
brondes, s. swords, 246, 25.
brosed, all to, *i.e.* very much bruised, 157, 17.

brosed, pp. bruised, 391, 26.
brosten, v. broken, burst, 649, 10.
brunt, s. ? leap, 282, 34; at a brunt=suddenly.
brut, s. tumult, 574, 36.
bruyt, s. report, noise, rumour, 211, 32.
burgeys, s. burgesses, 453, 28.
but, conj. save, except, unless, 43, 31; 56, 7; 104, 11.
butte, s. *butte length, i.e.* the distance between two butts or targets, 385, 22.
by, prep. on, 278, 2.
by, v. be, let me be, 183, 22.
bye, v. buy, pay for, 299, 26.
by-fore, prep. before, 24, 8.
by-leve, s. belief, 578, 20.
by-sette, v. allotted, 369, 13.

cacchynge, adj. catching, 106, 10.
caliouns, s. flint stones, 281, 15; 329, 4; 677, 28.
carfowgh, s. junction of four roads, 273, 35.
cariage, s. baggage, 658, 20.
carl, 33, 22; karll, 261, 30; s. rustic.
carnell, adj. related by blood, 117, 8.
casteleyn, s. 545, 35; castelleynes, s. 320, 21; same as castellein.
castell, s. castle, 49, 30.
castellein, s. constable or keeper of a castle, 247, 30.
cauchie, 278, 13; cawchie, 380, 17; chauchie, 604, 28; s. path or road.
cerne, s. circle, 309, 31; 310, 2; 681, 14.
cesse, v. to cease, 5, 2; 116, 19.
chacche, v. to go, 424, 25.
chacche, v. to catch, 640, 6.
chaffed, pp. excited by anger, 460, 13; chauffed, 460, 36.
champ, s. field of the shield, 636, 29.
chaple, 134, 34; 389, 29; chaplee, 326, 11; s. battle, fight.
charge, v. to weigh, carry, 57, 35.
chauchie, s. on the road or highway, 493, 22.
chede, s. child, 15, 23.
chekier, s. chess-board, 362, 28.
chere, s. countenance, look, 44, 7; 227, 19.
cherl, s. churl, 43, 26.
ches, v. saw, 336, 7.
chese, v. to choose, 60, 21.
cheyer, s. chair, seat, 362, 11.
chielde, s. person, 264, 25.
childeren, s. knights, 259, 31.
chiualrie, s. cavalry, 256, 25.
chyne, s. backbone, 118, 21.
chyne, v. to split, 265, 22.
chyne, s. chin, 635, 20.
chyuachie, s. contest, war, expedition, 145, 13; 173, 2; 174, 13; 274, 30; 370, 32.
Clarance, cried a Clarance, *i.e.* "the word and sign of King Arthur," 287, 16.
claretee, s. brightness, 340, 15.
clatered, v. noised abroad, 12, 29.
clayned, pp. justified, cleaned, 19, 19.
clepe, v. to call, 45, 16.
clepid, 13, 20; cleped, 29, 27; clepeden, 16, 18; called.
cler, adj. clear, 338, 9.
clerenesse, s. brightness, light, 8, 28.
clergesse, s. female clerk, 374, 6.
clergie, s. learning, science, 634, 32; 27, 33.
cleymed, v. claimed, see *quyte cleymed*, 502, 2.
clier, adj. clear, 191, 8.
clipt, v. embraced, 143, 4; 149, 6.
clobbe, 648, 4; clubbe, 649, 2; s. club, weapon.
clowte, adj. "clowte leather," *i.e.* leather for mending, 33, 26.
clowte, v. to mend or patch shoes, 33, 23.
coffin, s. cover for a letter, 279, 20.
cofres, s. coffers.
cole, s. cool, 191, 16.

com, v. came, 5, 16.
comaunde, v. to commend, 8, 1; 33, 13.
comberaunce, s. trouble, 8, 21.
comen, adj. common, 104, 7.
comounte, s. mass, quantity, 574, 33.
complayned, v. bewailed, lamented, 24, 25.
complysshe, 61, 20; complesshen, 62, 1; v. to accomplish, fulfil.
comynyally, adv. in assembly, 96, 19.
condite, v. to conduct, 50, 2, used passively, 50, 30.
condite, s. conduct, 82, 28.
conditour, s. conductor, 392, 14.
coniorison, 607, 20; coniurison, 362, 34; 608, 14; s. conjuring, sorcery.
conne, v. to know, 22, 16.
conne, v. give, render, 73, 8; 123, 9.
connynge, s. knowledge, science, 2, 29.
connynge, adj. knowing, acquainted with, 17, 4; 122, 1.
conseille, conseill, s. council, 3, 12; 2, 22.
constabilrie, s. management, care of, 373, 32.
contene, v. defend, preserve, 77, 6; 264, 18.
contened, v. continued, 355, 13.
contirfet, adj. counterfeit, 635, 13.
contre, s. country, 5, 12; 153, 17.
contrey, s. 153, 19.
convenable, adj. like, fitting, 59, 29.
conveye, v. to show, put in the way, 538, 33.
conveyed, v. showed, 525, 4.
conysshaunce, s. badge, crest, 510, 12.
corage, s. inclination, intention, heart, 228, 30; 309, 3.
cordewan, s. Spanish leather, 615, 7.
corse, s. corpse, 34, 9.
corsure, s. horseman, 328, 4.
cosin, cousin, 117, 28.
cote, s. coat, 261, 5.
coton, s. cotton, 294, 27.
couetyse, 13, 8; covetise, 106, 22; s. covetousness, desire.
counfort, s. comfort, 7, 16.
counseile, v. used intransitively, 95, 25.
counterfeited, pp. ill-shapen; Fr. contrefais.
counterynge, s. encounter, meeting, 200, 21.
courbe, adj. bent, curved, 635, 17.
courbed, pp. bent, 261, 6.
covered, v. recovered? hid his feelings? 213, 6.
covyne, s. secret contrivance, 306, 31; 465, 12.
cowde, v. knew, 28, 8; 482, 7.
cowde, 9, 7; cowden, 2, 14; could.
cowpe, s. cup, 67, 7.
coy, adv. shyly, 125, 16.
cracchinges, s. scratchings, 668, 30.
crasinge, s. 200, 26; same as crassinge.
craspe, v. grasp, seize, 649, 10.
crassinge, s. crashing, noise, 155, 17.
crature, s. creature, 11, 30.
creaunce, s. belief, 5, 29; 340, 36; 662, 13.
crepell, s. cripple, 73, 5.
crewell, 39, 1; cruewell, 281, 28; adj. cruel.
cride, 161, 24; cryde, 215, 7; v. proclaimed, exposed.
cristen, s. christians, 57, 3.
cristendom, s. christianity, 55, 11.
christynte, s. christianity, 226, 12.
croupe, 117, 25; crowpe, 128, 5; s. the buttocks of a horse.
crull, adj. curled, 508, 24.
crysten, adj. christian, 23, 31.
cure, s. care, desire, 229, 1.
curroure, sb. courier, runner, 279, 19.
curroyes, couriers? runners? 485, 12.
curteys, adj. courteous, 266, 9.

daissht, pp. spoilt, 246, 23.
damage, s. injury, defeat, 349, 13.
dampned, pp. condemned, punished, 11, 32.
daunger, 2, 27; daungier, 434, 14; s. power, dominion.
dawe, v. to dawn, 98, 9.
dawenynge, s. daybreak, 297, 35.
day, s. time, 82, 25.
deboner, adj. courteous, gentle, 266, 9.
debonerly, adv. courteously, 105, 21; 140, 31.
debonertee, s. gentleness, courtesy, 123, 7.
dede, s. deed, 5, 24.
dede, v. caused, made, 37, 29.
deduyt, s. pleasure, delight, 307, 34; 437, 8; 640, 31.
deed, adj. dead, 34, 8.
deffence, s. prohibition, defence, 54, 27.
deffende, v. to forbid, 54, 23.
deffende, v. to preserve, defend, 39, 26; 121, 17.
defensable, adj. able to defend, 54, 18.
delicatys, s. delicacies, 6, 26.
delyte, s. delight, 6, 25.
delyuer, adj. active, nimble, 267, 34; deliuere, 136, 23; adj. free, 692, 20.
delyuerly, adv. actively, nimbly, 158, 36.
demaundes, s. questions, 16, 12.
demened, pp. treated, 465, 13; 656, 35.
demened, pp. conducted, directed, 75, 33; 79, 9.
demonstraunce, s. demonstration, sign, 59, 11.
departe, v. to separate, divide, distribute, 61, 8; 92, 29; ended, 90, 13.
dere, adj. dear, 49, 27.
derenged, v. attacked, fought, 549, 1.
derke, adj. dark, 348, 2.
derkly, adv. darkly, obscurely, 53, 22.
deserue, v. serve for, do work for, 660, 25.
desese, s. inconvenience, hardship, trouble, 260, 2.
desesse, s. decease, 228, 25.
desier, s. desire, wish, 4, 18.
desseuered, pp. divided, separated, 259, 33.
deth, s. death, 45, 6.
dever, s. duty, 162, 13.
devise, s. at all points, 278, 32; 508, 10; 519, 2.
devised, v. directed, 659, 23.
devynour, s. deviner, 45, 19.
deyen, v. to die, 3, 29.
deynteis, s. dainties, 471, 12.
deyse, s. high table in hall, 480, 28.
dierly, adv. dearly, eagerly, 302, 12; 631, 4.
diffence, s. gainsaying, 686, 17.
diffende, v. to prohibit, prevent, resist, 29, 10; 428, 14.
diffoulde, pp. 10, 33; defiled; diffoiled, 276, 35.
dight, pp. arrayed, dressed, 113, 13.
disavaunce, v. forestall (Fr. desauanchier), 658, 15.
disavaunced, pp. thrown or driven back, 250, 22.
discendir, v. to fall, drop, 118, 19.
discesed, pp. deprived, 229, 31.
disceytis, s. deceits, 8, 7.
disceyve, 3, 23; disseyve, 87, 29; v. to deceive.
discheueled, pp. dishevelled, 453, 16; 646, 15.
discheuelee, s. entanglement of hair, 298, 31.
disconfited, pp. discomforted, defeated, 24, 24.
discouert, adj. uncovered, 628, 34.
discounfit, v. to discomfort, defeat.
discounfited, discomfited, 120, 14.
discure, v. to discover, make plain, 58, 19.
disered, v. desired, 27, 7.
diserte, s. desert, 59, 8.

disese, v. to trouble, discomfort, 2, 26; 115, 31; 649, 29.
disese, s. harm, injury, 1, 20; 30, 25.
disgarnysshed, pp. deprived of, go without, 440, 17.
disherit, v. to disinherit, 42, 7.
disparble, v. to disperse, 208, 5; disparbled, pt. dispersed, 196, 19; 214, 18.
dispeire, s. despair, 4, 17.
dispitously, adv. pitifully, 355, 6.
disporte, v. engage, practise, 352, 15.
dispyte, s. pity, regret, 70, 23.
disray, s. clamour, commotion, 407, 11; 460, 10.
dissese, s. discomfort, trouble, 54, 30.
distraught, pp. distracted, 20, 21.
distreined, v. vexed, upset, 71, 3.
distreyned, v. constrained, 193, 4.
distrif, s. strife, 536, 9.
distrowed, 26, 19; distrued, 184, 29; distrowied, 40, 28; pp. destroyed.
distroyne, 174, 31; distrye, 191, 22; v. to destroy.
distrubier, s. disturber, 240, 22.
distrubinge, s. disturbance, upset, 296, 4.
distrubled, v. disturbed, troubled, 154, 5.
distruxion, s. destruction, 172, 6.
disturbier, s. hindrance, 509, 36.
disturdison, s. moaning, suffering, 266, 35.
disturue, v. dispute, question, 680, 1.
distyne, distynes, s. destiny, 166, 3; 582, 30.
do, v. execute, fulfil, 5, 13.
do, v. caused, 25, 25; 57, 16.
doctryne, s. doctrine, teaching, 5, 30.
doel, 34, 9; doell, 4, 25; s. grief, sorrow, mourning.
dolent, adj. sad, sorrowful, 331, 1; 572, 20.
dolven, pp. buried, 5, 14.
don, prep. down, 53, 8.
dought, v. ought, should, 47, 17.
dought, v. thought, 3, 36; seemed, 106, 14; feared, doubted, 6, 9; 248, 36.
dought, s. thought, 555, 18.
dought, s. fear, 226, 29.
doute, v. to fear, 62, 7; 171, 7.
doute, 70, 15; 94, 22; dowte, s. fear, 117, 32.
douted, v. feared, dreaded, 265, 17; 343, 7.
draweth, v. resembles, 434, 35.
drede, s. fear, dread, 16, 27.
dressed, v. reared, prepared, set in order, 58, 11; 110, 25; went, addressed, 255, 2.
drof, v. drove, 26, 36.
drough, 17, 22; drowgh, 28, 28; drow, 47, 31; v. drew.
druweries, s. love, esteem, 641, 2.
dubbe, v. dub, 316, 7.
duelled, v. dwelled, remained, 645, 16.
duerf, s. dwarf, 638, 13.
dure, v. to endure, last, 116, 8.
duresse, s. constraint, confinement, 19, 10.
dureth, v. extends, 260, 18.
dyed, v. died, 4, 25.
dyen, 65, 26; dye, 3, 34; v. to dye.

ech, eche, adj. each, 110, 32.
efte-sones, adv. afterwards, presently, 226, 31.
egramauncye, 375, 30; 508, 4; egremauncye, 176, 6; s. magic, divination.
eiled, v. ailed, 3, 33.
eleccion, s. election, choice, 96, 25.
ellis, 76, 15; elles, 54, 2; adv. else.
elther, adj. older, 5, 29; 529, 6.
empeire, v. hurt, 606, 27.
empere, s. empire, 105, 36.
emprise, s. enterprise, 263, 9.
en, conj. and, 14, 27.

enarmynge, s. handle of a shield, 667, 25.
enbelynk, 584, 9.
enbrace, v. puts on his arm, 516, 5.
enbuschement, 161, 5; enbusshement, 135, 5; s. ambush.
enbusshed, pp. amassed, ambushed, 246, 12.
enchase, v. to pursue, 218, 6.
encombraunce, s. encumbrance, 5, 23.
encrese, v. to increase, 223, 31.
enderdited, pp. interdicted, 466, 19.
enffeffe, v. infeof, 373, 32.
enforce, v. increase, 443, 3.
engender, 102, 8; engendre, 62, 1; v. to beget.
engyn, 20, 33; engyne, 14, 14; s. craft, subtlety, deceit.
enmy, 20, 32; enmye, 55, 9; s. enemy.
ennoisies, adj. gay, lively [" misreading for *envoisies*." N.E.D.], 106, 12.
enprise, s. enterprise, 242, 30.
enquere, v. to enquire, ask for, 44, 3; 49, 22.
enquesitif, adj. inquisitive, 292, 34.
enquest, s. search, 687, 10.
enquire, s. enquiry, 3, 12.
ensele, v. seal, 617, 32.
entailled, v. carved, shaped, 362, 31.
entassed, pp. incumbered, heaped, 337, 29.
entassement, s. accumulation, heaping, 398, 7.
entende, v. learn, pay attention, 310, 11.
entended, v. heard, attended, 23, 18; 266, 34.
entente, s. intent, intention, 97, 25.
ententifly, adv. attentively, 567, 25.
entered, v. buried, 647, 9.
entermedled, intermixed, 227, 7.
entermete, v. to meddle with, interfere, 19, 31; 39, 33.
enterpassaunt, v. returning, passing back, 329, 20.
enterpendaunt, adj. independent, enterprising, 475, 7.
entiere, v. buried, interred, 369, 13.
entirpassinge, v. passing back, 407, 32.
entrauerse, adj. crossed, 163, 12.
entre, s. entry, 55, 23; beginning, 191, 7; entreynge, s. beginning, 205, 12.
entysement, s. enticement, 5, 1.
enuay, envaie, s.; Fr. envahie, an assault, an onset, 318, 15; 352, 18.
enuoysed, v. 463, 2.
environ, prep. about, around, 113, 22; 153, 17.
er, adv. before, 190, 19.
errour, s. chagrin, vexation, 318, 25.
erthe, s. earth, 128, 5.
ese, s. ease, 257, 23.
espleyted, pp. fulfilled, completed, 10, 16.
espyes, 146, 10; esspies, 575, 15; s. spies.
este, adv. first, 72, 31.
estres, s. ins and outs, 242, 13.
euell, adv. ill, mis-, 5, 22.
eure, s. luck, fortune, 320, 32.
evereche, 31, 36; everich, 63, 32; adj. each one, every.
evesonge, s. evensong, vespers, 102, 36.
expowned, pp. expounded, explained, 42, 26.
eyder, pron. either, 148, 6.

facion, s. appearance, 427, 27.
fader, 5, 10; ffader, 102, 5; fadir, 5, 18; s. father.
fadome, s. fathom, 430, 11.
falle, pp. fell out, happened, 5, 11.
false, v. betray, deceive, 608, 28.
falsed, v. falsified, 666, 7.
fantasie, s. desire, liking, 213, 5.
faste, adj. near, close, 213, 22.

fauced, 628, 22; faused, 456, 25; v. pierced, cut.
faucouns, s. falcons, 135, 9.
faugh, v. fought, 159, 8.
faute, n. want, 568, 27.
fecche, v. to fetch, 100, 35.
feed, adj. paid, 472, 16.
feende, 3, 35; fende, 1, 11; s. fiend.
feffed, v. infeofed, 374, 2.
feire, 8, 8; fere, 114, 19; s. fear.
feire, 4, 13; feyre, 6, 31; adj. fair.
felen, v. to feel, perceive, 38, 3.
felischep, 28, 10; felschip, 6, 9; felishep, 34, 31; 56, 11; s. fellowship, company.
fell, adj. fierce, strong, cruel, 30, 8; 102, 30.
fellenouse, adj. fierce, wicked, 118, 7; 352, 25.
felliche, adv. cruelly, felly, 571, 11.
felly, adv. fiercely, 215, 31.
felon, adj. dangerous, 548, 9.
felonously, adv. fiercely, cruelly, 216, 1.
felt, s. hat, 279, 23.
fenisshe, v. to finish, end, stop, 54, 12.
fer, adj. far, distant, 6, 3.
fercely, adv. fiercely, 119, 35.
ferde, v. acted, conducted, 4, 15; went, 211, 22.
ferde, adj. afraid, frightened, terrible, 27, 4; 346, 23.
feriage, s. passing over water, 606, 20.
ferly, adj. strange, 93, 30.
ferther, adj. foreign, distant, 103, 36.
feste, s. feast, 63, 22.
fewtee, s. fealty, 121, 3.
fewtre, s. the rest for a spear, 127, 9.
ficched, v. moved uncomfortably, 335, 30.
ficchid, pp. fixed, fastened, 98, 14; 164, 9.
fieraunt, adj. becoming, suitable, 583, 26.
fiers, adj. fierce, 193, 19.
fill, v. fell, went, 4, 17.
fill, pt. fell out, happened, 44, 5; 59, 6.
fin, s. end, conclusion, 229, 33.
fin, 249, 16; 287, 6; fyn, 156, 16; adj. sheer, entire.
fitz, s. sons, 496, 1; 542, 10.
flain, 268, 34; flayn, 347, 9; pp. flayed, skinned.
flat, v. ? extend, 275, 30.
flawme, s. flame, 332, 17.
flayle, s. portion of a gate, the bar, 206, 29.
fle, v. to fly, 199, 28.
flekered, v. fluttered, waved, 324, 30.
fleynge, part. pres. flying, 56, 5.
florte, adj. ? flowered, decorated, 395, 14.
flos of the see, high tide, 646, 5.
flote, s. mass, company, 198, 3.
flour, s. flower, *i.e.* best, 401, 8.
fly, v. flew, 199, 25; 216, 34.
fole, s. fool, 53, 14; 357, 15.
folily, adv. foolishly, 7, 18; 650, 32.
fonde, v. found, 11, 1; 36, 29.
foorde, s. ford, 606, 17.
for, adv. because, inasmuch as, 108, 17.
for, prep. from, 260, 4.
for-swellen, very much swollen, 172, 19.
for-swette, *i.e.* covered with sweat, 296, 19.
fore, prep. of, 300, 25.
forewarde, s. first portion, van, 276, 16.
forfet, s. offence, 69, 8; 109, 2.
forfet, v. prepared, 84, 20.
forfete, v. to injure, offend, misdo, 115, 18.
forgeven, v. to forgive, 55, 31.
for-juged, pp. wrongfully judged, 470, 19.
for-leyn, v. lain with, 544, 3.

formednesse, s. silly action, conceit, 639, 26.
formeste, adj. foremost, 46, 12.
forrears, 146, 17; forryoars, 230, 13; s. scouts, foragers.
forry, v. forage, 272, 7.
forse, s. force, number, 126, 19.
for-swollen, adj. 538, 6.
fort, adv. forth, 361, 12.
for-thought, pp. repented, grieved, 40, 28.
forthynke, v. to repent, 25, 15.
foryete, v. to forget, 71, 33.
foryete, pp. forgotten, 9, 33.
for-yeten, pp. forgotten, 138, 18; 545, 6.
foryevenesse, s. forgiveness, 10, 28.
foundement, s. foundation, 31, 24.
founden, pp. found, 4, 15.
fowled, v. trampled, 494, 36.
fowrtithe, 40th? 171, 19.
foyson, s. plenty, 150, 31; 176, 34.
frayen, v. rubbed, dashed, 594, 34.
frayinge, s. collision, struggle, 339, 14.
frayned, 6, 13; freyned, 50, 7; v. asked, questioned, enquired.
freissh, adj. fresh, gay, 203, 10.
fremyssh, v. tremble, shake, 284, 9; 336, 18.
fremysshed, v. trembled, shook, 162, 28; 648, 32.
frende, s. friend, 49, 27.
fres, adj. vigorous, 156, 10.
fro, prep. from, 4, 22.
frote, v. rub, 76, 20; 424, 25.
frotinge, v. rubbing, 649, 7.
frusht, 207, 2; frussht, 164, 14; ffrushed, 219, 18; 661, 5; v. dashed, smashed, rushed, violently.
fulfilde, v. filled, 59, 28.
full, adv. very, quite, 41, 17.
fullich, adv. fully, 275, 14.
fyngres, s. fingers, 635, 19.
fynyshment, s. end, conclusion, 23, 3.
gabbe, v. to lie, talk idly, 31, 4.
gabbynge, s. lying, 13, 5.
ganfanon, s. standard, 205, 35; 323, 18.
ganfanoner, s. standard-bearer, 211, 7.
garcion, s. stripling, boy, 103, 32.
garnement, s. garment, 384, 29.
garnyson, s. garrison, 174, 29.
garnyyshed, v. garrisoned, 381, 21.
garnysshe, 115, 19; 55, 22; 176, 14; garnyssh, 174, 23; v. to furnish, prepare, guard?
gate, v. got, 333, 29.
gavelokkes, s. spears or javelins, 300, 34; 662, 33.
geauntes, s. giants, 209, 15.
gete, v. to get, beget, 3, 5; 3, 9; 67, 34.
geve, v. to give, 95, 26.
gige, s. handle of a shield, 344, 36; 496, 31.
gipser, s. pouch or purse, 608, 5.
girde, v. smite, strike, 408, 33; 596, 8.
glenched, v. glanced, slipped aside, 158, 6; 329, 6.
gleves, 660, 34; glevis, 275, 23; gleyves, 264, 1; 331, 26; s. a weapon composed of a long cutting blade at the end of a lance.
glode, v. glided, 594, 29.
glood, do., 595, 23.
glose, v. flatter, cajole, 680, 9.
go, pp. gone, 267, 6.
gode, s. goods, property, 4, 4.
gode, adj. good, 3, 27.
gome, s. man, 594, 29.
gonne, v. began, commenced, 369, 30.
goolde, s. gold, 57, 15.
goste, s. ghost, 12, 3.
gotere, s. gutter, 38, 1.
goth, imper. go, 13, 12.
goules, 205, 35; gowles, 395, 15; s. gules.
gowe = go we, let us go, 68, 4.

gramercy, interj. great thanks, many thanks, 115, 32.
graunted, v. promised, 557, 13.
gre, s. favour, pleasure; to take in gre=take kindly, 204, 13.
greces, 279, 30; 427, 30; greeces, 555, 8; s. ? steps, entrance.
grees, s. same as greces (279, 30), 639, 3.
grennynge, v. roaring, crying, 209, 9.
gret, adj. great, 50, 26.
gretinge, s. greeting, 47, 24.
gretnesse, s. pregnancy, 86, 19.
grette, adj. great, 648, 4.
greve, v. to vex, injure, 154, 24.
greves, s. shores, beach? 649, 29.
grewe, 436, 20; griewe, 437, 15; s. Greek.
griped, v. seized, 9, 21; 119, 14.
growe, adj. grown, 390, 12.
grucched, 355, 24; 392, 26; grucchid, 206, 32; v. opposed, resisted.
grucchynge, s. opposition, 73, 19.
grym, adj. rough, dirty, 43, 1; 196, 18.
grysly, adj. horrible, terrible, 15, 8.
guerdon, v. reward, 102, 22.
gyde, s. guide, 280, 26.
gyge, same as gige.
gynneth, v. begins, commences, 313, 8.
gynnynge, s. beginning, 10, 30.
gysarmes, s. bills or battle axes, 281, 31.

habergon, s. breast-plate, armour for the neck and breast, 110, 21.
halowmasse, s. the feast of All Saints, 97, 12.
halsed, v. embraced, 74, 26.
haluendell, s. half, 157, 25.
haly, adj. holy, 12, 2.
happed, v. happened, 7, 11.
harde, adv. hard, terribly, strongly, 214, 19.
hardely, adv. boldly, 35, 7.
hardy, adj. bold, brave, 113, 23.
hardynesse, s. boldness, 103, 18; 169, 3.
harlotis, s. harlots, followers, scouts, base men, 9, 12; 276, 14; 404, 16.
harneyse, s. weapons, armour, 120, 26.
haten, v. to hate, 5, 22.
hau, have, 111, 21.
haubrek, 118, 35; hauberkes, 628, 21; s. a coat of mail.
hedylyche, adv. ? heavily, strongly, 119, 4.
heer, s. hair, 261, 6.
heirdes, s. herdsmen, 3, 28.
heire, adv. here, 23, 30.
heire, s. air, 393, 6.
heiren, v. to hear, 32, 33.
heir-to, adv. hereto, 24, 8.
hele, s. health, 71, 27.
helue, s. helve, handle, 339, 28.
hem, pron. them, 3, 28; 5, 17.
henge, v. hung, 4, 22.
hens, adv. hence, 15, 14.
hente, v. seize, take hold of, 30, 8; 101, 8.
her, pron. their, 34, 6.
herbegage, s. quarters, lodgings, 154, 25.
herberewe, 30, 31; herberowe, 204, 20; s. lodging, shelter, harbour.
herberough, s. hauberk, 387, 5.
herberowed, pp. lodged, 546, 34.
here, pron. her, 3, 17.
here, v. to hear, 23, 23; heren, 171, 16.
herken, v. to listen, herkened, pt., 23, 17.
hertely, adv. heartily, 48, 26; 81, 31.
hertys, s. ? persons, 22, 9.
hevied, v. made heavy, depressed, 182, 19.
hevy, adj. heavy, dull, 53, 25.
hevyeth, v. hesitate, 368, 13.
heyer, s. heir, 80, 20.
hider, adv. hither, 25, 16.

hidouse, adj. hideous, frightful, 40, 36.
hidously, adv. 207, 22.
hier, adj. higher, upper, 175, 17.
hierdes, s. shepherds, 252, 20.
hiest, adj. highest, most renowned, 55, 1.
hight, 24, 2; 59, 25; highte, 129, 3; pp. called.
hilde, v. held, 14, 18.
hir, pro. their, 33, 33.
hire, v. to hear, 102, 36.
hit, pro. it, 91, 22.
hoilde, v. to hold, side, 42, 9.
hoill, adj. whole, entire, 52, 28; 57, 2; hool, 224, 23.
holicherche=holy church, 14, 18.
holtes, s. woods, groves, 274, 1.
holy, adv. wholly, 86, 4.
hom, s. home, 250, 35.
horse, s. horses, a company of horse, 4, 3; 50, 17; 117, 1; 193, 14; 335, 17.
hosebonde, s. husband, 19, 27.
hoseled, pp. comforted, 415, 35; was hoseled, *i.e.* received.
houe, pp. brought up, reared? 124, 28.
houeth, v. behoves, 33, 9.
hovid, v. stopped, 200, 4.
howsolde, s. household, family, 49, 10.
howsynge, s. housing, houses, 63, 27.
huch, s. hutch, 4, 20.
hurdeysed, v. hurdled, 604, 21.
hurtelid, v. rushed, dashed, 117, 35.
hym, pron. he, 250, 30.

iape, v. to jest, mock, 66, 28; 113, 31.
iapes, s. jests, mockery, 113, 32.
I-be, pp. been, 258, 16; 363, 28.
i-come, pp. come, 25, 16.
i-don, pp. done, 76, 23.
i-douted, pp. feared, dreaded, 163, 34.
iepardye, s. jeopardy, 69, 28.
i-gon, pp. gone, 68, 35.
I-loste, pp. lost, 312, 33.

[I have heard a gamekeeper say to his retriever, when he had shot some game, and wished the dog to go and get it, "I-lost, I-lost."—W. A. D.]

in-countre, s. encounter, 134, 6.
indure, v. to last, 24, 27.
Inngendure, s. ? charge of guilt, 18, 23.
I-nowgh, 213, 29; i-nough, 68, 18; i-nowe, 77, 5; adj. enough.
inteript, pp. interrupted, 105, 28?
intermete, v. to interfere, meddle with, 24, 21.
in-to, prep. until, 30, 1; 105, 27.
ioly, adj. pretty, 106, 12.
iolye, adj. pleasant, joyful, 47, 18.
iour, s. day, 67, 5.
iourne, s. journey, 251, 15.
Iowes, s. jaws, 273, 22; 496, 34.
iren, s. iron, 98, 13.
irouse, adj. angry, enraged, 71, 3.
I-spredde, pp. spread, 240, 7.
isse, v. issue, sally forth, 255, 22; 334, 31.
issed, 111, 6; isseden, 42, 13; v. issued forth.
issu, issue, s. doorway, outlet, 90, 3; 357, 21.
I-teyed, v. moored, 464, 3.
iustice, v. to judge, 122, 35.
iustynge, s. jousting, 127, 21.
iuwelles, 64, 8; juwels, 65, 29; s. jewels.
Iuyse, s. judgment, 35, 4; properly imoyse fin judicium.
iyen, s. eyes, 172, 18.

kach, v. to catch, 9, 23.
keeled, v. cooled, 371, 9.
keen, s. kine, 274, 12.
keled, pp. cooled, 214, 4.
kenne, v. to know, recognize, 45, 22.
kenrede, s. kindred, 79, 35.
kilde, pt. killed, 209, 21.
kirchires, s. covering for the head of a woman, 689, 33.

knowe, pp. 11, 16; knoweth, pres. pl. 2, 3.
knowleche, s. knowledge, 2, 29.
knowliche, v. to acknowledge, 26, 12.
knowynge, s. knowledge, wisdom, 3, 11; 13, 22; 58, 23.
knyghthode, s. chivalry, warlike deed, 56, 29.
kowde, 21, 22; kowthe, 100, 5; v. could.
koye, adj. quiet, coy, shy, 78, 11.
krowne, s. crown, 24, 13.
kutte, v. cut, 339, 28.
kyngeles, adj. kingless, 24, 30.
kyton, s. kitten, 665, 28.
kyttynge, v. cutting, 118, 15.
kyutte, 195, 4; kutte, 195, 2; kytte, 137, 16; v. cut, cut off.

laden, v. to dip or bale water, 37, 29.
lakke, s. lack, 54, 30.
lappe, s. skirt, 101, 10.
lardre, 336, 28; lardure, 337, 27; 655, 18; s. slaughter.
lasted, v. extended in space, 274, 15; 350, 23.
laught, v. caught, 199, 29.
launchant, part. leaning forward, 288, 33.
launde, s. bit of open country, 298, 6; Fr. lande, 683, 4.
laweers, s. lawyers, 434, 14.
layners, s. cords, 697, 6.
leche, s. doctor, 336, 7.
lechours, s. lustful men, 434, 29.
leder, s. leather, 168, 7.
leed, s. lead, 63, 5.
leff, v. leave, 299, 24.
lefte, v. remained, 70, 25; 95, 20.
lefte, pp. broken, 85, 15.
leged, v. laid, fixed, 166, 29.
leide to the deef ere, *i.e.* turned a deaf ear, 261, 34.
leife, s. lover, 636, 12.
leiser, s. chance, opportunity, 346, 21.
leneth, v. lendeth, 434, 9.
lenger, adj. longer, 110, 11.
lenton, s. the season of Lent, 142, 24.
lenynge, part. pres., leaving, resting, 168, 1.
leopart, 304, 11; lupart, 304, 6; s. leopard.
lepe, v. leapt, 68, 32; 195, 13.
lerned, v. taught, 5, 31; pp. 9, 7.
lese, v. to lose, 6, 8.
lessed, v. deprived, 401, 18.
leste, v. to please, desire, 48, 32.
lesynge, s. lye, lying, 31, 6; 62, 9.
let, v. to hinder, 7, 24; prevent, 12, 19.
lete, 12, 19 (to cause, ?13, 17; 18, 31; 27, 18).
lette, v. prevent, to hinder, 188, 29.
letted, pp. hindered, 228, 18.
lettynge, s. hindrance, 6, 36; 131, 10.
leve, v. to believe, 11, 21; 29, 5; 62, 28.
leve, v. to live, 24, 34.
leve, v. accept, follow, 365, 11; 507, 21.
leven, v. leave, forsake, 202, 20.
lever, adv. rather, sooner, 35, 33.
leyser, s. leisure, 7, 2; 32, 26.
leysere, s. chance, 100, 20; all be leysere.
lifly, adv. lively, 355, 5.
lifte, adj. left, 211, 5.
liggynge, 58, 11; 155, 6; lyggynge, 196, 10; part. pres. lying down.
lightly, adv. quickly, 241, 17; 634, 32.
litere, 93, 31; letere, 94, 6; lytier, 92, 25; litier, 301, 14; s. litter.
logged, pp. lodged, encamped, 277, 25.
logges, s. tents, lodges, 116, 23.
loigge, v. to lodge, stay, 127, 18.
loigges, s. tents, camp, 387, 1.
loigginge, 43, 34; loigynge, 68, 8; s. lodging, abode.
loiginge, s. tent, lodging, 387, 8.
londe, s. land, 26, 26.

longed, v. belonged, 42, 4; 470, 15.
longes, s. lungs, 357, 8.
longinge, pres. part. belonging, 605, 21.
loose, v. to lose, 6, 30.
lordinges, s. Sirs, masters, 172, 30.
lordship, s. estate, 350, 23.
lorn, pp, forsaken, 58, 27.
lose, s. honour, fame, praise, 176, 18.
losenges, s. [in heraldry], 205, 35.
lothly, adj. loathsome, 262, 16.
lotly, adj. ugly, 265, 32.
lough, v. laughed, 33, 25.
lowed, v. lowered, 397, 8.
lower, s. hire, reward, 59, 5.
lowted, v. bent, bowed, made obeisance, 98, 19.
lurdeyn, s. lazy person, 537, 7; 538, 2.
luste, s. will, desire, 7, 23; 268, 25.
lusty, adj. vigorous, merry, 191, 12.
lyen, v. to lie, 86, 27.
lyfte, adj. left, 128, 4.
lyfte, v. lifted, raised, 24, 14.
lym, s. limb, 321, 33.
lynage, 59, 8; lyngnage, 105, 6; s. lineage.
lyntell, s. lintell, s. lintel, 436, 19.
lyonsewes, s. young lions; Fr. lionçeaux, 413, 22; 417, 10.
lysted, pp. edged or bordered, 163, 12.

maat, adj. stupefied, overpowered, 125, 16.
magre, s. 40, 7; 83, 17; misfortune, displeasure, s.; in spite of, prep. 206, 31; 214, 23.
maister, s. master, 3, 30.
maister, adj. chief, 110, 6.
maistries, 78, 17; mastryes, 134, 14; s. feats, deeds.
maistris, s. leaders, 549, 35.
make, v. used passively, 38 1; 57, 16; to cause, ? 6, 17; 29, 25.
males, s. wallets, budgets, 147, 34.
maletalentif, adv. with ill-will, 338, 27.
malle, s. club, mallet, 339, 9.
maltalente, maltelente, s. anger, evil disposition, 500, 27.
manased, v. menaced, 651, 16.
manasynge, s. threats, 26, 22.
manece, 652, 10; manese, 26, 25; v. threaten.
maners, s. ways, 2, 13.
mantelent, s. anger, ill-will, 339, 2.
maras, 254, 27; 380, 16; s. marsh.
marasse, s. bog, 604, 28.
marche, s. border, boundary, limit, 167, 23.
maroners, s. mariners, 379, 5.
marteleise, 211, 26; martileys, 334, 23; s. hammering.
martirdom, s. slaughter, 163, 29.
martire, s. torment, martyrdom, 17, 7; slaughter, 193, 25.
maryne, s. sea-coast, 230, 6.
marysse, s. marsh, 254, 19.
mased, pp. confounded, 201, 12.
massage, s. message, command, 29, 28.
massagiers, 33, 20; massanger, 31, 7; massenger, 33, 18; s. messenger.
mat, adj., same as maat, 145, 24.
mate, adj. dejected, exhausted, 269, 33; 355, 8; 396, 20.
matelentif, adj. angry, 219, 30.
mater, s. ? matter, 503, 25.
matere, 114, 7; matire, 50, 34; s. matter, business.
maundement, s. demand, 643, 15.
mayden, s.: "He was a preste . . . and also a mayden," *i.e.* unmarried, 326, 36.
mayme, s. injury, 527, 9.
maymen, v. to maim, 208, 13.
mayne, meyne, s. retinue, household, 42, 15; 46, 26.

mayntene, meyntene, v. to maintain, uphold, 97, 22; 112, 33.
me, s. men, 244, 13.
meddelynge, 199, 32; medelinge, 207, 28; 352, 12; s. fighting.
medle, 100, 33; 118, 7; 156, 15; medlee, 163, 29; s. fray, tourney, fight.
mees, s. mice, 665, 30.
mene, adj. many? mean? common? 243, 28.
mene, s. means, way, 20, 14.
mennes, s. men's, 262, 33.
ment, v. meant, 25, 2.
mervelle, 3, 30; merveyle, 5, 15; merveile, 42, 2; s. wonder.
merveloise, adj. marvellous, 56, 29.
merveyled, v. marvelled, wondered, 3, 29.
mese, s. mess, meal, 614, 36.
messagers, s. messengers, 29, 36.
messe, s. mass, service, 52, 11.
mete, s. food, 240, 6.
mevable, adj. movable, 116, 5.
meve, v. to move, 38, 15; start, go, 130, 11.
meyne, s. (chess) men, 362, 30.
mo, pron. me, 431, 19.
mo, 56, 7; moo, 258, 10; adj. more.
moche, adj. broad, great, 97, 7; 117, 13; 351, 20; many, 262, 35.
moche, adv. much, 4, 1.
modir, 5, 18; moder, 8, 35; modre, 15, 5; s. mother.
monestede, v. admonished, 530, 18.
monge, prep. amongst, 244, 4.
morderid, pp. murdered, 46, 10.
moreyn, s. murrain, 3, 30.
morowe, s. morning, 204, 30; 545, 8.
morownynge, s. morning, 273, 36.
mortalite, s. mortality, 56, 27.
mortalito, s. mortality, 337, 10.
mortall, adj. deadly, 214, 16.
morthered, v. murdered, 401, 29.
mossell, s. morsel, 6, 24; mossel brede, a morsel of bread.
moste, adj. greatest, 210, 36.
mouncels, s. portions, 413, 36.
moustred, v. mustered, 560, 26.
mowe, v. may, 22, 29.
musardes, s. dull persons, fools, 183, 34; 582, 15.
mustre, s. muster, 658, 22.
myddill, s. middle, 108, 3.
mynistre, s. minster, 98, 26.
myri, adj. merry, 384, 31.
myrily, adv. pleasantly, joyously, 77, 7.
mysauenture, s. misadventure, mishap, 68, 1.
mysbelevynge, adj. unbelieving, 191, 23.
myschaunce, s. misfortune, 78, 27.
myschef, s. danger, injury, 4, 5; 356, 18.
myscheved, pp. injured, 8, 36.
myschief, s. odds, 265, 1.
mysdon, pp. done wrongly, 500, 20.
mysese, s. discomfort, 64, 33.
mysese, adj. injured, troubled, 94, 13.
myshevouse, adj. unfortunate, injurious, 5, 28.
myslyvinge, s. evil life, 2, 10.
myssese, s. trouble, discomfort, 331, 21.
myssey, v. to slander, revile, 30, 10.
myster, s. need, necessity, 44, 31; 65, 33; 93, 28.
mystere, s. skill, occupation, 14, 6; 156, 34.
mystered, s. needed, 22, 35.
mystily, adv. obscurely, darkly, 54, 6.
mystrowe, v. to mistrust, 21, 12; 48, 33.

namly, adv. especially, 8, 20.
nas, was not, 267, 25.
nat, adv. not, 4, 30.
natht, s. naught, 18, 23.
navie, s. ships, navy, 50, 31.
nay, adv. no, 3, 34; 5, 26.

ne, adv. not, 264, 12.
ne a-bide not, double negative, 258, 31.
ne, conj. nor, 2, 20.
nece, s. niece, 63, 33.
neethe, s. needs, wants, 505, 28.
neke, 53, 8; nekke, 51, 17; s. neck.
nempned, pp. named, 143, 9.
ner, adv. near, 277, 30.
netherdeles, adv. nevertheless, 43, 30.
nevew, 171, 34; nevewe, 152, 11; s. nephew.
nyegh, 215, 1; nyghe, 684, 25; v. to near, approach.
neighed, 207, 31; neyhed, 263, 21; v. neared, approached.
no, adv. not, 302, 8.
noon, adv. no, not, 6, 17; 33, 14.
norice, s. nurse, 135, 34.
norished, v. brought up, 26, 1.
norisshe, v. to nourish, nurse, bring up, 88, 10.
not, v.=ne wot, know not, 20, 5.
not, s. naught, nothing, 54, 2.
nother, adv. 102, 5; adj. 109, 2, neither.
nought, adv. not, 1, 7.
noye, v. annoy, 368, 17.
noysaunce, s. injury, 456, 2.
nurture, s. training, cultivation, 227, 13.
ny, adv. nigh, nearly, 199, 1.
nys=neys, is not, 87, 10.

o, adj. one, 318, 20.
obbeye, v. to obey, 66, 18.
occision, s. killing, slaying, 118, 24; 159, 15.
of, adv. off, 53, 8; 220, 5.
of, prep. from, 33, 8; 59, 7; for, 210, 1; by, 265, 30; concerning, about, 47, 16; during, 171, 29.
olyfauntes, s. elephants, 327, 29.
olyvere, s. olive-tree, 541, 29.
on, prep. in, 86, 12; on baste= in bastardy.
on, 2, 32; 167, 7; oo, 220, 16; 316, 26; oon, 3, 1; 4, 34; adj. one.
ones, adv. once, 11, 20.
only, adj. alone, 264, 8.
ordenaunce, s. ordinance, plan, 3, 11.
ordeyned, v. provided, 301, 14; prepared, 473, 24.
orfraied, adj. gold-embroidered, 615, 7.
orped, adj. valorous, bold, 439, 22.
orphenyn, s. orphan, 212, 18.
oste, s. host, army, 24, 16; 43, 22.
osteill, s. hostel, lodging, 130, 13.
osteye, v. to make warlike incursions, 70, 5.
other, adv. either, 217, 24.
ouer-gate, v. overtake, 276, 28.
ouerlede, v. to oppress ?, 122, 35.
ought, adv. very . . . he shall come er *ought* long, 449, 8.
ought, s. anything, 269, 6.
ought, v. owed, 302, 11.
oughten, v. owed, 138, 25.
oure, s. hour, 13, 2; 151, 4.
outerage, s. outrage, violence, 69, 6; 81, 35.
outerly, adv. entirely, 340, 33; 571, 15.
outraied, 629, 20; 630, 8; outreyed, 458, 6; outrayed, 458, 11; pp. beaten, ruined.
overene, prep. over, 18, 29.
overthrewe, v. fell down, fell over, 27, 22.
owe, 83, 13; 369, 23; owen, 60, 11; oweth, 54, 36; 449, 7; v. ought.
owther, adv. either, 357, 12.
owzht, v. ought, 14, 7.

paas, 127, 24; pas, pase, 162, 15; s. pace.
pailet, s. pallet, couch, 95, 5.
paleis, 105, 2; paleise, 202, 21; s. palace.
pament, s. pavement, 496, 7.
panes, s. skirts, 501, 27.

pantoneres, 323, 21; s. spies.
paramours, (Fr. par amour), with love, tenderly, 9, 19.
paraunt, adj. marked, conspicuous, 356, 1.
par-a-venture, adv. haply, 204, 11.
parde, adv. an oath, *par Dieu*, 652, 25.
pareile, like, 584, 15.
parentes, s. relatives, 463, 10.
parformed, v. completed, finished, 629, 22.
parlament, 99, 25; parlement, 311, 13; s. conversation, a meeting for consultation.
partie (grete partie, 48, 26; a grete partye, 21, 5 = in great part); partye, 32, 34 (?); 139, 11; 195, 11; s. part, portion.
parties, s. districts, 321, 3.
party, s. a body of men for military work, 54, 16.
Pasch, 63, 30; Passh, 104, 11; Phasche, 178, 35; Easter.
passe, v. to pass away, die, 55, 14.
pavelouns, s. pavilions, 116, 11.
pawtener, s. rascal, vagabond, 268, 36.
paynymes, s. pagans, 446, 18; 594, 15.
paytrell, s. the breastplate of a horse's armour, 330, 34.
peas, 175, 33; pees, 27, 6; pes, 16, 13; s. peace.
pelow, s. pillow, 634, 23.
penon, s. skin that covers the shield, 570, 9.
pepill, 26, 32; peple, 32, 33; s. people.
perage, s. lineage (Fr. parage), 655, 36.
perche, s. pole, 4, 21.
perchemyn, s. parchment, 312, 5.
perdurable, adj. everlasting, 93, 4.
pereyle, s. peril, 142, 11.
peringall 394, 1; peryngall, 163, 4; adj. equal.
persch, 155, 13; persh, 327, 25; pershe, 293, 16; v. to pierce.
perveied, pp. provided, 108, 20.
pesaunt, adj. heavy, weighty, 119, 12.
peses, s. pieces, 136, 26.
petaile, s. infantry, followers, 253, 20.
peyne, s. pain, torment, 122, 34.
peyned, v. strived, desired, took pains, 5, 31; 119, 21; 412, 20.
picche, v. to pitch, strike, 116, 11.
pight, pp. pitched, erected, 150, 30; 239, 32; 476, 19; 672, 30.
pilche, s. outer garment, 424, 22.
piled, pp. pilfered, robbed, 191, 33; 207, 8.
pite, s. pity, sorrow, 5, 9; 208, 35.
pitosly, 17, 12; pitously, 54, 8; adv. piteously, pitifully.
plaisshes, s. pools of water, 337, 28.
plants of an oke, s. pike, 600, 6.
playnynge, v. lamenting, 171, 28.
pleet, s. ? pleading, 366, 33.
plegge, s. pledge, 11, 31.
plegge, v. become surety for, 571, 32.
plegged, pp. pledged, 35, 33.
pleide, v. played, 529, 19.
plenteuouse, 191, 23; plentevouse, 202, 26; adj. plenteous.
plesier, 1, 3; 39, 27; plesire, 74, 18; s. pleasure.
pletere, s. pleading, 18, 29.
pletours, s. pleaders, 434, 11.
plite, s. condition, 354, 14.
plites, v. folds, 265, 11; 338, 33.
plukkynge, s. drawing, pulling, 339, 31.
poste, s. power, 610, 9.
pouke, v. poke, 367, 24.
powestee, s. power, might, 660, 22.
pownes, s. pawns, 362, 30.
powste, s. power, 639, 20.
poynt, s. dawn, 585, 13.
pray, s. cattle driven off, 192, 20; 196, 35.

prayes, s. raids, plunder, 26, 34; 272, 8; 276, 16.
preced, v. pierced, 117, 23; 155, 9; pressed, went, 156, 7.
preche, v. to preach, 110, 35.
preiden, v. prayed, 450, 12.
preised, v. valued, 464, 13.
prese, s. press, multitude, 61, 11.
prevy, adj. privy, secret, 47, 21.
prewe, v. to prove, 18, 26.
preyse, v. prize? praise? 6, 22.
priked, v. rode hard, spurred on, 73, 33.
prikinge, adv. galloping, 329, 15.
pris, s. enterprise, hazardous undertaking, 176, 18.
prise, v. to take, 670, 16.
privees, s. trusted persons, 377, 13.
processe, s. progress, 255, 28.
provertee, s. poverty, 59, 1.
pryme, s. six o'clock a.m., 132, 7; 182, 3.
purchased, v. gained, acquired, obtained, 190, 28.
putaile, s. populace, common people, rabble, 192, 9.
puyssaunce, s. power, 202, 28.
pyne, s. pine-tree, 605, 10.
pytaile, s. foot-soldiers, 256, 25.

quarelles, s. arrows, cross-bow bolts, 196, 4; 271, 33.
quat, 463, 26; quatte, 463, 22; pp. hidden, squat, out of sight.
queche, s. thicket, 540, 9.
queynte, adj. artful, cunning, 113, 28.
quod, quo, v. quoth, said, 3, 25; 33, 36.
quyk, adj. alive, living, 12, 33; 29, 11; 347, 9.
quynsyme, 374, 16; quynsynne, 57, 11; quynsyne, 62, 22 (s. Fr. quinzième), fifteen days, or fifteenth day.
quyntayne, s. a board set up to be tilted at, 133, 16; 375, 17; 584, 33.
quyte, v. requite, reward, 173, 20; 377, 8.
quyte, pp. acquitted, 19, 12; 37, 21.
quytely, adv. freely, 651, 28.

raced, v. took, pulled away, 424, 31; 633, 27.
radde, v. read, 280, 3.
raile, v. run, 342, 2.
randon, 401, 10; ranndon, 118, 34; raundon, 210, 3; 219, 5; s. force, impetuosity; pace, 652, 21.
rasour, s. razor, 427, 18.
rattes, s. rats, 665, 30.
raught, v. lifted, 697, 11.
raught, v. reached, 159, 25.
ravayn, s. force, rage, 127, 12; raveyn, 444, 27; ravyn, 549, 32; swiftness, 600, 15.
reade, adj. red, 37, 16; 635, 15.
reame, 40, 19; reeme, 84, 32; reme, 259, 10; s. realm, kingdom.
recche, v. care for, reck, 93, 35.
recete, s. place of refuge, 684, 26.
recouer, s. remedy, stratagem, 332, 27.
recouerer, s. recovery, 4, 19.
reddure, s. violence, punishment, 538, 9.
rede, v. to advise, counsel, 25, 14
rede, s. advice, counsel, 60, 7.
reden, v. rode, 30, 3.
redy, adj. assembled together, 243, 24.
refraite, 615, 19; refreite, 310, 12; s. refrain, burden of a song.
refroide, v. restrain, cool, 500, 27.
refte, v. took from, deprived, 27, 3.
regrated, v. sorrowed for, 646, 24.
regrater, s. huckster, 168, 12.
rehete, v. cheer, encourage, 549, 19.
reinde, ? [f]reinde = freineth (imp.), ask, inquire, 18, 2.
reine, lete reine, v. urge, 243, 36.
relented, v. remained, 323, 28.

releve, v. get up, 397, 22.
relied, v. to rally, relead, 196, 31; relye, 281, 2.
relikes, s. relics, 75, 26.
reme, s. realm, 610, 10.
remeve, v. to remove, 58, 10; 397, 33.
renge, s. rank, row, course, 133, 30; 162, 28.
renged, 127, 27; v. set in order, arranged.
renne, v. run, 347, 2.
renomede, 431, 35; renomee, 186, 17; s. renown.
renomede, pp. renowned, 124, 29.
renon, s. renown, 106, 21.
repair, 20, 33; repaire, 43, 8; repeire, 311, 19; 669, 6; s. abode, place of resort.
repeyred, v. resorted, 132, 25.
repress, v. reprove, 269, 31.
requere, v. require, request, 49, 29.
requereth, pp. required, 65, 27.
rerewarde, 276, 17; 194, 7; s. after portion of an army, rear-guard.
rescewe, 214, 20; rescouse, 586, 14; rescowe, 119, 18; s. rescue, deliverance.
rescettes, s. places of refuge, 568, 27.
resceve, 224, 32; resceyve, 54, 36; 32, 1; v. to receive.
rescowed, pp. rescued, 119, 18.
resorte, v. fall back, 391, 32.
resovned, v. resounded, 274, 4.
reuerse, v. fall, overturn, 157, 33.
rewarde, s., precaution, regard, 599, 26.
reynes, s. body, 465, 33.
reynes, s. kidneys, 53, 10; loins, 213, 33.
riall, adj. royal, 320, 27.
ribaudes, 277, 1; 278, 7; 317, 34; s. base men, the lowest sort of retainers of the nobility.
richesse, s. property, riches, 3, 20; 92, 36.
right, v. put in order, 209, 35.
rimpled, pp. wrinkled, puckered, 168, 10.
rivelid, pp. wrinkled, 262, 16.
roche, s. coast, 250, 13.
roches, s. rocks, 125, 14.
rody, 335, 29; rody, 181, 21; adj. red, ruddy.
roiall, 108, 4; rioall, 107, 1; adj. royal.
ronne, v. run, 243, 22.
rought, v. cared, 654, 21.
rounge to messe, 97, 26; rang for mass?
rounsies, s. horses, 636, 27.
rowe, adj. rough, 168, 10; 635, 15.
rowned, v. whispered, 95, 6.
roynouse, adj. mangy, scabby, eaten up with itch, 527, 27.
rudely, adv. furiously, 350, 6.
ruse, v. give way, retire, 494, 26.
rused, 333, 34; rused, 155, 9; 330, 15; rused, 288, 9; ruseden, 409, 20; rusen, 550, 14; 662, 20; v. rushed.
ryiche, adj. rich, 3, 17.
rympled, adj. curled, 424, 21.
ryvage, s. shore, beach, 377, 25; 378, 12.

sacred, pp. consecrated, 26, 4; 57, 9.
sacred, v. consecrated, 502, 33.
sacringe, consecration, 105, 13.
sadde, adj. staid, solemn, 106, 14.
sadly, adv. seriously, 226, 18.
saf, adv. safe, 266, 12.
safe, 5, 19; saf, 273, 18; conj. save, but.
safte, s. safety, 471, 28.
saisnes, 176, 28; sasnes, 172, 31; s. Saxons.
salew, s. salutation, 506, 32.
salude, v. saluted, 266, 9.
salue, s. salve, 193, 20.
salued, saluted, hailed, 36, 3.
samyte, s. a kind of rich silk, 608, 5.
sanourly, adv. heavily, soundly, 415, 13.
sarazin, s. ?infidel, 193, 16.

sarazins, s. Saxons (saisnes), 260, 16.
sauacion, 96, 3; savacion, 580, 28; s. salvation.
saunz-faile, without fail, 91, 11.
savete, s. safety, 542, 1.
sawter, s. psalter, 213, 22.
sayned, v. 14, 31; 66, 20; 304, 16; crossed himself? blessed himself?
scade, s. pity, misfortune, 678, 12.
scarmyshe, v. skirmish, flourish arms, 648, 19; Fr. escrimer.
scawberk, s. scabbard, 460, 14; scauberke, 367, 34.
schoved, v. shoved, pushed in, 218, 34.
scirmyssh, v. skirmish, 570, 26.
se, v. to see, 29, 1; pt. sien, 1, 3; sye, 3, 35; sygh, 18, 6; sigh, 64, 7; pt. sedd, 18, 5; saugh, 17, 21; pp. seyen, 21, 16; seyn, 108, 29; seye, 26, 7.
seche, v. to seek, 10, 24; 23, 22; used passively, 41, 27.
see, s. sea, 263, 28; 313, 31.
seel, s. seal, 617, 32.
sef, adv. only, 63, 35.
sege, 63, 19; 152, 19; seege, 254, 31; s. seat, encampment, siege.
seilden, adv. seldom, 6, 16.
seinge, part. pres. of verb to see, 86, 36.
seintewaries, s. holy things, 75, 25.
seke, 51, 25; sike, 52, 5; adj. sick.
sekenesse, s. sickness, 52, 28.
seleres, s. cellars, 125, 14.
self, 26, 12; selue, 32, 23; adj. same.
semblant, 1, 17; semblaunt, 25, 12; 204, 3; s. semblance, pretence, appearance.
semblaunce, s. likeness, appearance, 45, 25; 57, 15; 170, 16.
sendall, s. thin silk, 281, 8.
seneschall, s. steward, 169, 13.
sercle, s. circle, 531, 1.
serkeles, s. circles, 220, 8.
sesed, v. seized, 649, 2.
sesid, v. ceased, 49, 23.
seth, 12, 30; sethe, 71, 22; conj. since.
sethen, adv. afterwards, 209, 35.
sette, v. to send, grant, 114, 17.
sewed, v. followed, 33, 30; 349, 35.
sewen, v. pursue, follow, 274, 18.
sey, v. to say, tell, 7, 22; 5, 21; 172, 1; pt. seyde, 7, 12; sede, 7, 17; seide, 1, 12; pp. seyde, 7, 5.
shalbe, shall be, 14, 34.
shamefest, adj. full of shame, 269, 33; shamefaste, 426, 11.
shapte, s. shape, form, 43, 30.
sheltron, s. division of soldiers, troop, company, 151, 13; 326, 6; 660, 24.
shet, pt. 9, 25; 14, 5; pp. 10, 10; shett, pp. 29, 26; shut.
shette, adj. shut, 545, 15.
shetynge, v. shooting, 170, 29.
shewde, 56, 22; sewde, 57, 17; v. appeared.
shof, v. shoved, 199, 18.
shofte, 208, 12; shoffe, 219, 19; s. shove, push.
shold, sholde, 1, 9; 6, 30; shulde, 1, 14; v. should.
sholdres, s. shoulders, 635, 17.
shone, 33, 22; shoon, 279, 25; s. shoes.
shour, 336, 24; 353, 14; shour, 663, 17; s. fight, encounter.
shrewdely, adv. in bits, 313, 5.
shrewe, s. giant, enemy, 347, 16.
shrewe, s. pity, sin, 568, 26.
shulder, s. shoulder, 211, 5.
shull, v. shall, 5, 34.
sibbe, s. relation, 373, 9.
siche, adj. such, 3, 1.
sigh, v. saw, 361, 8; 605, 27.
siker, adj, secure, safe, 32, 16.
sith, conj. since, 10, 5; 25, 25.
sithes, 24, 11; sythes, 7, 6; s. times.
sithes, s. sides, parties, 244, 31.
sitteth, v. becometh, 537, 9.
skaberke, 347, 21; skabrek, 118, 10; skawlerke, 340, 15 scabbard.

skirmerie, s. fencing, fighting with the sword, 368, 20; 571, 5.
sklender, adj. slender, 279, 24.
skole, s. school, 86, 13.
skyle, s. skill, 27, 33.
slade, s. a valley, 256, 33.
slakede, v. slacken, 293, 13.
sle, 21, 23; slen, 15, 30; v. to slay, kill.
slode, v. did slide, 570, 12.
slouthe, s. sloth, 640, 30.
slowe, 4, 3; slow, 217, 8; v. slew.
snewen, v. follow, 296, 27.
soche, adj. such, 4, 7.
socour, s. succour, 50, 12.
soell, 4, 11; soill, 75, 5; sole, 9, 29; soole, 128, 33; sool, 297, 3; adj. alone.
sogect, 6, 30; soget, 627, 26; s. subject.
soiour, s. sojourn, 311, 25.
somdell, s. somewhat, 135, 4.
someres, 192, 1; sommers, 378, 5; s. sumpter horses.
somowne, v. to summon, 41, 20; 249, 6.
somte, misprint, perhaps for smote, 299, 9.
sone, adv. soon, 3, 26.
sooll, adv. sole, 634, 1.
sop, 260, 33; soppe, 218, 29; s. body, company.
soper, s. supper, 59, 22; 545, 26.
sopores, s. spurs, 299, 21.
sore, adv. very, sorely, 52, 13; much, 169, 11.
sore, sorrow, 126, 35.
sore-holdynge, adj. very tenacious, 222, 8.
sorte, s. chance, lot, destiny, 36, 29.
soth, true, truth, 7, 12; 37, 35; 51, 16.
sotilly, adv. artfully, knowingly, 21, 36.
souereine, adj. sovereign, 48, 11.
souke, s. suck, 646, 31.
sowke, v. to suck, 112, 4.
sowderes, 120, 25; 174, 16; sowdiours, 175, 28; s. soldiers.
sowowne, s. swoon, 134, 5.
sowowned, v. swooned, 208, 23.
sparble, v. to scatter, 396, 28.
sparbled, v. ran away, 274, 30; scattered, 411, 6.
sparre, s. spar, 460, 16.
spayne, 615, 15; spaynell, 615, 17; s. spaniel.
splyndered, v. broke, splintered, 244, 24; 338, 36.
sporered, v. spurred, 282, 34.
spores, s. spurs, 101, 1; "at the spore," 282, 27; 531, 33.
stablie, s. stand, 386, 26.
stablisshement, s. establishment, 61, 29.
stale, v. make water, 526, 12.
stall, kept at, *i.e.* kept back, withstood, 286, 9.
stalled, v. met in confusion, 324, 26.
stalleden, v. fixed, placed, 161, 28.
starke, adj. long, 214, 31.
startelinge, adj. spirited, 257, 3.
steill, 118, 16; stiel, 98, 20; s. steel.
steirne, adj. stern, fierce, 43, 1.
stelen, adj. of steel, 119, 5.
stent, v. to cease, 145, 14.
stered, v. guided, directed, 4, 33.
sterten, v. started, leaped, 214, 34.
stightlynge, s. fear, dread, 408, 3.
still, s. steel, armour, 618, 21.
stilliche, adv. stilly, silently, 180, 36.
stinte, 253, 22; stinte, 548, 34; v. remain, cease.
stynte, pt. stopped, 127, 11; 217, 33.
stodye, s. condition of mind, 243, 2.
stonyed, pp. stunned, 265, 30.
stounde, s. short time, 594, 29.
stoupe, v. to stoop, 119, 16.
stour, stoure, s. tumult, battle, passion, 119, 20; 161, 16; 125, 2.
straitely, adv. strictly, closely, 221, 6.

stranght, v. stretched, handed, gave, 639, 15.
straungeled, pt. 4, 14; strangelid, pp. 4, 23; strangled.
streite, s. strait, 256, 1.
streite, adj. narrow, 558, 32.
streite, 126, 2; streyte, 205, 2; adj. strict.
strengthes, s. pl. form of strength, 1, 6.
stroied, pp. ruined, 5, 4.
stronge, adv. very, 52, 5.
strongeleche, adv. strongly, greatly, 13, 1.
stronke, adj. strong, 380, 7.
stuffed, v. filled, garrisoned, 70, 16; 120, 30.
sturopes, s. stirrups, 117, 21.
stwarde, s. steward, 24, 9.
styghtled, pp. fought, struggled, 333, 3.
styth, 98, 12; stithi, 98, 14; stith, 98, 19; s. anvil.
sue, v. to follow, 206, 10.
suerdes, s. swords, 388, 14.
suffraite, s. suffering, 59, 1.
suffretouse, sufferers, 201, 35.
surbated, v. rushed, 531, 5.
sured, v. plighted, 628, 2.
surmounte, v. excel, 602, 3.
surnonn, s. surname, 57, 13.
sustene, v. stand, 354, 11.
suster, sustres, syster, s. sister, 4, 34; 5, 18; 7, 18; 399, 26.
suweth, v. follow, 210, 3; 331, 36.
swarned, pp. turned aside, 341, 36.
swenene, s. dream, 430, 25.
swerde, s. sword, 100, 17.
swight, adj. swift, 324, 35.
swote, adj. sweet, 133, 1.
swowne, s. swoon, 119, 6.
swyfht, adj. swift, 209, 36.
sye, v. see, 248, 15.
sye, v. saw, 597, 1.
sympilliche, adv. simply, 140, 32.
sympilly, adv. weakly, 78, 20.
symple, adj. weak, 116, 36.
tacched, pp. taken, 88, 4.
talent, s. disposition, desire, 32, 6; 573, 3.
talentif, adj. desirous, 352, 10.
targe, s. a small shield, 338, 24.
tarie, v. to wait, stay, 47, 35.
tarien, v. tarry, 259, 5.
taste, v. feel, touch, 681, 12.
tasted, v. tried, groped, 649, 6.
tastinge, pr. part. trying, 648, 26.
taught, v. (1) led, 316, 26; (2) told, 550, 3.
tecche, s. fault, peculiarity, 135, 34; 182, 1.
tecches, s. devices, 462, 33.
teche, v. teach, take or intrust to, 72, 18.
techynge, s. teaching, instruction, 7, 21.
teinte, 46, 10-12; teynte, 116, 11; s. tent.
tentefly, adv. steadfastly, 506, 16.
teyed, v. tied, 413, 30.
teysed, v. drawn, 590, 3.
thaire, pr. their, 5, 22.
tham, 2, 2; theym, 1, 15; 141, 36; pron. them.
than, 4, 12; thanne, 4, 13; adv. then.
tharchebisshop, the Archbishop, 104, 21.
tharldom, s. thraldom, 1, 20.
that, pro.=that which, 2, 34; 3, 2.
þat, conj. that, 73, 16.
thaugh, conj. though, 103, 19.
the, pro. (1) thee, 44, 28; (2) they, 256, 4.
þe, adj. the, 63, 21; 352, 32.
theder, 36, 15; thider, 32, 20; adv. thither.
thei, pr. they, 3, 3.
þei, pron. they, 197, 33.
their, adv. there, 3, 16.
thencheson, s. the reason, cause, 28, 11.
thens, adv. thence, 25, 16.
thens-forth, adv. thenceforth, 121, 5.
ther, conj. where, 263, 18.

ther, adv. where, 25, 8.
ther-as, adv. where, 3, 15.
þer-inne, adv. therein, 188, 28.
thirthe, adj. third, 121, 34.
this, adj. these, 363, 14.
this, adv. thus, 14, 28.
thise, pro. these, 3, 33.
thiside, n.=? this side, 562, 15.
tho, adv. then, thereupon, 7, 11; 44, 33; thoo, 273, 31.
tho, pro. those, 2, 22; thoo=those who? 162, 34.
thonkeden, v. thanked, 210, 1.
thourgh, prep. through, 4, 34; 34, 7.
thove, v.=thave, permit, allow, 18, 22.
thowz, conj. though, 2, 8.
thre, adj. three, 50, 4.
thunder, s. lightning, 387, 1.
þus, adv. thus, 79, 32.
tierce, s. the third hour of the artificial day, 182, 4; 274, 29.
tierme, s. time, 41, 20.
to, adv. too, 258, 7.
to-brosed, pp. bruised, battered, 268, 24; 548, 29.
to foren, adv. before, 201, 18.
to-geder, adv. together, 29, 36.
to hewen, hewn to pieces, 135, 23.
tokenynge, s. sign, token, 60, 32; 98, 3.
tole, v. told, 50, 19.
to-morou, s. to-morrow, 60, 22.
ton, the ton=the one, 216, 9.
tortue, adj. twisted, 206, 17.
tother, adj. the tother=that other, 34, 16.
tow, adj. two, 5, 16; towe, 214, 33.
towaile, s. towel, 225, 21.
towarde, adv. near at hand, 353, 25.
towon, s. town, 379, 8.
traied, pp. betrayed, 463, 10.
trauayle, 32, 25; traueill, 32, 28; traueile, 32, 30; 128, 23; traueyle, 122, 34; s. toil, injury, labour, pain.
trauers, in trauers, adv. contrarily, 262, 14; 429, 19.
trauerse, "on traverse," 425, 31; "a trauerse," 427, 17; adv. leeringly, with side glance.
trayned, pp. dragged, 299, 11.
tresour, s. treasure, 167, 6.
trewage, s. pledge, hostage, 50, 17; 126, 28.
trewis, s. truce, 505, 13.
troath, 18, 11; trouth, 107, 21; s. truth.
trobellion, s. ? storm, tempest, 324, 10.
tronchon, s. fragment, 248, 25.
tronchown, s. truncheon, staff, 156, 19.
trouble, adj. dense, thick, dark, 248, 5; troble, 248, 34.
trowe, v. think, suppose, 2, 34; 22, 22.
trumpes, s. trumpets, 276, 9.
trusse, v. pack up, 378, 5.
trussed, v. fastened, 259, 27.
trymbled, v. trembled, 27, 26.
tukked, pp. ? dressed, 279, 23; tucked up?
turment, s. tournament, 102, 36.
turmente, s. torment, 5, 20.
turney, s. tourney, 404, 33.
tweyn, 49, 1; tweyne, 129, 4; twey, 225, 22; two.
tymbres, s. spears, 117, 34.
tymbres, s. bells, 276, 12.
tysed, v. enticed, 418, 25.

un-ethe, adv. scarcely, 677, 15.
unpossible, adj. impossible.
untrouthe, s. untruth, falsehood, 69, 21.

valed, v. let down, 478, 13.
vauasour, s. a sort of inferior gentry, 204, 19; 307, 15.
vaunt garde, s. van guard, 151, 3; from French avant?
venged, pp. avenged, revenged, 119, 32.
venquysshed, v. gained, 56, 33.
vergier, s. orchard, 310, 6.
very, adj. true, 11, 27.

very, v. ferry, 605, 31.
viage, s. journey, voyage, 130, 7.
vilenis, 102, 31; vylenis, 127, 1; vileyns, 26, 21; adj. disgraceful, shameful.
viliche, adv. basely, 477, 12.
vitaile, s. provisions, 50, 12.
vn-couthe, adj. unknown, 190, 30; un-cowthe, 381, 22.
vnethe, 19, 7; vn-ethe, 154, 4; vn-nethe, 172, 19; adv. scarcely.
vnther, adj. under 169, 5.
vn-to, prep. until, 160, 23.
vn-trewe, adj. untrue, 276, 34.
vntterly, adv. utterly, entirely, 181, 22.
voide, v. to leave, depart (make empty), 108, 28–30.
volage, adj. ? light, giddy, 436, 1.
volente, volunte, 22, 30; 29, 21; 58, 29: voluntee, 201, 32; s. will, pleasure.
vowarde, s. the vanguard, 285, 25.
voyde, adj. empty, vacant, 59, 21.
voyded, adj. 279, 25; open-worked. *Cf.* Fr. *percé à jour.*
vp-right, adv. perpendicularly, 58, 11; 542, 7.
vp-right, adv. flat on the back, 128, 3; 476, 21.
vtas, s. that day week, 449, 12.
vyces, s. practices, deeds, 51, 6.
vyuier, s. ? fish pond, pool, vivary? 308, 6.

wacche, 76, 9; 656, 25; waicche, 46, 14; s. watch, guard.
waisshe, 301, 11; wosh, 225, 20; wossh, 301, 13; v. wash.
waisshen, 2, 3; waisch, 225, 25; pp. washed.
wake, v. watch, 584, 29.
walop, s. gallop; a grete walop = in full gallop, 209, 11.
walshe myle, s. 247, 36.
wape, v. to weep, 30, 10.
war, adj. aware, 274, 34; 654, 25.
warant, 29, 5; warante, 162, 30; v. save, preserve.
warantise, v. keep harmless, 269, 3.
warde, s. army, division, 286, 7.
wardeyns, s. guards, watchmen, 220, 8.
ware, adj. cautious, wary, 5, 26; 113, 2.
warishen, v. cure, 696, 24.
warne, v. to proclaim, command, 60, 15; used passively, 62, 16.
warrisshed, v. pp. recovered from sickness, 173, 11.
waymentacion, 513, 33; weymentacion, 347, 10; s. lamentation.
waymented, pp. lamented, 262, 2.
wedde, s. pledge, 477, 18.
weder, s. weather, 150, 33.
wedowe, s. widow, 596, 33.
wele, adv. well, 44, 27.
wele, v. to will, wish, intend, 54, 14.
well, v. 243, 26; to will, desire.
welwellinge, s. welfare, interests, 505, 35.
wende, v. ? would, 246, 6.
wende, v. intended, thought, 1, 12; 156, 7.
wene, v. to think, deem, 52, 19.
wepnes, s. weapons, 264, 2.
werre, s. war, 26, 27; 49, 21.
werre, v. to make war, 115, 6.
werreden, v. made war, 24, 10.
werrye, v. dwell, 318, 16.
werryen, v. 320, 15; make war on.
werse, adj. worse, 56, 28.
wery, adj. weary, 128, 23.
wete, v. to know, 10, 28; 28, 2; wethet, 34, 17.
wetynge, s. knowledge, 14, 12.
weymente, v. lament, 513, 31.
what, adv. partly, in part, 205, 7.
whens, adv. whence, 44, 7.
where-as, conj. where, at which place, 242, 22.
where-as = where were, 635, 9.
wherthourgh, adv. whereby, 17, 22.
whider, adv. whither, 61, 25.
whowle, v. to cry as a cat, 668, 9.
whowpe, v. to whoop, 358, 23; whowped, 168, 3.

wiesshe, v. to wish, 113, 36.
wight, adj. active, swift, 136, 22; 350, 28.
wight, s. weight, 57, 35.
wiste, v. knew, perceived, 4, 12.
wite, 45, 4; 13, 11; witen, 82, 20; v. to know, perceive; wyte, 5, 23; I do the to wite, 93, 21=make to know.
with-holde, v. receive, retain, 372, 21.
with-outen, prep. without, 69, 18.
with-sey, v. to deny, 204, 4.
wode, s. wood, 199, 10; 337, 22.
wode, adj. mad, 165, 5; 196, 19.
woke, s. week, 82, 33.
wolde, would, 2, 12; 4, 1.
woned, v. dwelt, 687, 13.
wordynesse, s. worthiness, 203, 32.
worschipe, v. to honour, 166, 2.
worship, 20, 29; 134, 2; wurship, 54, 9; 132, 13; s. dignity, honour, worth-ship.
worthen, v. be, go, 58, 13.
woste, v. knowest, 19, 36.
wote, v. knew, 101, 28; wote, pres. know, 162, 9, 11.
woued, v. wooed, loved, 137, 11.
woxen, v. waxed, grown, 228, 14.
wrathe, 18, 16; 41, 8; wratthe, 3, 31; 639, 30; v. to be angry, enraged.
wreche, s. wrath, anger, vengeance, 113, 27.
wrenne, s. wren, 573, 2.
wreten, pp. written, 53, 32.
wroken, pp. revenged, 451, 22.
wrothe, adj. angry, 3, 26.
wrother, adj. more angry, 4, 1.
wurship, s. dignity, honour, 54, 9.
wurshipfullest, adj. most honoured, 5, 12.
wymple, s. covering for the neck, 361, 14; 681, 14.
wynnynge, s. spoil, 224, 25.
wyssher, s. miser? 168, 12.
wytinge, 190, 3; witynge, 12, 19; 45, 9; s. knowledge.

yaf, pt. gave, 3, 16; pp. yove, yoven, 22, 12; 4, 7.
yat, s. gate, 509, 13.
yates, s. gates, 125, 10.
ye, adv. yea, 12, 34; 32, 9.
yed, 167, 27; yede, 2, 13; yeden, 1, 15; went.
yef, conj. if, 2, 9; but yef=unless, 2, 5; 5, 6; 182, 32.
yefte, s. gift, 4, 8; 55, 21.
yelde, v. to yield, 33, 9.
yelde, pp. yielded, 8, 21.
yen, s. eyes, 85, 33; 648, 17.
yesse, adv. yes, 54, 11; 85, 21; 169, 27.
yeste, s. ? feasts, 55, 28.
yeve, v. to give, 47, 26.
yie, s. eye, 304, 36.
ylles, s. isles, 316, 13.
ympe, s. part of a tree, 418, 16.
ynde bende or *undé bendé*, ? 161, 32.
ynge, adj. young, 198, 4.
yole, 63, 30; yoole, 96, 13; s. Christmas.
yoven, pp. given, 106, 17; 241, 8.
ys, v. is, 103, 32.
ysse, v. to issue forth, 113, 23; yssed, pt. 207, 19.

UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS-URBANA
Q.820.8EA7 C001
PUBLICATIONS, ORIGINAL SERIES$LOND
36,112
3 0112 010685540